This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ **Make non-commercial use of the files** We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ **Refrain from automated querying** Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ **Maintain attribution** The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ **Keep it legal** Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com/](http://books.google.com/)
ANATOMY,
DESCRIPTIVE AND SURGICAL.

BY
HENRY GRAY, F.R.S.,
FELLOW OF THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF SURGEONS AND LECTURER ON
ANATOMY AT ST. GEORGE'S HOSPITAL MEDICAL SCHOOL.

WITH FIVE HUNDRED AND TWENTY-TWO ENGRAVINGS ON WOOD.

THE DRAWINGS BY H. V. CARTER, M.D., AND DR. WESTMACOTT.
THE DISSECTIONS JOINTLY BY THE AUTHOR AND DR. CARTER.

WITH AN INTRODUCTION ON GENERAL ANATOMY AND DEVELOPMENT.

BY
T. HOLMES, M.A. CANTAB.,
SURGEON TO ST. GEORGE'S HOSPITAL; MEM. CORRESP. DE LA SOCI. DE CHIR. DE PARIS.

A NEW AMERICAN
FROM THE
EIGHTH AND ENLARGED ENGLISH EDITION.

TO WHICH IS ADDED
LANDMARKS, MEDICAL AND SURGICAL.

BY LUTHER HOLDEN, F.R.C.S.,
SURGEON TO ST. BARTHOLOMEW'S AND THE FOUNDLING HOSPITALS.

PHILADELPHIA:
HENRY O. LEA.
1878.
Entered according to Act of Congress in the year 1878, by
HENRY C. LEA,
in the Office of the Librarian of Congress. All rights reserved.
TO

SIR BENJAMIN COLLINS BRODIE, BART., F.R.S., D.C.L.,
SERJEANT-SURGEON TO THE QUEEN,
CORRESPONDING MEMBER OF THE INSTITUTE OF FRANCE,

This Work is Dedicated,

IN ADMIRATION OF

HIS GREAT TALENTS,

AND IN REMEMBRANCE OF

MANY ACTS OF KINDNESS SHOWN TO THE AUTHOR

FROM AN

EARLY PERIOD OF HIS PROFESSIONAL CAREER.
AMERICAN PUBLISHER’S NOTICE.

The present edition, like the previous American reprints, has been passed through the press under the supervision of Dr. Richard J. Dunglison. As the work has had the advantage of three revisions at the hands of the distinguished editor, Mr. Holmes, since the appearance of the last American edition, no necessity has been found for the insertion of additional details, but Dr. Dunglison has carefully corrected whatever errors had escaped attention in England, and has made such changes in the typographical arrangement as seemed calculated to render the volume more convenient for consultation and reference. A few illustrations have also been inserted in the introductory section. They will be found distinguished by inclosure in brackets.

The recent work of Mr. Holden—"Landmarks, Medical and Surgical"—has attracted so much attention, as affording, within brief compass, exactly the information required by practitioners in the application of anatomical knowledge, that the publisher has hoped, by appending it, to render the volume still more acceptable to those for whose use it is intended.

Philadelphia, June, 1878.
PREFACE TO THE EIGHTH EDITION.

The only changes made in this Edition have been such alterations in the sections on Microscopical Anatomy and on Development as the ever-increasing activity of research in those branches of the science has seemed to require. Some illustrations which appeared necessary for the further elucidation of the text have been borrowed, with permission, from well-known text-books, such as Frey's "Histology," Stricker's "Handbook," and Quain's "Anatomy."

PREFACE TO THE SEVENTH EDITION.

This Edition has received a most careful revision both of the text and of the sections on Visceral Anatomy. In the former department of the work the editor has to acknowledge the very valuable assistance received from his friend, Professor Darling, of New York University, who has been so kind as to communicate to him all the verbal and other errors which he has noted in the course of several years during which he has used "Gray's Anatomy" as the text-book for his class. For other assistance the Editor is indebted to his former pupil, Mr. E. J. Spitza, late Demonstrator of Anatomy at the School of St. George's Hospital, by whom the
vi  PREFACE TO THE SEVENTH EDITION.

section on the Anatomy of the Kidney in the present edition has been entirely re-written.

The illustrations which have been incorporated in this edition from the "Handbook for the Physiological Laboratory" are from original drawings by Dr. Klein.

18 GREAT CUMBERLAND PLACE:
December, 1874.

———

PREFACE TO THE SIXTH EDITION.

———

In this edition the old description of the Cochlea, which had been allowed to remain uncorrected by an oversight, has been modified so as to embrace the essential points of recent discoveries in the structure of the internal ear. For the figures illustrating this description the Editor is indebted to his friend, Mr. C. Stewart, Curator of the Museum of St. Thomas's Hospital, as well as for one to replace an erroneous diagram of the minute structure of the large intestine.

The account of the actions of some of the larger joints has also been made somewhat fuller; a few new figures have been added, and the errors of the press have been still further corrected.

In other respects this Edition is a reprint of the former.

31 CLARGES STREET, July, 1872.
PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

This work is intended to furnish the Student and Practitioner with an accurate view of the Anatomy of the Human Body, and more especially the application of this Science to Practical Surgery.

One of the chief objects of the Author has been, to induce the Student to apply his anatomical knowledge to the more practical points in Surgery, by introducing, in small type, under each subdivision of the work, such observations as show the necessity of an accurate knowledge of the part under examination.

Osteology. Much time and care have been devoted to this part of the work, the basis of anatomical knowledge. It contains a concise description of the anatomy of the bones, illustrated by numerous accurately-lettered engravings showing the various markings and processes on each bone. The attachments of each muscle are shown in dotted lines (after the plan recently adopted by Mr. Holden), copied from recent dissections. The articulations of each bone are shown on a new plan; and a method has been adopted, by which the hitherto complicated account of the development of the bones is made more simple.

The Articulations. In this section, the various structures forming the joint are described; a classification of the joints is given; and the anatomy of each carefully described: abundantly illustrated by engravings, all of which are taken from, or corrected by, recent dissections.

The Muscles and Fasciae. In this section, the muscles are described in groups, as in ordinary anatomical works. A series of illustrations, showing the lines of incision necessary in the dissection of the muscles in each region, are introduced, and the muscles are shown in fifty-eight engravings. The Surgical Anatomy of the muscles in connection with fractures, of the tendons or muscles divided in operations, is also described and illustrated.

The Arteries. The course, relations, and Surgical Anatomy of each artery are described in this section, together with the anatomy of the regions containing the arteries more especially involved in surgical operations. This part of the work is illustrated by twenty-eight engravings.
The Veins are described as in ordinary anatomical works; and illustrated by a series of engravings, showing those in each region. The veins of the spine are described and illustrated from the well-known work of Breschet.

The Lymphatics are described, and figured in a series of illustrations copied from the elaborate work of Mascagni.

The Nervous System and Organs of Sense. A concise and accurate description of this important part of anatomy has been given, illustrated by sixty-six engravings, showing the spinal cord and its membranes; the anatomy of the brain, in a series of sectional views; the origin, course, and distribution of the cranial, spinal, and sympathetic nerves; and the anatomy of the organs of sense.

The Viscera. A detailed description of this essential part of anatomy has been given, illustrated by fifty-five large, accurately lettered engravings.

Regional Anatomy. The anatomy of the perineum, of the ischio-rectal region and of femoral and inguinal herniae, is described at the end of the work; the region of the neck, the axilla, the bend of the elbow, Scarpa's triangle, and the popliteal space, in the section on the arteries; the laryngo-tracheal region, with the anatomy of the trachea and larynx. The regions are illustrated by many engravings.

Microscopical Anatomy. A brief account of the microscopical anatomy of some of the tissues, and of the various organs, has also been introduced.

The Author gratefully acknowledges the great services he has derived in the execution of this work, from the assistance of his friend, Dr. H. V. Carter, late Demonstrator of Anatomy at St. George's Hospital. All the drawings from which the engravings were made, were executed by him. In the majority of cases, they have been copied from, or corrected by, recent dissections made jointly by the Author and Dr. Carter.

The Author has also to thank his friend, Mr. T. Holmes, for the able assistance afforded him in correcting the proof-sheets in their passage through the press.

The engravings have been executed by Messrs. Butterworth and Heath; and the Author cannot omit thanking these gentlemen for the great care and fidelity displayed in their execution.
## CONTENTS

**INTRODUCTION; General Anatomy.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Blood</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph and Chyle</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cells and Protoplasm</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular and Fibrous Tissue</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adipose Tissue</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pigment</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cartilage</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibro-cartilage</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow or Reticular Cartilage</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development of Bone</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscular Tissue</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nervous Tissue</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Brain</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Spinal Cord</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ganglia</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Nerves</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Sympathetic Nerve</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminations of Nerves</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Vascular System</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Arteries</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Capillaries</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Veins</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Lymphatics</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Lymphatic Glands</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Skin and its Appendages</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Nails</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Hairs</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Sebaceous Glands</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Sudoriferous Glands</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Epithelium</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serous, Synovial, and Mucous Membranes</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretory Glands</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth and Development of the Body</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feudation of the Ovum</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division of Blastodermic Membrane</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of Germinal Area and Chorda Dorsalis</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parts formed from each layer of the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blastodermic Membrane</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Amnion</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Allantois</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Umbilical Viscell</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Chorion</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Decidua</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Placenta</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Umbilical Cord</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth of the Embryo</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development of the Various Parts</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Spine</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Cranium and Face</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Palate</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Brain</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Spinal Marrow and Nerves</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Eye</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ear</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Nose</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Skin, Glands, and Soft Parts</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Limbs and Muscles</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Heart</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Blood Corpuscles and Vessels</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| The Alimentary Canal and its Appen-
  dages                                | 120  |
| The Respiratory Organs               | 122  |
| The Genito-urinary Organs            | 122  |
| The Wolffian Body                    | 123  |
| The Internal Genital Organs:         | 124  |
| Female                               | 124  |
| Male                                 | 126  |
| The External Genital Organs:         | 127  |
| Indifferent Type                     | 127  |
| Female Organs                        | 127  |
| Male Organs                          | 128  |
| Chronological Table of the Develop-
  ment of the Fetus                   | 129  |

## DESCRIPTIVE AND SURGICAL ANATOMY.

### Osteology.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Skeleton</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of the Bones</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form of Bones</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Spine.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Characters of a Vertebrum</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characters of the Cervical Vertebrum</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlas</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axis</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertebra Prominens</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characters of the Dorsal Vertebrum</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiar Dorsal Vertebrum</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characters of the Lumbar Vertebrum</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure of the Vertebrum</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development of the Vertebrum</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progress of Ossification in the Spine</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sacral and Coccygeal Vertebrae</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sacrum</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coccyx</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of the Spine in general</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Skull.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bones of the Cranium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occipital Bone</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parietal Bone</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal Bone</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal Bones</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphenoid Bone</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethmoid Bone</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development of the Cranium</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Fontanelles</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wormian Bones</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital Fissures and Gaps</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bones of the Face:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal Bones</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior Maxillary Bones</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lachrymal Bones</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malar Bones</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palate Bones</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior Turbinated Bones</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomer</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior Maxillary Bone</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes produced in the Lower Jaw by age</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sutures of the skull</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertex of the Skull</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base of the Skull, Internal Surface</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior Fossa</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle Fossa</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior Fossa</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base of Skull, External Surface</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral Region of the Skull</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal Fossa</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zygomatic Fossa</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphen-maxillary Fossa</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior Region of the Skull</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbits</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal Fossa</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Os Hyoides</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Thorax.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Sternum</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ribs</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Articulations.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structures composing the Joints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Articular Lamella of Bone</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligaments</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synovial Membrane</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bursae</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synovia</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forms of Articulation:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synarthrosis</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphipathrosis</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarthrosis</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movements of Joints</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Articulations of the Trunk.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Articulations of the Vertebral Column</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlas with the Axis</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spine with the Cranium</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Articulations of the Atlas with the Occipital Bone</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axis with the Occipital Bone</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporo-maxillary Artication</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Articulations of the Ribs with the Vertebrae:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costa-vertebral</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costa-transverse</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Articulations of the Cartilages of the Ribs with the Sternum and Ensiform Cartilage</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercostal Articulations</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligaments of the Sternum</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Articulation of the Pelvis with the Spine</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Articulation of the Sacrum and Ilium</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligaments between the Sacrum and Ilium</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measurements</th>
<th>Articulation of the Sacrum and Coccyx</th>
<th>Articulation of the Fubes</th>
<th>Articulations of the Upper Extremity.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PAGES</td>
<td>302</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>Sterno-clavicular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Scapulo-clavicular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Proper Ligaments of the Scapula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shoulder-joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Elbow-joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Radio-ulnar Articulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Wrist-joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Articulations of the Carpus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Carpo-metacarpal Articulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measurements</th>
<th>Articulations of the Phalanges</th>
<th>Metacarlo-phalangeal Articulations</th>
<th>Articulations of the Lower Extremity.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PAGES</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>321</td>
<td>Hip-joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Knee-joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Articulations between the Tibia and Fibula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ankle-joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Articulations of the Tarsus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tarso-metatarsal Articulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Articulations of the Metatarsal Bones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Metatarso-phalangeal Articulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Articulations of the Phalanges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Muscles and Fasciae

### Inferior Maxillary Region

- Dissection
- 350
- Levator Labii Inferiors
- 350
- Depressor Labii Inferiors
- 351
- Depressor Anguli Oris
- 351

### Intermaxillary Region

- Dissection
- 351
- Orbicularis Oris
- 351
- Buccinator
- 352
- Risorius
- 352
- Actions
- 352

### Temporo-maxillary Region

- Masseter
- 352
- Dissection
- 353
- Temporal Fascia
- 353
- Temporal
- 353

### Pterygo-maxillary Region

- Dissection
- 354
- Internal Pterygoid
- 354
- External Pterygoid
- 354
- Actions
- 354

### Muscles and Fasciae of the Neck

#### Subdivision into Groups

### Suprahyoid Region

- 361
- Dissection
- 361
- Digastric
- 361

### Infra-hyoid Region

- 359
- Dissection
- 359
- Sterno-hyoid
- 359
- Sterno-thyroid
- 359
- Thyro-hyoid
- 359
- Omo-hyoid
- 361
- Actions
- 361

### Muscles and Fasciae of the Cranium and Face

- General Description of Muscle
- 339
- Tendons
- 340
- Aponeurosis
- 340
- Fascia
- 340

#### Subdivision into Groups

- 341

#### Cranial Region

- Dissection
- 342
- Occipito-frontalis
- 343

#### Auricular Region

- Dissection
- 344
- Attoleens Aurem
- 344
- Attrahens Aurem
- 344
- Retrahens Aurem
- 344
- Actions
- 344

#### Palpebral Region

- Dissection
- 345
- Orbicularis Palpebrarum
- 345
- Corrugator Supercrii
- 345
- Tensor Tarsi: Actions
- 346

#### Orbital Region

- Dissection
- 346
- Levator Palpebrar Superiors
- 346
- Rectus Superior
- 346
- Inferior, Internal, and External Recti
- 347
- Superior Oblique
- 347
- Inferior Oblique
- 348
- Actions: Surgical Anatomy
- 348

#### Nasal Region

- Pyramidalis Nasii
- 349
- Levator Labii Superiores Alaeque Nasii
- 349
- Dilatator Naris, Anterior and Posterior
- 349
- Compressor Nasi
- 349
- Narium Minor
- 349
- Depressor Alae Nasi
- 349
- Action
- 349

#### Superior Maxillary Region

- Levator Labii Superiors (Proprius)
- 350
- Levator Anguli Oris
- 350
- Zygomasici: Actions
- 350
CONTENTS.

Stylo-hyoid, Mylo-hyoid, Genio-hyoid
Actions

**Lingual Region.**

Dissection
Genio-hyo-glossus
Hyoglossus
Lingualis, and intrinsic fibres of Tongue
Stylo-glossus, Palato-glossus
Actions

**Pharyngeal Region.**

Dissection
Inferior Constrictor
Middle Constrictor, Superior Constrictor
Stylo-pharyngeus: Actions

**Palatal Region.**

Dissection
levator Palati
Tensor Palati
Azigos Uvulae, Palato-glossus, Palato-pharyngeus
Actions
Surgical Anatomy

**Vertebral Region (Anterior).**

Rectus Capitis Anticus Major and Minor
Rectus Lateralis, Longus Colli

**Vertebral Region (Lateral).**

Splenius Anticus
Splenius Medius, Splenius Posticus: Actions

**MUSCLES AND FASCIA OF THE TRUNK.**

Subdivision into groups

**Muscles of the Back.**

Subdivision into Layers

**First Layer.**

Dissection
Trapezius
Ligamentum Nuchae
Latissimus Dorsi

**Second Layer.**

Dissection
Levator Scapulae
Rhomboideus Minor
Rhomboideus Major
Actions

**Third Layer.**

Dissection
Serratus Posticus Superior
Serratus Posticus Interior
Vertebris Aponoeuroides
Spleniuns Capitis et Colli
Actions

**Fourth Layer.**

Dissection
Erector Spinae

Sacro-lumbalis
Musculus Accessorius a Sacro-lumbalem
Cervicallis Ascendens
Longissimus Dorsi
Transversalis Colli
Tracheo-mastoid
Spinalis Dorsi
Spinalis Colli
Complexus, Biventer Cervicis

**Fifth Layer.**

Dissection
Semispinalis Dorsi and Colli
Multiapus Spinae
Rotatores Spinae
Supraspinales
Interspinales
Extensor Coccygis
Intertransversalis
Rectus Capitis Posticus Major
Rectus Capitis Posticus Minor
Obliquus Superior and Inferior
Actions

**MUSCLES OF THE ABDOMEN.**

Dissection
Obliquus Externus
Obliquus Internus
Transversalis
Lumbar Fascia
Rectus
Pyramidalis, Quadratus Lumborum
Linea Alba
Lineae Semilunares
Lineae Transversae
Actions

**MUSCLES AND FASCIA OF THE THORAX.**

Intercostal Fascia
Intercostales Externi
Intercostales Interni
Infracostales, Triangularis Sterni
Levatores Costarum
Actions

**Diaphragmatic Region.**

Diaphragm
Actions

**MUSCLES AND FASCIA OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.**

Subdivision into Groups
Dissection of Pectoral Region and Axilla
Fascia of the Thorax

**Anterior Thoracic Region.**

Pectoralis Major
Costo-caracoid Membrane
Pectoralis Minor
Subclavius
Actions

**Lateral Thoracic Region.**

Serratus Magnus
Actions
## CONTENTS

### Acromial Region
- Deltoid .......................................................... 404
- Actions ......................................................... 404

### Anterior Scapular Region
- Subscapular Aponeurosis .................................. 404
- Subscapularis .................................................. 404
- Actions .......................................................... 405

### Posterior Scapular Region
- Supraspinous Aponeurosis .................................. 405
- Supraspinatus .................................................. 405
- Infraspinous Aponeurosis .................................. 405
- Infraspinatus .................................................. 405
- Teres Minor ................................................... 406
- Teres Major .................................................... 406
- Actions .......................................................... 407

### Anterior Humeral Region
- Deep Fascia of Arm .......................................... 407
- Coraco-brachialis ............................................ 408
- Biceps .......................................................... 408
- Brachialis Anticus: Actions ................................ 409

### Posterior Humeral Region
- Triceps .......................................................... 409
- Subanconeus: Actions ......................................... 410

### Muscles of Forearm
- Deep Fascia of Forearm ...................................... 410

### Anterior Brachial Region, Superficial Layer
- Pronator Radii Teres ......................................... 411
- Flexor Carpi Radialis ........................................ 411
- Palmaris Longus .............................................. 412
- Flexor Carpi Ulnaris ......................................... 412
- Flexor Digitorum Sublimis .................................. 412

### Anterior Brachial Region, Deep Layer
- Flexor Profundus Digitorum ................................ 413
- Flexor Longus Pollicis ....................................... 414
- Pronator Quadratus ........................................... 414
- Actions .......................................................... 415

### Radial Region
- Dissection ...................................................... 415
- Supinatior Longus ............................................ 415
- Extensor Carpi Radialis Longior .......................... 415
- Extensor Carpi Radialis Brevis ............................ 416

### Posterior Brachial Region, Superficial Layer
- Extensor Communis Digitorum ................................ 417
- Extensor Minimi Digiti ....................................... 417
- Extensor Carpi Ulnaris ....................................... 417
- Anconeus ....................................................... 417

### Posterior Brachial Region, Deep Layer
- Supinatior Brevis ............................................ 418
- Extensor Osea Metacarpi Pollicis .......................... 418
- Extensor Primi Internodi Pollicis .......................... 418
- Extensor Secundi Internodi Pollicis ........................ 418
- Extensor Indicis .............................................. 419
- Actions .......................................................... 419

### Muscles and Fasciae of the Hand
- Dissection ...................................................... 420
- Anterior Annular Ligament .................................. 420
- Posterior Annular Ligament .................................. 420
- Palmar Fascia .................................................. 421

### Muscles of the Hand
- Radial Group ................................................... 421
- Ulnar Group ..................................................... 423
- Middle Palmar Group ......................................... 424
- Actions .......................................................... 424

### Surgical Anatomy of the Muscles of the Upper Extremity
- Fractures of the Clavicle .................................... 426
- Acromion Process .............................................. 426
- Coracoid Process .............................................. 426
- Humerus .......................................................... 426
- Ulna .............................................................. 427
- Olecranon ......................................................... 427
- Radius ............................................................ 428

### Muscles and Fasciae of the Lower Extremity
- Subdivision into Groups ....................................... 429

### Iliac Region
- Dissection ...................................................... 430
- Iliac Fascia ..................................................... 430
- Psoas Magnus ................................................... 431
- Psoas Parvis .................................................... 431
- Iliacus .......................................................... 431
- Actions .......................................................... 432

### Anterior Femoral Region
- Dissection ...................................................... 432
- Fasciae of the Thigh: Superficial Fascia .................. 432
  - Deep Fascia (Fascia Lata) ................................ 433
  - Saphenous Opening ........................................... 434
  - Iliac and Pubic Portions of Fascia Lata ................ 434
- Tensor Vaginae Femoris, Sartorius ......................... 434
- Quadriceps Extensor, Crureus ............................... 435
- Rectus Femoris, Vastus Externus ............................ 435
- Vastus Internus and Crureus ................................ 436
- Subcutaneous: Actions ........................................ 436

### Internal Femoral Region
- Dissection ...................................................... 437
- Gracilis .......................................................... 437
- Pectineus ........................................................ 437
- Adductor Longus, Brevis, and Magnus ....................... 438
- Actions .......................................................... 439

### Gluteal Region
- Dissection ...................................................... 439
- Gluteus Maximus ................................................. 439
- Gluteus Medius ................................................ 440
- Gluteus Minimus ............................................... 441
- Pyriformis ....................................................... 441
- Obturator Membrane ........................................... 442
- Obturator Internus, Gemelli ................................ 442
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quadratus Femoris, Obturator Externus</th>
<th>Page 443</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actions</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Posterior Femoral Region

| Dissection                           | 444     |
| Biceps, Semitendinosus               | 444     |
| Semimembranosus: Actions             | 445     |
| Surgical Anatomy of Hamstring Tendons | 445     |

### Muscles and Fascia of the Leg

| Dissections of Front of Leg          | 445     |
| Fascia of the Leg                    | 445     |
| Muscles of the Leg                   | 446     |

### Anterior Tibio-fibular Region

| Tibialis Anticus                    | 446     |
| Extensor Proprius Pollicis          | 447     |
| Extensor Longus Digitorum           | 447     |
| Peroneus Tertius: Actions           | 447     |

### Posterior Tibio-fibular Region, Superficial Layer

| Dissection                           | 448     |
| Gastrocnemius                        | 448     |
| Sartorius, Tendo Achillis, Plantaris | 449     |
| Actions                              | 449     |

### Posterior Tibio-fibular Region, Deep Layer

| Deep Fascia of Leg                   | 450     |
| Popliteus                            | 450     |
| Flexor Longus Pollicis               | 450     |
| Flexor Longus Digitorum, Tibialis Posticus | 451     |
| Actions                              | 452     |

### Fibular Region

| Peroneus Longus                      | Page 452 |
| Peroneus Brevis                      | 453     |
| Actions                              | 453     |
| Surgical Anatomy of Tendons around the Ankle | 453     |

### Muscles and Fascia of the Foot

| Anterior Annular Ligament            | 453     |
| Internal Annular Ligament            | 454     |
| External Annular Ligament            | 454     |
| Plantar Fascia                       | 454     |

### Muscles of the Foot, Dorsal Region

| Extensor Brevis Digitorum            | 455     |

### Plantar Region

| Subdivision into Groups              | 455     |
| Subdivision into Layers              | 456     |
| First Layer                          | 456     |
| Second Layer                         | 457     |
| Third Layer                          | 458     |
| Interosseal                          | 459     |

### Surgical Anatomy of the Muscles of the Lower Extremity

| Fracture of the Neck of the Femur   | 460     |
| the Femur below Trochanter Minor    | 460     |
| the Femur above the Condyles        | 460     |
| the Patella                         | 461     |
| the Tibia                           | 461     |
| the Fibula, with Displacement of the Tibia | 461     |

### The Arteries

#### General Anatomy

| Subdivision into Pulmonary and Systemic | 463     |
| Distribution of—Where Found            | 463     |
| Mode of Division—Anastomoses           | 463     |

#### Arch of the Aorta

| Dissection                           | 464     |
| Ascending Part of Arch                | 465     |
| Transverse part of Arch               | 466     |
| Descending Part of Arch               | 467     |
| Peculiarities, Surgical Anatomy       | 468     |
| Branches                              | 468     |
| Peculiarities of Branches             | 469     |
| Coronary Arteries                     | 469     |

#### Arteria Innominata

| Relations                            | 470     |
| Peculiarities                        | 470     |
| Surgical Anatomy                     | 470     |

#### Common Carotid Arteries

| Course and Relations                 | 471     |
| Peculiarities                        | 473     |
| Surgical Anatomy                     | 474     |

#### External Carotid Artery

| Course and Relations                 | 475     |
| Surgical Anatomy                     | 475     |

#### Superior Thyroid Artery

| Course and Relations                 | 476     |
| Branches                             | 476     |
| Surgical Anatomy                     | 476     |

#### Lingual Artery

| Course and Relations                 | 477     |
| Branches                             | 477     |
| Surgical Anatomy                     | 477     |

#### Facial Artery

| Course and Relations                 | 478     |
| Branches                             | 479     |
| Peculiarities                        | 480     |
| Surgical Anatomy                     | 480     |

#### Occipital Artery

| Course and Relations                 | 480     |
| Branches                             | 481     |
| Posterior Auricular Artery           | 481     |
| Ascending Pharyngeal Artery          | 481     |
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temporal Artery</th>
<th>Brachial Artery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course and Relations</td>
<td>Relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Branches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Internal Maxillary Artery.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course, Relations</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches from First Portion</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Portion</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Portion</td>
<td>Branches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Surgical Anatomy of the Triangles of the Neck.**

**Anterior Triangular Space.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inferior Carotid Triangle</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superior Carotid Triangle</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submaxillary Triangle</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Posterior Triangular Space.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occipital Triangle</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subclavian Triangle</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Internal Carotid Artery.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cervical Portion</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Petrosum Portion</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavernous Portion</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebral Portion</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities, Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Celiac Axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ophthalmic Artery</td>
<td>Gastric Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebral Branches of Internal Carotid</td>
<td>Hepatic Artery, Branches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Arteries of the Upper Extremity.**

**Subclavian Arteries.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Part of Right Subclavian Artery</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Part of Left Subclavian Artery</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Part of Subclavian Artery</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Part of Subclavian Artery</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities</td>
<td>Branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Celiac Axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Gastric Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertebral Artery and its Branches</td>
<td>Hepatic Artery, Branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basilar Artery and its Branches</td>
<td>Splenic Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebellar Branches of Vertebral</td>
<td>Superior Mesenteric Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circle of Willis</td>
<td>Inferior Mesenteric Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid Axis</td>
<td>Suprarenal Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior Thyroid</td>
<td>Renal Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suprascapular Artery</td>
<td>Spermatic Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transversalis Colli</td>
<td>Phrenic Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Mammary</td>
<td>Lumbar Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior Intercostal</td>
<td>Middle Sacral Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep Cerebral Artery</td>
<td>Coccygeal Gland</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Surgical Anatomy of the Axilla.**

**Axillary Artery.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Portion</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Second Portion</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Portion</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities, Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Branches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Radial Artery.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relations</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deep Palmar Arch</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities, Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ulnar Artery.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relations</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superficial Palmar Arch</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities of Ulnar Artery</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Branches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Descending Aorta.**

**Thoracic Aorta.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course and Relations</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abdominal Aorta.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course and Relations</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Common Iliac Arteries.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course and Relations</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities, Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Internal Iliac Artery.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course and Relations</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities, Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**External Iliac Artery.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course and Relations</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Contents.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temporal Artery</th>
<th>Brachial Artery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course and Relations</td>
<td>Relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Internal Maxillary Artery.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course, Relations</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches from First Portion</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Portion</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Portion</td>
<td>Branches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Surgical Anatomy of the Triangles of the Neck.**

**Anterior Triangular Space.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inferior Carotid Triangle</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superior Carotid Triangle</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submaxillary Triangle</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Posterior Triangular Space.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occipital Triangle</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subclavian Triangle</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Internal Carotid Artery.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cervical Portion</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Petrosum Portion</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavernous Portion</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebral Portion</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities, Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Celiac Axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ophthalmic Artery</td>
<td>Gastric Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebral Branches of Internal Carotid</td>
<td>Hepatic Artery, Branches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Arteries of the Upper Extremity.**

**Subclavian Arteries.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Part of Right Subclavian Artery</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Part of Left Subclavian Artery</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Part of Subclavian Artery</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Part of Subclavian Artery</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities</td>
<td>Branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Celiac Axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Gastric Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertebral Artery and its Branches</td>
<td>Hepatic Artery, Branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basilar Artery and its Branches</td>
<td>Splenic Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebellar Branches of Vertebral</td>
<td>Superior Mesenteric Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circle of Willis</td>
<td>Inferior Mesenteric Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid Axis</td>
<td>Suprarenal Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior Thyroid</td>
<td>Renal Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suprascapular Artery</td>
<td>Spermatic Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transversalis Colli</td>
<td>Phrenic Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Mammary</td>
<td>Lumbar Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior Intercostal</td>
<td>Middle Sacral Arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep Cerebral Artery</td>
<td>Coccygeal Gland</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Surgical Anatomy of the Axilla.**

**Axillary Artery.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Portion</th>
<th>Relations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Second Portion</td>
<td>Bond of the Elbow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Portion</td>
<td>Peculiarities of Brachial Artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities, Surgical Anatomy</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches</td>
<td>Branches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CONTENTS.

### The Lymphatics.

**General Anatomy.**

| Subdivision into Deep and Superficial | 588 |
| Lymphatic or Conglobate Glands | 588 |
| Thoracic Duct | 589 |
| Right Lymphatic Duct | 590 |

**Lymphatics of Head, Face, and Neck.**

| Superficial Lymphatic Glands of Head | 590 |
| Lymphatics of the Head of the Face | 590 |
| Deep Lymphatics of the Face | 591 |
| Lymphatics of the Cranium | 591 |
| Superficial Cervical Glands | 592 |
| Deep Cervical Glands | 592 |
| Superficial and Deep Cervical Lymphatics | 592 |

**Lymphatics of the Upper Extremity.**

| Superficial Lymphatic Glands | 593 |
| Deep Lymphatic Glands | 593 |
| Axillary Glands | 594 |
| Superficial Lymphatics of Upper Extremity | 594 |
| Deep Lymphatics of Upper Extremity | 594 |

**Lymphatics of the Lower Extremity.**

| Superficial Inguinal Glands | 594 |
| Deep Lymphatic Glands | 595 |
| Anterior Tibial Gland | 595 |
| Deep Popliteal Glands | 595 |
| Deep Inguinal Glands | 595 |
| Gluteal and Ischiatic Glands | 595 |
| Superficial Lymphatics of Lower Extremity | 595 |
| Internal Group | 595 |
| External Group | 595 |
| Deep Lymphatics of Lower Extremity | 596 |

**Lymphatics of Pelvis and Abdomen.**

| Deep Lymphatic Glands of Pelvis | 596 |
| External Iliac Glands | 596 |
| Internal Iliac Glands | 596 |

### Nervous System.

**The Brain and its Membranes.**

| Membranes of the Brain | 606 |
| Dura Mater | 607 |
| Structure | 607 |
| Arteries, Veins, Nerves | 607 |
| Glandulae Pacchioni | 607 |
| Processes of the Dura Mater: | 608 |
| Falx Cerebri | 608 |
| Tentorium Cerebelli | 608 |
| Falx Cerebelli | 608 |

**Arachnoid Membrane.**

| Subarachnoid Space | 609 |
| Cerebro-spinal Fluid | 609 |
| Pia Mater | 609 |
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Artery/Space</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Epigastric Artery</td>
<td>545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circumflex Iliac Artery</td>
<td>546</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Femoral Artery.**

| Course and Relations                 | 547   |
| Scarpà's Triangle                    | 547   |
| Surgical Anatomy                     | 548   |
| Peculiarities of the Femoral Artery  | 548   |
| Branches                              | 550   |
| Profunda Artery and its Branches     | 550   |
| Popliteal Space                      | 552   |

**Popliteal Artery.**

| Course and Relations                 | 553   |
| Peculiarities, Surgical Anatomy      | 553   |
| Branches                              | 554   |

**Anterior Tibial Artery.**

| Course and Relations                 | 555   |
| Peculiarities, Surgical Anatomy      | 555   |
| Branches                              | 556   |

**Posterior Tibial Artery.**

| Course and Relations                 | 559   |
| Peculiarities                        | 559   |
| Surgical Anatomy                     | 560   |
| Branches                              | 560   |

**Peroneal Artery.**

| Course and Relations                 | 561   |
| Peculiarities                        | 561   |
| Plantar Arteries                     | 561   |
| Pulmonary Artery                     | 563   |

## The Veins.

### General Anatomy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vein Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subdivision into Pulmonary, Systemic, and Portal</td>
<td>564</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anastomoses of Veins</td>
<td>564</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial Veins, Deep Veins, or Vena Comites</td>
<td>564</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinuses</td>
<td>565</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Veins of the Head and Neck.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vein Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Facial Vein</td>
<td>565</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal Vein</td>
<td>566</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Maxillary Vein</td>
<td>567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporo-maxillary Vein</td>
<td>567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior Auricular Vein, Occipital Vein</td>
<td>567</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Veins of the Neck.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vein Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>External Jugular Vein</td>
<td>567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior External Jugular Vein</td>
<td>568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior Jugular Vein</td>
<td>568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Jugular Vein</td>
<td>568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingual and Pharyngeal Vein</td>
<td>568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid Veins</td>
<td>568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertebral Veins</td>
<td>569</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veins of the Diploe</td>
<td>569</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Cerebral Veins.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vein Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superficial Cerebral Veins</td>
<td>570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep Cerebral Veins</td>
<td>570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebellar Veins</td>
<td>570</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sinuses of the Dura Mater.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sinus Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superior Longitudinal Sinus</td>
<td>571</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior Longitudinal Sinus</td>
<td>571</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straight, Lateral, and Occipital Sinuses</td>
<td>572</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavernous Sinuses</td>
<td>572</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circular Sinuses</td>
<td>572</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior Petrosal and Transverse Sinuses</td>
<td>573</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior Petrosal Sinus</td>
<td>573</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Veins of the Upper Extremity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vein Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superficial Veins</td>
<td>578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep Veins</td>
<td>578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axillary Vein</td>
<td>578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclavian Vein</td>
<td>576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innominate Veins</td>
<td>576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities of Internal Mammary Veins</td>
<td>576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior Thyroid Veins</td>
<td>577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior Intercostal Veins</td>
<td>577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior Vena Cava</td>
<td>577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azygos Veins</td>
<td>578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bronchial Veins</td>
<td>578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal Veins</td>
<td>578</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Veins of the Lower Extremity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vein Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Internal Saphenous Vein</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Saphenous Vein</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Popliteal Vein</td>
<td>582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Femoral Vein</td>
<td>582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Iliac Vein</td>
<td>582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Iliac Vein</td>
<td>582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Iliac Veins</td>
<td>583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior Vena Cava</td>
<td>583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities</td>
<td>583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumbar and Spermatic Veins</td>
<td>584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovarian, Renal, Suprarenal Veins</td>
<td>584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrenic and Hepatic Veins</td>
<td>584</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Portal System of Veins.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vein Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inferior and Superior Mesenteric Veins</td>
<td>585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splenic and Gastric Veins</td>
<td>585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portal Vein</td>
<td>585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardio Veins</td>
<td>586</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coronary Sinus</td>
<td>587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary Veins</td>
<td>587</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

The Lymphatics.

General Anatomy
Subdivision into Deep and Superficial . . . . 588
Lymphatic or Conglobate Glands . . . . 588
Thoracic Duct . . . . 589
Right Lymphatic Duct . . . . 590

Lymphatics of Head, Face, and Neck.
Superficial Lymphatic Glands of Head . . . . 590
Lymphatics of the Head . . . . 590
of the Face . . . . 591
of the Cranium . . . . 591
Superficial Cervical Glands . . . . 592
Deep Cervical Glands . . . . 592
Superficial and Deep Cervical Lymphatics . . . . 592

Lymphatics of the Upper Extremity.
Superficial Lymphatic Glands . . . . 593
Deep Lymphatic Glands . . . . 594
Axillary Glands . . . . 594
Superficial Lymphatics of Upper Extremity . . . . 594
Deep Lymphatics of Upper Extremity . . . . 594

Lymphatics of the Lower Extremity.
Superficial Inguinal Glands . . . . 595
Deep Lymphatic Glands . . . . 595
Anterior Tibial Gland . . . . 595
Deep Popliteal Glands . . . . 595
Deep Inguinal Glands . . . . 595
Gluteal and Ischiatic Glands . . . . 595
Superficial Lymphatics of Lower Extremity:
Internal Group . . . . 595
External Group . . . . 595
Deep Lymphatics of Lower Extremity . . . . 596

Lymphatics of Pelvis and Abdomen.
Deep Lymphatic Glands of Pelvis . . . . 596
External Iliac Glands . . . . 596
Internal Iliac Glands . . . . 596

Deep Sacral Glands . . . . 596
Lumbar Glands . . . . 596
Superficial Lymphatics of Wall of Abdomen:
of Gluteal Region . . . . 597
of Sciatic and Perineum . . . . 597
of Penis . . . . 597
of Labia, Nymphæ, and Clitoris . . . . 598
Deep Lymphatics of Pelvis and Abdomen . . . . 598
Lymphatics of Bladder . . . . 598
of Rectum . . . . 598
of Uterus . . . . 598
of Testicle . . . . 598
of Kidney . . . . 598
of Liver . . . . 598
Lymphatic Glands of Stomach . . . . 599
Lymphatics of Stomach . . . . 599
Lymphatic Glands of Spleen . . . . 599
Lymphatics of Spleen . . . . 599

Lymphatic System of the Intestines.
Lymphatic Glands of Small Intestines
(Mesentric Glands) . . . . 599
Lymphatic Glands of Large Intestine . . . . 599
Lymphatics of Small Intestines (Lacteals) . . . . 599
of Large Intestine . . . . 599

Lymphatics of Thorax.
Deep Lymphatic Glands of Thorax . . . . 600
Intercostal Glands . . . . 600
Internal Mammary Glands . . . . 600
Anterior Mediastinal Glands . . . . 600
Posterior Mediastinal Glands . . . . 600
Superficial Lymphatics on front of Thorax . . . . 600
Deep Lymphatics of Thorax:
Intercostal Lymphatics . . . . 600
Internal Mammary Lymphatics . . . . 600
Lymphatics of Diaphragm . . . . 600
Bronchial Glands . . . . 600
Lymphatics of Lung . . . . 600
Cardiac Lymphatics . . . . 600
Thymic Lymphatics . . . . 601
Thyroid Lymphatics . . . . 601
Lymphatics of Esophagus . . . . 601

Nervous System.

General Anatomy.
Subdivision into Cerebro-spinal Axis, Ganglia, and Nerves . . . . 602

The Spinal Cord and its Membranes.
Dissection . . . . 602
Membranes of the Cord:
Dura Mater . . . . 602
Arachnoid . . . . 603
Pia Mater . . . . 603
Ligamentum Denticulatum . . . . 604
Spinal Cord:
Fissures of Cord . . . . 605
Columns of Cord . . . . 605
Structure of the Cord . . . . 605

The Brain and its Membranes.
Membranes of the Brain . . . . 606

Dura Mater.
Structure . . . . 607
Arteries, Veins, Nerves . . . . 607
Glandulae Pacchioni . . . . 607
Processes of the Dura Mater:
Falx Cerebri . . . . 608
Tentorium Cerebelli . . . . 608
Falx Cerebelli . . . . 608

Arachnoid Membrane.
Subarachnoid Space . . . . 609
Cerebro-spinal Fluid . . . . 609
Pia Mater . . . . 609

Structure . . . . 609
CONTENTS.

THE BRAIN.

Subdivision into Cerebrum, Cerebellum, Pons Varolii, Medulla Oblongata 609
Weight of Brain 610

MEDULLA OBLONGATA.

Anterior Pyramids 610
Lateral Tract, and Olivary Body 611
Restiform Bodies 611
Posterior Pyramids 611
Posterior Surface of Medulla Oblongata 612
Structure of Medulla Oblongata of Anterior Pyramid 612
of Lateral Tract 612
of Olivary Body 612
of Restiform Body 612
Septum of Medulla Oblongata 613
Gray Matter of Medulla Oblongata 613

pons varolii.

Structure 614
Transverse Fibres 614
Longitudinal Fibres 614
Septum 614

CEREBRUM.

Upper Surface of Cerebrum 615
Convolutions and Sulci 615
Base of the Brain 619
General Arrangement of the Parts composing the Cerebrum 622
Interior of the Cerebrum 622
Corpus Callosum 623
Lateral Ventricle 624
Corpus Striatum 625
Tamia Semicircularis 625
Choroid Plexus 625
Corpus Fimbriatum 626
Hippocampus 627
Transverse Fissure 627
Septum Lucidum 627
Fifth Ventricle 627
Fornix 627
Foramen of Monro 628
Vulum Interpositum 628
Thalamus Opticus 629
Third Ventricle 629
Commissure of Third Ventricle 630
Gray Matter of Third Ventricle 630
Pineal Gland 630
Corpora Quadrigemina 631
Valve of Viesseaux 631
Corpora Geniculata 631
Structure of Cerebrum 631

CEREBELLUM.

Its Position, Size, Weight, etc. 632
Cerebellum, Upper Surface 632
Under Surface 633
Lobes of the Cerebellum 634
Structure of the Cerebellum 634
Its Laminae 634
Corpus Dentatum 635
Peduncles of Cerebellum 635
Fourth Ventricle 635
Lining Membrane, Choroid Plexus 636
Gray Matter 636

CRANIAL NERVES.

Subdivision into Groups 637
Olfactory Nerve 637
Optic Nerve 638
Tracts 638
Commissure 639
Auditory Nerve 639
Third Nerve 640
Fourth Nerve 641
Sixth Nerve 641
Relations of the Orbital Nerves: in the Cavernous Sinus 642
in the Sphenoidal Fissure 642
in the Orbit 642
Facial Nerve 643
Branches of Facial Nerve 644
Ninth or Hypoglossal Nerve 646
Fifth Nerve 647
Casserian Ganglion 648
Ophthalmic Nerve 648
Lachrymal, Frontal, and Nasal Branches 649
Ophthalmic Ganglion 650
Superior Maxillary Nerve 650
Spheno-palatine Ganglion 652
Inferior Maxillary Nerve 654
Auriculo-temporal Nerve 655
Gustatory and Inferior Dental Branches 656
Otic Ganglion 656
Submaxillary Ganglion 657
Eighth Pair 658
Glosso-pharyngeal 658
Spinal Accessory 660
Euneomagastrie (Vagus) 660
Origin of Cranial Nerves 663

SPINAL NERVES.

Roots of the Spinal Nerves 665
Origin of Anterior Roots of Posterior Roots 665
Ganglia of the Spinal Nerves 666
Anterior Branches of the Spinal Nerves 666
Posterior Branches of the Spinal Nerves 666

CERVICAL NERVES.

Roots of the Cervical Nerves 666
Anterior Branches of the Cervical Nerves 669

CERVICAL PLEXUS.

Superficial Branches of the Cervical Plexus 669
Deep Branches of the Cervical Plexus 669
Posterior Branches of the Cervical Nerves 670

BRACHIAL PLEXUS.

Branches above the Clavicle 672
Posterior Thoracic, Suprascapular 672
Branches below the Clavicle 672
Anterior Thoracic 673
Subscapular Nerves 673
Circumflex Nerves 673
Musculo-cutaneous Nerves 674
Internal Cutaneous Nerve 674
Lesser Internal Cutaneous Nerve 675
## CONTENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organ Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Median Nerve</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ulnar Nerve</td>
<td>679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musculo-spiral Nerve</td>
<td>679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial Nerve</td>
<td>679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior Interosseous Nerve</td>
<td>679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DORSAL NERVES.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roots of the Dorsal Nerves</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior Branches of the Dorsal Nerves</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercostal Nerves</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Intercostal Nerves</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercosto-humeral Nerves</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower Intercostal Nerves</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiar Dorsal Nerves: First Dorsal Nerve</td>
<td>682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Dorsal Nerve</td>
<td>682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LUMBAR NERVES.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Root of Lumbar Nerves</td>
<td>682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior Branches of Lumbar Nerves</td>
<td>682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior Branches of Lumbar Nerves</td>
<td>682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LUMBAR PLEXUS.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches of Lumbar Plexus</td>
<td>684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ilio-hypogastric Nerve</td>
<td>684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ilio-inguinal, and Genito-crural Nerves</td>
<td>684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Cutaneous, and Obturator Nerves</td>
<td>686</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessory Obturator Nerve</td>
<td>686</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior Crural Nerve</td>
<td>687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches of Anterior Crural</td>
<td>687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle Cutaneous</td>
<td>687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Cutaneous</td>
<td>687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long Saphenous</td>
<td>688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscular and Articular Branches</td>
<td>688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SACRAL AND COCCYGEAL NERVES.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roots of, Origin of</td>
<td>688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior Sacral Nerves</td>
<td>689</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior Sacral Nerves</td>
<td>689</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coccygeal Nerve</td>
<td>689</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SACRAL PLEXUS.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior Gluteal Nerve</td>
<td>690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pudic Nerve</td>
<td>690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sciatic Nerve</td>
<td>692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Sciatic Nerve</td>
<td>693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Popliteal Nerve</td>
<td>693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Saphenous Nerve</td>
<td>693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SYMPATHETIC NERVE.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subdivision of, into Parts</td>
<td>696</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branches of the Ganglia, General Description of</td>
<td>698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CERVICAL PORTION OF THE SYMPATHETIC.</strong></td>
<td>698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior Cervical Ganglion</td>
<td>698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotid and Cavernous Plexuses</td>
<td>698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle Cervical Ganglion</td>
<td>699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior Cervical Ganglion</td>
<td>699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CARDIAC NERVES.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior, Middle, and Inferior Cardiac Nerves</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep Cardiac Plexus</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial Cardiac Plexus</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior and Posterior Coronary Plexus</td>
<td>701</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>THORACIC PART OF THE SYMPATHETIC.</strong></td>
<td>701</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Splanchnic Nerve</td>
<td>701</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser Splanchnic Nerve</td>
<td>702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smallest Splanchnic Nerve</td>
<td>702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epigastric or Solar Plexus</td>
<td>702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semilunar Ganglia</td>
<td>702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrenic, Suprarenal, and Renal Plexuses</td>
<td>703</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spermatic, Celiac, and Gastric Plexuses</td>
<td>703</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic, Splenic, and Superior Mesenteric Plexuses</td>
<td>703</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic, and Inferior Mesenteric Plexuses</td>
<td>703</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LUMBAR PORTION OF SYMPATHETIC.</strong></td>
<td>704</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic Portion of Sympathetic</td>
<td>704</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypogastric Plexus</td>
<td>704</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior Hypogastric or Pelvic Plexus</td>
<td>704</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior Hemorrhoidal Plexus</td>
<td>706</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vesical Plexus</td>
<td>706</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostatic Plexus</td>
<td>706</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal Plexus</td>
<td>706</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine Nerves</td>
<td>706</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Organs of Sense.

### TONGUE.

- Papillae of
- Follicles, and Mucous Glands
- Fibrous Septum of
- Arteries and Nerves of

### NOSE.

- Cartilages of, Muscles
- Skin, Mucous Membrane
- Arteries, Veins, and Nerves

### Nasal Fossae.

- Mucous Membrane of
- Peculiarities of, in Superior, Middle, and Inferior Meatuses
- Arteries, Veins, and Nerves of Nasal Fossae

### EYE.

- Situation, Form of
- Tunics of, Sclerotic
CONTENTS.

Ear.

Pinna, or Auricle 729
Structure of Auricle 729
Ligaments of the Pinna 730
Muscles of the Pinna 730
Arteries, Veins, and Nerves of the Pinna 731
Auditory Canal 731

Middle Ear, or Tympanum.

Cavity of Tympanum 732
Eustachian Tube 734
Membrana Tympani 735
Structure of
Osticles of the Tympanum 735
Ligaments of the Osicula 736
Muscles of the Tympanum 736
Mucous Membrane of Tympanum 737
Arteries of Tympanum 737
Veins and Nerves of Tympanum 737

Internal Ear, or Labyrinth.

Vestibule 738
Semicircular Canals:
Superior Semicircular Canal 739
Posterior Semicircular Canal 739
External Semicircular Canal 739
Cochlea:
Central Axis of, or Modiolus 739
Spiral Canal of 740
Scala Tympani, Scala Vestibuli, and Scala Media 741
The Organ of Corti 741
Perilymph 743
Membranous Labyrinth 743
Utricle and Saccula 743
Membranous Semicircular Canals 743
Endolymph: Otoliths 744
Vessels of the Labyrinth 744
Auditory Nerve, Vestibular Nerve 744
Cochlear Nerve 744

APPENDAGES OF THE EYE.

Eyebrows 725
Eyelids 725
Structure of the Eyelids 725
Tarsal Cartilages 726
Meibomian Glands 726
Eyelashes 727
Conjunctiva 727
Caruncula Lacrymals 727

LACHRYMAL APPARATUS.

Lachrymal Gland 728
Canals 728
Sac 729
Nasal Duct 729

VISCERA.

Organs of Digestion and their Appendages.

Subdivisions of the Alimentary Canal 745
The Mouth 745
The Lips 745
The Cheeks 746
The Gums 746

Teeth.

General Characters of 747
Permanent Teeth 747
Inisors 747
Canine, Bicuspid, Molars 748
Temporary or Milk Teeth 749
Structure of the Teeth 749
Ivory or Dentine, Chemical Composition 750
Enamel 751
Cortical Substance 751
Development of the Teeth of the Permanent Teeth 751
Eruption of the Teeth 755

Palate.

Hard Palate 756
Soft Palate 756
Uvula, Pillars of the Soft Palate 756
Mucous Membrane, Aponeurosis, and Muscles of Soft Palate 756

Tonsils.

Arteries, Veins, and Nerves of Tonsils 757

Salivary Glands.

Parotid Gland.

Stelo's Duct 758
Vessels and Nerves of Parotid Gland 758
### CONTENTS

#### Submaxillary Gland
- Wharton's Duct .................................................. 758
- Vessels and Nerves of Submaxillary Gland ............... 759

#### Sublingual Gland
- Vessels and Nerves of ........................................... 759
- Structure of Salivary Glands ................................. 759

#### Pharynx and Oesophagus
- Structure of Pharynx ............................................ 759
- Relations of Oesophagus ........................................ 760
- Surgical Anatomy and Structure of Oesophagus ......... 761

#### Abdomen
- Boundaries ........................................................ 762
- Apertures of ..................................................... 762
- Regions ............................................................ 762

#### Peritoneum
- Reflections traced ............................................... 763
- Foramen of Winslow ............................................. 765
- Lesser Omentum .................................................. 766
- Great Omentum ................................................... 766
- Gastro-splenic Omentum ....................................... 766
- Mesentery ........................................................ 766
- Mesocolon ......................................................... 766
- Mesorectum, Appendices Epiploicae ....................... 767

#### Stomach
- Situation .......................................................... 767
- Splenic end, Pyloric end ....................................... 767
- Cardiac and Pyloric Orifices ................................. 767
- Greater and Lesser Curvatures ............................... 767
- Surfaces .......................................................... 767
- Ligaments of ..................................................... 767
- Alterations in Position ....................................... 768
- Pylorus ........................................................... 768
- Structure of Stomach ........................................... 769
- Serous and Muscular Coats .................................. 769
- Mucous Membrane ................................................. 769
- Gastric Follicles ................................................ 770
- Vessels and Nerves of Stomach .............................. 770

#### Small Intestines
- Duodenum .......................................................... 771
  - Ascending portion .......................................... 771
  - Descending portion ......................................... 771
  - Transverse portion ......................................... 771
- Vessels and Nerves of Duodenum ......................... 771
- Jejunum .......................................................... 772
- Ileum ............................................................. 772
- Structure of Small Intestines .............................. 773
- Serous, Muscular, and Cellular Coats ..................... 773
- Mucous Membrane ................................................. 773
- Epithelium and Valvular Coniventes ...................... 773
- Villi— their Structure ....................................... 773
- Simple Follicles, Duodenal Glands ....................... 775
- Solitary Glands ................................................ 775
- Aggregate, or Peyer's, Glands ............................. 776

#### Large Intestine
- Cecum ............................................................. 777
- Appendix Cæci Vermiformis ................................ 778
- Ileo-cesal Valve ................................................ 778

#### Colon
- Ascending .......................................................... 779
- Transverse ........................................................ 779
- Descending ........................................................ 779
- Sigmoid Flexure ................................................ 779
- Rectum ............................................................ 780
  - Upper portion ................................................. 780
  - Middle portion ............................................... 781
  - Lower portion ................................................ 781
- Structure of Large Intestine .............................. 781
  - Serous and Muscular Coats ............................... 781
  - Cellular and Mucous Coats ............................... 782
  - Epithelium, Simple Follicles ............................ 782
  - Solitary Glands ............................................... 782

#### Liver
- Size, Weight, Position of ................................... 783
  - Its Surfaces and Borders .................................. 783
  - Changes of Position ....................................... 783

#### Ligaments
- Longitudinal, Lateral ........................................ 783
- Coronary ........................................................ 784
- Round Ligament ................................................. 784

#### Fissures
- Longitudinal ..................................................... 784
- Fissure of Ductus Venous .................................... 784
- Portal Fissure ................................................... 785
- Fissures for Gall Bladder and Vena Cava ............... 785

#### Lobes
- Right ............................................................. 785
- Left ............................................................... 785
- Quadratus, Spigelli, Caudatus .............................. 786
- Serous Coat, Fibrous Coat ................................... 786
- Structure of Liver ............................................. 786
- Hepatic Cells .................................................... 787
- Biliary Ducts .................................................... 788
- Portal Vein ....................................................... 789
- Hepatic Artery, Hepatic Veins .............................. 789

#### Gall Bladder
- Structure .......................................................... 790
- Biliary Ducts .................................................... 790
- Hepatic Duct ...................................................... 790
- Cystic Duct ....................................................... 790
- Common Cholodoch Duct ..................................... 791
- Structure of Biliary Ducts .................................. 791

#### Pancreas
- Dissection ........................................................ 791
- Relations ........................................................ 792
- Duct .............................................................. 793
- Structure, Vessels, and Nerves ............................ 793

#### Spleen
- Relations ........................................................ 793
- Size and Weight ................................................ 794
- Structure of Serous and Fibrous Coats ................. 794
- Proper Substance ............................................... 795
- Malpighian Corpuscles ....................................... 796
- Splenic Artery, distribution ............................... 797
### Organ of Voice and Respiration.

#### The Larynx.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cartilages of the Larynx</th>
<th>Trachea.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid Cartilage</td>
<td>Relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cricoid</td>
<td>Bronchi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arytenoid Cartilages</td>
<td>Structure of Trachea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cartilages of Santorini, and of Wrisberg</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy of Laryngo-tracheal Region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epiglottis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligaments of the Larynx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligaments connecting the Thyroid Cartilage with the Os Hyoidei</td>
<td>The Pleura.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligaments connecting the Thyroid Cartilage with the Cricoid</td>
<td>Mediastinum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligaments connecting the Arytenoid Cartilages to the Cricoid</td>
<td>Anterior Mediastinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligaments of the Epiglottis</td>
<td>Middle Mediastinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior Aperture of the Larynx</td>
<td>Posterior Mediastinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavity of the Larynx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glottis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>False Vocal Cords</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>True Vocal Cords</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventricle of Larynx, Sacculus Laryngis</td>
<td>The Lungs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscles of Larynx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crico-thyroid</td>
<td>Surfaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crico-arytenoides posticus</td>
<td>Borders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lateralis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyro-arytenoides</td>
<td>Lobes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arytenoides</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscles of the Epiglottis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyro-epiglottides</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aryteno-epiglottides, superior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actions of Muscles of Larynx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucous Membrane of Larynx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glands, Vessels, and Nerves of Larynx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Left Auricle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sinus and Appendix</th>
<th>Openings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Openings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitral and Semilunar Valves</td>
<td>Musculi Pectinati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure of Heart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrous Rings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscular Structure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vessels and Nerves of Heart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peculiarities in Vascular System of Fetus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foramen Oval, Eustachian Valve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ductus Arteriosus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Umbilical or Hypogastric Arteries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal Circulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal Structures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Left Ventricle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thoraco-aortic Opening</th>
<th>Thoracolumbar Opening</th>
<th>Thoracolumbar Outflow</th>
<th>Cardiac Conduction</th>
<th>Vagal Inhibitory Centers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thoraco-aortic Opening</td>
<td>Thoracolumbar Opening</td>
<td>Thoracolumbar Outflow</td>
<td>Cardiac Conduction</td>
<td>Vagal Inhibitory Centers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoraco-aortic Opening</td>
<td>Thoracolumbar Opening</td>
<td>Thoracolumbar Outflow</td>
<td>Cardiac Conduction</td>
<td>Vagal Inhibitory Centers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoraco-aortic Opening</td>
<td>Thoracolumbar Opening</td>
<td>Thoracolumbar Outflow</td>
<td>Cardiac Conduction</td>
<td>Vagal Inhibitory Centers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Right Auricle.

| Right Auricle | | Right Ventricle | |
|---------------|----|----------------|
| Openerings    |    | Vessels and Nerves of Heart |
| Valves        |    | Peculiarities in Vascular System of Fetus |
| Relics of Fetal Structures |    | Foramen Oval, Eustachian Valve |
| Musculi Pectinati |    | Ductus Arteriosus |
| Epiglottis     |    | Umbilical or Hypogastric Arteries |
| Ligaments of the Larynx |    | Fetal Circulation |
| Ligaments connecting the Thyroid Cartilage with the Os Hyoidei |    | Fetal Structures |
| Ligaments connecting the Thyroid Cartilage with the Cricoid |    | |
| Ligaments connecting the Arytenoid Cartilages to the Cricoid |    | |
| Ligaments of the Epiglottis |    | |
| Superior Aperture of the Larynx |    | |
| Cavity of the Larynx |    | |
| Glottis |    | |
| False Vocal Cords |    | |
| True Vocal Cords |    | |
| Ventricle of Larynx, Sacculus Laryngis |    | |
| Muscles of Larynx |    | |
| Crico-thyroid |    | |
| Crico-arytenoides posticus |    | |
| lateralis |    | |
| Thyro-arytenoides |    | |
| Arytenoides |    | |
| Muscles of the Epiglottis |    | |
| Thyro-epiglottides |    | |
| Aryteno-epiglottides, superior |    | |
| inferior |    | |
| Actions of Muscles of Larynx |    | |
| Mucous Membrane of Larynx |    | |
| Glands, Vessels, and Nerves of Larynx |    | |

#### Right Ventricle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Right Ventricle</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Openerings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricuspid Valve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CONTENTS

### Thyroid Gland

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>834</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vessels and Nerves</td>
<td>835</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical Composition</td>
<td>836</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Thymus Gland

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>836</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vessels and Nerves</td>
<td>837</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical Composition</td>
<td>837</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### The Urinary Organs

#### Kidneys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relations</td>
<td>838</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimensions, Weight</td>
<td>839</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Structure</td>
<td>840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cortical Substance</td>
<td>841</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medullary Substance</td>
<td>842</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minute Structure</td>
<td>843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malpighian Bodies</td>
<td>844</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malpighian Tubules</td>
<td>845</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capsule</td>
<td>846</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubuli Uriniferi, Course</td>
<td>847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal Bloodvessels</td>
<td>848</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal Veins</td>
<td>849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vene Recta</td>
<td>850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphatics and Nerves</td>
<td>851</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Suprarenal Capsules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relations</td>
<td>847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>848</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vessels and Nerves</td>
<td>849</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### The Pelvis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boundaries</td>
<td>850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contents</td>
<td>851</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Bladder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shape, Position, Relations</td>
<td>852</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urachus</td>
<td>853</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subdivisions</td>
<td>854</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligaments</td>
<td>855</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>856</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior of Bladder</td>
<td>857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vessels and Nerves</td>
<td>858</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Male Urethra

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Divisions</td>
<td>859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>860</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Male Generative Organs

#### Prostate Gland

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>861</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vessels and Nerves</td>
<td>862</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Prostatic Secretion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cowper's Glands</td>
<td>863</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Penis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Root</td>
<td>864</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glans Penis</td>
<td>865</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body</td>
<td>866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpora Cavernosa</td>
<td>867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpus Spongiosum</td>
<td>868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Bulb</td>
<td>869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure of Corpus Spongiosum</td>
<td>870</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erectile Tissue</td>
<td>871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arteries of the Penis</td>
<td>872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphatics of the Penis</td>
<td>873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerves of the Penis</td>
<td>874</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### The Testes and their Coverings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scrotum</td>
<td>875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Coverings of the Testis</td>
<td>876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vessels and Nerves of the Coverings of the Testis</td>
<td>877</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Spermatic Cord

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Its Composition</td>
<td>878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relations of, in Inguinal Canal</td>
<td>879</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Arteries of the Cord

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Veins of the Cord</td>
<td>880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphatics and Nerves of the Cord</td>
<td>881</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Testes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Form and Situation</td>
<td>882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size and Weight</td>
<td>883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coverings</td>
<td>884</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunica Vaginalis</td>
<td>885</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunica Albuginea</td>
<td>886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mediastinum Testis</td>
<td>887</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunica Vasculosa</td>
<td>888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure of the Testis</td>
<td>889</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lobules of the Testis</td>
<td>890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubuli Seminiforii</td>
<td>891</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrangement in Lobuli</td>
<td>892</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in Mediastinum Testis</td>
<td>893</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in Epididymis</td>
<td>894</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Vasculum Aberrans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vas Deferens, Course, Relations</td>
<td>895</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasculum Seminales</td>
<td>897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form and Size</td>
<td>898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relations</td>
<td>899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ejaculatory Ducts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Semen</td>
<td>901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Descent of the Testis</td>
<td>902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gubernaculum Testis</td>
<td>903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canal of Nuck</td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

Female Organs of Generation.

Mons Veneris, Labia Majora .......................... 867
Labia Minora, Clitoris, Meatus Urinarius, ........ 868
Hymen, Glands of Bartholinus ..................... 869
Female Bladder ........................................ 869
Female Urethra ......................................... 869
Female Rectum ......................................... 870

Vagina.

Relations ............................................. 870
Structure ............................................ 870

Uterus.

Situation, Form, Dimensions ....................... 871
Fundus, Body, and Cervix ............................ 871
Ligaments ............................................. 871
Cavity of the Uterus .................................. 871
Structure .............................................. 872
Vessels and Nerves ................................... 872
Its Form, Size, and Situation ....................... 873
in the Fetus ........................................ 873
at Puberty ............................................ 873
during and after Menstruation ..................... 873

Appenages of the Uterus.

Fallopian Tubes ....................................... 873
Structure ............................................. 874
Ovaries ................................................ 874
Structure .............................................. 874
Graafian Vesicles ..................................... 874
Discharge of the Ovum ............................... 875
Corpus Luteum ......................................... 875
Ligament of the Ovary ................................ 876
Round Ligaments ...................................... 876
Vessels and Nerves of Appendages ................ 876

Mammary Glands.

Situation and Size .................................... 876
Nipple .................................................. 877
Structure of Mamma .................................... 877
Vessels and Nerves .................................... 877

Surgical Anatomy of Inguinal Hernia.

Coverings of Inguinal Hernia.

Dissection ............................................ 878
Superficial Fascia ..................................... 878
Superficial Vessels and Nerves ...................... 878
Deep Layer of Superficial Fascia .................... 879
Aponeurosis of External Oblique .................... 879
External Abdominal Ring ............................... 880
Pillars of the Ring .................................... 880
Intercostal Fibres .................................... 880
Fascia .................................................. 880
Poupart’s Ligament .................................... 880
Gimbernat’s Ligament ................................ 881
Triangular Ligament ................................... 881
Internal Oblique Muscle .............................. 881
Cremaster .............................................. 881
Transversalis Muscle .................................. 882
Spermatic Canal ....................................... 882
Fascia Transversalis .................................. 882
Internal Abdominal Ring ............................. 883
Subserous Arcolar Tissue ............................. 883
Epigastric Artery ...................................... 883
Peritoneum ............................................ 884

Inguinal Hernia.

Oblique Inguinal Hernia ............................... 884
Course and Coverings of Oblique Hernia .......... 884
Sect of Stricture ....................................... 884
Scrotal Hernia .......................................... 885
Bubooncele ............................................. 885
Congenital Hernia ...................................... 885
Infantile Hernia ........................................ 885

Direct Inguinal Hernia.

Course and Coverings of the Hernia ................ 885
Sect of Stricture ....................................... 886
Incomplete Direct Hernia .............................. 886
Comparative Frequency of Oblique and Direct Hernia 886
Diagnosis of Oblique and Direct Hernia .......... 886

Surgical Anatomy of Femoral Hernia.

Dissection ............................................ 886
Superficial Fascia ..................................... 886
Cutaneous Vessels ..................................... 886
Internal Saphenous Vein .............................. 886
Superficial Inguinal Glands ......................... 887
Cutaneous Nerves ...................................... 887
Deep Layer of Superficial Fascia .................... 888
Cribiform Fascia ...................................... 888
Fascia Lata ............................................ 889
Iliac Portion .......................................... 889
Pubic Portion .......................................... 889
Saphenous Opening ..................................... 889
Crural Arch ............................................ 890
Gimbernat’s Ligament ................................ 891
Crural Sheath .......................................... 891
Deep Crural Arch ...................................... 891
Crural Canal ........................................... 891
Femoral or Crural Ring ............................... 892
Position of Parts around the Ring .................. 892
Septum Cruralis ........................................ 893
Descent of Femoral Hernia ........................... 893
Coverings of Femoral Hernia ......................... 894
Varieties of Femoral Hernia ......................... 894
Seat of Stricture ....................................... 894
Surgical Anatomy of Perineum and Ischio-rectal Region.

Ischio-rectal Region. | PAG  
---|---
Dissection of | 895
Boundaries of | 895
Superficial Fascia | 895
External Sphincter | 896
Internal Sphincter | 896
Ischio-rectal Fossa | 896
Position of Parts contained in | 896

Perineum.

Boundaries and Extent | 897
Superficial Layer of Superficial Fascia | 897
Deep Layer of Superficial Fascia | 897
Course taken by the Urine in Rupture of the Urethra | 897
Muscles of the Perineum (Male) | 898
Accelerator Urinae | 899
Erector Penis | 899
Transversus Perinei | 899
Muscles of the Perineum (Female) | 900
Sphincter Vaginae | 900
Erector Clitoridis | 900

Transversus Perinei | 900
Deep Perineal Fascia | 900
Anterior Layer | 901
Posterior Layer | 901
Parts between the Two Layers | 901
Compressor Urethrae | 901
Cowper’s Glands | 901
Pubic Vessels and Nerves | 901
Artery of the Bulb | 901
Levator Ani | 901
Relations, Actions | 902
Coccygeus, Relations, Actions | 902
Position of Viscera at Outlet of Pelvis | 902
Prostate Gland | 902
Parts concerned in the Operation of Lithotomy | 903
Parts divided in the Operation | 904
Parts to be avoided in the Operation | 904
Abnormal Course of Arteries in the Perineum | 905
Pelvic Fascia | 905
Obturator Fascia | 906
Recto-vesical Fascia | 906

LANDMARKS, MEDICAL AND SURGICAL.

THE HEAD.
Scalp; its density—Arteries of Scalp—Skullcap—Frontal Sinuses—Mastoid process—Occipital Protuberance—Lines of Cerebral Sinuses—Middle Meningeal Artery—Thickness of Skullcap—Levels of the Brain | 914-915

THE FACE.

THE NECK.
Subcutaneous Veins—Parts in Central Line—Os Hyoides—Thyroid Cartilage—Cricoid Cartilage—Trachea—Sterno-mastoid Muscle—Sterno-clavicular Joint—Apex of Lung in the Neck—Supra-clavicular Fossa—Subclavian Artery | 920-922

THE CHEST.
Peculiarities in the Female—Parts behind first Bone of Sternum—Rules for Counting the Ribs—Interval below Clavicle—Internal Mammary Artery—Outline of Heart on Chest-wall—Apex of the Heart—Valves of the Heart—Outline of the Lungs—Anterior Mediastinum—Reflexion of Pleura | 922-925

THE BACK.
Median Furrow—Spines of Vertebrae—Division of the Trachea—Origins of the Spinal Nerves—Movements of the Spine—Position and Motions of Scapula | 926-928

THE ABDOMEN.

THE PERINEUM.

THE THIGH.
Poupart’s Ligament, or Crural Arch—Furrow at the Bend of the Thigh—Saphenous Opening—Femoral Ring—Lymphatic Glands in the Groin—Trochanter Major—Nélaton’s Line—Spine of the Ilium—Compression of Femoral Artery—Sartorius—Line of Femoral Artery | 936-938
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Buttocks</th>
<th>938-939</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bony Landmarks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fold of the Buttock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gluteal Artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pudic Artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Knee</th>
<th>939-941</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bony Points</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligamentum Patellae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patellar Bursa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synovial Membrane of Knee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Popliteal Tendons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Popliteal Bursa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Popliteal Artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peroneal Nerve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Leg and Ankle</th>
<th>941-943</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bony Points</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malleoli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tendo Achillis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tendons behind Inner Ankle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tendons behind Outer Ankle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tendons in front of Ankle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Popliteal Artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior Tibial Artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior Tibial Artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saphena Veins</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Foot</th>
<th>943-944</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Points of Bone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lines of Joints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsal Artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bursa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plantar Arteries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plantar Fascia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Arm</th>
<th>953</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clavicle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bony Points of the Shoulder</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuberosities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coraco-acromial Liga-ment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axilla</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axillary Artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brachial Artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bend of Elbow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutaneous Veins</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landmarks of Elbow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olecranon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relations of Olecranon and Condyles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bursae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interosseous Arteries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphatic Gland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Forearm and Wrist</th>
<th>947-948</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ulna</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Carpal Bursa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Tabatiere Anatomique&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tendons on back of Wrist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lines of Arteries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Hand</th>
<th>949-950</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Furrow in Palm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interdigital Folds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Furrows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palmar Arterial Arches</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Arteries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metacarpal Joint of Thumb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sesamoid Bones</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subcutaneous Veins</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interosseous Arteries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Bursae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knuckles and Digital Joints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Palpation by the Rectum</th>
<th>950</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination Per Vaginam</td>
<td>951</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
<th>953</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

The Illustrations, when copied from any other work, have the author’s name affixed. When no such acknowledgment is made, the drawing is to be considered original.

Introduction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Corpuscles of Frog’s Blood</td>
<td>Wagner</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Human Blood Globules</td>
<td>Köllicker</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>White Corpuscles</td>
<td>Harley</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Changes of Colorless Corpuscle</td>
<td>Kirkes</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Blood Crystals</td>
<td>Harley</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Chyle from the Lacteals</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Arcolar Tissue</td>
<td>Todd &amp; Bowman</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>White Fibrous Tissue</td>
<td>Harley</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Yellow Elastic Tissue</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Formative Cells of Yellow Elastic Tissue</td>
<td>Köllicker</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Formative Cells of Arcolar Tissue</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Blood vessels of Fat</td>
<td>Todd &amp; Bowman</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Adipose Tissue</td>
<td>Harley</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Human Cartilage Cells</td>
<td>Köllicker</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Costal Cartilage in Old Age</td>
<td>Harley</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Fibro-cartilage</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Yellow Cartilage</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Transverse Section of Bone</td>
<td>Köllicker</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Longitudinal Section of Bone</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Section of Bone after Removal of Earthy Portion</td>
<td>Harley</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Osseification of Femoral Cartilage</td>
<td>Rollett</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Osseification of Femoral Cartilage</td>
<td>Frey</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Transverse Section of Femoral Femur</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Intramembranous ossification</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Transverse Section of Muscle</td>
<td>Köllicker</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Human Muscular Fibres</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Elementary Structure of Voluntary Muscle</td>
<td>Todd and Bowman</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Elementary Structure of Voluntary Muscle</td>
<td>Quain</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Muscular Fibres of the Heart</td>
<td>Schweigger-Seidel</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Non-striated Muscular Fibres</td>
<td>Harley</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>Muscular Fibre-cells</td>
<td>Köllicker</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>Nerve Vesicles from Caserian Ganglion</td>
<td>Todd and Bowman</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Nerve Vesicles from Brain</td>
<td>Köllicker</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Human Nerve Tubes</td>
<td>Todd and Bowman</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>Nerve Tubes of Eel</td>
<td>Frey</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>Nervous Branch from Sympathetic</td>
<td>J. L. Clarke</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>Transverse Section of Spinal Cord</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>Transverse Section of Spinal Cord</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>Longitudinal Section of Spinal Cord</td>
<td>Köllicker</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>Tactile Corpuscles of Wagner</td>
<td>Todd and Bowman</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>Pacinian Corpuscle</td>
<td>Todd and Bowman</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>Termination of Nerves of Voluntary Muscle, &quot;Motorial End Plates&quot;</td>
<td>Kühne</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>Terminations of Nerves of Voluntary Muscle</td>
<td>Beale</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>Section of Small Artery and Vein</td>
<td>Köllicker</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>Capillary Vessels</td>
<td>Frey</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>Capillary Vessels</td>
<td>Köllicker</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>Section of Small Artery and Vein</td>
<td>Köllicker</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>Section of Thoracic Duct</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>Stomata of Serous Membranes</td>
<td>Frey</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>Section of Lymphatic Gland</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>Follicle from Lymphatic Gland</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>ILLUSTRATION</th>
<th>AUTHOR(S)</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>Medullary Structure of Lymphatic Gland</td>
<td>Frey</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>Sectional View of the Skin and its Appendages</td>
<td>Kölliker</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[54.</td>
<td>Structure of Hair, etc.</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[55.</td>
<td>Sudoriferous Glands</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Pavement Epithelium</td>
<td>Harley</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>Tesselated Epithelium</td>
<td>Klein</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Columnar Epithelium</td>
<td>Kölliker</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Spheroidal Epithelium</td>
<td>Harley</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>Ciliated Epithelium</td>
<td>Kölliker</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>Ovum of Sow</td>
<td>M. Barry</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.</td>
<td>Human Ovum</td>
<td>Kölliker</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
<td>Diagram of the Division of the Yolk</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
<td>Diagram of the Division of the Blastodermic Membrane</td>
<td>Bischoff</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>Section of Blastoderm</td>
<td>Foster and Balfour</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66.</td>
<td>Diagrams of the Development of the Three Layers of the Blastodermic Membrane—Transverse Sections</td>
<td>Beaunis &amp; Bouchard</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>Similar Diagrams—Antero-posterior Sections</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68.</td>
<td>Transverse Section through Embryo-chick</td>
<td>Foster and Balfour</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
<td>Diagrammatic Section through Ovum</td>
<td>Quain</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70.</td>
<td>Human Embryo of 4 Weeks</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71.</td>
<td>Diagram of the Membranes of the Ovum</td>
<td>Wagner</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72.</td>
<td>Human Ovum, 12 to 14 days</td>
<td>A. Thompson</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73.</td>
<td>Human Ovum, 15 days</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74.</td>
<td>Embryo from the preceding Ovum</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75.</td>
<td>Human Ovum in the 4th Week</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76.</td>
<td>Transverse Section through Embryo-chick</td>
<td>Foster and Balfour</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77.</td>
<td>Primitive Vertebinal Column of Embryo</td>
<td>Kölliker</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78.</td>
<td>Face of an Embryo of 25 to 28 days</td>
<td>Coste</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79.</td>
<td>Longitudinal Section of Head of Embryo at 4 Weeks</td>
<td>Kölliker</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of Head in Early Embryos of Rabbit</td>
<td>Mikhal'tovicz</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81.</td>
<td>Section of the Medulla of Embryo at 6 Weeks</td>
<td>Kölliker</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82.</td>
<td>Diagram of Development of Lens</td>
<td>Remak</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83.</td>
<td>Diagrammatic Section through Fetal Eyeball</td>
<td>Quain</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84.</td>
<td>Development of Bloodvessels</td>
<td>Klein</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85.</td>
<td>Heart of Embryo, 5th Week</td>
<td>Baer</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86.</td>
<td>Diagram of Formation of the Aortic Arches and Larger Arteries</td>
<td>Kölliker</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87.</td>
<td>Diagram of Formation of the Main Systemic Veins</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88.</td>
<td>Early Form of Alimentary Canal</td>
<td>do.</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89.</td>
<td>Wolffian Body in the Asexual Stage of Embryo</td>
<td>Paré</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90.</td>
<td>Diagram of Primitive Urogenital Organs</td>
<td>Quain</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91.</td>
<td>Adult Ovary, Parovarium, and Fallopian Tube</td>
<td>Paré</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92.</td>
<td>Female Genital Organs of Embryo</td>
<td>After J. Müller</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93.</td>
<td>Development of External Genital Organs</td>
<td>Ecker</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Osteology.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>ILLUSTRATION</th>
<th>AUTHOR(S)</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>94.</td>
<td>Cervical Vertebra</td>
<td></td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95.</td>
<td>Atlas</td>
<td></td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96.</td>
<td>Axis</td>
<td></td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97.</td>
<td>Seventh Cervical Vertebra</td>
<td></td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98.</td>
<td>Dorsal Vertebra</td>
<td></td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99.</td>
<td>Peculiar Dorsal Vertebra</td>
<td></td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100.</td>
<td>Lumbar Vertebra</td>
<td></td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 106.</td>
<td>Development of a Vertebra</td>
<td>Quain</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.</td>
<td>Sacrum, anterior surface</td>
<td></td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of the Sacrum</td>
<td></td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109.</td>
<td>Sacrum, posterior surface</td>
<td></td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110 to 112.</td>
<td>Development of Sacrum</td>
<td>Quain</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113.</td>
<td>Coccyx, anterior and posterior surfaces</td>
<td></td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.</td>
<td>Lateral View of Spine</td>
<td></td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.</td>
<td>Occipital Bone, outer surface</td>
<td></td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116.</td>
<td>Occipital Bone, inner surface</td>
<td></td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117.</td>
<td>Occipital Bone, development of</td>
<td></td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118.</td>
<td>Parietal Bone, external surface</td>
<td></td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119.</td>
<td>Parietal Bone, internal surface</td>
<td></td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.</td>
<td>Frontal Bone, outer surface</td>
<td></td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.</td>
<td>Frontal Bone, inner surface</td>
<td></td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.</td>
<td>Frontal Bone at Birth</td>
<td></td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.</td>
<td>Temporal Bone, outer surface</td>
<td></td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIG.</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>FROM PAGE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.</td>
<td>Temporal Bone, inner surface</td>
<td>162</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.</td>
<td>Temporal Bone, petrous portion</td>
<td>163</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.</td>
<td>Temporal Bone, development of</td>
<td>Quain 164</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127.</td>
<td>Sphenoid Bone, superior surface</td>
<td>165</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128.</td>
<td>Sphenoid Bone, anterior surface</td>
<td>166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.</td>
<td>Sphenoid Bone, posterior surface</td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130.</td>
<td>Plan of the Development of Sphenoid</td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131.</td>
<td>Ethmoid Bone, outer surface</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132.</td>
<td>Perpendicular Plate of Ethmoid, enlarged</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133.</td>
<td>Ethmoid Bone, inner surface of right lateral mass, enlarged</td>
<td>171</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.</td>
<td>Skull at Birth, showing the anterior and posterior Fontanelles</td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135.</td>
<td>Lateral Fontanelles</td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136.</td>
<td>Nasal Bone, outer surface</td>
<td>174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137.</td>
<td>Nasal Bone, inner surface</td>
<td>174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138.</td>
<td>Superior Maxillary Bone, outer surface</td>
<td>175</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139.</td>
<td>Superior Maxillary Bone, inner surface</td>
<td>176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140.</td>
<td>Development of Superior Maxillary Bone</td>
<td>Quain 179</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141.</td>
<td>Lachrymal Bone, outer surface</td>
<td>180</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142.</td>
<td>Malar Bone, outer surface</td>
<td>180</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143.</td>
<td>Malar Bone, inner surface</td>
<td>181</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144.</td>
<td>Palate Bone, internal view, enlarged</td>
<td>182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.</td>
<td>Palate Bone, posterior view, enlarged</td>
<td>183</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146.</td>
<td>Inferior Turbinated Bone, inner surface</td>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147.</td>
<td>Inferior Turbinated Bone, outer surface</td>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148.</td>
<td>Vomer</td>
<td>185</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149.</td>
<td>Lower Jaw, outer surface</td>
<td>185</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150.</td>
<td>Lower Jaw, inner surface</td>
<td>187</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151.</td>
<td>Side-view of the Lower Jaw, at Birth</td>
<td>189</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>152.</td>
<td>Side-view of the Lower Jaw, at Puberty</td>
<td>189</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153.</td>
<td>Side-view of the Lower Jaw, in the Adult</td>
<td>189</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154.</td>
<td>Side-view of the Lower Jaw, in Old Age</td>
<td>189</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155.</td>
<td>Base of Skull, inner surface</td>
<td>193</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156.</td>
<td>Base of Skull, outer surface</td>
<td>196</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>157.</td>
<td>Side-view of Skull</td>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158.</td>
<td>Anterior region of Skull</td>
<td>201</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>159.</td>
<td>Nasal Fossa, outer wall</td>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160.</td>
<td>Nasal Fossa, inner wall or septum</td>
<td>205</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161.</td>
<td>Hyoid Bone, anterior surface</td>
<td>206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162.</td>
<td>Sternum and Costal Cartilages, anterior surface</td>
<td>208</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163.</td>
<td>Sternum, posterior surface</td>
<td>208</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164 to 167.</td>
<td>Development of Sternum</td>
<td>Quain 210</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168.</td>
<td>A Rib</td>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>169.</td>
<td>Vertebral Extremity of a Rib</td>
<td>212</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170 to 174.</td>
<td>Peculiar Ribs</td>
<td>213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175.</td>
<td>Left Clavicle, anterior surface</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176.</td>
<td>Left Clavicle, inferior surface</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>177.</td>
<td>Left Scapula, anterior surface, or venter</td>
<td>219</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>178.</td>
<td>Left Scapula, posterior surface, or dorsum</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179.</td>
<td>Plan of the Development of the Scapula</td>
<td>223</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180.</td>
<td>Left Humerus, anterior view</td>
<td>224</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>181.</td>
<td>Left Humerus, posterior surface</td>
<td>227</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182.</td>
<td>Plan of the Development of the Humerus</td>
<td>228</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183.</td>
<td>Bones of the Left Forearm, anterior surface</td>
<td>229</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184.</td>
<td>Bones of the Left Forearm, posterior surface</td>
<td>232</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185.</td>
<td>Plan of the Development of the Ulna</td>
<td>233</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186.</td>
<td>Plan of the Development of the Radius</td>
<td>235</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187.</td>
<td>Bones of the Left Hand, dorsal surface</td>
<td>237</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188.</td>
<td>Bones of the Left Hand, palmar surface</td>
<td>239</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189.</td>
<td>Plan of the Development of the Hand</td>
<td>244</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190.</td>
<td>Os Innominatum, external surface</td>
<td>245</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191.</td>
<td>Os Innominatum, internal surface</td>
<td>246</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192.</td>
<td>Plan of the Development of the Os Innominatum</td>
<td>250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193.</td>
<td>Male Pelvis (adult)</td>
<td>252</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194.</td>
<td>Female Pelvis (adult)</td>
<td>252</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of the Pelvis, with lines indicating the Axes of the Pelvis</td>
<td>253</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196.</td>
<td>Right Femur, anterior surface</td>
<td>255</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197.</td>
<td>Right Femur, posterior surface</td>
<td>257</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198.</td>
<td>Diagram showing the Structure of the Neck of the Femur</td>
<td>Ward 259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199.</td>
<td>Plan of the Development of the Femur</td>
<td>260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200.</td>
<td>Right Patella, anterior surface</td>
<td>260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIG.</td>
<td>Illustration Description</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.</td>
<td>Right Patella, posterior surface</td>
<td>260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.</td>
<td>Tibia and Fibula, anterior surface</td>
<td>261</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.</td>
<td>Tibia and Fibula, posterior surface</td>
<td>262</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204.</td>
<td>Plan of the Development of the Tibia</td>
<td>265</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205.</td>
<td>Plan of the Development of the Fibula</td>
<td>267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206.</td>
<td>Bones of the Right Foot, dorsal surface</td>
<td>268</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207.</td>
<td>Bones of the Right Foot, plantar surface</td>
<td>271</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208.</td>
<td>Plan of the Development of the Foot</td>
<td>277</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Articulations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Illustration Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>209.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of Two Vertebrae and their ligaments, front view</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210.</td>
<td>Occipito-atlantal and Atlanto-axial Ligaments, front view</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211.</td>
<td>Occipito-atlantal and Atlanto-axial Ligaments, posterior view</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212.</td>
<td>Articulation between Odontoid Process and Atlas</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213.</td>
<td>Occipito-axial and Atlanto-axial Ligaments</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214.</td>
<td>Temporo-maxillary Articulation, external view</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>215.</td>
<td>Temporo-maxillary Articulation, internal view</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>216.</td>
<td>Temporo-maxillary Articulation, vertical section</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>217.</td>
<td>Costo-vertebral and Costo-transverse Articulations, anterior view</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218.</td>
<td>Costo-transverse Articulation</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>219.</td>
<td>Costo-ternal, Costo-xiphoïd, and Intercostal Articulations, anterior view</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220.</td>
<td>Articulations of Pelvis and Hip, anterior view</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221.</td>
<td>Articulations of Pelvis and Hip, posterior view</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>222.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of the Symphysis Pubis</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>223.</td>
<td>Stero-clavicular Articulation</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>224.</td>
<td>Shoulder-joint, Scapulo-claviculart Articulations, and proper Ligaments of Scapula</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225.</td>
<td>Left Elbow-Joint, showing anterior and internal Ligaments</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>226.</td>
<td>Left Elbow-Joint, showing posterior and external Ligaments</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>227.</td>
<td>Ligaments of Wrist and Hand, anterior view</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>228.</td>
<td>Ligaments of Wrist and Hand, posterior view</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>229.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of Wrist, showing the Synovial Membranes</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>230.</td>
<td>Articulations of the Phalanges</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>231.</td>
<td>Left Hip-Joint, laid open</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>232, 233.</td>
<td>Hip-Joint laid open from the Pelvis to show the Ligamentum Teres put on the stretch by rotation of the Femur outwards, and by adduction in the flexed position respectively</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>234.</td>
<td>Right Knee-Joint, anterior view</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235.</td>
<td>Right Knee-Joint, posterior view</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>236.</td>
<td>Right Knee-Joint, showing internal Ligaments</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>237.</td>
<td>Head of Tibia, with semilunar Cartilages, seen from above</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>238.</td>
<td>Ankle-Joint, Tarsal and Tarseo-metatarsal Articulations, internal view</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239.</td>
<td>Ankle-Joint, Tarsal and Tarseo-metatarsal Articulations, external view</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240.</td>
<td>Ligaments of Plantar Surface of the Foot</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>241.</td>
<td>Synovial Membranes of the Tarsus and Metatarsus</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Muscles and Fasciae.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Illustration Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>242.</td>
<td>Plan of Dissection of the Head, Face, and Neck</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243.</td>
<td>Muscles of the Head, Face, and Neck</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>244.</td>
<td>Muscles of the Right Orbit</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245.</td>
<td>The relative position and attachment of the Muscles of the Left Eyeball</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>246.</td>
<td>The Temporal Muscle</td>
<td>353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>247.</td>
<td>The Pterygoid Muscles</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248.</td>
<td>Muscles of the Neck, and Boundaries of the Triangles</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>249.</td>
<td>Muscles of the Neck, anterior view</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250.</td>
<td>Muscles of the Tongue, left side</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.</td>
<td>Superficial Lingualis and Intrinsic Vertical Fibres of the Tongue</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>252.</td>
<td>Relative Positions of Intrinsic and Extrinsic Muscles of the Tongue</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.</td>
<td>Muscles of the Pharynx, external view</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>254.</td>
<td>Muscles of the Soft Palate</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255.</td>
<td>The Prevertebral Muscles</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256.</td>
<td>Plan of Dissection of the Muscles of the Back</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257.</td>
<td>Muscles of the Back—first, second, and part of the third layers</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>258.</td>
<td>Muscles of the Back—deep layers</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259.</td>
<td>Plan of Dissection of Abdomen</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260.</td>
<td>The External Oblique Muscle</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF ILLUestrations.

261. The Internal Oblique Muscle 388
262. The Transversalis, Rectus, and Pyramidalis 389
263. Transverse Section of Abdomen in Lumbar Region Quain 390
264. The Diaphragm, under surface 395
265. Plan of Dissection of Upper Extremity 399
266. Muscles of the Chest and Front of the Arm, superficial view 400
267. Muscles of the Chest and Front of the Arm, with the boundaries of the Axilla 403
268. Muscles on the Dorsum of the Scapula and the Triceps 406
269. Front of the Left Forearm, superficial muscles 411
270. Front of the Left Forearm, deep muscles 414
271. Posterior Surface of Forearm, superficial muscles 416
272. Posterior Surface of Forearm, deep muscles 419
273. Transverse Section through the Wrist, showing the Annular Ligaments and the Canals for the passage of the Tendons 420
274. Muscles of the Left Hand, palmar surface 422
275. Dorsal Interossei of Left Hand 424
276. Palmar Interossei of Left Hand 425
277. Fracture of the middle of the Clavicle Hind 426
278. Fracture of the Surgical Neck of the Humerus do. 428
279. Fracture of the Humerus above the Condyles do. 427
280. Fracture of the Olecranon do. 427
281. Fracture of Shaft of the Radius do. 428
282. Fracture of the lower end of the Radius do. 429
283. Plan of Dissection of Lower Extremity, front view 432
284. Muscles of the Iliac and Anterior Femoral Regions 433
285. Deep Muscles of the Internal Femoral Region Quain 437
286. Plan of Dissection of Lower Extremity, posterior view 440
287. Muscles of the Hip and Thigh 441
288. Muscles of the Front of the Leg 446
289. Muscles of the Back of the Leg, superficial layer 448
290. Muscles of the Back of the Leg, deep layer 450
291. Muscles of the Sole of the Foot, first layer 456
292. Muscles of the Sole of the Foot, second layer 457
293. Muscles of the Sole of the Foot, third layer 458
294. Dorsal Interossei 459
295. Plantar Interossei 459
296. Fracture of the Neck of the Femur within the Capsular Ligament Hind 460
297. Fracture of the Femur below the Trochanters do. 460
298. Fracture of the Femur above the Condyles do. 461
299. Fracture of the Patella do. 461
300. Oblique Fracture of the Shaft of the Tibia do. 461
301. Fracture of the Tibia, with displacement of the Tibia (Pott's fracture) do. 462

Arteries.

302. The Arch of the Aorta and its branches 465
303. Plan of the branches of the Arch of the Aorta 465
304. Surgical Anatomy of the Arteries of the Neck 472
305. Plan of the branches of the External Carotid 472
306. The Arteries of the Face and Scalp 478
307. The Internal Maxillary Artery, and its branches 483
308. Plan of the branches of the Internal Carotid 483
309. The Internal Carotid and Vertebral Arteries 490
310. The Ophthalmic Artery and its branches 492
311. The Arteries of the base of the Brain 494
312. Plan of the branches of the Right Subclavian Artery 500
313. The Scapular and Circumflex Arteries 503
314. The Axillary Artery and its branches 506
315. The Surgical Anatomy of the Brachial Artery 510
316. The Surgical Anatomy of the Radial and Ulnar Arteries 516
317. Ulnar and Radial Arteries, deep view 518
318. Arteries of the Back of the Forearm and Hand 521
319. The Abdominal Aorta and its branches 524
320. The Celiac Axis and its branches, the Liver having been raised, and the Lesser Omentum removed 527
321. The Celiac Axis and its branches, the Stomach having been raised, and the Transverse Mesocolon removed 528
322. The Superior Mesenteric Artery and its branches 530
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

328. The Inferior Mesenteric Artery and its branches .... 532
324. Arteries of the Pelvis ..... 536
325. Variations in Origin and Course of Obturator Artery ..... 540
329. The Internal Pudic Artery and its branches ..... 541
327. The Arteries of the Gluteal and Posterior Femoral Regions ..... 542
328. Surgical Anatomy of the Femoral Artery ..... 547
329. The Popliteal, Posterior Tibial, and Peroneal Arteries ..... 557
330. Surgical Anatomy of the Anterior Tibial and Dorsalis Pedis Arteries ..... 557
331. The Plantar Arteries, superficial view ..... 562
332. The Plantar Arteries, deep view ..... 562

Veins.

333. Veins of the Head and Neck ..... 566
334. Veins of the Diploë, seen on removal of outer table of Skull Breschet 569
335. Vertical Section of the Skull, showing the Sinuses of the Dura Mater ..... 571
336. The Sinuses at the Base of the Skull ..... 573
337. The Superficial Veins of the Upper Extremity ..... 574
338. The Venæ Cavae and Azygos Veins, with their Formative Branches Breschet 577
339. Transverse Section of a Dorsal Vertebra, showing the Spinal Veins do. 580
340. Vertical Section of two Dorsal Vertebrae, showing the Spinal Veins do. 580
341. The Internal, or Long Saphenous Vein and its Branches Quain 582
342. The External, or Short Saphenous Vein ..... 582
343. The Portal Vein and its Branches Quain 586

Lymphatics.

344. The Thoracic and Right Lymphatic Ducts Mascagni 589
345. The Superficial Lymphatics and Glands of the Head, Face, and Neck do. 591
346. The Deep Lymphatics and Glands of the Neck and Thorax do. 592
347. The Superficial Lymphatics and Glands of the Upper Extremity do. 593
348. The Superficial Lymphatics and Glands of the Lower Extremity do. 595
349. The Deep Lymphatic Vessels and Glands of the Abdomen and Pelvis do. 597

Nervous System.

350. The Spinal Cord and its Membranes Arnold 603
351. Transverse Section of the Spinal Cord and its Membranes Arnold 603
352. Spinal Cord, side View. Plan of the Fissures and Columns Quain 605
353. Transverse Sections of the Cord Arnold 606
354. Medulla Oblongata and Pons Varolii, anterior surface ..... 611
355. Posterior Surface of Medulla Oblongata ..... 611
356. Transverse Section of Medulla Oblongata Arnold 612
357. The Columns of the Medulla Oblongata, and their Connection with the Cerebrum and Cerebellum Altered from Arnold 613
358. Upper Surface of the Brain, the Pia Mater having been removed After Sappey 617
359. Vertical Median Section of Encephalon, showing the parts in the middle line ..... 618
360. Base of the Brain ..... 620
361. Section of the Brain, made on a level with the Corpus Callosum ..... 623
362. The Lateral Ventricles of the Brain ..... 624
363. The Fornix, Velum Interpositum, and middle or descending Cornu of the Lateral Ventricle ..... 626
364. The Third and Fourth Ventricles ..... 629
365. Upper Surface of the Cerebellum ..... 633
366. Under Surface of the Cerebellum ..... 633
367. Vertical Section of the Cerebellum Arnold 634

Cranial Nerves.

368. The Optic Nerve and Optic Tract Bowman 638
369. Course of the Fibres in the Optic Commissure After Arnold 640
370. Nerves of the Orbit, seen from above After Arnold 640
371. Nerves of the Orbit and Ophthalmic Ganglion, side view ..... 641
372. The Course and Connections of the Facial Nerve in the Temporal Bone After Bidder 642
## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>373.</td>
<td>The Nerves of the Scalp, Face, and Side of the Neck</td>
<td>644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>374.</td>
<td>Hypoglossal Nerve, Cervical Plexus, and their Branches</td>
<td>646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>375.</td>
<td>Distribution of the Second and Third Divisions of the Fifth Nerve and Submaxillary Ganglion</td>
<td>651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>376.</td>
<td>The Spheno-palatine Ganglion and its Branches</td>
<td>658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>377.</td>
<td>The Otic Ganglion and its Branches</td>
<td>657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>378.</td>
<td>Origin of the Eighth Pair, their Ganglia and Communications</td>
<td>658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>379.</td>
<td>Course and Distribution of the Eight Pair of Nerves</td>
<td>658</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Spinal Nerves.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>380.</td>
<td>Plan of the Brachial Plexus</td>
<td>671</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>381.</td>
<td>Cutaneous Nerves of Right Upper Extremity, anterior view</td>
<td>673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>382.</td>
<td>Cutaneous Nerves of Right Upper Extremity, posterior view</td>
<td>674</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>383.</td>
<td>Nerves of the Left Upper Extremity, front view</td>
<td>676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>384.</td>
<td>The Suprascapular, Circumflex, and Musculo-spiral Nerves</td>
<td>678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>385.</td>
<td>The Lumbar Plexus and its Branches</td>
<td>683</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>386.</td>
<td>Cutaneous Nerves of the Lower Extremity, front view</td>
<td>685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>387.</td>
<td>Nerves of the Lower Extremity, front view</td>
<td>685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>388.</td>
<td>Nerves of the Lower Extremity, posterior view</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>389.</td>
<td>Nerves of the Lower Extremity, posterior view</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>390.</td>
<td>The Plantar Nerves</td>
<td>694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>391.</td>
<td>The Sympathetic Nerve</td>
<td>697</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>392.</td>
<td>Ganglia and Nerves of Gravid Uterus</td>
<td>705</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Organs of Sense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>393.</td>
<td>Upper Surface of the Tongue</td>
<td>707</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>394.</td>
<td>The three kinds of Papillae of the Tongue, magnified</td>
<td>707</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>395.</td>
<td>396. Cartilages of the Nose</td>
<td>710</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>397.</td>
<td>Bones and Cartilages of Septum of Nose, right side</td>
<td>711</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>398.</td>
<td>Nerves of Septum of Nose, right side</td>
<td>713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>399.</td>
<td>A Vertical Section of the Eyeball, enlarged</td>
<td>714</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.</td>
<td>The Choroid and Iris, enlarged</td>
<td>716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401.</td>
<td>The Veins of the Choroid, enlarged</td>
<td>717</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>402.</td>
<td>The Arteries of the Choroid and Iris, the Sclerotic having been mostly removed, enlarged</td>
<td>718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403.</td>
<td>The Arterial Retiæ, Yellow Spots, etc., the anterior half of the Eyeball being removed, enlarged</td>
<td>720</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>404.</td>
<td>405. Vertical Sections of the Human Retina</td>
<td>721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>406.</td>
<td>The Crystalline Lens, hardened and divided, enlarged</td>
<td>724</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>407.</td>
<td>The Meibomian Glands, etc., seen from the inner surface of the Eyelids</td>
<td>728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>408.</td>
<td>The Lacrimal Apparatus, right side</td>
<td>728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>409.</td>
<td>The Pinna, or Auricle, outer surface</td>
<td>729</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410.</td>
<td>The Muscles of the Pinna</td>
<td>730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411.</td>
<td>A Front View of the Organ of Hearing, right Side</td>
<td>731</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412.</td>
<td>View of Inner Wall of Tympanum, enlarged</td>
<td>733</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413.</td>
<td>The Small Bones of the Ear, seen from the outside, enlarged</td>
<td>735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>414.</td>
<td>The Osseous Labyrinth, laid open, enlarged</td>
<td>738</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>415.</td>
<td>The Cochlea laid open, enlarged</td>
<td>740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>416.</td>
<td>Longitudinal Section of the Cochlea, showing the relations of the Scala, etc.</td>
<td>740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>417.</td>
<td>Floor of the Scala Media, showing the Organ of Corti, etc.</td>
<td>742</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>418.</td>
<td>The Membranous Labyrinth</td>
<td>743</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Organs of Digestion and their Appendages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>419.</td>
<td>Sectional View of the Nose, Mouth, Pharynx, etc.</td>
<td>746</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420.</td>
<td>The Permanent Teeth, external view</td>
<td>747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421.</td>
<td>The Temporary, or Milk Teeth, external view</td>
<td>749</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of a Molar Tooth</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>423.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of a Bicuspid Tooth, magnified</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>424.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of the Lower Jaw of an early Human Fetus</td>
<td>752</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>425.</td>
<td>Dental Sac of a Human Embryo at an advanced stage of development</td>
<td>753</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>426.</td>
<td>Cement and Dentinal Tubes</td>
<td>753</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>427 to 430.</td>
<td>Development of Teeth</td>
<td>754</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>431.</td>
<td>The Salivary Glands</td>
<td>757</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>432.</td>
<td>The Regions of the Abdomen and their contents (edge of Costal Cartilages in dotted outline)</td>
<td>762</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>433.</td>
<td>The Reflections of the Peritoneum, as seen in a Vertical Section of the Abdomen</td>
<td>Altered from Quain 764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>434.</td>
<td>The Muscular Membrane of the Stomach and Duodenum, with the Bile Ducts</td>
<td>768</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>435.</td>
<td>The Muscular Coat of the Stomach</td>
<td>769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436.</td>
<td>Minute Anatomy of Muscular Membrane of Stomach</td>
<td>Dr. Sprott Boyd 770</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>437.</td>
<td>Relations of the Duodenum</td>
<td>772</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>438.</td>
<td>Diagrammatic Section of a Villus</td>
<td>Watney 774</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>439.</td>
<td>Two Villi, magnified</td>
<td>775</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>440.</td>
<td>Transverse Section through three of Peyer’s Follicles from the Rabbit</td>
<td>Frey 775</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441.</td>
<td>Patch of Peyer’s Glands, from the lower part of the Ileum</td>
<td>776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.</td>
<td>A portion of the same, magnified</td>
<td>Boehm 778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of one of Peyer’s Patches from Man, injected through its Lymphatic Canals</td>
<td>Frey 776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>444.</td>
<td>The Cecum and Colon laid open, to show the Ileo-cecal Valve</td>
<td>777</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>445.</td>
<td>Diagram of the relations of the Large Intestine and Kidneys, from behind</td>
<td>778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.</td>
<td>The relations of the Viscera and large vessels of the Abdomen, from behind</td>
<td>780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>447.</td>
<td>Minute Structure of Large Intestine</td>
<td>C. Stewart 782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>448.</td>
<td>The Liver, upper surface</td>
<td>784</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>449.</td>
<td>The Liver, under surface</td>
<td>785</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450.</td>
<td>Longitudinal Section of an Hepatic Vein</td>
<td>Kiernan 787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451.</td>
<td>Longitudinal Section of a small Portal Vein and Canal</td>
<td>do. 787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>452.</td>
<td>Vessels of Lobules of Liver</td>
<td>Klein 788</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>453.</td>
<td>Origin of Bile Ducts</td>
<td>Herring 789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>454.</td>
<td>A transverse Section of a small Portal Canal and its vessels</td>
<td>Kiernan 789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>455.</td>
<td>The parts in the Gastro-hepatic Omentum</td>
<td>791</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>456.</td>
<td>The Pancreas and its Relations</td>
<td>792</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>457.</td>
<td>Transverse Section of the Spleen, showing the Trabecular Tissue, and the Splenic Vein and its branches</td>
<td>794</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>458.</td>
<td>The Malpighian Corpuscles, and their relation with the Splenic Artery and its branches</td>
<td>795</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>459.</td>
<td>One of the Splenic Corpuscles, showing its relations with the Bloodvessels</td>
<td>796</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>460.</td>
<td>Transverse Section of the Human Spleen, showing the distribution of the Splenic Artery and its branches</td>
<td>797</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Organs of Circulation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>461.</td>
<td>Front View of the Thorax, showing the relation of the Thoracic Viscera to the walls of the Chest</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>462.</td>
<td>The Right Auricle and Ventricle laid open, the anterior walls of both being removed</td>
<td>802</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>463.</td>
<td>The Left Auricle and Ventricle laid open, the anterior walls of both being removed</td>
<td>806</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>464.</td>
<td>Plan of the Fetal Circulation</td>
<td>811</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Organs of Voice and Respiration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>465.</td>
<td>Side View of the Thyroid and Cricoid Cartilages</td>
<td>814</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>466.</td>
<td>The Cartilages of the Larynx, posterior view</td>
<td>815</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>467.</td>
<td>The Larynx and adjacent parts, seen from above</td>
<td>817</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>468.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of the Larynx and upper part of the Trachea</td>
<td>818</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>469.</td>
<td>Muscles of Larynx, side view, right Ala of Thyroid Cartilage removed</td>
<td>Willis 820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>470.</td>
<td>Interior of the Larynx, seen from above, enlarged</td>
<td>820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>471.</td>
<td>Front View of Cartilages of Larynx; the Trachea and Bronchi</td>
<td>822</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>472.</td>
<td>Transverse Section of the Trachea, just above its Bifurcation, with a bird's-eye view of the interior</td>
<td>823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>473.</td>
<td>Surgical Anatomy of the Laryngo-tracheal Region</td>
<td>825</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>474.</td>
<td>A Transverse Section of the Thorax, showing the relative position of the Viscera, and the reflections of the Pleura</td>
<td>826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>475.</td>
<td>The Posterior Mediastinum, anterior view</td>
<td>828</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>476.</td>
<td>The Posterior Mediastinum and Root of the Neck, posterior view</td>
<td>829</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>477.</td>
<td>Front View of the Heart and Lungs</td>
<td>830</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>478.</td>
<td>The Roots of the Lungs and Posterior Pulmonary Plexus, seen from behind</td>
<td>832</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>479.</td>
<td>Minute Structure of Thyroid Gland</td>
<td>Frey 835</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>480.</td>
<td>Minute Structure of Thymus Gland</td>
<td>do. 837</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.**

The Urinary and Generative Organs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>481.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of the Kidney</td>
<td></td>
<td>838</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>482.</td>
<td>Diagram of the Hilum, Sinus, and Pelvis of the Kidney</td>
<td></td>
<td>839</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>483.</td>
<td>Minute Structure of Kidney</td>
<td></td>
<td>840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>484.</td>
<td>Diagrammatic representation of the Bloodvessels in the substance of the</td>
<td></td>
<td>840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cortex of Kidney</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>485.</td>
<td>The various views as to the Epithelium of the Malpighian Body</td>
<td></td>
<td>841</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>486.</td>
<td>Diagram of Looped Tubes of Ilene</td>
<td></td>
<td>842</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>487.</td>
<td>Pyramid of Ferrein</td>
<td></td>
<td>842</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488.</td>
<td>Transverse Section of Pyramidal Substance of Kidney</td>
<td></td>
<td>843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>489.</td>
<td>Longitudinal Section of Straight Tube</td>
<td></td>
<td>844</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>490.</td>
<td>Longitudinal Section of Henle's Descending Limb</td>
<td></td>
<td>844</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>491.</td>
<td>Diagrammatic Sketch of Kidney</td>
<td></td>
<td>844</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>492.</td>
<td>A portion of Fig. 491 enlarged</td>
<td></td>
<td>844</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>493.</td>
<td>Cortical Portion of Human Suprarenal Body</td>
<td></td>
<td>846</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>494.</td>
<td>Transverse Section through Cortical Substance of Human Suprarenal Body</td>
<td></td>
<td>846</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>495.</td>
<td>Vertical Section of Bladder, Penis, and Urethra</td>
<td></td>
<td>849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>496.</td>
<td>The Bladder and Urethra laid open, seen from above</td>
<td></td>
<td>852</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>497.</td>
<td>Structure of the Corpus Cavernosum</td>
<td></td>
<td>858</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>498.</td>
<td>The Testis, in situ, the Tunica Vaginalis having been laid open</td>
<td></td>
<td>862</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>499.</td>
<td>Plan of a Vertical Section of the Testicle, to show the arrangement of the</td>
<td></td>
<td>868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ducts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.</td>
<td>Base of the Bladder, with the Vasa Deferentia and Vesicula Seminales</td>
<td></td>
<td>864</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501.</td>
<td>The Vulva, External Female Organs of Generation</td>
<td></td>
<td>867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>502.</td>
<td>Section of Female Pelvis, showing position of Viscera</td>
<td></td>
<td>869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>503.</td>
<td>The Uterus and its Appendages, anterior view</td>
<td></td>
<td>874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>504.</td>
<td>Section of the Ovary of a Virgin</td>
<td></td>
<td>874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>505.</td>
<td>Section of the Graafian Vesicle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>After Von Baer</td>
<td></td>
<td>874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>506.</td>
<td>Inguinal Hernia, Superficial Dissection</td>
<td></td>
<td>879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>507.</td>
<td>Inguinal Hernia, showing the Internal Oblique, Cremaster, and Spermatic</td>
<td></td>
<td>881</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Canal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>508.</td>
<td>Inguinal Hernia, showing the Transversalis Muscle, the Transversalis Fascia,</td>
<td></td>
<td>888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and the Internal Abdominal Ring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>509.</td>
<td>Femoral Hernia, Superficial Dissection</td>
<td></td>
<td>887</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>510.</td>
<td>Femoral Hernia, showing Fascia Lata and Saphenous Opening</td>
<td></td>
<td>888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>511.</td>
<td>Femoral Hernia, Iliac portion of Fascia Lata removed, and Sheath of Femoral</td>
<td></td>
<td>890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vessels and Femoral Canal exposed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512.</td>
<td>Hernia; the Relations of the Femoral and Internal Abdominal Rings, seen</td>
<td></td>
<td>892</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>from within the Abdomen, right side</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513.</td>
<td>Plan of Dissection of Perineum and Ischio-rectal Region</td>
<td></td>
<td>896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>514.</td>
<td>The Perineum; the Integument and Superficial Layer of Superficial Fascia</td>
<td></td>
<td>898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reflected</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>515.</td>
<td>The Superficial Muscles and Vessels of the Perineum</td>
<td></td>
<td>899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>516.</td>
<td>Deep Perineal Fascia; on the Left Side the Anterior Layer has been removed</td>
<td></td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>517.</td>
<td>A View of the Position of the Viscera at the Outlet of the Pelvis</td>
<td></td>
<td>903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>518.</td>
<td>A Transverse Section of the Pelvis, showing the Pelvic Fascia</td>
<td></td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>519.</td>
<td>Side View of the Pelvic Viscera of the Male Subject, showing the Pelvic</td>
<td></td>
<td>905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and Perineal Fascia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>520.</td>
<td>The Pelvic Fascia</td>
<td></td>
<td>906</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**LANDMARKS, MEDICAL AND SURGICAL.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>521.</td>
<td>Outline of the Heart, its Valves, and the Lungs</td>
<td></td>
<td>924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522.</td>
<td>Opishtontos</td>
<td></td>
<td>928</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*After Bell*
ANATOMY,

DESCRIPTION AND SURGICAL.

INTRODUCTION.

GENERAL ANATOMY.

The fluids of the body, which are intended for its nutrition, are the lymph, the chyle, and the blood. There are other fluids also which partially subserve the same purpose, as the saliva, the gastric juice, the bile, the intestinal secretion; and others which are purely excrementitious, as the urine. All these fluids form a part of the bulk of the body under ordinary circumstances. But there is no need to describe the rest in this place, since they are the secretions of special organs, and are described, as far as is judged necessary for the purpose of this work, in subsequent pages. We shall here speak first of the blood, and next of the lymph and chyle.

THE BLOOD.

The blood is a fluid holding a large number of minute cells or corpuscles in suspension. Its general physical characters are so well known that we need merely say that it is of a dark red or purple color in the veins, and of a bright red or scarlet in the arteries; that it is viscid, drying rapidly, and with a clammy feeling; salt to the taste, slightly alkaline, and with a specific gravity of about 1055.

General Composition of the Blood.—On standing, blood, under ordinary circumstances, soon separates into two parts—a fluid called the "serum," and a clot or "coagulum." The latter is not merely the cells or blood-corpuscles spoken of above as held in suspension, and which have subsided out of the fluid, but consists besides of fibrin which has been held in solution in the fluid blood, and which in its solidification has enclosed and implicated the blood-corpuscles as they subside.

The blood is thus seen to consist naturally of two parts, the plasma, or liquor sanguinis, a fluid rich in fibrin, and the blood-cells, or blood-corpuscles; and when drawn from the body, of two parts composed differently to the above,—viz. the clot, which comprises the blood-corpuscles and the fibrin of the plasma; and the serum, which consists of the remainder of the plasma.

The blood-corpuscles, blood-disks, or blood-globules, as they are more commonly called, are of two kinds, the red and the white. The red globules are far the more numerous, and are those which are always intended when the expression blood-disks or blood-globules is used without any other qualification. They
are said to be in man about three or four hundred times as numerous as the white (Harley); by others only fifty times as numerous (Todd and Bowman). They differ very much in size and shape in different animals (Fig. 1). In man their size varies considerably, even in the same drop of blood, between the limits of \( \frac{2}{1000} \) and \( \frac{5}{1000} \) of an inch in diameter, the average being about \( \frac{3}{1000} \) (Todd and Bowman). They are circular disks, bi-concave in profile, having a slight central depression, with a raised border (as seen in Fig. 2, b). Their color appears of a faint yellow when they are seen singly, but it is to their aggregation that the blood owes its red hue. Human blood-disks present no trace of a nucleus. They consist of a tough elastic transparent stroma uniformly pervaded by a coloring matter called hemoglobin. When the blood is circulating, under the microscope, in one of the lower animals, the blood-globules are seen to be separate from each other, and are also separated from the wall of the vessel by an interval of air. Doubtless the same is the case in the human body; but when drawn and examined on a slide without reagents, the blood-globules often collect into heaps like rouleaux of coin (Fig. 2, c). Their shape is very soon influenced by the medium in which they are placed, and by the specific gravity of that medium. In water they swell up, lose their color, and cease to be visible, leaving the white corpuscles in the field. Solutions of salt or sugar, denser than the serum, give them a stellate appearance; and the usual shape may be restored by diluting the solution to the proper point. A solution of the proper strength merely separates the blood-globules mechanically, without changing their shape.

There can be no doubt that the difference in color between arterial and venous blood must be due to some minute difference in the red blood-globules; and it is also in the highest degree probable that the chemical differences between these two kinds of blood are due, in part at least, to such differences; but the change has not hitherto been rendered perceptible either to the microscope or to chemical analysis. At the same time, the researches of Professor Stokes show that the coloring matter of the blood produces different effects on the solar spectrum, according as it is in a more or less oxidized condition; and it is in the highest degree probable that the same change in the oxidation of the contents of the blood-globules produces the difference in color between arterial and venous blood.

The human white corpuscles (Fig. 3) are rather larger than the red, and have an irregular or granular surface. A nucleus becomes perceptible on the addition of acetic acid. They are very similar to, if not identical with, the cor-

---

1 Hirt puts the proportion as low as 1:1761 during fasting, and 1:695 or 1:429 after food (Külliker). Vesication, by withdrawing so much larger a proportion of the red globules, and also by favoring the absorption of lymphatic fluid into the blood, much increases the relative proportion of the white corpuscles, so that Külliker asserts that in the horse, after enormous vena-secition (up to 50 lbs.) the colored and colorless corpuscles appear equally numerous.

2 Proceedings of Royal Society, 1864.
puscles of the lymph and chyle, though somewhat more acted upon by acetic acid than the latter. Their proportion appears to vary considerably in different parts of the circulation, being much larger in the blood of the splenic vein and hepatic vein than in other parts of the body, while in the splenic artery they are very scanty. The colorless corpuscles bear a strong resemblance also to the cells found in pus. It is well known that these colorless corpuscles have the remarkable properties of locomotion and of "amoeboïd" changes, so that, examined during life, they may show various shapes. (Fig. 4.)

From the fact that cells exactly like the colorless corpuscles are being constantly furnished to the blood by the ducts of the lymphatic glands, the chyle-ducts (and even the liver in the foetus), and also from their varying proportion in different parts of the circulation, and

Fig. 4.

Human colorless blood-corpuscle, showing its successive changes of outline within ten minutes when kept moist on a warm stage. (Schofield.)

in different pathological conditions, the colorless corpuscles are usually regarded—with, at any rate, considerable probability,—as an earlier stage of the colored blood-disks.

Fat-granules are seen in the blood of the lower animals, and occasionally in the blood of pregnant women; also, according to Kölliker, in other persons after the abundant use of milk or brandy, as well as in those who are fasting; which he attributes, in the latter case, to the absorption of the fat of the body. But, under ordinary circumstances, the granular base of the chyle, poured into the blood, through the veins at the root of the neck, disappears as the blood passes through the lungs.

Gases of the Blood.—A given quantity of blood contains rather less than half the same volume of gases. These are carbonic acid, oxygen, and nitrogen. The relative quantity is roughly stated thus: Carbonic acid about two-thirds of the whole quantity of gas, oxygen rather less than one-third, nitrogen below one-tenth (Huxley). The nitrogen is unimportant. It (or at least the greater part of it) is merely absorbed from the atmosphere under the pressure to which the blood is exposed, and can therefore be mechanically removed, as can also a part of the oxygen and carbonic acid; but the greater part of the oxygen is in loose chemical combination with the haemoglobin of the blood-corpuscles, and the greater part of the carbonic acid seems to be in stable chemical combination with the salts of the serum, though a certain proportion is also combined loosely with the blood-globules.

The experiments by which these facts are proved will be found in the physiological treatises.

The fluid part of the blood, the liquor sanguinis, or plasma, is again composed of a permanently fluid portion—the serum—and of fibrin, which coagulates

---

¹ The quantity of gases contained varies, of course, with a great number of different conditions, and especially according as the blood is arterial or venous. Hermann states that the proportion of oxygen varies from 16.9 vols. per cent. in arterial to 5.9 per cent. in venous blood, that arterial blood contains on an average about 30 vols. per cent., and venous about 25 per cent., of carbonic acid; and this author places the proportion of nitrogen as low as from 1 to 2 vols. per cent.
spontaneously when out of the body, but which is held in solution during life. The fibrin can be separated from blood after it has been drawn by whipping it with twigs, to which the fibrin as it coagulates adheres. The fibrin does not exist as such in the blood, but is formed during coagulation by the union of two substances (fibrino-plastin and fibrinogen) which exist separate in the blood. For the experiments which prove this fact, and for the account of the substances themselves, as well as the properties of the blood and the phenomena of its coagulation, I must again refer to the treatises on Physiology. The liquor sanguinis may be obtained free from the red-corpuscles by filtration in animals whose blood-globules are sufficiently large, or in mammalia by exposing the blood to a freezing temperature till the corpuscles have subsided. By this process, or by removing a portion of the clear liquor which is found above the buffy coat of inflammatory blood just after the latter has formed, the plasma may be obtained, and will then separate by coagulation into a colorless clot of fibrin and saline fluid. The fibrin-clot consists of interlacing structureless strings, which contain in their meshes some white corpuscles accidentally enclosed in them.

The fluid left after the coagulation of the fibrin, which is the serum of the blood properly so called, is yellowish, and contains so much albumen that it solidifies almost completely on being heated. It is alkaline from the presence

![Fig. 5.]


of free soda and carbonate of soda. The chemical composition of the blood is complex, as might be anticipated of a fluid from which all the various tissues of the body are to be formed; and it must of course vary in various parts of
LYMPH AND CHYLE.

the circulation. The following seems to be as accurate an analysis as possible. It is quoted in Carpenter’s "Physiology," by Power, from M. Gorrup-Bezanez, who procured two samples of the same person’s blood, and had them analyzed by himself and three other competent chemists. The separate analyses are given, but the variations are too slight to be worth quoting. The following were M. Gorrup-Bezanez’s results:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st Spec.</th>
<th>2nd Spec.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>796.93</td>
<td>783.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid matters</td>
<td>203.07</td>
<td>216.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrin</td>
<td>1.95</td>
<td>1.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpuscles</td>
<td>103.23</td>
<td>115.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albumen</td>
<td>70.75</td>
<td>62.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extractive matter and salts</td>
<td>27.14</td>
<td>36.95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The crystals which form in the blood under certain circumstances and when treated by certain reagents ought to be described, in consequence of their importance as a means of distinguishing human from other kinds of blood. They are of three kinds: 1. Hæmatin crystals, found in normal blood, particularly in the spleen. These are procured by the addition of a little water, or by agitating the blood with ether, by either of which means the blood-corpuscles are ruptured, and their contents crystallize on evaporation. 2. Hæmatoidin crystals, found in old clots. 3. Hæmin crystals, formed by mixing dried blood with an equal quantity of common salt and boiling it with a few drops of glacial acetic acid till the whole has dissolved. A drop of the mixture placed on the slide will show the crystals on cooling.

Fig. 5 shows these three forms of crystals from human blood, together with some from the lower animals, for comparison.

The importance of being acquainted with the crystals found in human blood is obvious, and more particularly those which can be obtained from dried blood; since in this way old blood-stains can be recognized as being human or otherwise, even long after their formation. The spectrum analysis, however, is said to be a more delicate test of fresh blood.

LYMPH AND CHYLE.

The lymph and the chyle are almost identical in constitution, though the proportion of their constituents varies in different parts of the vascular system. The lymph is the secretion of a system of vessels and glands, to be more fully described in the sequel, which takes up from the worn-out tissues that which is still available for purposes of nutrition and returns it into the veins close to the heart, there to be mixed with the mass of the blood. The chyle is a fluid secreted by the villi of the small intestines from the food. It is intermingled with the lymph, and is poured into the circulation through the same channels. (See the description of the Thoracic Duct, Lacteals, and Ductus Lymphaticus dexter, in the body of the work.)

On microscopical examination, chyle displays besides the lymph-corpuscles a large number of fatty granules, “the granular base of the chyle” (Fig. 6, a), oil globules, free nuclei, and a few

---

1 It may not be amiss to remind the student that the lacteal or chyliferous vessels only convey a portion of the nutritious matter from the food, and this only during digestion. At other times they seem to act precisely as ordinary lymphatics.
red blood-globules. The white color of the chyle is due to the abundance of the molecular base. These molecules are almost or entirely absent in lymph.

In other respects lymph and chyle are indistinguishable by microscopic examination, but in external appearance they are very different.

Chyle is a milk-white fluid, which coagulates spontaneously, and then on standing separates more or less completely into a clear part, the *liquor chylipher*, which is identical with the liquor sanguinis, and a thinnish jelly-like clot, consisting of fibrin in which chyle-corpuscles and the fatty molecules are entangled. Its analysis, as given by Dr. G. O. Rees from the chyle of a criminal examined shortly after his execution, and in whom the thoracic duct was found distended with chyle, is as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substance</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>90.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albumen, with traces of fibrinous matter</td>
<td>7.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aqueous extractive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcoholic extractive or osmazome</td>
<td>.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkaline chloride, carbonate and sulphate, with traces of alkaline phosphate and oxide of iron</td>
<td>.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fatty matters</td>
<td>.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lymph, as its name implies, is a watery fluid. In the lymph the molecular base is absent, and the lymph-corpuscles are very few in number, and indeed are said by Köliker to be absent in the smaller vessels. According to the same author, the size of the lymph-globules increases as the fluid ascends higher in the course of the circulation. In this view the lymph is at first a mere albuminous fluid, and the chyle at first a mere albumino-fatty fluid, the cells in both being produced during the passage of the fluid through the glands (lymphatic or mesenteric, as the case may be), and being further elaborated, and even new cells produced by the division of the old ones, in the course of the circulation. The presence of mature blood-globules in the lymph or in the chyle is regarded by most authors as accidental—i.e. produced by the manipulation of the dissector; but Dr. M. Foster says that the pink color seen on the surface of clotted chyle, even when no blood is mixed with it, is due to immature red corpuscles proper to the chyle.

The lymph-corpuscles, as seen in the above figure, are in all essential respects the same in the chyle, the lymph, and the blood, where they have been described above as the colorless blood-corpuscles. In the chyle and lymph, however, they vary very much in size. In some cases several younger cells are found inclosed in the original corpuscles.

**CELLS AND PROTOPLASM.**

All the solid tissues of the body are originally developed out of cells containing a matter now usually styled protoplasm, and many such cells persist in mature structures. In the higher organisms all such cells are nucleated—i.e. they contain in their interior a smaller cell or nucleus, which frequently presents in its centre a nucleolus. The protoplasm is situated around the nucleus, and is usually inclosed in a limiting membrane or cell-wall. Protoplasm ( sarcode, blastema, germinal matter, or bioplasma) is usually granular, sometimes hyaline, is indistinguishable in its chemical relations from albumen, of a semi-fluid, viscid consistence, and distinguished by its vital properties of ameboid motion (of which ciliary movement may be taken to be a variety), nutrition—that is, the power of attracting to itself the materials of growth from the surrounding matter—and reproduction, by means of which fresh cells are produced either by segmentation or budding. These processes commence in the nucleus, which is a special

---

1 Phil. Trans. 1842, p. 82.
CELLULAR AND FIBROUS TISSUE.

collection of protoplasm marked off by a definite outline from the rest of the cell, and distinguished from it by resisting the action of acids and alkalies which destroy or render invisible the body of the cell, and by imbibing the stain of carmine, haematoxyline, &c. In the reproduction of cells by segmentation the nucleus splits; in that by germination it sends off a process; and thus new nuclei are produced which are surrounded by their own cell substance, and gradually detach themselves from the parent cell. The most remarkable property of cells is that of growth, development, or differentiation, by means of which the most various solid tissues, or even fluids containing cells, are developed out of cells originally to all appearance identical.

The death of cells is accomplished either by their mechanical detachment from the surface, preceded possibly by their bursting and discharging their contents, or by various forms of degeneration, fatty, pigmentary, or calcareous.

Cells are held together either by anastomosis of their processes, by intercellular substance, semi-fluid, hyaline, or of various higher forms which are, in fact, metamorphosed cells, or by direct contact of their walls.¹

CELLULAR AND FIBROUS TISSUE.

The cellular or areolar tissue is so called because its meshes are easily distended, and thus separated into cells or spaces which all open freely into each other, and are consequently easily blown up with air, or permeated by fluid, when injected into any part of the tissue. Such spaces, however, do not exist in the natural condition of the body, but the whole tissue forms one unbroken membrane composed of a number of interlacing fibres, variously superimposed. Hence the old term "the cellular membrane" is in many parts of the body more appropriate than its more modern equivalents. The chief use of the cellular tissue is to bind parts together; while by the laxity of its fibres and the permeability of its areole it allows them to move on each other, and affords a ready exit for inflammatory and other effused fluids. It is consequently often denominated connective tissue, and this term is still more appropriate to the fibrous tissue which forms the bond of connection between the intimate elements of solid organs; in which more restricted sense the term is often used in modern works. The areolar tissue consists essentially of two forms of fibrous tissue, the white and yellow, intermixed in varying proportions, together with a great quantity of capillary vessels, nerves, and lymphatics, and in most situations it contains fat. The cellular tissue is continuous over the whole body; so that fluid, and especially air, when injected forcibly into it—as from a wound of the lung or bowel—may be diffused into the remotest parts.

The white fibrous tissue (Fig. 8) consists of bundles of wavy fibres interlacing with each other, each composed of minute filaments, or fibrille, which appear homogeneous, and measure from \( \frac{1}{200} \) to \( \frac{1}{2000} \) of an inch in diameter. The larger fibres have no definite size, but are supposed to be solid masses formed by an agglutination, as it were, of the ultimate fibrille. Acted upon by acetic acid, the white fibrous tissue swells up into an indistinct uniform mass, which

¹ The above is abbreviated from the admirably clear description in Kirke's "Physiology" by Morrant Baker.
gradually becomes indistinguishable; and in the areolar tissue, when thus treated, the yellow elastic element comes alone into view.

The yellow elastic fibrous tissue (Fig. 9) is an aggregation of fibres, which are considerably larger in size than the fibrille of the white fibrous element, varying from \( \frac{3}{25} \) to \( \frac{2}{10} \) of an inch in diameter (Harley). The fibres branch and anastomose freely with one another. They are homogeneous in appearance, with dark borders, and are usually seen curled up at their broken ends. They remain unaltered by acetic acid.

Each of these elements of the connective tissue is developed from cells. Kölliker describes the yellow elastic fibres as developed from the stellate branching corpuscles, which may sometimes be found free in the areolar tissue, and which Virchow has denominated "connective-tissue-corpuscles" (Fig. 10); while the white fibrous tissue is formed from the coalescence of fusiform cells, which elongate into fibrille as shown by Fig. 11.

The two tissues just described are very widely distributed in the body, especially the white fibrous tissue. This latter forms nearly the whole of all the firm investing membranes; viz., the muscular fasciae, the periosteum, the investments of the various glands (such as the tunica albuginea testis, the capsule of
ADIPOSE TISSUE.

the kidney, &c.), the investing sheath of the nerves (neurilemma), and of various organs, as the penis and the eye (sheath of the corpora cavernosa and spongiosum, sclerotic and choroid). Into all these parts, however, the elastic tissue enters in greater or less proportion. The tendons and most of the ligaments are also formed almost entirely of the white fibrous tissue, but with some elastic fibres intermixed. The basis of the serous and mucous membranes is formed of connective tissue, disposed in a layer. The common subcutaneous cellular or cellulo-adipose tissue has been taken above as the typical form from which to describe connective tissue. Connective tissue also enters largely into the formation of the blood vessels, glands, and, in fact, almost every organ in the body. The organs which are formed almost exclusively of the yellow elastic tissue are the ligamenta subflava of the vertebrae, the elastic ligaments of the larynx, the longitudinal elastic fibres of the trachea, the elastic layer of the middle coat of the arteries, and in quadrupeds the ligamentum nuchae.

Free cells are found in the areolar tissue, as indicated above. The chief forms are the spindle-shaped and the stellate, but numerous intermediate forms are described by recent observers; and of late much interest has been excited by Von Recklinghausen's discovery in the cellular tissue of cold-blooded animals of "wandering cells," or cells endowed with the power of automatic motion, and of changing their shape. These cells appear identical with the white globules of the blood; and it would seem from the researches of Stricker, Cohnheim, and others, that the walls of the capillary vessels are permeable to the latter bodies, which are thus allowed to escape into the cellular tissue, there to undergo development, normally into the natural cells and cellular tissue, or abnormally into the corpuscular forms of lymph and pus, according to circumstances. Treated with nitrate of silver, the cellular tissue is seen to consist of spaces formed by the fibres, united together by a homogeneous cement or "ground substance," and filled by the cellular elements, which contain the protoplasm out of which the whole is developed and regenerated.

Two special kinds of cellular tissue must be described—the mucoid, and the lymphoid or retiform. The mucoid or gelatinous tissue exists chiefly in the "jelly of Wharton," which forms the bulk of the umbilical cord, and in some other tissues of the fetus; but in the adult body also the vitreous humor of the eye is formed of gelatinous cellular tissue. This tissue is formed of rounded nucleated cells separated by a transparence jelly-like substance which in the umbilical cord shows traces of fibrillation.

Retiform, adenoid, or lymphoid connective tissue is found extensively in many parts of the body, often surrounding the minute blood vessels, and forming the commencement of lymphatic channels. It is formed of an interlacement of very fine fibres, at the nodal points of which stellate cells are situated. The interstices of the fibres are filled with the rounded granular corpuscles of the lymph. The neuroglia, or fine gelatinous connective tissue which supports the nervous elements in the cerebro-spinal axis and in the retina, is regarded as a modified form of the retiform connective tissue.

---

ADIPOSE TISSUE.

The common cellular membrane contains a variable quantity of adipose tissue. This tissue is found also in various parts of the viscera—as the mesentery, the surface of the heart, &c.—and fat enters largely into the formation of the marrow of the bones. There is, however, a difference which should be attended to between mere fat and adipose tissue. Adipose tissue consists of a number of vesicles formed by an extremely delicate structureless membrane, round or

1 On this subject reference may be made to Von Recklinghausen, in Virchow's Archiv, Bd. xxviii., and Rollett, in Stricker's Human and Comparative Histology, translated by Power, chap. ii., where the reader will find references to Stricker, Cohnheim, Kühne, and others.
spherical where they have not been subject to pressure; otherwise, variously flattened. They are supplied and held together by capillary bloodvessels, and fine connective tissue, and each vesicle is filled with fat.

[Fig. 12.

Bloodvessels of fat. 1. Minute flattened fat-lobule, in which the vessels only are represented. 2. Terminal artery. 4. Primitive vein. 5. Fat-cells of one border of the globule separately represented. (Magnified 100 diameters.) 2. Plan of arrangement of capillaries on exterior of fat-cells, more highly magnified.]

Fat is an unorganized substance, consisting of liquid oily matter (glycerine) in combination with certain fatty acids, stearic, margaric, and elaidic. Sometimes the acids separate spontaneously before the fat is examined, and are seen under the microscope in a crystalline form, as in the figure. By boiling the tissue in ether or strong alcohol, the fat may be extracted from the vesicle, which is then seen empty and shrunken.

Fig. 13.

Adipose tissue. α, starlike appearance, from crystallization of fatty acids. (High power.)

Besides the fully-formed fat-cells above described, others may occasionally be found in the course of formation, especially in cases of sudden death during robust health. They are described by Rollett as, in the first stage, small round granular cells, provided with a roundish nucleus, into the interior of which a strongly-refracting drop of fat is then secreted, which is at first surrounded by a ring of the granular matter, and gradually increases so as to fill the cell. As the granular matter becomes less and less, the nucleus, which can at first be easily
recognized, becomes less perceptible, but according to this author can always be brought into view by appropriate reagents. Fat is said to be first detected in the human embryo about the fourteenth week.

In various parts of the body pigment is found, viz. in the hairs, in the iris and choroid coat of the eye, in the lungs, in the nerve-cells, in the rete mucosum in the dark races, and in some parts of the body—such as the areola of the nipple. Such parts are of dark color even in the fair races, except Albinos, in whom pigment is absent. Pigment-cells are also found in the blood, according to Virchow.

In many situations the color is produced simply by the presence of dark granules scattered about without any definite arrangement; in the inner layer of the choroid coat (or external layer of the retina) the pigment forms a regular layer of hexagonal nucleated cells filled with pigment-granules; in other parts the pigment is contained in branching cells, probably the connective-tissue-corpuscles filled with pigment-granules; and in most situations, such as the nerve-cells and the epidermis, the pigment-granules form a greater or less element in the contents of the nucleated cells of the part. (Fig. 32.) In the dark races the color of the skin is due to the accumulation of pigment in the deeper layers of the epidermis—the rete mucosum.

**CARTILAGE.**

Cartilage is a non-vascular structure which is found in various parts of the body—in adult life chiefly in the joints, in the parietae of the thorax, and in various tubes, such as the air-passages, nostrils, and ear, which are to be kept permanently open. In the fetus at an early period the greater part of the skeleton is cartilaginous. As this cartilage is afterwards replaced by bone, it is called temporary, in opposition to that which remains unossified during the whole of life, and which is called permanent.

Cartilage is divided according to its minute anatomy into true or hyaline cartilage, fibrous, or fibro-cartilage, and yellow, or elastic, or reticular cartilage. The various cartilages in the body are also classified according to their function and position, into articular, interarticular, costal, and membraniform.

True cartilage, which may be taken as the type of this tissue, consists of a gristly mass, of a pearly bluish color, enveloped in a fibrous membrane, the **perichondrium**, from the vessels of which it imbibes its nutritive fluids, being itself destitute of blood-vessels; nor have nerves been traced into it. Its intimate structure is very simple. If a thin slice be examined under the microscope, it will be found to consist of cells of a rounded or angular shape, with nucleus and nucleolus, lying in groups, surrounded by a granular or almost homogeneous matrix. By boiling the cartilage for some hours, and treating it with acetic acid, the cell-membrane which lines the cavity in the matrix may be made visible.

---

1 Besides these varieties of cartilage met with in the adult human subject, there is a variety called the **cellular**, which consists entirely or almost entirely of cells, united in some cases by a network of very fine fibres, in other cases apparently destitute of any intercellular substance. This is found in the external ear of the rat and some other animals, and is present in the chorda dorsalis of the human embryo, but is not found in any other human structure.
By the application of certain reagents or by digestion in warm acidulated water the matrix is found to be arranged in the form of concentric rings around the cartilage-cell, forming what is described by some authors as the cartilage-capsule, or cell-territory; and Rollet describes a system of dark lines, running in a straight direction through the matrix and often connecting the several cell-cavities with each other, which are brought into view by the action of osmic acid. These are regarded by some anatomists as nutritive canals.

The articular cartilages, the temporary cartilages, and the costal cartilages, are all of the hyaline variety. They present minute differences in the size and shape of their cells, and in the arrangement of the matrix. In the articular cartilages, which show no tendency to ossification, the matrix is finely granular under a high power; the cells and nuclei are small, and are disposed parallel to the surface in the superficial part, while nearer to the bone they become vertical. Articular cartilages have a tendency to split in a vertical direction, probably from some peculiarity in the intimate structure, or arrangement of the component parts, of the matrix. In disease this tendency to a fibrous splitting becomes very manifest. Articular cartilage in the adult is not covered by perichondrium, at least on its free surface, where it is exposed to friction, though an epithelial layer can be traced in the foetus over the whole surface of the cartilage, and in the adult over a small part of its circumference, continuous with the epithelium of the synovial membrane. This is probably the remains of an investing membrane which is worn away in after-life by the action of the joint. Articular cartilage forms a thin incrustation upon the joint surfaces of the bones, and its elasticity enables it to break the force of any concussion, whilst its smoothness affords ease and freedom of movement. It varies in thickness according to the shape of the bone on which it lies; where this is convex, the cartilage is thickest over the convexity where the greatest pressure is received, and the reverse is the case in the concavities of the joints. Articular cartilage appears to imbibe its nutriment partly from the vessels of the neighboring synovial membrane, partly from those of the bone upon which it is implanted. Mr. Toynbee has shown that the minute vessels of the cancellous tissue, as they approach the articular lamella, dilate, and, forming arches, return into the substances of the bone.

Temporary cartilage, and the process of its ossification, will be described with bone.

In the costal cartilages the cells and nuclei are large, and the matrix has a tendency to fibrous striation, especially in old age. These cartilages also are very prone to ossify. In the thickest parts of the costal cartilages a few large vascular channels may be detected. This appears at first sight an exception to the statement that cartilage is a non-vascular tissue, but it is not so really, for the vessels give no branches to the cartilage-substance itself, and the channels may rather be looked upon as involutions of the perichondrium. The ensiform cartilage may be regarded as one of the costal cartilages, and the cartilages of the nose and of the larynx and trachea resemble them in microscopical characters, except the epiglottis and cornicula laryngis, which are of the reticular variety.

The hyaline cartilages, especially in adult and advanced life, are prone to
calcify—that is to say, to have their matrix permeated by the salts of lime, without any appearance of true bone. This process of calcification occurs also, and still more frequently according to Rollett, in such cartilages as those of the trachea, which are prone afterwards to conversion into true bone. It is on the confines of true ossification that this calcareous change or degeneration is most liable to occur, so that it is rare to find true bone and true cartilage in juxtaposition at the confines of the normal ossification, as, for instance, at the joint ends, at the ends of the ribs, in the symphysis pubis and intervertebral cartilages.

Fibro-cartilage consists of a mixture of white fibrous and cartilaginous tissues in various proportions; it is to the first of these two constituents that its flexibility and toughness are chiefly owing, and to the latter its elasticity. The fibro-cartilages admit of arrangement into four groups—interarticular, connecting, circumferential, and stratiform.

The interarticular fibro-cartilages (menisci) are flattened fibro-cartilaginous plates, of a round, oval, or sickle-like form, interposed between the articular cartilages of certain joints. They are free on both surfaces, thinner towards their centre than at their circumference, and held in position by their extremities being connected to the surrounding ligaments. The synovial membrane of the joint is prolonged over them a short distance from their attached margin. They are found in the temporo-maxillary, sterno-clavicular, acromio-clavicular, wrist, and knee joints. These cartilages are usually found in those joints which are most exposed to violent concussions, and subject to frequent movement. Their use is—to maintain the apposition of the opposed surfaces in their various motions; to increase the depth of the articular surface, and give ease to the gliding movement; to moderate the effects of great pressure, and deaden the intensity of the shocks to which the parts may be submitted. Virchow describes in the semilunar cartilages of the knee a system of anastomosing tubes, formed by cells which communicate with each other, and by means of which the nutritious fluids are conveyed into the interior of the mass. The semilunar disks, according to this author, are wrongly denominated cartilages, since they yield no chondrine on boiling; and he appears to regard them as a modification of tendinous structure, which, however, agrees with the cartilages in the important particular of being non-vascular. (See Virchow's "Cellular Pathology," by Chance, pp. 87–89.)

The connecting fibro-cartilages are interposed between the bony surfaces of those joints which admit of only slight mobility, as between the bodies of the vertebrae and the pubic symphyses; they form disks, which adhere closely to both of the opposed bones, and are composed of concentric rings of fibrous tissue,
with cartilaginous laminae interposed, the former tissue predominating towards the circumference, the latter towards the centre.

The circumferential fibro-cartilages consist of a rim of fibro-cartilage, which surrounds the margin of some of the articular cavities, as the cotyloid cavity of the hip, and the glenoid cavity of the shoulder; they serve to deepen the articular surface and to protect the edges of the bone.

The stratiform fibro-cartilages are those which form a thin layer in the osseous grooves, through which the tendons of certain muscles glide.

Fig. 17.

Yellow cartilage, ear of horse. (High power)

The yellow or reticular cartilages found in the human body are the epiglottis, cornicula laryngis, and the cartilaginous parts of the ear (auricle and Eustachian tube). In this variety the cartilage-cells lie in the meshes of a network of yellow elastic fibres, with a double outline, branching and anastomosing in all directions. The fibres resemble those of the yellow elastic fibrous tissue, both in appearance and in being unaffected by acetic acid, and according to Rollett their continuity with the elastic fibres of the neighboring cellular tissue admits of being demonstrated.

The distinguishing feature of cartilage as to its chemical composition is that it yields on boiling a substance called chondrine, very similar to gelatine, but differing from it in not being precipitated by tannin.

BONE.

Structure and Physical Properties of Bone.—Bone is one of the hardest structures of the animal body; it possesses also a certain degree of toughness and elasticity. Its color, in a fresh state, is of a pinkish white externally, and deep red within. On examining a section of any bone, it is seen to be composed of two kinds of tissue, one of which is dense and compact in texture, like ivory: the other consisting of slender fibres and lamellas, which join to form a reticular structure; this, from its resemblance to lattice-work, is called cancellous. The compact tissue is always placed on the exterior of a bone; the cancellous tissue is always internal. The relative quantity of these two kinds of tissue varies in different bones, and in different parts of the same bone, as strength or lightness is requisite. Close examination of the compact tissue shows it to be extremely porous, so that the difference in structure between it and the cancellous tissue depends merely upon the different amount of solid matter, and the size and number of the spaces in each; the cavities being small in the compact tissue,
and the solid matter between them abundant; whilst in the cancellous tissue the spaces are large, and the solid matter in smaller quantity.

Bone during life is permeated by vessels, and is inclosed in a fibrous membrane, the periosteum, by means of which most of these vessels reach the hard tissue. If the periosteum be stripped from the surface of the living bone, small bleeding points are seen, which mark the entrance of the periosteal vessels; and on section during life every part of the bone will be seen to exude blood, from the minute vessels which ramify in the Haversian canals. The interior of the bones of the limbs presents a cylindrical cavity filled with marrow, and lined by a highly vascular areolar membrane, the medullary membrane or internal periosteum. The larger Haversian canals are also filled with marrow.

The periosteum adheres to the surface of the bones in nearly every part, excepting at their cartilaginous extremities. Where strong tendons or ligaments are attached to the bone, the periosteum is incorporated with them. It consists of two layers closely united together; the outer one formed chiefly of connective tissue, containing occasionally a few fat-cells; the inner one, of elastic fibres of the finer kind, forming dense membranous networks, which can be again separated into several layers (Köllicher). In young bones the periosteum is thick, and very vascular, and is intimately connected at either end of the bone with the epiphysial cartilage, but less closely with the shaft, from which it is separated by a layer of soft blastema, in which ossification proceeds on the exterior of the young bone. Later in life the periosteum is thinner, less vascular, and more closely connected with the adjacent bone, this adhesion growing stronger as age advances. The periosteum serves as a nidus for the ramification of the vessels previous to their distribution in the bone; hence the liability of bone to exfoliation or necrosis, when, from injury, it is denuded of this membrane.

The marrow differs in composition at different periods of life, and in different bones. In young bones, it is a transparent reddish fluid, of tenacious consistence, free from fat; and contains numerous minute roundish cells with many nuclei. In the shafts of adult long bones, the marrow is of a yellow color, and contains, in 100 parts, 96 fat, 1 areolar tissue and vessels, and 3 of fluid with extractive matters; whilst, in the flat and short bones, in the articular ends of the long bones, in the bodies of the vertebrae, in the base of the cranium, and in the sternum and ribs, it is of a red color, and contains, in 100 parts, 75 water and 25 solid matter, consisting of albumen, fibrin, extractive matter, salts, and a mere trace of fat. The red marrow is said by Köllicher to consist of a small quantity of areolar tissue and numerous medullary cells, and fat-cells with a large quantity of fluid.

Vessels of Bone.—The bloodvessels of bone are very numerous. Those of the compact tissue are derived from a close and dense network of vessels, ramifying in the periosteum. From this membrane, vessels pass into the minute orifices in the compact tissue, running through the canals which traverse its substance. The cancellous tissue is supplied in a similar way, but by a less numerous set of larger vessels, which, perforating the outer compact tissue, are distributed to the cavities of the spongy portion of the bone. In the long bones, numerous apertures may be seen at the ends near the articular surfaces, some of which give passage to the arteries referred to; but the most numerous and largest apertures are for the veins of the cancellous tissue which run separately from the arteries. The medullary canal in the shafts of the long bones is supplied by one large artery (or sometimes more), which enters the bone at the nutrient foramen (situated in most cases near the centre of the shaft), and perforates obliquely the compact substance. This medullary or nutrient artery, usually accompanied by one or two veins, sends branches upwards and downwards, to supply the medullary membrane, which lines the central cavity and the adjoining canals. The ramifications of this vessel anastomose with the arteries both of the cancellous and compact tissues. In most of the flat, and in many of the short spongy bones, one or more large apertures are observed, which transmit,
to the central parts of the bone, vessels corresponding to the medullary arteries and veins.

The veins emerge from the long bones in three places (Kölliker). 1. By a large vein which accompanies the nutrient artery; 2. By numerous large and small veins at the articular extremities; 3. By many small veins which arise in the compact substance. In the flat cranial bones the veins are large, very numerous, and run in tortuous canals in the diploe tissue, the sides of the canals being formed of a thin lamella of bone, perforated here and there for the passage of branches from the adjacent cancelli. The veins thus inclosed and supported by the osseous structures have exceedingly thin coats; and when the bony structure is divided, they remain patent, and do not contract in the canals in which they are contained. Hence the constant occurrence of purulent abscession after amputation, in those cases where the stump becomes inflamed, and the cancellous tissue is infiltrated and bathed in pus.

Lymphatic vessels have been traced, by Cruikshank, into the substance of bone, but Kölliker doubts their existence. Nerves are distributed freely to the periosteum, and accompany the nutrient arteries into the interior of the bone. They are said, by Kölliker, to be most numerous in the articular extremities of the long bones, in the vertebrae, and the larger flat bones.

Minute Anatomy.—The intimate structure of bone, which in all essential particulars is identical in the compact and cancellous tissue, is most easily studied in a transverse section from the compact wall of one of the long bones after maceration, such as is shown in Fig. 18. The large round spaces seen in the figure are the Haversian canals, and in these canals the larger vessels of the bone ramify. The smaller Haversian canals contain arteries, the larger, veins, a single vessel being lodged in each canal. The fine lines leading out of (or into) these
canals, are called *canaliculi*, and the irregular dark spaces, which may be noticed to have a general circular arrangement round the Haversian canals, are called the *lacunae*. The canaliculi which originate in one lacuna most frequently run into a neighboring lacuna, or else into a neighboring Haversian canal; some of them, however, anastomose with others in their neighborhood, and a few appear to terminate in blind extremities, or to bend backwards. The concentric rings of *lacunae* round each Haversian canal are called *lamellae*. The irregular intervals which would be left by the juxtaposition of these lamellae, are seen in the figure to be filled up by *lacunae* and canaliculi, which communicate with the systems composing the adjacent lamellae. Besides the lamellae which are concentric to the Haversian systems there are other lamellae, most perceptible on the surface of the bone, which are concentric to the medullary cavity. These are most distinct in the adult bone. These lamellae, which are laid down around the axis of the bone itself, are called by some authors the *primary* or *fundamental lamellae*, to distinguish them from those laid down around the axis of the Haversian canals, the *secondary* or *special lamellae*. The interstitial lamellae found between the Haversian systems can sometimes be recognized as belonging to the primary lamellae; but this is not always the case. The interspaces between the *lacunae* and canaliculi are filled with a granular homogeneous solid material, the ultimate *mineral base* of the bone.

If a longitudinal section be taken, as in Fig. 19, the appearances are identical. The appearance of concentric rings is replaced by that of lamellae or rows of *lacunae* parallel to the course of the Haversian canals; and these canals appear like half-tubes instead of circular spaces. The tubes are seen to branch and communicate, so that each separate Haversian canal runs only a short distance. In other respects the structure has much the same appearance as in transverse sections.

In sections of thin plates of bone (as in the walls of the cells which form the cancellous tissue), the Haversian canals are absent, whenever the thickness of bone is not too great to allow of its nutritious juices being absorbed from the fibrous membrane coating either side by means of the *lacunae* and canaliculi only; but when the thickness becomes at all considerable, Haversian systems begin to appear. Thus the spaces of the cancellous tissue (*medullary spaces*) have the same function there that the Haversian canals have in the more compact tissue.

In the long bones, by maceration in dilute mineral acid, it may easily be shown that besides these microscopic lamellae surrounding each Haversian canal, the whole bone is composed of distinct laminae, concentrically disposed around the medullary tube. These laminae are crossed and pinned together, as it were, by the fibres of bone running obliquely through them, which were first described by Dr. Sharpey, and named by him *perforating fibres*. In the flat bones parallel or superimposed plates can be demonstrated similarly held together by perforating fibres, which are more numerous than in the long bones.¹

Besides the Haversian canals larger and irregular shaped spaces are found—*Haversian spaces*—which are, as it were, a transition from the Haversian canals to the medullary spaces of the cancellous tissue. It seems as if both the medullary spaces and the Haversian spaces are formed by absorption, as we shall try to explain in speaking of the development and growth of bone. These Haversian spaces are found chiefly in growing bones; but they occur also, though in less number, in the adult bones. They have irregular jagged outlines, and the adjoining systems of *lacunae* and canaliculi are seen to be eaten away by them.

When the microscopic structure of bone was first demonstrated, it was believed that the *lacunae* were solid cells, and their canaliculi solid processes from those cells. Subsequently, when it was seen that the Haversian canals are channels which lodge the vessels of the part, and the canaliculi and lacunar spaces by which the plasma of the blood, or the blood itself circulates through

¹ Sharpey, in Quain's Anatomy, 7th edit., p. xcv.
the tissue, it was taught that the lacunæ were hollow spaces filled during life with that fluid, and only lined (if lined at all) by a delicate membrane. But this view appears also to be delusive. Examination of the structure of the bone, when recent, has led Virchow to believe that the so-called lacunæ are really filled up during life with a nucleated cell, the processes from which pass down the canaliculi. It is by means of these cells that the fluids necessary for nutrition are brought into contact with the ultimate tissue of the bone.

The animal part of a bone may be obtained by immersing the bone for a considerable time in dilute mineral acid, after which process the bone comes out exactly the same size and shape as before, but perfectly flexible—so that a long bone (one of the ribs is the usual example) can easily be tied in a knot. If now a transverse section be made, the same general arrangement of the Haversian canals, lamellæ, lacunæ, and canaliculi is seen, though not so plainly as in the macerated specimen. If the individual lamellæ are examined, they are found to be composed of fibres, most of which are nearly parallel; but which interlace together, and anastomose or communicate with the fibres of the neighboring lamellæ. The organic or animal constituent of a bone is only incompletely removed by maceration, leaving the bone for an indefinite period perfectly tough and coherent; but after being long kept in a warm dry atmosphere, or by incineration in a furnace, the animal part may be entirely removed, and then the earthly constituent will retain the form of the original bone, but on the slightest force it will crumble down. The animal base is often called cartilage, but differs from it in the following respects: viz., that it is softer and more flexible, and when boiled with a high pressure is almost entirely resolved into gelatine. Cartilage does, however, form the animal basis of bone in certain parts of the skeleton. Thus, according to Tomes and De Morgan, it occurs in the petrous part of the temporal bone, and, according to Dr. Sharpey, on the articular ends of adult bones, lying underneath the natural cartilage of the joint.

Chemical Analysis. The organic constituent of bone forms about one-third, or 33.3 per cent.; the inorganic matter, two-thirds, or 66.7 per cent.; as is seen in the subjoined analysis by Berzelius:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organic Matter</th>
<th>Gelatin and bloodvessels</th>
<th>33.30</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic or Earthy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphate of lime</td>
<td></td>
<td>51.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbonate of lime</td>
<td></td>
<td>11.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluoride of calcium</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphate of magnesia</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soda and chloride of sodium</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

100.00

Some chemists add to this about 1 per cent. of fat.

The relative proportions of the two constituents of bone are found to differ in different bones of the skeleton, as shown by Dr. Owen Rees. Thus, the bones of the head, and the long bones of the extremities, contain more earthly matter than those of the trunk; and those of the upper extremity somewhat more than the corresponding bones of the lower extremity. The humerus contains more earthly matter than the bones of the forearm, and the femur more than the tibia and fibula. The vertebrae, ribs, and clavicle, contain nearly the same proportion of earthly matter. The metacarpal and metatarsal bones contain about the same proportion as those of the trunk.

Much difference exists in the analyses given by chemists as to the proportion between the two constituents of bone at different periods of life. According to
Schreger, and others, there is a considerable increase in the earthy constituents of the bones with advancing years. Dr. Rees states, that this is especially marked in the long bones, and the bones of the head, which, in the fetus, do not contain the excess of earthy matter found in those of the adult. But the bones of the trunk in the fetus, according to this analyst, contain as much earthy matter as those of the adult. On the other hand, the analyses of Stark and Von Bibra show, that the proportions of animal and earthy matter are almost precisely the same at different periods of life. According to the analyses of Von Bibra, Valentin, and Dr. Rees, the compact substance contains more earthy matter than the cancellous. The comparative analysis of the same bones in both sexes shows no essential difference between them.

There are facts of some practical interest, bearing upon the difference which seems to exist in the amount of the two constituents of bone at different periods of life. Thus, in the child, where the animal matter predominates, it is not uncommon to find, after an injury to the bones, that they become bent, or only partially broken, from the large amount of flexible animal matter which they contain. Again, in aged people, where the bones contain a large proportion of earthy matter, the animal matter at the same time being deficient in quantity and quality, the bones are more brittle, their elasticity is destroyed; and hence fracture takes place more readily. Some of the diseases, also, to which bones are liable, mainly depend on the disproportion between the two constituents of bone. Thus, in the disease called rickets, so common in the children of scrofulous parents, the bones become bent and curved, either from the superincumbent weight of the body, or under the action of certain muscles. This depends upon some defect of nutrition, by which bone becomes deprived of its normal proportion of earthy matter, whilst the animal matter is of unhealthy quality. In the vertebral of a rickety subject, Dr. Bostock found in 100 parts 79.75 animal, and 20.25 earthy matter.

Development of Bone. In the fetal skeleton, some bones, such as the long bones of the limbs, are cartilaginous; others, as the cranial bones, are membranous. Hence two kinds of ossification are described: the intra-cartilaginous and the intra-membranous; and to these, a third is sometimes added, the sub-periosteal, which is a variety of the second.

In the intra-cartilaginous ossification two chief primary changes occur in the cartilage simultaneously—viz., that the cartilage becomes vascular, and that it calcifies. The vessels shoot into the cartilage from the neighboring periosteum, constituting what is called "the centre of ossification," which is seen in injected specimens so strongly contrasted with the neighboring non-vascular cartilage. The first step in the calcification of the cartilage is, that the cartilage-cells increase rapidly in number, and arrange themselves in rows, with the long axis of the cell transverse to that of the future bone (Fig. 21, a). If calcification has already advanced somewhat further, there is seen, lower down in the section, a layer of large clear cells with granular contents, which are also arranged in somewhat parallel rows, separated still by a transparent cartilaginous matrix; while still deeper down the matrix has calcified, so that, if a transverse section be made here, rings of dark granular substance will be seen inclosing the large round cells (Rollett). As the section is taken deeper and deeper into the ossifying part, the calcified rings, or primary arcelae, are seen to inclose numerous smaller granular masses ("primitive or fetal marrow"), which have been supposed to be developed out of the large clear cells shown above them in the figure, and thus to be the descendants of the cartilage-cell. But the view which is now more generally adopted is that the cartilage-cells, after becoming

1 The bones which are developed entirely in membrane are the occipital, as far as it enters into the formation of the vault of the skull, the parietal and frontal bones, the squamous portion of the temporal with the tympanic ring, the Wormian bones, the nasal, lacrimal, malar, palate, upper and lower maxillary, and vomer; also, apparently, the internal pterygoid plate and the sphenoidal turbinate bones.
developed into these round clear bodies, are dissolved, and shed their granular contents to form the calcareous matrix, while the cells which line the primary areolae, and from which the future bone is developed, and which are on that account called "osteoblasts," are furnished by the bloodvessels which are to be

found in those spaces. As these bloodvessels advance into the areolae, the latter break down, giving rise to the primary medullary canals, which are the rudiments of the Haversian canals. (Fig. 22.) The osteoblasts are believed to be corpuscles emigrating out of these vessels, and are described by Frey as being differentiated from a mass of lymphoid cells, some of which become developed into connective-tissue fibres, which traverse the bone; others preserve the old lymphoid form, and may be recognized in that form during the whole of life in the red marrow; while others possibly form the fat-cells of the yellow marrow. The osteoblasts line the wall of the medullary space like an epithelium. They secrete the bony substance which separates the lacunae from each other. This appears first as a homogeneous opalescent material, in which bone salts are afterwards laid down, while the cells themselves remain persistent as the bone-corpuscles. (Fig. 23.) As fresh laminae of this osseous formation are laid down, fresh layers of osteoblasts line the interior of the cavity, till the process results in the completion of the Haversian canal and its system of lamelle. The precise mode of origin of the canalliculi from the bone-corpuscles has not been ascertained.

Thus far, then, we have followed the steps of a process by which a solid bony mass is produced, having vessels running into it from the periosteum, Haversian canals in which those vessels run, medullary spaces filled with foetal marrow,
Bone.

... with their contained bone-cells, and canaliculi growing out of those cells. This process of ossification, however, is not the origin of the whole of the skeleton, for even in those bones in which the ossification proceeds in a great measure from a single centre situated in the cartilaginous diaphysis a considerable part of the original bone is formed by intra-membranous ossification beneath the perichondrium or periosteum. Kölliker (following H. Müller, and referring to an observation of Howship to the same effect made so long ago as 1819) describes the first rudiment of a long bone as having the form of a tube, surrounding the primordial cartilage; thus showing that the intra-membranous ossification of the outer part of the bone from the periosteum even precedes the intra-cartilaginous development of its interior from the "ossific centre." Also, a great part of the increase in girth of the bone takes place by bony deposit from the deeper layer of the periosteum. This process is now acknowledged to belong to the intra-membranous form of ossification. Thus even in long bones only a portion of their tissue is formed by intra-cartilaginous ossification.

**Fig. 22.**

Vertical section from the edge of the ossifying portion of the diaphysis of a metatarsal bone from a fetal calf, after Müller. a, ground-mass of the cartilage; b, of the bone. c, newly formed bone-cells in profile, more or less embedded in intercellular substance. d, medullary canal in process of formation, with vessels and medullary cells. e, f, bone-cells on their broad aspect. g, cartilage capsules arranged in rows, and partly with shrunken cell-bodies.

**Fig. 23.**

Transverse section from the femur of a human embryo about eleven weeks old. a, a medullary sinus cut transversely, and b, another longitudinally. c, osteoblasts. d, newly formed osseous substance of a lighter color. e, that of greater age. f, lacuna with their cells. g, a cell still united to an osteoblast.
The shaft of the bone is at first solid, but a tube is gradually hollowed out in it by absorption around the vessels passing into it, which becomes the medullary canal; and as more and more bone is deposited from the periosteum, so more and more is removed from around the medullary membrane, until at length the bone has attained the shape and size which it is destined to retain during adult life. As the ossification of the cartilaginous diaphysis extends towards the articular ends, it carries with it, as it were, a layer of cartilage, or the cartilage grows as it ossifies. During this period of growth the articular end, or epiphysis, remains for some time entirely cartilaginous, then a bony centre appears in it, and it commences the same process of intra-cartilaginous ossification; but this process never extends to any very great distance. The epiphyses remain separated from the shaft by a narrow cartilaginous layer for a definite time. This layer ultimately ossifies, the distinction between shaft and epiphysis is obliterated, and the bone has assumed its completed form and shape. The same remarks also apply to the processes of bone which are separately ossified, and called apophyses.

The intra-cartilaginous ossification, and the growth by means of epiphyses, are usually described from the long bones; but almost all the bones of the body are primarily laid down in cartilage (see note, p. 51); and a great many of the flat and short bones grow by means of epiphyses, as will be seen in the detailed description of each, given in the body of the work.

The medullary spaces which characterize the cancellous tissue are produced by the absorption of the original fetal bone in the same way as the medullary tube is formed, and the same is the case with the Haversian spaces above referred to as a sort of intermediate step between the Haversian canals and the medullary spaces. In the medullary spaces so formed the large “giant-cells” are found, which have been long described as a constituent of the fetal marrow, and to which lately the power has been ascribed of dissolving or absorbing the bone, so that Kölliker has named them “osteoclasts.” This function, however, is denied by some of the best authorities. They vary in shape and size, and are known by containing a large number of clear nuclei, sometimes as many as twenty. The occurrence of similar cells in some tumors of bone has led to their being denominated “myeloid.” The distinction between the cancellous and compact tissue appears to depend essentially upon the extent to which this process of absorption has been carried, and we may perhaps remind the reader that in morbid states of the bone inflammatory absorption effects exactly the same change, and converts portions of bone naturally compact into cancellous tissue.

The intra-membranous ossification is that by which the bones of the vertex of the skull are entirely formed. In the bones which are so developed no cartilaginous mould precedes the appearance of the bone tissue. The process, though pointed out originally by Dr. Nesbitt in the year 1736, was first accurately described by Dr. Sharpey; and it does not appear that subsequent observers have been able to add anything essential to his description. This is, substantially, as follows: In the membrane which occupies the place of the future bone a little network of bony spicules is first noticed, radiating from the point of ossification. When these rays of growing bone are examined by the microscope, there is found a network of fine clear fibres (osteogenie fibres), which become dark and granular from calcification, and

---

1 Frey says: “I have not the faintest belief in their possessing this property.”
as they calcify they are found to inclose in their interior large granular corpuscles or "osteoblasts." These corpuscles at first lie upon the osteogenic fibres, so that the corpuscles must be removed by brushing the specimen with a hair-pencil in order to render the fibres clear; but they gradually sink into areoles developed among the fibres. The areoles appear to be the rudiments of the lacunae, the passages between the fibres form the canaliculi, and the osteoblasts are the rudiments of the bone-cells. As the tissue increases in thickness vessels shoot into it, grooving for themselves spaces or channels, which become the Haversian canals. Thus the intra-membranous and intra-cartilaginous processes of ossification are similar in their more essential features.

The subperiosteal is a form of the intra-membranous process of ossification.

The period of ossification is different in different bones. The order of succession may be thus arranged (Kölliker):

In the second month, first, in the clavicle and lower jaw (fifth to seventh week); then, in the vertebrae, humerus, femur, the ribs, and the cartilaginous portion of the occipital bone.

At the end of the second, and commencement of the third month, the frontal bone, the scapula, the bones of the forearm and leg, and upper jaw make their appearance.

In the third month, the remaining cranial bones, with few exceptions, the metatarsus, the metacarpus, and the phalanges, begin to ossify.

In the fourth month, the iliac bones, and the ossicula auditus.

In the fourth or fifth month, the ethmoid, sternum, os pubis, and ischium.

From the sixth to the seventh month, the calcaneum and astragalus.

In the eighth month, the hyoid bone.

At birth, the epiphyses of all the cylindrical bones, with the exception of the lower epiphysis of the femur, and occasionally the upper epiphysis of the tibia; all the bones of the carpus; the five smaller ones of the tarsus; the patella; the sesamoid bones; and the coccyx,¹ are still unossified.

From the time of birth to the fourth year, osseous nuclei make their appearance also in these parts.

At twelve years, in the pisiform bone.

The number of ossific centres is different in different bones. In most of the short bones, ossification commences by a single point in the centre, and proceeds towards the circumference. In the long bones, there is a central point of ossification for the shaft or diaphysis; and one or more for each extremity, the epiphyses. That for the shaft is first to appear; those for the extremities appear later. The union of the epiphyses with the shaft takes place in the inverse order to that in which their ossification began; for although ossification commences latest in those epiphyses towards which the nutrient artery in the several bones is directed, they become joined to the diaphyses sooner than the epiphyses at the opposite extremity, with the exception of the fibula, the lower end of which commences to ossify at an earlier period than the upper end, but, nevertheless, is joined to the shaft earliest.

The order in which the epiphyses become united to the shaft, appears to be regulated by the direction of the nutrient artery of the bone. Thus, the nutrient arteries of the bones of the arm and forearm are directed towards the elbow, and the epiphyses of the bone forming this joint become united to the shaft before those at the opposite extremity. In the lower extremities, on the contrary, the nutrient arteries pass in a direction from the knee; that is, upwards in the femur, downwards in the tibia and fibula; and in them it is observed, that the upper epiphysis of the femur, and the lower epiphyses of the tibia and fibula, become first united to the shaft.

Where there is only one epiphysis, the medullary artery is directed towards that end of the bone where there is no additional centre: as, towards the aoro-

¹ On the development of the coccyx, vide Anatomy of the Coccyx.
mial end in the clavicle; towards the distal end of the metacarpal bone of the thumb and great toe; and towards the proximal end of the other metacarpal and metatarsal bones.

Besides these epiphyses for the articular ends, there are others (more commonly called apophyses) for projecting parts, or processes, which are formed separately from the bulk of the bone. For an account of these, the reader must be referred to the descriptions of the individual bones in the sequel.

A knowledge of the exact periods when the epiphyses become joined to the shaft is often of great importance in medico-legal inquiries. It also aids the surgeon in the diagnosis of many of the injuries to which the joints are liable; for it not infrequently happens, that on the application of severe force to a joint, the epiphyses become separated from the shaft, and such injuries may be mistaken for fracture or dislocation.

**MUSCULAR TISSUE.**

The Muscles are formed of bundles of reddish fibres, endowed with the property of contractility. Two kinds of muscular tissue are found in the animal body, viz., that of voluntary or animal life, and that of involuntary or organic life.

The muscles of animal life (striped muscles) are capable of being put in action and controlled by the will. They are composed of bundles of fibres inclosed in a delicate web of areolar tissue, called in the figure the “perimysium.” Each bundle consists of numerous smaller bundles inclosed in a similar fibro-areolar covering, and these again of primitive fasciculi. Fat cells are sometimes intermixed with this connective tissue.

The fibres are of no great length—not extending, it is said, further than an inch and a half. They end either by blending with the tendons or aponeurosis, or else by becoming drawn out into a tapering extremity which is connected to the neighboring fibre by means of the sarcolemma. The precise mode in which the muscular fibre joins the tendon has been variously described by different observers. It may, perhaps, be sufficient here to say that the sarcolemma, or membranous investment of the muscular fibre, appears to become blended with the tissues of the tendon, and that the muscular fibre appears to be prolonged more or less into the tendon, so that the latter forms a kind of sheath around the fibre for a longer or shorter distance. When muscular fibres are attached to the skin or mucous membranes, their fibres are described by Hyde Salter as becoming continuous with those of the areolar tissue.

The primitive fasciculi consists of a number of filaments, inclosed in a tubular sheath of transparent elastic, and apparently homogeneous membrane, named by Bowman the “Sarcolemma.” On the internal surface of the sarcolemma, in mammalia, and also in the substance of the fibrillas in lower animals, elongated nuclei are seen (see Figs. 42, 43), and in connection with these nuclei a row of granules, apparently fatty, is sometimes observed. The primitive fasciculi are cylindrical or prismatic. Their breadth varies in man from \( \frac{1}{20} \) to \( \frac{1}{25} \) of an inch, the average of the majority being about \( \frac{1}{10} \); their length is not always in proportion to the length of the muscle, but depends on the arrangement of the tendons. This form of muscular fibre is especially characterized by being apparently marked with very fine, dark lines or strie, which pass transversely round the fibre, in curved or wavy parallel directions from \( \frac{1}{1000} \) to \( \frac{1}{1000} \) of an
inch apart. Other striae pass longitudinally over the fibres, indicating the direction of the primitive fibrils of which the primitive fasciculus is composed. They are less distinct than the former.

Fig. 26.

Two human muscular fibres (magnified 300 times). In the one, the bundle of fibrillae (b) is torn, and the sarcolemma (e) is seen as an empty tube.

Fig. 27.

Fragments of striped elementary fibres, showing a cleavage in opposite directions (magnified 300 diameters). A, Longitudinal cleavage. The longitudinal and transverse lines are both seen. Some longitudinal lines are darker and wider than the rest, and are not continuous from end to end. This results from partial separation of the fibrillae. c, Fibrillae separated from one another by violence at the broken end of the fibre, and marked by transverse lines equal in width to those on the fibre. c' c", represent two appearances commonly presented by the separated single fibrillae more highly magnified. At c' the borders and transverse lines are all perfectly rectilinear, and the included spaces perfectly rectangular. At c" the borders are scalloped and the spaces bend-like. When most distinct and definite, the fibrilla presents the former of those appearances. b, Transverse cleavage. The longitudinal lines are scarcely visible. a, Incomplete fracture following the opposite surfaces of a disk, which stretches across the interval, and retains the two fragments in connection. The edge and surfaces of this disk are seen to be minutely granular, the granules corresponding in size to the thickness of the disk, and to the distance between the faint longitudinal lines. b', Another disk nearly detached. b", Detached disk (more highly magnified), showing the sarcolemma elements.

The primitive fibrils constitute the proper contractile tissue of the muscle. Each fibril is cylindric, somewhat flattened, about 15 μm in thickness, and marked by transverse striae placed at the same distance from each other as the striae on the surface of the fasciculus. Each fibril apparently consists of a single row of minute particles (named "sarcous elements" by Bowman), connected together like a string of beads. Closer examination, however, shows that the elementary particles are little masses of pellucid substance, having a rectangular outline, and appearing dark in the centre. These appearances would favor the suggestion that the elementary particles of which the fibrils are composed are possibly nucleated cells, cohering in a linear series, the transverse marks between them corresponding to their line of junction. Kölliker, however, considers "the sarcous elements as artificial products, occasioned by the breaking up of the fibril at the parts where they are thinner."

On closer examination, the appearances become more complicated, and are susceptible of various interpretations. Thus, if we apply a higher power of the microscope, the transverse striation which in Figs. 26, 27 appears as a mere alternation of dark and bright bands is resolved into the appearance shown in Fig. 28, which shows a series of broad dark bands, separated by a bright band, which is itself divided into two by a row of dark dots. This appearance was first pointed out by Busk and Huxley. It is explained by Krause as depending on some optical property of the investment of the separate sarcous elements. Thus it is supposed that the sarcous elements have an opaque interior, and are united to each other by a transparent envelope or cell-membrane, the sides of which cohere so closely as only to show a single line, while their ends are united by some different material which breaks up the light, and causes a dark band
or row of dark dots in the centre of the transparent streak formed by the cohesion of the two cell-membranes. Mr. Schäfer describes the sarcous elements as formed by an aggregation of rod-like masses of protoplasm, having rounded ends, and believes that the two bright bands and intervening row of black dots are the result of the diffraction of the light around these rounded ends, “just as a minute oil-globule in water appears surrounded with a bright halo when examined under the microscope.” But the question is as yet by no means definitely settled.

This form of muscular fibre composes the whole of the voluntary muscles, all the muscles of the ear, those of the larynx, pharynx, tongue, the upper half of the oesophagus, the heart, and the walls of the large veins at the point where they open into it.

The fibres of the heart, however, differ in several particulars from those of other striped muscles. They are smaller by about one-third, and their transverse striæ are by no means so distinct. Fat-cells are also often found in them to a certain extent, even apart from any obvious disease of the organ. They break up much more readily into their smallest elements. There is also much less (if any) connective tissue separating the bundles of fibres; and Kölliker has described and figured the ultimate fibres as anastomosing with each other, a fact previously noticed by Leeuwenhoek. Schweigger-Seidel also describes and figures transverse septa, which divide the fibres into separate nucleated portions (Fig. 29).

The unstriped muscle, or muscle of organic life, is found in the walls of the hollow viscera, viz., the lower half of the oesophagus and the whole of the remainder of the gastro-intestinal tube; in the trachea and bronchi; in the gall-
bladder and ductus communis choledochus; in the pelvis and calices of the kidney, the ureters, bladder, and urethra; in the female sexual organs, viz., the Fallopian tubes, the uterus (enormously developed in pregnancy), the vagina, the broad ligaments, and the erectile tissue of the clitoris; in the male sexual organs, viz., the dartos scroti, the vas deferens, and epididymis, the vesiculae seminales, the prostate gland, and the corpora cavernosa; in the ducts of certain glands, as in Wharton's duct; in the capsule and trabeculae of the spleen; in the mucous membranes, forming the muscularis mucosae; in the arteries, veins, and lymphatics; in the iris; and in the skin.

The fibres of inorganic muscle form flattened bands, which interlace in various directions, and which when viewed without reagents appear nearly homogeneous, though, if the organ from which the fibres are taken has been macerated previously for some time in dilute acid, the nuclei can be perceived. Even in fresh fibres the nuclei are occasionally visible.

In many situations these fibres, by prolonged immersion in chromic or nitric acid, can be resolved into the elementary contractile fibre-cells of which Kölliker has shown that they really consist; and in some parts, as in the arteries and in the skin, such fibre-cells are found single. They are elongated, their length about ten to fifteen times their breadth (.02″ to 0.4″ in length, .002″ to .003″ in breadth, according to Kölliker), consisting of a spindle-shaped, homogeneous-looking, fibre-cell, in which a rod-shaped nucleus is faintly visible. Acetic acid dissolves out the granular contents of the cell, and brings the nucleus clearly into view.

The unstriped muscle, as a rule, is not under the influence of the will, nor is the contraction rapid and involving the whole muscle, as is the case with the muscles of animal life. The membranes which are composed of the unstriped muscle slowly contract in a part of their extent, generally under the influence of mechanical stimulus, as that of distension or of cold, and then the contracted part slowly relaxes, while another portion of the membrane takes up the con-

---

Kölliker describes muscular fibres also in the tunica vaginalis testis.
traction. This peculiarity of action is most strongly marked in the intestines, constituting their *vermicular motion*.

In chemical composition, the muscular fibres of both forms consist mainly of a substance (syntomina) nearly identical with the fibrine of the blood; but, unlike the latter, not dissolved by nitrate of potash. Muscle after death exhibits an acid reaction; but this appears to be due to post-mortem changes.

The capillaries of muscle are very abundant, and form a series of rectangular areoles, the branches which run longitudinally between the muscular fibres, being united at short intervals by transverse anastomosing branches.

Nerves are profusely distributed to the muscular tissue, more especially to the voluntary muscles. The mode of their termination will be described on a subsequent page.

The distribution and the mode of origin of the lymphatic vessels of muscle have not yet been ascertained.

The muscles during life, and for some time after death, respond to the appropriate stimulus by contracting in the manner peculiar to the class to which they belong. Thus, for some time after a limb has been amputated, its muscles can be set in motion by scratching, pinching, or galvanising them; and even after the irritability of the muscular tissue has been exhausted by the prolonged suspension of the circulation, it can be at first temporarily restored by injecting fresh arterial blood through it (Brown-Séquard). The time at which muscular irritability ceases after death depends on the vitality of the subject; thus it ceases in birds, whose circulation and vital heat are of a very high degree, sooner than in man and quadrupeds; in these sooner than in fishes, etc. Dr. Sharpey says that it lasts long in hibernating animals killed during their winter sleep. It is also affected by the mode of dying, being extinguished instantaneously (as is asserted) in some cases of lightning-stroke, and much diminished by certain gaseous poisons, particularly sulphuredt hydrogen.

As the muscles die they become stiff, and it is to this cause that the rigidity so characteristic of recent death ("rigor mortis") is due. The ultimate cause of the phenomenon is not well understood, beyond the obvious fact that it must be due to the change from partial fluidity to a solid condition of the contents of the sarcolemma. The periods of its occurrence and of its disappearance are very variable, and the causes of those variations are of extreme interest and importance, especially in medico-legal inquiries, but the subject is too complicated to be adequately treated here. All that need be said in this place is that, as might be expected, the rigor is stronger the more powerful and more healthy the muscles are, and consequently is both more powerful and more lasting in cases of sudden or violent death. It also sets in later in such cases, while in emaciated and exhausted subjects it is more rapid and transient; as is also the case, according to Hunter, in animals which have been hunted to death. In some instances of violent death in persons of robust frame, the rigor mortis has not entirely disappeared till the end of the first week after death. In rare cases (as in some instances of death from lightning) the muscles are found rigid immediately, and in other cases rigor commences in a few minutes, but usually not till six or seven hours after death. The cessation of rigidity in the muscles must be regarded as the commencement of putrefactive changes.

**NERVOUS TISSUE.**

The Nervous Tissue is composed chiefly of two different structures, the *gray* or *vermicular*, and the *white or fibrous*. It is in the former, as is generally supposed, that nervous impressions and impulses originate, and by the latter that they are conducted. Hence the gray matter forms the essential constituent of all the ganglionic centres, both those separated in the ganglia, and those aggregated in the cerebro-spinal axis; while the white matter is found in all the commissural
portions of the nerve centres, and in all the cerebro-spinal nerves. Besides these two principal kinds of nervous matter, there is found a third structure—chiefly in the sympathetic system—called the gelatinous nerve-tissue.

The nervous substance is again divided into two different systems. The first is connected directly with the great central mass inclosed in the skull and spine. This is called the cerebro-spinal system, and is divided into the brain (including the medulla oblongata), the spinal cord, the cranial nerves, the spinal nerves, and the ganglia connected with both those classes of nerves. The second, called the sympathetic system, is not directly connected with the brain or spinal cord, though it is so indirectly by means of its numerous communications with the cranial and spinal nerves. It consists of a double chain of ganglia, with the branches which go to and come from them.

A third method of division of the nervous system is based upon the functions which it performs. On this principle it is divided into the nervous system of animal life, and the nervous system of organic life—the former subserving the higher functions of volition, sensation, &c., the latter those of growth and nutrition. It is clear that the former qualities reside mainly in the cerebro-spinal system, while the intimate connection between the sympathetic nerve and the great viscera renders it highly probable that the sympathetic system has mainly to do with the organic functions. Consequently, the cerebro-spinal system was designated the system of animal life, and the sympathetic the system of organic life. But the distinction, though true to a certain extent, is by no means complete, as the student may easily see by consulting the works of modern physiologists.

The gray or vesicular nervous substance is distinguished by its dark reddish-gray color and soft consistence. It is found in the brain, spinal cord, and various ganglia, intermingled with the fibrous nervous substance, but is never found in the nerves. It is composed, as its name implies, of vesicles, or corpuscles, commonly called nerve- or ganglion-corpuscles, containing nuclei and nucleoli; the vesicles being imbedded either in a finely granular substance, as in the brain, or in a capsule of nucleated cells, as in the ganglia. Each vesicle consists of an
exceedingly delicate membranous wall, inclosing a finely granular material, part of which is occasionally of a coarser kind, and of a reddish or yellowish-brown color. The nucleus is vesicular, much smaller than the vesicle, and adherent to some part of its interior. The nucleolus, which is inclosed within the nucleus, is vesicular in form, of minute size, and peculiarly clear and brilliant. The nerve-corpuscles vary in shape and size; some are small, spherical, or ovoidal, with an uninterrupted outline. These forms are most numerous in the ganglia of the sympathetic. Others, called caudate or stellate nerve-corpuscles, are characterized by their larger size, and from having one or more tail-like processes issuing from them, which occasionally divide and subdivide into numerous branches. These processes are very delicate, apparently tubular, and contain a similar granular material to that found within the corpuscle. Some of the processes terminate in fine transparent fibres, which become lost among the other elements of the nervous tissue; others may be traced until, after losing their granular appearance, they become continuous with an ordinary nerve-fibre.

The white, otherwise called tubular or fibrous nervous substance, is found constituting a great part of the brain and spinal cord, almost the whole of the cerebro-spinal nerves, and a great part of the sympathetic.

The tubes, when perfectly fresh, appear to be homogeneous, but they soon separate into two parts, the white substance of Schwann and the axis-cylinder of Purkinje, the whole being inclosed in a membrane—the tubular membrane, which at first appears structureless, but when stained with nitrate of silver is seen to consist of nucleated endothelial cells. The white substance is regarded as being a fatty matter in a fluid state, which isolates and protects the essential part of the nerve—the axis-cylinder. The partial coagulation of this white substance

1 Dr. Beals describes and figures cases in which several fibres, some with, others without, the white substance, are inclosed in a common tubular membrane. See Phil. Trans., 1862. Latterly English authors have, unfortunately as I think, followed the German anatomists in calling the tubular membrane which sheathes the individual fibres the "neurilemma." That name should be reserved for the fibrous sheath of the entire nerve, which in the new nomenclature is called the "perineurium." These useless changes of names only serve to perplex students.
which follows on cooling gives the nerve-tube, when examined after death, a
double contour—the darker part seen on the outside of the axis cylinder being
the white substance of Schwann. In consequence of the extreme delicacy of
the tubular membrane, even slight pressure will often give nerve tubes a varicose
outline, and drops of oil, from the transudation of the fatty matter, often form
outside the tubular membrane. This is, of course, promoted by the action of
ether.

The axis-cylinder constitutes about one-half or one-third of the nerve-tube,
the white substance being greater in proportion in the nerves than in the central
organs. The axis-cylinder is perfectly transparent, and is therefore indistin-
guishable in a perfectly fresh and natural state of the nerve. It is described by
Kölliker as being distinguished from the white substance by the fact that,
though soft and flexible, it is not fluid and viscid, but firm and elastic, some-
what like coagulated albumen, with which it appears for the most part also to
agree in its chemical characters. As ordinarily seen it appears pale and homog-
eneous, or more rarely finely granular or striated.

Besides these nerve-fibres, which consist of two distinct parts, others are
found in which only the axis-cylinder can be recognized, surrounded by its
medullary membrane, whilst there are again mere primitive fibrils found in various parts which are perfectly
destitute of any visible structure, and only recognized
as nerves by their connection with ganglionic cells, or
with obvious nerve-tubes.\footnote{Schultze (Stricker's Handbook, fig. 17. p. 109) represents these primitive fibrils, both in
their connection with ganglionic-cells and with larger nerves. See also below, Fig. 43.}
They display a great tendency to become varicose on manipulation. The finely
striated appearance of those nerves, which consist only of
the axis-cylinder and its membranous investment,
renders it probable that these also are formed of an
aggregation of the primitive fibrille.

Thus three different kinds of white nerve-fibres are
described by recent authorities—viz., 1. Those which
consist of the axis-cylinder, ensheathed in the white sub-
stance of Schwann, the whole being invested by the
tubular membrane; 2. Those which consist of the axis-
cylinder and medullary membrane only; and 3. The
primitive fibrils, of which it is believed that the axis-
cylinder of the more composite nerves is made up.\footnote{Schultze believes that the primitive fibrils are the essential element of all nerves; thus,
according to him, the essential difference between the gelatinous and the ordinary nerve fibrils
consists in the absence from the former of the white substance (medulla) of Schwann, while the
tubular membrane is present. The small nerve fibres, on the other hand, described as primitive
fibrils or naked axis-cylinders, are either destitute of any investment, or surrounded merely by a
structureless basement membrane.}

Most of the nerves of the sympathetic system, and
some of the cerebro-spinal (see especially the description
of the olfactory nerve), consist of a fourth description of
nerve-fibres,\footnote{The real nature of these fibres has been doubted by several authors. It seems better, how-
ever, and more consonant with the prevalent opinion, to describe them as truly nervous.} which are called the gray or gelatinous
nerve-fibres (fibres of Remak). (Fig. 36.) These consist of a bundle of finely-
granular fibrille inclosed in a sheath. Nuclei may be detected at intervals in
each fibre, which Schultze believes to be situated in the sheath of the nerve.
In external appearance the gelatinous nerves are semi-transparent, and gray or
yellowish-gray. The individual fibres vary in size—most of them being of
smaller size than in the cerebro-spinal nerves, so that the average size of the
latter is given at \textfrac{1}{8} to \textfrac{3}{8} of an inch, and of the former at only half that
size; but, on the one hand, the smallest fibrils of the cerebro-spinal system are,
as we have seen, of hardly appreciable thickness; while, on the other, some of the gelatinous fibres (especially those in the olfactory bulb) are said to be three or four times as thick as those of the cerebro-spinal nerves.

Chemical composition. The following analysis, by Lassaigne, represents the relative proportion of the different constituents composing the gray and white matter of the brain:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Gray</th>
<th>White</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>85.2</td>
<td>73.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albuminous matter</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>9.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colorless fat</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>13.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red fat</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osmazone and lactates</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphates</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100.0</td>
<td>100.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It appears from this analysis that the cerebral substance consists of albumen, dissolved in water, combined with fatty matters and salts. The fatty matters, according to Frémy, consist of cerebric acid, which is most abundant, cholesterin, oleophosphoric acid, and olein, margarin, and traces of their acids. The same analyst states that the fat contained in the brain is confined almost exclusively to the white substance, and that its color becomes lost when the fatty matters are removed. According to Vauquelin, the cord contains a larger proportion of fat than the brain; and, according to L'Héritier, the nerves contain more albumen and more soft fat than the brain.

With regard to the constitution of the different portions of the nervous system, the cerebro-spinal axis is composed of the two above-described kinds of nervous structure, intermingled in various proportions, and having in the brain a very intricate arrangement, which can only be fully understood by a careful study of the details of its descriptive anatomy in the sequel. The gray or vesicular nervous matter is found partly on the surface of the brain, forming the convolutions of the cerebrum, which are in the most direct relation to the mental faculties, and the laminae of the cerebellum, the functions of which are still a matter of dispute. Again, gray matter is found in the interior of the brain, collected into large and distinct masses or ganglionic bodies, such as the corpus striatum, optic thalamus, and corpora quadrigemina; the functions of which bodies, so far as they have been ascertained, have been found to be connected with some of the main organic endowments of the body, such as voluntary motion, sensation, sight. Finally, gray matter is found intermingled intimately with the white, and without definite arrangement, as in the corpora dentata of the medulla and cerebellum, or the gray matter in the pons and the floor of the fourth ventricle. Such scattered masses of gray matter are, in many instances at any rate, connected to all appearance with the origin of particular nerves. In other situations their use is as yet unknown.

The proper nervous matter, both in the brain and spinal cord, is traversed and supported by a network of fine connective tissue. This has been termed by Virchow the *neuroglia*, and is supposed to be the source of one of the forms of tumor described by that author under the name of *glioma*.

The white matter of the brain is divisible into four distinct classes of fibres. There are, in the first place, the nerves which arise in the gray matter, and pass out through the cranial foramina. Next, the fibres which connect the brain with the spinal cord; that is to say, those which are usually traced upwards from the columns of the spinal cord, through the medulla oblongata into the cerebrum, chiefly by means of the anterior pyramids, fasciculi teretes and restiform bodies, passing through the pons and crura cerebri to expand into the corpora striata, optic thalami and convolutions (corona radiata), and, by means of the restiform bodies, into the cerebellum.

The other two classes of white fibres in the brain are commissural; some of the commissures serving to connect different parts of the same hemisphere
together (as the fornix, the processus cerebello ad testes, &c.), or even different parts of the same section or organ, as the arciform fibres of the medulla. Most of these commissures are longitudinal; while others—as the corpus callosum and the transverse fibres of the pons Varolii—are transverse, serving to connect opposite hemispheres together, and thus probably securing the single action of a double organ.

The following is Dr. Lockhart Clarke's account of the intimate structure of the cerebral convolutions:

"Most of the convolutions, when properly examined, may be seen to consist of at least seven distinct and concentric layers of nervous substance, which are alternately paler and darker from the circumference to the centre. The laminated structure is most strongly marked at the extremity of the posterior lobe. In this situation all the nerve-cells are small, but differ considerably in shape, and are much more abundant in some layers than in others. In the superficial layer, which is pale, they are round, oval, fusiform, and angular, but not numerous. The second and darker layer is densely crowded with cells of a similar kind, in company with others that are pyriform and pyramidal, and lie with their tapering ends either towards the surface or parallel with it, in connection with fibres which run in corresponding directions. The broader ends of the pyramidal cells give off two, three, four, or more processes, which run partly through the white axis of the convolution, and in part horizontally along the plane of the layer, to be continuous, like those at the opposite ends of the cells, with nerve-fibres running in different directions. The third layer is of a much paler color. It is crossed, however, at right angles by narrow and elongated groups of small cells and nuclei of the same general appearance as those of the preceding layer. These groups are separated from each other by bundles of fibres, radiating towards the surface from the central white axis of the convolution, and together with them form a beautiful fanlike structure. The fourth layer also contains elongated groups of small cells and nuclei, radiating at right angles to its plane; but the groups are broader, more regular, and, together with the bundles of fibres between them, present a more distinctly fanlike structure. The fifth layer is again paler and somewhat white. It contains, however, cells and nuclei which have a general resemblance to those of the preceding layers, but they exhibit only a faintly radiating arrangement. The sixth and most internal layer is reddish gray. It not only abounds in cells like those already described, but contains others that are rather larger. It is only here and there the cells are collected into elongated groups, which give the appearance of radiations. On its under side it gradually blends with the central white axis of the convolution, into which its cells are scattered for some distance.

"The seventh layer is this central white stem or axis of the convolution. On every side it gives off bundles of fibres, which diverge in all directions, and in a fanlike manner, towards the surface, through the several gray layers. As they pass between the elongated and radiating groups of cells in the inner gray layers, some of them become continuous with the processes of the cells in the same section or plane, but others bend round and run horizontally, both in a transverse and longitudinal direction (in reference to the course of the entire convolution), and with various degrees of obliquity. While the bundles themselves are by this means reduced in size, their component fibres become finer in proportion as they traverse the layers towards the surface, in consequence, apparently, of branches which they give off to be connected with cells in their course. Those which reach the outer gray layer are reduced to the finest dimensions, and form a close network with which the nuclei and cells are in connection.

"Besides these fibres which diverge from the central white axis of the convolution, another set, springing from the same source, converge or rather curve inwards from opposite sides, to form arches along some of the gray layers. These arciform fibres run in different planes—transversely, obliquely, and longitudinally—and appear to be partly continuous with those of the diverging set
which bend round, as already stated, to follow a similar course. All these fibres establish an infinite number of communications in every direction, between different parts of each convolution, between different convolutions, and between these and the central white substance."

Dr. Clarke then goes on to describe in detail the minuter differences which exist between the structure of the convolutions in different parts of the brain.¹

**Spinal Cord.** In the spinal cord, on the other hand, the gray matter is entirely in the interior of the organ, and is collected together into one central mass, while the whole of the white matter is external, and is arranged into various columns and commissures, which will be fully described hereafter. We shall here merely give an account of the intimate structure of the cord, which is condensed from the researches of Dr. Lockhart Clarke.²

The *white substance* of the cord consists of transverse, oblique, and longitudinal fibres, with bloodvessels and connective tissue.

The *transverse fibres* proceed from the gray substance, and form with each other a kind of plexus between the bundles of longitudinal fibres, with which many are continuous; while others reach the surface of the cord through fissures containing connective tissue. Within the gray substance they are continuous with the roots of the nerves, with the processes of the nerve cells, and with the anterior and posterior commissures. The *oblique fibres* proceed from the gray substance both upwards and downwards; they form the deep strata of the white columns, and, after running a variable length, become superficial. The *longitudinal fibres* are more superficial, run nearly parallel with each other, and form the greater portion of the white columns.

The *gray substance* of the cord consists of: 1. Nerve-fibres of variable, but smaller, average diameter than those of the columns; 2. Nerve-cells of various shapes and sizes, with from two to eight processes; 3. Bloodvessels and connective tissue.

Each lateral half of the gray substance is divided into an interior and posterior horn, and the tractus intermediolateralis, or lateral part of the gray substance between the anterior and posterior cornua.

The *posterior horn* consists of two parts, the *caput cornu*, or expanded extremity of the horn (Fig. 37), round which is the lighter space or lamina, the gelatinous substance and the *cervix cornu* or remaining narrow portion of the horn, as far forwards as the central canal.

The gelatinous substance contains along its border a series of large nerve-cells; but more internally consists of a stratum of small cells traversed by transverse, oblique, and longitudinal fibres. (Figs. 38, 39.)

Nearly the whole inner half of the cervix is occupied by a remarkable and important column of nerve-cells, called the *posterior vesicular column* (Fig. 37), which varies in size and appearance in different regions of the cord, and is intimately connected with the posterior roots of the nerves.

Within, and along the outer border of the cervix, are several thick bundles

---

¹ See Dr. Clarke’s summary of his researches on this subject in Maudsley on the *Pathology and Physiology of Mind*, pp. 60–63.

² *Phil. Trans.*, 1851–1853, part iii.; 1858, part i.; 1859, part i.; 1862, part ii.
Transverse section of the gray substance of the spinal cord through the middle of the lumbar enlargement. On the left side of the figure groups of large cells are seen; on the right side, the course of the fibres is shown without the cells. (Magnified 15 diameters.)—J. L. Clarke, del.

of longitudinal fibres, represented in Fig. 37 by the dark spots; other bundles of the same kind may be seen in the gray substance along the line of junction of the caput with the cervix cornu. (Fig. 38.)

The anterior horn of the gray substance in the cervical and lumbar swellings, where it gives origin to the nerves of the extremities, is much larger than in any other region, and contains several distinct groups of large and variously-shaped cells. This is well shown on comparing the above figures.

The tractus intermedia-lateralis (Fig. 37) extends from the upper part of the lumbar to the lower part of the cervical enlargement, and consists of variously-shaped cells, which are smaller than those of the anterior cornu. In the neck, above the cervical enlargement, a similar tract reappears, and is traversed by the lower part of the spinal accessory nerve.

Origin of the Spinal Nerves in the Cord. The posterior roots are larger than the anterior; but their component filaments are finer and more delicate. They are all attached immediately to the posterior columns only, and decussate with each other in all directions through the columns; but some of them pass through the gray substance into both the lateral and anterior columns. Within the gray substance they
run longitudinally upwards and downwards; transversely through the posterior commissure to the opposite side; and into the anterior cornu of their own side. (Figs. 38, 39.)

The anterior roots are attached exclusively to the anterior column, or rather to the anterior part of the antero-lateral columns, for there is no antero-lateral fissure dividing the anterior from the lateral column. Within the gray substance the fibrils cross each other, and diverge in all directions, like the expanded hairs of a brush (Figs. 38, 39), some of them running more or less longitudinally upwards and downwards; and others decussating with those of the opposite side through the anterior commissure in front of the central canal.

All the fibres of both roots of the nerves proceed through the white columns into the gray substance, with, perhaps, the exception of some which appear to run longitudinally in the posterior columns; but whether these latter fibres of the posterior roots ultimately enter the gray substance of the cord, after a very oblique course, or whether they proceed upwards to the brain, is uncertain.

The Central Canal of the Spinal Cord. In the foetus until after the sixth month, a canal, continuous with the general ventricular cavity of the brain, extends throughout the entire length of the spinal cord, formed by the closing-in of a previously open groove.

In the adult, this canal can only be seen at the upper part of the cord extending from the point of the calamus scriptorius, in the floor of the fourth ventricle, for about half an inch down the centre of the cord, where it terminates in a cul-de-sac; the remnant of the canal being just visible in a section of the cord, as a small pale spot, corresponding to the centre of the gray commissure; its cavity is lined with a layer of cylindrical ciliated epithelium. In some cases, this canal remains pervious throughout the whole length of the cord.

The Ganglia may be regarded as separate and independent nervous centres, of smaller size and less complex structure than the brain, connected with each other, with the cerebro-spinal axis, and with the nerves in various situations. They are found on the posterior root of each of the spinal nerves; on the posterior or sensory root of the fifth cranial nerve; on the facial nerve; on the glossopharyngeal and pneumogastric nerves; in a connected series along each side of the vertebral column, forming the trunk of the sympathetic; on the branches of that nerve, and at the point of junction of those branches with the cerebro-spinal nerves. On section, they are seen to consist of a reddish-gray substance, traversed by numerous white nerve-fibres: they vary considerably in form and size; the largest are found in the cavity of the abdomen; the smallest, not visible with the naked eye, exist in considerable numbers upon the nerves distributed to the different viscera. The ganglia are invested by a smooth and firm closely-adsorbing membranous envelope, consisting of dense areolar tissue; this sheath is continuous with the neurilemma of the nerves, and sends numerous processes into the interior of the ganglion, which support the blood-vessels supplying its substance.

In structure, all ganglia are essentially similar, consisting of the same structural elements as the other nervous centres—viz., a collection of vesicular nervous matter, traversed by tubular and gelatinous nerve-fibres. The vesicular nervous matter consists of nerve-cells or ganglion-globules, most of which appear free, and of a round or oval form; these are more especially seated near the surface of the ganglion; others have caudate processes, and give origin to nerve-fibres. In the ganglion, the nerve-cells are usually inclosed in a capsule of granular corpuscles and fibres. The tubular nerve-fibres run through the ganglion, some being collected into bundles, while others, separating from each other, take a circuitous course among the nerve-cells before leaving the ganglion.

The Nerves are round or flattened cords, which are connected at one end with the cerebro-spinal centre or with the ganglia, and are distributed at the other to
the various textures of the body: they are subdivided into two great classes, the cerebro-spinal, which proceed from the cerebro-spinal axis, and the sympathetic or ganglionic nerves, which proceed from the ganglia of the sympathetic.

The Cerebro-spinal nerves consist of numerous nerve-fibres, collected together and inclosed in a membranous sheath. A small bundle of primitive fibres, inclosed in a tubular sheath, is called a funiculus; if the nerve is of small size it may consist only of a single funiculus, but if large, the funiculi are collected together into larger bundles or fasciculi; and are bound together in a common membranous investment, termed the sheath. In structure the common sheath investing the whole nerve, as well as the septa given off from the sheath, and which separate the fasciculi, consist of areolar tissue, composed of white and yellow elastic fibres, the latter existing in greatest abundance. The tubular sheath of the funiculi, or neurilemma (perineurium of later German authors), consists of a fine, smooth, transparent membrane, which may be easily separated, in the form of a tube, from the fibres it incloses; in structure, it is for the most part a simple and homogeneous transparent film, occasionally composed of numerous minute reticular fibres.

The cerebro-spinal nerves consist almost exclusively of the tubular nerve-fibres, the gelatinous fibres existing in very small proportion.

In the tubular nerve-fibres Ranvier has lately pointed out a peculiar arrangement, brought into view by the action of osmic acid, and to which the name of the nodes of Ranvier is given. The axis-cylinder and the medullary substance are stained black by the reagent, while the tubular sheath is unstained. Each fibre, when so treated, is seen to be interrupted at regular intervals by a break in the white substance of Schwann, and at these breaks or nodes the tubular membrane seems to turn in and invest the axis-cylinder, which runs uninterrupted across the break. A nucleus is also thus brought into view in the centre of each segment of the nerve, lying in the tubular sheath.

The bloodvessels supplying a nerve terminate in a minute capillary plexus, the vessels composing which run, for the most part, parallel with the funiculi; they are connected together by short transverse vessels, forming narrow oblong meshes, similar to the capillary system of muscle.

The nerve-fibres, as far as is at present known, do not coalesce, but pursue an uninterrupted course from the centre to the periphery. In separating a nerve, however, into its component funiculi, it may be seen that they do not pursue a perfectly insulated course, but occasionally join at a very acute angle with other funiculi proceeding in the same direction; from which again branches are given off to join again in like manner with other funiculi. It must be remembered, however, that in these communications the nerve-fibres do not coalesce, but merely pass into the sheath of the adjacent nerve, become intermixed with its nerve-fibres, and again pass on to become blended with the nerve-fibres in some adjoining fasciculus.

Nerves, in their course, subdivide into branches, and these frequently communicate with branches of a neighboring nerve. In the subdivision of a nerve, the filaments of which it is composed are continued from the trunk into the branches, and at their junction with the branches of neighboring nerves the filaments pass to become intermixed with those of the other nerve in their further progress; in no instance, however, have the separate nerve-fibres been shown to inosculate.

The communications which take place between two or more nerves form what is called a plexus. Sometimes a plexus is formed by the primary branches of the trunks of the nerves, as the cervical, brachial, lumbar, and sacralplexuses, and occasionally by the terminal fasciculi, as in the plexuses formed at the periphery of the body. In the formation of a plexus the component nerves divide, then join, and again subdivide in such a complex manner that the individual fasciculi become interlaced most intricately; so that each branch leaving a plexus may contain filaments from each of the primary nervous trunks which
form it. In the formation also of the smaller plexuses at the periphery of the body, there is a free interchange of the fasciculi and primitive fibrils. In each case, however, the individual filaments remain separate and distinct, and do not inosculate with each other.

It is probable that, through this interchange of fibres, the different branches passing off from a plexus have a more extensive connection with the spinal cord than if they each had proceeded to be distributed without such connection with other nerves. Consequently, the parts supplied by these nerves have more extended relations with the nervous centres; by this means, also, groups of muscles may be associated for combined action.

The Sympathetic nerve consists of tubular and gelatinous fibres, intermixed with a varying proportion of filamentous areolar tissue, and enclosed in a sheath formed of fibro-areolar tissue. (Fig. 36.) The tubular fibres are, for the most part, smaller than those composing the cerebro-spinal nerves; their double contour is less distinct, and, according to Remak, the present nuclei similar to those found in the gelatinous nerve-fibres. Those branches of the sympathetic which present a well-marked gray color are composed more especially of gelatinous nerve-fibres, intermixed with a few tubular fibres; whilst those of a white color contain more of the tubular fibres and a few gelatinous. Occasionally, the gray and white cords run together in a single nerve, without any intermixture, as in the branches of communication between the sympathetic ganglia and the spinal nerves, or in the communicating cords between the ganglia.

The nerve-fibres, both of the cerebro-spinal and sympathetic system, convey impressions of a twofold kind. The sensory nerves, called also centripetal or afferent nerves, transmit to the nervous centres impressions made upon the peripheral extremities of the nerves, and in this way the mind, through the medium of the brain, becomes conscious of external objects. The motor nerves, called also centrifugal or efferent nerves, transmit impressions from the nervous centres to the parts to which the nerves are distributed, these impressions either exciting muscular contractions, or influencing the processes of nutrition, growth, and secretion.

Terminations of Nerves. By the expression "the termination of nerve-fibres" is signified their connections with the nerve-centres and with the parts which they supply. The former are called their central, the latter their peripheral terminations. With regard to the central terminations of the nerves, little is as yet certainly known. The nerve-cells, or nerve-corpuscles, above figured, have been regarded as the central origin of the fibres with which they are connected; and it is very probable that in many cases they are so. There are instances, however, in which such cells occur as mere nucleated swellings in the course of a nerve, and in these cases they obviously cannot be regarded as being in any sense the origins of the nerves. In other cases, as in the nerve-cells in the anterior horn of the gray matter of the cord, there are numerous processes springing out of the cell; one of these (and, according to Deiters, one only) is recognized as an axis-cylinder; the others are fibrillae, which are continuous with similar fibrillae, of which under high powers the apparently granular contents of the cell are found to be composed, and which appear, therefore, simply to run through the cell. The fibrillae may be, and probably are, primitive nervous fibrils, but they are so delicate that it has not as yet been found possible to ascertain their destination. With regard also to the axis-cylinder which is seen proceeding out of the ganglionic corpuscle, although it is highly probable that it originates in that corpuscle, the fact has not been proved—nor has its relation to the nucleus of the corpuscle been demonstrated. In fine, all that is

---

1 One of the most recent and most distinguished observers on this subject, Max Schultze, speaks thus: "In the present state of our knowledge, we are not in a position to assign its central origin to any single primitive fibril of the nervous system, however certainly we may have discovered the peripheral terminations of a great part of them."—Schultze, in Stricker's Handbuch, 1868, p. 134.
known on the subject is, that many of the fibrillæ and axis-cylinders can be shown either to originate in or to pass through ganglionic corpuscles (or nerve-cells), and other nerves can be shown to contain such nerve-cells in their interior at certain parts of their course. But whether in the case of such connection in one of the central organs the cell is to be regarded as the origin of the nervous fibril, or whether the fibril merely passes through the cell (as some observers believe), just in the same manner as nerves pass through ganglia, has not been determined. If the latter view be correct, it may be that nerves have really no central termination, but that their fibrils start from their peripheral distribution, travel to the nervous centre, are there brought into connection with the nerve-cells, and thence return to their distribution. However, in the present state of anatomical knowledge, the more probable opinion seems to be that which is usually entertained: viz., that each nerve-fibre is connected somewhere with a ganglionic corpuscle which is to be regarded as its central termination or origin. Dr. Beale asserts that even in those ganglion-cells, which appear either altogether destitute of processes, or unipolar, numerous fibres can be seen proceeding out of them if the proper reagents be used and very high powers employed.

The peripheral connections, or terminations of the nerve-fibres, are somewhat more easy to ascertain, though even as to these a great difference exists with respect to minute details. They are usually and naturally studied in the sensory and motor nerves separately.

Sensory nerves sometimes terminate in minute plexuses in the subcutaneous or submucous areolar tissue. Dr. Sharpay says that he has seen the ultimate fibres of these minute plexuses come into close contact with the connective-tissue corpuscles, but has not been able to trace any distinct connection between them. Frey has lately described and figured a large number of microscopic ganglia on this submucous nervous plexus. Similar ganglia were long ago described by J. Müller in the corpora cavernosa, and they may apparently be met with in many other parts.

The white substance of Schwann and the tubular sheath usually disappear as the nerve approaches its termination, leaving only the axis-cylinder invested by its proper basement-membrane, on which nuclei can be seen at intervals, and in many cases the axis-cylinder itself breaks up into the primitive fibrils. In some parts, however, the fibres appear to be inclosed up to their termination in a sheath which is either a prolongation of the neurilemma or a continuation of the tubular membrane. The differences of opinion prevailing on the question of the ultimate distribution of the nerve-fibres depend on their extreme delicacy and the consequent great difficulty of following individual fibres in continuity. Hence what some observers describe as a free end in which the nerve terminates, others regard as merely a bending of the fibre where it becomes lost to sight, or a spot where it is lost sight of in consequence of the power used being too low, or from difficulty in focussing. These ultimate fibres, it should be remembered, are structureless, and can therefore only be recognized positively as nerves by their continuity with a nerve of more complex structure.

In the papillae of the skin, or mucous membrane, and on the surface of various membranes (conjunctiva, mesentery, &c.), three different kinds of terminal organs have been found connected with the nerves; viz., the end-bulbs of Krause, the tactile corpuscles of Rudolph Wagner, and the Pacinian corpuscles.

The end-bulbs of Krause are small capsules of connective tissue, in which nuclei can be detected by reagents, and in which one or more nerve-fibrils terminate either in a coiled plexiform mass or in a bulbous extremity. They have been described as occurring in the conjunctiva, the mucous membrane of the mouth, and the surface of the glans penis and glans clitoridis.1

The tactile corpuscles of Wagner (Fig. 40) are described by him as oval-shaped bodies, made up of superimposed saecular laminae, presenting some resemblance

1 Krause, Die terminalen Körperchen, 1860. Anatomische Untersuchungen, 1861.
to a miniature fir-cone, and he regarded them as directly concerned in the sense of touch. Kölliker considers that the central part of the papillae generally consists of a connective tissue more homogeneous than that of the outer part, surrounded by a sort of sheath of elastic fibres, and he believes that these corpuscles are merely a variety of this structure. The nerve-fibres, according to this observer, run up in a waving course to the corpuscle, not penetrating it, but forming two or three coils round it, and finally join together in loops. These bodies are not found in all the papillae; but, from their existence in those parts in which the skin is highly sensitive, it is probable that they are specially concerned in the sense of touch, though their absence from the papillae of other tactile parts shows that they are not essential to this sense.

The Pacinian corpuscles (Fig. 41) are found in the human subject chiefly on the nerves of the fingers and toes, lying in the subcutaneous cellular tissue; but they have also been described by Rauber as connected with the nerves of the joints, and with the nerves lying between many of the muscles of the trunk and limbs. Each of these corpuscles is attached to and incloses the termination of a single nerve. The corpuscle, which is perfectly visible to the naked eye (and which can be most easily demonstrated in the mesentery of a cat), consists of a number of concentric layers of cellular tissue, between which Todd and Bowman have figured capillary vessels as running. The nerve, at its entrance into this

![Fig. 40.](image)

![Fig. 41.](image)

A, Side view of a papilla of the hand. a, cortical layer; b, tactile corpuscle, with transverse nuclei; c, small nerve of the papilla, with neurilemma; d, its two nervous fibres running with spiral coils around the tactile corpuscle; e, apparent termination of one of these fibres.

B, A tactile papilla seen from above, so as to show its transverse section. a, cortical layer; b, nerve-fibre; c, outer layer of the tactile body, with nuclei; d, clear interior substance. From the human subject, treated with acetic acid. (Magnified 300 times.)

Pacinian corpuscle with its system of capsules and central cavity. a, arterial twig, ending in capillaries, which form loops in some of the intercapsular spaces, and one penetrates to the central capsule; b, the fibrous tissue of the stalk prolonged from the neurilemma; c, nerve-tube advancing to the central capsules, there losing its white substance, and stretching along the axis to the opposite end, where it is fixed by a tubercular enlargement.

1 Often called in German Anatomical works "corpuscles of Vater."
THE NERVES.

body, parts with its white substance, and the axis-cylinder runs forwards in a kind of cavity in the centre of the corpuscle to terminate in a rounded end or knob, sometimes bifurcating previously, in which case each branch has a similar termination. Grandry, who has examined these corpuscles with very high magnifying powers, describes the axis-cylinder as exhibiting a very well marked fibrillar structure, and the bulbous end as consisting of a mass of granules into which the fibrils run, diverging as they approach it. The investing capsules are from thirty to sixty in number, the outer being more separated from each other, as if by a clear fluid, while the inner are closely applied together. Schultzz calls attention to the striking resemblance in all essential particulars between these corpuscles and Krause’s end-bulbs above described.¹

In the special organs the nerves end in various ways, which hitherto are not perfectly known.

Hoyer and Cohnheim have described the nerves of the cornea as terminating in primitive fibrillae, which run between the cells forming the pavement-epithelium of that membrane, and end on its free surface. This, however, is doubted by Hulke,² who has only succeeded in tracing them as far as the middle tier of the epithelial cells. Schultzz discovers in the olfactory mucous membrane, lying between the cells of its epithelium, spindle-shaped cells, each possessing a central and a peripheral process—the central process being, according to him, continuous with a primitive fibril of the olfactory nerve, and the peripheral process either ending on the free surface of epithelium, as is the case in men, mammals, and fishes, or, as in some other animals, prolonged into a long stiff hair. These cells he has denominated “olfactory cells;” and similar cells have been described by Axel Key, Schwalbe, and Loven, in the papillae circumvallae of man, and the fungiform papillae of the frog (“taste cells”). The fibres also of the optic nerve have, according to Schultzz, a similar connection with the cells (“sight-cells”) of the retina; and cells somewhat similar, and connected with processes that pass through the epithelium, are to be found on the nerve fibrils of the auditory nerve, in the membranous labyrinth (“hearing-cells”).

The termination of the nerves in the hair-bulbs is probably to be found in the papillae at their root, as is also the case in the teeth. In glands the nerves, according to Pflüger, are connected with the cæcal commencements of the gland-tubes—at least he has described this arrangement in the salivary glands, and thus he is led to regard the nuclei of these cæcal pouches as the terminations of the nerves.

Motor nerves are to be traced either into unstriped or striped fibres.

In the unstriped fibres it appears from the researches of Beale, Frankenhaus, and Julius Arnold, that the ultimate fibrils of the nerves formplexuses at the junctions of whose branches small nuclear bodies are situated. These nuclei are regarded by Arnold as the real terminations of the nerves; for although he agrees with Frankenhaus in stating that the nervous filaments penetrate the muscular fibres, and enter into relation with the granular contents of their nuclei, he traces the filaments back again from that point to the nuclei situated at the junctions of the nervousplexuses, in the connective tissue of the muscular fibres.

In the voluntary muscles Beale and Kölliker have described the nerve-fibres as terminating either in a plexiform arrangement, or (according to the latter author) sometimes in free ends between the muscular fibres external to the sarcolemma. Lately another method of termination, which had been formerly described, has received the support of numerous eminent authorities—viz., the “motorial end-plates” of Kühne, or “nerve-hillocks” (nerve-tufts) of Doyère.

The latter author had described, nearly thirty years ago, a connection between the nervous and muscular fibres in some of the lower animals, consisting in an

¹ Stricker's Handbuch. p. 123.
² Lectures on the History of the Eye, at the Royal College of Surgeons, June 1869.
elevation at the point of junction of the two, where the sarcolemma of the muscular fibre became blended with the tubular membrane of the nerve. This has been since so far confirmed by subsequent researches that it seems well to figure, from the most recent author, Kühne, what he supposes to be the termination of all motor nerves of voluntary muscles. The following is Kühne's description of the method of connection:

"In all striped muscles the nerves terminate below the sarcolemma—the tubular membrane being blended with the sarcolemma. The white substance accom-

Fig. 42.

companies the axis-cylinder as far as this point. The ending of the axis-cylinder always represents an expansion with a considerably increased surface, and this is constantly formed by its branching out on a flat plate. This nerve-end-plate is sometimes more like a membrane, at others like a system of fibres. In most cases the plate rests upon a base of granules and finely-granular protoplasm; in other cases, there is no such support, and the nerve-plates then possess the so-called nerve-end-bulbs. The ends of the nerves never penetrate the interior of the contractile cylinder, nor does the plate ever embrace the whole circumference of the cylinder. Short muscular fibres generally have only one nerve-end, while longer fibres have several."

It is right, however, to state that the most eminent English authority on this subject entirely denies the description above given, and explains the appearances, figured by Kühne and others, in a different manner. In a very interesting paper by Dr. Beale, published in 1867, he endeavors to show that the nerve-hillocks of Doyère are merely accidental elevations produced by the sarcolemma being drawn up in a cone, as the nerve which is attached to it is stretched by the manipulation of the observer; and with reference to the end-plates of Kühne, he asserts that by his own method of examination he is able to follow the nerve-fibrils much beyond the point at which that author describes them as terminating. The appearance of their penetrating the sarcolemma he regards as an optical illusion, and the nuclei shown in the above figures are, according to him, situated outside of the muscular fibres on the point of junction of the fibrils which form the intricate and extensive plexus in which the nerves terminate, so that the nerves nowhere terminate in free ends, nor at any definite part of the fibre; but, on the contrary, surround every point of the latter with a very close interlacement.

THE VASCULAR SYSTEM.

The Vascular System, exclusive of its central organ, the Heart, is divided into four classes of vessels—the Arteries, Capillaries, Veins, and Lymphatics—the minute structure of which we will now proceed briefly to describe, referring the reader to the body of the work for all that is necessary in the details of their ordinary anatomy.

Structure of Arteries. The arteries are composed of three coats: internal serous, or epithelial coat (tunica intima of Kölliker), middle fibrous or circular coat, and external cellular coat, or tunica adventitia.

The two inner coats together are very easily separated from the external, as by the ordinary operation of tying a ligature on the artery. If a fine string be tied forcibly upon an artery, either before or after death, and then taken off, the
external coat will be found uninjured, but the internal coats are divided in the track of the ligature, and can easily be further dissected from the outer coat. The inner coat can be separated from the middle by a little maceration.

The inner coat consists of—1. A layer of pavement-epithelium, the cells of which are polygonal, oval, or fusiform, and have very distinct nuclei. This epithelium is brought into view most distinctly by staining with nitrate of silver. 2. This epithelium rests upon a layer of longitudinal elastic fibres, in which, under the microscope, small elongated apertures are seen, and which was therefore called by Henle the *fenostrated membrane*. This layer is marked with numerous reticulations; it is perfectly smooth when the artery is distended; but when empty, presents longitudinal and transverse folds. The fenestrated membrane can often be separated into more than one layer.

In arteries of less than a line in diameter, the internal coat consists of two layers, as above described; but in middle-sized arteries, several lamellæ, composed of elastic fibres and connective tissue, are interposed between the epithelial and middle coats. In the largest arteries, the inner coat is usually much thickened, especially in the aorta; and consists of a homogeneous substance, occasionally striated or fibrillated, traversed by longitudinal elastic networks which are very fine in the lamellæ immediately beneath the epithelium, but increase in thickness from within outwards. The internal and middle coats are separated by either a dense elastic reticulated coat, or a true fenestrated membrane.

The middle coat is distinguished from the inner by its color, and by the transverse arrangement of its fibres, in contradistinction to the longitudinal direction of those of the inner coat. In the largest arteries, this coat is of great thickness, of a yellow color, and highly elastic; it diminishes in thickness and becomes redder in color as the arteries become smaller; becomes very thin, and finally disappears. In small arteries, this coat is purely muscular, consisting of muscular fibre-cells (Fig. 81), united to form lamellæ which vary in number according to the size of the artery, the very small arteries having only a single layer and those not larger than \( \frac{1}{64} \) th of a line in diameter, three or four layers. In arteries of medium size, this coat becomes thicker in proportion to the size of
THE ARTERIES.

the vessel; its layers of muscular tissue are more numerous, and intermixed with numerous fine elastic fibres which unite to form broad-meshed networks. In the larger vessels, as the femoral, superior mesenteric, coeliac, external iliac, brachial and popliteal arteries, the elastic fibres unite to form lamellas, which alternate with the layers of muscular fibre. In the largest arteries, the muscular tissue is only slightly developed, and forms about one-third or one-fourth of the whole substance of the middle coat; this is especially the case in the aorta, and trunk of the pulmonary artery, in which the individual cells of the muscular layer are imperfectly formed; while in the carotid, axillary, iliac, and subclavian arteries, the muscular tissue of the middle coat is more developed. The elastic lamellas are well marked, may amount to fifty or sixty in number, and alternate regularly with the layers of muscular fibre. They are most distinct, and arranged with most regularity, in the abdominal aorta, innominate artery, and common carotid.

The external coat consists mainly of connective tissue, and contains elastic fibres in all but the smallest arteries. In the largest vessels, the external coat is relatively thin; but in small arteries, it is as thick, or thicker, than the middle coat. In arteries of the medium size, and above it, the external coat is formed of two layers, the outer of which consists of connective tissue, containing an irregular elastic network, while the inner is composed of elastic tissue only. The inner elastic layer is very distinct in the carotid, femoral, brachial, profunda, mesenteric and coeliac arteries, the elastic fibres being often arranged in lamellas. In the smaller arteries, the former layer of mixed connective tissue and elastic fibres composes the whole of the external tunic; while in the smallest arteries, just above the capillaries, the elastic fibres are wanting, and the connective tissue of which the coat is composed becomes more homogeneous the nearer it approaches the capillaries, and is gradually reduced to a thin membranous envelope, which finally disappears.

Some arteries have extremely thin coats in proportion to their size; this is especially the case in those situated in the cavity of the cranium and spinal canal, the difference depending on the greater thinness of the external and middle coats.

The arteries, in their distribution throughout the body, are included in a thin areolo-fibrous investment, which forms what is called their sheath. In the limbs, this is usually formed by a prolongation of the deep fascia; in the upper part of the thigh, it consists of a continuation downwards of the transversalis and iliac fasciae of the abdomen; in the neck, of a prolongation of the deep cervical fascia. The included vessel is loosely connected with its sheath by a delicate areolar tissue; and the sheath usually incloses the accompanying veins, and sometimes a nerve. Some arteries, as those in the cranium, are not included in sheaths.

All the larger arteries are supplied with bloodvessels like the other organs of the body; they are called vasa vasorum. These nutrient vessels arise from a branch of the artery or from a neighboring vessel, at some considerable distance from the point at which they are distributed; they ramify in the loose areolar tissue connecting the artery with its sheath, and are distributed to the external and middle coats, and, according to Arnold and others, supply the internal coat. Minute veins serve to return the blood from these vessels; they empty themselves into the vasa comites in connection with the artery.

Arteries are also provided with nerves, which are derived chiefly from the sympathetic, but partly from the cerebro-spinal system. They form intricateplexuses upon the surfaces of the larger trunks, the smaller branches being usually accompanied by single filaments. Microscopists are not absolutely agreed as to the mode of termination of the vascular (or vasomotor) nerves. Frey, following Arnold, has figured an intricate plexus of simple fibres ramifying among the muscular fibre-cells of an artery in the frog, and Dr. Beale has described minute ganglia seated on the ultimate fibres. According to Kölliker, the majority of the arteries of the brain and spinal cord, those of the choroid and of the placenta, as well as many arteries of muscles, glands, and membranes, are unprovided with nerves.
The Capillaries. The smaller arterial branches (excepting those of the cavernous structures of the sexual organs, and in the uterine placenta) terminate in a network of vessels which pervade nearly every tissue of the body. These vessels, from their minute size, are termed capillaries (capillus, "a hair"). They are interposed between the smallest branches of the arteries and the commencing veins, constituting a network, the branches of which maintain the same diameter throughout, the meshes of the network being more uniform in shape and size than those formed by the anastomoses of the small arteries and veins.

The diameter of the capillaries varies in the different tissues of the body, their usual size being about \( \frac{1}{10} \) of a millimeter. The smallest are those of the brain, and the mucous membrane of the intestines; the largest, those of the skin, and the marrow bones.

The form of the capillary net varies in the different tissues, being modifications chiefly of rounded or elongated meshes. The rounded form of mesh is most common, and prevails where there is a dense network, as in the lungs, in most glands and mucous membranes, and in the cutis; the meshes being more or less angular, sometimes nearly quadrangular, or polygonal; more frequently, irregular. Elongated meshes are observed in the bundles of fibres and tubes composing muscles and nerves, the meshes being usually of a parallelogram form, the long axis of the mesh running parallel with the long axis of the nerve or fibre. Sometimes, the capillaries have a looped arrangement, a single vessel projecting from the common network, and returning after forming one or more loops, as the papillae of the tongue and skin.

The number of the capillaries, and the size of the meshes, determine the degree of vascularity of a part. The closest network, and the smallest interspaces, are found in the lungs and in the choroid coat of the eye. In the liver and lung, the interspaces are smaller than the capillary vessels themselves. In the kidney, in the conjunctiva, and in the cutis, the interspaces are from three to four times as large as the capillaries which form them; and in the brain from eight to ten times as large as the capillaries, in their long diameter, and from four to six times as large in their transverse diameter. In the cellular coat of the arteries, the width of the meshes is ten times that of the capillary vessels. As a general rule, the more active the function of an organ is, the closer is its capillary net, and the larger its supply of blood, the network being very narrow in all growing parts, in the glands, and in the mucous membranes; wider in bones and ligaments, which are comparatively inactive; and nearly altogether absent in tendons and cartilages, in which very little organic change occurs after their formation.

Structure.—The walls of the capillaries consist of a fine, transparent, homogeneous membrane, in which are embedded, at intervals, minute oval corpuscles. When stained with nitrate of silver, the edges which bound the epithelial cells are brought into view (Fig. 45). These cells are of large size, of an irregular polygonal or fusiform shape, each containing one of the nuclei seen before the application of the reagent. The whole capillary wall seems formed of these cells. Between their edges, at various points of their meeting, roundish dark spots are sometimes seen, which have been described as stomata, and have been believed to be the mechanism by which fluid transudes from and possibly into the vessel. But this view, though probable, is not universally accepted.

In many situations a delicate sheath or envelope of fine connective tissue is found around the simple capillary tube; and in other places, especially in the glands, the capillaries are invested with retiform lymphatic tissue.

In the largest capillaries (which ought perhaps to be described rather as the smallest arteries) traces of an epithelial lining and of circular transverse fibres are to be seen.

Veins are composed of three coats, internal, middle, and external, as the arteries are; and these coats are, with the necessary modifications, analogous to
the coats of the arteries—the internal being the epithelial, the middle the fibrous, and the external the connective or areolar. The main difference between the veins and the arteries is in the comparative weakness of the middle coat of the former; and to this it is due that the veins do not stand open when divided, as the arteries do; and that they are passive rather than active organs of the circulation.

In the veins immediately above the capillaries the three coats are hardly to be distinguished. The epithelium is supported on an outer membrane of nucleated connective tissue, separable into two layers, the outer of which is the thicker, the fibres of both being longitudinal. The interior thinner layer of nucleated tissue is regarded by Kölliker as the analogue of the middle coat. In the veins next above these in size (one-fifth of a line, according to Kölliker) a muscular layer and a layer of circular fibres can be traced, forming the middle coat, while the elastic and connective elements of the outer coat become more distinctly perceptible.

In the middle-sized veins, the typical structure of these vessels becomes clear. The epithelium is of the same character as in the arteries, but its cells are more oval, less fusiform. It is supported by one or more layers of nucleated fibrous tissue, arranged longitudinally, and external to this is a layer of elastic fibrous tissue. This constitutes the internal coat. The middle coat is composed of a thick inner layer of connective tissue with elastic fibres, having intermixed in some veins a transverse layer of muscular fibres; and an outer layer consisting of longitudinal elastic lamellae, varying from five to ten in number, alternating with layers of transverse muscular fibres and connective tissue, which resembles somewhat in structure the middle coat of large arteries. The outer coat is similar in all essential respects to that of the arteries. In the large veins, as in the commencement of the vena portae, in the upper part of the abdominal portion of the inferior vena cava, and in the large hepatic trunks within the liver, the middle coat is thick, and its structure similar to that of the middle coat in medium-sized veins; but its muscular tissue is scanty, and the longitudinal elastic networks less distinctly lamellated. The muscular tissue of this coat is best marked in the splenic and portal veins; it is absent in certain parts of the vena cava below the liver, and wanting in the subclavian vein and terminal parts of the two cavae.

In the largest veins the outer coat is from two to five times thicker than the middle coat, and contains a large number of longitudinal muscular fibres. This is most distinct in the hepatic part of the inferior vena cava, and at the termination of this vein in the heart; in the trunks of the hepatic veins; in all the large trunks of the vena portae; in the splenic, superior mesenteric, external iliac, renal, and azygos veins. Where the middle coat is absent, this muscular layer extends as far as the inner coat. In the renal and portal veins, it extends through the whole thickness of the outer coat; but in the other veins mentioned a layer of connective and elastic tissues is found external to the muscular fibres. All the large veins which open into the heart are covered for a short distance by a layer of striped muscular tissue continued on to them from the heart.

Muscular tissue is wanting in the veins—1. Of the maternal part of the placenta. 2. In most of the cerebral veins and sinuses of the dura mater. 3. In the veins of the retina. 4. In the veins of the cancellous tissue of bones. 5. In the venous spaces of the corpora cavernosa. The veins of the above-mentioned parts consist of an internal epithelial lining, supported on one or more layers of areolar tissue.

Most veins are provided with valves, which serve to prevent the reflux of the
blood. They are formed by a reduplication of the inner and part of the middle coat, and consist of connective tissue and elastic fibres, covered on both surfaces by epithelium; their form is semilunar. They are attached by their convex edge to the wall of the vein; the concave margin is free, directed in the course of the venous current, and lies in close apposition with the wall of the vein as long as the current of blood takes its natural course; if, however, any regurgitation takes place, the valves become distended, their opposed edges are brought into contact, and the current is intercepted. Most commonly two such valves are found, placed opposite one another, more especially in the smaller veins, or in the larger trunks at the point where they are joined by small branches; occasionally there are three, and sometimes only one. The wall of the vein immediately above the point of attachment of each segment of the valve is expanded into a pouch or sinus, which gives to the vessel, when injected or distended with blood, a knotted appearance. The valves are very numerous in the veins of the extremities, especially of the lower extremities, these vessels having to conduct the blood against the force of gravity. They are absent in the very small veins, also in the vena cavae, the hepatic vein, portal vein and its branches, the renal, uterine, and ovarian veins. A few valves are found in the spermatic veins, and one also at their point of junction with the renal vein and inferior cava in both sexes. The cerebral and spinal veins, the veins of the cancellated tissue of bone, the pulmonary veins, and the umbilical vein and its branches, are also destitute of valves. They are occasionally found, few in number, in the vena azygos and intercostal veins.

The veins are supplied with nutrient vessels, vasa vasorum, like the arteries; but nerves are not generally found distributed upon them. The only vessels
upon which they have at present been traced are the sinuses of the dura mater; on the spinal veins; on the venae cavae; on the common jugular, iliac, and cranial veins; and on the hepatic veins (Kolliker).

The Lymphatic Vessels, like arteries and veins, are composed of three coats. The internal is an epithelial and elastic coat. It is thin, transparent, slightly elastic, and ruptures sooner than the other coats. It is composed of a layer of elongated epithelial cells, supported on a simple network of elastic fibres. The middle coat is composed of smooth muscular and fine elastic fibres, disposed in a transverse direction. The external, or areolar-fibrous coat, consists of filaments of the areolar tissue, intermixed with smooth muscular fibres, longitudinally or obliquely disposed. It forms a protective covering to the other coats, and serves to connect the vessel with the neighboring structures.

The lymphatics are supplied by nutrient vessels, which are distributed to their outer and middle coats; but no nerves have at present been traced into them.

The lymphatics are very generally provided with valves, which assist materially in effecting the circulation of the fluid they contain. These valves are formed of a thin layer of fibrous tissue, lined on both surfaces with scaly epithelium. Their form is semilunar, they are attached by their convex edge to the sides of the vessel, the concave edge being free, and directed along the course of the contained current. Usually, two such valves, of equal size, are found opposite one another; but occasionally exceptions occur, especially at or near the anastomoses of lymphatic vessels. Thus one valve may be of very rudimentary size, and the other increased in proportion. In other cases, the semilunar flaps have been found directed transversely across the vessel, instead of obliquely, so as to impede the circulation in both directions, but not to completely arrest it in either; or the semilunar flaps, taking the same direction, have been found united on one side, so as to form, by their union, a transverse septum, having a partial transverse slit; and sometimes the flap is constituted of a circular fold, attached to the entire circumference of the vessel, and having in its centre a circular or elliptical aperture, like the ileo-cecal valve.

The valves in the lymphatic vessels are placed at much shorter intervals than in the veins. They are most numerous near the lymphatic glands, and they are found more frequently in the lymphatics of the neck and upper extremity than in the lower. The wall of the lymphatics, immediately above the point of attachment of each segment of a valve, is expanded into a pouch or sinus, which gives to these vessels, when distended, the knotted or beaded appearances which they present. Valves are wanting in the vessels composing the plexiform network in which the lymphatics usually originate on the surface of the body.

The finest visible lymphatic vessels form a plexiform network in the subcutaneous and submucous tissues, and this is properly regarded as one method of their commencement. But the lymphatics have also other modes of origin, for the intestinal lacteals commence by closed extremities (Fig. 438), and it seems now to be conclusively proved that the serous membranes present stomata, or openings between the epithelial cells, by which there is an open communication with the lymphatic system, and through which the lymph is thought to be pumped by the alternate dilatation and contraction of the serous surface, due to the movements of respiration and circulation.¹ Von Recklinghausen was the

¹ The resemblance between lymph and serum led Hewson long ago to regard the serous cavities as sacs into which the lymphatics open. These recent microscopic discoveries confirm this opinion in a very interesting manner.
first to observe the passage of milk and other colored fluid through these stomata on the peritoneal surface of the central tendon of the diaphragm.\footnote{For a fuller account see Klein’s “Anatomy of the Lymphatic System.”}

Again, the lymphoid or retiform tissue which is found in various organs, and in some, as in the spleen, surrounds the minute bloodvessels with a kind of sheath, forms another and a very extensive mode of origin of lymphatics, whether the meshes of this retiform tissue pass directly into the minute lymphatic plexus, or whether the latter is regarded as closed, so that the fluid in the retiform tissue has to pass by osmosis into the lymphatic vessel, which certainly seems to be the case in the intestinal villi. As the retiform tissue is also in very similar relation to the terminal capillaries, there is here a free method of communication between the bloodvessels and lymphatics, though the direct continuity of their tubes by vascular anastomosis can nowhere be proved to exist, as far as has been shown at present. The lymph-sinuses or lymph-pathways of the lymphatic glands may be regarded as another mode of origin of lymphatics, or as a modification of the above-mentioned origin in retiform tissue.

There is no satisfactory evidence to prove that any natural communication exists between the lymphatics of glandular organs and their ducts.

The Lymphatic Glands consist of (1) a fibrous envelope, or capsule, from which a framework of processes (trabeculae) proceeds inwards, dividing the gland into open spaces (alveoli) freely communicating with each other; (2) a large quantity of retiform connective tissue occupying these spaces; (3) a free supply of bloodvessels, which are supported on the trabeculae; and (4) the afferent and efferent lymphatics. Little is known of the nerves, though Kolliker describes some fine nervous filaments passing into the hilum.

The afferent lymphatics enter the capsule of the gland in variable numbers and at various points, while the efferent vessels are usually only one or two, and they emerge from the gland at a definite spot, the hilum, where there is usually, but not always, a recognizable depression. The external coats of the lymphatic vessels are continuous with the capsule of the gland; their internal epithelial lining is continuous with that of the lymph-channel in the interior of the gland.

A section of a lymphatic gland displays two different structures: an external of lighter color—the cortical; and
an internal, darker—the medullary. In the cortical the retiform tissue is disposed in the form of follicles or nodules, which are held on to the septa by delicate sustentacular fibres, which unite them to the trabecula, and are said by Frey to keep them stretched and open, as a piece of embroidery is stretched to its frame. From these nodules rods or tubes of retiform tissue proceed, which interlace with each other in a very minute network, of which the medullary tissue of the gland is formed. These rods, equally with the nodules of the cortical portion, are supported by a delicate connective tissue which attaches them to the trabecula, and which also contains lymphoid corpuscles, though in less quantity than in the nodules and rods of the gland-pulp.

Fig. 51.

Fig. 52.

Follicle from a lymphatic gland of the dog, in vertical section. a. Reticular sustentacular substance of the more external portion; b, of the more internal, and c, of the most external and most finely-webbed part on the surface of the follicle; d, origin of a large lymph-tube; e, of a smaller one; f, capsule; g, septa; h, vas affrana; i, investing space of the follicle, with its retinacula; j, one of the divisions of the septa; k, attachment of the lymph-tubes to the septa.

From the medullary substance of an inguinal gland of the ox (after Hils). a. Lymph-tube, with its complicated system of vessels; b, retinacula stretched between the tube and the septa; c, portion of another lymph-tube; d, septa.

The afferent lymphatics open directly into the sustentacular tissue around the nodes and rods—the lymph-path or lymph-channel. This investing space is continuous over both the nodules of the cortical, and the rods or tubes of the medullary, portion, and the efferent lymphatics are continuous with it in the latter portion of the gland.

The rods of the medullary part are described by Frey as forming a lymphoid sheath for the capillary vessels which run in the axis of the retiform tissue, while other branches are distributed in a rich network over it (Fig. 52). It is doubtful in these spaces that the exchange of materials goes on between the bloodvessels and the lymphatics which is necessary to the further elaboration of the lymph and the multiplication of the lymph-corpuscles which takes place in the glands (see page 88).

THE SKIN AND ITS APPENDAGES.

The Skin is the principal seat of the sense of touch, and may be regarded as a covering for the protection of the deeper tissues; it is also an important excretory and absorbing organ. It consists of two layers, the derma or cutis
VERA, and the epidermis or cuticle. On the surface of the former layer are the sensitive papilla; and within, or embedded beneath it, are the sweat-glands, hair-follicles, and sebaceous glands.

The derma, or true skin, is tough, flexible, and highly elastic, in order to defend the internal parts from violence. It consists of fibro-areolar tissue, inter-

**Fig. 53.**

A Sectional View of the Skin (magnified).

mixed with numerous bloodvessels, lymphatics, and nerves. The fibro-areolar tissue forms the framework of the cutis; it is composed of firm interlacing bundles of white fibrous tissue, intermixed with a much smaller proportion of yellow elastic fibres, the amount of which varies in different parts. The fibro-areolar tissue is more abundant in the deeper layers of the cutis, where it is dense and firm, the meshes being large, and gradually becoming blended with the subcutaneous areolar tissue; towards the surface, the fibres become finer and more closely interlaced, the most superficial layer being covered with numerous small conical vascular eminences, the papilla. From these differences in the structure of the cutis at different parts, it is usual to describe it as consisting of two layers: the deeper layer or corium, and the superficial or papillary layer.

The corium consists of strong interlacing fibrous bands, composed chiefly of the white variety of fibrous tissue; but containing, also, some fibres of the yellow elastic tissue, which vary in amount in different parts. Towards the attached surface, the fasciculi are large and coarse; and the areole which are left by their interlacement are large, and occupied by adipose tissue and the sweat-glands. This element of the skin becomes gradually blended with the subcutaneous areolar tissue. Towards the free surface, the fasciculi are much
finer, and they have a close interlacing, the most superficial layers consisting of a transparent, homogeneous matrix, with embedded nuclei.

The corium varies in thickness, from a quarter of a line to a line and a half, in different parts of the body. Thus, it is thicker in the regions exposed to pressure, as the palm of the hand and sole of the foot; thicker on the posterior aspect of the body, than the front; and on the outer, than the inner side of the limbs. In the eyelids, scrotum, and penis, it is exceedingly thin and delicate. The skin generally is thicker in the male than in the female, and in the adult than in the child.

The areoles are occupied by adipose tissue, hair-follicles, and the sudoriferous and sebaceous glands; they are the channels by which the vessels and nerves are distributed to the more superficial strata of the corium, and to the papillary layer.

Unstriped muscular fibres are found in the superficial layers of the corium, wherever hairs are found; and in the subcutaneous areolar tissue of the scrotum, penis, perineum, and areoles of the nipples. In the latter situations the fibres are arranged in bands, closely reticulated and disposed in superimposed laminae.

The papillary layer is situated upon the free surface of the corium; it consists of numerous small, highly sensitive, and vascular eminences, the papilae, which rise perpendicularly from its surface, and form the essential element of the organ of touch. The papilae are conical-shaped eminences, having a round or blunted extremity, occasionally divided into two or more parts, and connected by their base with the free surface of the corium. Their average length is about \( \frac{1}{16} \)th of an inch, and they measure at their base about \( \frac{1}{4} \)th of an inch in diameter.

On the general surface of the body, more especially in those parts which are endowed with slight sensibility, they are few in number, short, exceedingly minute, and irregularly scattered over the surface; but in other situations, as upon the palmar surface of the hands and fingers, upon the plantar surface of the feet and toes, and around the nipple, they are long, of large size, closely aggregated together, and arranged in parallel curved lines, forming the elevated ridges seen on the free surface of the epidermis. In these ridges, the larger papilae are arranged in a double row, with smaller papilae between them; and these rows are subdivided into small square-shaped masses by short transverse furrows, regularly disposed, in the centre of each of, which is the minute orifice of the duct of a sweat-gland. No papillae exist in the grooves between the ridges. In structure, the papilae resemble the superficial layer of the cutis; consisting of a homogeneous tissue, faintly fibrillated, and containing a few fine elastic fibres. The smaller papillae contain a single capillary loop; but in the larger the vessels are convoluted to a greater or less degree; each papilla also contains one or more nerve-fibres, but the mode in which these terminate is uncertain. In those parts in which the sense of touch is highly developed, as in the lips and palm of the hand, the nerve-fibres are connected with the “tactile corpuscles.” Kölliker considers that the central part of the papilae generally consists of a connective tissue more homogeneous than that of the outer part, surrounded by a sort of sheath of elastic fibres, and he believes that these corpuscles are merely a variety of this structure. The corpuscles, and their connection with the nerves, have been described above.

The epidermis, or cuticle (scarf-skin), is an epithelial structure, accurately moulded on the papillary layer of the derma. It forms a defensive covering to the surface of the true skin, and limits the evaporation of watery vapor from its free surface. It varies in thickness in different parts. Where it is exposed to pressure and the influence of the atmosphere, as upon the palms of the hands and soles of the feet, it is thick, hard, and horny in texture; whilst that which lies in contact with the rest of the body is soft and cellular in structure. The deeper and softer layers have been called the rete mucosum, the term rete being used from the deepest layers presenting, when isolated, numerous depressions, or complete apertures, which have been occupied by the projecting papilae.
The free surface of the epidermis is marked by a network of linear furrows of variable size, marking out the surface into a number of spaces of polygonal or lozenge-shaped form. Some of these furrows are large, as opposite the flexures of the joints, and correspond to the folds in the derma produced by their movements. In other situations, as upon the back of the hand, they are exceedingly fine and intersect one another at various angles: upon the palmar surface of the hand and fingers, and upon the sole, these lines are very distinct, and are disposed in curves. They depend upon the large size and peculiar arrangement of the papilla upon which the epidermis is placed. The deep surface of the epidermis is accurately moulded upon the papillary layer of the derma, each papilla being invested by its epidermic sheath; so that when this layer is removed by maceration, it presents a number of pits or depressions corresponding to the elevations of the papilla, as well as the furrows left in the intervals between them. Fine tubular prolongations from this layer are continued into the ducts of the sudoriferous and sebaceous glands. In structure, the epidermis consists of flattened cells, agglutinated together, and having a laminated arrangement. In the deeper layers the cells are large, rounded or columnar, and filled with soft opaque contents. In the superficial layers the cells are flattened, transparent, dry, and firm, and their contents converted into a kind of horny matter. The difference in the structure of these layers is dependent upon the mode of growth of the epidermis. As the external layers desquamate from their being constantly subjected to attrition, they are reproduced from beneath, successive layers gradually approaching towards the free surface, which, in their turn, die and are cast off.

These cells are developed in the liquor sanguinis, which is poured out on the free surface of the derma; they contain nuclei, and form a thin stratum of closely-aggregated nucleated cells, which cover the entire extent of the papillary layer. The deepest layers of cells, according to Kölliker, are of a columnar form, and are arranged perpendicularly to the free surface of the derma, forming either a single or a double, or even triple layer; the laminae succeeding these are composed of cells of a more rounded form, the contents of which are soft, opaque, granular, and soluble in acetic acid. As these cells successively approach the surface by the development of fresh layers from beneath, they assume a flattened form from the evaporation of their fluid contents, and finally form a transparent, dry, membranous scale, lose their nuclei, and apparently become changed in their chemical composition, as they are unaffected now by acetic acid.

The black color of the skin in the negro, and the tawny color among some of the white races, is due to the presence of pigment in the cells of the cuticle. This pigment is more especially distinct in the cells of the deeper layer, or rete mucosum, and is similar to that found in the choroid. As the cells approach the surface and desiccate, the color becomes partially lost.

The arteries which supply the skin divide into numerous branches in the subcutaneous tissue; they then pass through the areolae of the corium, and divide into a dense capillary plexus, which supplies the sudoriferous and sebaceous glands and the hair-follicles, terminating in the superficial layers of the corium, by forming a capillary network, from which numerous fine branches ascend to the papilla.

The lymphatic vessels are arranged in a minute plexiform network in the superficial layers of the corium, where they become interwoven with the capillary and nervous plexuses; they are especially abundant in the scrotum and around the nipple.

The nerves which supply the skin ascend with the vessels through the areolae of the deep layers of the corium to the more superficial layers, where they form a minute plexiform mesh. From this plexus, the primitive nerve-fibres pass to be distributed to the papilla. The nerves are most numerous in those parts which are provided with the greatest sensibility.
The appendages of the skin are, the nails, the hairs, the sudoriferous and sebaceous glands, and their ducts. The nails and hairs are peculiar modifications of the epidermis, consisting essentially of the same cellular structure as that membrane.

The **Nails** are flattened elastic structures of a horny texture, placed upon the dorsal surface of the terminal phalanges of the fingers and toes. Each nail is convex on its outer surface, concave within, and is implanted by a portion called the root into a groove of the skin; the exposed portion is called the body, and the anterior extremity the free edge. The nail has a very firm adhesion to the cutis, being accurately moulded upon its surface, as the epidermis is in other parts. The part of the cutis beneath the body and root of the nail, is called the matrix, because it is the part from which the nail is produced. Corresponding to the body of the nail, the matrix is thick, and covered with large, highly vascular papille, arranged in longitudinal rows, the color of which is seen through the transparent tissue. Behind this, near the root of the nail, the papille are small, less vascular, and have no regular arrangement; hence, the portion of the nail corresponding to this part is of a whiter color, and called lunula, from its form.

The cuticle, as it passes forwards on the dorsal surface of the finger, is attached to the surface of the nail, a little in advance of its root: at the extremity of the finger, it is connected with the under surface of the nail, a little behind its free edge. The cuticle and horny structure of the nail (both epidermic structures) are thus directly continuous with each other. The nails, in structure, consist of cells having a laminated arrangement, and these are essentially similar to those composing the epidermis. The cells of the deepest layer which lie in contact with the papille at the root and under surface of the nail, are of elongated form, arranged perpendicularly to the surface, and provided with nuclei; those which succeed these are of a rounded or polygonal form, the more superficial ones becoming broad, thin, and flattened, and so closely compacted together as to make the limits of each cell very indistinct.

It is by the successive growth of new cells at the root and under surface of the body of the nail, that it advances forwards, and maintains a due thickness, whilst, at the same time, the growth of the nail in the proper direction is secured. As these cells in their turn become displaced by the growth of new cells, they assume a flattened form, lose their nuclei, and finally become closely compacted together into a firm, dense horny texture. In chemical composition, the nails resemble the epidermis. According to Mulder, they contain a somewhat larger proportion of carbon and sulphur.

The **Hairs** are peculiar modifications of the epidermis, and consist essentially of the same structure as that membrane. They are found on nearly every part of the surface of the body, excepting the palms of the hands and soles of the feet, and vary much in length, thickness, and color in different parts of the body and in different races of mankind. In some parts they are so short as not to project beyond the follicles containing them; in other parts, as upon the scalp, they are of considerable length; along the margin of the eyelids and upon the face, they are remarkable for their thickness. A hair consists of a root, the part implanted in the skin; the **shaft**, the portion projecting from its surface, and the **point**. They generally present a cylindrical or more or less flattened form, and a reniform outline upon a transverse section (Fig. 54).

The root of the hair presents at its extremity a bulbous enlargement, which is whiter in color, and softer in texture, than the stem, and is lodged in a follicular involution of the epidermis, called the hair-follicle. When the hair is of considerable length, the follicle extends into the subcutaneous cellular tissue. The hair follicle is bulbous at its deep extremity, like the hair which it contains, and has opening into it, near its free extremity, the orifices of the ducts of one or more sebaceous glands. In structure, the hair-follicle consists of two coats: an outer or dermic, and an inner or cuticular. The outer coat is formed mainly of areolar tissue; it is continuous with the corium, is highly vascular, and supplied
by numerous minute nervous filaments. The inner or cuticular lining is continuous with the epidermis, and, at the bottom of the hair-follicle, with the root of the hair; this cuticular lining resembles the epidermis in the peculiar rounded form and soft character of those cells which lie in contact with the outer coat of the hair-follicle, and the thin, dry, and scaly character of those which lie near the surface of the hair, to which they are closely adherent. When the hair is plucked from its follicle, the cuticular lining most commonly adheres to it, and forms what is called the root-sheath. At the bottom of each hair-follicle is a small conical vascular eminence or papilla, similar in every respect to those found upon the surface of the skin; it is continuous with the dermic layer of the follicle, is highly vascular, and probably supplied with nervous fibrils: this is the part through which material is supplied for the production and constant growth of the hair. The root of the hair rests upon this conical-shaped eminence, and is continuous with the cuticular lining of the follicle at this part. It consists of nucleated cells, similar in every respect to those which in other situations form the epidermis. These cells gradually enlarge as they are pushed upwards into the soft bulb, and some of them contain pigment-granules, which either exist in separated cells, or are separate, or aggregated round the nucleus; it is these granules which give rise to the color of the hair. It occasionally happens that these pigment-granules completely fill the cells in the centre of the bulb, which gives rise to the dark tract of pigment often found, of greater or less length, in the axis of the hair.

The shaft of the hair consists of a central part or medulla, the fibrous part of the hair, and the cortex externally. The medulla occupies the centre of the shaft, and ceases towards the point of the hair. It is usually wanting in the fine hairs covering the surface of the body, and commonly in those of the head. It is more opaque and deeper colored than the fibrous part, and consists of cells containing pigment- or fat-granules. The fibrous portion of the hair constitutes the chief part of the stem; its cells are elongated, and unite to form flattened fusiform fibres. These also contain pigment-granules, which assume a linear arrangement. The cells which form the cortex of the hair consist of a single layer which surrounds those of the fibrous part; they are converted into thin flat scales, having an imbricated arrangement.

The Sebaceous Glands are small, sacculated, glandular organs, lodged in the substance of the corium, or subdormoid tissue. They are found in most parts of the skin, but are most abundant in the scalp and face; they are also very numerous around the apertures of the anus, nose, mouth, and external ear; but are wanting in the palms of the hands and soles of the feet. Each gland consists of a single duct, more or less capacious, which terminates in a lobulated pouch-like extremity. The basement membrane forming the wall of the sac, as well as the duct, is lined by epithelium, which is filled with particles of sebaceous matter; and this becoming detached into the cavity of the sac, as its growth is renewed, constitutes the secretion. The sacculi connected with each duct vary in number from two to five, or even twenty. The orifices of the ducts open
most frequently into the hair-follicles, but occasionally upon the general surface. On the nose and face, the glands are of large size, distinctly lobulated, and often become much enlarged from the accumulation of pent-up secretion. The largest sebaceous glands are those found in the eyelids, the Meibomian glands.

The **Sudoriferous** or **Sweat-glands** are the organs by which a large portion of the aqueous and gaseous materials are excreted by the skin. They are found in almost every part of the skin, and are situated in small pits in the deep parts of the corium, or, more frequently, in the subcutaneous areolar tissue, surrounded by a quantity of adipose tissue. They are small, lobular, reddish bodies, consisting of one or more convoluted tubuli, from which the efferent duct proceeds upwards through the corium and cuticle, and opens upon the surface by a slightly enlarged orifice. The efferent duct, as it passes through the corium, pursues for a short distance, a spiral course; it becomes straight in the more superficial part of this layer, and opens on the surface of the cuticle by an oblique valve-like aperture. In the parts where the epidermis is thin, the ducts are finer, and almost straight in their course; but where the epidermis is thicker, they assume again a spiral arrangement, the separate windings of the tube being as close and as regular as those of a common screw. The spiral course of these ducts is especially distinct in the thick cuticle of the palm of the hand and sole of the foot. (Fig. 55.) The size of the glands varies. They are especially large in those regions where the amount of perspiration is great, as in the axille, where they form a thin mamillated layer of a reddish color, which corresponds exactly to the situation of the hair in this region; they are large, also, in the groin. Their number varies. They are most numerous on the palm of the hand, presenting, according to Krause, 2,500 orifices on a square inch of the integument, and are rather less numerous on the sole of the foot. In both of these situations, the orifices of the ducts are exceedingly regular, and correspond to the small transverse grooves which intersect the ridges of papillae. In other situations they are more irregularly scattered, but in nearly equal numbers, over parts including the same extent of surface. In the neck and back they are least numerous, their number amounting to 417 on the square inch (Krause). Their total number is estimated by the same writer at 2,381,248; and, supposing the aperture of each gland to represent a surface of 1/50th of a line in diameter, he calculates that the whole of these glands would present an evaporating surface of about eight square inches. Each gland consists of a single tube intricately convoluted, terminating at one end by a blind extremity, and opening at the other end upon the surface of the skin. In the larger glands this single duct usually divides and subdivides dichotomously; the smaller ducts ultimately terminating in short cecal pouches, rarely anastomosing. The wall of the duct is thick; the width of the canal rarely exceeding one-third of its diameter. The tube, both in the gland and where it forms the excretory duct, consists of two layers: an outer, formed

![Sudoriferous Gland from the palm of the hand, magnified 40 diam.](image-url)
by fine areolar tissue; and an inner layer of epithelium. The external, or fibrocellular coat, is thin, continuous with the superficial layer of the corium, and extends only as high as the surface of the true skin. The epithelial lining is much thicker, continuous with the epidermis, and alone forms the spiral portion of the tube. When the cuticle is carefully removed from the surface of the cutis, these convoluted tubes of epidermis may be drawn out, and form nipple-shaped projections on its under surface. According to Kölliker, a layer of non-striated muscular fibres, arranged longitudinally, is found between the areolar and epithelial coats of the ducts of the larger sweat-glands, as in the axilla, root of the penis, on the labia majora, and round the anus.

The contents of the smaller sweat-glands are quite fluid; but in the larger glands, the contents are semi-fluid and opaque, and contain a number of colored granules, and cells which appear analogous to epithelial cells.

**THE EPITHELIUM.**

All the surfaces of the body, the external surface of the skin, the internal surface of the digestive and respiratory tracts, the closed serous cavities, the inner coat of the vessels, and the ducts of all glands, are covered by one or more layers of simple cells, called epithelium or epithelial cells, which serve various purposes, both as a protective layer, and as an agent in secretion. Thus, in the skin, the main purpose served by the epithelium (here called the epidermis) is that of protection. As the surface is worn away by the agency of friction or change of temperature, new cells are supplied, and thus the surface of the true skin, and the vessels and nerves which it contains, are defended from damage. In the gastro-intestinal mucous membrane and in the glands, the epithelial cells appear to be the principal agents in separating the secretion from the blood or from the alimentary fluids. In other situations (as the nose, fauces, and respiratory passages) the chief office of the epithelial cells appears to be to maintain an equable temperature by the moisture with which they keep the surface always slightly lubricated. In the serous cavities they also keep the opposed layers moist, and thus facilitate their movements on each other. Finally, in all internal parts they ensure a perfectly smooth surface.

![Fig. 56.](image)

Epithelial cells in the oral cavity of man. a, large. b, middle-sized. c, the same with two nuclei. (Magnified 300 times.)

The epithelium is usually spoken of as tesselated or pavement, columnar, spheroidal or glandular, and ciliated.

The pavement-epithelium is composed of flat nucleated scales of various shapes, usually polygonal, and varying in size. These scales often contain granules, as in Fig. 56. This kind of epithelium is found on the surface of the skin (epidermis), on all the serous surfaces (unless the ventricles of the brain be an ex-
ception), on the lining membranes of the bloodvessels, on many of the mucous membranes, and in the ducts. The nails, hairs, and in animals the horns, are a variety of this kind of epithelium.

The columnar epithelium (Fig. 58) is formed of cylindrical or rod-shaped cells, each containing a nucleus, and set together, so as to form a complete membrane.

This form of epithelium covers the mucous membrane of the whole gastrointestinal tract and the glands of that part, the greater part of the urethra, the vas deferens, the prostate, Cowper’s glands, Bartholine’s glands, and a portion of the uterine mucous membrane.

The spheroidal or glandular epithelium (Fig. 59) is composed of circular cells, with granular contents and a small nucleus.

This form is found in the kidney, ureters, and bladder, and in the secreting glands.

Ciliated epithelium (Fig. 60) may be of any of the preceding forms, but usually inclines to the columnar shape. It is distinguished by the presence of minute processes, like hairs or eyelashes (cilia), standing up from the free surface. If the cells be examined during life, or immediately on removal from the

---

1 As already stated, the epithelium lining the bloodvessels, lymphatics, and serous membranes is modified in shape, and its cells vary much in size. It is usually spoken of in German works as endothelium.
GENERAL ANATOMY.

living body (for which in the human subject the removal of a nasal polypus offers a frequent opportunity), in tepid water, the cilia will be seen in active lashing motion; and if the cells be separate, they will often be moved about in the field by that motion.

The situations in which ciliated epithelium is found in the human body are: the respiratory tract from the nose downwards, the tympanum and Eustachian tube, the Fallopian tube and upper portion of the uterus, and the ventricles of the brain.

SEROUS, SYNOVIAL, AND MUCOUS MEMBRANES.

These membranes consist of a layer of epithelium supported on a structureless membrane, called the basement-membrane, beneath which lies a tract of connective or areolar tissue, which in the mucous membranes lodges glands of various kinds, and contains unstriped muscle, or contractile muscular fibre-cells, and in both serous and mucous membranes conveys the blood vessels out of which the secretion is to be eliminated.

The *serous membranes* are the simplest of the three, and will therefore be first described.

They form shut sacs, sometimes arranged quite simply, as the tunica vaginalis testis, at others with numerous involutions and recesses, as the peritoneum, but which can always be traced continuously around the whole circumference. The sac is completely closed, so that no communication exists between the serous cavity and the parts in its neighborhood. An apparent exception exists in the peritoneum of the female; for the Fallopian tube opens freely into the peritoneal cavity in the dead subject, so that a bristle can be passed from one into the other. But this communication is closed during life, except at the moment of the passage of the ovum out of the ovary into the tube, as is proved by the fact that no interchange of fluids ever takes place between the two cavities in dropsy of the peritoneum, or in accumulation of fluid in the Fallopian tubes. The serous membrane is often supported by a firm fibrous layer, as is the case with the pericardium, and such membranes are sometimes spoken of as “fibro-serous.” In the parietal portion of the arachnoid there is, according to many anatomists, no serous membrane in the “proper” sense of the term; but the dura mater is merely lined with a layer of epithelium, the basement-membrane being here indistinguishable. In other situations, the following parts may be recognized as constituting a serous membrane:—1. The epithelium, a single layer of polygonal or pavement-epithelial cells. 2. A structureless basement-membrane. 3. The connective tissue and vessels which support the latter, connect it with the parts below, and supply blood to its deep surface. Some of the serous portion of the blood is secreted, or transudes, through the basement-membrane to furnish the special secretion. This latter is, in most cases, only in sufficient quantity to moisten the membrane, but not to furnish any appreciable quantity of fluid. When a small quantity can be collected, it appears to resemble in many respects the lymph, and like that fluid coagulates spontaneously; but when secreted in large quantities, as in dropsy, it is a watery fluid containing usually sufficient albumen to gelatinize with heat.

Lately the interesting discovery has been made that fluids with colored particles transude through the serous membrane into the lymphatic vessels, and stomata or openings have been seen between the cells of the epithelium, which are believed to be opened and closed by the movements of the serous surface. These stomata have been demonstrated at present only in the peritoneum and pleura.

The *mucous membranes* are more complex in their structure than the serous. Their epithelium is of various forms, including the spheroidal, columnar, and ciliated, and is often arranged in several layers (see Fig. 60). This epithelial layer is supported by the *corium*, which is analogous to the derma of the skin, and is in fact continuous with it at the orifices of the body. The corium consists, as it
is usually described, of a transparent structureless basement-membrane next to the epithelium, supported by a fibro-vascular layer of variable thickness below it, and this merging into the submucous areolar tissue. It is only in some situations that the basement-membrane can be demonstrated.

The fibro-vascular layer of the corium contains, besides the white and yellow fibrous tissue and the vessels, muscular fibre-cells, forming, in many situations, a definite layer, called the muscularis mucosae, nerves, and lymphatics in various proportions. Embedded in it are found numerous glands, and projecting out of it are processes (villi and papillae) analogous to the papillae of the skin. These glands and processes, however, exist only at certain parts, and it will be more convenient to refer for their description to the sequel, where the parts are described in which they occur. Thus the mucous glands are described in the account of the mouth, the stomach, the intestines, &c., the papillae and villi with that of the tongue.

The synovial membranes are analogous in structure to the serous, but differ from them in the nature of their secretion, which rather resembles mucus. They will be described hereafter.

SECRETING GLANDS.

The Secreting Glands are organs in which the blood circulating in capillary vessels is brought into contact with the epithelial cells of a mucous membrane, whereby certain elements are separated ("secreted") out of the blood, and are poured into the mucous cavity. This cavity is arranged in the form of a ramifying duct, the secreting cells lying in, or touching, the terminal ramifications (or more correctly the commencing radicles) of the duct.

In size the glands vary extremely: thus the liver weighs nearly four pounds, while many of the mucous glands are only visible to the naked eye when distended with secretion; and they vary not less in structure. Thus the structure of the liver is so complex that it can hardly yet be regarded as known with absolute certainty; while there are a great many glands which consist either of a single tube lined with epithelium, on the outer side of which the blood circulates, or even a simple closed sac which opens when it becomes charged with secretion.

The great majority of glands, however, can be reduced ideally to a very simple form, viz., to an involution more or less complex of the basement-membrane, carrying of course its epithelium with it, and having the capillary vessels distributed on its attached surface. If this involution be perfectly simple, an open tube results, as in the stomach (see Fig. 436) or the common mucous crypts of the urethra; and should the mouth of such a tube become closed, a simple follicle is formed, as in the intestine (Figs. 443, 447). Branches projecting out from the bottom of this tube constitute the simplest form of racemose gland. The most rudimentary condition of such a gland is shown in the branched tubes of the gastric mucous membrane (see Fig. 436). If such a tube be conceived of as divided into branches as well as branching out at its extremity, we have a compound racemose gland consisting of a single lobule terminating in its duct (such as Brunner's glands), and an aggregation of such lobules may all open into a common duct, or may have a great number of separate ducts. Instances of such glands will be found in the salivary glands, the pancreas, &c. Or the necessary extent of epithelial surface may be obtained by the duct being coiled on itself, as in the sweat-glands (Fig. 53), or the extremity of the duct only may be thus arranged (see Fig. 499). In other glands, as in the kidney, the mucous duct is undivided from the beginning, and the capillaries from which the secretion is to be eliminated are distributed upon its walls or project into its ampullated commencement (Fig. 483).

(For the description of the Ductless or Blood Glands, we must refer to the sections in the text relating to the Anatomy of the Spleen, Suprarenal Capsules, Thyroid, and Thymus.)
Growth and Development of the Body.

The whole body is developed out of the ovum (Fig. 61) when fertilized by the spermatozoa. The ovum is merely a simple nucleated cell, or collection of protoplasm, and the spermatozoa disappear when they have accomplished their mysterious function. All the complicated changes by which the various intricate organs of the whole body are formed from one simple cell may be reduced to two general processes—viz., the segmentation or cleavage of cells, and their differentiation. The former process consists in the splitting of the nucleus and its investing cell-wall, whereby the original cell is represented by two. The differentiation of cells is a term used to describe that unknown power or tendency impressed on cells which, to all methods of examination now known, seem absolutely identical, whereby they grow into different forms; so that (to take the first instance which occurs in the growth of the embryo) the indifferent cells of the vascular area are differentiated, some of them into blood-globules, others into the solid tissue which forms the bloodvessels.

The extreme complexity of the process of development renders it at all times difficult to describe it intelligibly, and still more so in a work like this, where adequate space and illustration can hardly be afforded, having respect to the main purpose of the book. I can only hope to render the leading features of the process tolerably plain, and must refer the reader who wishes to follow the various changes more minutely to the special works on the subject, and especially the work of Foster and Balfour.

Many of the statements which are accepted in human embryology are made only on the strength of experiments on lower animals, direct observation in the human subject being impossible.

The ovum is a small spheroidal body situated in immature Graafian vesicles near their centre, but in the mature ones in contact with the membrana granulosa¹ at that part of the vesicle which projects from the surface of the ovary. The cells of the membrana granulosa are accumulated round the ovum in greater number than at any other part of the vesicle, forming a kind of granular zone, the discus proliferus.

The human ovum (Fig. 62) is extremely minute, measuring from \(\frac{1}{20}\)th to \(\frac{1}{15}\)th of an inch in diameter. It is a cell, consisting externally of a transparent envelope, the zona pellicula or vitelline membrane. Within this, and in close contact with it, is the yolk or vitellus; embedded in the substance of the yolk is a small vesicular body, the germinal vesicle (vesicle of Purkinje)—the nucleus of the cell; and this contains as its nucleolus a small spot—the macula germinativa, or the spot of Wagner.

The zona pellicula, or vitelline membrane, is a thick, colorless, transparent membrane, which appears under the microscope as a bright ring, bounded ex-

¹ See the description of the Ovary in the body of the work.
ternally and internally by a dark outline. It corresponds to the chorion of the impregnated ovum.

The **yolk** consists of granular protoplasm—i.e. granules or globules of various sizes, embedded in a more or less viscid fluid. The smaller granules resemble pigment; the larger granules, which are in greatest number at the periphery of the yolk, resemble fat-globules. In the human ovum, the number of granules is comparatively small.

The **germinal vesicle** consists of a fine, transparent, structureless membrane, containing a watery fluid, in which are occasionally found a few granules. It is about 7/16 of an inch in diameter, and in immature ova lies nearly in the centre of the yolk; but, as the ovum becomes developed, it approaches the surface, and enlarges much less rapidly than the yolk.

The **germinal spot** occupies that part of the periphery of the germinal vesicle which is nearest to the periphery of the yolk. It is opaque, of a yellow color, and finely granular in structure, measuring from 1/32 to 1/16 of an inch.

The phenomena attending the discharge of the ova from the Graafian vesicles, since they belong as much or more to the ordinary function of the ovary than to the general subject of the growth of the body, are described with the anatomy of the ovaries in the body of the work.

It should be added that in the mature ovarian ovum the germinal vesicle has disappeared. Some cells belonging to the membrana granulosa adhere for a time to the surface of the ovum, but these also soon disappear.

The first changes in the ovum which take place upon conception, appear to be as follows:—The spermatozoon penetrates the ovum, the effect of which is to bring it into contact with the yolk, and with the germinal vesicle contained in the yolk. It seems as if this normally occurs in the Fallopian tube, and abnormally it may even take place in the peritoneal cavity. The first effect is to produce a cleavage and multiplication of the yolk, which becomes first cleft into two masses, then into four, and so on, until at length a mulberry-like agglomeration of nucleated cells results (Fig. 63). Ova in which this segmentation extends

---

Fig. 63.

Four diagrams to show the division of the yolk. The ovum is surrounded by spermatozoa. The clear corpuscles (polar globules of Robin) are seen in the first two.

over the whole yolk (which is the case with the mammalia) are called **holoblastic** ova; those in which only a portion of the yolk is segmented are called **meroblastic**.

There are also found within the vitelline membrane one or more clear globules, called "polar globules" by Robin, because they lie near one of the poles of segmentation. The nature, origin, and uses of these bodies are not known. They seem to be usually regarded as produced by the liquefaction of the yolk, and as not being essential to the process of fructification.

The globules of which the yolk is now composed soon arrange themselves into the form of a membrane lined with pavement-epithelium. As the yolk-mass softens, fluid accumulates in the interior of this membrane, spreading it

---

1 See Newport, *Phil. Trans.* 1853, vol. ii. p. 233. This has been since confirmed by other observers on various lower animals, and may be assumed to be generally true.

2 Many physiologists, as Bischoff and Dr. M. Barry, taught that the ovum is fecundated in the ovary, but the reasoning of Dr. Allen Thomson appears very cogent in proving that the usual spot at which the spermatozoon meets with the ovum is in the tube.
out on the internal surface of the vitelline membrane. The latter (external) membrane (Fig. 68) soon becomes covered with granulations or vegetations, which give it a shaggy appearance, and it then takes the name of the "primitive chorion;" whilst the internal membrane, produced by the cleavage of the yolk, is called the "blastodermic membrane or vesicle."

The ovum increases in size during the whole of this time, by the absorption of albuminous fluid which coats it during its descent along the Fallopian tube, and which is secreted by the mucous membrane lining that tube.

The first stage towards the formation of the embryo is the cleavage or splitting of the blastoderm. This process has been accurately followed out in birds, in whose ova (meroblastic) the blastoderm only covers a portion of the yolk, and is divided originally into two layers, the lower of which soon splits again into two, so that three separate layers of cells result. In the human embryo also the three layers of which the blastoderm is ultimately composed are believed to originate in a similar manner, though no direct observations have hitherto been made in mammals which cover the whole period of the formation of the blastodermic membranes. But in both classes of ova they consist ultimately of three—the external, which used to be called the serous layer, but to which the term epiblast is now more commonly applied; the internal, the mucous layer, or hypoblast; and the middle, which is believed by most writers to be originally developed by cleavage from the hypoblast, and which is now usually called the mesoblast, formerly the vascular layer. The precise mode of formation of this middle layer is, however, by no means exactly made out. All the layers consist hitherto of nucleated cells, in which up to this time no special arrangement or differentiation is perceptible. Observations on the fowl's egg, however, have led Foster and Balfour to the conclusion that the cells of the epiblast are the direct results of segmentation from the original germ-cell, while those of the hypoblast and mesoblast are derived from certain "formative cells" which make their appearance in the yolk cavity, migrating into it by the help of amœboid movements after the fashion of white blood-corpuscles.

The epiblast is mainly concerned in the formation of the external cuticle and of the nervous centres. From it proceed all the epidermis of the body and all
Fig. 66.1

Diagrams to show the development of the three layers of the blastodermic membrane on transverse sections.

A, portion of the ovum with the zona pellicuda and the germinal area. B C D E F G, different stages of development. a, umbilical vesicle. b, amnion. c, intestine. p, peritoneal cavity, bounded by the splanchnopleural and somato-pleural layers of mesoblast. 1, vitelline membrane. 2, external blastodermic layer. 3, middle layer. 4, internal layer. 5, medullary lamina and groove. 6, medullary canal. 7, epidermic lamina. 7', lateral flexures of the amnion. 7", the same almost in contact. 8, internal epithelial layer of the amnion. 9, epidermis of the embryo. 10, chorda dorsalis. 11, vertebral lamina. 12, protovertebræ proper. 13, muscular lamina. 14, lateral lamina. 16, fibro-intestinal lamina. 18, cutaneous lamina. 17, internal fibrous layer of the umbilical vesicle. 18, muscular lamina extending to meet the cutaneous. 19, external layer of the cutaneous lamina. 20, internal layer of the same. 21, mesentery. 22, fibrous layer of the intestine.

1 The dotted lines indicate the parts belonging to the internal blastodermic layer; the plain lines those belonging to the middle; the interrupted lines those belonging to the external. The embryo has been represented, in this and the following diagram, lying on its back. The natural position is generally assumed to be the reverse.
the involutions of the epidermis in the ducts of the glands and of the mammae, the brain, the spinal cord, and the portions of the nose, eye, and ear which are directly formed from the brain. The external layer of the amnion is also formed from the epiblast, and probably a portion of the chorion.

The hypoblast is mainly concerned in forming the internal epithelium, viz., that of the whole alimentary passages, except the mouth and a small portion of the rectum near the anus (which are formed by an involution of the integument); that of the respiratory tract, which is originally an offset from the alimentary canal; and the epithelium of all the glandular organs which open into the internal tract. The hypoblast forms also the deeper layer of the umbilical vesicle and allantois.

All the rest of the embryo is formed from the mesoblast, viz., all the vascular and locomotive system, the cutis, all the connective tissues, the nerves, and the genito-urinary organs, through the Wolfian bodies and other temporary fetal structures. The vascular system of the fetus extends to the yolk and the maternal parts along the umbilical vesicle and allantois, so that the greater part of these bodies and the outer layer of the amnion are also formed out of the mesoblast. The fetal portion of the placenta, being essentially a vascular structure, is also developed from the mesoblast.

The method of formation of these various parts, and especially the mode of conversion of the mesoblast, is, however, very complicated.

Germinat area.—In the mass of nucleated cells into which the yolk becomes converted during the formation of the blastodermic vesicle, a small agglomeration is formed, which then spreads out into an area of nucleated cells, from which the embryo is to be formed, and which has accordingly received the name of germinal disk or area germinativa. In this portion of the ovum the first trace of the embryo appears as a faint streak, which is called the primitive trace or primitive groove (Fig. 65). This groove first deepens into a furrow, bounded by two plates—the laminae dorsales, beneath which a delicate fibril appears—the chorda dorsalis or notochord—in which cartilage can very early be recognized.

The chorda dorsalis and the laminae dorsales are the rudiments of the vertebral column and canal.

The first approaches towards a definite form in the embryo are made (1) by the development of the rudimentary spinal column, (2) by the cleavage of the middle layer of the blastodermic membrane, from which a part of that column is derived, and (3) by the incurvation of the column at its cephalic end to form the brain and brain-case.

The heaping up of the epiblast in the germinat area gives rise to a distinct longitudinal streak, which, when looked at from above, is seen to be constricted in the middle. Soon this heaped-up epiblast constitutes a distinct groove, the sides and base of which are formed of epiblastic cells (Fig. 68 A). The margins of the groove then coalesce, first in the middle of the embryo, then towards the cephalic end, which is soon seen to be more dilated than the rest and to present constrictions dividing it imperfectly into three chambers, and lastly at the caudal extremity. Thus a closed tube is formed lined with epiblast and having a covering of the same membrane (Fig. 68 b). The lining of the tube is developed into the nervous centres, the covering into the epidermis of the back and head. Below this primitive cerebro-spinal canal lies the mesoblast, and from this are developed (1) a continuous rod-shaped body lying below the primitive groove, and called the notochord; (2) on either side a substance divided into a number of square segments (the protovertebræ), which first make their appearance in the region which afterwards becomes the neck, then further forwards towards the head, and afterwards extend along the body. These protovertebrae, as will be explained hereafter, are not the same as the permanent vertebrae; but they are

---

1 In the spinal nerves the part which is in connection with the cord, including the ganglia, is formed from the mesoblast, according to the most recent observations.
Diagrams to show the development of the three blastodermic layers on antero-posterior sections. A. portion of ovum with the vitelline membrane and germinal area. B D E F, various stages of development. G, ovum in the uterus and formation of decidua. 1, vitelline membrane. 2, external blastodermic layer. 3', vesicula serosa. 4, middle blastodermic layer. 5, internal layer. 6, vestige of the future embryo. 6, cephalic flexure of the amnion. 7, caudal flexure. 8, spot where the amnion and vesicula serosa are continuous. 9', posterior umbilicus. 9, cardiac cavity. 10, external fibrous layer of the umbilical vesicle. 11, external fibrous layer of the amnion. 12, internal layer of the blastoderm forming the intestine. 13, 14 external layer of the allantois extending to the inner surface of the vesicula serosa. 15, the same now completely applied to the inner surface of the vesicula serosa. 16, umbilical cord. 17, umbilical vessels. 18, amnion. 19, chorion. 20, fetal placenta. 21, mucous membrane of uterus. 22, maternal placenta. 23, decidua reflexa. 4, muscular wall of uterus.

1 The same note applies to this as to the preceding diagram.
differentiated partly into the vertebrae, partly into the muscles and true skin, and partly into the roots and ganglia of the nerves.

Fig. 68.

Transverse section through the embryo-chick before and some time after the closure of the medullary canal, to show the upward and downward inflections of the blastoderm (after Remak). A, at the end of the first day; 1, notochord; 2, primitive groove in the medullary canal; 3, edge of the dorsal lamina; 4, corneous layer or epiblast; 5, mesoblast divided in its inner part; 6, hypoblast or epithelial layer; 7, section of protovertebral plate. B, on the third day in the lumbar region; 1, notochord in its sheath; 2, medullary canal now closed in; 3, section of the medullary substance of the spinal cord; 4, corneous layer; 5, somatopleure of the mesoblast; 6, splanchnopleure (one figure is placed in the pleuro-peritoneal cavity); 7, hypoblast layer in the intestine and spreading over the yolk; 8, 9, part of the fold of the amnion formed by epiblast and somatopleure.

On either side of the protovertebrae, the mesoblast splits into two layers, the upper of which, or that lined by epiblast, is called somatopleure, and the lower (lined by hypoblast) splanchnopleure (Fig. 68, B, 5, 5'). From the former the skeleton, muscles, and true skin of the external parts of the body are derived; from the latter, the muscular and other mesoblastic portions of the viscera. The space between them is the common pleuro-peritoneal cavity. Whilst the parietes of the body are still unclosed, this common peritoneal cavity is continuous with the space between the amnion and chorion as seen in Fig. 66, F.

The embryo, which at first seems to be a mere streak, extends longitudinally and laterally. As it grows forwards it becomes remarkably curved on itself (cephalic flexure), and a smaller but distinct flexure takes place at the hinder end (caudal flexure). At the same time the sides of the embryo grow and curve towards each other, so that the embryo is aptly compared to a canoe turned over (see Fig. 69). The well of the canoe opens freely into the cavity of the yolk-sac. Its walls are of course formed by the three blastodermic membranes, and at the point where the well commences (the future umbilicus) the outer (epiblast), lined by the somatopleural layer of mesoblast, turns back over the canoe on all sides till the folds meet at the point opposite the umbilicus; then the two sides communicate with each other, and thus a closed serous sac, the amnion, is formed (Fig. 69). Meanwhile the yolk-sac communicates freely with the interior of the embryo, through the large opening which afterwards becomes the umbilicus, and which we have likened to the well of the canoe (Fig. 66, B, C);1 and through this opening the internal blastodermic membrane and the internal or splanchnopleural division of the mesoblast pass out. In those animals which have no amnion, all three layers pass over the yolk-sac; but where the amnion exists it separates the external blastodermic layer from the yolk-sac or umbilical vesicle, as shown in the figures. This umbilical vesicle is therefore at first a mere part of the general cavity of the yolk, partly enclosed by the embryo; but as the latter grows round on all sides towards the umbilical aperture, the yolk-sac becomes distinguished into two portions, one lying inside the embryo and forming a portion of the intestinal cavity (out of which the student must remember the bladder is also formed), and therefore forming a part of the body of the fetus, and the other lying external to the body, and

1 The student will remember that in Figs. 66, 67, the embryo is represented as lying on its back; but the position in which the spinal column is highest is usually described as the natural one, as in Fig. 69.
THE AMNION.

remaining therefore as a part of what is, in a more restricted sense, the ovum. The two parts communicate by a passage—the omphalomesenteric duct—the designation of which will be pointed out presently. The extra-embryonic portion of the umbilical vesicle is of small importance and very temporary duration in the human subject. It is the seat of the earliest circulation, but is early replaced in that capacity by the allantois, which becomes the great bond of vascular connection between the embryo and the uterine tissues, as will be explained presently. As the arteries developed in the middle blastodermic layer grow, they cover the umbilical vesicle, forming the vascular area, the chief vessels of which are the omphalomesenteric, two in number. The vessels of this area appear to absorb the fluid of the umbilical vesicle, which dries up into a disk-like body attached to the amnion, and having no further function. The activity of the umbilical vesicle ceases about the same time (fifth or sixth week) as the allantois is formed. In fact, the umbilical vesicle provides nutrition to the fetus from the ovum itself, while the allantois is the channel whereby nutrition is conveyed to it from the uterine tissues. The umbilical vesicle, however, is visible, containing fluid, up to the fourth or fifth month, between the amnion and the chorion, with its pedicle and the omphalomesenteric vessels. The latter vessels then become atrophied, as the functional activity of the body with which they are connected ceases.

The Amnion. The first step towards a clear understanding of the development of the embryo is to have a proper conception of the method and the object of the formation of the amnion and of the cleavage of the blastoderm (its middle layer) into two portions at the unclosed portion of the embryo. The object of this cleavage is to form the common pleuro-peritoneal cavity, and to conduct out, along the umbilical vesicle and the allantois, the vessels by which the vital vascular connection between the fetus and the ovum or the mother is to be established.

The amnion is the membrane which immediately surrounds the embryo. It is of small size at first, but increases considerably towards the middle of pregnancy, as the fetus acquires the power of independent movement. Its cavity is occupied by a clear serous fluid, the liquor amnii, which contains about 1 per
cent. of solid matter, albumen with traces of urea. The quantity of this fluid increases up to about the sixth month of pregnancy, after which it diminishes somewhat. The use of the amnion is believed to be chiefly to allow of the movements of the fetus in the later stages of pregnancy, though it serves no doubt other purposes also. Its external layer, derived from the mesoblast, is now described as being muscular, at least as displaying rhythmic contractions during life. The internal layer is derived from the epiblast.

The amnion is thus formed. As the embryo grows it becomes curved in front and behind—the cephalic and caudal flexures; and as these flexures increase they pucker up the embryo towards a wide opening or dehiscence below, the situation of the future umbilicus. The embryo also curves over laterally towards the same point. The external blastodermic layer (epiblast) is reflected at the flexures of the embryo, in the manner shown in Fig. 67, from the body of the embryo on to the umbilical vesicle and allantois. As the allantois, at least its vascular portion, extends over the whole yolk-sac, to line the chorion internally, it carries the amnion with it until its caudal and cephalic portions come into contact (at a', Fig. 69), meet, and coalesce, forming a simple closed cavity. This internal or epithelial lining of the amnion derived from the epiblast is coated over by a fibrous (or muscular?) layer, which is furnished by the somatopleural part of the mesoblast, as above explained and figured.

The amnion is destitute of vessels. It is exclusively a fetal structure, and in no obvious connection with the parts which are truly uterine.

The part of the amnion which was at first in contact with the chorion (and which is shown in Fig. 69 by the dotted line on either side of a') is called the "false amnion," or vesicula serosa. When the amniotic folds come together and communicate, this is entirely separated from the amnion proper, and is either obliterated or takes a share in the development of the chorion. In mammals the epiblast only is believed to be concerned in the formation of the false amnion.

The Allantois is the chief agent of the early circulation, i.e., the duct or tract along which the vessels extend which convey the blood of the embryo to the foetal chorion, where it is exposed to the influence of the maternal blood circulating in the decidua or uterine portion of the chorion, from which it imbibes the materials of nutrition, and to which it gives up those matters which are necessary for its purification. The allantois is formed by a projection of the internal germinial layer (hypoblast), taking with it the splanchnopleural layer of the mesoblast, in which latter the vessels are formed which constitute its most important part. It is at first a mere hollow projection out of the common intestinal cavity (Fig. 67 c), but it soon extends into and through the pleuro-peritoneal space till it meets with the primitive chorion, and to this it contributes its essential foetal portion, the fibrous or vascular layer of the allantois. The epithelial or internal portion of the allantois, formed by the hypoblast, is hollow, and is usually styled the allantoic vesicle. The part of the allantoic vesicle outside the embryo soon withers and disappears in the human fetus, while the vascular part grows and develops into the umbilical cord. The part of the allantois internal to the embryo forms, or contributes to form, the bladder below, while its upper portion becomes impervious, and is called the urachus.

In the embryos of those animals in which the whole yolk-sac is taken up into the body of the embryo, there is no amnion and no allantois; but whenever the amnion is formed an allantois is also formed. In the former case the embryo is nourished directly by transudation into the yolk. In the latter the yolk is of subordinate importance; the fetus deriving its nourishment from the uterus through the vascular connection established between the allantois and decidua, or later between the foetal elements of the placenta, derived from the allantois, and the maternal, derived from the decidua.

The Chorion. At the time we have just been speaking of, the envelope of the ovum consists externally of the vitelline membrane, lined internally by the amnion. The allantois, or rather the fibro-vascular portion of the allantois, grows in between these two membranes, applies itself to the vitelline membrane,
and forms with it the foetal portion of the chorion. Between this membrane and the amnion there is a space (Fig. 67) which is described by Dalton as occupied by a semi-fluid gelatinous material, somewhat similar to that of the vitreous body of the eye, and a similar material forms the bulk of the umbilical cord. The umbilical vesicle, as is seen in the figures, lies in this space, which is the primitive pleuro-peritoneal cavity, or interval between the somato-pleural, and splanchnopleural layers of the mesoblast. Soon the surface of the foetal chorion shows villous processes, from which circumstance it is known as the “shaggy chorion.”

Fig. 70.

Magnified view of the human embryo of four weeks with the membranes opened (from Leishman after Coote). y, the umbilical vesicle with the omphalomesenteric vessels; v, and its long tubular attachment to the intestine; c, the villi of the chorion; m, the amnion opened; u, cul-de-sac of the allantois, and on each side of this the umbilical vessels passing out to the chorion; s, in the embryo, the eye; e, the ear vesicle; k, the heart; l, the liver; r, the upper limb; p, the lower limb; w, Wolfian body, in front of which the mesentery and fold of intestine. The Wolfian duct and tubes are not represented.

These villi are projections formed to receive the outgrowths of the foetal vessels; but the villi are formed before they receive any vessels, and are at first, as figured by Dalton, mere cellular fingers or processes, likened by him to the

1 The precise part of the ovum from which the chorion is originally developed is not certainly determined. I have here followed the authorities who derive it from the vitelline membrane, but it is believed by others to be developed from the epiblast reflected over that membrane. A reference to figs. 66, 69, will show the student how easily the vitelline membrane may receive a covering of epiblast in an early period; and the point can hardly be settled for the human ovum, except by inference from observations on lower animals, and such observations are rendered uncertain in consequence of the immature condition of the ovum at this period. Foster and Balfour say on this point. "The false amnion either coalesces with the vitelline membrane, in contact with which it lies, or else replaces it, and in the later days of incubation is known as the chorion." These authors therefore trace epiblastic elements into the chorion, and possibly mesoblastic also, in the chick.

2 Dalton’s “Physiology,” 5th ed p. 630.
tufts of seaweed. Into these tufts the growing vessels of the allantois with their connective-tissue envelope project. These villi cover at first the whole surface of the chorion; but as development progresses and the placenta is about to be formed, by which the extent of the attachment of the ovum to the uterine walls is to be limited (whilst the energy of its nutrition is no doubt to be indefinitely increased), the villi disappear over the rest of the chorion, and are confined to that part only which is to form the fetal portion of the placenta.

The Decidua. The growth of the chorion and placenta can only be understood by tracing the formation of the decidua.

The decidua (Figs. 67, 71) is formed from the mucous membrane of the uterus. Even before the arrival of the fecundated ovum in the uterus, the mucous membrane of the latter becomes vascular and tumid, and when the ovum has reached the uterus, it is embedded in the folds of the mucous membrane, which overlap, and finally completely encircle the ovum. Thus two portions of the uterine mucous membrane (decidua) are formed—viz. that which coats the muscular wall of the uterus, decidua vera, and that which is in contact with the ovum, decidua reflexa. The decidua does not extend into the neck of the uterus, which after conception is closed by a plug of mucus. The decidua vera is perforated by the openings formed by the enlarged uterine glands, which become much hypertrophied and developed into tortuous tubes. It contains at a later period numerous arteries and venous channels, continuous with the uterine sinuses, and it is from it that the uterine part of the placenta is developed. The portion of the decidua vera which takes part in the formation of the placenta is called "decidua serotina."

The decidua reflexa is shaggy on its outer aspect, but smooth within. The vessels which it contains at first disappear after about the third month; about the fifth or sixth month the space between the two layers of the decidua disappears, and towards the end of pregnancy the decidua is transformed into a thin yellowish membrane, which constitutes the external envelope of the ovum.

Much additional interest has been given to the physiology of the decidua by the fact, which seems to be now established by the researches of Dr. John Williams, that every discharge of ova is, as a rule, accompanied by the formation of a decidua, and that the essence of menstruation consists in the separation of a decidual layer of mucous membrane from the uterus.

The Placenta is the organ by which the connection between the fetus and mother is maintained, and through which blood reaches the fetus and is returned to the uterus. It therefore subserves the purposes both of circulation and respiration. It is formed of two parts, as already shown—viz., the maternal portion which is developed out of the decidua vera (serotina), and the fetal placenta formed by the villous chorion. Its shape in the human subject is that of a disk, one side of which adheres to the uterine walls, while the other is covered by the amnion. The villi of the chorion (or fetal placenta) gradually enlarge, forming large projections—"cotyledons"—which each contain the ramifications of vessels communicating with the umbilical arteries and veins of the fetus. These vascular tufts are covered with epithelium, and project into corresponding depressions in the mucous membrane of the uterine walls. The maternal portion of the placenta consists of a large number of cells formed by an enlargement of the vessels of the uterine wall, and conveying the uterine blood into close proximity to the villi of the fetal placenta, which dip into these cells. The interchange of fluids, necessary for the growth of the fetus, and for the depuration of the blood, takes place through the walls of these villi, but there is no direct continuity between the maternal and fetal vessels. The arteries open into the placental cells somewhat after the manner of the erectile tissue. The veins anastomose freely with one another, and give rise at the edge of the placenta, to a venous channel which runs around its whole circumference—the placental sinus.

The Umbilical Cord appears about the end of the fifth month after pregnancy.
GROWTH OF THE EMBRYO.

It consists of the coils of two arteries (umbilical) and a single vein, united together by a gelatinous mass (gelatin of Wharton) contained in the cells of an areolar structure. There are originally two umbilical veins, but one of these vessels becomes obliterated, as do also the two omphalomesenteric arteries and veins, and the duct of the umbilical vesicle, all of which are originally contained in the rudimentary cord. The permanent structures of the cord are therefore those furnished by the allantois.

Growth of the Embryo. The youngest human embryos which have been met with are two described by Dr. A. Thomson in the "Edin. Med. and Surg. Journal," 1889, and in his paper references to the other extant descriptions of early ova will be found. The ova in question were believed to be of the ages respectively of twelve to fourteen days, and about fifteen days. The figures are here reproduced. The earliest ovum (Fig. 72) was \( \frac{1}{2} \) of an inch in diameter, when freed from some adherent decidua. The chorion presented a slightly villous appearance, and consisted only of one layer of membrane. On opening it the umbilical vesicle and embryo were found not to fill its cavity completely. The embryo was a line in length, and nearly \( \frac{1}{2} \) of an inch in thickness. The chorion was united to the embryo and umbilical vesicle by a thin tenacious web of albuminous filaments, formed probably by coagulation in the spirit in which it had been kept. There were no vessels on the umbilical vesicle. The abdomen of the embryo presented no appearance of intestine, but merely a long shallow groove, forming a common cavity with the yolk-sac. Around this intestinal groove the germinal membrane was continuous with that on the surface of the yolk-sac. One extremity of the embryo, probably the cephalic, was enlarged, but this the author believed to be accidental. A more opaque and expanded portion between the cephalic extremity and the surface of the yolk-sac appeared to him to indicate the rudimentary heart.

The second embryo (Figs. 73, 74) was in a slightly more advanced condition. In it, as in the former, the amnion and allantois were not found, though the adhesion of the embryo by its dorsal aspect to the inner side of the chorion renders it probable that the amnion was formed. The cephalic and caudal extremities could be easily distinguished; the vertebral groove appeared to be open in its whole extent; there was a more perfect intestinal groove than in the former case, and there was an irregular-shaped mass between the yolk and the

---

1 For the data on which these calculations are founded, the reader is referred to the original paper.
Development of the Palate. The buccal cavity is at first common to the mouth and nose. Then a lamella is given off from the superior maxillary tuberosity on either side, which is directed horizontally inwards. These two palatine lamellae meet in the median line, in front, about the eighth week, and by the ninth week the septum should be complete. The superior maxillary bones proper and the soft parts covering them, unite at an early period with the incisive bone, and the median portion of the lower lip. The olfactory fosse open into the upper (respiratory) portion of the cavity, forming the nostrils. The student will notice that the various forms of hare-lip correspond to various interruptions of the process of union; thus the ordinary single hare-lip on one side of the median line results from the mere absence of union on that side between the soft parts which cover the incisive bone and those connected with the proper superior maxillary; if this occurs on both sides, we have the simplest form of double hare-lip; if, besides this, the intermaxillary bone remains ununited, it usually is carried forward at the end of the vomer, forming the double hare-lip, complicated with projection of the intermaxillary bone; if, added to this, the palatine lamellae also remain ununited, we have the complete degree of fissured palate and hare-lip. Fissure of the soft palate only, or of the soft and a portion of the hard, represent various degrees of non-union of the palatine lamellae.

Development of the Nervous Centres. The medullary groove already described (p. 88) presents about the third week three dilatations at its upper part, separated by two constrictions, and at its posterior part another dilatation called the rhomboidal sinus. Soon afterwards the groove becomes a closed canal (medullary canal), and a soft blastema is deposited in it, which lines it, corresponding to its dilatations, and, like it, assuming a tubular form. This is the rudiment of the cerebro-spinal axis. As the embryo grows, its cephalic part becomes more curved, and the three dilatations in the anterior end of the primitive cerebro-spinal axis become vesicles distinctly separated from each other (Fig. 79). These are the cerebral vesicles—anterior, middle, and posterior. The anterior cerebral vesicle (situated at this period quite below the middle vesicle) is the rudiment of the lateral and third ventricles, and of the parts surrounding them—viz., the cerebral hemispheres, optic thalami, corpora striata, corpus callosum, fornix, and all the parts which form the floor of the third ventricle. The middle vesicle represents the aqueduct of Sylvius with the corpora quadrigemina, and the crura cerebri. The posterior vesicle is developed into the fourth ventricle, and its walls form the cerebellum, pons Varolii, medulla oblongata, and parts in the floor of the fourth ventricle. The antero-posterior fissure which indicates the division of the brain into two halves appears early, and the primary anterior and posterior cerebral vesicles are also soon divided by a transverse fissure into two parts, so as to constitute five permanent rudiments of the brain and medulla oblongata. The middle primary vesicle remains undivided.

The anterior part of the anterior cerebral vesicle (Vorderhirn, fore-brain, pros-
encephalon) constitutes the cerebral hemispheres, corpus callosum, corpora striata, fornix, lateral ventricles, and olfactory nerves. These parts lie at first quite covered and concealed by those formed from the middle vesicle, and by the optic thalami, which, with the optic nerves, the third ventricle, and the parts in its floor, are furnished by the posterior portion of the anterior vesicle (Zwischenhirn, intermediary brain, thalamencephalon). By the third month, however, the hemispheres have risen above the optic thalami, and by the sixth month above the cerebellum. Fissures are seen on the surface of the hemisphere at the third month, but all except one disappear. This one persists, and forms the fissure of Sylvius. The permanent fissures for the convolutions do not form till about the seventh or eighth month. The middle cerebral vesicle (Mittelhirn, middle brain, mesencephalon) is at first situated at the summit of the angle shown on Fig. 79. Its surface, at first smooth, is soon divided by a median and transverse groove into four tubercles (tubercula quadrigemina), which are gradually covered in by the growth of the cerebral hemispheres. The cavity diminishes as its walls thicken, and contracts to form the aqueduct of Sylvius. The crura cerebri are also formed from this vesicle. The third primary cerebral vesicle is divided at an early period (between the ninth and twelfth week) into two, the anterior part (Hinterhirn, hinder brain, epencephalon) forming the cerebellum, and a membrane (membrana obturatrix), which closes the upper part of the fourth ventricle, and which disappears as development progresses; its posterior part (Nachhirn, after-brain, metencephalon) forms the medulla oblongata, with the reistiform bodies and auditory nerves.\footnote{The above forms a short abstract of the facts hitherto observed relative to the development of the brain. But a very interesting series of lectures recently delivered by Mr. Callender at the College of Surgeons gives a different account of the subject in some important particulars. Thus Mr. Callender lays very great stress on the pineal and pituitary bodies in the course of the development of the brain, classing them as the great centres around which the organs are grouped, and by which their position is determined. The pituitary body is anchored, as it were, at the base of the brain, just in front of the spot where the notochord terminates anteriorly, while the pineal body is anchored originally at the upper part of the future brain, near the bend of the head (about No. 9. Fig. 79). The two are connected together by a tract of tissue, and the pineal centre gets covered in by the "mantles" or embryonal hemispheres, while the pituitary centre retains nearly its relative position. Another important difference in Mr. Callender's from the previous accounts is that he describes the permanent fissures in the lower part of the brain as appearing much earlier than has been previously believed (as early as ten to twelve weeks), and says that the obliteration of these fissures is apparent only, and due to their being covered in and concealed by the tissues which is growing up to form the convoluted surface of the upper portion of the hemispheres, but that they are really permanent, and that their identity is proved, by the fact that if the base of the adult brain can be verified. For many interesting details as to the growth of various parts of the brain we must refer to the published lectures in Brit. Med. Journ., June, 1874.}

The development of the pituitary body has of late received much attention, and important questions of morphology are connected with this body. The description which is now accepted regards the pituitary body as the place of meeting of the epiblast, hypoblast, and mesoblast at the extremity of the notochord and as containing rudiments from each of these sources, or at least from the epiblast and hypoblast, for the mesoblastic elements derived from the chorda dorsalis are now said early to become displaced and to disappear.

At the point where the notochord terminates anteriorly the medullary layer of the epiblast is reflected downwards to form a little pouch (if, Fig. 80) of nervous substance, the infundibulum. At the same time the hypoblast passes upwards from the pharynx, or upper end of the primitive intestine, to form, along with the corneous layer of the epiblast, a similar pouch, which becomes closed and converted into a closed glandular body, the glandular part of the pituitary body, or hypophysis. The end of the notochord would lie at first between these two parts of the pituitary body; but it is believed that, as the hypophysis becomes closed off and separated from the pharynx, the two parts of the pituitary body are carried backwards and upwards from off the end of the notochord, so as to leave the latter stranded as it were below the pituitary fossa. Others refer the hypo-
phyal part of the pituitary body to epiblastic elements derived from the buccal part of the epiblast only, and so connect its development, not with the pharynx, but with the mouth and the anterior portion of the skull. The question is an obscure one, but its main interest is to remind the student that this peculiar appendage to the brain forms, in an early condition of the fetus, the meeting-point of the portions of the ovum from which the nervous centres, the alimentary canal, the mouth, and the base of the skull are developed; and that its development has some connection, as yet imperfectly understood, with that of these, or some of these, great sections of the body.

Vertical section of the head in early embryos of the rabbit. Magnified (from Mihalkovics). A, from an embryo of five millimetres long. B, from an embryo of six millimetres long. C, vertical section of the anterior end of the notochord and pituitary body, &c., from an embryo sixteen millimetres long. In A, the faucial opening is still closed; in B, it is formed; c, anterior cerebral vesicle; mc, meso-cerebrum; mo, medulla oblongata; cm, corneous layer; m, medullary layer; m, infundibulum; am, amnion; spo, spheno-ethoidal; be, central (dorsum sellae); and spo, sphen-no-occipital parts of the basis cranii; h, heart; f, anterior extremity of primitive alimentary canal and opening (later) of the fauces; &c., cephalic portion of primitive intestine; tha, thalamus; p', closed opening of the involuted part of the pituitary body (py); c, notochord; ph, pharynx.

When the medullary groove is closed, the foetal spinal marrow at first occupies the whole of the canal so formed. It presents at first a large central canal, which gradually contracts, and in after life is no longer perceptible to the eye, though it is still visible on microscopic sections (p. 68). After the fourth month the spinal column begins to grow in length more rapidly than the medulla, so that the latter no longer occupies the whole canal. The ganglia and anterior roots of the nerves are perceptible at the fourth week, the posterior roots at the sixth. The cord is composed at first entirely of uniform-looking
cells, which soon separate into two layers, the inner of which forms the epithelium of the central canal, while the outer forms the central gray substance of the cord. The white columns are formed later; their rudiments can be detected about the fourth week, and some embryologists believe that they are developed from the mesoblast. The central canal of the spinal cord is at first unclosed behind, except by the epithelial layer, but at the age of nine weeks the medullary substance is united here also. The ganglia appear to be developed from the protovertebral disks, and it is possible that the posterior roots also are; the anterior roots proceed from the medulla itself. The development of the nerves has not yet been followed. The sympathetic can be seen as a knotted cord at the end of the second month.

The cerebral and spinal membranes are also, according to Kölliker, a production from the protovertebral disks, and are recognizable about the sixth week. As the fissures separating the parts of the cerebrospinal axis appear, the membranes extend down them, and the pia mater passes into the cerebral ventricles. Bischoff, however, describes the pia mater and arachnoid as developed from the cerebral vesicles, and formed in the position which they permanently occupy.

**Development of the Eye.** The nervous elements and the non-vascular parts of the eye are developed from the epiblast, and the vascular portions from the mesoblast, but the method of development is somewhat complicated. The essential portions of the eye—i.e. the retina and the parts immediately connected with it—are an outgrowth from the rudimentary brain (primitive ocular vesicle), and this outgrowth is met by an ingrowth or covering from the common epidermic or corneous layer of the epiblast, out of which the lens, conjunctiva, and corneal epithelium are developed.

The primitive ocular vesicle is at first an open cavity communicating by a hollow stalk with the general cavity of the Zwischenhirn, or intermediary brain—the posterior division of the anterior cerebral vesicle. As development advances the hollow stalk becomes solid, and thus the optic nerve is formed, receiving, however, in a way to be presently explained, mesoblastic elements for the formation of its central artery and connective tissue.

The lens is formed by a thickening of the epidermic layer, opposite to the primitive ocular vesicle, by which that vesicle is at first depressed, and then reversed in the manner indicated by the annexed figures; so that the cavity of the primitive ocular vesicle is finally obliterated. As this process takes place, a secondary cavity (secondary ocular vesicle) is formed between the rudimentary lens and the coats of the reversed primitive vesicle, and in this space the vitreous humor is secreted.

The lens is at first a mere depression in the epidermic layer. When this is closed the lens becomes a vesicle, formed of epithelial cells, which grow and fill its cavity, becoming gradually transformed into fibres. It is at first surrounded by a vascular membrane—the vascular capsule of the lens—which is connected with the termination of the temporary artery (hyaloid) that forms the continu-

---

1 It is now believed, chiefly on the authority of Mr. Balfour's researches on the development of the elasmobranch fishes (*Journ. of Anat. and Phys.*), that the whole of these parts are probably developed from the medullary groove, i.e. from the epiblast, though it is possible that the protovertebral disks (i.e. the mesoblast) may furnish the vessels and cellular tissue which are in connection with them.
tion of the central artery of the retina through the vitreous chamber. This vascular capsule of the crystalline lens forms the membrana pupillaris (to be described hereafter), and also attaches the borders of the iris to the capsule of the lens. It disappears about the seventh month.

These vascular elements are introduced into the globe of the eye from the mesoblast, through a fissure which exists around the growing lens—the choroidal fissure, or ocular cleft. The fold of mesoblast which projects through this fissure is thus introduced behind the lens into the cavity of the secondary ocular vesicle (or ocular cup as it is now called after Foster and Balfour), and it here furnishes the vascular and fibrous elements of the iris and choroid, while its extremity is believed to extend down the stalk of the primitive ocular vesicle and furnish the artery centralis retinae with the sheath and connective tissue of the optic nerve.

The two layers of the primitive ocular vesicle are at first separated by a space continuous with that of the original medullary cavity (or foetal ventricle), but this space is afterwards obliterated. The outer layer of the vesicle is chiefly pigmentary. It lines the mesoblastic elements which are to furnish the vascular choroid, and is developed into the hexagonal pigment-layer, which functionally forms part of the choroid, but is now often described as belonging to the retina, on account of this method of development. The sclerotic and the fibrous or true cornea are also developed out of this layer, though probably with admixture of mesoblastic elements. In fact, the mesoblast is now described by the most recent authorities as the source of both membranes. The inner layer gives origin to the retina.

The eyelids are formed at the end of the third month, as small cutaneous folds, which come together in front of the globe and cohere. This union is broken up, and the eyelids separate before the end of foetal life.

The lacrimal canal appears to result from the non-closure of a fissure which exists between the external nasal process and the maxillary process (p. 109).

Development of the Ear. The first rudiment of the ear appears about the same time as that of the eye, in the form of a vesicle (primitive auditory vesicle,
DEVELOPMENT OF THE NOSE, ETC.

Figs. 78, 79, 11) situated close on the outside of the third cerebral vesicle, though not communicating with it. It is formed by a depression of the epithelium over the second pharyngeal arch, which becomes converted into a closed sac. From this vesicle the internal ear is developed. The auditory nerve is described either as a projection from the third cerebral vesicle, or as an independent formation from the mesoblast which unites with both, and thus establishes a communication between the cerebral and the auditory vesicles. The middle ear and Eustachian tube constitute the remains of the first pharyngeal or branchial cleft. The formation of the ossicles of the tympanum has been already pointed out, viz., the inaeus and malleus from Meckel's cartilage, and the stapes, with its muscle, from the second pharyngeal arch. These parts project into the first pharyngeal cleft, which remains occupied by connective tissue during the whole of fetal life, according to Kölliker. The membrana tympani forms across the cleft, dividing it into an inner and outer portion. The pinna, or external ear, is developed from the soft parts covering the first pharyngeal arch.

Development of the Nose. Two fossæ (olfactory fosse) have been already spoken of, which are found below and in front of the ocular vesicles and the upper maxillary projection (Fig. 78, 2, 3). They appear about the fourth week. Their borders become prominent, and the fossæ deepen, except at the lower part, where they lead by a groove (olfactory groove) into the buccal cavity. This groove is bounded by the internal and external nasal process. As the superior maxillary projection increases, the olfactory groove is transformed into a deep canal, the rudiment of the two superior meatus of the nose. As the palatine septum is formed, the buccal cavity is divided into two parts, the upper of which represents the inferior meatus of the nose, while the lower forms the mouth. The soft parts of the nose are formed from the coverings of the frontal projection, and of the olfactory fosse. The nose is perceptible about the end of the second month. The nostrils are at first closed by epithelium, but this disappears about the fifth month.

The olfactory nerve, as above pointed out, is a prolongation, at first in the form of a hollow stalk, from the anterior cerebral vesicle.

Development of the Teeth. This will be described in the body of the work.

Development of the Skin, Glands, and Soft Parts. The epidermis is produced from the external, the true skin from the middle, blastodermic layer (Fig. 66, 19, 20). About the fifth week the epidermis presents two layers, the deeper one corresponding to the rete mucosum. The subcutaneous fat forms about the fourth month, and the papillæ of the true skin about the sixth. A considerable desquamation of epidermis takes place during fetal life, and this desquamated epidermis mixed with a sebaceous secretion constitutes the vernix caseosa, with which the skin is smeared during the last three months of fetal life. The nails are formed at the third month, and begin to project from the epidermis about the sixth. The hairs appear between the third and fourth month in the form of a depression of the deeper layer of the epithelium, which then becomes inverted by a projection from the papillary layer of the skin. The papilla grows into the interior of the epithelial layer, and finally, about the fifth month, the fetal hairs (lanugo) appear first on the head and then on the other parts. These hairs drop off after birth, and give place to the permanent hairs. The sudoriferous and sebaceous glands are also formed from the epithelial layer about the fifth and sixth month respectively. The mammary gland is also formed from the deeper layer of the epithelium. Its first rudiment is seen about the third month, in the form of a small projection, from which others radiate, and which then give rise to the glandular follicles and ducts. The development of the former, however, remains imperfect, except in the adult female, and especially after pregnancy. In all these glands the vessels, and probably also the connective tissue, are furnished from the mesoblast.
Development of the Limbs. The upper and lower limbs begin to project, as buds, from the anterior and posterior part of the embryo about the fourth week. These buds are formed by a projection of the somatopleure covered by the epi- blast. The division of the terminal portion of the bud into fingers or toes is early indicated, and soon a notch or constriction marks the future separation of the hand or foot from the forearm. Next a similar groove appears at the site of the elbow or knee. The indifferent tissue, or blastema, of which the whole projection is at first composed, is differentiated into muscle and cartilage before the appearance of any internal cloft for the joints between the chief bones.

The muscles become visible about the seventh or eighth week. The source of their development is not completely determined for the muscles of the limbs. The vertebral muscles appear to be developed from the "muscular laminae" of the primitive vertebral disks (Fig. 66, 13), and the muscles of the neck and jaws, as well as those which inclose the cavities of the thorax and abdomen, are also formed from the same source. They do not meet in the middle line of the body till about the fourth month. The cutaneous muscles are developed from the cutaneous portion of the middle blastodermic layer.

Development of the Heart. The first trace of the heart is found about the tenth or twelfth day, in the form of a mass of cells proceeding from the middle layer of the blastodermic vesicle and the anterior wall of the intestinal cavity. It soon forms a bent tube lying in front of the embryo, and only connected to it by its vessels (Figs. 70, 75). The heart is situated at first at the anterior end of the embryo, lying opposite the two last cerebral vesicles. As the head is developed, the heart falls, as it were, backwards to the lower part of the neck, and then to the thorax. It fills the whole thoracic cavity about the second month. As the lungs and thoracic parietae form, the heart assumes its permanent position. The tube is soon curved into the shape of the letter S, the arterial part being situated above, in front and to the right, the venous below, behind and to the left. Traces of the auricular appendages are early perceptible on the venous part. Then the walls of the ventricular portion begin to thicken in regard to the auricular part. The ventricle is separated by a constriction from the dilated part above, which corresponds to the aortic sinus or bulb (Fig. 85, A, 1), and from the posterior or auricular dilatation. Then each of these three parts becomes subdivided by a septum. After the completion of the ventricular septum the auricular is commenced. The septum ventriculorum is at first almost transverse, and divides off a smaller portion (the right ventricle) from the common cavity. This septum is complete about the eighth week, and then the interauricular begins to grow, commencing from above and behind, and coalescing with the edge of the interventricular septum so as to leave an orifice (auriculo-ventricular) on either side. The auricular septum, however, is not complete during fetal life, but leaves an aperture (foramen ovale) by which the two auricles communicate.

The heart is at first composed of a mass of fetal cells, but its rhythmic contractions can be observed even in this condition before the development of any
muscular fibres, and even, according to some authors, before it is in connection with any vessels.

**Development of Blood Corpuscles and Vessels.** The earliest blood vessels are observed, as stated above, in the vascular area of the germinal membrane, external to the body of the embryo. The indifferent cells of which the substance is composed are, according to Klein, "vacuolated," i.e., they become enlarged, their nuclei multiply, and, as they do so, an empty space is formed in them, in which the nuclei become free and are converted into the blood-disk, while the neighboring vacuolated bodies communicate together by processes in which similar cells are either inclosed or formed, and thus a continuous branching tube is produced. The blood-globules are at first nucleated, and are larger than the mature red globules, and in this and other respects more resemble the white corpuscles; but a red color is very early visible in them. After the liver is formed, it seems the chief source from which immature blood-corpuscles are furnished to the circulation, and later on the spleen and lymphatic glands take up this function, and continue it after birth. The nucleated condition of the red globules ceases before birth. The precise mode in which the nucleated white corpuscle is converted into the non-nucleated red blood-globule, whether by a change in the whole cell, or by the disappearance of the cell and persistence of its nucleus, is not yet ascertained.

The vessels which are in communication with the fetal heart are as follows: In its earliest state the circulation is external to the embryo. This primitive circulation appears about the fifteenth day, and lasts till the fifth week. It consists of two arteries, the first aortic arches, which unite into a single artery,

Fig. 85.


running down in front of the primitive vertebrae and in the walls of the intestinal cavity, and joining in a single artery, which again divides into two primitive aorta or vertebral arteries, and these give off five or six omphalomesenteric arteries, which ramify in the germinal area, forming with their parent trunks a close network, terminating in veins which converge towards a venous trunk, the terminal sinus. This vessel surrounds the vascular portion of the germinal area, but does not extend up to the anterior end of the embryo. It terminates on either side in a vein called omphalomesenteric. The two omphalomesenteric veins open into the auricular extremity of the heart. This primitive circulation extends gradually from the germinal area over the whole of the umbilical vesicle, and disappears as the latter becomes atrophied. In a more advanced state of the embryo, the position of this first pair of aortic arches corresponds to the first pharyngeal arch. Next in succession, other pairs of arches are formed behind the first (Fig. 86). The total number is five, but the whole five pairs

1 The position of the first four of these aortic arches is behind the corresponding pharyngeal arches, and that of the fifth behind the fourth pharyngeal cleft.
not exist together, for the first two have disappeared before the others are formed. These two have no representatives in the permanent structures. The third pair gives origin to the carotids, the fourth pair forms the innominate and subclavian on the right, the arch of the aorta and subclavian on the left. The fifth forms on the left side the pulmonary artery, the ductus arteriosus, and the descending portion of the thoracic aorta. Its right branch disappears.

The ascending portion of the arch of the aorta, and the root of the pulmonary artery, are at first blended together in the common dilatation (aortic sinus) which has been above spoken of as connected with the ventricular end of the rudimentary heart (Fig. 85, A. 1). The septum which divides this common cavity into two begins to appear very early, even before the interventricular septum. The formation of the permanent vessels is shown by the following diagram:

![Diagram of the formation of the aortic arches and the large arteries](image)

**Diagram of the formation of the aortic arches and the large arteries.** I, II, III, IV, V. First, second, third, fourth, and fifth aortic arches. A. Common trunk from which the first pair spring; the place where the succeeding pairs are formed is indicated by dotted lines. B. Common trunk, with four arches and a trace of the primitive aorta. C. Common trunk, with the three last pairs, the first two having been obliterated. D. The persistent arches, those which have disappeared being indicated by dotted lines. 1. Common arterial trunk. 2. Thoracic aorta. 3. Right branch of the common trunk, which is only temporary. 4. Left branch, permanent. 5. Pulmonary artery. 6. Vertebreal. 7, 8. Subclavian. 9. Common carotid. 10. External; and 11. Internal carotid. 12. Aorta. 13. Pulmonary artery. 14, 15. Right and left pulmonary arteries.

The descending aorta appears to be the remnant of the artery formed by the union of the two primitive aortae (Fig. 86). The omphalomesenteric arteries which spring from these latter, all disappear except one, which remains as the superior mesenteric artery. When the activity of the umbilical vesicle and omphalomesenteric duct ceases, the allantois takes up the function of conducting the vessels which are to nourish the embryo, and now the umbilical arteries extend along the allantois to the chorion, and grow in size as the umbilical cord and placenta are formed. The umbilical arteries are at first the terminations of the two principal aortae, but when these vessels are united into one, the two arterial arteries appear as branches, and the aorta itself ends in a caudal occlusion, which afterwards becomes the middle sacral. The common and inferior mesenteric arteries are the only permanent remains of the umbilical arteries (see Internal Blace artery).

Venae. The primitive venous circulation has been described above, the two omphalomesenteric veins opening by a common trunk into the lower end of the fetal heart. The next state of the venous circulation is, that at about four weeks there is found a single vein lying behind the intestinal cavity (situated in front of it, as the temporary omphalomesenteric veins do), and conveying the trunk vein from the intestine (mesenteric). Two umbilical veins are early formed, and open together into the common trunk of the omphalо-
mesenteric vein. They receive branches from the allantois and anterior surface of the embryo. The right vein soon disappears; the left umbilical vein, on the contrary, grows till it becomes the trunk vessel into which the omphalomesenteric vein and its mesenteric branch appear to open. Next the liver begins to be formed around the umbilical vein, and then this vein sends branches into that gland (afferent veins) which afterwards become the portal veins in the interior of the liver, and which give origin to other veins (effferent), which return the blood from the liver, and form afterwards the hepatic veins. The portion of the umbilical vein between the giving off of the future portal vessels and the reception of the hepatic, forms the ductus venosus. The mesenteric vein communicates at first with the omphalomesenteric; when the veins of the liver are formed, the omphalomesenteric is transferred from the umbilical vein to the right afferent hepatic. A portion of it persists and forms the trunk of the portal vein.

The systemic veins are developed from four trunk veins, two on either side, above and below, which appear before the formation of the allantois or the umbilical vessels. These unite into one canal on either side (sinuses of Cuvier), which open into the common trunk of the omphalomesenteric veins, and so into the auricular portion of the rudimentary heart. These four primitive veins lie, two of them in front, the anterior cardinal, or jugular veins, and the other two behind, the posterior cardinal veins. As the umbilical vein increases, and the omphalomesenteric diminishes in volume, the sinuses of Cuvier are transferred to the former vein, and when the inferior cava is formed and the umbilical vein becomes merely its tributary, the sinuses of Cuvier open into the inferior vena

cava. At a later period the portion of the vena cava inferior, between the opening of the sinuses of Cuvier and the auricle, disappears, and then the auricle receives three veins—viz., the inferior cava, and the two sinuses of Cuvier, which are now called right and left superior vena cava (Fig. 87). The superior car-

---

**Diagram of the formation of the main systemic veins.**

A, heart and venous system at the period when there are two venae cavae superiores, posterior view. 1, left superior cava. 2, right superior cava. 3, inferior cava. 4, left inferior cardinal. 5, right inferior cardinal. 6, right jugular. 7, anastomosing branch between the jugulars (left innominate). 8, subclavian. 9, internal jugular. 10, external jugular. 11, middle obliterated portion of the posterior cardinal veins. 12, newly formed posterior vertebral veins. 13, anastomosis between the two vertebrals—trunk of small azygos. 14, iliac veins, proceeding from anastomosis between the inferior cava and posterior cardinals. 15, crural. 16, hypogastric—originally the distal ends of the cardinals. B, heart and permanent veins, posterior view. 17, obliterated left superior cava. 8, right innominate. 7, left innominate. 8, subclavian. 10, jugular. 13, trunk of the small azygos. 17, coronary sinus receiving the coronary vein. 18, superior intercostal. 19, superior small azygos. 20, inferior small azygos.
do not exist together, for the first two have disappeared before the others are formed. These two have no representatives in the permanent structures. The third pair gives origin to the carotids, the fourth pair forms the innominate and subclavian on the right, the arch of the aorta and subclavian on the left. The fifth forms on the left side the pulmonary artery, the ductus arteriosus, and the descending portion of the thoracic aorta. Its right branch disappears.1

The ascending portion of the arch of the aorta, and the root of the pulmonary artery, are at first blended together in the common dilatation (aortic sinus), which has been above spoken of as connected with the ventricular end of the rudimentary heart (Fig. 85, A, 1). The septum which divides this common artery into two begins to appear very early, even before the interventricular septum. The formation of the permanent vessels is shown by the following diagram:

![Diagram of the formation of the aortic arches and the large arteries.](image)

The descending aorta appears to be the remnant of the artery formed by the union of the two primitive aortæ (Fig. 86). The omphalomesenteric arteries which spring from these latter, all disappear except one, which remains as the superior mesenteric artery. When the activity of the umbilical vesicle and omphalomesenteric duct ceases, the allantois takes up the function of conducting the vessels which are to nourish the embryo, and now the umbilical arteries extend along the allantois to the chorion, and grow in size as the umbilical cord and placenta are formed. The umbilical arteries are at first the terminations of the two principal aortæ, but when these vessels are united into one, the umbilical arteries appear as branches, and the aorta itself ends in a caudal prolongation, which afterwards becomes the middle sacral. The common and internal iliac arteries are the only permanent remains of the umbilical arteries (see Internal iliac artery).

Veins. The primitive venous circulation has been described above, the two omphalomesenteric veins opening by a common trunk into the lower end of the tube which represents the heart. The next state of the venous circulation is, that at about four weeks there is found a single vein lying behind the intestinal cavity (not in front of it, as the temporary omphalomesenteric veins do), and receiving the trunk vein from the intestine (mesenteric). Two umbilical veins are early formed, and open together into the common trunk of the omphalo-

1 The relations of the recurrent branch of the pneumogastric nerve are of interest in reference to the fifth aortic, or branchial arch. If we assume that in the fetus the recurrent nerve is detached from its parent trunk by the projection of the fifth arch, this would account for its situation on the left side in the adult, curving as it does round the ductus arteriosus, which is the remnant of that arch. On the right side the disappearance of the fifth arch brings it into relation with the fourth, and accordingly in the adult it curves round the subclavian, which is the remnant of that arch.
mesenteric vein. They receive branches from the allantois and anterior surface of the embryo. The right vein soon disappears; the left umbilical vein, on the contrary, grows till it becomes the trunk vessel into which the omphalomesenteric vein and its mesenteric branch appear to open. Next the liver begins to be formed around the umbilical vein, and then this vein sends branches into that gland (afferent veins) which afterwards become the portal veins in the interior of the liver, and which give origin to other veins (efferent), which return the blood from the liver, and form afterwards the hepatic veins. The portion of the umbilical vein between the giving off of the future portal vessels and the reception of the hepatic, forms the ductus venosus. The mesenteric vein communicates at first with the omphalomesenteric; when the veins of the liver are formed, the omphalomesenteric is transferred from the umbilical vein to the right afferent hepatic. A portion of it persists and forms the trunk of the portal vein.

The systemic veins are developed from four trunk veins, two on either side, above and below, which appear before the formation of the allantois or the umbilical vessels. These unite into one canal on either side (sinuses of Cuvier), which open into the common trunk of the omphalomesenteric veins, and so into the auricular portion of the rudimentary heart. These four primitive veins lie, two of them in front, the anterior cardinal, or jugular veins, and the other two behind, the posterior cardinal veins. As the umbilical vein increases, and the omphalomesenteric diminishes in volume, the sinuses of Cuvier are transferred to the former vein, and when the inferior cava is formed and the umbilical vein becomes merely its tributary, the sinuses of Cuvier open into the inferior vena cava.

At a later period the portion of the vena cava inferior, between the opening of the sinuses of Cuvier and the auricle, disappears, and then the auricle receives three veins—viz., the inferior cava, and the two sinuses of Cuvier, which are now called right and left superior vena cava (Fig. 87). The superior car-
dinal, or jugular veins, which form the upper branches of the sinuses of Cuvier on either side, unite about the second month by a transverse anastomosing branch. The left superior vena cava assumes an oblique position, and empties itself into the lower and left end of the auricle. Finally, its trunk disappears, while its orifice is transformed into the coronary sinus, in which the great cardiac vein opens.\footnote{1} The right sinus of Cuvier, or superior vena cava, persists; the transverse anastomosing branch between the two jugulars becomes the left innominate vein, and the end of the right jugular the right innominate. The venous circulation in the lower part of the embryo is at first carried on by the inferior cardinal veins, which return the blood from the Wolffian bodies, and receive branches corresponding to the intercostal, lumbar, and crural veins.

Between the fourth and fifth week, the inferior vena cava begins to appear in the form of a vessel which passes upwards behind the liver and between the two Wolffian bodies. It anastomoses below with the two cardinal veins, and with the crural veins, which gradually come to open into it.

The middle part of the cardinal veins disappears; their distal extremities persist as the hypogastric veins, which open along with the crural into the vena cava, forming the iliac and other veins of the lower extremities. The termination of each cardinal vein above, in the sinus of Cuvier, or superior cava, also persists. The central atrophied portion of the cardinal veins is replaced by a vein on either side, called posterior vertebral, which receive the intercostal and lumbar veins, and are soon united by an oblique anastomosing branch. The right vertebral vein, together with the persistent termination of the right cardinal vein, forms the great azygos vein. The distal portion of the left vertebral vein, with the oblique anastomosing branch, forms the small azygos; and the upper part of the left vertebral, with the persistent termination of the left cardinal, forms the left superior intercostal vein.

The "Fetal Circulation" will be described hereafter. See Fig. 464.

\textit{Development of the Alimentary Canal.} The development of the intestinal cavity is, as shown above (p. 100), one of the earliest phenomena of embryonic life. This original intestine is closed at either end, all the three blastodermic layers being here in contact, and is at first in free communication with the umbilical vesicle (Fig. 88). It is divided into three parts: the anterior or cephalic portion of the primitive intestine, the middle or abdominal, and the posterior or pelvic. From the first are formed the pharynx and cesophagus, with the trachea and lungs; from the second, the stomach, small intestine and large intestine, as far as the upper part of the rectum; from the third, the middle third of the rectum. The buccal cavity on the one hand, and the lower portion of the rectum on the other, are separate productions from the middle and external layers of the blastodermic membrane, and do not communicate with the common cavity till a later period. The permanence of the fetal septum in either case constitutes a well-known deformity—imperforate cesophagus or imperforate rectum, as the case may be. The anal cavity is at first common to the urogenital and the digestive organs.

The development of the palate has been spoken of above.

The tongue appears about the fifth week as a small elevation, behind the

\footnote{1\ Mr. Marshall has pointed out that in the adult the remains of the obliterated left superior cava can be distinguished as a cord, or sometimes a small vein which passes down in front of the right auricle to the coronary sinuses, and that the projection of this cord forms a fold of the serous pericardium over the root of the left lung, which from that circumstance he has named "the vestigial fold." And he has figured a case in which the left superior vena cava remained pervious, forming an anastomosis between the united left subclavian and internal jugular veins, and the coronary sinus, the left brachio-cephalic being reduced to a small anastomosing branch. The abnormal vein ran along the vestigial fold, receiving the left superior intercostal vein (see the figure in Quain's "Anatomy," vol. ii. p. 798).}
DEVELOPMENT OF ALIMENTARY CANAL.

in inferior maxillary arch, to which is united another projection from the second pharyngeal arch. The epithelial layer is furnished by the external blastodermic membrane.

The tonsils appear about the fourth month.

The middle portion of the primitive intestine is at first a groove communicating freely with the umbilical vesicle. The groove is early converted into a straight tube, which, however, is still open where it communicates with the umbilical vesicle. This opening contracts more and more as the embryo advances in development, and as the importance of the vitelline duct and yolk-sac diminishes, until at length all traces of the latter structures disappear in the normal condition. Abnormally, however, a diverticulum is sometimes formed

Fig. 88.

Early form of the alimentary canal (from Kölliker after Bischoff). In A a front view, and in B an antero-posterior section, are represented. a, four pharyngeal or visceral plates; b, the pharynx; c, c, the commencing lungs; d, the stomach; f, f, the diverticula connected with the formation of the liver; g, the yolk-sac into which the middle intestinal groove opens; h, the posterior part of the intestine.

from the small intestine near the cæcum, which is regarded with great probability as a pervious portion of the omphalomesenteric duct, and which has been found passing into the umbilical cord. The peritoneal folds are furnished by the splanchnopleural layer of the mesoblast, coated by the epithelial layer of hypoblast. In the cephalic portion of the primitive intestine these folds remain separate on the two sides to form the pleurse, and a central portion is divided off from them to cover the heart and form the pericardium. While the abdominal intestine is in the grooved condition, the two peritoneal cavities are also separate, but they early communicate together.

As the tube of the abdominal intestine grows in length, it leaves the vertebral column in the middle, and forms a curve attached to that column by the mesentery. A portion of the intestine above this mesentery dilates into the stomach, which gradually also acquires a mesentery of its own; the rest remains attached to the spine, and forms the duodenum. The curve of the intestine appears as it were drawn out from the body by its attachment to the vitelline duct, and lies external to the parietes, and in the umbilical cord, until the end of the third month, when it passes back again into the abdomen. While still forming a portion of the cord, the intestine begins to be distinguished into large and small; for the anterior or upper part, corresponding to the small intestine, begins to assume a convoluted arrangement about the eighth week, whilst the lower part, which had been posterior, passes to the front and right side of the other, and becomes dilated at a short distance from the insertion of the vitelline duct, to form the
rudiment of the cæcum. When the intestine lies wholly in the belly, the curve of the large intestine begins rapidly to form; but the cæcum lies for some time in the middle line, and the ascending colon is not fully formed till the sixth month.

The source of each layer of the intestine, and the closure of the omphalomesenteric or vitelline duct, have already been referred to (pp. 98, 100).

The liver appears after the Wolfian bodies, about the third week, in the form of two depressions formed by the epithelial and fibro-intestinal layers of the blastodermic membrane, and projecting from the intestine at the part which afterwards forms the duodenum. These depressions are developed into the right and left lobes. They grow very rapidly around the omphalomesenteric vein, from which they receive the branches enumerated on p. 119, and about the third month the liver almost fills the abdominal cavity. From this period the relative development of the liver is less active, more especially that of the left lobe, which now becomes smaller than the right; but the liver remains up to the end of fetal life relatively larger than in the adult.

The gall-bladder appears about the second month, and bile is detected in the intestine in the third month.

The pancreas is also an early formation, being far advanced in the second month. It, as well as the other salivary glands, which appear about the same period, originates in a projection from the epithelial layer, which afterwards forms a cavity, from the ramifications of which the lobules of the gland are formed.

In the development both of the liver and pancreas it seems to be admitted that the epithelial lining of the duct-passages is furnished by the hypoblast, and the vessels by the mesoblast; but authorities differ as to the mode of formation of the parenchyma (cellular tissue, &c.), whether this is entirely mesoblastic or is contributed by both membranes.

The spleen is regarded as formed entirely from the mesoblast, proceeding, according to Müller (Stricker's "Handbook," vol. i.), in all vertebrata from a segment of the peritoneum.

Development of the Respiratory Organs. The lungs appear somewhat later than the liver. They are developed from a small cul-de-sac, which is formed on either side as a projection from the epithelial and fibrous laminae of the intestine. During the fourth week these depressions are found on either side, opening freely into the pharynx, and from the original pouches other secondary pouches are given off, so that by the eighth week the form of the lobes of the lungs may be made out. The two primary pouches have a common pedicle of communication with the pharynx. This is developed into the trachea (Fig. 85), the cartilaginous rings of which are perceptible about the seventh week. The parts which afterwards form the larynx are recognized as early as the sixth week, viz.: a projection on either side of the pharyngeal opening, the rudiment of the arytenoid cartilages, and a transverse elevation from the third pharyngeal arch, which afterwards becomes the epiglottis: the vocal cords and ventricles of the larynx are seen about the fourth month. The traces of the diaphragm appear early, in the form of a fine membrane, separating the lungs from the Wolfian bodies, the stomach and liver. As the diaphragm extends forwards from the vertebral column, with the muscular plates of which its development is probably connected, it separates the common pleuro-peritoneal cavity into two parts, a thoracic and abdominal. The membrane which lines this common cavity has been traced, above, as derived from the splanchnopleure, with an epithelial lining of hypoblast.

Development of the Genito-urinary Organs. The internal genito-urinary organs appear to be entirely of mesoblastic origin, and perhaps the easiest way of rendering their formation intelligible is to commence with the description of the Wolfian body.
WOLFFIAN BODY.

The Wolffian body, or primordial kidney, is perceptible about the third week, forming a mass of cells which soon give rise to a hollow organ, situated on

Fig. 89.

Enlarged view from before of the left Wolffian body before the establishment of the distinction of sex (from Fare after Kobelt). a, a, b, d, tubular structure of the Wolffian body; e, Wolffian duct; f, its upper extremity; g, its termination in a, the urogenital sinus; h, the duct of Müller; i, its upper still closed extremity; k, its lower end terminating in the urogenital sinus; l, the mass of blastema for the reproductive organ, ovary or testicle.

either side of the primitive vertebrae, and extending from the heart to the lower end of the embryo, terminating above in a cul-de-sac and opening below into the urogenital sinus. The structure of the Wolffian body is in many respects analogous to that of the permanent kidney. It is composed partly of an excretory canal or duct, into which open numerous "conduits," rectilinear at first, but afterwards tortuous, and partly of a cellular or glandular structure, in which Malpighian tufts are found. It is fixed to the diaphragm by a superior ligament, and to the spinal column by an inferior or lumbar ligament. Its office is the same as that of the kidneys, viz., to secrete fluid containing urea, which accumulates in the bladder. When the permanent kidneys are formed, the greater part of the Wolffian body disappears. The rest takes part in the formation of the genital organs.

The activity of function of the Wolffian bodies is very transitory, and they attain their highest development by the sixth week, after which time they begin to decrease in size, and have nearly disappeared by the end of the third month.

The duct of the Wolffian body is the part first formed, and it makes its appearance in a mass of blastema which lies below the heart and behind the common plegro-peritoneal cavity, proceeding from the mesoblast at the point of the separation of its two layers. As this mass is situated below the epiblast (reflected from the medullary cavity) at the side of the protovertebrae and above the common pleuro-peritoneal cavity, it has been named "the intermediate cell-mass." In this mass, first the Wolffian duct is hollowed out, then the tubes of the Wolffian body begin to form as branches of the duct, next occurs a thickening or ridge—the Wolffian ridge or germ epithelium—and next a groove which is

Fig. 90.

Diagram of the primitive urogenital organs in the embryo previous to sexual distinction. The parts are shown chiefly in profile, but the Müllerian and Wolffian ducts are seen from the front. S, ureter; 4, urinary bladder; S, urachus; of, the mass of blastema from which ovary or testicle is afterwards formed; W, left Wolffian body; X, a part at the apex from which the conus vasculosus are afterwards developed; w, w, right and left Wolffian ducts; m, m, right and left Müllerian ducts uniting together and with the Wolffian ducts in gc, the genital cord; ug, sinus urogenitalis; f, lower part of the intestine; cf, common opening of the intestine and urogenital sinus; cp, elevation which becomes elitoris or pente; is, ridge from which the labia majora or scrotum are formed.
converted into a duct, lying internal to the Wolffian duct, and called the duct of Müller. The Wolffian and Müllerian ducts open (along with the ureter when formed) into the common urogenital sinus, or cloaca, which is the termination of the common intestinal cavity, and into which the allantois also opens in front. As the allantois expands into the urinary bladder this common cavity is divided into two by a septum, to form the bladder in front and the rectum behind. The Wolffian and Müllerian ducts are soon connected by cellular substance into a single mass—the genital cord—in which the Wolffian ducts lie side by side in front, and the ducts of Müller behind, at first separate, but later on coalescing.

The allantois communicates at first with the lower part of the primitive intestine by a canal—the urachus. After the second month the lower part of the urachus dilates, so as to form the bladder, which then communicates above with the cavity of the urachus, and below with the rectum, by a canal of communication which is afterwards transformed into the urethra. The urachus is obliterated before the termination of foetal life; but the cord formed by its obliteration is perceptible throughout life, passing from the upper part of the bladder to the umbilicus, and occasionally remains patent during life, constituting a well-known deformity. The permanent kidneys are almost, if not entirely, independent of the Wolffian bodies or primordial kidneys in their development, though they originate in the same mass of blastema, the intermediate cell-mass behind the Wolffian body. As their distance from the bladder increases, the ureters become developed, and the simple cul-de-sac in which the foetal kidneys commence divide and subdivide so as to form lobulated organs provided with calices in their interior. This lobulation is perceptible for some time after birth.

The mode of development of the ureters is not exactly known. Some embryologists describe them as extending gradually from the allantois upwards, so that the proper tissue of the kidney would be developed upon projections, or buds, out of the upper ends of the ureters. Others describe the ureter as an offset from the upper part of the Wolffian duct. Others teach that the kidney tissue is formed before the ureter, and that the ducts of the former are hollowed out and open into the latter. Others, again, believe that the whole organ (kidney and ureter) is laid down in the same mass of blastema, which is at first solid, and that the various ducts or hollow spaces are formed in each part simultaneously. What is admitted is that the solid blastema in which the kidney commences comes to be arranged in a series of club-shaped bodies, which have their larger ends directed towards the hilum, and that these afterwards become hollow and open into the ureter, which has then also assumed the condition of a tube, communicating with the part of the allantois afterwards converted into the bladder. As the future uriniferous tubes grow, they become convoluted, so that the whole substance of the kidney seems at first to consist of cortical substance. Then the ends of the tubes become straight, and the pyramidal structure is developed.

The suprarenal bodies are developed from the same mass as the kidney, and are said at first to form a single organ in the middle line. "Kölliker has observed them in close connection with the substance in which the large sympathetic plexus of the abdomen is produced, but it is not ascertained that they have a common origin." They are at first larger than the kidneys, but become equal in size about the tenth week, and from that time decrease relatively to the kidney, though they remain throughout foetal life much larger in proportion than in the adult. Meckel gives the proportion as 1 to 3 at birth, and 1 to 22 in mature life.

We must now follow the development of the genital organs in each sex.

Female Organs. The ovaries take their origin in the ridge of germ epithelium which has been spoken of above as making its appearance in the intermediate cell-mass; from the cells of which epithelium, according to the most recent observations, the ova take their origin. These ova are inclosed or encapsuled in
a fibrous stroma, developed from the deeper blastema of the same cell-mass, or, according to earlier observers, from a part of the Wolffian body. According to the latest account the only remains of the Wolffian body in the complete condi-

Fig. 91.

tion of the female organs are two rudimentary or vestigial structures which can be found in the round ligament near the ovary on careful search—the parovarium, or organ of Rosenmüller, and the epoophoron. The organ of Rosenmüller consists of a number of tubes which converge to a transverse portion (the epoo-

Fig. 92.

phoron), and this is sometimes prolonged into a distinct duct running transversely—the duct of Gaertner—which is much more conspicuous and extends further in some of the lower animals. This is the remains of the Wolffian duct.

The Fallopian tube is formed by the portion of the duct of Müller, which lies
above the lumbar ligament of the Wolffian body. This duct is at first completely closed, and its closed extremity remains permanent, forming a small cystic body attached to the fimбриated end of the Fallopian tube, and called the "hydatid of Morgagni." Below this, a cleft forms in the duct, and is developed into the fimбриated opening of the Fallopian tube.

Below this portion of the duct of Müller, that body on either side, and the ducts of the Wolffian body, are united together in a structure called the "genital cord," in which the two Müllerian ducts approach each other, lying side by side and finally coalescing to form the cavity of the vagina and uterus. This coalescence commences in the middle, corresponding to the body of the uterus. The upper parts of the Müllerian ducts in the genital cord constitute the cornua of the uterus, little developed in the human species. The only remains of the Wolffian body consist in the organ of Rosenmüller.

About the fifth month an annular constriction marks the position of the neck of the uterus, and after the sixth month the walls of the uterus begin to thicken. The round ligament is derived from the lumbar ligament of the Wolffian body, the peritoneum constitutes the broad ligaments, the superior ligament of the Wolffian body disappears with that structure.

**Male Organs.** The testicles are developed from the intermediate cell-mass (genital gland of the older embryologists) behind and to the inside of the Wolffian bodies, from which the essential parts of the gland, the tubuli seminiferi, and their contents take origin.

The tubuli seminiferi are early visible, being at first short and straight, and then gradually assume a coiled arrangement. The tunica albuginea is formed about the third month.

The Müllerian ducts disappear in the male sex, with the exception of their lower ends. These unite in the middle line, and open by a common orifice into the urogenital sinus. This constitutes the utriculus hominis or sinus prostaticus. Occasionally, however, the upper end of the duct of Müller remains visible in the male as it does in the female, constituting the little pedunculated body, called the hydatid of Morgagni, sometimes found in the neighborhood of the epididymis,1 between the testis and globus major.

The head of the epididymis, its canal, the vas deferens and ejaculatory duct, are formed from the canals and from the duct of the Wolffian body.

The remains of the Wolffian bodies also form the vas aberrans and a structure described by Giraldès,2 and called after him "the organ of Giraldès," which bears a good deal of resemblance to the organ of Rosenmüller in the other sex. It consists of a number of convoluted tubules lying in the cellular tissue in front of the cord and close to the head of the epididymis.

The descent of the testis and the formation of the gubernaculum are described in the body of the work.

**The External organs of generation,** like the internal, pass through a stage in which there is no distinction of sex (Fig. 93, II., III.). We must therefore first describe this stage, and then follow the development of the female and male organs respectively.

As stated above, the anal depression at an early period is formed by an involution of the external epithelium apart from the intestine, which is still closed at its lower end. When the septum between the two opens, which is about the fourth week, the urachus in front and the intestine behind both communicate with the cloaca. About the second month a transverse division (the perineum) begins to form, and divides the cloaca into the anal cavity behind, and the urogenital sinus in front. In the sixth week a tubercle, the genital tubercle, is formed in front of the cloaca, and this is soon surrounded by two folds of skin, the

---

1 Mr. Osborn, in the St. Thomas's Hospital Reports, 1875, has written an interesting paper pointing out the probable connection between this foetal structure and one form of hydrocele.

2 *Journ. de Phys.,* 1861.
DEVELOPMENT OF GENITAL ORGANS.

Genital folds. Towards the end of the second month the tubercle presents, on its lower aspect, a groove, the genital furrow, turned towards the cloaca. All these parts are well developed at the period shown by No. III. of the following diagrams, where the anus is separated from the urogenital sinus, yet no distinction of sex is possible.

**Fig. 93.**


Female Organs (Fig. 93, A, B, C). The female organs are developed by an easy transition from the above form. The urogenital sinus persists as the vesti-
bule of the vagina, and forms a single tube with the upper part of the vagina, which we have already seen developed from the united Müllerian ducts. The genital tubercle forms the clitoris, the genital folds the labia majora, the lips of the genital furrow the labia minora, the genital furrow remaining open except below, where it unites with the perineum, constituting the raphé.

Male Organs. In the male the changes are greater from the indifferent type. The genital tubercle is developed into the penis, the glans appearing in the third month, the prepuce and corpora cavernosa in the fourth. The genital furrow closes, and thus forms a canal, the spongy portion of the urethra. The urogenital sinus becomes elongated, and forms the prostatic and membranous urethra. The genital folds unite in the middle line, to form the scrotum, at about the same time as the genital furrow closes, viz., between the third and fourth month.

The following table is translated from the work of Beaunis and Bouchard, with some very unimportant alterations.\(^1\) It will serve to present a résumé of the above facts in an easily accessible form.

\(^1\) It will be noticed that the time assigned in this table for the appearance of the first rudiment of some of the bones (e.g. the ilium), varies in some cases from that assigned on p. 55. This is a point on which anatomists differ, and which probably varies in different cases.
CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

OF

THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE FŒTUS.

(From Beaunis and Bouchard.)

End of second week.—Formation of the amnion and umbilical vesicle. Chorda dorsalis and medullary groove. Heart.
Seventh week.—The muscles begin to be perceptible. Points of ossification of the ribs, scapula, shafts of humerus, femur, tibia, intermaxillary bone, palate, upper jaw (its first four points).
Eighth week.—Distinction of arm and forearm, and of thigh and leg. Appearance of the interdigital clefs. Capsule of the lens and pupillary membrane. Completion of the interventricular and commencement of the interauricular septum. Salivary glands. Spleen. Suprarenal capsules. The larynx begins to become cartilaginous. All the vertebral bodies are cartilaginous. Points of ossification for the ulna, radius, fibula, and ilium. The two halves of the bony palate unite. Sympathetic nerve.


Eighth month.—Additional points for the second sacral vertebra; lateral points for the fourth; median points for the fifth.

Ninth month.—Additional points for the third sacral vertebra; lateral points for the fifth. Osseous point for the middle turbinated bone; for the body and great cornu of the hyoid; for the second and third pieces of the body of the sternum; for the lower end of the femur. Ossification of the bony lamina spiralis and axis of the cochlea. Opening of the eyelids. The testicles are in the scrotum.
DESCRIPTIVE AND SURGICAL ANATOMY.

The Skeleton.

The entire skeleton in the adult consists of 200 distinct bones. These are—

The Spine or vertebral column (sacrum and coccyx included) 26
Cranium .................................................. 8
Face .......................................................... 14
Os hyoides, sternum, and ribs .......................... 26
Upper extremities ....................................... 64
Lower extremities ....................................... 62

Total ...................................................... 200

In this enumeration, the patellae are included as separate bones, but the smaller sesamoid bones, and the ossicula auditus, are not reckoned. The teeth belong to the tegumentary system.

These bones are divisible into four classes: Long, Short, Flat, and Irregular.

The Long Bones are found in the limbs, where they form a system of levers, which have to sustain the weight of the trunk, and to confer the power of locomotion. A long bone consists of a lengthened cylinder or shaft, and two extremities. The shaft is a hollow cylinder, the walls consisting of dense compact tissue of great thickness in the middle, and becoming thinner towards the extremities; the spongy tissue is scanty, and the bone is hollowed out in its interior to form the medullary canal. The extremities are generally somewhat expanded for greater convenience of mutual connection, for the purposes of articulation, and to afford a broad surface for muscular attachment. Here the bone is made up of spongy tissue with only a thin coating of compact substance. The long bones are, the humerus, radius, ulna, femur, tibia, fibula, metacarpal and metatarsal bones, and the phalanges. The clavicle is also usually reckoned as a long bone.

Short Bones. Where a part of the skeleton is intended for strength and compactness, and its motion is at the same time slight and limited, it is divided into a number of small pieces united together by ligaments, and the separate bones are short and compressed, such as the bones of the carpus and tarsus. These bones, in their structure, are spongy throughout, excepting at their surface, where there is a thin crust of compact substance.

Flat Bones. Where the principal requirement is either extensive protection, or the provision of broad surfaces for muscular attachment, we find the osseous structure expanded into broad flat plates, as is seen in the bones of the skull and the shoulder-blade. These bones are composed of two thin layers of compact tissue, inclosing between them a variable quantity of cancellous tissue. In the cranial bones, these layers of compact tissue are familiarly known as the tables of the skull; the outer one is thick and tough; the inner one thinner, denser, and more brittle, and hence termed the vitreous table. The intervening cancellous tissue is called the diploe. The flat bones are, the occipital, parietal,
frontal, nasal, lachrymal, vomer, scapula, osa innominata, sternum, ribs, and patella.

The Irregular or Mixed bones are such as, from their peculiar form, cannot be grouped under either of the preceding heads. Their structure is similar to that of other bones, consisting of a layer of compact tissue externally, and of spongy cancellous tissue within. The irregular bones are, the vertebrae, sacrum, coccyx, temporal, sphenoid, ethmoid, malar, superior maxillary, inferior maxillary, palate, inferior turbinated, and hyoid.

Surfaces of Bones. If the surface of any bone is examined, certain eminences and depressions are seen, to which descriptive anatomists have given the following names.

A prominent process projecting from the surface of a bone, which it has never been separate from, or movable upon, is termed an apophysis (from ἄποψις, an excrescence); but if such process is developed as a separate piece from the rest of the bone, to which it is afterwards joined, it is termed an epiphysis (from ἐπίφυσις, an accretion).

These eminences and depressions are of two kinds: articular, and non-articular. Well-marked examples of articular eminences are found in the heads of the humerus and femur; and of articular depressions, in the glenoid cavity of the scapula, and the acetabulum. Non-articular eminences are designated according to their form. Thus, a broad, rough, uneven elevation is called a tuberosity; a small rough prominence, a tubercle; a sharp, slender, pointed eminence, a spine; a narrow rough elevation, running some way along the surface, a ridge or line.

The non-articular depressions are also of very variable form, and are described as fosse, grooves, furrows, fissures, notches, etc. These non-articular eminences and depressions serve to increase the extent of surface for the attachment of ligaments and muscles, and are usually well marked in proportion to the muscul arity of the subject.

THE SPINE.

The Spine is a flexuous and flexible column, formed of a series of bones called Vertebrae.

The Vertebrae are thirty-three in number, exclusive of those which form the skull, and have received the names cervical, dorsal, lumbar, sacral, and coccygeal, according to the position which they occupy; seven being found in the cervical region, twelve in the dorsal, five in the lumbar, five in the sacral, and four in the coccygeal.

This number is sometimes increased by an additional vertebra in one region, or the number may be diminished in one region, the deficiency being supplied by an additional vertebra in another. These observations do not apply to the cervical portion of the spine, the number of bones forming which is seldom increased or diminished.

The Vertebrae in the upper three regions of the spine are separate throughout the whole of life; but those found in the sacral and coccygeal regions are, in the adult, firmly united, so as to form two bones—five entering into the formation of the upper bone or Sacco, and four into the terminal bone of the spine, or coccyx.

GENERAL CHARACTERS OF A VERTEBRA.

Each vertebra consists of two essential parts, an interior solid segment or body, and a posterior segment or arch. The arch is formed of two pedicles, and two laminae, supporting seven processes; viz., four articular, two transverse, and one spinous process.

The bodies of the vertebrae are piled one upon the other, forming a strong pillar, for the support of the cranium and trunk; the arches forming a hollow
CERVICAL VERTEBRÆ.

133
cylinder behind for the protection of the spinal cord. The different vertebrae are connected together by means of the articular processes, and the intervertebral cartilages; while the transverse and spinous processes serve as levers for the attachment of muscles which move the different parts of the spine. Lastly, between each pair of vertebrae apertures exist through which the spinal nerves pass from the cord. Each of these constituent parts must now be separately examined.

The Body is the largest and most solid part of a vertebra. Above and below, it is slightly concave, presenting a rim around its circumference; and its upper and lower surfaces are rough, for the attachment of the intervertebral fibrocartilages. In front, it is convex from side to side, concave from above downwards. Behind, it is flat from above downwards and slightly concave from side to side. Its anterior surface is perforated by a few small apertures, for the passage of nutrient vessels; whilst, on the posterior surface, is a single large irregular aperture, or occasionally more than one, for the exit of veins from the body of the vertebra, the vena basis vertebrae.

The Pedicles project backwards, one on each side, from the upper part of the body of the vertebra, at the line of junction of its posterior and lateral surfaces. The concavities above and below the pedicles are the intervertebral notches; they are four in number, two on each side, the inferior ones being generally the deeper. When the vertebrae are articulated, the notches of each contiguous pair of bones form the intervertebral foramina which communicate with the spinal canal and transmit the spinal nerves.

The Laminæ are two broad plates of bone which complete the vertebral arch behind, inclosing a foramen which serves for the protection of the spinal cord; they are connected to the body by means of the pedicles. Their upper and lower borders are rough, for the attachment of the ligamenta subflava.

The Articular Processes, four in number, two on each side, spring from the junction of the pedicles with the laminæ. The two superior project upwards, their articular surfaces being directed more or less backwards; the two inferior project downwards, their articular surfaces looking more or less forwards.1

The Spinous Process projects backwards from the junction of the two laminæ, and serves for the attachment of muscles.

The Transverse Processes, two in number, project one at each side from the point where the articular processes join the pedicle. They also serve for the attachment of muscles.

CHARACTERS OF THE CERVICAL VERTEBRÆ (Fig. 94).

The Body is smaller than in any other region of the spine, and broader from side to side than from before backwards. The anterior and posterior surfaces are flattened and of equal depth; the former is placed on a lower level than the latter, and its inferior border is prolonged downwards so as to overlap the upper and fore part of the vertebra below. Its upper surface is concave transversely, and presents a projecting lip on each side; its lower surface being convex from side to side, concave from before backwards, and presenting laterally a shallow concavity, which receives the corresponding projecting lip of the adjacent vertebra. The pedicles are directed obliquely outwards, and the superior intervertebral notches are deeper, but narrower, than the inferior. The laminæ are narrow, long, thinner above than below, and overlap each other; inclosing the spinal foramen, which is very large, and of a triangular form. The spinous processes are short and bifid at the extremity, to afford greater extent of surface for the attachment of muscles, the two divisions being often of unequal size.

1 It may, perhaps, be as well to remind the reader, that the direction of a surface is determined by that of a line drawn at right angles to it.
They increase in length from the fourth to the seventh. The transverse processes are short, directed downwards, outwards, and forwards, bifid at their extremity, and marked by a groove along their upper surface, which runs downwards and outwards from the superior intervertebral notch, and serves for the transmission of one of the cervical nerves. The transverse processes are pierced at their base by a foramen, for the transmission of the vertebral artery, vein, and plexus of nerves. Each process is formed by two roots; the anterior root arises from the side of the body, and corresponds to the ribs: the posterior root springs from the junction of the pedicle with the lamina, and corresponds with the transverse processes in the dorsal region. It is by the junction of the two that the foramen for the vertebral vessels is formed. The extremities of each of these roots form the anterior and posterior tubercles of the transverse processes. The articular processes are oblique: the superior are of an oval form, flattened and directed upwards and backwards; the inferior downwards and forwards.

The peculiar vertebrae in the cervical region are the first or Atlas; the second or Axis; and the seventh or Vertebra prominens. The great modifications in the form of the atlas and axis are designed to admit of the nodding and rotatory movements of the head.

The Atlas (Fig. 95) (so named from supporting the globe of the head). The chief peculiarities of this bone are, that it has neither body nor spinous process.

The body is detached from the rest of the bone, and forms the odontoid process of the second vertebra; while the parts corresponding to the pedicles pass in front, and join to form the anterior arch. The atlas consists of an anterior arch,
a posterior arch, and two lateral masses. The anterior arch forms about one-fifth of the bone; its anterior surface is convex, and presents about its centre a tubercle, for the attachment of the Longus colli muscle; posteriorly it is concave, and marked by a smooth oval or circular facet, for articulation with the odontoid process of the axis. The posterior arch forms about two-fifths of the circumference of the bone; it terminates behind in a tubercle, which is the rudiment of a spinous process, and gives origin to the Rectus capitis posticus minor. The diminutive size of this process prevents any interference in the movements between it and the cranium. The posterior part of the arch presents, above, a rounded edge; whilst, in front, immediately behind each superior articular process, is a groove, sometimes converted into a foramen by a delicate bony spiculum which arches backwards from the posterior extremity of the superior articular process. These grooves represent the superior intervertebral notches, and are peculiar from being situated behind the articular processes, instead of before them, as in the other vertebrae. They serve for the transmission of the vertebral arteries, which, ascending through the foramen in the transverse process, winds round the lateral mass in a direction backwards and inwards. They also transmit the sub-occipital nerves. On the under surface of the posterior arch, in the same situation, are two other grooves, placed behind the lateral masses, and representing the inferior intervertebral notches of other vertebrae. They are much less marked than the superior. The lateral masses are the most bulky and solid parts of the atlas, in order to support the weight of the head; they present two articulating processes above, and two below. The two superior are of large size, oval, concave, and approach towards one another in front, but diverge behind; they are directed upwards, inwards, and a little backwards, forming a kind of cup for the condyles of the occipital bone, and are admirably adapted to the nodding movements of the head. Not unfrequently they are partially subdivided by a more or less deep indentation which encroaches upon each lateral margin. The inferior articular processes are circular in form, flattened or slightly concave, and directed downwards, inwards, and a little backwards, articulating with the axis, and permitting the rotatory movements. Just below the inner margin of each superior articular surface is a small tubercle, for the attachment of a ligament which, stretching across the ring of the atlas, divides it into two unequal parts; the anterior or smaller segment receiving the odontoid process of the axis, the posterior allowing the transmission of the spinal cord and its membranes. This part of the spinal canal is of considerable size, to afford space for the spinal cord; and hence lateral displacement of the atlas may occur without compression of the spinal cord. The transverse processes are of large size, for the attachment of special muscles which assist in rotating the head—long, not bifid, perforated at their base by a canal for the vertebral artery, which is directed from below, upwards and backwards.

The Axis (Fig. 96) (so named from forming the pivot upon which the head rotates). The most distinctive character of this bone is the strong prominent process, tooth-like in form (hence the name odontoid), which rises perpendicularly from the upper part of the body. The body is of a triangular form; deeper in front than behind, and prolonged downwards anteriorly so as to overlap the upper and fore part of the adjacent vertebra. It presents in front a median longitudinal ridge, separating two lateral depressions for the attachment of the Longus colli muscles of each side. The odontoid process presents two articulating surfaces; one in front of an oval form, for articulation with the atlas; another behind, for the transverse ligament; the latter frequently encroaching on the sides of the process; the apex is pointed. Below the apex the process is somewhat enlarged, and presents on either side a rough impression for the attachment of the odontoid or check ligaments, which connect it to the occipital bone; the base of the process, where it is attached to the body, is constricted, so as to prevent displacement from the transverse ligament, which binds it in this situation to the anterior arch of the atlas. Sometimes, however, this process
does become displaced, especially in children, in whom the ligaments are more relaxed: instant death is the result of this accident. The pedicles are broad and strong, especially their anterior extremities, which coalesce with the sides of the body and the root of the odontoid process. The laminae are thick and strong,

and the spinal foramen very large. The superior articular surfaces are round, slightly convex, directed upwards and outwards, and are peculiar in being supported on the body, pedicles, and transverse processes. The inferior articular surfaces have the same direction as those of the other cervical vertebrae. The superior intervertebral notches are very shallow and lie behind the articular processes; the inferior in front of them, as in the other cervical vertebrae. The transverse processes are very small, not bifid, and perforated by the vertebral foramen, or foramen for the vertebral artery, which is directed obliquely upwards and outwards. The spinous process is of large size, very strong, deeply channelled on its under surface, and presents a bifid tubercular extremity for the attachment of muscles, which serve to rotate the head upon the spine.

Seventh Cervical (Fig. 97). The most distinctive character of this vertebra is the existence of a very long and prominent spinous process; hence the name "Vertebra prominens." This process is thick, nearly horizontal in direction, not bifurcated, and has attached to it the ligamentum nuchae. The transverse process is usually of large size, especially its posterior root; its upper surface has usually a shallow groove and it seldom presents more than a trace of bifurcation at its extremity. The vertebral foramen is sometimes as large as in the other cervical vertebrae, usually smaller, on one or both sides, and sometimes wanting. On the left side it occasionally gives passage to the vertebral artery; more frequently the vertebral
vein traverses it on both sides; but the usual arrangement is for both artery and vein to pass through the foramen in the transverse process of the sixth cervical.

**Characters of the Dorsal Vertebrae.**

The bodies of the dorsal vertebrae resemble those in the cervical and lumbar regions at the respective ends of this portion of the spine; but in the middle of the dorsal region their form is very characteristic, being heart-shaped, and broader in the antero-posterior than in the lateral direction. They are thicker behind than in front, flat above and below, convex and prominent in front, deeply concave behind, slightly constricted in front and at the sides, and marked on each side, near the root of the pedicle, by two demi-facets, one above, the other below. These are covered with cartilage in the recent state; and, when articulated with the adjoining vertebrae, form oval surfaces for the reception of the heads of the corresponding ribs. The pedicles are directed backwards, and the inferior intervertebral notches are of large size, and deeper than in any other region of the spine. The laminae are broad and thick, and the spinal foramen small, and of a circular form. The articular processes are flat, nearly vertical in direction, and project from the upper and lower part of the pedicles, the superior being directed backwards and a little outwards and upwards, the inferior forwards and a little inwards and downwards. The transverse processes arise from the same parts of the arch as the posterior roots of the transverse processes in the neck; they are thick, strong, and of great length, directed obliquely backwards and outwards, presenting a clubbed extremity, which is tipped on its anterior part by a small concave surface, for articulation with the tubercle of a rib. Besides the articular facet for the rib two indistinct tubercles may be seen rising from the extremity of the transverse processes, one near the upper, the other near the lower border. In man, they are comparatively of small size, and

Fig. 98.—A Dorsal Vertebra.

![Diagram of a Dorsal Vertebra](image)

serve only for the attachment of muscles. But, in some animals, they attain considerable magnitude, either for the purpose of more closely connecting the segments of this portion of the spine, or for muscular and ligamentous attachment. The spinous processes are long, triangular in form, directed obliquely downwards, and terminating by a tubercular margin. They overlap one another from the fifth to the eighth, but are less oblique in direction above and below.
The peculiar dorsal vertebrae are the first, ninth, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth (Fig. 99).

The First Dorsal Vertebra presents, on each side of the body, a single entire articular facet for the head of the first rib, and a half facet for the upper half of the second. The upper surface of the body is like that of a cervical vertebra, being broad transversely, concave, and lipped on each side. The articular surfaces are oblique, and the spinous processes thick, long, and almost horizontal.

Fig. 99.—Peculiar Dorsal Vertebrae.

The Ninth Dorsal has no demi-facet below. In some subjects, however, the ninth has two demi-facets on each side, then the tenth has a demi-facet at the upper part; none below.

The Tenth Dorsal has (except in the cases just mentioned) an entire articular facet on each side above; it has no demi-facet below.
LUMBAR VERTEBRÆ.

In the Eleventh Dorsal, the body approaches in its form and size to the lumbar. The articular facets for the heads of the ribs, one on each side, are of large size, and placed chiefly on the pedicles, which are thicker and stronger in this and the next vertebra, than in any other part of the dorsal region. The transverse processes are very short, tubercular at their extremities, and have no articular facets for the tubercles of the ribs. The spinous process is short, nearly horizontal in direction, and presents a slight tendency to bifurcation at its extremity.

The Twelfth Dorsal has the same general characters as the eleventh; but may be distinguished from it by the inferior articular processes being convex and turned outwards, like those of the lumbar vertebrae; by the general form of the body, laminae, and spinous process, approaching to that of the lumbar vertebrae; and by the transverse processes being shorter, and the tubercles at their extremities more marked.

CHARACTERS OF THE LUMBAR VERTEBRÆ.

The Lumbar Vertebrae (Fig. 100) are the largest segments of the vertebral column. The body is large, broader from side to side than from before backwards, about equal in depth in front and behind, flattened or slightly concave above and below, concave behind, and deeply constricted in front and at the

---

Fig. 100.—Lumbar Vertebra.

---

sides, presenting prominent margins, which afford a broad basis for the support of the superincumbent weight. The pedicles are very strong, directed backwards from the upper part of the bodies; consequently the inferior intervertebral notches are of large size. The laminae are short, but broad and strong; and the foramen triangular, larger than in the dorsal, smaller than in the cervical region. The superior articular processes are concave, and look almost directly inwards; the inferior, convex, look outwards and a little forwards; the former are separated by a much wider interval than the latter, embracing the lower articulating processes of the vertebra above. The transverse processes are long, slender, directed transversely outwards in the upper three lumbar vertebrae, slanting a little upwards in the lower two. By some anatomists they are considered homologous with the ribs. Of the two tubercles noticed in connection with the transverse processes in the dorsal region, the superior ones become connected in this region with the back part of the superior articular processes. Although in man they are comparatively small, in some animals they attain considerable size, and serve to lock the vertebrae more closely together. The spinous processes are thick and broad, somewhat quadrilateral, horizontal in direction, thicker below than above, and terminating by a rough uneven border.
The **Fifth Lumbar Vertebra** is characterized by having the body much thicker in front than behind, which accords with the prominence of the sacro-vertebral articulation, by the smaller size of its spinous process, by the wide interval between the inferior articulating processes, and by the greater size and thickness of its transverse processes.

**Structure of the Vertebra.** The structure of a vertebra differs in different parts. The body is composed of light spongy cancellous tissue, having a thin coating of compact tissue on its external surface perforated by numerous orifices, some of large size, for the passage of vessels; its interior is traversed by one or two large canals for the reception of veins, which converge towards a single large irregular or several small apertures at the posterior part of the body of each bone. The arch and processes projecting from it have, on the contrary, an exceedingly thick covering of compact tissue.

**Development.** Each vertebra is formed of three primary cartilaginous portions (Fig. 101), one for each lamina and its processes, and one for the body. Ossification commences in the laminae about the sixth week of fetal life, in the situation where the transverse processes afterwards project, the osseous granules shooting backwards to the spine, forwards to the body, and outwards into the transverse and articular processes. Ossification in the body commences in the middle of the cartilage about the eighth week. At birth these three pieces are perfectly separate. During the first year the laminae become united behind, by a portion of cartilage in which the spinous process is ultimately formed, and thus the arch is completed. About the third year the body is joined to the arch on each side, in such a manner that the body is formed from the three original centres of ossification, the amount contributed by the pedicles increasing in extent from below upwards. Thus the bodies of the sacral vertebra are formed almost entirely from the central nuclei, the bodies of the lumbar are formed laterally and behind by the pedicles; in
the dorsal region, the pedicles advance as far forwards as the articular depressions for the head of the ribs, forming these cavities of reception; and in the neck the lateral portions of the bodies are formed entirely by the advance of the pedicles. Before puberty, no other changes occur, excepting a gradual increase in the growth of these primary centres, the upper and under surfaces of the bodies, and the ends of the transverse and spinous processes, being tipped with cartilage, in which ossific granules are not as yet deposited. At sixteen years (Fig. 102), four secondary centres appear, one for the tip of each transverse process, and two (sometimes united into one) for the end of the spinous process. At twenty-one years (Fig. 103), a thin circular epiphysal plate of bone is formed in the layer of cartilage situated on the upper and under surfaces of the body, the former being the thicker of the two. All these become joined; and the bone is completely formed about the thirtieth year of life.

Exceptions to this mode of development occur in the first, second, and seventh cervical, and in the vertebrae of the lumbar region.

The Atlas (Fig. 104) is developed by two primary centres, and by one or more epiphyses. The two primary centres are destined for the two lateral or neural masses, the ossification of which commences before birth, near the articular processes, and extends backwards: these portions of bone are separated from one another behind, at birth, by a narrow interval filled in with cartilage. Between the second and third years, they unite either directly or through the medium of an epiphysal centre, developed in the cartilage near their point of junction. The anterior arch, at birth, is altogether cartilaginous, and this portion of the atlas is completed by the gradual extension forwards and ultimate junction of the two neural processes. Occasionally, a separate nucleus is developed in the anterior arch, which, extending laterally, joins the neural processes in front of the pedicles; or, there are two nuclei developed in the anterior arch, one on either side of the median line, which join to form a single mass, afterwards united to the lateral portions in front of the articulating processes.

The Axis (Fig. 105) is developed by six centres. The body and arch of this bone are formed in the same manner as the corresponding parts in the other vertebrae: one centre for the lower part of the body, and one for each lamina. The odontoid process consists originally of an extension upwards of the cartilaginous mass, in which the lower part of the body is formed. At about the sixth month of fetal life, two osseous nuclei make their appearance in the base of this process: they are placed laterally, and join before birth to form a conical bi-lobed mass deeply cleft above; the interval between the cleft and the summit of the process is formed by a wedge-shaped piece of cartilage; the base of the process being separated from the body by a cartilaginous interval, which gradually becomes ossified, sometimes by a separate epiphysal nucleus. Finally, as Dr. Humphry has demonstrated, the apex of the odontoid process has a separate nucleus.

The Seventh Cervical. The anterior or costal part of the transverse process of the seventh cervical, is developed from a separate osseous centre at about the sixth month of fetal life, and joins the body and posterior division of the transverse process between the fifth and sixth years. Sometimes this process continues as a separate piece, and, becoming lengthened outwards, constitutes what is known as a cervical rib.

The Lumbar Vertebrae (Fig. 106) have two additional centres (besides those peculiar to the vertebrae generally), for the tubercles, which project from the back part of the superior articular processes. The transverse process of the first lumbar is sometimes developed as a separate piece, which may remain permanently unconnected with the remaining portion of the bone; thus forming a lumbar rib, a peculiarity which is rarely met with.

Progress of Ossification in the Spine Generally. Ossification of the lamina of the vertebrae commences at the upper part of the spine, and proceeds gradually downwards; hence the frequent occurrence of spina bifida in the lower part of the spinal column. Ossification of the bodies, on the other hand, com-
The Fifth Lumbar Vertebra is characterized by having the body much thicker in front than behind, which accords with the prominence of the sacro-vertebral articulation, by the smaller size of its spinous process, by the wide interval between the inferior articulating processes, and by the greater size and thickness of its transverse processes.

Structure of the Vertebrae. The structure of a vertebra differs in different parts. The body is composed of light spongy cancellous tissue, having a thin coating of compact tissue on its external surface perforated by numerous orifices, some of large size, for the passage of vessels; its interior is traversed by one or two large canals for the reception of veins, which converge towards a single large irregular or several small apertures at the posterior part of the body of each bone. The arch and processes projecting from it have, on the contrary, an exceedingly thick covering of compact tissue.

Development. Each vertebra is formed of three primary cartilaginous portions (Fig. 101), one for each lamina and its processes, and one for the body. Ossification commences in the laminae about the sixth week of fetal life, in the situation where the transverse processes afterwards project, the osseous granules shooting backwards to the spine, forwards to the body, and outwards into the transverse and articular processes. Ossification in the body commences in the middle of the cartilage about the eighth week. At birth these three pieces are perfectly separate. During the first year the laminae become united behind, by a portion of cartilage in which the spinous process is ultimately formed, and thus the arch is completed. About the third year the body is joined to the arch on each side, in such a manner that the body is formed from the three original centres of ossification, the amount contributed by the pedicles increasing in extent from below upwards. Thus the bodies of the sacral vertebrae are formed almost entirely from the central nuclei, the bodies of the lumbar are formed laterally and behind by the pedicles; in
DEVELOPMENT OF THE VERTEBRÆ.

the dorsal region, the pedicles advance as far forwards as the articular depressions for the head of the ribs, forming these cavities of reception; and in the neck the lateral portions of the bodies are formed entirely by the advance of the pedicles. Before puberty, no other changes occur, excepting a gradual increase in the growth of these primary centres, the upper and under surfaces of the bodies, and the ends of the transverse and spinous processes, being tipped with cartilage, in which ossific granules are not as yet deposited. At sixteen years (Fig. 102), four secondary centres appear, one for the tip of each transverse process, and two (sometimes united into one) for the end of the spinous process. At twenty-one years (Fig. 103), a thin circular epiphysial plate of bone is formed in the layer of cartilage situated on the upper and under surfaces of the body, the former being the thicker of the two. All these become joined; and the bone is completely formed about the thirtieth year of life.

Exceptions to this mode of development occur in the first, second, and seventh cervical, and in the vertebrae of the lumbar region.

The Atlas (Fig. 104) is developed by two primary centres, and by one or more epiphyses. The two primary centres are destined for the two lateral or neural masses, the ossification of which commences before birth, near the articular processes, and extends backwards: these portions of bone are separated from one another behind, at birth, by a narrow interval filled in with cartilage. Between the second and third years, they unite either directly or through the medium of an epiphysial centre, developed in the cartilage near their point of junction. The anterior arch, at birth, is altogether cartilaginous, and this portion of the atlas is completed by the gradual extension forwards and ultimate junction of the two neural processes. Occasionally, a separate nucleus is developed in the anterior arch, which, extending laterally, joins the neural processes in front of the pedicles; or, there are two nuclei developed in the anterior arch, one on either side of the median line, which join to form a single mass, afterwards united to the lateral portions in front of the articulating processes.

The Axis (Fig. 105) is developed by six centres. The body and arch of this bone are formed in the same manner as the corresponding parts in the other vertebrae: one centre for the lower part of the body, and one for each lamina. The odontoid process consists originally of an extension upwards of the cartilaginous mass, in which the lower part of the body is formed. At about the sixth month of foetal life, two osseous nuclei make their appearance in the base of this process: they are placed laterally, and join before birth to form a conical bi-lobed mass deeply cleft above; the interval between the cleft and the summit of the process is formed by a wedge-shaped piece of cartilage; the base of the process being separated from the body by a cartilaginous interval, which gradually becomes ossified, sometimes by a separate epiphysial nucleus. Finally, as Dr. Humphry has demonstrated, the apex of the odontoid process has a separate nucleus.

The Seventh Cervical. The anterior or costal part of the transverse process of the seventh cervical, is developed from a separate osseous centre at about the sixth month of foetal life, and joins the body and posterior division of the transverse process between the fifth and sixth years. Sometimes this process continues as a separate piece, and, becoming lengthened outwards, constitutes what is known as a cervical rib.

The Lumbar Vertebrae (Fig. 106) have two additional centres (besides those peculiar to the vertebrae generally), for the tubercoles, which project from the back part of the superior articular processes. The transverse process of the first lumbar is sometimes developed as a separate piece, which may remain permanently unconnected with the remaining portion of the bone; thus forming a lumbar rib, a peculiarity which is rarely met with.

Progress of Ossification in the Spine Generally. Ossification of the laminae of the vertebrae commences at the upper part of the spine, and proceeds gradually downwards; hence the frequent occurrence of spina bifida in the lower part of the spinal column. Ossification of the bodies, on the other hand, com-
ménces a little below the centre of the spinal column (about the ninth or tenth dorsal vertebrae), and extends both upwards and downwards. Although, however, the ossific nuclei make their first appearance in the lower dorsal vertebrae, the lumbar and first sacral are those in which these nuclei are largest at birth.

**Attachment of Muscles.** To the **Atlas** are attached the Longus colli, Rectus anticus minor, Rectus lateralis, Rectus posticus minor, Obliquis superior and inferior, Splenius colli, Levator anguli scapulae, Interspinous and Intertransverse.

To the **Axis** are attached the Longus colli, Obliquis inferior, Rectus posticus major, Semi-spinalis colli, Multifidus spinae, Levator anguli scapulae, Splenius colli, Transversalis colli, Scalenus posticus, Intertransversales, Interspinales.

To the remaining Vertebrae generally are attached, **anteriorly**, the Rectus anticus major, Longus colli, Scalenum anticus and posticus, Psoas magnus, Psoas parvus, Quadratus lumborum, Diaphragm, Obliquis internus and transversalis—**posteriorly**, the Trapezius, Latissimus dorsi, Levator anguli scapulae, Rhomboideus major and minor, Serratus posticus superior and inferior, Splenius, Sacro-lumbaris, Longissimus dorsi, Spinalis dorsi, Cervicalis ascendens, Transversalis colli, Trachelo-mastoid, Complexus, Semi-spinalis dorsi and colli, Multifidus spinae, Interspinales, Supra-spinales, Intertransversales, Levatores costarum.

**Sacral and Coccygeal Vertebrae.**

The Sacral and Coccygeal Vertebrae consist, at an early period of life, of nine separate pieces, which are united in the adult, so as to form two bones, five entering into the formation of the sacrum, four into that of the coccyx. Occasionally, the coccyx consists of five bones.¹

¹ Dr. Humphry describes this as the usual composition of the Coccyx.—*On the Skeleton*, p. 456.
The **Sacro** (Fig. 107) is a large triangular bone, situated at the lower part of the vertebral column, and at the upper and back part of the pelvic cavity, where it is inserted like a wedge between the two ossa innominata; its upper part, or base, articulating with the last lumbar vertebra, its apex with the coccyx. The sacrum is curved upon itself, and placed very obliquely, its upper extremity projecting forwards, and forming, with the last lumbar vertebra, a very prominent angle, called the **promontory, or sacro-vertebral angle**, whilst its central part is directed backwards, so as to give increased capacity to the pelvic cavity. It presents for examination an anterior and posterior surface, two lateral surfaces, a base, an apex, and a central canal.

The **Anterior Surface** is concave from above downwards, and slightly so from side to side. In the middle are seen four transverse ridges, indicating the original division of the bone into five separate pieces. The portions of bone intervening between the ridges correspond to the bodies of the vertebrae. The body of the first segment is of large size, and in form resembles that of a lumbar vertebra; the succeeding ones diminish in size from above downwards, are flattened from before backwards, and curved so as to accommodate themselves to the form of the sacrum, being concave in front, convex behind. At each end of the ridges above mentioned, are seen the **anterior sacral foramina**, analogous to the intervertebral foramina, four in number on each side, somewhat rounded in form, diminishing in size from above downwards, and directed outwards and forwards; they transmit the anterior branches of the sacral nerves. External to these foramina is the **lateral mass**, consisting, at an early period of life, of separate segments, which correspond to the anterior transverse processes; these become blended, in the adult, with the bodies, with each other, and with the posterior transverse processes. Each lateral mass is traversed by four broad shallow grooves, which lodge the anterior sacral nerves as they pass outwards, the grooves being separated by prominent ridges of bone, which give attachment to the slips of the Pyriformis muscles.

If a vertical section is made through the centre of the bone (Fig. 108), the bodies are seen to be united at their circumference by bone, a wide interval being left centrally, which, in the recent state, is filled by intervertebral substance. In some bones, this union is more complete between the lower segments than between the upper ones.

The **Posterior Surface** (Fig. 109) is convex and much narrower than the anterior. In the middle line are three or four tubercles, which represent the rudimentary spinous processes of the sacral vertebrae. Of these tubercles, the first is usually prominent, and perfectly distinct from the rest; the second and third are either separate, or united into a tubercular ridge, which diminishes in size from above downwards; the fourth usually, and the fifth always, remaining undeveloped. External to the spinous processes on each side, are the **laminae**, [Fig. 108.—Vertical Section of the Sacrum]
broad and well marked in the first three pieces; sometimes the fourth, and fifth, being undeveloped; in this situation the lower end of the sacral canal is exposed. External to the laminae is a linear series of indistinct tubercles representing the articular processes; the upper pair are large, well developed, and correspond in shape and direction to the superior articulating processes of a lumbar vertebra; the second and third are small; the fourth and fifth (usually blended together) are situated on each side of the sacral canal: they are called the sacral cornua, and articulate with the cornua of the coccyx. External to the articular processes are the four posterior sacral foramina; they are smaller in size and less regular in form than the anterior, and transmit the posterior branches of the sacral nerves. On the outer side of the posterior sacral foramina

Fig. 109.—Sacrum, Posterior Surface.

is a series of tubercles, the rudimentary posterior transverse processes of the sacral vertebrae. The first pair of transverse tubercles are of large size, very distinct, and correspond with each superior angle of the bone; the second, small in size, enter into the formation of the sacro-iliac articulation; the third give attachment to the oblique fasciculi of the posterior sacro-iliac ligaments; and the fourth and fifth to the great sacro-sciatic ligaments. The interspace between the spinous and transverse processes on the back of the sacrum presents a wide shallow concavity, called the sacral groove; it is continuous above with the vertebral groove, and lodges the origin of the Erector spinae.

The Lateral Surface, broad above, becomes narrowed into a thin edge below. Its upper half presents in front a broad ear-shaped surface for articulation with the ilium. This is called the auricular surface, and in the fresh state is coated with cartilage. It is bounded posteriorly by deep and uneven impressions, for the attachment of the posterior sacro-iliac ligaments. The lower half is thin
and sharp, and gives attachment to the greater and lesser sacro-sciatic ligaments, and to some fibres of the Gluteus maximus; below, it presents a deep notch, which is converted into a foramen by articulation with the articular process of the upper piece of the coccyx, and transmits the anterior branch of the fifth sacral nerve.

The Base of the sacrum, which is broad and expanded, is directed upwards and forwards. In the middle is seen an oval articular surface, which corresponds with the under surface of the body of the last lumbar vertebra, bounded behind by the large triangular orifice of the sacral canal. This orifice is formed behind by the spinous process and laminae of the first sacral vertebra, whilst projecting from it on each side are the superior articular processes; they are oval, concave, directed backwards and inwards, like the superior articular processes of a lumbar vertebra; and in front of each articular process is an intervertebral notch, which forms the lower half of the last intervertebral foramen. Lastly, on each side of the articular surface is a broad and flat triangular surface of bone, which extends outwards, and is continuous on each side with the iliac fossa.

The Apex, directed downwards and forwards, presents a small oval concave surface for articulation with the coccyx.

The Sacral Canal runs throughout the greater part of the bone; it is large and triangular in form above, small and flattened from before backwards below. In this situation, its posterior wall is incomplete, from the non-development of the laminae and spinous processes. It lodges the sacral nerves, and is perforated by the anterior and posterior sacral foramina, through which these pass out.

Structure. It consists of much loose spongy tissue within, invested externally by a thin layer of compact tissue.

Differences in the Sacrum of the Male and Female. The sacrum in the female is usually wider than in the male; and it is much less curved, the upper half of the bones being nearly straight, the lower half presenting the greatest amount of curvature. The bone is also directed more obliquely backwards; which increases the size of the pelvic cavity, and forms a more prominent sacro-vertebral angle. In the male, the curvature is more evenly distributed over the whole length of the bone, and is altogether greater than in the female.

Peculiarities of the Sacrum. This bone, in some cases, consists of six pieces; occasionally, the number is reduced to four. Sometimes the bodies of the first and second segments are not joined, or the lamina and spinous processes have not coalesced. Occasionally, the upper pair of transverse tubercles are not joined to the rest of the bone on one or both sides; and lastly, the sacral canal may be open for nearly the lower half of the bone, in consequence of the imperfect development of the laminae and spinous processes. The sacrum, also, varies considerably with respect to its degree of curvature. From the examination of a large number of skeletons, it would appear, that, in one set of cases, the anterior surface of this bone was nearly straight, the curvature, which was very slight, affecting only its lower end. In another set of cases, the bone was curved throughout its whole length, but especially towards its middle. In a third set, the degree of curvature was less marked, and affected especially the lower third of the bone.

Development (Fig. 110). The sacrum, formed by the union of five vertebrae, has thirty-five centres of ossification.

The bodies of the sacral vertebrae have each three ossific centres: one for the central part, and one for the epiphysial plates on its upper and under surface.

The arch of each sacral vertebra is developed by two centres, one for each lamina. These unite with each other behind, and subsequently join the body.

The lateral masses have six additional centres, two for each of the first three vertebrae. These centres make their appearance above and to the outer side of the anterior sacral foramina (Fig. 110), and are developed into separate segments, which correspond with the anterior transverse processes (Fig. 111); they are sub-
sequently blended with each other, and with the bodies and the posterior transverse processes, to form the lateral mass.

Lastly, each lateral surface of the sacrum is developed by two epiphysial plates (Fig. 112); one for the auricular surface, and one for the remaining part of the thin lateral edge of the bone.

**Period of Development.** At about the eighth or ninth week of foetal life, ossification of the central part of the bodies of the first three vertebrae commences; and, at a somewhat later period, that of the last two. Between the sixth and eighth month ossification of the laminae takes place; and, at about the same period, the characteristic osseous tubercles for the first three sacral vertebrae make their appearance. The laminae join to form the arch, and are united to the bodies, first, in the lowest vertebrae. This occurs about the second year, the uppermost segment appearing as a single piece about the fifth or sixth year. About the sixteenth year the epiphyses for the upper and under surfaces of the bodies are formed; and, between the eighteenth and twentieth years, those for each lateral surface of the sacrum make their appearance. At about this period the last two segments are joined to one another; and this process gradually extending upwards, all the pieces become united, and the bone is completely formed from the twenty-fifth to the thirtieth year of life.

**Articulations.** With four bones: the last lumbar vertebra, coccyx, and the two ossa innominata.

**Attachment of Muscles.** In front, the Pyriformis and Coccygeus, and a portion of the Iliacus to the base of the bone; behind, the Gluteus maximus, Lattissimus dorsi, Multifidus spinæ, and Erector spinæ, and sometimes the Extensor coccygis.

**The Coccyx.**

The Coccyx (cokis, cuckoo), so called from having been compared to a cuckoo’s beak (Fig. 113), is usually formed of four small segments of bone, the most rudimentary parts of the vertebral column. In each of the first three segments may be traced a rudimentary body, articular and transverse processes; the last piece (sometimes the third) is a mere nodule of bone, without distinct processes. All the segments are destitute of laminae and spinous processes; and, consequently, of spinal canal and intervertebral foramina. The first segment is the largest; it resembles the lowermost sacral vertebra, and often exists as a separate piece: the last three, diminishing in size from above downwards, are usually blended together so as to form a single bone. The gradual diminution in the size of
the pieces gives this bone a triangular form, the base of the triangle joining the end of the sacrum. It presents for examination an anterior and posterior surface, two borders, a base, and an apex. The anterior surface is slightly concave, and marked with three transverse grooves, indicating the points of junction of the different pieces. It has attached to it the anterior sacro-coccygeal ligament and Levator ani muscle, and supports the lower end of the rectum. The posterior surface is convex, marked by transverse grooves similar to those on the anterior surface; and presents on each side a lineal row of tubercles, the rudimentary articular processes of the coccygeal vertebrae. Of these, the superior pair are very large; and are called the cornua of the coccyx; they project upwards, and articulate with the cornua of the sacrum, the junction between these two bones completing the fifth sacral foramen for the transmission of the posterior branch of the fifth sacral nerve. The lateral borders are thin, and present a series of small eminences, which represent the transverse processes of the coccygeal vertebrae. Of these, the first on each side is of large size, flattened from before backwards; and often ascends to join the lower part of the thin lateral edge of the sacrum, thus completing the fifth sacral foramen; the others diminish in size from above downwards, and are often wanting. The borders of the coccyx are narrow, and give attachment on each side to the sacro-sciatic ligaments and Coccygeus muscle. The base presents an oval surface for articulation with the sacrum. The apex is rounded, and has attached to it the tendon of the external Sphincter muscle. It is occasionally bifid, and sometimes deflected to one or other side.

Development. The coccyx is developed by four centres, one for each piece. Occasionally, one of the first three pieces of this bone is developed by two centres, placed side by side. The ossific nuclei make their appearance in the following order: in the first segment, at birth; in the second piece, at from five to ten years; in the third, from ten to fifteen years; in the fourth, from fifteen to twenty years. As age advances, these various segments become united in the following order: the first two pieces join; then the third and fourth; and, lastly, the bone is completed by the union of the second and third. At a late period of life, especially in females, the coccyx often becomes joined to the end of the sacrum.

Articulation. With the sacrum.

Attachment of Muscles. On either side, the Coccygeus; behind, the Gluteus maximus, and Extensor coccygis, when present; at the apex, the Sphincter ani; and in front, the Levator ani.

Of the Spine in general.

The Spinal Column, formed by the junction of the vertebrae, is situated in the median line, at the posterior part of the trunk: its average length is about two feet two or three inches, measured along the curved anterior surface of the column. Of this length the cervical part measures about five, the dorsal about eleven, the lumbar about seven inches, and the sacrum and coccyx the remainder.

Viewed in front, it presents two pyramids joined together at their bases, the upper one being formed by all the vertebrae from the second cervical to the last.
Fig. 114.—Lateral View of the Spine.

lumbar; the lower one by the sacrum and coccyx. When examined more closely, the upper pyramid is seen to be formed of three smaller pyramids. The uppermost of these consists of the six lower cervical vertebrae; its apex being formed by the axis or second cervical; its base, by the first dorsal. The second pyramid, which is inverted, is formed by the four upper dorsal vertebrae, the base being at the first dorsal, the smaller end at the fourth. The third pyramid commences at the fourth dorsal, and gradually increases in size to the fifth lumbar.

Viewed laterally (Fig. 114), the spinal column presents several curves, which correspond to the different regions of the column, and are called cervical, dorsal, lumbar, and pelvic. The cervical curve commences at the apex of the odontoid process, and terminates at the middle of the second dorsal vertebra; it is convex in front, and is the least marked of all the curves. The dorsal curve, which is concave forwards, commences at the middle of the second, and terminates at the middle of the twelfth dorsal. Its most prominent point behind corresponds to the body of the seventh or eighth vertebra. The lumbar curve commences at the middle of the last dorsal vertebra, and terminates at the sacro-vertebral angle. It is convex anteriorly; the convexity of the lower three vertebrae being much greater than that of the upper ones. The pelvic curve commences at the sacro-vertebral articulation, and terminates at the point of the coccyx. It is concave anteriorly. These curves are partly due to the shape of the bodies of the vertebrae, and partly to the intervertebral substances, as will be explained in the Articulations of the Spine.

The spine has also a slight lateral curvature, the convexity of which is directed towards the right side. This is most probably produced, as Bichat first explained, chiefly by muscular action; most persons using the right arm in preference to the left, especially in making long-continued efforts, when the body is curved to the right side. In support of this explanation, it has been found, by Béclard, that in one or two individuals who were left-handed, the lateral curvature was directed to the left side.

The spinal column presents for examination an anterior, a posterior, and two lateral surfaces; a base, summit, and vertebral canal.
The anterior surface presents the bodies of the vertebrae separated in the recent state by the intervertebral disks. The bodies are broad in the cervical region, narrow in the upper part of the dorsal, and broadest in the lumbar region. The whole of this surface is convex transversely, concave from above downwards in the dorsal region, and convex in the same direction in the cervical and lumbar regions.

The posterior surface presents in the median line spinous processes. These are short, horizontal, with bifid extremities, in the cervical region. In the dorsal region, they are directed obliquely above, assume almost a vertical direction in the middle, and are horizontal below, as are also the spinous of the lumbar vertebrae. They are separated by considerable intervals in the loins, by narrower intervals in the neck, and are closely approximated in the middle of the dorsal region. Occasionally one of these processes deviates a little from the median line, a fact to be remembered in practice, as irregularities of this sort are attendant also on fractures or displacements of the spine. On either side of the spinous processes, extending the whole length of the column, is the vertebral groove formed by the laminae in the cervical and lumbar regions, where it is shallow, and by the laminae and transverse processes in the dorsal region, where it is deep and broad. In the recent state, these grooves lodge the deep muscles of the back. External to the vertebral grooves are the articular processes, and still more externally the transverse processes. In the dorsal region, the latter processes stand backwards, on a plane considerably posterior to the same processes in the cervical and lumbar regions. In the cervical region, the transverse processes are placed in front of the articular processes, and between the intervertebral foramina. In the lumbar, they are placed also in front of the articular processes, but behind the intervertebral foramina. In the dorsal region, they are posterior both to the articular processes and foramina.

The lateral surfaces are separated from the posterior by the articular processes in the cervical and lumbar regions, and by the transverse processes in the dorsal. These surfaces present in front the sides of the bodies of the vertebrae, marked in the dorsal region by the facets for articulation with the heads of the ribs. More posteriorly are the intervertebral foramina, formed by the juxtaposition of the intervertebral notches, oval in shape, smallest in the cervical and upper part of the dorsal regions, and gradually increasing in size to the last lumbar. They are situated between the transverse processes in the neck, and in front of them in the back and loins, and transmit the spinal nerves. The base of the vertebral column is formed by the under surface of the body of the fifth lumbar vertebra; and the summit by the upper surface of the atlas. The vertebral or spinal canal follows the different curves of the spine; it is largest in those regions in which the spine enjoys the greatest freedom of movement, as in the neck and loins, where it is wide and triangular; and narrow and rounded in the back, where motion is more limited.

THE SKULL.

The Skull, or superior expansion of the vertebral column, is composed of four vertebrae, the elementary parts of which are specially modified in form and size, and almost immovably connected, for the reception of the brain, and special organs of the senses. These vertebrae are the occipital, parietal, frontal, and nasal. Descriptive anatomists, however, divide the skull into two parts, the Cranium and the Face. The Cranium (spinae, a helmet) is composed of eight bones: viz., the occipital, two parietal, frontal, two temporal, sphenoid, and ethmoid. The Face is composed of fourteen bones: viz., the two nasal, two superior maxillary, two lacrimal, two malar, two palate, two inferior turbinate, vomer, and inferior maxillary.—The ossicula auditus, the teeth, and Wormian bones, are not included in this enumeration.
THE OCCIPITAL BONE.

The Occipital Bone (Fig. 115) is situated at the back part and base of the cranium, is trapezoid in form, curved upon itself, and presents for examination two surfaces, four borders, and four angles.

The External Surface is convex. Midway between the summit of the bone and the posterior margin of the foramen magnum is a prominent tubercle, the external occipital protuberance, for the attachment of the Ligamentum nuchae; and descending from it as far as the foramen, a vertical ridge, the external occipital crest. This tubercle and crest vary in prominence in different skulls. There is a semicircular ridge on each side, passing outwards from the occipital
protuberance. These are the superior curved lines; and running parallel with
these from the middle of the crest, are the two inferior curved lines. The
surface of the bone above the superior curved lines is smooth on each side, and,
in the recent state, is covered by the Occipito-frontalis muscle, whilst the ridges,
as well as the surfaces of the bone between them, serve for the attachment of
numerous muscles. The superior curved line gives attachment internally to
the Trapezius, above which is the aponeurosis of the occipito-frontalis, externally
to the muscular origin of the Occipito-frontalis and to the Sterno-cleido-mastoid,
to the extent shown in Fig. 115; the depressions between the curved lines to
the Complexus internally, the Splenius capitis and Oblicquus capitis superior
externally. The inferior curved line, and the depressions below it, afford inser-
tion to the Rectus capitis posticus, major and minor.

The *foramen magnum* is a large oval aperture, its long diameter extending
from before backwards. It transmits the medulla oblongata and its membranes,
the spinal accessory nerves, and the vertebral arteries. Its back part is wide
for the transmission of the cord, and the corresponding margin rough for the
attachment of the dura mater enclosing the cord; the fore part is narrower,
being encroached upon by the condyles; it has projecting towards it from below
the odontoid process, and its margins are smooth and bevelled internally to
support the medulla oblongata. On each side of the foramen magnum are the
condyles, for articulation with the atlas: they are convex, oblong, or reniform
in shape, and directed downwards and outwards; they converge in front, and
encroach slightly upon the anterior segment of the foramen. On the inner
border of each condyle is a rough tubercle for the attachment of the ligaments
(check) which connect this bone with the odontoid process of the axis; whilst
external to them is a rough tubercular prominence, the transverse or jugular
process (the representative of the transverse process of a vertebra), channelled
in front by a deep notch, which forms part of the jugular foramen, or foramen
lacerum posterius. The under surface of this process affords attachment to the
Rectus capitis lateralis; its upper or cerebral surface presents a deep groove
which lodges part of the lateral sinus, whilst its prominent extremity is marked
by a quadrilateral rough surface, covered with cartilage in the fresh state, and
articulating with a similar surface on the petrous portion of the temporal bone.
On the outer side of each condyle, near its fore part, is a foramen, the anterior
condyloid; it is directed downwards, outwards, and forwards, and transmits the
hypoglossal nerve, and occasionally a meningeal branch of the ascending pha-
ryngeal artery. This foramen is sometimes double. Behind each condyle is a
fossa,1 sometimes perforated at the bottom by a foramen, the posterior condyloid,
for the transmission of a vein to the lateral sinus. In front of the foramen
magnum is a strong quadrilateral plate of bone, the basilar process, wider behind
than in front; its under surface, which is rough, presenting in the median line
a tubercular ridge, the pharyngeal spine, for the attachment of the tendinous
raphé and Superior constrictor of the pharynx; and, on each side of it rough
depressions for the attachment of the Recti capitis antici, major and minor.

The *Internal or Cerebral Surface* (Fig. 116) is deeply concave. The posterior
or occipital part is divided by a crucial ridge into four fossae. The two superior
fossae receive the posterior lobes of the cerebrum, and present slight eminences
and depressions corresponding to their convolutions. The two inferior, which
receive the hemispheres of the cerebellum, are larger than the former, and com-
paratively smooth; both are marked by slight grooves for the lodgment of
arteries. At the point of meeting of the four divisions of the crucial ridge is an
eminence, the internal occipital protuberance. It nearly corresponds to that on
the outer surface, and is perforated by one or more large vascular foramina. From

---

1 This fossa presents many variations in size. It is usually shallow; and the foramen small;
occasionally wanting, on one, or both sides. Sometimes both fossa and foramen are large, but
confined to one side only; more rarely, the fossa and foramen are very large on both sides.
this eminence, the superior division of the crucial ridge runs upwards to the super-
ior angle of the bone; it presents a deep groove for the superior longitudinal
sinus, the margins of which give attachment to the falx cerebri. The inferior
division, the internal occipital crest runs, to the posterior margin of the foramen
magnum, on the edge of which it becomes gradually lost; this ridge, which is
bifurcated below, serves for the attachment of the falx cerebri. It is usually

Fig. 116.—Occipital Bone. Inner Surface.

marked by two small grooves, which commence on either side of the posterior
margin of the foramen magnum, join together above, and run into the depression
for the torcular Herophili. They lodge the occipital sinuses. The transverse
grooves pass outwards to the lateral angles; they are deeply channelled, for the
lodgment of the lateral sinuses, their prominent margins affording attachment to
the tentorium cerebelli. At the point of meeting of these grooves is a depres-
sion, the torcular Herophili, placed a little to one or the other side of the
internal occipital protuberance. More anteriorly is the foramen magnum, and
on each side of it, but nearer its anterior than its posterior part, the internal
openings of the anterior condyloid foramina; the internal openings of the posterior
condyloid foramina being a little external and posterior to them, protected by a

1 Usually one of the transverse grooves is deeper and broader than the other; occasionally
both grooves are of equal depth and breadth, or both equally indistinct. The broader of the two
transverse grooves is nearly always continuous with the vertical groove for the superior longi-
tudinal sinus, and occupies the corresponding side of the median line.

2 The columns of blood coming in different directions were supposed to be pressed together at
this point (Torcular, a wine-press).
small arch of bone. At this part of the internal surface there is a very deep groove, in which the posterior condyloid foramen, when it exists, has its termination inside the skull. This groove is continuous in the complete skull with that which separates the upper from the lower fossa, and lodges the end of the same sinus, the lateral. In front of the foramen magnum is the basilar process, presenting a shallow depression, the basilar groove, which slopes from behind upwards and forwards, and supports the medulla oblongata and part of the pons Varolii, and on each side of the basilar process is a narrow channel, which, when united with a similar channel on the petrous portion of the temporal bone, forms a groove, which lodges the inferior petrosal sinus.

**Angles.** The superior angle is received into the interval between the posterior superior angles of the two parietal bones: it corresponds with that part of the skull in the fetus which is called the *posterior fontanelle*. The inferior angle is represented by the square-shaped surface of the basilar process. At an early period of life, a layer of cartilage separates this part of the bone from the sphenoid; but in the adult, the union between them is osseous. The lateral angles correspond to the outer ends of the transversus grooves, and are received into the interval between the posterior inferior angles of the parietal and the mastoid portion of the temporal.

**Borders.** The superior extends on each side from the superior to the lateral angle, is deeply serrated for articulation with the parietal bone, and forms, by this union, the lambdoid suture. The inferior border extends from the lateral to the inferior angle; its upper half is rough, and articulates with the mastoid portion of the temporal, forming the masto-occipital suture: the inferior half articulates with the petrous portion of the temporal, forming the petro-occipital suture; these two portions are separated from one another by the jugular process. In front of this process is a deep notch, which, with a similar one on the petrous portion of the temporal, forms the foramen lacerum posticus. This notch is occasionally subdivided into two parts by a small process of bone, and it sometimes presents an aperture at its upper part, the internal opening of the posterior condyloid foramen.

**Structure.** The occipital bone consists of two compact laminae, called the outer and inner tables, having between them the diploic tissue: this bone is especially thick at the ridges, protuberances, condyles, and anterior part of the basilar process; whilst at the bottom of the fossé, especially the inferior, it is thin, semi-transparent, and destitute of diploë.

**Development** (Fig. 117). The occipital bone has four centres of development: one for the posterior or occipital part, which is formed in membrane; one for the basilar portion, and one for each condyloid portion, which are formed in cartilage.

The centre for the occipital portion appears about the tenth week of foetal life; and consists, according to Blandin and Cruveilhier, of a small, oblong plate which appears in the situation of the occipital protuberance. The condyloid portions then ossify, and lastly the basilar portion. At birth, the bone consists of

---

1 Bécéard considers this segment to have four centres of ossification, arranged in pairs, two above and two below the curved lines, and Meckel describes eight, four of which correspond in situation with those above described: of the other four, two are placed in juxtaposition, at the upper angle of the bone, and the remaining two one at each side, in the lateral angles.
four parts, separate from one another, the occipital portion being fissured in the direction indicated in the plate above. At about the fourth year, the occipital and the two condyloid pieces join; and about the sixth year, the bone consists of a single piece. At a later period, between the eighteenth and twenty-fifth years, the occipital and sphenoid become united, forming a single bone.

Articulations. With six bones: two parietal, two temporal, sphenoid, and atlas.

Attachment of Muscles. To the superior curved line are attached the Occipitofrontalis, Trapezius, and Sterno-cleido-mastoid. To the space between the curved lines, the Complexus, Splenius capitis, and Obliquus superior; to the inferior curved line, and the space between it and the foramen magnum, the Rectus posticus major and minor; to the transverse process, the Rectus lateralis; and to the basilar process, the Rectus anticus major and minor, and Superior Constrictor of the pharynx.

The Parietal Bones.

The Parietal Bones (paries, a wall) form by their union the sides and roof of the skull. Each bone is of an irregular quadrilateral form, and presents for examination two surfaces, four borders and four angles.

Surfaces. The External surface (Fig. 118) is convex, smooth, and marked about its centre by an eminence, called the parietal eminence, which indicates the point where ossification commenced. Crossing the middle of the bone in an arched direction is a curved ridge, the temporal ridge, for the attachment of the

1 To these the Biventer cervicis should be added, if it is regarded as a separate muscle.
temporal fascia. Above this ridge, the surface of the bone is rough and porous, and covered by the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis; below it the bone is smooth, forms part of the temporal fossa, and affords attachment to the temporal muscle. At the back part of the superior border, close to the sagittal suture, is a small foramen, the parietal foramen, which transmits a vein to the superior longitudinal sinus, and sometimes a small branch of the occipital artery. Its existence is not constant, and its size varies considerably.

The Internal Surface (Fig. 119), concave, presents eminences and depressions for lodging the convolutions of the cerebrum, and numerous furrows for the ramifications of the meningeal arteries; the latter run upwards and backwards from the anterior inferior angle, and from the central and posterior part of the

Fig. 119.—Left Parietal Bone. Internal Surface.

lower border of the bone. Along the upper margin is part of a shallow groove, which, when joined to the opposite parietal, forms a channel for the superior longitudinal sinus, the elevated edges of which afford attachment to the falx cerebri. Near the groove are seen several depressions; they lodge the Pacchionian bodies. The internal opening of the parietal foramen is also seen when that aperture exists.

Borders. The superior, the longest and thickest, is dentated to articulate with its fellow of the opposite side, forming the sagittal suture. The inferior is divided into three parts: of these, the anterior is thin and pointed, bevelled at the expense of the outer surface, and overlapped by the tip of the great wing of the sphenoid: the middle portion is arched, bevelled at the expense of the outer surface, and overlapped by the squamous portion of the temporal; the posterior portion is thick and serrated for articulation with the mastoid portion of the temporal. The anterior border, deeply serrated, is bevelled at the expense of the outer surface above, and of the inner below; it articulates with the frontal bone,
forming the coronal suture. The posterior border, deeply denticulated, articulates with the occipital, forming the lambdoid suture.

**Angles.** The anterior superior, thin and pointed, corresponds with that portion of the skull which in the foetus is membranous, and is called the anterior fontanelle. The anterior inferior angle is thin and lengthened, being received in the interval between the great wing of the sphenoid and the frontal. This point will be found about one inch behind the upper and outer angle of the orbit. Its inner surface is marked by a deep groove, sometimes a canal, for the anterior branch of the middle meningeal artery. The posterior superior angle corresponds with the junction of the sagittal and lambdoid sutures. In the foetus this part of the skull is membranous, and is called the posterior fontanelle. The posterior inferior angle articulates with the mastoid portion of the temporal bone, and generally presents on its inner surface a broad shallow groove for lodging part of the lateral sinus.

**Development.** The parietal bone is formed in membrane, being developed by one centre, which corresponds with the parietal eminence, and makes its first appearance about the fifth or sixth week of foetal life. Ossification gradually extends from the centre to the circumference of the bone: the angles are consequently the parts last formed, and it is in their situation, that the fontanelles exist, previous to the completion of the growth of the bone.

**Articulations.** With five bones: the opposite parietal, the occipital, frontal, temporal, and sphenoid.

**Attachment of Muscles.** One only, the Temporal.

**The Frontal Bone.**

This bone, which resembles a cockle-shell in form, consists of two portions—a vertical or frontal portion, situated at the anterior part of the cranium, forming the forehead; and a horizontal or orbito-nasal portion, which enters into the formation of the roof of the orbits and nose.

**Vertical Portion. External Surface.** (Fig. 120). In the median line traversing the bone from the upper to the lower part, is occasionally seen a slightly elevated ridge, and in young subjects a suture, which represents the line of union of the two lateral halves of which the bone consists at an early period of life: in the adult this suture is usually obliterated, and the bone forms one piece: traces of the obliterated suture are, however, generally perceptible at the lower part. On either side of this ridge, a little below the centre of the bone, is a rounded eminence, the frontal eminence. These eminences vary in size in different individuals, and are occasionally unsymmetrical in the same subject. They are especially prominent in cases of well-marked cerebral development. The whole surface of the bone above this part is smooth, and covered by the aponeurosis of the Occipito-fronitalis muscle. Below the frontal eminence, and separated from it by a slight groove, is the superciliary ridge, broad internally where it is continuous with the nasal eminence, but less distinct as it arches outwards. These ridges are caused by the projection outwards of the frontal sinuses, and give attachment to the Orbicularis palpebrarum and Corrugator supercili. Beneath the superciliary ridge is the supra-orbital arch, a curved and prominent margin, which forms the upper boundary of the orbit, and separates the vertical from the horizontal portion of the bone. The outer part of the arch is sharp and prominent, affording to the eye, in that situation,

---

1 Some confusion is occasioned to students commencing the study of anatomy, by the name "sinuses" having been given to two perfectly different kinds of spaces connected with the skull. It may be as well, therefore, to state here, at the outset, that the "sinuses" on the interior of the cranium, marked by grooves on the inner surface of the bones, are venous channels along which the blood runs in its passage back from the brain, while the "sinuses" on the outside of the cranium (the frontal, ethmoidal, sphenoid, and maxillary) are hollow spaces in the bones themselves, which communicate with the nostrils, and contain air.
considerable protection from injury; the inner part is less prominent. At the inner third of this arch is a notch, sometimes converted into a foramen by a bony process, and called the supra-orbital notch or foramen. It transmits the supra-orbital artery, vein, and nerve. A small aperture is seen in the upper part of the notch, which transmits a vein from the diploë to join the ophthalmic vein. The supra-orbital arch terminates externally in the external angular process, and internal angular process. The external angular process is strong, prominent, and articulates with the malar bone; running upwards and backwards from it is a sharp curved crest, the temporal ridge, for the attachment of the temporal fascia; and beneath it a slight concavity, that forms the anterior part of the temporal fossa, and gives origin to the Temporal muscle. The internal angular processes are less marked than the external, and articulate with the lachrymal bones. Between the internal angular processes is a rough uneven interval, the **nasal notch**, which articulates in the middle line with the nasal bone, and on either side with the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone. The notch is continuous below with a long pointed process, the **nasal spine**.

**Vertical Portion. Internal Surface** (Fig. 121). Along the middle line is a vertical groove, the edges of which unite below to form a ridge, the frontal crest; the groove lodges the superior longitudinal sinus, whilst its edges afford attachment to the falx cerebri. The crest terminates below at a slight opening, the foramen cecum, which is generally completed behind by the ethmoid. This foramen varies in size in different subjects, is usually partially or completely impervious, lodges a process of the falx cerebri, and, when open, transmits a vein from the lining membrane of the nose to the superior longitudinal sinus. On either side of the groove, the bone is deeply concave, presenting eminences and depressions for the convolutions of the brain, and numerous small furrows.
for lodging the ramifications of the anterior meningeal arteries. Several small, irregular fossae are also seen on either side of the groove, for the reception of the Paechionian bodies.

**Fig. 121.—Frontal Bone. Inner Surface.**

**Horizontal Portion. External Face.** This portion of the bone consists of two thin plates, which form the vault of the orbits, separated from one another by the ethmoidal notch. Each orbital vault consists of a smooth, concave, triangular plate of bone, marked at its anterior and external part (immediately beneath the external angular process) by a shallow depression, the lachrymal fossa, for lodging the lachrymal gland; and at its anterior and internal part, by a depression (sometimes a small tubercle) for the attachment of the fibrous pulley of the Superior oblique muscle. The ethmoidal notch separates the two orbital plates; it is quadrilateral; and filled up, when the bones are united, by the cribiform plate of the ethmoid. The margins of this notch present several half-cells, which, when united with corresponding half-cells on the upper surface of the ethmoid, complete the ethmoidal cells; two grooves are also seen crossing these edges transversely; they are converted into canals by articulation with the ethmoid, and are called the anterior and posterior ethmoidal canals; they open on the inner wall of the orbit. The anterior one transmits the nasal nerve and anterior ethmoidal vessels, the posterior one the posterior ethmoidal vessels. In front of the ethmoidal notch is the nasal spine, a sharp-pointed eminence, which projects downwards and forwards, and articulates in front with the crest of the nasal bones; behind, it is marked by two grooves, separated by a vertical ridge; the ridge articulates with the perpendicular lamellae of the ethmoid, the grooves form part of the roof of the nasal fossae. On either side of the base of the nasal spine are the openings of the frontal sinuses. These are two
irregular cavities, which extend upwards and outwards, a variable distance, between the two tables of the skull, and are separated from one another by a thin bony septum. They give rise to the prominences above the root of the nose, called the nasal eminences and superciliary ridges. In the child they are generally absent, and they become gradually developed as age advances. These cavities vary in size in different persons, are larger in men than in women, and are frequently of unequal size on the two sides, the left being commonly the larger. Occasionally, they are subdivided by incomplete bony laminae. They are lined by mucous membrane, and communicate with the nose by the infundibulum, and occasionally with each other by apertures in their septum.

The Internal Surface of the Horizontal Portion presents the convex upper surfaces of the orbital plates, separated from each other in the middle line by the ethmoidal notch, and marked by eminences and depressions for the convolutions of the anterior lobes of the brain.

Borders. The border of the vertical portion is thick, strongly serrated, bevelled at the expense of the internal table above, where it rests upon the parietal bones, and at the expense of the external table at each side, where it receives the lateral pressure of those bones; this border is continued below into a triangular rough surface, which articulates with the great wing of the sphenoid. The border of the horizontal portion is thin, serrated, and articulates with the lesser wing of the sphenoid.

Structure. The vertical portion and external angular processes are very thick, consisting of diploic tissue contained between two compact laminae. The horizontal portion is thin, translucent, and composed entirely of compact tissue; hence the facility with which instruments can penetrate the cranium through this part of the orbit.

Development (Fig. 122). The frontal bone is formed in membrane, being developed by two centres, one for each lateral half, which make their appearance, at an early period of foetal life, in the situation of the orbital arches. From this point ossification extends, in a radiating manner, upwards into the forehead, and backwards over the orbit. At birth it consists of two pieces, which afterwards become united, along the middle line, by a suture which runs from the vertex to the root of the nose. This suture usually becomes obliterated within a few years after birth; but it occasionally remains throughout life.

Articulations. With twelve bones: two parietal, sphenoid, ethmoid: two nasal, two superior maxillary, two lacrymal, and two malar.

Attachment of Muscles. The Corrugator supercillii, Orbicularis palpebrarum, and Temporal, on each side.

The Temporal Bones.

The Temporal Bones are situated at the side and at the base of the skull, and present for examination a squamous, mastoid, and petrous portion.

The Squamous Portion (squama, a scale) (Fig. 123), the anterior and upper part of the bone, is scale-like in form, and thin and translucent in texture. Its outer surface is smooth, convex, and grooved at its back part for the deep temporal arteries; it affords attachment to the Temporal muscle, and forms part of the temporal fossa. At its back part may be seen a curved ridge—part of the temporal ridge; it serves for the attachment of the temporal fascia, limits the
origin of the Temporal muscle, and marks the boundary between the squamous and mastoid portions of the bone. Projecting from the lower part of the squamous portion is a long arched outgrowth of bone, the zygomatic process. This process is at first directed outwards, its two surfaces looking upwards and downwards; it then appears as if twisted upon itself, and runs forwards, its surfaces now looking inwards and outwards. The superior border of the process is long, thin, and sharp, and serves for the attachment of the temporal fascia. The inferior, short, thick, and arched, has attached to it some fibres of the Masseter muscle. Its outer surface is convex and subcutaneous; its inner is concave, and also affords attachment to the Masseter. The extremity, broad and deeply serrated, articulates with the malar bone. The zygomatic process is connected to the temporal bone by three divisions, called its roots—an anterior, middle, and posterior. The anterior, which is short but broad and strong, runs transversely inwards into a rounded eminence, the eminentia articularis. This eminence forms the front boundary of the glenoid fossa, and in the recent state is covered with cartilage. The middle root forms the outer margin of the glenoid cavity; running obliquely inwards, it terminates at the commencement of a well-marked fissure, the Glaserian fissure; whilst the posterior root, which is strongly marked, runs from the upper border of the zygoma, in an arched direction, upwards and backwards, forming the posterior part of the temporal ridge. At the junction of the anterior root with the zygoma is a projection, called the tubercle, for the attachment of the external lateral ligament of the lower jaw; and between the anterior and middle roots is an oval depression, forming part of the glenoid fossa (socket), for the reception of the condyle of the lower jaw. This fossa is bounded, in front, by the eminentia articularis; behind, by the vaginal process; and externally, by the auditory process and middle root of the zygoma; and is divided into two parts by a narrow slit, the Glaserian fissure. The anterior part formed by the squamous portion of the bone is smooth, covered in the recent state with carti-
lage, and articulates with the condyle of the lower jaw. This part of the glenoid fossa is separated from the auditory process by a small tubercle, the post-glenoid process, the representative of a prominent tubercle which, in some of the mammals, descends behind the condyle of the jaw, and prevents it being displaced backwards during mastication (Humphry). The posterior part of the glenoid fossa is formed chiefly by the vaginal process of the petrous portion, and lodges part of the parotid gland. The Glaserian fissure, which leads into the tympanum, lodges the processes gracilis of the malleus, and transmits the Laxator tympani muscle and the tympanic branch of the internal maxillary artery. The chorda tympani nerve passes through a separate canal, parallel to the Glaserian fissure (canal of Huguer), on the outer side of the Eustachian tube, in the retiring angle between the squamous and petrous portions of the temporal bone.\footnote{This small fissure must not be confounded with the large canal which lies above the Eustachian tube and transmits the Tensor tympani muscle.}

The \textit{internal surface} of the squamous portion (Fig. 124) is concave, presents numerous eminences and depressions for the convolutions of the cerebrum, and two well-marked grooves for the branches of the middle meningeal artery.

\textit{Borders}. The superior border is thin, bevelled at the expense of the internal surface, so as to overlap the lower border of the parietal bone, forming the squamous suture. The anterior inferior border is thick, serrated, and bevelled, alternately at the expense of the inner and outer surfaces, for articulation with the great wing of the sphenoid.

The \textit{Mastoid Portion} (\textit{mastoid, a nipple or teat}) is situated at the posterior part of the bone; its outer surface is rough, and perforated by numerous foramina: one of these, of large size, situated at the posterior border of the bone, is termed the \textit{mastoid foramen}; it transmits a vein to the lateral sinus and a small artery. The position and size of this foramen are very variable. It is not always present; sometimes it is situated in the occipital bone, or in the suture between the temporal and the occipital. The mastoid portion is continued below into a conical projection, the mastoid process, the size and form of which vary somewhat. This process serves for the attachment of the Sterno-mastoid, Splenius capitis, and Trachelo-mastoid muscles. On the inner side of the mastoid process is a deep groove, the digastric fossa, for the attachment of the Digastric muscle; and, running parallel with it, but more internal, the occipital groove, which lodges the occipital artery. The internal surface of the mastoid portion presents a deep curved groove, which lodges part of the lateral sinus; and into it may be seen opening the mastoid foramen. A section of the mastoid process shows it to be hollowed out into a number of cellular spaces, communicating with each other, called the \textit{mastoid cells}; they open by a single or double orifice into the back of the tympanum; are lined by a prolongation of its lining membrane; and, probably, form some secondary part of the organ of hearing. The mastoid cells, like the other sinuses of the cranium, are not developed until after puberty; hence the prominence of this process in the adult.

\textit{Borders}. The superior border of the mastoid portion is broad and rough, its serrated edge sloping outwards, for articulation with the posterior inferior angle of the parietal bone. The posterior border, also uneven and serrated, articulates with the inferior border of the occipital bone between its lateral angle and jugular process.

The \textit{Petrus Portion} (\textit{petros, a stone}), so named from its extreme density and hardness, is a pyramidal process of bone, wedged in at the base of the skull between the sphenoid and occipital bones. Its direction from without is inwards, forwards, and a little downwards. It presents for examination a base, an apex, three surfaces, and three borders; and contains, in its interior, the essential parts of the organ of hearing. The base is applied against the internal surface of the squamous and mastoid portions, its upper half being concealed; but its lower half is exposed by the divergence of those two portions of the bone which
brings into view the oval expanded orifice of a canal leading into the tympanum, the meatus auditorius externus. This canal is situated between the mastoid process and the posterior and middle roots of the zygoma; its upper margin is smooth and rounded, but the greater part of its circumference is surrounded by a curved plate of bone, the auditory process, the free margin of which is thick and rough, for the attachment of the cartilage of the external ear.

Fig. 124.—Left Temporal Bone. Inner Surface.

The apex of the petrous portion, rough and uneven, is received into the angular interval between the posterior border of the great wing of the sphenoid and the basilar process of the occipital; it presents the anterior or internal orifice of the carotid canal, and forms the posterior and external boundary of the foramen lacerum medium.

The anterior surface of the petrous portion (Fig. 124), forms the posterior part of the middle fossa of the skull. This surface is continuous with the squamous portion, to which it is united by the suture, the temporal suture, the remains of which are distinct even at a late period of life; it presents six points for examination: 1. an eminence near the centre, which indicates the situation of the superior vertical semicircular canal: 2. on the outer side of this eminence a depression, indicating the position of the tympanum, the layer of the bone which separates the tympanum from the cranial cavity being extremely thin: 3. a shallow groove, sometimes double, leading outwards and backwards to an oblique opening, the hiatus Fallopii, for the passage of the petrosal branch of the Vidian nerve: 4. a smaller opening, occasionally seen external to the latter for the passage of the smaller petrosal nerve: 5. near the apex of the bone the termination of the carotid canal, the wall of which in this situation is deficient in front: 6. above this canal a shallow depression for the reception of the Cassetarian ganglion.

The posterior surface forms the front part of the posterior fossa of the skull, and is continuous with the inner surface of the mastoid portion of the bone.
It presents three points for examination: 1. about its centre, a large orifice, the meatus auditorius internus, whose size varies considerably; its margins are smooth and rounded; and it leads into a short canal, about four lines in length, which runs directly outwards, and is closed by a vertical plate, divided by a horizontal crest into two unequal portions; the canal transmits the facial and auditory nerves, and auditory artery, a branch of the basilar: 2. behind the meatus auditorius, a small slit, almost hidden by a thin plate of bone, leading to a canal, the aqueductus vestibuli, which transmits a small artery and vein, and lodges a process of the dura mater: 3. in the interval between these two openings, but above them, an angular depression which lodges a process of the dura mater, and transmits a small vein into the cancellous tissue of the bone.

The inferior or basilar surface (Fig. 125) is rough and irregular, and forms part of the base of the skull. Passing from the apex to the base this surface presents eleven points for examination: 1. a rough surface, quadrilateral in form, which serves partly for the attachment of the Levator palati and Tensor tympani muscles: 2. the large circular aperture of the carotid canal, which ascends at first vertically, and then making a bend, runs horizontally forwards and inwards; it transmits the internal carotid artery and the carotid plexus: 3. the aqueductus cochlea, a small triangular opening, lying on the inner side of the latter, close to the posterior border of the petrous portion; it transmits a vein from the cochlea, which joins the internal jugular: 4. behind these openings a deep depression, the jugular fossa, which varies in depth and size in different skulls; it lodges the internal jugular vein, and, with a similar depression on the margin of the occipital bone, forms the foramen lacerum posterius: 5. a small foramen for the passage of Jacobson’s nerve (the tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal); this foramen is seen in front of the bony ridge dividing the carotid canal.
from the jugular fossa; 6. a small foramen on the inner wall of the jugular fossa, for the entrance of the auricular branch of the pneumogastric (Arnold’s) nerve: 7. behind the jugular fossa, a smooth square-shaped facet, the jugular surface; it is covered with cartilage in the recent state, and articulates with the jugular process of the occipital bone; 8. the vaginal process, a very broad sheath-like plate of bone, which extends from the carotid canal to the mastoid process; it divides behind into two laminae, receiving between them the 9th point for examination, the styloid process; a long sharp spine, about an inch in length, continuous with the vaginal process, between the laminae of which it is received; it is directed downwards, forwards, and inwards, varies in size and shape, and sometimes consists of several pieces united by cartilage; it affords attachment to three muscles, the Stylo-pharyngeus, Stylo-glossus, and Stylo-hyoideus; and two ligaments, the stylo-hyoid and stylo-maxillary: 10. the stylo-mastoid foramen, a rather large orifice, placed between the styloid and mastoid processes; it is the termination of the aqueductus Fallopii, and transmits the facial nerve and stylo-mastoid artery: 11. the asterion fissure, situated between the vaginal and mastoid processes, for the exit of the auricular branch of the pneumogastric nerve.

**Bodies of the Petrous Portion.** The superior, the longest, is grooved for the superior petrosal sinus, and has attached to it the tentorium cerebelli; at its inner extremity is a semilunar notch, upon which the fifth nerve lies. The posterior border is intermediate in length between the superior and the anterior. Its inner half is marked by a groove, which, when completed by its articulation with the occipital, forms the channel for the inferior petrosal sinus. Its outer half presents a deep excavation—the jugular fossa—which, with a similar notch on the occipital, forms the foramen lacerum posterius. A projecting eminence of bone occasionally stands out from the centre of the notch, and divides the foramen into two parts. The anterior border is divided into two parts—an outer joined to the squamous portion by a suture, the remains of which are distinct; an inner, free, articulating with the spinous process of the sphenoid. At the angle of junction of the petrous and squamous portions are seen two canals, separated from one another by a thin plate of bone, the processus cochleariformis: they both lead into the tympanum, the upper one transmitting the Tensor tympani muscle, the lower one the Eustachian tube.

**Structure.** The squamous portion is like that of the other cranial bones, the mastoid portion cellular, and the petrous portion dense and hard.

**Development** (Fig. 126). The temporal bone is developed by four centres, exclusive of those for the internal ear and the ossicula, viz.: one for the squamous portion including the zygoma, one for the petrous and mastoid parts, one for the styloid, and one for the auditory process (tympanic bone). The first traces of the development of this bone appear in the squamous portion, about the time when osseous matter is deposited in the vertebrae; the auditory process succeeds next; it consists of a curved piece of bone, forming about three-fourths of a circle, the deficiency being above; it is grooved along its concave surface for the attachment of the membrana tympani, and
becomes united by its extremities to the squamous portion during the last months of intra-uterine life. The petrous and mastoid portions then become ossified, and lastly the styloid process, which remains separate a considerable period, and is occasionally never united to the rest of the bone. At birth, the temporal bone, excluding the styloid process, is formed of three pieces—the squamous and zygomatic, the petrous and mastoid, and the auditory. The auditory process joins with the squamous about the time of birth. The petrous and mastoid join with the squamous during the first year, and the styloid process becomes united between the second and third years. The subsequent changes in this bone are, that the auditory process extends outwards, so as to form the meatus auditorius; the glenoid fossa becomes deeper; and the mastoid part, which at an early period of life is quite flat, enlarges from the development of the cellular cavities in its interior.

**Articulations.** With five bones—occipital, parietal, sphenoid, inferior maxillary, and malar.

**Attachments of Muscles.** To the squamous portion, the Temporal; to the zygoma, the Masseter; to the mastoid portion, the Occipto-frontalis, Sterno-mastoid, Splenius capitis, Trachelo-mastoid, Digastricus, and Retrahens aurem; to the styloid process, the Stylo-pharyngeus, Stylo-hyoideus, and Stylo-glossus; and to the petrous portion, the Levator palati, Tensor tympani, and Stapedius.

**The Sphenoid Bone.**

The Sphenoid Bone (σφενος, a wedge) is situated at the anterior part of the base of the skull, articulating with all the other cranial bones, which it binds firmly and solidly together. In its form it somewhat resembles a bat, with its wings extended; and is divided into a central portion or body, two greater and two lesser wings extending outwards on each side of the body; and two processes, the pterygoid processes, which project from it below.

The **body** is of large size, cuboid in form, and hollowed out in its interior so as to form a mere shell of bone. It presents for examination **four surfaces**—a superior, an inferior, an anterior, and a posterior.

**Fig. 127.**—Sphenoid Bone. **Superior Surface.**

The **superior surface** (Fig. 127). In front is seen a prominent spine, the ethmoidal spine, for articulation with the ethmoid; behind this a smooth sur-
of the External rectus. One or two small foramina may occasionally be seen for the passage of branches of the deep temporal arteries; they are called the external orbital foramina. Circumference of the great wing (Fig. 127): commencing from behind, from the body of the sphenoid to the spine, the outer half of this margin is serrated, for articulation with the petrous portion of the temporal bone; whilst the inner half forms the anterior boundary of the foramen lacerum medium, and presents the posterior aperture of the Vidian canal. In front of the spine the circumference of the great wing presents a serrated edge, bevelled at the expense of the inner table below, and of the external above, which articulates with the squamous portion of the temporal bone. At the tip of the great wing a triangular portion is seen, bevelled at the expense of the internal surface, for articulation with the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone. Internal to this is a broad serrated surface, for articulation with the frontal bone: this surface is continuous internally with the sharp inner edge of the orbital plate, which assists in the formation of the sphenoidal fissure.

The Lesser Wings (processes of Ingrassias) (Fig. 127) are two thin triangular plates of bone, which arise from the upper and lateral parts of the body of the sphenoid; and, projecting transversely outwards, terminate in a sharp point. The superior surface of each is smooth, flat, broader internally than externally, and supports the anterior lobe of the brain. The inferior surface forms the back part of the roof of the orbit, and the upper boundary of the sphenoidal fissure or foramen lacerum anterius. This fissure is of a triangular form, and leads from the cavity of the cranium into the orbit; it is bounded internally by the body of the sphenoid—above, by the lesser wing; below, by the internal margin of the orbital surface of the great wing—and is converted into a foramen by the articulation of this bone with the frontal. It transmits the third, the fourth, the ophthalmic division of the fifth and sixth nerves, and the ophthalmic vein. The anterior border of the lesser wing is serrated for articulation with the frontal bone; the posterior, smooth and rounded, is received into the fissure of Sylvius of the brain. The inner extremity of this border forms the anterior clinoid process. The lesser wing is connected to the side of the body by two roots, the upper thin and flat, the lower thicker, obliquely directed, and presenting on its outer side, near its junction with the body, a small tubercle, for the attachment of the common tendon of three of the muscles of the eye. Between the two roots is the optic foramen, for the transmission of the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery.

The Pterygoid processes (πτερυγίος, a wing; ἐίδος, likeness) (Fig. 129), one on each side, descend perpendicularly from the point where the body and great wing unite. Each process consists of an external and an internal plate, separated behind by an intervening notch,—the pterygoid fossa; but joined partially in front. The External pterygoid plate is broad and thin, turned a little outwards, and forms part of the inner wall of the zygomatic fossa. It gives attachment, by its outer surface, to the External pterygoid; its inner surface forms part of the pterygoid fossa, and gives attachment to the Internal pterygoid. The Internal pterygoid plate is much narrower and longer, curving outwards, at its extremity, into a hook-like process of bone, the hamular process, around which
TEMPORAL BONE.

It presents three points for examination: 1. about its centre, a large orifice, the meatus auditorius internus, whose size varies considerably; its margins are smooth and rounded; and it leads into a short canal, about four lines in length, which runs directly outwards, and is closed by a vertical plate, divided by a

Fig. 125.—Petrus Portion. Inferior Surface.

horizontal crest into two unequal portions; the canal transmits the facial and auditory nerves, and auditory artery, a branch of the basilar: 2. behind the meatus auditorius, a small slit, almost hidden by a thin plate of bone, leading to a canal, the aueeductus vestibuli, which transmits a small artery and vein, and lodges a process of the dura mater; 3. in the interval between these two openings, but above them, an angular depression which lodges a process of the dura mater, and transmits a small vein into the cancellous tissue of the bone.

The inferior or basilar surface (Fig. 125) is rough and irregular, and forms part of the base of the skull. Passing from the apex to the base this surface presents eleven points for examination: 1. a rough surface, quadrilateral in form, which serves partly for the attachment of the Levator palati and Tensor tympani muscles; 2. the large circular aperture of the carotid canal, which ascends at first vertically, and then making a bend, runs horizontally forwards and inwards; it transmits the internal carotid artery and the carotid plexus; 3. the aueeductus cochleae, a small triangular opening, lying on the inner side of the latter, close to the posterior border of the petrous portion; it transmits a vein from the cochlea, which joins the internal jugular; 4. behind these openings a deep depression, the jugular fossa, which varies in depth and size in different skulls; it lodges the internal jugular vein, and, with a similar depression on the margin of the occipital bone, forms the foramen lacerum posterius; 5. a small foramen for the passage of Jacobson's nerve (the tympanic branch of the glosso-pharyngeal); this foramen is seen in front of the bony ridge dividing the carotid canal
from the jugular fossa: 6. a small foramen on the inner wall of the jugular fossa, for the entrance of the auricular branch of the pneumogastric (Arnold’s) nerve: 7. behind the jugular fossa, a smooth square-shaped facet, the jugular surface; it is covered with cartilage in the recent state, and articulates with the jugular process of the occipital bone: 8. the vaginal process, a very broad sheath-like plate of bone, which extends from the carotid canal to the mastoid process; it divides behind into two laminae, receiving between them the 9th point for examination, the styloid process; a long sharp spine, about an inch in length, continuous with the vaginal process, between the laminae of which it is received; it is directed downwards, forwards, and inwards, varies in size and shape, and sometimes consists of several pieces united by cartilage; it affords attachment to three muscles, the Stylo-pharyngeus, Stylo-glossus, and Stylo-hyoideus; and two ligaments, the stylo-hyoid and stylo-maxillary: 10. the stylo-mastoid foramen, a rather large orifice, placed between the styloid and mastoid processes; it is the termination of the aqueductus Fallopian, and transmits the facial nerve and stylo-mastoid artery: 11. the articular fissure, situated between the vaginal and mastoid processes, for the exit of the auricular branch of the pneumogastric nerve.

**Bodies of the Petrous Portion.** The superior, the longest, is grooved for the superior petrosal sinus, and has attached to it the tentorium cerebelli; at its inner extremity is a semilunar notch, upon which the fifth nerve lies. The posterior border is intermediate in length between the superior and the anterior. Its inner half is marked by a groove, which, when completed by its articulation with the occipital, forms the channel for the inferior petrosal sinus. Its outer half presents a deep excavation—the jugular fossa—which, with a similar notch on the occipital, forms the foramen lacerum posterius. A projecting eminence of bone occasionally stands out from the centre of the notch, and divides the foramen into two parts. The anterior border is divided into two parts—an outer joined to the squamous portion by a suture, the remains of which are distinct; an inner, free, articulating with the spinous process of the sphenoid. At the angle of junction of the petrous and squamous portions are seen two canals, separated from one another by a thin plate of bone, the processus cochleariformis: they both lead into the tymanum, the upper one transmitting the Tensor tympani muscle, the lower one the Eustachian tube.

**Structure.** The squamous portion is like that of the other cranial bones, the mastoid portion cellular, and the petrous portion dense and hard.

**Development** (Fig. 126). The temporal bone is developed by four centres, exclusive of those for the internal ear and the ossicula, viz.: one for the squamous portion including the zygoma, one for the petrous and mastoid parts, one for the styloid, and one for the auditory process (typanic bone). The first traces of the development of this bone appear in the squamous portion, about the time when osseous matter is deposited in the vertebrae; the auditory process succeeds next; it consists of a curved piece of bone, forming about three-fourths of a circle, the deficiency being above; it is grooved along its concave surface for the attachment of the membrana tympani, and
becomes united by its extremities to the squamous portion during the last months of intra-uterine life. The petrous and mastoid portions then become ossified, and lastly the styloid process, which remains separate a considerable period, and is occasionally never united to the rest of the bone. At birth, the temporal bone, excluding the styloid process, is formed of three pieces—the squamous and zygomatic, the petrous and mastoid, and the auditory. The auditory process joins with the squamous about the time of birth. The petrous and mastoid join with the squamous during the first year, and the styloid process becomes united between the second and third years. The subsequent changes in this bone are, that the auditory process extends outwards, so as to form the meatus aditiorius; the glenoid fossa becomes deeper; and the mastoid part, which at an early period of life is quite flat, enlarges from the development of the cellular cavities in its interior.

Articulations. With five bones—occipital, parietal, sphenoid, inferior maxillary, and malar.

Attachments of Muscles. To the squamous portion, the Temporal; to the zygoma, the Masseter; to the mastoid portion, the Occipito-frontalis, Sigmoid, Splenius capitis, Trachelo-mastoid, Digastricus, and Retractens aurem; to the styloid process, the Stylo-pharyngeus, Stylo-hyoideus, and Stylo-glossus; and to the petrous portion, the Levator palati, Tensor tympani, and Stapedius.

The Sphenoid Bone.

The Sphenoid Bone (σφένος, a wedge) is situated at the anterior part of the base of the skull, articulating with all the other cranial bones, which it binds firmly and solidly together. In its form it somewhat resembles a bat, with its wings extended; and is divided into a central portion or body, two greater and two lesser wings extending outwards on each side of the body; and two processes, the pterygoid processes, which project from it below.

The Body is of large size, cuboid in form, and hollowed out in its interior so as to form a mere shell of bone. It presents for examination four surfaces—a superior, an inferior, an anterior, and a posterior.

Fig. 127.—Sphenoid Bone. Superior Surface.

The superior surface (Fig. 127). In front is seen a prominent spine, the ethmoidal spine, for articulation with the ethmoid; behind this a smooth sur-
face presenting, in the median line, a slight longitudinal eminence, with a depression on each side, for lodging the olfactory nerves. A narrow transverse groove, the optic groove, bounds the above-mentioned surface behind; it lodges the optic commissure, and terminates on either side in the optic foramen, for the passage of the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery. Behind the optic groove is a small eminence, olive-like in shape, the olivary process; and still more posteriorly, a deep depression, the pituitary fossa, or "sella Turcica," which lodges the pituitary body. This fossa is perforated by numerous foramina, for the transmission of nutrient vessels to the substance of the bone. It is bounded in front by two small eminences, one on either side, called the middle clinoid processes (sinus, a bed), and behind by a square-shaped plate of bone, terminating at each superior angle in a tubercle, the posterior clinoid processes, the size and form of which vary considerably in different individuals. These processes deepen the pituitary fossa; and serve for the attachment of prolongations from the tentorium cerebelli. The sides of the plate of bone supporting the posterior clinoid processes are notched for the passage of the sixth pair of nerves; and behind, this plate of bone presents a shallow depression, which slopes obliquely backwards, and is continuous with the basilar groove of the occipital bone; it supports the upper part of the pons Varolii. On either side of the body is a broad groove, curved something like the italic letter f; it lodges the internal carotid and the cavernous sinus, and is called the cavernous groove. The posterior surface, quadrilateral in form, articulates with the basilar process of the occipital bone. During childhood these bones are separated by a layer of cartilage: but in after-life (between the eighteenth and twenty-fifth years) this becomes ossified, ossification commencing above, and extending downwards; and the two bones then form one piece. The anterior surface (Fig. 128) presents, in the middle line,

Fig. 128.—Sphenoid Bone. Anterior Surface. ¹

a vertical lamella of bone which articulates in front with the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid, forming part of the septum of the nose. On either side of it are the irregular openings leading into the sphenoid cells or sinuses. These are two large irregular cavities, hollowed out of the interior of the body of the sphenoid bone, and separated from one another by a more or less complete perpendicular bony septum. Their form and size vary considerably; they are

¹ In this figure, both the anterior and inferior surfaces of the body of the sphenoid bone are shown, the bone being held with the pterygoid processes almost horizontal.
Sphenoid Bone. 167

seldom symmetrical, and are often partially subdivided by irregular osseous laminae. Occasionally, they extend into the basilar process of the occipital nearly as far as the foramen magnum. The septum is seldom quite vertical, being commonly bent to one or the other side. These sinuses do not exist in children, but they increase in size as age advances. They are partially closed, in front and below, by two thin curved plates of bone, the sphenoidal turbinate bones, leaving a round opening at their upper parts, by which they communicate with the upper and back part of the nose, and occasionally with the posterior ethmoidal cells or sinuses. The lateral margins of this surface present a serrated edge, which articulates with the os planum of the ethmoid, completing the posterior ethmoidal cells; the lower margin, also rough and serrated, articulates with the orbital process of the palate bone; and the upper margin with the orbital plate of the frontal bone. The inferior surface presents, in the middle line, a triangular spine, the rostrum, which is continuous with the vertical plate on the anterior surface, and is received into a deep fissure between the alae of the vomer. On each side may be seen a projecting lamina of bone, which runs horizontally inwards from near the base of the pterygoid process: these plates, termed the vaginal processes, articulate with the edges of the vomer. Close to the root of the pterygoid process is a groove, formed into a complete canal when articulated with the sphenoidal process of the palate bone; it is called the pterygo-palatine canal, and transmits the pterygo-palatine vessels and pharyngeal nerve.

The Greater Wings are two strong processes of bone, which arise from the sides of the body, and are curved in a direction upwards, outwards, and backwards; being prolonged behind into a sharp-pointed extremity, the spinous process of the sphenoid. Each wing presents three surfaces and a circumference. The superior or cerebral surface (Fig. 127) forms part of the middle fossa of the skull; it is deeply concave, and presents eminences and depressions for the convolutions of the brain. At its anterior and internal part is seen a circular aperture, the foramen rotundum, for the transmission of the second division of the fifth nerve. Behind and external to this is a large oval foramen, the foramen ovale, for the transmission of the third division of the fifth nerve, the small meningeal artery, and the small petrosal nerve. At the inner side of the foramen ovale, a small aperture may occasionally be seen opposite the root of the pterygoid process; it is the foramen Vesali, transmitting a small vein. Lastly, in the apex of the spine of the sphenoid is a short canal, sometimes double, the foramen spinosum; it transmits the middle meningeal artery. The external surface (Fig. 128) is convex, and divided by a transverse ridge, the pterygoid ridge, into two portions. The superior or larger, convex from above downwards, concave from before backwards, enters into the formation of the temporal fossa, and gives attachment to part of the Temporal muscle. The inferior portion, smaller in size and concave, enters into the formation of the zygomatic fossa, and affords attachment to the External pterygoid muscle. It presents, at its posterior part, a sharp-pointed eminence of bone, the spinous process, to which are connected the internal lateral ligament of the lower jaw, and the Laxator tympani muscle. The pterygoid ridge, dividing the temporal and zygomatic portions, gives attachment to part of the External pterygoid muscle. At its inner and anterior extremity is a triangular spine of bone, which serves to increase the extent of origin of this muscle. The anterior or orbital surface, smooth, and quadrilateral in form, assists in forming the outer wall of the orbit. It is bounded above by a serrated edge, for articulation with the frontal bone; below, by a rounded border, which enters into the formation of the sphenomaxillary fissure; internally, it enters into the formation of the sphenoidal fissure; while externally it presents a serrated margin, for articulation with the malar bone. At the upper part of the inner border is a notch for the transmission of a branch of the ophthalmic artery; and at its lower part a small pointed spine of bone, which serves for the attachment of part of the lower head.
of the External rectus. One or two small foramina may occasionally be seen for the passage of branches of the deep temporal arteries; they are called the external orbital foramina. Circumference of the great wing (Fig. 127): commencing from behind, from the body of the sphenoid to the spine, the outer half of this margin is serrated, for articulation with the petrous portion of the temporal bone; whilst the inner half forms the anterior boundary of the foramen lacerum medium, and presents the posterior aperture of the Vidian canal. In front of the spine the circumference of the great wing presents a serrated edge, bevelled at the expense of the inner table below, and of the external above, which articulates with the squamous portion of the temporal bone. At the tip of the great wing a triangular portion is seen, bevelled at the expense of the internal surface, for articulation with the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone. Internal to this is a broad serrated surface, for articulation with the frontal bone; this surface is continuous internally with the sharp inner edge of the orbital plate, which assists in the formation of the sphenoidal fissure.

The Lesser Wings (processes of Ingrassias) (Fig. 127) are two thin triangular plates of bone, which arise from the upper and lateral parts of the body of the sphenoid; and, projecting transversely outwards, terminate in a sharp point. The superior surface of each is smooth, flat, broader internally than externally, and supports the anterior lobe of the brain. The inferior surface forms the back part of the roof of the orbit, and the upper boundary of the sphenoidal fissure or foramen lacerum anterius. This fissure is of a triangular form, and leads from the cavity of the cranium into the orbit; it is bounded internally by the body of the sphenoid—above, by the lesser wing; below, by the internal margin of the orbital surface of the great wing—and is converted into a foramen by the articulation of this bone with the frontal. It transmits the third, the fourth, the ophthalmic division of the fifth and sixth nerves, and the ophthalmic vein. The anterior border of the lesser wing is serrated for articulation with the frontal bone; the posterior, smooth and rounded, is received into the fissure of Sylvius of the brain. The inner extremity of this border forms the anterior clinoid process. The lesser wing is connected to the side of the body by two roots, the upper thin and flat, the lower thicker, obliquely directed, and presenting on its outer side, near its junction with the body, a small tubercle, for the attachment of the common tendon of three of the muscles of the eye.

Between the two roots is the optic foramen, for the transmission of the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery.

The Pterygoid processes (πτεργός, a wing; ἰθές, likeness) (Fig. 129), one on each side, descend perpendicularly from the point where the body and great wing unite. Each process consists of an external and an internal plate, separated behind by an intervening notch,—the pterygoid fossa; but joined partially in front. The External pterygoid plate is broad and thin, turned a little outwards, and forms part of the inner wall of the zygomatic fossa. It gives attachment, by its outer surface, to the External pterygoid; its inner surface forms part of the pterygoid fossa, and gives attachment to the Internal pterygoid. The Internal pterygoid plate is much narrower and longer, curving outwards, at its extremity, into a hook-like process of bone, the hamular process, around which
SPHENOID BONE.

169
turns the tendon of the Tensor palati muscle. At the base of this plate is a small, oval, shallow depression, the sphenoid fossa from which arises the Tensor palati, and above which is seen the posterior orifice of the Vidian canal. The outer surface of this plate forms part of the pterygoid fossa, the inner surface forming the outer boundary of the posterior aperture of the nares. The Superior constrictor of the pharynx is attached to its posterior edge. The two pterygoid plates are separated below by an angular interval, in which the pterygoid process, or tuberosity, of the palate bone is received. The anterior surface of the pterygoid process is very broad at its base, and forms the posterior wall of the sphenomaxillary fossa. It supports Meckel’s ganglion. It presents, above, the anterior orifice of the Vidian canal; and below a rough margin, which articulates with the perpendicular plate of the palate bone.

The Sphenoidal Spongy or Turbinated Bones are two thin curved plates of bone, which exist as separate pieces until puberty, and occasionally are not joined to the sphenoid in the adult. They are situated at the anterior and inferior part of the body of the sphenoid, an aperture of variable size being left in their anterior wall, through which the sphenoidal sinuses open into the nasal fossae. They are irregular in form, and taper to a point behind, being broader and thinner in front. The inner surface, which looks towards the cavity of the sinus, is concave; their outer surface convex. Each bone articulates in front with the ethmoid, externally with the palate; behind, its point is placed above the vomer, and is received between the root of the pterygoid process on the outer side, and the rostrum of the sphenoid on the inner.

Development. The sphenoid bone is developed by ten centres, six for the posterior sphenoidal division, and four for the anterior sphenoid. The six centres for the posterior sphenoid are—one for each greater wing and external pterygoid plate; one for each internal pterygoid plate; two for the posterior part of the body. The four for the anterior sphenoid are, one for each lesser wing and anterior part of the body, and one for each sphenoidal turbinate bone. Ossification takes place in these pieces in the following order: the greater wing and external pterygoid plate are first formed, ossific granules being deposited close to the foramen rotundum on each side, at about the second month of foetal life; from thence ossification spreads outwards into the great wing, and downwards into the external pterygoid plate. Each internal pterygoid plate is then formed, and becomes united to the external about the middle of foetal life. The two centres for the posterior part of the body appear as separate nuclei, side by side, beneath the sella Turcica; they join, about the middle of foetal life, into a single piece, which remains ununited to the rest of the bone until after birth. Each lesser wing is formed by a separate centre, which appears on the outer side of the optic foramen, at about the third month; they become united and join with the body at about the eighth month of foetal life. At about the end of the third year, ossification has made its appearance in the sphenoidal spongy bones.

At birth the sphenoid consists of three pieces: viz. the greater wing and pterygoid processes on each side; the lesser wings and body united. At the first year after birth, the greater wings and body are united. From the tenth to the twelfth year the spongy bones are partially united to the sphenoid, their junction being complete by the twentieth year. Lastly, the sphenoid joins the occipital.

Articulations. The sphenoid articulates with all the bones of the cranium, and five of the face; the two malar, two palate, and vomer: the exact extent of articulation with each bone is shown in the accompanying figures.

The Ethmoid Bone.

The Ethmoid (εθμον, a sieve) is an exceedingly light spongy bone, of a cubical form, situated at the anterior part of the base of the cranium, between the two orbits, at the root of the nose, and contributing to form each of these cavities. It consists of three parts: a horizontal plate which forms part of the base of the cranium; a perpendicular plate, which forms part of the septum nasi; and two lateral masses of cells.

The Horizontal or Cribriform Plate (Fig. 131) forms part of the anterior fossa of the base of the skull, and is received into the ethmoid notch of the frontal bone between the two orbital plates. Projecting upwards from the middle line of this plate, is a thick, smooth, triangular process of bone, the crista galli, so called from its resemblance to a cock's comb. Its base joins the cribiform plate. Its posterior border, long, thin, and slightly curved, serves for the attachment of the falx cerebri. Its anterior border, short and thick, articulates with the frontal bone, and presents two small projecting alae, which are received into corresponding depressions in the frontal, completing the foramen cæcum behind. Its sides are smooth, and sometimes bulging, in which case it is found to inclose a small sinus. On each side of the crista galli, the cribiform plate is narrow, and deeply grooved, to support the bulb of the olfactory nerve, and perforated by foramina for the passage of its filaments. These foramina are arranged in three rows; the innermost, which are the largest and least numerous, are lost in grooves on the upper part of the septum; the foramina of the outer row are continued on to the surface of the upper spongy bone. The foramina of the middle row are the smallest; they perforate the bone, and transmit nerves to the roof of the nose.
At the front part of the cribriform plate, on each side of the crista galli, is a small fissure which transmits the nasal branch of the ophthalmic nerve; and at its posterior part a triangular notch, which receives the ethmoidal spine of the sphenoid.

The Perpendicular Plate (Fig. 132) is a thin flattened lamella of bone, which descends from the under surface of the cribriform plate, and assists in forming the septum of the nose. It is much thinner in the middle than at the circumference, and is generally deflected a little to one side. Its anterior border articulates with the frontal spine and crest of the nasal bones. Its posterior, divided into two parts, is connected by its upper half with the rostrum of the sphenoid —by its lower half with the vomer. The inferior border serves for the attachment of the triangular cartilage of the nose. On each side of the perpendicular plate numerous grooves and canals are seen, leading from foramina on the cribiform plate; they lodge filaments of the olfactory nerves.

The Lateral Masses of the ethmoid consist of a number of thin-walled cellular cavities, the ethmoidal cells, interposed between two vertical plates of bone, the outer one of which forms part of the orbit, and the inner one part of the nasal fossa of the corresponding side. In the disarticulated bone many of these cells appear to be broken; but when the bones are articulated, they are closed in at every part. The upper surface of each lateral mass presents a number of apparently half-broken cellular spaces; these are closed in when articulated by the edges of the ethmoidal notch of the frontal bone. Crossing this surface are two grooves on each side, converted into canals by articulation with the frontal; they are the anterior and posterior ethmoidal foramina, and open on the inner wall of the orbit. The posterior surface also presents large irregular cellular cavities, which are closed in by articulation with the sphenoidal turbinated bones, and orbital process of the palate. The cells at the anterior surface are completed by the lachrymal bone and nasal process of the superior maxillary, and those below also by the superior maxillary. The outer surface of each lateral mass is formed of a thin smooth square plate of bone, called the os planum; it forms part of the inner wall of the orbit, and articulates above with the orbital plane of the frontal; below, with the superior maxillary and orbital process of the palate; in front, with the lachrymal; and behind, with the sphenoid.

From the inferior part of each lateral mass, immediately beneath the os planum, there projects downwards and backwards an irregular lamina of bone, called the unciniform process, from its hook-like form; it serves to close in the upper part of the orifice of the antrum, and articulates with the ethmoidal process of the inferior turbinated bone. It is often broken in disarticulating the bones.

The inner surface of each lateral mass forms part of the outer wall of the nasal fossa of the corresponding side. It is formed of a thin lamella of bone, which descends from the under surface of the cribriform plate, and terminates below in a free convoluted margin, the middle turbinated bone. The whole of this surface is rough, and marked above by numerous grooves, which run nearly vertically downwards from the cribriform plate: they lodge branches of the olfactory nerve, which are distributed on the mucous membrane covering the bone. The back part of this surface is subdivided by a narrow oblique fissure, the superior meatus of the nose, bounded above by a thin curved plate of bone—the superior turbinated bone. By means of an orifice at the upper part of this fissure, the posterior ethmoidal cells open into the nose. Below, and in
front of the superior meatus, is seen the convex surface of the middle turbinate bone. It extends along the whole length of the inner surface of each lateral mass; its lower margin is free and thick, and its concavity, directed outwards, assists in forming the middle meatus. It is by a large orifice at the upper and front part of the middle meatus, that the anterior ethmoidal cells, and through them the frontal sinuses, communicate with the nose, by means of a funnel-shaped canal, the infundibulum. The cellular cavities of each lateral mass, thus walled in by the os planum on the outer side, and by the other bones already mentioned, are divided by a thin transverse bony partition into two sets, which do not communicate with each other; they are termed the anterior and posterior ethmoidal cells, or sinuses. The former, more numerous, communicate with the frontal sinuses above, and the middle meatus below, by means of a long flexible cellular canal, the infundibulum; the posterior, less numerous, open into the superior meatus, and communicate (occasionally) with the sphenoidal sinuses.

**Development.** By three centres: one for the perpendicular lamella, and one for each lateral mass.

The lateral masses are first developed, ossific granules making their first appearance in the os planum between the fourth and fifth months of foetal life, and afterwards in the spongy bones. At birth, the bone consists of the two lateral masses, which are small and ill-developed; but when the perpendicular and horizontal plates begin to ossify, as they do about the first year after birth, the lateral masses become joined to the cribriform plate. The formation and increase in the ethmoidal cells, which complete the bone, take place about the fifth or sixth year.

**Articulations.** With fifteen bones: the sphenoid, two sphenoidal turbinated, the frontal, and eleven of the face—the two nasal, two superior maxillary, two lacrimal, two palate, two inferior turbinated, and the vomer.

**Development of the Cranium.**

The development of the cranium commences at a very early period, on account of the importance of the organ it is intended to protect. In its most rudimentary state, it consists of a thin membranous capsule, inclosing the cerebrum, and accurately moulded upon its surface. This capsule is placed external to the dura mater, and in close contact with it; its walls are continuous with the canal for the spinal cord, and the chorda dorsalis, or primitive part of the vertebral column, is continued forwards, from the spine, along the base, to its fore part, where it terminates in a tapering point. The next step in the process of development is the formation of cartilage. This is deposited in the base of the skull, in two symmetrical segments, one on either side of the median line; these subsequently coalesce, so as to inclose the chorda dorsalis—the chief part of the cerebral capsule still retaining its membranous form. Ossification first takes place in the roof, and is preceded by the deposition of a membranous blastema upon the surface of the cerebral capsule, in which the ossifying process extends; the primitive membranous capsule becoming the internal periosteum, and being ultimately blended with the dura mater. Although the bones of the vertex of the skull appear before those at the base, and make considerable progress in their growth: at birth ossification is more advanced in the base, this portion of the skull forming a solid immovable groundwork.

**The Fontanelles (Figs. 134, 135).**

Before birth, the bones at the vertex and side of the skull are separated from each other by membranous intervals, in which bone is deficient. These intervals, at certain parts, are of considerable size, and are termed the fontanelles, so called from the pulsations of the brain, which are perceptible at the anterior fontanelle, and were likened to the rising of water in a fountain. The fontanelles are four in number, and correspond to the junction of the four angles of the parietal with the contiguous bones. The anterior fontanelle is the largest, and corresponds to the junction of the sagittal and coronal sutures; the posterior fontanelle, of smaller size, is situated at the junction of the sagittal and lambdoid sutures; the two remaining ones are situated at the inferior angles of the parietal bone. The latter are closed soon after birth; the two at the superior angles remain open longer: the posterior being closed in a few months after birth; the anterior remaining open until the first or second year. These spaces are gradually filled in by

---

1 These are not usually enumerated as separate bones of the skeleton.
CONGENITAL FISSURES AND GAPS.

an extension of the ossifying process, or by the development of a Wormian bone. Sometimes the anterior fontanelle remains open beyond two years, and is occasionally persistent throughout life.

Fig. 134.—Skull at birth, showing the Anterior and Posterior Fontanelles.

Fig. 135.—The Lateral Fontanelles.

SUPERNUMERARY OR WORMIAN\(^1\) BONES.

When ossification of any of the tabular bones of the skull proves abortive, the membranous interval which would be left is usually filled in by a supernumerary piece of bone. This is developed from a separate centre, and gradually extends until it fills the vacant space. These supernumerary pieces are called Wormian bones; they are called also, from their usual form, ossea triquetra; but they present much variation in situation, number, and size.

They occasionally occupy the situation of the fontanelles. Bertin, Craveilhier, and Cuvier have each noticed the presence of one in the anterior fontanelle. There are two specimens in the Museum of St. George’s Hospital, which present Wormian bones in this situation. In one, the skull of a child, the supernumerary piece is of considerable size, and of a quadrangular form.

They are occasionally found in the posterior fontanelle, appearing to replace the superior angle of the occipital bone. Not uncommonly, there is one replacing the extremity of the great wing of the sphenoid, or the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone, in the fontanelle there situated.

They have been found in the different sutures on the vertex and side of the skull, and in some of those at the base. They are most frequent in the lambdoid suture. Mr. Ward mentions an instance “in which one-half of the lambdoid suture was formed by large Wormian bones disposed in a double row, and jetting deeply into each other;” and refers to similar specimens described by Dumontier and Bourgery.

A deficiency in the ossification of the flat bones would appear in some cases to be symmetrical on the two sides of the skull; for it is not uncommon to find these supernumerary bones corresponding in form, size, and situation on each side. Thus, in several instances, I have seen a pair of large Wormian bones symmetrically placed in the lambdoid suture; in another specimen, a pair in the coronal suture, with a supernumerary bone in the sphenoparietal suture of both sides.

The size of these supernumerary pieces varies, they being in some cases not larger than a pin’s head, and confined to the outer table; in other cases so large, that one pair of these bones may form the whole of the occipital bone above the superior curved lines, as described by Béclard and Ward. Their number is generally limited to two or three; but more than a hundred have been found in the skull of an adult hydrocephalic skeleton. In their development, structure, and mode of articulation, they resemble the other cranial bones.

CONGENITAL FISSURES AND GAPS.

Dr. Humphry has called attention to the not unfrequent existence of congenital fissures in the cranial bones, the result of incomplete ossification. These fissures have been noticed in the frontal, parietal, and squamous portion of the temporal bones: they extend from the margin towards the middle of the bone, and are of great interest in a medico-legal point of view, as they are liable to be mistaken for fractures. An arrest of the ossifying process may also give rise to the deficiencies or gaps occasionally found in the cranial bones. Such deficiencies are said to occur most frequently when ossification is imperfect, and to be situated near the natural apertures for vessels.

Dr. Humphry describes such deficiencies to exist in a calvarium, in the Cambridge Museum.

\(^1\) Wormius, a physician in Copenhagen, is said to have given the first detailed description of these bones.
where a gap sufficiently large to admit the end of the finger is seen on either side of the sagittal suture, in the place of the parietal foramen. There is a specimen precisely similar to this in the Museum of St. George's Hospital; and another, in which a small circular gap exists in the parietal bone of a young child, just above the parietal eminence. Similar deficiencies are not unfrequently met with in hydrocephalic skulls; being most frequent, according to Dr. Humphry, in the frontal bones; and, in the parietal bones, on either side of the sagittal suture.

**Bones of the Face.**

The Facial Bones are fourteen in number, viz., the Two Nasal, Two Palate,  
Two Superior Maxillary, Two Inferior Turbinated,  
Two Lachrymal, Vomer,  
Two Malar, Inferior Maxillary.

**Nasal Bones.**

The Nasal are two small oblong bones, varying in size and form in different individuals; they are placed side by side at the middle and upper part of the face, forming, by their junction, "the bridge" of the nose. Each bone presents for examination two surfaces, and four borders. The outer surface is concave from above downwards, convex from side to side; it is covered by the Pyramidalis and Compressor nasi muscles, marked by numerous small arterial furrows, and perforated about its centre by a foramen, sometimes double, for the transmission of a small vein.

Fig. 136.—Right Nasal Bone.  
Fig. 137.—Left Nasal Bone.

Sometimes this foramen is absent on one or both sides, and occasionally the foramen œcum opens on this surface. The inner surface is concave from side to side, convex from above downwards; in which direction it is traversed by a longitudinal groove (sometimes a canal), for the passage of a branch of the nasal nerve. The superior border is narrow, thick, and serrated for articulation with the nasal notch of the frontal bone. The inferior border is broad, thin, sharp, directed obliquely downwards, outwards, and backwards, and serves for the attachment of the lateral cartilage of the nose. This border presents about its middle a notch, through which passes the branch of the nasal nerve above referred to; and is prolonged at its inner extremity into a sharp spine, which, when articulated with the opposite bone, forms the nasal angle. The external border is serrated, bevelled at the expense of the internal surface above, and of the external below, to articulate with the nasal process of the superior maxillary. The internal border, thicker above than below, articulates with its fellow of the opposite side, and is prolonged behind into a vertical crest, which forms part of the septum of the nose: this crest articulates with the nasal spine of the frontal above, and the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid below.

**Development.** By one centre for each bone, which appears about the same period as in the vertebræ.

**Articulations.** With four bones: two of the cranium, the frontal and ethmoid, and two of the face, the opposite nasal and the superior maxillary.

No muscles are directly attached to this bone.
Superior Maxillary Bones.

The Superior Maxillary is one of the most important bones of the face in a surgical point of view, on account of the number of diseases to which some of its parts are liable. Its minute examination becomes, therefore, a matter of considerable interest. It is the largest bone of the face, excepting the lower jaw; and forms, by its union with its fellow of the opposite side, the whole of the upper jaw. Each bone assists in the formation of three cavities, the roof of the mouth, the floor and outer wall of the nose, and the floor of the orbit; and also enters into the formation of two fosseae, the zygomatic and sphenomaxillary; and two fissures, the sphenomaxillary and pterygomaxillary.

The bone presents for examination a body and four processes, malar, nasal, alveolar, and palatine.

The body is somewhat cuboid, and is hollowed out in its interior to form a large cavity, the antrum of Highmore. Its surfaces are four—an external or facial, a posterior or zygomatic, a superior or orbital, and an internal.

The external or facial surface (Fig. 138) is directed forwards and outwards. In the median line of the bone, just above the incisor teeth, is a depression, the incisive or myrtiform fossa, which gives origin to the Depressor alae nasi. Above and a little external to it, the Compressor nasi arises. More external, is another

---

Fig. 138.—Left Superior Maxillary Bone. Outer Surface.

---

depression, the canine fossa, larger and deeper than the incisive fossa, from which it is separated by a vertical ridge, the canine eminence, corresponding to the socket of the canine tooth. The canine fossa gives origin to the Levator anguli oris. Above the canine fossa is the infra-orbital foramen, the termination of the infra-orbital canal; it transmits the infra-orbital nerve and artery. Above the infra-orbital foramen is the margin of the orbit, which affords partial attachment to the Levator labii superioris proprius.

The posterior or zygomatic surface is convex, directed backwards and outwards, and forms part of the zygomatic fossa. It presents about its centre several
apertures leading to canals in the substance of the bone; they are termed the posterior dental canals, and transmit the posterior dental vessels and nerves. At the lower part of this surface is a rounded eminence, the maxillary tuberosity, especially prominent after the growth of the wisdom-tooth, rough on its inner side for articulation with the tuberosity of the palate-bone. Immediately above the rough surface is a groove, which, running obliquely down on the inner surface of the bone, is converted into a canal by articulation with the palate bone, forming the posterior palatine canal.

The superior or orbital surface is thin, smooth, triangular, and forms part of the floor of the orbit. It is bounded internally by an irregular margin which articulates, in front, with the lachrymal; in the middle, with the os planum of the ethmoid; behind, with the orbital process of the palate bone; bounded externally by a smooth rounded edge which enters into the formation of the sphen-maxillary fissure, and which sometimes articulates at its anterior extremity with the orbital plate of the sphenoid; bounded, in front, by part of the circumference of the orbit, which is continuous, on the inner side with the nasal, on the outer side with the malar process. Along the middle line of the orbital surface is a deep groove, the infra-orbital, for the passage of the infra-orbital nerve and artery. This groove commences at the middle of the outer border of the surface, and, passing forwards, terminates in a canal which subdivides into two branches; one of the canals, the infra-orbital, opens just below the margin of the orbit; the other, which is smaller, runs into the substance of the anterior wall of the antrum; it is called the anterior dental canal, transmitting the anterior dental vessels and nerves to the front teeth of the upper jaw. At the inner and fore part of the orbital surface, just external to the lachrymal canal, is a minute depression, which gives origin to the Inferior oblique muscle of the eye.

The internal surface (Fig. 139) is unequally divided into two parts by a hori-

Fig. 139.—Left Superior Maxillary Bone. Inner Surface.

Bones partially closing Orifices of Ant. Antrum
marked in outline

Inf. Turbinate

Inf. Palatine

Ant. Nasa'l Spine

Bristle passed through Ant. palat. Canal
cavity of the mouth. The superior division of this surface presents a large irregular opening leading into the antrum of Highmore. At the upper border of this aperture are numerous broken cellular cavities, which, in the articular skull, are closed in by the ethmoid and lachrymal bones. Below the aperture is a smooth concavity which forms part of the inferior meatus of the nose, traversed by a fissure, the maxillary fissure, which runs from the lower part of the orifice of the antrum obliquely downwards and forwards, and receives the maxillary process of the palate bone. Behind it is a rough surface which articulates with the perpendicular plate of the palate bone, traversed by a groove, which, commencing near the middle of the posterior border, runs obliquely downwards and forwards, and forms, when completed by its articulation with the palate bone, the posterior palatine canal. In front of the opening of the antrum is a deep groove, converted into a canal by the lachrymal and inferior turbinated bones, which is coated with mucous membrane, and called the lachrymal or nasal duct. More anteriorly is a well-marked rough ridge, the inferior turbinate crest, for articulation with the inferior turbinate bone. The concavity above this ridge forms part of the middle meatus of the nose; whilst that below it forms part of the inferior meatus. The inferior division of this surface is concave, rough and uneven, and perforated by numerous small foramina for the passage of nutrient vessels.

The Antrum of Highmore, or Maxillary Sinus, is a large triangular-shaped cavity, hollowed out of the body of the maxillary bone; its apex, directed outwards, is formed by the malar process; its base by the outer wall of the nose. Its walls are everywhere exceedingly thin, its root being formed by the orbital plate, its floor by the alveolar process, its anterior wall by the facial, and its posterior by the zygomatic surface. Its inner wall, or base, presents, in the disarticated bone, a large irregular aperture, which communicates with the nasal fossa. The margins of this aperture are thin and ragged, and the aperture itself is much contracted by its articulation with the ethmoid above, the inferior turbinate below, and the palate bone behind.\(^1\) In the articular skull, this cavity communicates with the middle meatus of the nose generally by two small apertures left between the above-mentioned bones. In the recent state, usually only one small opening exists, near the upper part of the cavity, sufficiently large to admit the end of a probe, the other being closed by the lining membrane of the sinus.

Crossing the cavity of the antrum, are often seen several projecting laminae of bone, similar to those seen in the sinuses of the cranium; and on its posterior wall are the posterior dental canals, transmitting the posterior dental vessels and nerves to the teeth. Projecting into the floor are several conical processes, corresponding to the roots of the first and second molar teeth;\(^2\) in some cases the floor is perforated by the teeth in this situation. It is from the extreme thinness of the walls of this cavity, that we are enabled to explain how a tumor growing from the antrum encroaches upon the adjacent parts, pushing up the floor of the orbit, and displacing the eyeball, projecting inwards into the nose, protruding forwards on to the cheek, and making its way backwards into the zygomatic fossa, and downwards into the mouth.

The Malar Process is a rough triangular eminence, situated at the angle of separation of the facial from the zygomatic surface. In front it is concave, forming part of the facial surface; behind, it is also concave, and forms part of the zygomatic fossa; above, it is rough and serrated for articulation with the malar bone; whilst below, a prominent ridge marks the division between the

1 In some cases, at any rate, the lachrymal bone encroaches slightly on the anterior superior portion of the opening, and assists in forming the inner wall of the antrum.

2 The number of teeth whose fangs are in relation with the floor of the antrum is variable. The antrum "may extend so as to be in relation to all the teeth of the true maxilla, from the canine to the dens sapiens."—See Mr. Salter on Abcess of the Antrum, in A System of Surgery. edited by T. Holmes, 2d edit. vol. iv. p. 356.
facial and zygomatic surfaces. A small part of the Masseter muscle arises from this process.

The **Nasal Process** is a thick triangular plate of bone, which projects upwards, inwards, and backwards, by the side of the nose, forming part of its lateral boundary. Its external surface is concave, smooth, perforated by numerous foramina, and gives attachment to the Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi, the Orbicularis palpebrarum, and Tendo oculli. Its internal surface forms part of the outer wall of the nose; it articulates above with the frontal, and presents a rough uneven surface, which articulates with the ethmoid bone, closing in the anterior ethmoidal cells; below this is a transverse ridge, the superior turbinate crest, for articulation with the middle turbinate bone of the ethmoid, bounded below by a smooth concavity which forms part of the middle meatus; below this again is the inferior turbinate crest (already described), for articulation with the inferior turbinate bone; and still more inferiorly, the concavity which forms part of the inferior meatus. The anterior border of the nasal process is thin, directed obliquely downwards and forwards, and presents a serrated edge for articulation with the nasal bone: its posterior border is thick, and hollowed into a groove for the lachrymal duct: of the two margins of this groove the inner one articulates with the lachrymal bone, the outer one forms part of the circumference of the orbit. Just where the latter joins the orbital surface is a small tubercle, the lachrymal tubercle; this serves as a guide to the surgeon in the performance of the operation for fistula lachrymalis. The lachrymal groove in the articulated skull is converted into a canal by the lachrymal bone, and lachrymal process of the inferior turbinate; it is directed downwards, and a little backwards and outwards, is about the diameter of a goose-quill, slightly narrower in the middle than at either extremity, and lodges the lachrymal duct.

The **Alveolar Process** is the thickest and most spongy part of the bone, broader behind than in front, and excavated into deep cavities for the reception of the teeth. These cavities are eight in number, and vary in size and depth according to the teeth they contain. That for the canine tooth is the deepest; those for the molars are the widest, and subdivided into minor cavities; those for the incisors are single, but deep and narrow. The Buccinator muscle arises from the outer surface of this process, as far forward as the first molar tooth.

The **Palate Process**, thick and strong, projects horizontally inwards from the inner surface of the bone. It is much thicker in front than behind, and forms a considerable part of the floor of the nostril, and the roof of the mouth. Its upper surface is concave from side to side, smooth, and forms part of the floor of the nose. In front is seen the upper orifice of the anterior palatine (incisor) canal, which leads into a fossa formed by the junction of the two superior maxillary bones, and situated immediately behind the incisor teeth. It transmits the anterior palatine vessels, the naso-palatine nerves passing through the inter-maxillary suture. The inferior surface, also concave, is rough and uneven, and forms part of the roof of the mouth. This surface is perforated by numerous foramina for the passage of nutritious vessels, channelled at the back part of its alveolar border by a longitudinal groove, sometimes a canal, for the transmission of the posterior palatine vessels, and a large nerve, and presents little depressions for the lodgment of the palatine glands. This surface presents anteriorly the lower orifice of the anterior palatine fossa. In some bones a delicate linear suture may be seen extending from the anterior palatine fossa to the interval between the lateral incisor and the canine tooth. This marks out the inter-maxillary, or incisive bone, which in some animals exists permanently as a separate piece. It includes the whole thickness of the alveolus, the corresponding part of the floor of the nose, and the nasal or anterior nasal spine, and contains the sockets of the incisor teeth. The outer border of the palate process is incorporated with the rest of the bone. The inner border is thicker in front than behind, and is raised above into a ridge, which, with the corresponding ridge in the opposite bone, forms a groove for the reception of the vomer. The anterior
margin is bounded by the thin concave border of the opening of the nose, prolonged forwards internally into a sharp process, forming, with a similar process of the opposite bone, the anterior nasal spine. The posterior border is serrated for articulation with the horizontal plate of the palate bone.

Development. This bone is formed at such an early period, and ossification proceeds in it with such rapidity, that it has been found impracticable hitherto to determine with accuracy its number of centres. It appears, however, probable that it has four centres of development, viz., one for the nasal and facial portions, one for the orbital and malar, one for the incisive, and one for the palatal portion including the entire palate except the incisive segment. The incisive portion is indicated in young bones by a fissure, which marks off a small segment of the palate including the two incisor teeth. In some animals, this remains permanently as a separate piece, constituting the intermaxillary bone; and in the human subject, where the jaw is malformed, as in cleft palate, this segment may be separated from the maxillary bone by a deep fissure extending backwards between the two into the palate. If the fissure be on both sides, both segments are quite isolated from the maxillary bones, and hang from the end of the vomer; they are not unfrequently much displaced, and the deformity is often accompanied by congenital fissure of the upper lip, either on one or both sides of the median line. The maxillary sinus appears at an earlier period than any of the other nasal sinuses, its development commencing about the fourth month of foetal life.

Articulations. With nine bones: two of the cranium—the frontal and ethmoid, and seven of the face, viz., the nasal, malar, lachrymal, inferior turbinate, palate, vomer, and its fellow of the opposite side. Sometimes it articulates with the orbital plate of the sphenoid.

Attachment of Muscles. Orbicularis palpebrarum, Obliquus inferior oculi, Levator labii superior alaeque nasi, Levator labii superioris proprius, Levator anguli oris, Compressor nasi, Depressor alae nasi, Masseter, Buccinator, External pterygoid, and Orbicularis oris.

The Lachrymal Bones.

The Lachrymal are the smallest and most fragile bones of the face. They are situated at the front part of the inner wall of the orbit, and resemble somewhat in form, thinness, and size, a finger-nail; hence they are termed the ossa unguis. Each bone presents, for examination, two surfaces and four borders. The external (Fig. 141) or orbital surface is divided by a vertical ridge into two parts. The portion of bone in front of this ridge presents a smooth, concave, longitudinal groove, the free margin of which unites with the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone, completing the lachrymal groove. The upper part of this groove lodges the lachrymal sac; the lower part assists in the for-
mation of the lachrymal canal, and lodges the nasal duct. The portion of bone behind the ridge is smooth, slightly concave, and forms part of the inner wall of the orbit. The ridge with a part of the orbital surface immediately behind it, affords attachment to the Tensor tarsi; the ridge terminates below in a small hook-like process, which articulates with the lachrymal tubercle of the superior maxillary bone and completes the upper orifice of the lachrymal canal. It sometimes exists as a separate piece, which is then called the lissor lachrymal bone. The internal or nasal surface presents a depressed furrow, corresponding to the ridge on its outer surface. The surface of bone in front of this forms part of the middle meatus; and that behind it articulates with the ethmoid bone, filling in the anterior ethmoidal cells. Of the four borders, the anterior is the longest, and articulates with the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone. The posterior, thin and uneven, articulates with the os planum of the ethmoid. The superior, the shortest and thickest, articulates with the internal angular process of the frontal bone. The inferior is divided by the lower edge of the vertical crest into two parts: the posterior part articulates with the orbital plate of the superior maxillary bone; the anterior portion is prolonged downwards into a pointed process, which articulates with the lachrymal process of the inferior turbinated bone, and assists in the formation of the lachrymal canal.

Development. By a single centre, which makes its appearance soon after ossification of the vertebrae has commenced.

Articulations. With four bones: two of the cranium, the frontal and ethmoid, and two of the face, the superior maxillary and the inferior turbinated.

Attachment of Muscles. The Tensor tarsi.

THE MALAR BONES.

The Malar are two small quadrangular bones, situated at the upper and outer part of the face: they form the prominence of the cheek, part of the outer wall and floor of the orbit, and part of the temporal and zygomatic fossae. Each bone presents for examination an external and an internal surface; four processes, the frontal, orbital, maxillary, and zygomatic; and four borders. The external surface (Fig. 142) is smooth, convex; perforated near its centre by one or two small apertures, the malar foramina for the passage of nerves and vessels, covered by the Orbicularis palpebrarum muscle, and affords attachment to the Zygomaticus major and minor muscles.

The internal surface (Fig. 143), directed backwards and inwards, is concave, presenting internally a rough triangular surface, for articulation with the superior maxillary bone; and externally, a smooth concave surface, which forms the anterior boundary of the temporal fossa above; and below, where it is wider, forms part of
the zygomatic fossa. This surface presents, a little above its centre, the aperture of one or two malar canals, and affords attachment to part of two muscles, the Temporal above, and the Masseter below. Of the four processes, the frontal is thick and serrated, and articulates with the external angular process of the frontal bone. The orbital process is a thick and strong plate, which projects backwards from the orbital margin of the bone. Its upper surface, smooth and concave, forms, by its junction with the great ala of the sphenoid, the outer wall of the orbit. Its under surface, smooth and convex, forms part of the temporal fossa. Its anterior margin is smooth and rounded, forming part of the circumference of the orbit. Its superior margin, rough, and directed horizontally, articulates with the frontal bone behind the external angular process. Its posterior margin is rough and serrated for articulation with the sphenoid; internally it is also serrated for articulation with the orbital surface of the superior maxillary. At the angle of junction of the sphenoidal and maxillary portions, a short rounded non-articular margin is generally seen; this forms the anterior boundary of the sphen-maxillary fissure; occasionally, no such non-articular margin exists, the fissure being completed by the direct junction of the maxillary and sphenoid bones, or by the interposition of a small Wormian bone in the angular interval between them. On the upper surface of the orbital process are seen the orifices of one or two temporal-malar canals; one of these usually opens on the posterior surface, the other (occasionally two) on the facial surface: they transmit filaments (temporo-malar) of the orbital branch of the superior maxillary nerve. The maxillary process is a rough triangular surface, which articulates with the superior maxillary bone. The zygomatic process, long, narrow, and serrated, articulates with the zygomatic process of the temporal bone. Of the four borders, the superior or orbital is smooth, arched, and forms a considerable part of the circumference of the orbit. The inferior, or zygomatic is continuous with the lower border of the zygomatic arch, affording attachment by its rough edge to the Masseter muscle. The anterior or maxillary border is rough, and bevelled at the expense of its inner table, to articulate with the superior maxillary bone; affording attachment by its outer margin to the Levator labii superioris proprius, just at its point of junction with the superior maxillary. The posterior or temporal border, curved like an italic $f$, is continuous above with the commencement of the temporal ridge; below, with the upper border of the zygomatic arch: it affords attachment to the temporal fascia.

Development. By a single centre of ossification, which appears at about the same period when ossification of the vertebrae commences.

Articulations. With four bones: three of the cranium, frontal, sphenoid, and temporal; and one of the face, the superior maxillary.

Attachment of Muscles. Levator labii superioris proprius, Zygomaticus major, Zygomaticus minor, Masseter, and Temporal.
The Palate Bones are situated at the back part of the nasal fossae; they are wedged in between the superior maxillary and the pterygoid process of the sphenoid. Each bone assists in the formation of three cavities: the floor and outer wall of the nose, the roof of the mouth, and the floor of the orbit; and enters into the formation of three fossae; the zygomatic, sphenomaxillary, and pterygoid; and one fissure, the sphenomaxillary. In form the palate bone somewhat resembles the letter L, and may be divided into an inferior or horizontal plate, and a superior or vertical plate.

The Inferior or Horizontal Plate is thick, of a quadrilateral form, and presents two surfaces and four borders. The superior surface, concave from side to side, forms the back part of the floor of the nostril. The inferior surface, slightly concave and rough, forms the back part of the hard palate. At its posterior part may be seen a transverse ridge, more or less marked, for the attachment of the aponeurosis of the Tensor palati muscle. At the outer extremity of this ridge is a deep groove converted into a canal by its articulation with the tuberosity of the superior maxillary bone, and forming the posterior palatine canal. Near this groove, the orifices of one or two small canals, accessory posterior palatine, may frequently be seen. The anterior border is serrated, bevelled at the expense of its inferior surface, and articulates with the palate process of the superior maxillary bone. The posterior border is concave, free, and serves for the attachment of the soft palate. Its inner extremity is sharp and pointed, and, when united with the opposite bone, forms a projecting process, the posterior nasal spine, for the attachment of the Azygos uvula. The external border is united with the lower part of the perpendicular plate almost at right angles. The internal border, the thickest, is serrated for articulation with its fellow of the opposite side; its superior edge is raised into a ridge, which united with the opposite bone, forms a crest in which the vomer is received.

The Superior or Vertical Plate (Fig. 144) is thin, of an oblong form, and directed upwards and a little inwards. It presents two surfaces, an external and an internal, and four borders.

The internal surface presents at its lower part a broad shallow depression, which forms part of the inferior meatus of the nose. Immediately above this is a well-marked horizontal ridge, the inferior turbinate crest, for articulation with the inferior turbinate bone; above this, a second broad shallower depression, which forms part of the middle meatus, surmounted above by a horizontal ridge less prominent than the inferior, the superior turbinate crest, for articulation with the middle turbinate bone. Above the superior turbinate crest is a narrow horizontal groove, which forms part of the superior meatus.

The external surface is rough and irregular throughout the greater part of its extent, for articulation with the inner surface of the superior maxillary bone,
its upper and back part being smooth where it enters into the formation of the sphenomaxillary fossa; it is also smooth in front, where it covers the orifice of the antrum. Towards the back part of this surface is a deep groove, converted into a canal, the posterior palatine, by its articulation with the superior maxillary bone. It transmits the posterior, or descending palatine vessels, and a large nerve.

The anterior border is thin, irregular, and presents opposite the inferior turbinated crest a pointed projecting lamina, the maxillary process, which is directed forwards and closes in the lower and back part of the opening of the antrum, being received into a fissure that exists at the inferior part of this aperture. The posterior border (Fig. 145) presents a deep groove, the edges of which are serrated for articulation with the pterygoid process of the sphenoid. At the lower part of this border is seen a pyramidal process of bone, the pterygoid process or tuberosity of the palate, which is received into the angular interval between the two pterygoid plates of the sphenoid at their inferior extremity. This process presents at its back part three grooves, a median and two lateral ones. The former is smooth, and forms part of the pterygoid fossa, affording attachment to the Internal pterygoid muscle; whilst the lateral grooves are rough and uneven, for articulation with the anterior border of each pterygoid plate. A few fibres of the External pterygoid muscle and of the Superior constrictor also arise from the tuberosity of the palate bone. The base of this process, continuous with the horizontal portion of the bone, presents the apertures of the accessory descending palatine canals; whilst its outer surface is rough for articulation with the inner surface of the body of the superior maxillary bone.

The superior border of the vertical plate presents two well-marked processes separated by an intervening notch or foramen. The anterior, or larger, is called the orbital process; the posterior, the sphenoidal.

The Orbital Process, directed upwards and outwards, is placed on a higher level than the sphenoidal. It presents five surfaces, which inclose a hollow cellular cavity, and is connected to the perpendicular plate by a narrow constricted neck. Of these five surfaces, three are articular, two non-articular, or free surfaces. The three articular are the anterior or maxillary surface, which is directed forwards, outwards, and downwards, is of an oblong form and rough for articulation with the superior maxillary bone. The posterior or sphenoidal surface is directed backwards, upwards, and inwards. It ordinarily presents a small open cell, which communicates with the sphenoidal sinus, and the margins of which are serrated for articulation with the vertical part of the sphenoidal turbinated bone. The internal or ethmoidal surface is directed inwards, upwards, and forwards, and articulates with the lateral mass of the ethmoid bone. In some cases, the cellular cavity above mentioned opens on this surface of the bone; it then communicates with the posterior ethmoidal cells. More rarely it opens on both surfaces, and then communicates both with the posterior ethmoidal cells, and the sphenoidal sinus. The non-articular or free surfaces are the superior or orbital, directed upwards and outwards, of triangular form, concave, smooth, and forming the back part of the floor of the orbit, and the external or zygomatic
surface, directed outwards, backwards, and downwards, of an oblong form, smooth, lying in the sphen-o-maxillary fossa, and looking into the zygomatic fossa. The latter surface is separated from the orbital by a smooth rounded border, which enters into the formation of the sphen-o-maxillary fissure.

The Sphenoidal Process of the palate bone is a thin compressed plate, much smaller than the orbital, and directed upwards and inwards. It presents three surfaces and two borders. The superior surface, the smallest of the three, articulates with the horizontal part of the sphenoidal turbinated bone; it presents a groove which contributes to the formation of the pterygo-palatine canal. The internal surface is concave, and forms part of the outer wall of the nasal fossa. The external surface is divided into an articular and a non-articular portion; the former is rough for articulation with the inner surface of the pterygoid process of the sphenoid; the latter is smooth, and forms part of the zygomatic fossa. The anterior border forms the posterior boundary of the sphen-o-palatine fora- men. The posterior border, serrated at the expense of the outer table, articulates with the inner surface of the pterygoid process.

The orbital and sphenoidal processes are separated from one another by a deep notch, which is converted into a foramen, the sphen-o-palatine, by articulation with the sphenoidal turbinated bone. Sometimes the two processes are united above, and form between them a complete foramen, or the notch is crossed by one or more spicula of bone, so as to form two or more foramina. In the articulated skull, this foramen opens into the back part of the outer wall of the superior meatus, and presents the sphen-o-palatine vessels and nerves.

Development. From a single centre, which makes its appearance at the angle of junction of the two plates of the bone. From this point ossification spreads inwards to the horizontal plate, downwards into the tuberosity, and upwards into the vertical plate. In the fetus, the horizontal plate is much longer than the vertical; and even after it is fully ossified, the whole bone is at first remarkable for its shortness.

Articulations. With six bones; the sphenoid, ethmoid, superior maxillary, inferior turbinated, vomer, and opposite palate.

Attachment of Muscles. The Tensor palati, Azygos uvula, Internal and External pterygoid, and Superior constrictor of the pharynx.

The Inferior Turbinated Bones.

The Inferior Turbinated Bones are situated one on each side of the outer wall of the nasal fossae. Each consists of a layer of thin spongy bone, curled upon itself like a scroll, hence its name "turbinated," and extends horizontally along the outer wall of the nasal fossa, immediately below the orifice of the antrum. Each bone presents two surfaces, two borders, and two extremities.

Fig. 146.—Right Inferior Turbinated Bone. Internal Surface.

Fig. 147.—Right Inferior Turbinated Bone. Outer Surface.

The internal surface (Fig. 146) is convex, perforated by numerous apertures, and traversed by longitudinal grooves and canals for the lodgment of arteries and veins. In the recent state it is covered by the lining membrane of the nose. The external surface is concave (Fig. 147), and forms part of the inferior meatus.
Its upper border is thin, irregular, and connected to various bones along the outer wall of the nose. It may be divided into three portions; of these, the anterior articulates with the inferior turbinate crest of the superior maxillary bone; the posterior with the inferior turbinate crest of the palate bone; the middle portion of the superior border presents three well-marked processes, which vary much in their size and form. Of these the anterior and smallest is situated at the junction of the anterior fourth with the posterior three-fourths of the bone; it is small and pointed, and is called the lachrymal process, for it articulates with the anterior inferior angle of the lachrymal bone, and by its margins, with the groove on the back of the nasal process of the superior maxillary, and thus assists in forming the lachrymal canal. At the junction of the two middle fourths of the bone, but encroaching on its posterior fourth, a broad thin plate, the ethmoidal process, ascends to join the unciform process of the ethmoid; from the lower border of this process a thin lamina of bone curves downwards and outwards, hooking over the lower edge of the orifice of the antrum, which it narrows below; it is called the maxillary process, and fixes the bone firmly on to the outer wall of the nasal fossa. The inferior border is free, thick, and cellular in structure, more especially in the middle of the bone. Both extremities are more or less narrow and pointed. If the bone is held so that its outer concave surface is directed backwards (i.e., towards the holder), and its superior border, from which the lachrymal and ethmoidal processes project, upwards, the lachrymal process will be directed to the side to which the bone belongs.

Development. By a single centre, which makes its appearance about the middle of fetal life.

Articulations. With four bones; one of the cranium, the ethmoid, and three of the face, the superior maxillary, lachrymal, and palate.

No muscles are attached to these bones.

THE VOMER.

The Vomer is a single bone, situated vertically at the back part of the nasal fossæ, forming part of the septum of the nose. It is thin, somewhat like a ploughshare in form; but it varies in different individuals, being frequently bent to one or the other side; it presents for examination two surfaces and four borders. The lateral surfaces are smooth, marked by small furrows for the lodgment of bloodvessels, and by a groove on each side sometimes a canal, the naso-palatine, which runs obliquely downwards and forwards to the intermaxillary suture between the two anterior palatine canals; it transmits the naso-palatine nerve. The superior border, the thickest, presents a deep groove, bounded on each side by a horizontal projecting ala of bone; the groove receives the rostrum of the sphenoid, whilst the alæ are overlapped and retained by lamina (the vaginal processes) which project from the under surface of the body of the sphenoid at the base of the pterygoid processes. At the front of the groove a fissure is left for the transmission of bloodvessels to the substance of the bone. The inferior border, the longest, is broad and uneven in front, where it articulates with the two superior maxillary bones; thin and
sharp behind, where it joins with the palate bones. The upper half of the anterior border usually consists of two laminae of bone, between which is received the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid, the lower half consisting of a single rough edge, also occasionally channelled, which is united to the triangular cartilage of the nose. The posterior border is free, concave, and separates the nasal fosseæ behind. It is thick and bifid above, thin below.

Development. The vomer at an early period consists of two laminae separated by a very considerable interval, and inclosing between them a plate of cartilage which is prolonged forwards to form the remainder of the septum. Ossification commences in it at about the same period as in the vertebrae (the coalescence of the laminae taking place from behind forwards), but is not complete until after puberty.

Articulations. With six bones: two of the cranium, the sphenoid and ethmoid; and four of the face, the two superior maxillary and the two palate bones, and with the cartilage of the septum.

The vomer has no muscles attached to it.

THE INFERIOR MAXILLARY BONE.

The Inferior Maxillary Bone, the largest and strongest bone of the face, serves for the reception of the lower teeth. It consists of a curved horizontal portion, the body, and two perpendicular portions, the rami, which join the back part of the body nearly at right angles.

The Horizontal portion, or body (Fig. 149), is convex in its general outline, and curved somewhat like a horse-shoe. It presents for examination two surfaces and two borders. The external surface is convex from side to side, concave from above downwards. In the median line is a vertical ridge, the symphysis, which extends from the upper to the lower border of the bone, and indicates the point of junction of the two pieces of which the bone is composed at an early period of life. The lower part of the ridge terminates in a prominent triangular eminence, the mental process. On either side of the symphysis, just below the roots of the incisor teeth, is a depression, the incisive fossa, for the attachment of the Levator menti (or Levator labii inferioris); and still more externally, a foramen, the mental foramen, for the passage of the mental nerve and artery. This foramen is placed just below the root of the second bicuspis
tooth. Running outwards from the base of the mental process on each side, is a well-marked ridge, the external oblique line. The ridge is at first nearly horizontal, but afterwards inclines upwards and backwards, and is continuous with the anterior border of the ramus; it affords attachment to the Depressor labii inferioris and Depressor anguli oris, below which the Platysma myoides is inserted.

The internal surface (Fig. 150) is concave from side to side, convex from above downwards. In the middle line is an indistinct linear depression, corresponding to the symphysis externally; on either side of this depression, just below its centre, are four prominent tubercles, placed in pairs, two above and two below; they are called the genial tubercles, and afford attachment, the upper pair to the Genio-hyoglossi muscles, the lower pair to the Genio-hyoidei muscles. Sometimes the tubercles on each side are blended into one, or they all unite into an irregular eminence of bone, or nothing but an irregularity may be seen on the surface of the bone at this part. On either side of the genial tubercles is an oval depression, the sublingual fossa, for lodging the sublingual gland; and beneath the fossa, a rough depression on each side, which gives attachment to the anterior belly of the Digastric muscle. At the back part of the sublingual fossa, the internal oblique line (mylo-hyoid) commences; it is at first faintly marked, but becomes more distinct as it passes upwards and outwards, and is especially prominent opposite the last two molar teeth; it affords attachment throughout its whole extent to the Mylo-hyoid muscle, the Superior constrictor of the pharynx with the pterygo maxillary ligament, being attached above its posterior extremity, nearer the alveolar margin. The portion of bone above this ridge is smooth, and covered by the mucous membrane of the mouth; whilst that below it presents an oblong depression, the submaxillary fossa, wider behind than in front, for the lodgment of the submaxillary gland. The external oblique line and the internal or mylo-hyoid line divide the body of the bone into a superior or alveolar, and an inferior or basilar portion.

The superior or alveolar border is wider, and its margins thicker behind than in front. It is hollowed into numerous cavities, for the reception of the teeth; these cavities are sixteen in number, and vary in depth and size according to the teeth which they contain. To its outer side, the Buccinator muscle is at-
tached as far forward as the first molar tooth. The inferior border is rounded, longer than the superior, and thicker in front than behind; it presents a shallow groove, just where the body joins the ramus, over which the facial artery turns.

The Perpendicular Portions, or RamIs, are of a quadrilateral form. Each presents for examination two surfaces, four borders, and two processes. The external surface is flat, marked with ridges, and gives attachment throughout nearly the whole of its extent to the Masseter muscle. The internal surface presents about its centre the oblique aperture of the inferior dental canal, for the passage of the inferior dental vessels and nerve. The margin of this opening is irregular; it presents in front a prominent ridge, surmounted by a sharp spine, which gives attachment to the internal lateral ligament of the lower jaw; and at its lower and back part a notch leading to a groove, the mylo-hyoiden, which runs obliquely downwards to the back part of the submaxillary fossa; and lodges the mylo-hyoid vessels and nerve: behind the groove is a rough surface for the insertion of the Internal pterygoid muscle. The inferior dental canal runs obliquely downwards and forwards in the substance of the ramus, and then horizontally forwards in the body; it is here placed under the alveoli, with which it communicates by small openings. On arriving at the incisor teeth, it turns back to communicate with the mental foramen, giving off two small canals, which run forward, to be lost in the cancellous tissue of the bone beneath the incisor teeth. This canal, in the posterior two-thirds of the bone, is situated nearer the internal surface of the jaw; and in the anterior third, nearer its external surface. Its walls are composed of compact tissue at either extremity, and of cancellous in the centre. It contains the inferior dental vessels and nerve, from which branches are distributed to the teeth through small apertures at the bases of the alveoli. The upper border of the ramus is thin and presents two processes, separated by a deep concavity, the sigmoid notch. Of these processes, the anterior is the coronoid, the posterior the condyloid.

The Coronoid Process is a thin, flattened, triangular eminence of bone, which varies in shape and size in different subjects, and serves chiefly for the attachment of the Temporal muscle. Its external surface is smooth, and affords attachment to the Masseter and Temporal muscles. Its internal surface gives attachment to the Temporal muscle, and presents the commencement of a longitudinal ridge, which is continued to the posterior part of the alveolar process. On the outer side of this ridge is a deep groove, continued below on the outer side of the alveolar process; this ridge and part of the groove afford attachment, above, to the Temporal; below, to the Buccinator muscle.

The Condyloid Process, shorter but thicker than the coronoid, consists of two portions: the condyle, and the constricted portion which supports the condyle, the neck. The condyle is of an oblong form, its long axis being transverse, and set obliquely on the neck in such a manner that its outer end is a little more forward and a little higher than its inner. It is convex from before backwards, and from side to side, the articular surface extending further on the posterior than on the anterior surface. The neck of the condyle is flattened from before backwards, and strengthened by ridges which descend from the fore part and sides of the condyle. Its lateral margins are narrow, and present externally a tubercle for the external lateral ligament. Its posterior surface is convex; its anterior is hollowed out on its inner side by a depression (the pterygoid fossa) for the attachment of the External pterygoid.

The lower border of the ramus is thick, straight, and continuous with the body of the bone. At its junction with the posterior border is the angle of the jaw, which is either inverted or everted, and marked by rough oblique ridges on each side for the attachment of the Masseter externally, and the Internal pterygoid internally; the stylo-maxillary ligament is attached to the bone between these muscles. The anterior border is thin above, thicker below, and continuous with the external oblique line. The posterior border is thick, smooth, rounded, and covered by the parotid gland.
INFERIOR MAXILLARY BONE.

SIDE VIEW OF THE LOWER JAW AT DIFFERENT PERIODS OF LIFE.

Fig. 151.—At Birth.

Fig. 152.—At Puberty.

Fig. 153.—In the Adult.

Fig. 154.—In old Age.
THE SKELETON.

The Sigmoid Notch, separating the two processes, is a deep semilunar depression, crossed by the massteric artery and nerve.

Development. This bone is formed at such an early period of life, before, indeed, any other bone except the clavicle, that it has been found impossible at present to determine its earliest condition. It appears probable, however, that it is developed by two centres, one for each lateral half, the two segments meeting at the symphysis, where they become united. Additional centres have also been described for the coronoid process, the condyle, the angle, and the thin plate of bone which forms the inner side of the alveolus.

CHANGES PRODUCED IN THE LOWER JAW BY AGE.

The changes which the Lower Jaw undergoes after birth relate—1. To the alterations effected in the body of the bone by the first and second dentitions, the loss of the teeth in the aged, and the subsequent absorption of the alveoli. 2. To the size and situation of the dental canal; and, 3. To the angle at which the ramus joins with the body.

At birth (Fig. 151), the bone consists of two lateral halves, united by fibro-cartilaginous tissue, in which one or two osseseous nuclei are generally found. The body is a mere shell of bone, containing the sockets of the two incisor, the canine, and the two temporary molar teeth, imperfectly partitioned from one another. The dental canal is of large size, and runs near the lower border of the bone, the mental foramen opening beneath the socket of the first molar. The angle is obtuse, from the jaws not being as yet separated by the eruption of the teeth.

After birth (Fig. 152), the two segments of the bone become joined at the symphysis, from below upwards, in the first year; but a trace of separation may be visible in the beginning of the second year, near the alveolar margin. The body becomes elongated in its whole length, but more especially behind the mental foramen, to provide space for the three additional teeth developed in this part. The depth of the body becomes greater, owing to increased growth of the alveolar part, to afford room for the fangs of the teeth, and by thickening of the subdental portion which enables the jaw to withstand the powerful action of the masticatory muscles; but the alveolar portion is the deeper of the two, and consequently, the chief part of the body lies above the oblique line. The dental canal, after the second dentition, is situated just above the level of the mylo-hyoid ridge; and the mental foramen occupies the position usual to it in the adult. The angle becomes less obtuse, owing to the separation of the jaws by the teeth.

In the adult (Fig. 153), the alveolar and basilar portions of the body are usually of equal depth. The mental foramen opens midway between the upper and lower border of the bone, and the dental canal runs nearly parallel with the mylo-hyoid line. The ramus is almost vertical in direction, and joins the body nearly at right angles.

In old age (Fig. 154), the bone becomes greatly reduced in size; for, with the loss of the teeth, the alveolar process is absorbed, and the basilar part of the bone alone remains; consequently the chief part of the bone is below the oblique line. The dental canal, with the mental foramen opening from it, is close to the alveolar border. The rami are oblique in direction, and the angle obtuse.

Articulations. With the glenoid fossae of the two temporal bones.

Attachment of Muscles. To its external surface, commencing at the symphysis, and proceeding backwards: Levator menti, Depressor labii inferioris, Depressor anguli oris, Platysma myoides, Buccinator, Masseter: a portion of the Orbicularis oris (Accessorii orbicularis inferiores) is also attached to this surface. To its internal surface, commencing at the same point: Genio-hyo-glossus, Genio-hyoides, Mylo-hyoides, Digastric, Superior constrictor, Temporal, Internal pterygoid, External pterygoid.

THE SUTURES.

The bones of the cranium and face are connected to each other by means of sutures. The sutures are rows of dentated processes of bone projecting from the edge of either bone, and looking into each other: the dentations, however, are confined to the external table, the edges of the internal table lying merely in apposition. The Cranial Sutures may be divided into three sets: 1. Those at the vertex of the skull. 2. Those at the side of the skull. 3. Those at the base.

The sutures at the vertex of the skull are three: the sagittal, coronal, and lambdoid.
THE SUTURES.

The Sagittal Suture (interparietal) is formed by the junction of the two parietal bones, and extends from the middle of the frontal bone, backwards to the superior angle of the occipital. In childhood and occasionally in the adult, when the two halves of the frontal bone are not united, it is continued forwards to the root of the nose. This suture sometimes presents, near its posterior extremity, the parietal foramen on each side; and in front, where it joins the coronal suture, a space is occasionally left, which incloses a large Wormian bone.

The Coronal Suture (fronto-parietal) extends transversely across the vertex of the skull, and connects the frontal with the parietal bones. It commences at the extremity of the great wing of the sphenoid on one side, and terminates at the same point on the opposite side. The dentations of this suture are more marked at the sides than at the summit, and are so constructed that the frontal rests on the parietal above, whilst laterally the frontal supports the parietal.

The Lambdoid Suture (occipito-parietal), so called from its resemblance to the Greek letter Λ, connects the occipital with the parietal bones. It commences on each side at the mastoid portion of the temporal bone, and inclines upwards to the end of the sagittal suture. The dentations of this suture are very deep and distinct, and are often interrupted by several small Wormian bones.

The sutures at the side of the skull are also three in number: the sphenoparietal, squamo-parietal, and masto-parietal. They are subdivisions of a single suture, formed between the lower border of the parietal, and the temporal and sphenoid bones, and which extends from the lower end of the lambdoid suture behind, to the lower end of the coronal suture in front.

The Sphenoparietal is very short; it is formed by the tip of the great wing of the sphenoid, which overlies the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone.

The Squamo-parietal, or squamous suture, is arched. It is formed by the squamous portion of the temporal bone overlapping the middle division of the lower border of the parietal.

The Masto-parietal is a short suture, deeply dentated, formed by the posterior inferior angle of the parietal, and the superior border of the mastoid portion of the temporal.

The sutures at the base of the skull are, the basilar in the centre, and on each side, the petro-occipital, the masto-occipital, the petro-sphenoidal, and the squamo-sphenoidal.

The Basilar Suture is formed by the junction of the basilar surface of the occipital bone with the posterior surface of the body of the sphenoid. At an early period of life, a thin plate of cartilage exists between these bones; but in the adult they become fused into one. Between the outer extremity of the basilar suture, and the termination of the lambdoid, an irregular suture exists, which is subdivided into two portions. The inner portion, formed by the union of the petrous part of the temporal with the occipital bone, is termed the petro-occipital. The outer portion, formed by the junction of the mastoid part of the temporal with the occipital, is called the masto-occipital. Between the bones forming the petro-occipital suture, a thin plate of cartilage exists; in the masto-occipital is occasionally found the opening of the mastoid foramen. Between the outer extremity of the basilar suture and the sphenoparietal, an irregular suture may be seen, formed by the union of the sphenoid with the temporal bone. The inner and smaller portion of this suture is termed the petro-sphenoidal; it is formed between the petrous portion of the temporal and the great wing of the sphenoid; the outer portion, of greater length, and arched, is formed between the squamous portion of the temporal and the great wing of the sphenoid: it is called the squamo-sphenoidal.

The cranial bones are connected with those of the face, and the facial bones with each other, by numerous sutures, which, though distinctly marked, have received no special names. The only remaining suture deserving especial consideration, is the transverse. This extends across the upper part of the face, and is formed by the junction of the frontal with the facial bones: it extends from
the external angular process of one side, to the same point on the opposite side, and connects the frontal with the malar, the sphenoid, the ethmoid, the lacrimal, the superior maxillary, and the nasal bones on each side.

The sutures remain separate for a considerable period after the complete formation of the skull. It is probable that they serve the purpose of permitting the growth of the bones at their margins; while their peculiar formation, together with the interposition of the sutural ligament between the bones forming them, prevents the dispersion of blows or jars received upon the skull. Dr. Humphry remarks, "that, as a general rule, the sutures are first obliterated at the parts in which the ossification of the skull was last completed, viz., in the neighborhood of the fontanelles; and the cranial bones seem in this respect to observe a similar law to that which regulates the union of the epiphyses to the shafts of the long bones." The same author remarks that the time of their disappearance is extremely variable: they are sometimes found well-marked in skulls edentulous with age, while in others which have only just reached maturity they can hardly be traced.

THE SKULL.

The Skull, formed by the union of the several cranial and facial bones already described, when considered as a whole, is divisible into five regions: a superior region or vertex, an inferior region or base, two lateral regions, and an anterior region, the face.

VERTEX OF THE SKULL.

The Superior Region, or Vertex, presents two surfaces, an external and an internal.

The External Surface is bounded, in front, by the nasal eminences and supra- ciliary ridges; behind, by the occipital protuberance and superior curved lines of the occipital bone; laterally, by an imaginary line extending from the outer end of the superior curved line, along the temporal ridge, to the external angular process of the frontal. This surface includes the vertical portion of the frontal, the greater part of the parietal, and the superior third of the occipital bone; it is smooth, convex, of an elongated oval form, crossed transversely by the coronal suture, and from before backwards by the sagittal, which terminates behind in the lambdoid. From before backwards may be seen the frontal eminences and remains of the suture connecting the two lateral halves of the frontal bone; on each side of the sagittal suture are the parietal foramen and parietal eminence, and still more posteriorly the smooth convex surface of the occipital bone.

The Internal Surface is concave, presents eminences and depressions for the convolutions of the cerebrum, and numerous furrows for the lodgment of branches of the meningeal arteries. Along the middle line of this surface is a longitudinal groove, narrow in front, where it terminates in the frontal crest; broader behind; it lodges the superior longitudinal sinus, and its margin affords attachment to the falx cerebri. On either side of it are several depressions for the Pacchian bodies, and at its back part, the internal openings of the parietal foramina. This surface is crossed, in front, by the coronal suture; from before backwards, by the sagittal; behind, by the lambdoid.

BASE OF THE SKULL.

The Inferior Region, or Base of the skull, presents two surfaces, an internal or cerebral, and an external or basilar.

The Internal or Cerebral Surface (Fig. 155) presents three fossa, on each side, called the anterior, middle, and posterior fossa of the cranium.

The Anterior Fossa is formed by the orbital plate of the frontal, the cribiform
plate of the ethmoid, the ethmoidal spine and lesser wing of the sphenoid. It is the most elevated of the three fossae, convex externally where it corresponds to the roof of the orbit, concave in the median line in the situation of the cribriform plate of the ethmoid. It is traversed by three sutures, the ethmoido-frontal, ethmo-sphenoidal, and fronto-sphenoidal; and lodges the anterior lobe of the cerebrum. It presents, in the median line, from before backwards, the com-

Fig. 155.—Base of the Skull. Inner or Cerebral Surface.
mencement of the groove for the superior longitudinal sinus, and the crest for the attachment of the falx cerebri; the foramen cecum, an aperture formed by the frontal bone and the crista galli of the ethmoid, which, if pervious, transmits a small vein from the nose to the superior longitudinal sinus; behind the foramen cecum, the crista galli, the posterior margin of which affords attachment to the falx cerebri; on either side of the crista galli, the olfactory groove, which supports the bulb of the olfactory nerve, and is perforated by three rows of orifices for its filaments, and in front by a slit-like opening, for the nasal branch of the ophthalmic nerve. On the outer side of each olfactory groove are the internal openings of the anterior and posterior ethmoidal foramina; the former, situated about the middle of the outer margin of the olfactory groove, transmits the anterior ethmoidal artery and the nasal nerve, which runs in a depression along the surface of the ethmoid, to the slit-like opening above mentioned; whilst the posterior ethmoidal foramen opens at the back part of this margin under cover of the projecting lamina of the sphenoid, and transmits the posterior ethmoidal artery and vein to the posterior ethmoidal cells. Further back in the middle line is the ethmoidal spine, bounded behind by an elevated ridge, separating a longitudinal groove on each side which supports the olfactory nerve. The anterior fossa presents laterally eminences and depressions for the convolutions of the brain, and grooves for the lodgment of the anterior meningeal arteries.

The Middle Fossa, somewhat deeper than the preceding, is narrow in the middle and becomes wider as it expands laterally. It is bounded in front by the posterior margin of the lesser wing of the sphenoid, the anterior clinoid process, and the anterior margin of the optic groove; behind, by the upper border of the petrous portion of the temporal, and basilar suture; externally, by the squamous portion of the temporal, and anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone, and is separated from its fellow by the sella Turcica. It is traversed by four sutures, the squamous, sphenoparietal, sphenno-temporal, and petro-sphenoidal. In the middle line, from before backwards, is the optic groove, which supports the optic commissure, and terminates on each side in the optic foramen, for the passage of the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery; behind the optic groove is the olivary process, and laterally the anterior clinoid processes, to which are attached the folds of the dura mater, which form the cavernous sinuses. Separating the middle fossa is the sella Turcica, a deep depression, which lodges the pituitary gland, bounded in front by a small eminence on either side, the middle clinoid process, and behind by a broad square plate of bone, surmounted at each superior angle by a tubercle, the posterior clinoid process; beneath the latter process is a groove, for the sixth nerve. On each side of the sella Turcica is the cavernous groove; it is broad, shallow, and curved somewhat like the italic letter f; it coninences behind at the foramen lacerum medium, and terminates on the inner side of the anterior clinoid process. This groove lodges the cavernous sinus, the internal carotid artery, and the nerves of the orbit. The sides of the middle fossa are of considerable depth; they present eminences and depressions for the middle lobes of the brain, and grooves for the branches of the middle meningeal artery; the latter commence on the outer side of the foramen spinosum, and consist of two large branches, an anterior and a posterior; the former passing upwards and forwards to the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone, the latter passing upwards and backwards. The following foramina may also be seen from before backwards. Most anteriorly is the foramen lacerum anterius, or sphenoidal fissure, formed above by the lesser wing of the sphenoid; below by the greater wing; internally, by the body of the sphenoid; and completed externally by the orbital plate of the frontal bone. It transmits the third, fourth, the three branches of the ophthalmic division of the fifth, the sixth nerve, and the ophthalmic vein. Behind the inner extremity of the sphenoidal fissure is the foramen rotundum, for the passage of the second division of the fifth or
BASE OF THE SKULL.

superior maxillary nerve; still more posteriorly is seen a small orifice, the foramen Vessali, an opening, situated between the foramen rotundum and ovale, a little internal to both; it varies in size in different individuals, and is often absent; when present, it transmits a small vein. It opens below in the pterygoid fossa, just at the outer side of the scaphoid depression. Behind and external to the latter opening is the foramen ovale, which transmits the third division of the fifth or inferior maxillary nerve, the small meningeal artery, and the small petrosal nerve. On the outer side of the foramen ovale is the foramen spinosum, for the passage of the middle meningeal artery; and on the inner side of the foramen ovale, the foramen lacerum medium. The lower part of this aperture is filled up with cartilage in the recent state. On the anterior surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone is seen, from without inwards, the eminence caused by the projection of the superior semicircular canal, the groove leading to the hiatus Fallopian, for the transmission of the petrosal branch of the Vidian nerve; beneath it, the smaller groove, for the passage of the smaller petrosal nerve; and, near the apex of the bone, the depression for the Casserian ganglion, and the orifice of the carotid canal, for the passage of the internal carotid artery and carotid plexus of nerves.

The Posterior Fossa, deeply concave, is the largest of the three, and situated on a lower level than either of the preceding. It is formed by the occipital, the petrous and mastoid portions of the temporal, and the posterior inferior angle of the parietal bone: is crossed by three sutures, the petro-occipital, masto-occipital, and masto-parietal; and lodges the cerebellum, pons Varolii, and medulla oblongata. It is separated from the middle fossa in the median line by the basilar suture, and on each side by the superior border of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. This border serves for the attachment of the tentorium cerebelli, is grooved externally for the superior petrosal sinus, and at its inner extremity presents a notch, upon which rests the fifth nerve. The circumference of the fossa is bounded posteriorly by the grooves for the lateral sinuses. In the centre of this fossa is the foramen magnum, bounded on either side by a rough tubercle, which gives attachment to the odontoid ligaments; and a little above these are seen the internal openings of the anterior condyloid foramina. In front of the foramen magnum is the basilar process, grooved for the support of the medulla oblongata and pons Varolii, and articulating on each side with the petrous portion of the temporal bone, forming the petro-occipital suture, the anterior half of which is grooved for the inferior petrosal sinus, the posterior half being encroached upon by the foramen lacerum posterior, or jugular foramen. This foramen is partially subdivided into two parts; the posterior and larger division transmitting the internal jugular vein and meningeal branches of the ascending pharyngeal and occipital arteries, the anterior the eighth pair of nerves. Above the jugular foramen is the internal auditory foramen, for the facial and auditory nerves and auditory nerve; behind and external to this is the slit-like opening leading into the aqueductus vestibuli; whilst between the two latter, and near the superior border of the petrous portion, is a small triangular depression which lodges a process of the dura mater, and occasionally transmits a small vein into the substance of the bone. Behind the foramen magnum are the inferior occipital fossae, which lodge the hemispheres of the cerebellum, separated from one another by the internal occipital crest, which serves for the attachment of the falx cerebelli, and lodges the occipital sinuses. The posterior fossae are surmounted, above, by the deep transverse grooves for the lodgment of the lateral sinuses. These channels, in their passage outwards, groove the occipital bone, the posterior inferior angle of the parietal, the mastoid portion of the temporal, and the occipital just behind the jugular foramen, at the back part of which they terminate. Where this sinus grooves the mastoid part of the temporal bone, the orifice of the mastoid foramen may be seen; and, just previous to its termination, it has opening into the posterior condyloid foramen. Neither foramen is constant.

The External Surface of the base of the skull (Fig. 156) is extremely irregular.
It is bounded in front by the incisor teeth in the upper jaws; behind, by the superior curved lines of the occipital bone; and laterally by the alveolar arch,

Fig. 156.—Base of the Skull. External Surface.
the lower border of the malar bone, the zygoma, and an imaginary line, extending from the zygoma to the mastoid process and extremity of the superior curved line of the occiput. It is formed by the palate processes of the superior maxillary and palate bones, the vomer, the pterygoid processes, under surface of the great wing, spinous processes and part of the body of the sphenoid, the under surface of the squamous, mastoid, and petrous portions of the temporal, and the under surface of the occipital bone. The anterior part of the base of the skull is raised above the level of the rest of this surface (when the skull is turned over for the purpose of examination), surrounded by the alveolar process, which is thicker behind than in front, and excavated by sixteen depressions for lodging the teeth of the upper jaw; the cavities varying in depth and size according to the teeth they contain. Immediately behind the incisor teeth is the anterior palatine fossa. At the bottom of this fossa may usually be seen four apertures, two placed laterally, which open above, one in the floor of each nostril, and transmit the anterior palatine vessels, and two in the median line of the intermaxillary suture, one in front of the other, the anterior transmitting the left, and the posterior (the larger) the right naso-palatine nerve. These two latter canals are sometimes wanting, or they may join to form a single one, or one of them may open into one of the lateral canals above referred to. The palatine vault is concave, uneven, perforated by numerous foramina, marked by depressions for the palatal glands, and crossed by a crucial suture, formed by the junction of the four bones of which it is composed. One or two small foramina, in the alveolar margin behind the incisor teeth, occasionally seen in the adult, almost constant in young subjects, are called the incisive foramina; they transmit nerves and vessels to the incisor teeth. At each posterior angle of the hard palate is the posterior palatine foramen, for the transmission of the posterior palatine vessels and descending palatine nerve, and running forwards and inwards from it a groove, which lodges the same vessels and nerve. Behind the posterior palatine foramen is the tuberosity of the palate bone, perforated by one or more accessory posterior palatine canals, and marked by the commencement of a ridge, which runs transversely inwards, and serves for the attachment of the tendinous expansion of the Tensor palati muscle. Projecting backwards from the centre of the posterior border of the hard palate is the posterior nasal spine, for the attachment of the Azygos uvula. Behind and above the hard palate is the posterior aperture of the nares, divided into two parts by the vomer, bounded above by the body of the sphenoid, below by the horizontal plate of the palate bone, and laterally by the pterygoid processes of the sphenoid. Each aperture measures about an inch in the vertical, and half an inch in the transverse direction. At the base of the vomer may be seen the expanded alæ of this bone, receiving between them the rostrum of the sphenoid. Near the lateral margins of the vomer, at the root of the pterygoid processes, are the pterygo-palatine canals. The pterygoid process, which bounds the posterior nares on each side, presents near its base the pterygoid or Vidian canal, for the Vidian nerve and artery. Each process consists of two plates, which bifurcate at the extremity to receive the tuberosity of the palate bone, and are separated behind by the pterygoid fossa, which lodges the Internal pterygoid muscle. The internal plate is long and narrow, presenting on the outer side of its base the scaphoid fossa, for the origin of the Tensor palati muscle, and at its extremity the hamular process, around which the tendon of this muscle turns. The external pterygoid plate is broad, forms the inner boundary of the zygomatic fossa, and affords attachment, by its outer surface, to the External pterygoid muscle.

Behind the nasal fossae in the middle line is the basilar surface of the occipital bone, presenting in its centre the pharyngeal spine for the attachment of the Superior constrictor muscle of the pharynx, with depressions on each side for the insertion of the Rectus capitis anticus major and minor. At the base of the external pterygoid plate is the foramen ovale; behind this, the foramen spinosum, and the prominent spinous process of the sphenoid, which gives attachment to
the internal lateral ligament of the lower jaw and the Laxator tympani muscle. External to the spinous process is the glenoid fossa, divided into two parts by the Glaserian fissure (p. 180), the anterior portion concave, smooth, bounded in front by the eminentia articularis, and serving for the articulation of the condyle of the lower jaw; the posterior portion rough, bounded behind by the vaginal process, and serving for the reception of part of the parotid gland. Emerging from between the laminae of the vaginal process is the styloid process; and at the base of this process is the stylo-mastoid foramen, for the exit of the facial nerve, and entrance of the stylo-mastoid artery. External to the stylo-mastoid foramen is the auricular fissure for the auricular branch of the pneumogastric, bounded behind by the mastoid process. Upon the inner side of the mastoid process is a deep groove, the digastric fossa; and a little more internally, the occipital groove, for the occipital artery. At the base of the internal pterygoid plate is a large and somewhat triangular aperture, the foramen lacerum mediam, bounded in front by the great wing of the sphenoid, behind by the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone; and internally by the body of the sphenoid and basilar process of the occipital bone; it presents in front the posterior orifice of the Vidian canal, behind, the aperture of the carotid canal. The basilar surface of this opening is filled up in the recent state by a fibro-cartilaginous substance; across its upper or cerebral aspect pass the internal carotid artery and Vidian nerve. External to this aperture, the petro-sphenoidal suture is observed, at the outer termination of which is seen the orifice of the canal for the Eustachian tube, and that for the Tensor tympani muscle. Behind this suture is seen the under surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, presenting, from within outwards, the quadrilateral rough surface, part of which affords attachment to the Levator palati and Tensor tympani muscles; external to this surface the orifices of the carotid canal and the aqueductus cochleae, the former transmitting the internal carotid artery and the ascending branches of the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, the latter serving for the passage of a small artery and vein to the cochlea. Behind the carotid canal is a large aperture, the jugular fossa, formed in front by the petrous portion of the temporal, and behind by the occipital; it is generally larger on the right than on the left side; and towards the cerebral aspect is divided into two parts by a ridge of bone, which projects usually from the temporal; the anterior, or smaller portion, transmitting the three divisions of the eighth pair of nerves, the posterior transmitting the internal jugular vein and the ascending meningeal vessels, from the occipital and ascending pharyngeal arteries. On the ridge of bone dividing the carotid canal from the jugular fossa, is the small foramen for the transmission of the tympanic nerve; and on the outer wall of the jugular foramen, near the root of the styloid process, is the small aperture for the transmission of Arnold’s nerve. Behind the basilar surface of the occipital bone is the foramen magnum, bounded on each side by the condyles, rough internally for the attachment of the alar ligaments, and presenting externally a rough surface, the jugular process, which serves for the attachment of the Rectus lateralis. On either side of each condyle anteriorly is the anterior condyloid fossa; perforated by the anterior condyloid foramen, for the passage of the hypoglossal nerve. Behind each condyle are the posterior condyloid fossae, perforated on one or both sides by the posterior condyloid foramina, for the transmission of a vein to the lateral sinus. Behind the foramen magnum is the external occipital crest, terminating above at the external occipital protuberance, whilst on each side are seen the superior and inferior curved lines; these, as well as the surfaces of the bone between them, being rough for the attachment of the muscles, which are enumerated on page 154.
TEMPORAL FOSSA.

LATERAL REGION OF THE SKULL.

The Lateral Region of the skull is of a somewhat triangular form, the base of the triangle being formed by a line extending from the external angular process of the frontal bone along the temporal ridge backwards to the outer extremity of the superior curved line of the occiput; and the sides by two lines, the one drawn downwards and backwards from the external angular process of the frontal bone to the angle of the lower jaw, the other from the angle of the jaw upwards and backwards to the extremity of the superior curved line. This region is divisible into three portions, temporal, mastoid, and zygomatic.

THE TEMPORAL FOSSA.

The Temporal Fossa is bounded above and behind by the temporal ridge, which extends from the external angular process of the frontal upwards and backwards across the frontal and parietal bones, curving downwards behind to terminate at the posterior root of the zygomatic process. In front, it is bounded by the frontal, malar, and great wing of the sphenoid: externally, by the zygomatic arch, formed conjointly by the malar and temporal bones; below, it is separated from the zygomatic fossa by the pterygoid ridge, seen on the outer surface of the great wing of the sphenoid. This fossa is formed by five bones, part of the frontal, great wing of the sphenoid, parietal, squamous portion of the temporal, and malar bones, and is traversed by five sutures, the transverse

Fig. 157.—Side View of the Skull.
facial, coronal, sphenoparietal, squamo-parietal and squamo-sphenoidal. It is deeply concave in front, convex behind, traversed by grooves which lodge branches of the deep temporal arteries, and filled by the Temporal muscle.

The Mastoid Portion of the side of the skull is bounded in front by the anterior root of the zygoma; above, by a line which runs from the posterior root of the zygoma to the end of the masto-parietal suture; behind and below, by the masto-occipital suture. It is formed by the mastoid and part of the squamous and petrous portions of the temporal bone; its surface is convex and rough for the attachment of muscles, and presents, from behind forwards, the mastoid foramen, the mastoid process, the external auditory meatus, surrounded by the auditory process, and, most anteriorly, the glenoid fossa, bounded in front by the eminentia articularis, behind by the vaginal process.

The Zygomatic Fossa.

The Zygomatic Fossa is an irregularly shaped cavity, situated below, and on the inner side of the zygoma; bounded, in front, by the tuberosity of the superior maxillary bone and the ridge which descends from its malar process; behind, by the posterior border of the pterygoid process; above, by the pterygoid ridge on the outer surface of the great wing of the sphenoid and squamous portion of the temporal; below, by the alveolar border of the superior maxilla; internally, by the external pterygoid plate; and externally, by the zygomatic arch and ramus of the jaw. It contains the lower part of the Temporal, the External, and Internal pterygoid muscles, the internal maxillary artery, the inferior maxillary nerve, and their branches. At its upper and inner part may be observed two fissures, the sphenomaxillary and pterygo-maxillary.

The Sphenomaxillary fissure, horizontal in direction, opens into the outer and back part of the orbit. It is formed above by the lower border of the orbital surface of the great wing of the sphenoid; below, by the external border of the orbital surface of the superior maxilla and a small part of the palate bone; externally, by a small part of the malar bone; internally, it joins at right angles with the pterygo-maxillary fissure. This fissure opens a communication from the orbit into three fossae, the temporal, zygomatic, and spheno-maxillary; it transmits the superior maxillary nerve and its orbital branch, the infraorbital artery, and ascending branches from Meckel's ganglion.

The Pterygo-maxillary fissure is vertical, and descends at right angles from the inner extremity of the preceding; it is an elongated interval, formed by the divergence of the superior maxillary bone from the pterygoid process of the sphenoid. It serves to connect the spheno-maxillary fossa with the zygomatic, and transmits branches of the internal maxillary artery. It forms the entrance from the zygomatic fossa to

The Sphenomaxillary Fossa.

The Sphenomaxillary Fossa is a small triangular space situated at the angle of junction of the spheno-maxillary and pterygo-maxillary fissures, and placed beneath the apex of the orbit. It is formed above by the under surface of the body of the sphenoid or by the orbital plate of the palate bone; in front, by the superior maxillary bone; behind, by the pterygoid process of the sphenoid; internally, by the vertical plate of the palate. This fossa has three fissures terminating in it, the sphenoidal, spheno-maxillary, and pterygo-maxillary: it communicates with three fossae, the orbital, nasal, and zygomatic, and with the cavity of the cranium, and has opening into it five foramina. Of these there are three on the posterior wall; the foramen rotundum above; below, and internal to this, the Vidian, and still more inferior and internal, the pterygo-palatine. On the inner wall is the spheno-palatine foramen by which the spheno-maxillary communicates with the nasal fossa, and below is the superior orifice of the poste-
rior palatine canal, besides occasionally the orifices of two or three accessory posterior palatine canals.

**Anterior Region of the Skull.**

The Anterior Region of the skull, which forms the face, is of an oval form, presents an irregular surface, and is excavated for the reception of the two principal organs of sense, the eye and the nose. It is bounded above by the nasal eminences and margins of the orbit; below, by the prominence of the chin; on each side, by the malar bone, and anterior margin of the ramus of the jaw. In the median line are seen from above downwards, the nasal eminences, which indicate the situation of the frontal sinuses; and diverging from which are the supraorbital ridges which support the eyebrows. Beneath the nasal eminences is the arch of the nose, formed by the nasal bones, and the nasal processes of the superior maxillary. The nasal arch is convex from side to side, concave from above downwards, presenting in the median line the internasal suture, formed between the nasal bones, laterally the naso-maxillary suture, formed

![Anterior Region of the Skull](image)

between the nasal bone and the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone, both these sutures terminating above in that part of the transverse suture which connects the nasal bone and nasal processes of the superior maxillary with the frontal. Below the nose is seen the opening of the anterior nares, which is
heart-shaped, with the narrow end upwards, and presents laterally the thin, sharp margins serving for the attachment of the lateral cartilages of the nose, and in the middle line below, a prominent process, the anterior nasal spine, bounded by two deep notches. Below this is the internasal suture, and on each side of it the incisive fossa. Beneath this fossa is the alveolar process of the upper and lower jaw, containing the incisor teeth, and at the lower part of the median line, the symphysis of the chin, the mental eminence, and the incisive fossa of the lower jaw.

On each side, proceeding from above downwards, is the supraorbital ridge, terminating externally in the external angular process at its junction with the malar, and internally in the internal angular process; towards the inner third of this ridge is the supraorbital notch or foramen, for the passage of the supraorbital vessels and nerve, and at its inner side a slight depression for the attachment of the pulley of the Superior oblique muscle. Beneath the supraorbital ridge is the opening of the orbit, bounded externally by the orbital ridge of the malar bone; below, by the orbital ridge formed by the malar, superior maxillary, and lachrymal bones; internally, by the nasal process of the superior maxillary, and the internal angular processes of the frontal bone. On the outer side of the orbit, is the quadrilateral anterior surface of the malar bone, perforated by one or two small malar foramina. Below the inferior margin of the orbit, is the infraorbital foramen, the termination of the infraorbital canal, and beneath this, the canine fossa, which gives attachment to the Levator anguli oris; bounded below by the alveolar processes, containing the teeth of the upper and lower jaw. Beneath the alveolar arch of the lower jaw is the mental foramen for the passage of the mental nerve and artery, the external oblique line, and at the lower border of the bone, at the point of junction of the body with the ramus, a shallow groove for the passage of the facial artery.

The Orbits (Fig. 158) are two quadrilateral pyramidal cavities, situated at the upper and anterior part of the face, their bases being directed forwards and outwards and their apices backwards and inwards. Each orbit is formed of seven bones, the frontal, sphenoid, ethmoid, superior maxillary, malar, lachrymal, and palate; but three of these, the frontal, ethmoid, and sphenoid, enter into the formation of both orbits, so that the two cavities are formed of eleven bones only. Each cavity presents for examination a roof, a floor, an inner and an outer wall, four angles, a circumference or base, and an apex. The roof is concave, directed downwards and forwards, and formed in front by the orbital plate of the frontal; behind by the lesser wing of the sphenoid. This surface presents internally the depression for the fibro-cartilaginous pulley of the Superior oblique muscle; externally, the depression for the lachrymal gland; and posteriorly, the suture connecting the frontal and lesser wing of the sphenoid.

The floor is nearly flat, and of less extent than the roof; it is formed chiefly by the orbital surface of the superior maxillary; in front, to a small extent, by the orbital process of the malar, and behind, by the orbital surface of the palate. This surface presents at its anterior and internal part, just external to the lachrymal canal, a depression for the attachment of the Inferior oblique muscle; externally, the suture between the malar and superior maxillary bones; near its middle, the infra-orbital groove; and posteriorly, the suture between the maxillary and palate bones.

The Inner Wall is flattened, and formed from before backwards by the nasal process of the superior maxillary, the lachrymal, os planum of the ethmoid, and a small part of the body of the sphenoid. This surface presents the lachrymal groove, and crest of the lachrymal bone, and the sutures connecting the ethmoid with the lachrymal bone in front and the sphenoid behind.

The Outer Wall is formed in front by the orbital process of the malar bone;
behind by the orbital plate of the sphenoid. On it are seen the orifices of one or two malar canals, and the suture connecting the sphenoid and malar bones.

**Angles.** The *superior external angle* is formed by the junction of the upper and outer walls, it presents, from before backwards, the suture connecting the frontal with the malar in front, and with the orbital plate of the sphenoid behind; quite posteriorly is the foramen lacerum anterius, or sphenoidal fissure, which transmits the third, fourth, the ophthalmic division of the fifth and the sixth nerves, and the ophthalmic vein. The *superior internal angle* is formed by the junction of the upper and inner wall, and presents the suture connecting the frontal bone with the lacrimal in front, and with the ethmoid behind. This suture is perforated by two foramina, the anterior and posterior ethmoidal, the former transmitting the anterior ethmoidal artery and nasal nerve, the latter the posterior ethmoidal artery and vein. The *inferior external angle*, formed by the junction of the outer wall and floor, presents the sphenoid-maxillary fissure, which transmits the infraorbital vessels and nerve, and the ascending branches from the sphenopalatine ganglion. The *inferior internal angle* is formed by the union of the lacrimal and os planum of the ethmoid, with the superior maxillary and palate bones. The *circumference*, or base, of the orbit, quadrilateral in form, is bounded above by the supraorbital arch; below, by the anterior border of the orbital plate of the malar, superior maxillary, and lacrimal bones; externally by the internal angular process of the frontal, and the nasal process of the superior maxillary. The circumference is marked by three sutures, the fronto-maxillary internally, the fronto-malar externally, and the malo-maxillary below; it contributes to the formation of the lacrimal groove, and presents above the supraorbital notch (or foramen), for the passage of the supra-orbital artery, veins, and nerve. The *apex*, situated at the back of the orbit, corresponds to the optic foramen, a short circular canal, which transmits the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery. It will thus be seen that there are nine openings communicating with each orbit, viz. the optic, foramen lacerum anterius, sphenoid-maxillary fissure, supraorbital foramen, infraorbital canal, anterior and posterior ethmoidal foramina, and lacrimal canal. To these may be added the external orbital foramina, when present.

**The Nasal Fossæ.**

The Nasal Fossæ are two large irregular cavities, situated in the middle line of the face, extending from the base of the cranium to the roof of the mouth, and separated from each other by a thin vertical septum. They communicate by two large apertures, the anterior nares, with the front of the face; and with the pharynx behind by the two posterior nares. These fossæ are much narrower above than below, and in the middle than at the anterior or posterior openings: their depth, which is considerable, is much greater in the middle than at either extremity. Each nasal fossa communicates with four sinuses, the frontal above, the sphenoidal behind, and the maxillary and ethmoidal on either side. Each fossa also communicates with four cavities: with the orbit by the lachrymal canal, with the mouth by the anterior palatine canal, with the cranium by the olfactory foramina, and with the sphenoid-maxillary fossa by the spheno-palatine foramen; and they occasionally communicate with each other by an aperture in the septum. The bones entering into their formation are fourteen in number: three of the cranium, the frontal, sphenoid, and ethmoid, and all the bones of the face, excepting the malar and lower jaw. Each cavity is bounded by a roof, a floor, an inner and an outer wall.

The *upper wall*, or roof (Fig. 159), is long, narrow, and concave from before backwards; it is formed in front by the nasal bones and nasal spine of the frontal, which are directed downwards and forwards; in the middle, by the cribiform lamella of the ethmoid, which is horizontal; and behind, by the under surface of the body of the sphenoid, and sphenoidal turbinated bones, which are directed
downwards and backwards. This surface presents, from before backwards, the internal aspect of the nasal bones; on their outer side, the suture formed between the nasal bone and the nasal process of the superior maxillary; on their inner side, the elevated crest which receives the nasal spine of the frontal, and the perpen-

dicular plate of the ethmoid, and articulates with its fellow of the opposite side; whilst the surface of the bones is perforated by a few small vascular apertures, and presents the longitudinal groove for the nasal nerve: further back is the transverse suture, connecting the frontal with the nasal in front, and the ethmoid behind, the olfactory foramina and nasal slit on the under surface of the cribiform plate, and the suture between it and the sphenoid behind: quite posteriorly are seen the sphenoidal turbinated bones, the orifices of the sphenoidal sinuses, and the articulation of the alae of the vomer with the under surface of the body of the sphenoid.

The floor is flattened from before backwards, concave from side to side, and wider in the middle than at either extremity. It is formed in front by the palate process of the superior maxillary; behind, by the palate process of the palate bone. This surface presents, from before backwards, the anterior nasal spine; behind this, the upper orifice of the anterior palatine canal; internally, the elevated crest which articulates with the vomer; and behind, the suture between the palate and superior maxillary bones, and the posterior nasal spine.

The inner wall, or septum (Fig. 160), is a thin vertical partition, which separates the nasal fossae from one another; it is occasionally perforated, so that the fossae communicate, and it is frequently deflected considerably to one side. It is formed, in front, by the crest of the nasal bones and nasal spine of the frontal; in the middle, by the perpendicular lamella of the ethmoid; behind, by the vomer and rostrum of the sphenoid; below, by the crest of the superior maxillary and palate bones. It presents, in front, a large triangular notch, which
receives the triangular cartilage of the nose; above, the lower orifices of the olfactory canal; and behind, the guttural edge of the vomer. Its surface is marked by numerous vascular and nervous canals and the groove for the nasopalatine nerve, and is traversed by sutures connecting the bones of which it is formed.

Fig. 160.—Inner Wall of Nasal Fossa, or Septum of Nose.

The outer wall (Fig. 159) is formed, in front, by the nasal process of the superior maxillary and lachrymal bones; in the middle, by the ethmoid and inner surface of the superior maxillary and inferior turbinated bones; behind, by the vertical plate of the palate bone, and the internal pterygoid plate of the sphenoid. This surface presents three irregular longitudinal passages, or meatuses, formed between three horizontal plates of bone that spring from it; they are termed the superior, middle, and inferior meatuses of the nose. The superior meatus, the smallest of the three, is situated at the upper and back part of each nasal fossa, occupying the posterior third of the outer wall. It is situated between the superior and middle turbinated bones, and has opening into it two foramina, the spheno-palatine at the back of its outer wall, the posterior ethmoidal cells at the front part of the upper wall. The opening of the sphenoidal sinuses is usually at the upper and back part of the nasal fossæ, immediately behind the superior turbinated bone. The middle meatus is situated between the middle and inferior turbinated bones, and occupies the posterior two-thirds of the outer wall of the nasal fossa. It presents two apertures. In front is the orifice of the infundibulum, by which the middle meatus communicates with the anterior ethmoidal cells, and through these with the frontal sinuses. At the centre of the outer wall is the orifice of the antrum, which varies somewhat as to its exact position in different skulls. The inferior meatus, the largest of the three, is the space between the inferior turbinated bone and the floor of the nasal fossa. It extends along the entire length of the outer wall of the nose, is broader in front than behind, and presents anteriorly the lower orifice of the lachrymal canal.
The Hyoid Bone is named from its resemblance to the Greek Upsilon; it is also called the **lingual bone**, because it supports the tongue, and gives attachment to its numerous muscles. It is a bony arch, shaped like a horse-shoe, and consisting of five segments, a body, two greater cornua, and two lesser cornua.

The **Body** forms the central part of the bone, and is of a quadrilateral form: its **anterior surface** (Fig. 161), convex, directed forwards and upwards, is divided into two parts by a vertical ridge, which descends along the median line, and is crossed at right angles by a horizontal ridge, so that this surface is divided into four muscular depressions. At the point of meeting of these two lines is a prominent elevation, the tubercle. The portion above the horizontal ridge is directed upwards, and is sometimes described as the superior border. The **anterior surface** gives attachment to the Geniohyoid in the greater part of its extent; above, to the Geniohyo-glossus; below, to the Mylohyoid, Stylo-hyoid, and aponeurosis of the Digastric (supra-hyoid aponeurosis), and between these to part of the Hyo-glossus. The **posterior surface** is smooth, concave, directed backwards and downwards, and separated from the epiglottis by the thyro-hyoid membrane, and by a quantity of loose areolar tissue. The **superior border** is rounded, and gives attachment to the thyro-hyoid membrane, and part of the Genio-hyo-glossi muscles. The **inferior border** gives attachment, in front, to the Sterno-hyoid; behind, to part of the Thyro-hyoid, and to the Omo-hyoid at its junction with the great cornu. The **lateral surfaces** are small, oval, convex facets, covered with cartilage for articulation with the greater cornua.

The **Greater Cornua** project backwards from the lateral surfaces of the body; they are flattened from above downwards, diminish in size from before backwards, and terminate posteriorly in a tubercle for the attachment of the thyro-hyoid ligament. Their outer surface gives attachment to the Hyo-glossus; their upper border, to the Middle constrictor of the pharynx; their lower border, to part of the Thyro-hyoid muscle.

The **Lesser Cornua** are two small conical-shaped eminences, attached by their bases to the angles of junction between the body and greater cornua, and giving attachment by their apices to the stylo-hyoid ligaments. In youth, the cornua are connected to the body by cartilaginous surfaces, and held together by ligaments; in middle life, the body and greater cornua usually become joined; and in old age, all the segments are united together, forming a single bone.

**Development.** By **five centres**: one for the body, and one for each cornu. Ossification commences in the body and greater cornua towards the end of foetal life, those of the cornua first appearing. Ossification of the lesser cornua commences some months after birth.

**Attachment of Muscles.** Sterno-hyoid, Thyro-hyoid, Omo-hyoid, aponeurosis of the Digastric, Stylo-hyoid, Mylo-hyoid, Genio-hyoid, Genio-hyo-glossus, Hyo-glossus, Middle constrictor of the pharynx, and occasionally a few fibres of the Lingualis. It also gives attachment to the thyro-hyoidean membrane and the stylo-hyoid, thyro-hyoid, and hyo-epiglottic ligaments.
STERNUM.

THE THORAX.

The Thorax, or chest, is an osseo-cartilaginous cage, intended to contain and protect the principal organs of respiration and circulation. It is the second in size of the three cavities connected with the spine, and is formed by the sternum and costal cartilages in front, the twelve ribs on each side, and the bodies of the dorsal vertebrae behind.

THE STERNUM.

The Sternum (Figs. 162, 163) is a flat narrow bone, situated in the median line of the front of the chest, and consisting, in the adult, of three portions. It has been likened to an ancient sword: the upper piece, representing the handle, is termed the manubrium; the middle and largest piece, which represents the chief part of the blade, is termed the gladiolus; and the inferior piece, which is likened to the point of the sword, is termed the ensiform or xiphoïd appendix. In its natural position, its inclination is oblique from above, downwards, and forwards. It is flattened in front, concave behind, broad above, becoming narrowed at the point where the first and second pieces are connected; after which it again widens a little, and is pointed at its extremity. Its average length in the adult is six inches, being rather longer in the male than in the female.

The First Piece of the sternum, or manubrium, is of a somewhat triangular form, broad and thick above, narrow below at its junction with the middle piece. Its anterior surface, convex from side to side, concave from above downwards, is smooth, and affords attachment on each side to the Pectoralis major and sternal origin of the Sterno-oido-mastoid muscle. In well-marked bones, the ridges limiting the attachment of these muscles are very distinct. Its posterior surface, concave and smooth, affords attachment on each side to the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles. The superior border, the thickest, presents at its centre the interclavicular notch; and on each side, an oval articular surface, directed upwards, backwards, and outwards, for articulation with the sternal end of the clavicle. The inferior border presents an oval rough surface, covered in the recent state with a thin layer of cartilage, for articulation with the second portion of the bone.1 The lateral borders are marked above by an articular depression for the first costal cartilage, and below by a small facet, which, with a similar facet on the upper angle of the middle portion of the bone, forms a notch for the reception of the costal cartilage of the second rib. These articular surfaces are separated by a narrow curved edge, which slopes from above downwards and inwards.

The Second Piece of the sternum, or gladiolus, considerably longer, narrower, and thinner than the first piece, is broader below than above. Its anterior surface is nearly flat, directed upwards and forwards, and marked by three transverse lines which cross the bone opposite the third, fourth, and fifth articular depressions. These lines are produced by the union of the four separate pieces of which this part of the bone consists at an early period of life. At the junction of the third and fourth pieces, is occasionally seen an orifice, the external fora-

---

1 The second piece of the sternum is united to the first either by an amphiarthrodial joint—a single piece of true fibro-cartilage uniting the segments—or by a diarthrodial joint, in which each bone is clothed with a distinct lamina of cartilage, adherent on one side, free and lined with synovial membrane on the other. In the latter case, the cartilage covering the gladiolus is continued without interruption on to the cartilages of the second ribs. Mr. Rivington has found the diarthrodial form of joint in about one third of the specimens examined by him. M. Maisonneuve more frequently. It appears to be rare in childhood, and is formed, in Mr. Rivington's opinion, from the amphiarthrodial form, by absorption. The diarthrodial joint seems to have no tendency to ossify at any age, while the amphiarthrodial is very liable to do so, and has been found ossified as early as thirty-four years of age. (See Rivington in " Med. Chir. Trans.," vol. lvii.)
Fig. 162.—Sternum and Costal Cartilages.

Fig. 163.—Posterior Surface of Sternum.
men; it varies in size and form in different individuals, and pierces the bone from before backwards. This surface affords attachment on each side to the sternal origin of the Pectoralis major. The *posterior surface*, slightly concave, is also marked by three transverse lines; but they are less distinct than those in front: this surface affords attachment below, on each side, to the Triangularis sterni muscle, and occasionally presents the posterior opening of the sternal foramen. The *superior border* presents an oval surface for articulation with the manubrium. The *inferior border* is narrow and articulates with the ensiform appendix. Each *lateral border* presents at each superior angle a small facet, which, with a similar facet on the manubrium, forms a cavity for the cartilage of the second rib: the four succeeding angular depressions receive the cartilages of the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth ribs, whilst each inferior angle presents a small facet, which with a corresponding one on the ensiform appendix, forms a notch for the cartilage of the seventh rib. These articular depressions are separated by a series of curved interarticular intervals, which diminish in length from above downwards, and correspond to the intercostal spaces. Most of the cartilages belonging to the true ribs, as will be seen from the foregoing description, articulate with the sternum at the line of junction of two of its primitive component segments. This is well seen in many of the lower animals, where the separate parts of the bone remain ununited longer than in man. In this respect a striking analogy exists between the mode of connection of the ribs with the vertebral column, and the connection of their cartilages with the sternum.

The *Third piece* of the sternum, the *ensiform* or *xiphoid appendix*, is the smallest of the three; it is thin and elongated in form, cartilaginous in structure in youth, but more or less ossified at its upper part in the adult. Its *anterior surface* affords attachment to the costo-xiphoïd ligaments; its *posterior surface*, to some of the fibres of the Diaphragm and Triangularis sterni muscles: its *lateral borders*, to the aponeurosis of the abdominal muscles. Above, it is continuous with the lower end of the gladiolus; below, by its pointed extremity, it gives attachment to the linea alba, and at each superior angle presents a facet for the lower half of the cartilage of the seventh rib. This portion of the sternum is very various in appearance, being sometimes pointed, broad and thin, sometimes bifid, or perforated by a round hole, occasionally curved, or deflected considerably to one or the other side.

*Structure.* The bone is composed of delicate cancellated texture, covered by a thin layer of compact tissue, which is thickest in the manubrium, between the articular facets for the clavicles.

*Development.* The sternum, including the ensiform appendix, is developed by six centres: one for the first piece or manubrium, four for the second piece or gladiolus, and one for the ensiform appendix. Up to the middle of foetal life, the sternum is entirely cartilaginous, and when ossification takes place, the ossific granules are deposited in the middle of the intervals between the articular depressions for the costal cartilages, in the following order (Fig. 164). In the first piece, between the fifth and sixth months; in the second and third, between the sixth and seventh months; in the fourth piece, at the ninth month; in the fifth, within the first year, or between the first and second years after birth; and in the ensiform appendix, between the second and the seventeenth or eighteenth years, by a single centre which makes its appearance at the upper part, and proceeds gradually downwards. To these may be added the occasional existence, as described by Breschet, of two small episternal centres, which make their appearance one on each side of the interclavicular notch. These are regarded by him as the anterior rudiments of a rib, of which the posterior rudiment is the anterior lamina of the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra. It occasionally happens that some of the segments are formed from more than one centre, the number and position of which vary (Fig. 168). Thus the first piece may have two, three, or even six centres. When two are present,
they are generally situated one above the other, the upper one being the larger; the second piece has seldom more than one; the third, fourth, and fifth pieces are often formed from two centres placed laterally, the irregular union of which will serve to explain the occasional occurrence of the sternal foramen (Fig. 167), or of the vertical fissure which occasionally intersects this part of the bone. Union of the various centres commences from below, and proceeds upwards, taking place in the following order (Fig. 165). The fifth piece is joined to the fourth soon after puberty; the fourth to the third, between the twentieth and twenty-fifth years; the third to the second, between the thirty-fifth and fortieth years; the second is occasionally joined to the first, especially at an advanced age.

Articulations. With the clavicles, and seven costal cartilages on each side.

Attachment of Muscles. The Pectoralis major, Sternoclido-mastoid, Sterno-hyoid, Sterno-thyroid, Triangularis sterni, aponeurosis of the Obliquus externus, Obliquus internus, and Transversalis muscles, Rectus and Diaphragm.

The Ribs.

The Ribs are elastic arches of bone, which form the chief part of the thoracic walls. They are twelve in number on each side; but this number may be increased by the development of a cervical or lumbar rib, or may be diminished to eleven. The first seven are connected behind with the spine, and in front with the ster-
num, through the intervention of the costal cartilages; they are called vertebro-
erternal, or true ribs. The remaining five are false ribs; of these the first three,
being connected behind with the spine, and in
front with the costal cartilages, are usually called the
vertebro-costal, but would be better named the
vertebro-chondral ribs: the last two are connected
with the vertebrae only, being free at their anterior
extremities; they are termed vertebral or floating
ribs. The ribs vary in their direction, the upper
tines being placed nearly at right angles with the
spine, the lower ones obliquely, so that the ante-
rior extremity is lower than the posterior. The
extent of obliquity reaches its maximum at the
ninth rib, and gradually decreases from that rib
to the twelfth. The ribs are situated one below
the other in such a manner that spaces are left
between them, which are called intercostal spaces.
Their length corresponds to the length of the ribs,
their breadth is more considerable in front than
behind, and between the upper than between the
lower ribs. The ribs increase in length from the
first to the seventh, when they again diminish to
the twelfth. In breadth they decrease from above
downwards; in each rib the greatest breadth is
at the sternal extremity.

Common characters of the Ribs (Fig. 168). A rib
from the middle of the series should be taken in
order to study the common characters of the ribs.
Each rib presents two extremities, a posterior
or vertebral, an anterior or sternal, and an inter-
vening portion, the body or shaft. The posterior
or vertebral extremity presents for examination a
head, neck, and tuberosity. The head (Fig. 169)
is marked by a kidney-shaped articular surface,
divided by a horizontal ridge into two facets for
articulation with the costal cavity formed by the
junction of the bodies of two contiguous dorsal
vertebrae; the upper facet is small, the inferior
one of large size; the ridge separating them serves
for the attachment of the interarticular ligament.
The neck is that flattened portion of the rib
which extends outwards from the head; it is about
an inch long, and rests upon the transverse process
of the lower of the two vertebrae with which the
head articulates. Its anterior surface is flat and
smooth, its posterior rough, for the attachment of
the middle costo-transverse ligament, and perfor-
ated by numerous foramina, the direction of
which is less constant than those found on the
inner surface of the shaft. Of its two borders the
superior presents a rough crest for the attachment
of the anterior costo-transverse ligament; its infe-
rior border is rounded. On the posterior surface
of the neck, just where it joins the shaft, and
nearer the lower than the upper border, is an
eminence—the tuberosity, or tubercle; it consists
of an articular and a non-articular portion. The
articular portion, the more internal and inferior of the two, presents a small oval surface for articulation with the extremity of the transverse process of the lower of the two vertebrae to which the head is connected. The non-articular portion is a rough elevation, which affords attachment to the posterior costo-transverse ligament. The tubercle is much more prominent in the upper than in the lower ribs.

The shaft is thin and flat, so as to present two surfaces, an external and an internal; and two borders, a superior and an inferior. The external surface is convex, smooth, and marked, at its back part, a little in front of the tuberosity, by a prominent line, directed obliquely from above, downwards and outwards; this gives attachment to a tendon of the Sacro-lumbalis muscle, or of one of its accessory portions, and is called the angle. At this point, the rib is bent in two directions. If the rib is laid upon its lower border, it will be seen that the anterior portion of the shaft, as far as the angle, rests upon this margin, while the vertebral end of the bone, beyond the angle, is bent inwards and at the same time tilted upwards. The interval between the angle and the tuberosity increases gradually from the second to the tenth rib. The portion of bone between these two parts is rounded, rough, and irregular, and serves for the attachment of the Longissimus dorsi. The portion of bone between the angle and sternal extremity is also slightly twisted upon its own axis, the external surface looking downwards behind the angle, a little upwards in front of it. This surface presents, towards its sternal extremity, an oblique line, the anterior angle. The internal surface is concave, smooth, directed a little upwards behind the angle; a little downwards in front of it. This surface is marked by a ridge which commences at the lower extremity of the head; it is strongly marked as far as the inner side of the angle, and gradually becomes lost at the junction of the anterior with the middle third of the bone. The interval between it and the inferior border is deeply grooved, to lodge the intercostal vessels and nerve. At the back part of the bone, this groove belongs to the inferior border, but just in front of the angle, where it is deepest and broadest, it corresponds to the internal surface. The superior edge of the groove is rounded; it serves for the attachment of the Internal intercostal muscle. The inferior edge corresponds to the lower margin of the rib, and gives attachment to the External intercostal. Within the groove are seen the orifices of numerous small foramina, which traverse the wall of the shaft obliquely from before backwards. The superior border, thick and rounded, is marked by an external and an internal lip, more distinct behind than in front; they serve for the attachment of the External and Internal intercostal muscles. The inferior border, thin and sharp, has attached the External intercostal muscle. The anterior or sternal extremity is flattened, and presents a porous oval concave depression, into which the costal cartilage is received.

**Peculiar Ribs.**

The ribs which require especial consideration are five in number, viz., the first, second, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth.

The first rib (Fig. 170) is one of the shortest and the most curved of all the
ribs; it is broad, flat, and placed horizontally at the upper part of the thorax, its surfaces looking upwards and downwards; and its borders inwards and outwards. The head is of small size, rounded, and presents only a single articular facet for articulation with the body of the first dorsal vertebra. The neck is narrow and rounded. The tuberosity, thick and prominent, rests on the outer border. There is no angle, and the shaft is not twisted on its axis. The upper

Peculiar Ribs.

Fig. 172.  
Single articular facet

Fig. 173.  
Single articular facet

Fig. 174.  
Single articular facet

surface of the shaft is marked by two shallow depressions, separated from one another by a ridge which becomes more prominent towards the internal border, where it terminates in a tubercle; this tubercle and ridge serve for the attachment of the Scalenus anticus muscle, the groove in front of it transmitting the sub-
clavian vein: that behind it, the subclavian artery. Between the groove for the subclavian artery and the tuberosity is a depression for the attachment of the Scalenus medius muscle. The under surface is smooth, and destitute of the groove observed on the other ribs. The outer border is convex, thick, and rounded; the inner, concave, thin, and sharp, and marked about its centre by the tubercle before mentioned. The anterior extremity is larger and thicker than any of the other ribs.

The second rib (Fig. 171) is much longer than the first, but bears a very considerable resemblance to it in the direction of its curvature. The non-articular portion of the tuberosity is occasionally only slightly marked. The angle is slight, and situated close to the tuberosity, and the shaft is not twisted, so that both ends touch any plane surface upon which it may be laid. The shaft is not horizontal, like that of the first rib; its outer surface, which is convex, looking upwards and a little outwards. It presents, near the middle, a rough eminence for the attachment of the second and third digitations of the Serratus magnus. The inner surface, smooth and concave, is directed downwards and a little inwards: it presents a short groove towards its posterior part.

The tenth rib (Fig. 172) has only a single articular facet on its head.

The eleventh and twelfth ribs (Figs. 173 and 174) have each a single articular facet on the head, which is of rather large size; they have no neck or tuberosity, and are pointed at the extremity. The eleventh has a slight angle and a shallow groove on the lower border. The twelfth has neither, and is much shorter than the eleventh.

Structure. The ribs consist of cancellous tissue, enclosed in a thin compact layer.

Development. Each rib, with the exception of the last two, is developed by three centres: one for the shaft, one for the head, and one for the tubercle. The last two have only two centres, that for the tubercle being wanting. Ossification commences in the body of the ribs at a very early period, before its appearance in the vertebras. The epiphysis of the head, which is of a slightly angular shape, and that for the tubercle, of a lenticular form, make their appearance between the sixteenth and twentieth years, and are not united to the rest of the bone until about the twenty-fifth year.

Attachment of Muscles. The Intercostals, Scalenus anticus, Scalenus medius, Scalenus posticus, Pectoralis minor, Serratus magnus, Obliquus externus, Transversalis, Quadratus lumborum, Diaphragm, Latissimus dorsi, Serratus posticus superior, Serratus posticus inferior, Sacro-lumbalis, Musculus accessorius ad sacro-lumbalem, Longissimus dorsi, Cervicalis ascendens, Levatores costarum.

THE COSTAL CARTILAGES.

The Costal Cartilages (Fig. 162, p. 208) are white elastic structures, which serve to prolong the ribs forward to the front of the chest, and contribute very materially to the elasticity of its walls. The first seven are connected with the sternum, the next three with the lower border of the cartilage of the preceding rib. The cartilages of the last two ribs, which have pointed extremities, float freely in the walls of the abdomen. Like the ribs, the costal cartilages vary in their length, breadth, and direction. They increase in length from the first to the seventh, then gradually diminish to the last. They diminish in breadth, as well as the intervals between them, from the first to the last. They are broad at their attachment to the ribs, and taper towards their sternal extremities, excepting the first two, which are of the same length throughout, and the sixth, seventh, and eighth, which are enlarged where their margins are in contact. In direction they also vary; the first descends a little, the second is horizontal, the third ascends slightly, whilst all the rest follow the course of the ribs for a short extent, and then ascend to the sternum or preceding cartilage. Each costal cartilage presents two surfaces, two borders, and two extremities. The anterior surface
THE UPPER EXTREMITIES.

is convex, and looks forwards, and upwards; that of the first gives attachment to the costo-clavicular ligament; that of the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth, at their sternal ends, to the Pectoralis major. The others are covered by, and give partial attachment to, some of the great flat muscles of the abdomen. The posterior surface is concave, and directed backwards and downwards, the six or seven inferior ones affording attachment to the Transversalis muscle, and the Diaphragm. Of the two borders, the superior is concave; the inferior, convex; they afford attachment to the Intercostal muscles, the upper border of the sixth giving attachment to the Pectoralis major muscle. The contiguous borders of the sixth, seventh, and eighth, and sometimes the ninth and tenth, costal cartilages present smooth oblong surfaces at the points where they articulate. Of the two extremities, the outer one is continuous with the osseous tissue of the rib to which it belongs. The inner extremity of the first is continuous with the sternum; the six succeeding ones have rounded extremities, which are received into shallow concavities on the lateral margins of the sternum. The inner extremities of the eighth, ninth, and tenth costal cartilages are pointed, and lie in contact with the cartilage above. Those of the eleventh and twelfth are free and pointed.

The costal cartilages are most elastic in youth, those of the false ribs being more so than the true. In old age, they become of a deep yellow color. Under certain diseased conditions, they are prone to ossify. Dr. Humphry's observations on this subject have led him to regard the ossification of the costal cartilages as a sign of disease rather than of age. "The ossification takes place in the first cartilage sooner than in the others; and in men more frequently, and at an earlier period of life, than in women."

Attachment of Muscles. The Subclavius, Stero-thyroid, Pectoralis major, Internal oblique, Transversalis, Rectus, Diaphragm, Triangularis sterni, Internal and External intercostals.

OF THE EXTREMITIES.

The Extremities, or limbs, are those long jointed appendages of the body, which are connected to the trunk by one end, and free in the rest of their extent. They are four in number: an upper or thoracic pair, connected with the thorax through the intervention of the shoulder, and subservient mainly to tact and prehension; and a lower pair, connected with the pelvis, intended for support and locomotion. Both pairs of limbs are constructed after one common type, so that they present numerous analogies; while at the same time certain differences are observed in each, dependent on the peculiar offices they perform.

OF THE UPPER EXTREMITIES.

The Upper Extremity consists of the arm, the forearm, and the hand. Its continuity with the trunk is established by means of the shoulder, which is homologous with the innominate or haunch bone in the lower limb.

OF THE SHOULDER.

The Shoulder is placed upon the upper part and side of the chest, connecting the upper extremity to the trunk; it consists of two bones—the clavicle, and the scapula.

THE CLAVICLE.

The Clavicle (clavis, a key), or collar-bone, forms the anterior portion of the shoulder. It is a long bone, curved somewhat like the italic letter f, and placed nearly horizontally at the upper and anterior part of the thorax, immediately above the first rib. It articulates by its inner extremity with the upper border
of the sternum, and, by its outer extremity, with the acromion process of the scapula; serving to sustain the upper extremity in the various positions which it assumes, whilst, at the same time, it allows of great latitude of motion in the arm. The clavicle is nearly horizontal. It presents a double curvature, when looked at in front; the convexity being forwards at the sternal end, and the concavity at the scapular end. Its outer third is flattened from above downwards, and extends, in the natural position of the bone, from a point opposite the coracoid process to the acromion. Its inner two-thirds are of a cylindrical form, and extend from the sternum to a point opposite the coracoid process of the scapula.

**External or Flattened Portion.** The outer third is flattened from above downwards, so as to present two surfaces, an upper and a lower; and two borders, an anterior and a posterior. The **upper surface** is flattened, rough, marked by impressions for the attachment of the Deltoid in front, and the Trapezius behind: between these two impressions, externally, a small portion of the bone is subcutaneous. The **under surface** is flattened. At its posterior border, where the prismatic joins with the flattened portion, is a rough eminence, the **conoid tubercle**; this, in the natural position of the bone, surmounts the coracoid process of the scapula, and gives attachment to the conoid ligament. From this tubercle, an oblique line, occasionally a depression, passes forwards and outwards to near the outer end of the anterior border; it is called the oblique line, and affords attachment to the trapezoid ligament. The **anterior border** is concave, thin, and rough; it limits the attachment of the Deltoid, and occasionally presents, near the centre, a tubercle, the **deltoid tubercle**, which is sometimes distinct in the living subject. The **posterior border** is convex, rough, broader than the anterior, and gives attachment to the Trapezius.

**Internal or Cylindrical Portion.** The cylindrical portion forms the inner two-thirds of the bone. It is curved, so as to be convex in front, concave behind, and is marked by three borders separating three surfaces. The **anterior border** is continuous with the anterior margin of the flat portion. At its commencement it is smooth and corresponds to the interval between the attachment of the Pectoralis major and Deltoid muscles; about the centre of the clavicle it divides to inclose an elliptical space for the attachment of the clavicular portion of the Pectoralis major. This space extends inwards as far as the anterior margin of the sternal extremity. The **superior border** is continuous with the posterior margin of the flat portion, and separates the anterior from the posterior surface. At its commencement it is smooth and rounded, becomes rough towards the inner third for the attachment of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, and terminates at the upper angle of the sternal extremity. The **posterior or subclavian border** separates the posterior from the inferior surface, and extends from the conoid tubercle to the rhomboid impression. It forms the posterior boundary of the groove for the Subclavius muscle, and gives attachment to the fascia which incloses that muscle. The **anterior surface** is included between the superior and anterior borders. It is directed forwards and a little upwards at the sternal end, outwards and still more upwards at the acromial extremity, where it becomes continuous with the upper surface of the flat portion. Externally, it is smooth, convex, nearly subcutaneous, being covered only by the Platysma; but corresponding to the inner half of the bone, it is divided by a more or less prominent line into two parts: an anterior portion, elliptical in form, rough, and slightly convex, for the attachment of the Pectoralis major; and an upper part, which is rough behind, for the attachment of the Sterno-clidio-mastoid. Between the two muscular impressions is a small subcutaneous interval. The **posterior or cervical surface** is smooth, flat, directed vertically, and looks backwards towards the root of the neck. It is limited, above, by the superior border; below, by the subclavian border; internally, by the margin of the sternal extremity; externally, it is continuous with the posterior border of the flat portion. It is concave from within outwards, and is in relation, by its lower
part, with the Suprascapular vessels. It gives attachment, near the sternal extremity, to part of the Sterno-hyoid muscle; and presents, at or near the middle, a foramen, directed obliquely outwards, which transmits the chief nutrient artery of the bone. Sometimes, there are two foramina on the posterior surface, or one on the posterior, the other on the inferior surface. The inferior or subclavian surface is bounded, in front, by the anterior border; behind, by the subclavian border. It is narrow internally, but gradually increases in width externally, and is continuous with the under surface of the flat portion. Commencing at the sternal extremity may be seen a small facet for articulation with the cartilage of the first rib. This is continuous with the articular surface at the sternal end of the bone. External to this is a broad rough impression, the rhomboid, rather more than an inch in length, for the attachment of the costo-clavicular (rhomboid) ligament. The remaining part of this surface is occupied by a longitudinal groove, the subclavian groove, broad and smooth externally, narrow and more uneven internally; it gives attachment to the subclavius muscle, and, by its anterior margin to the strong aponeurosis which incloses it. Not unfrequently this groove is subdivided into two parts by a longitudinal line, which gives attachment to the intermuscular septum of the subclavius muscle.

The internal or sternal end of the clavicle is triangular in form, directed inwards, and a little downwards and forwards; and presents an articular facet, concave from before backwards, convex from above downwards, which articulates with the sternum through the intervention of an interarticular fibro-cartilage; the circumferenece of the articular surface is rough, for the attachment of numerous ligaments. This surface is continuous with the costal facet on the inner end of the inferior or subclavian surface, which articulates with the cartilage of the first rib.

The outer or acromial extremity, directed outwards and forwards, presents a small, flattened, oval facet, which looks obliquely downwards for articulation with the acromion process of the scapula. The direction of this surface serves to explain the greater frequency of dislocation upwards rather than downwards,
beneath the acromion process. The circumference of the articular facet is rough, especially above, for the attachment of the acromio-clavicular ligaments.

Peculiarities of the Bone in the Sexes and in Individuals. In the female, the clavicle is generally less curved, smoother, and more slender than in the male. In those persons who perform considerable manual labor, which brings into constant action the muscles connected with this bone, it acquires considerable bulk, becomes shorter, more curved, its ridges for muscular attachment become prominently marked, and its sternal end of a prismatic form. The right clavicle is generally heavier, thicker, and rougher, and often shorter, than the left.

Structure. The shaft, as well as the extremities, consists of cancellous tissue, invested in a compact layer much thicker in the middle than at either end. The clavicle is highly elastic, by reason of its curves. From the experiments of Mr. Ward, it has been shown that it possesses sufficient longitudinal elastic force to project its own weight nearly two feet on a level surface, when a smart blow is struck on it; and sufficient transverse elastic force, opposite the centre of its anterior convexity, to throw its own weight about a foot. This extent of elastic power must serve to moderate very considerably the effect of concussions received upon the point of the shoulder.

Development. By two centres: one for the shaft, and one for the sternal extremity. The centre for the shaft appears very early, before any other bone; the centre for the sternal end makes its appearance about the eighteenth or twentieth year, and unites with the rest of the bone a few years after.

Articulations. With the sternum, scapula, and cartilage of the first rib.

Attachment of Muscles. The Sterno-cleido-mastoid, Trapezius, Pectoralis major, Deltoid, Subclavius, Sterno-hyoid, and Platysma.

The Scapula.

The Scapula forms the back part of the shoulder. It is a large flat bone, triangular in shape, situated at the posterior aspect and side of the thorax, between the first and eighth ribs, its posterior border or base being about an inch from, and nearly parallel with the spinous processes of the vertebrae. It presents for examination two surfaces, three borders, and three angles.

The anterior surface, or venter (Fig. 177), presents a broad concavity, the sub- scapular fossa. It is marked, in the posterior two-thirds, by several oblique ridges, which pass from behind obliquely outwards and upwards, the anterior third being smooth. The oblique ridges give attachment to the tendinous intersections, and the surfaces between them, to the fleshy fibres, of the Subscapularis muscle. The anterior third of the fossa, which is smooth, is covered by, but does not afford attachment to, the fibres of this muscle. This surface is separated from the posterior border by a smooth triangular margin at the superior and inferior angles, and in the interval between these by a narrow edge which is often deficient. This marginal surface affords attachment throughout its entire extent to the Serratus magnus muscle. The subscapular fossa presents a transverse depression at its upper part, called the subscapular angle; it is in this situation that the fossa is deepest; so that the thickest part of the Subscapularis muscle lies in a line perpendicular to the plane of the glenoid cavity, and must consequently operate most effectively on the humerus which is contained in that cavity.

The posterior surface, or dorsum (Fig. 178), is arched from above downwards, alternately concave and convex from side to side. It is subdivided unequally into two parts by the spine; the portion above the spine is called the supraspinous fossa, and that below it the infraspinous fossa.

The supraspinous fossa, the smaller of the two, is concave, smooth, and broader at the vertebral than at the humeral extremity. It affords attachment by its inner two-thirds to the Supraspinatus muscle.
The *infraespinoe fossa* is much larger than the preceding; towards its vertebral margin a shallow concavity is seen at its upper part; its centre presents a prominent convexity, whilst towards the axillary border is a deep groove, which runs from the upper towards the lower part. The inner two-thirds of this sur-

Fig. 177.—Left Scapula. Anterior Surface, or Venter.

face affords attachment to the Infraspinatus muscle; the outer third is only covered by it, without giving origin to its fibres. This surface is separated from the axillary border by an elevated ridge, which runs from the lower part of the glenoid cavity, downwards and backwards to the posterior border, about an inch above the inferior angle. The ridge serves for the attachment of a strong apo-
neurosis, which separates the Infraspinatus from the two Teres muscles. The surface of bone between this line and the axillary border is narrow in the upper two-thirds of its extent, and traversed near its centre by a groove for the passage of the dorsalis scapule vessels; it affords attachment to the Teres minor. Its lower third presents a broader, somewhat triangular surface, which gives origin to the Teres major, and over which glides the Latissimus dorsi; sometimes the
latter muscle takes origin by a few fibres from this part. The broad and narrow portions of bone above alluded to are separated by an oblique line, which runs from the axillary border, downwards and backwards: to it is attached the aponeurosis separating the two Teres muscles from each other.

Fig. 178.—Left Scapula. Posterior Surface, or Dorsum.

The *Spine* is a prominent plate of bone, which crosses obliquely the inner four-fifths of the dorsum of the scapula at its upper part, and separates the supra- from the infra-spinous fossa: it commences at the vertebral border by a smooth triangular surface, over which the Trapezius glides, separated from the bone by a bursa; and, gradually becoming more elevated as it passes forwards, terminates in the acromion process which overhangs the shoulder-joint. The spine is triangular, and flattened from above downwards, its apex corresponding to the posterior border; its base, which is directed outwards, to the neck of the scapula. It presents two surfaces and three borders. Its *superior surface* is concave assists in forming the supraspinous fossa, and affords attachment to
part of the Supraspinatus muscle. Its inferior surface forms part of the infra-spinous fossa, gives origin to part of the Infraspinatus muscle, and presents near its centre the orifice of a nutrient canal. Of the three borders, the anterior is attached to the dorsum of the bone; the posterior, or crest of the spine, is broad, and presents two lips, and an intervening rough interval. To the superior lip is attached the Trapezius, to the extent shown in the figure. A very rough tubercle is generally seen occupying that portion of the spine which receives the insertion of the middle and inferior fibres of this muscle. To the inferior lip, throughout its whole length, is attached the Deltoid. The interval between the lips is also partly covered by the fibres of these muscles. The external border, the shortest of the three, is slightly concave, its edges thick and round, continuous above with the under surface of the acromion process; below, with the neck of the scapula. The narrow portion of bone external to this border serves to connect the supra- and infra-spinous fossa.

The Acromion process, so called from forming the summit of the shoulder (ἀκρομίον, a summit; ἄκρος, the shoulder), is a large and somewhat triangular process, flattened from behind forwards, directed at first a little outwards, and then curving forwards and upwards, so as to overhang the glenoid cavity. Its upper surface, directed upwards, backwards, and outwards, is convex, rough, and gives attachment to some fibres of the Deltoid. Its under surface is smooth and concave. Its outer border, which is thick and irregular, affords attachment to the Deltoid muscle. Its inner margin, shorter than the outer, is concaove, gives attachment to a portion of the Trapezius muscle, and presents about its centre a small oval surface, for articulation with the acromial end of the clavicle. Its apex, which corresponds to the point of meeting of these two borders in front, is thin, and has attached to it the coraco-acromial ligament.

Of the three borders or costae of the scapula, the superior is the shortest and thinnest; it is concave, terminating at its inner extremity at the superior angle, at its outer extremity at the coracoid process. At its outer part is a deep semicircular notch, the suprascapular, formed partly by the base of the coracoid process. This notch is converted into a foramen by the transverse ligament, and serves for the passage of the suprascapular nerve. The adjacent margin of the superior border affords attachment to the Omo-hyoid muscle. The external, or axillary border, is the thickest of the three. It commences above at the lower margin of the glenoid cavity, and inclines obliquely downwards and backwards to the inferior angle. Immediately below the glenoid cavity, is a rough impression, about an inch in length, which affords attachment to the long head of the Triceps muscle; to this succeeds a longitudinal groove, which extends as far as its lower third, and affords origin to part of the Subscapularis muscle. The inferior third of this border, which is thin and sharp, serves for the attachment of a few fibres of the Teres major behind, and of the Subscapularis in front. The internal, or vertebral, border, also named the base, is the longest of the three, and extends from the superior to the inferior angle of the bone. It is arched, intermediate in thickness between the superior and the external borders, and the portion of it above the spine is bent considerably outwards, so as to form an obtuse angle with the lower part. The vertebral border presents an anterior lip, a posterior lip, and an intermediate space. The anterior lip affords attachment to the Serratus magnus; the posterior lip, to the Supraspinatus above the spine, the Infraspinatus below; the interval between the two lips, to the Levator anguli scapule above the triangular surface at the commencement of the spine; the Rhomboideus minor, to the edge of that surface; the Rhomboideus major being attached by means of a fibrous arch, connected above to the lower part of the triangular surface at the base of the spine, and below to the lower part of the posterior border.

Of the three angles, the superior, formed by the junction of the superior and internal borders, is thin, smooth, rounded, somewhat inclined outwards, and gives attachment to a few fibres of the Levator anguli scapule muscle. The
inferior angle, thick and rough, is formed by the union of the vertebral and axillary borders, its outer surface affording attachment to the Teres major, and occasionally a few fibres of the Latissimus dorsi. The anterior angle is the thickest part of the bone, and forms what is called the head of the scapula. The head presents a shallow, pyriform, articular surface, the glenoid cavity (glen, a socket), whose longest diameter is from above downwards, and its direction outwards and forwards. It is broader than above; at its apex is attached the long tendon of the Biceps muscle. It is covered with cartilage in the recent state; and its margins, slightly raised, give attachment to a fibro-cartilaginous structure, the glenoid ligament, by which its cavity is deepened. The neck of the scapula is the slightly depressed surface which surrounds the head; it is more distinct on the posterior than on the anterior surface, and below than above. In the latter situation, it has, arising from it, a thick prominence, the coracoid process.

The Coracoid process, so called from its fancied resemblance to a crow’s beak (cor, a crow), is a thick curved process of bone, which arises by a broad base from the upper part of the neck of the scapula; it is directed at first upwards and inwards; then, becoming smaller, it changes its direction, and passes forwards and outwards. The ascending portion, flattened from before backwards, presents in front a smooth concave surface, over which passes the Subscapularis muscle. The horizontal portion is flattened from above downwards; its upper surface is convex and irregular; its under surface is smooth; its anterior border is rough, and gives attachment to the Pectoralis minor; its posterior border is also rough for the coraco-acromial ligament, while the apex is embraced by the conjoined tendon of origin of the short head of the Biceps and of the Coraco-brachialis. At the inner side of the root of the coracoid process is a rough impression for the attachment of the conoid ligament; and, running from it obliquely forwards and outwards on the upper surface of the horizontal portion, an elevated ridge for the attachment of the trapezoid ligament.

Structure. In the head, processes, and all the thickened parts of the bone, it is cellular in structure, of a dense compact tissue in the rest of its extent. The centre and upper part of the dorsum, but especially the former, are usually so thin as to be semi-transparent; occasionally the bone is found wanting in this situation, and the adjacent muscles come into contact.

Development (Fig. 179). By seven centres: one for the body, two for the coracoid process, two for the acromion, one for the posterior border, and one for the inferior angle.

Ossification of the body of the scapula commences about the second month of fetal life, by the formation of an irregular quadrilateral plate of bone, immediately behind the glenoid cavity. This plate extends itself so as to form the chief part of the bone, the spine growing up from its posterior surface about the third month. At birth, the chief part of the scapula is osseous, only the coracoid and acromion processes, the posterior border, and inferior angle, being cartilaginous. About the first year after birth, ossification takes place in the middle of the coracoid process; which usually becomes joined with the rest of the bone at the time when the other centres make their appearance. Between the fifteenth and seventeenth years, ossification of the remaining centres takes place in quick succession, and in the following order: first, near the base of the acromion, and in the root of the coracoid process, the latter appearing in the form of a broad scale; secondly, in the inferior angle and contiguous part of the posterior border; thirdly, near the extremity of the acromion: fourthly, in the posterior border. The acromion process, besides being formed of two separate nuclei, has its base formed by an extension into it of the centre of ossification which belongs to the spine, the extent of which varies in different cases. The two separate nuclei unite, and then join with the extension carried in from the spine. These various epiphyses become joined to the bone between the ages of twenty-two and twenty-five years. Sometimes failure of union between the
acromion process and spine occurs, the junction being effected by fibrous tissue, or by an imperfect articulation; in some cases of supposed fracture of the acromion with ligamentous union, it is probable that the detached segment was never united to the rest of the bone.

Fig. 179.—Plan of the Development of the Scapula. By Seven Centres.

The epiphyses (except one for the coracoid process) appear from fifteen to seventeen years, and unite between twenty-two and twenty-five years of age.

Articulations. With the humerus and clavicle.

Attachment of Muscles. To the anterior surface, the Subscapularis, posterior surface, Supraspinatus, Infraspinatus; spine, Trapezius, Deltoid; superior border, Omo-hyoid; vertebral border, Serratus magnus, Levator anguli scapulae, Rhomboideus, minor and major; axillary border, Triceps, Teres minor, Teres major; glenoid cavity, long head of the Biceps; coracoid process, short head of the Biceps, Coraco-brachialis, Pectoralis minor; acromion process, the Platysma; and to the inferior angle occasionally a few fibres of the Latissimus dorsi.

The Humerus.

The Humerus is the longest and largest bone of the upper extremity; it presents for examination a shaft and two extremities.

The Upper Extremity is the largest part of the bone; it presents a rounded head, joined to the shaft by a constricted part, called the neck, and two other eminences, the greater and lesser tuberosities (Fig. 180).

The head, nearly hemispherical in form, is directed upwards, inwards, and a little backwards; its surface is smooth, coated with cartilage in the recent state, and articulates with the glenoid cavity of the scapula. The circumference of its articular surface is slightly constricted, and is termed the anatomical neck, in
THE SKELETON.

Fig. 180.—Left Humerus. Anterior View.
contradistinction to the constriction which exists below the tuberosities. The latter is called the *surgical neck*, from its often being the seat of fracture. It should be remembered, however, that fracture of the *anatomical neck* does sometimes, though rarely, occur.

The *anatomical neck* is obliquely directed, forming an obtuse angle with the shaft. It is more distinctly marked in the lower half of its circumference than in the upper half, where it presents a narrow groove, separating the head from the tuberosities. Its circumference affords attachment to the capsular ligament, and is perforated by numerous vascular foramina.

The *greater tuberosity* is situated on the outer side of the head and lesser tuberosity. Its upper surface is rounded and marked by three flat facets, separated by two slight ridges: the anterior facet gives attachment to the tendon of the *Supraspinatus*: the middle one to the *Infraspinatus*: the posterior facet, and the shaft of the bone below it, to the *Teres minor*. The outer surface of the great tuberosity is convex, rough, and continuous with the outer side of the shaft.

The *lesser tuberosity* is more prominent, although smaller, than the greater: it is situated in front of the head, and is directed inwards and forwards. Its summit presents a prominent facet for the insertion of the tendon of the *Subscapularis* muscle. The tuberosities are separated from one another by a deep groove, the *bicipital groove*, so called from its lodging the long tendon of the Biceps muscle, with which runs a branch of the anterior circumflex artery. It commences above between the two tuberosities, passes obliquely downwards and a little inwards, and terminates at the junction of the upper with the middle third of the bone. It is deep and narrow at the commencement, and becomes shallow and a little broader as it descends. In the recent state it is covered with a thin layer of cartilage, lined by a prolongation of the synovial membrane of the shoulder-joint, and receives part of the tendon of insertion of the *Latissimus dorsi* about its centre.

The *Shaft* of the humerus is almost cylindrical in the upper half of its extent, prismatic and flattened below, and presents three borders and three surfaces for examination.

The *anterior border* runs from the front of the great tuberosity above to the coronoid depression below, separating the internal from the external surface. Its upper part is very prominent and rough, forms the outer lip of the bicipital groove, and serves for the attachment of the tendon of the *Pectoralis major*. About its centre is seen the rough deltoid impression; below, it is smooth and rounded, affording attachment to the *Brachialis*.

The *external border* runs from the back part of the greater tuberosity to the external condyle, and separates the external from the posterior surface. It is rounded and indistinctly marked in its upper half, serving for the attachment of the external head of the Biceps muscle; its centre is traversed by a broad but shallow oblique depression, the *musculo-spiral groove*; its lower part is marked by a prominent rough margin, a little curved from behind forwards, which presents an anterior lip for the attachment of the *Supinator longus* above and *Extensor carpi radialis longior* below, a posterior lip for the Biceps, and an interstice for the attachment of the external intermuscular septum.

The *internal border* extends from the lesser tuberosity to the internal condyle. Its upper third is marked by a prominent ridge, forming the inner lip of the bicipital groove, and gives attachment from above downwards to the tendons of the *Latissimus dorsi*, *Teres major*, and part of the origin of the inner head of the Biceps. About its centre is a rough ridge for the attachment of the *Coracobrachialis*, and just below this is seen the entrance of the nutrient canal directed downwards. Sometimes there is a second canal higher up, which takes a similar direction. The inferior third of this border is raised into a slight ridge, which becomes very prominent below; it presents an anterior lip for the attachment
of the Brachialis anticus, a posterior lip for the internal head of the Triceps, and an intermediate space for the internal intermuscular septum.

The external surface is directed outwards above, where it is smooth, rounded, and covered by the Deltoid muscle; forwards below, where it is slightly concave from above downwards, and gives origin to part of the Brachialis anticus muscle. About the middle of this surface is seen a rough triangular impression for the insertion of the Deltoid muscle; and below it the musculo-spiral groove, directed obliquely from behind, forwards, and downwards, and transmitting the musculo-spiral nerve and superior profunda artery.

The internal surface, less extensive than the external, is directed forwards above, forwards and inwards below; at its upper part it is narrow, and forms the bicapital groove. The middle part of this surface is slightly rough for the attachment of the Coraco-brachialis; its lower part is smooth, concave, and gives attachment to the Brachialis anticus muscle.1

The posterior surface (Fig. 181) appears somewhat twisted, so that its upper part is directed a little inwards, its lower part backwards and a little outwards. Nearly the whole of this surface is covered by the external and internal heads of the Triceps, the former of which is attached to its upper and outer part, the latter to its inner and back part, the two being separated by the musculo-spiral groove.

The Lower Extremity is flattened from before backwards, and curved slightly forwards; it terminates below in a broad articular surface, which is divided into two parts by a slight ridge. On either side of the articular surface are the external and internal condyles. The articular surface extends a little lower than the condyles, and is curved slightly forwards, so as to occupy the more anterior part of the bone; its greatest breadth is in the transverse diameter, and it is obliquely directed, so that its inner extremity occupies a lower level than the outer. The outer portion of the articular surface presents a smooth rounded eminence, which has received the name of the lesser or radial head of the humerus; it articulates with the cup-shaped depression on the head of the radius, and is limited to the front and lower part of the bone, not extending as far back as the other portion of the articular surface. On the inner side of this eminence is a shallow groove, in which is received the inner margin of the head of the radius. The inner or troclear portion of the articular surface presents a deep depression between two well-marked borders. This surface is convex from before backwards, concave from side to side, and occupies the anterior lower and posterior parts of the bone. The external border, less prominent than the internal, corresponds to the interval between the radius and the ulna. The internal border is thicker, more prominent, and consequently of greater length than the external. The grooved portion of the articular surface fits accurately within the greater sigmoid cavity of the ulna; it is broader and deeper on the posterior than on the anterior aspect of the bone, and is inclined obliquely from behind forwards, and from without inwards. Above the back part of the trochlear surface is a deep triangular depression, the olecranon fossa, in which is received

---

1 A small hook-shaped process of bone, varying from \( \frac{1}{8} \) to \( \frac{1}{4} \) of an inch in length, is not unfrequently found projecting from the inner surface of the shaft of the humerus two inches above the internal condyle. It is curved downwards, forwards, and inwards, and its pointed extremity is connected to the internal border, just above the inner condyle, by a ligament or fibrous band; completing an arch, through which the median nerve and brachial artery pass, when these structures deviate from their usual course. Sometimes the nerve alone is transmitted through it, or the nerve may be accompanied by the ulnar-interosseous artery, in cases of high division of the brachial. A well-marked groove is usually found behind the process, in which the nerve and artery are lodged. This space is analogous to the supracondyloid foramen in many animals, and probably serves in them to protect the nerve and artery from compression during the contraction of the muscles in this region. A detailed account of this process is given by Dr. Struthers, in his "Anatomical and Physiological Observations," p. 202. An accessory portion of the Coraco-brachialis muscle is frequently connected with this process, according to Mr. J. Wood: Journal of Anat. and Phy. No. 1, Nov. 1866, p. 47.
the summit of the olecranon process in extension of the forearm. Above the front part of the trochlear surface is seen a smaller depression, the coronoid fossa, which receives the coronoid process of the ulna during flexion of the forearm. These fossae are separated from one another by a thin transparent lamina of bone, which is sometimes perforated; their margins afford attachment to the anterior and posterior ligaments of the elbow-joint, and they are lined in the recent state by the synovial membrane of this articulation. Above the front part of the radial tuberosity is seen a slight depression which receives the anterior border of the head of the radius when the forearm is strongly flexed. The external condyle is a small tubercular eminence, less prominent than the internal, curved a little forwards, and giving attachment to the external lateral ligament of the elbow-joint, and to a tendon common to the origin of some of the extensor and supinator muscles. The internal condyle, larger and more prominent than the external, is directed a little backwards: it gives attachment to the internal lateral ligament, to the Pronator radii teres, and to a tendon common to the origin of some of the flexor muscles of the forearm. The ulnar nerve runs in a groove at the back of the internal condyle, or between it and the olecranon process. These eminences are directly continuous above with the external and internal borders. The great prominence of the inner one renders it more liable to fracture.

Structures. The extremities consist of cancellous tissue, covered with a thin compact layer; the shaft is composed of a cylinder of compact tissue, thicker at the centre than at the extremities, and hollowed out by a large medullary canal, which extends along its whole length.

Development. By seven centres (Fig. 182): one for the shaft, one for the head, one for the greater tuberosity, one for the radial head, one for the trochlear portion of the articular surface, and one for each condyle. The centre for the shaft appears very early, soon after ossification has commenced in the clavicle, and soon extends towards the extremities. At birth the humerus is ossified nearly in its whole length, the extremities remaining cartilaginous. Between the first and second years ossification commences in the head of the bone, and between the second and third years the centre for the tuberosities makes its appearance, usually by a single ossifer point, but sometimes, according to Bécuard, by one for each tuberosity, that for the lesser being small, and not appearing until after the fourth
year. By the fifth year the centres for the head and tuberosities have enlarged and become joined, so as to form a single large epiphysis.

The lower end of the humerus is developed in the following manner: At the end of the second year ossification commences in the radial portion of the articular surface, and from this point extends inwards, so as to form the chief part of the articular end of the bone, the centre for the inner part of the articular surface not appearing until about the age of twelve. Ossification commences in the internal condyle about the fifth year, and in the external one not until about the thirteenth or fourteenth year. About the sixteenth or seventeenth year the outer condyle and both portions of the articular surface (having already joined) unite with the shaft: at eighteen years the inner condyle becomes joined, whilst the upper epiphysis, although the first formed, is not united until about the twentieth year.

Articulations. With the glenoid cavity of the scapula, and with the ulna and radius.

Attachment of Muscles. To the greater tuberosity, the Supraspinatus, Infraspinatus, and Teres minor; to the lesser tuberosity, the Subscapularis; to the anterior bicipital ridge, the Pectoralis major; to the posterior bicipital ridge and groove, the Latissimus dorsi and Teres major; to the shaft, the Deltoid, Coraco-brachialis, Brachialis anticus, external and internal heads of the Triceps; to the internal condyle, the Pronator radii teres, and common tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis, Palmaris longus, Flexor digitorum sublimis, and Flexor carpi ulnaris; to the external condyloid ridge, the Supinator longus, and Extensor carpi radialis longior; to the external condyle, the common tendon of the Extensor carpi radialis brevior, Extensor communis digitorum, Extensor minimi digiti, and Extensor carpi ulnaris, the Anconeus and Supinator brevis.

The Forearm is that portion of the upper extremity which is situated between the elbow and wrist. It is composed of two bones, the Ulna and the Radius.

The Ulna.

The Ulna (Figs. 183, 184), so called from its forming the elbow (ἀρθρόν), is a long bone, prismatic in form, placed at the inner side of the forearm, parallel with the radius. It is the larger and longer of the two bones. Its upper extremity, of great thickness and strength, forms a large part of the articulation of the elbow-joint; it diminishes in size from above downwards, its lower extremity being very small, and excluded from the wrist-joint by the interposition of an interarticular fibro-cartilage. It is divisible into a shaft, and two extremities.

The Upper Extremity, the strongest part of the bone, presents for examination two large curved processes, the Olecranon process and the Coronoid process; and two concave articular cavities, the greater and lesser Sigmoid cavities.

The Olecranon Process (ὀλεκράνων, elbow; ὄσπις, head) is a large thick curved
Fig. 183.—Bones of Left Forearm. Anterior Surface.
eminence, situated at the upper and back part of the ulna. It rises somewhat higher than the coronoid, and is curved forwards at the summit so as to present a prominent tip, its base being contracted where it joins the shaft. This is the narrowest part of the upper end of the ulna, and consequently, the most usual seat of fracture. The posterior surface of the olecranon, directed backwards, is triangular, smooth, subcutaneous, and covered by a bursa. Its upper surface, directed upwards, is of a quadrilateral form, marked behind by a rough impression for the attachment of the Triceps muscle; and in front, near the margin, by a slight transverse groove for the attachment of part of the posterior ligament of the elbow-joint. Its anterior surface is smooth, concave, covered with cartilage in the recent state, and forms the upper and back part of the great sigmoid cavity. The lateral borders present a continuation of the same groove that was seen on the margin of the superior surface; they serve for the attachment of ligaments, viz., the back part of the internal lateral ligament internally, the posterior ligament externally. The Olecranon process, in its structure as well as in its position and use, resembles the Patella in the lower limb; and, like it, sometimes exists as a separate piece, not united to the rest of the bone.¹

The Coronoid Process (œcipium, a crow’s beak) is a rough triangular eminence of bone which projects horizontally forwards from the upper and front part of the ulna, forming the lower part of the great sigmoid cavity. Its base is continuous with the shaft, and of considerable strength, so much so that fracture of it is an accident of rare occurrence. Its apex is pointed, slightly curved upwards, and received into the coronoid depression of the humerus in flexion of the forearm. Its upper surface is smooth, concave, and forms the lower part of the great sigmoid cavity. The under surface is concave, and marked internally by a rough impression for the insertion of the Brachialis anticus. At the junction of this surface with the shaft is a rough eminence, the tubercle of the ulna, for the attachment of the oblique ligament. Its outer surface presents a narrow, oblong, articular depression, the lesser sigmoid cavity. The inner surface, by its prominent free margin, serves for the attachment of part of the internal lateral ligament. At the front part of this surface is a small rounded eminence for the attachment of one head of the Flexor digitorum sublimis, behind the eminence, a depression for part of the origin of the Flexor profundus digitorum, and descending from the eminence, a ridge, which gives attachment to one head of the Pronator radii teres. Occasionally, the Flexor longus pollicis arises from the lower part of the Coronoid process by a rounded bundle of muscular fibres.

The Greater Sigmoid Cavity, so called from its resemblance to the old shape of the Greek letter χ, is a semilunar depression of large size, formed by the olecranon and coronoid processes, and serving for articulation with the trochlear surface of the humerus. About the middle of either lateral border of this cavity is a notch, which contracts it somewhat, and serves to indicate the junction of the two processes of which it is formed. The cavity is concave from above downwards, and divided into two lateral parts by a smooth, elevated ridge, which runs from the summit of the olecranon to the tip of the coronoid process. Of these two portions, the internal is the larger; it is slightly concave transversely, the external portion being nearly plane from side to side. The Lesser Sigmoid Cavity is a narrow, oblong, articular depression, placed on the outer side of the coronoid process, and serving for articulation with the head of the radius. It is concave from before backwards; and its extremities, which are prominent, serve for the attachment of the orbicular ligament.

The Shaft is prismatic in form at its upper part, and curved from behind forwards, and from within outwards, so as to be convex behind and externally;

¹ Professor Owen regards the olecranon as homologous not with the patella, but with an extension of the upper end of the fibula above the knee-joint, which is met with in the Ornithorhynchus, Echidna, and some other animals. (Owen, "On the Nature of Jams.")
its central part is quite straight; its lower part rounded, smooth, and bent a little outwards; it tapers gradually from above downwards, and presents for examination three borders, and three surfaces.

The anterior border commences above at the prominent inner angle of the coronoid process, and terminates below in front of the styloid process. It is well marked above, smooth and rounded in the middle of its extent, and affords attachment to the Flexor profundus digitorum: sharp and prominent in its lower fourth for the attachment of the Pronator quadratus. It separates the anterior from the internal surface.

The posterior border commences above at the apex of the triangular surface at the back part of the olecranon, and terminates below at the back part of the styloid process; it is well marked in the upper three-fourths, and gives attachment to an aponeurosis common to the Flexor carpi ulnaris, the Extensor carpi ulnaris, and the Flexor profundus digitorum muscles; its lower fourth is smooth and rounded. This border separates the internal from the posterior surface.

The external or interosseous border commences above by two lines, which converge one from each extremity of the lesser sigmoid cavity, inclosing between them a triangular space for the attachment of part of the Supinator brevis, and terminates below at the middle of the head of the ulna. Its two middle fourths are very prominent, and serve for the attachment of the interosseous membrane; its lower fourth is smooth and rounded. This border separates the anterior from the posterior surface.

The anterior surface, much broader above than below, is concave in the upper three-fourths of its extent, and affords attachment to the Flexor profundus digitorum; its lower fourth, also concave, to the Pronator quadratus. The lower fourth is separated from the remaining portion of the bone by a prominent ridge, directed obliquely from above downwards and inwards; this ridge marks the extent of attachment of the Pronator above. At the junction of the upper with the middle third of the bone is the nutrient canal, directed obliquely upwards and inwards.

The posterior surface, directed backwards and outwards, is broad and concave above, somewhat narrower and convex in the middle of its course, narrow, smooth, and rounded below. It presents above an oblique ridge, which runs from the posterior extremity of the lesser sigmoid cavity, downwards to the posterior border; the triangular surface above this ridge receives the insertion of the Anconeous muscle, whilst the ridge itself affords attachment to the Supinator brevis. The surface of bone below this is subdivided by a longitudinal ridge, sometimes called the perpendicular line, into two parts: the internal part is smooth, concave, and gives origin to (occasionally is merely covered by) the Extensor carpi ulnaris; the external portion, wider and rougher, gives attachment from above downwards to part of the Supinator brevis, the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, the Extensor secundi internodii pollicis, and the Extensor indicis muscles.

The internal surface is broad and concave above, narrow and convex below. It gives attachment by its upper three-fourths to the Flexor profundus digitorum muscle: its lower fourth is subcutaneous.

The Lower Extremity of the ulna is of small size, and excluded from the articulation of the wrist-joint. It presents for examination two eminences, the outer and larger of which is a rounded articular eminence, termed the head of the ulna; the inner, narrower and more projecting, is a non-articular eminence, the styloid process. The head presents an articular facet, part of which, of an oval form, is directed downwards, and plays on the surface of the triangular fibro-cartilage, which separates this bone from the wrist-joint; the remaining portion, directed outwards, is narrow, convex, and received into the sigmoid cavity of the radius. The styloid process projects from the inner and back part of the bone, and descends a little lower than the head, terminating in a rounded summit, which affords attachment to the internal lateral ligament of the wrist.
THE SKELETON.

Fig. 184. — Bone of the Left Forearm. Posterior Surface.
The head is separated from the styloid process by a depression for the attachment of the triangular interarticular fibro-cartilage; and behind, by a shallow groove for the passage of the tendon of the Extensor carpi ulnaris.

Structure. Similar to that of the other long bones.

Development. By three centres: one for the shaft, one for the inferior extremity, and one for the olecranon (Fig. 185). Ossification commences near the middle of the shaft about the fifth week, and soon extends through the greater part of the bone. At birth the ends are cartilaginous. About the fourth year, a separate osseous nucleus appears in the middle of the head, which soon extends into the styloid process. About the tenth year, osseous matter appears in the olecranon near its extremity, the chief part of this process being formed from an extension of the shaft of the bone into it. At about the sixteenth year, the upper epiphysis becomes joined, and at about the twentieth year the lower one.

Articulations. With the humerus and radius.

Attachment of Muscles. To the olecranon: the Triceps, Anconeus, and one head of the Flexor carpi ulnaris. To the coronoideal process: the Brachialis anticus, Pronator radii teres, Flexor sublimis digitorum, and Flexor profundus digitorum, occasionally also the Flexor longus pollicis. To the shaft: the Flexor profundus digitorum, Pronator quadratus, Flexor carpi ulnaris, Extensor carpi ulnaris, Anconeus, Supinator brevis, Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, Extensor secundii internodii pollicis, and Extensor indicis.

The Radius.

The Radius is situated on the outer side of the forearm, lying parallel with the ulna, which exceeds it in length and size. Its upper end is small, and forms only a small part of the elbow-joint; but its lower end is large, and forms the chief part of the wrist. It is one of the long bones, prismatic in form, slightly curved longitudinally, and like other long bones has a shaft and two extremities.

The Upper Extremity presents a head, neck, and tuberosity. The head is of a cylindrical form, depressed on its upper surface into a shallow cup, which articulates with the radial or lesser head of the humerus in flexion of the joint. Around the circumference of the head is a smooth articular surface, coated with cartilage in the recent state, broad internally where it rotates within the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna; narrow in the rest of its circumference, to play in the orbicular ligament. The head is supported on a round, smooth, and constricted portion of bone, called the neck, which presents, behind, a slight ridge, for the attachment of part of the Supinator brevis. Beneath the neck, at the inner and front aspect of the bone, is a rough eminence, the tuberosity. Its surface is divided into two parts by a vertical line—a posterior rough portion, for the insertion of the tendon of the Biceps muscle; and an anterior smooth portion, on which a bursa is interposed between the tendon and the bone.

The Shaft of the bone is prismatic in form, narrower above than below, and slightly curved, so as to be convex outwards. It presents three surfaces, separated by three borders.
The anterior border extends from the lower part of the tuberosity above, to the anterior part of the base of the styloid process below. It separates the anterior from the external surface. Its upper third is very prominent; and from its oblique direction, downwards and outwards, has received the name of the oblique line of the radius. It gives attachment, externally, to the Supinator brevis; internally, to the Flexor longus pollicis, and between these to the Flexor digitorum sublimis. The middle third of the anterior border is indistinct and rounded. Its lower fourth is sharp, prominent, affords attachment to the Pronator quadratus, and terminates in a small tubercle, into which is inserted the tendon of the Supinator longus.

The posterior border commences above, at the back part of the neck of the radius, and terminates below, at the posterior part of the base of the styloid process; it separates the posterior from the external surface. It is indistinct above and below, but well marked in the middle third of the bone.

The internal or interosseous border commences above, at the back part of the tuberosity, where it is rounded and indistinct, becomes sharp and prominent as it descends, and at its lower part bifurcates into two ridges, which descend to the anterior and posterior margins of the sigmoid cavity. This border separates the anterior from the posterior surface, and has the interosseous membrane attached to it throughout the greater part of its extent.

The anterior surface is narrow and concave for its upper two-thirds, and gives attachment to the Flexor longus pollicis muscle; below, it is broad and flat, and gives attachment to the Pronator quadratus. At the junction of the upper and middle thirds of this surface is the nutrient foramen, which is directed obliquely upwards.

The posterior surface is rounded, convex and smooth, in the upper third of its extent, and covered by the Supinator brevis muscle. Its middle third is broad, slightly concave, and gives attachment to the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis above, the Extensor primi internodi pollicis below. Its lower third is broad, convex, and covered by the tendons of the muscles, which subsequently run in the grooves on the lower end of the bone.

The external surface is rounded and convex throughout its entire extent. Its upper third gives attachment to the Supinator brevis muscle. About its centre is seen a rough ridge, for the insertion of the Pronator radii teres muscle. Its lower part is narrow, and covered by the tendons of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis and Extensor primi internodi pollicis muscles.

The Lower Extremity of the radius is large, of quadrilateral form, and provided with two articular surfaces, one at the extremity for articulation with the carpus, and one at the inner side of the bone for articulation with the ulna. The carpal articular surface is of triangular form, concave, smooth, and divided by a slight antero-posterior ridge into two parts. Of these, the external is large, of a triangular form, and articulates with the scaphoid bone; the inner, smaller and quadrilateral, articulates with the semilunar. The articular surface for the ulna is called the sigmoid cavity of the radius; it is narrow, concave, smooth, and articulates with the head of the ulna. The circumference of this end of the bone presents three surfaces, an anterior, external, and posterior. The anterior surface, rough and irregular, affords attachment to the anterior ligament of the wrist-joint. The external surface is prolonged obliquely downwards into a strong conical projection, the styloid process, which gives attachment by its base to the tendon of the Supinator longus, and by its apex to the external lateral ligament of the wrist-joint. The outer surface of this process is marked by two grooves, which run obliquely downwards and forwards, and are separated from one another by an elevated ridge. The anterior one gives passage to the tendon of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, the posterior one to the tendon of the Extensor primi internodi pollicis. The posterior surface is convex, affords attachment to the posterior ligament of the wrist, and is marked by three grooves. Proceeding from without inwards, the first groove is broad, but
shallow, and subdivided into two by a slightly elevated ridge: the outer of these two transmits the tendon of the Extensor carpi radialis longior, the inner the tendon of the Extensor carpi radialis brevis. The second, which is near the centre of the bone, is a deep but narrow groove, directed obliquely from above, downwards and outwards; it transmits the tendon of the Extensor secundii internodi pollicis. The third, lying most internally, is a broad groove, for the passage of the tendons of the Extensor communis digitorum, Extensor indicis and Extensor minimi digitii; the tendon of the last-named muscle passing through the groove at the point of articulation of the radius with the ulna, and lying in a separate sheath of the annular ligament.

Structure. Similar to that of the other long bones.

Development (Fig. 186). By three centres: one for the shaft, and one for each extremity. That for the shaft makes its appearance near the centre of the bone, soon after the development of the humerus commences. At birth the shaft is ossified, but the ends of the bone are cartilaginous. About the end of the second year, ossification commences in the lower epiphysis; and about the fifth year in the upper one. At the age of puberty, the upper epiphysis becomes joined to the shaft; the lower epiphysis becoming united about the twentieth year.

Articulations. With four bones: the humerus, ulna, scaphoid, and semilunar.

Attachment of Muscles. To the tuberosity, the Biceps; to the oblique ridge, the Supinator brevis, Flexor digitorum sublimis, and Flexor longus pollicis; to the shaft (its anterior surface), the Flexor longus pollicis and Pronator quadratus; (its posterior surface), the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis and Extensor primi internodi pollicis; (its outer surface), the Pronator radii teres; and to the styloid process, the Supinator longus.

THE HAND.

The skeleton of the Hand is subdivided into three segments—the Carpus or wrist bones, the Metacarpus or bones of the palm, and the Phalanges or bones of the fingers.

THE CARPUS.

The bones of the Carpus, eight in number, are arranged in two rows. Those of the upper row, enumerated from the radial to the ulnar side, are the scaphoid, semilunar, cuneiform, and pisiform; those of the lower row, enumerated in the same order, are the trapezium, trapezoid, os magnum, and unciform.

COMMON CHARACTERS OF THE CARPAL BONES.

Each bone (excepting the pisiform) presents six surfaces. Of these, the anterior or palmar, and the posterior or dorsal, are rough, for ligamentous attachment,
the dorsal surface being generally the broader of the two. The superior and inferior are articular, the superior generally convex, the interior concave; and the internal and external are also articular when in contact with contiguous bones, otherwise rough and tubercular. Their structure in all is similar, consisting within of cancellous tissue inclosed in a layer of compact bone. Each bone is also developed from a single centre of ossification.

Bones of the Upper Row. (Figs. 187, 188.)

The Scaphoid is the largest bone of the first row. It has received its name from its fancied resemblance to a boat, being broad at one end, and narrowed like a prow at the opposite. It is situated at the upper and outer part of the carpus, its direction being from above downwards, outwards, and forwards. The superior surface is convex, smooth, of triangular shape, and articulates with the lower end of the radius. The inferior surface, directed downwards, outwards, and backwards, is smooth, convex, also triangular, and divided by a slight ridge into two parts, the external of which articulates with the trapezium, the inner with the trapezoid. The posterior or dorsal surface presents a narrow, rough groove, which runs the entire breadth of the bone, and serves for the attachment of ligaments. The anterior or palmar surface is concave above, and elevated at its lower and outer part into a prominent rounded tubercle, which projects forwards from the front of the carpus, and gives attachment to the anterior annular ligament of the wrist. The external surface is rough and narrow, and gives attachment to the external lateral ligament of the wrist. The internal surface presents two articular facets: of these, the superior or smaller one is flattened, of semilunar form, and articulates with the semilunar; the inferior or larger is concave, forming, with the semilunar bone, a concavity for the head of the os magnum.

Lay it with the dorsal surface, i. e., the narrow nonarticular grooved surface, on the table, and the convex radial articular surface towards you. The tubercle is outwards, i. e., points to the side to which the bone belongs.¹

Articulations. With five bones: the radius above, trapezium and trapezoid below, os magnum and semilunar internally.

The Semilunar bone may be distinguished by its deep concavity and crescentic outline. It is situated in the centre of the upper row of the carpus, between the scaphoid and cuneiform. The superior surface, convex, smooth, and bounded by four edges, articulates with the radius. The inferior surface is deeply concave, and of greater extent from before backwards than transversely; it articulates with the head of the os magnum, and by a long narrow facet (separated by a ridge from the general surface) with the unciniform bone. The anterior or palmar and posterior or dorsal surfaces are rough, for the attachment of ligaments, the former being the broader, and of somewhat rounded form. The external surface presents a narrow, flattened, semilunar facet, for articulation with the scaphoid. The internal surface is marked by a smooth, quadrilateral facet for articulation with the cuneiform.

Lay it with the broader non-articular surface upwards and the semilunes forwards (i. e., away from you). The broader semilunar surface, that for the os magnum, will be on the side to which the bone belongs. If the ridge between the two semilunes is absent or ill-marked, the crescentic surface for the scaphoid will be on the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations. With five bones: the radius above, os magnum and unciniform below, scaphoid and cuneiform on either side.

The Cuneiform (i’Os Pyramidal) may be distinguished by its pyramidal shape, and by its having an oval, isolated facet, for articulation with the pisiform bone.

¹ In these directions each bone is supposed to be placed as it would be if the hand were laid supine on the table in front of the student, with the wrist towards him.
It is situated at the upper and inner side of the carpus. The *superior surface* presents an internal, rough, non-articular portion; and an external or articular portion, which is convex, smooth, and separated from the lower end of the ulna by the interarticular fibro-cartilage of the wrist. The *inferior surface*, directed

Fig. 187.—Bones of the Left Hand. Dorsal Surface.
outwards, is concave, sinuously curved, and smooth for articulation with the unciform. The posterior or dorsal surface is rough, for the attachment of ligaments. The anterior or palmar surface presents, at its inner side, an oval facet, for articulation with the pisiform; and is rough externally, for ligamentous attachment. The external surface, the base of the pyramid, is marked by a flat, quadrilateral, smooth facet, for articulation with the semilunar. The internal surface, the summit of the pyramid, is pointed and roughened, for the attachment of the internal lateral ligament of the wrist.

Lay it with the surface on which the pisiform facet is upwards, and the concavo-convex surface for the unciform in front. The base of the wedge (i.e., the broad end of the bone) will be on the side to which it belongs.

Articulations. With three bones: the semilunar externally, the pisiform in front, the unciform below, and with the triangular interarticular fibro-cartilage which separates it from the lower end of the ulna.

The Pisiform bone may be known by its small size, and by its presenting a single articular facet. It is situated at the anterior and inner side of the carpus, is nearly circular in form, and presents on its posterior surface a smooth oval facet, for articulation with the cuneiform bone. This facet approaches the superior, but not the inferior, border of the bone. The anterior or palmar surface is rounded and rough, and gives attachment to the anterior annular ligament. The outer and inner surfaces are also rough, the former being convex, the latter usually concave.

Lay it with the articular facet on the table, and the non-articular part of the same surface in front. The concave (inner) surface is then on the side to which the bone does not belong, i.e., on the ulnar side.

Articulation. With one bone, the cuneiform.

Attachment of Muscles. To two: the Flexor carpi ulnaris, and Abductor minimi digiti; and to the anterior annular ligament.

Bones of the Lower Row. (Figs. 187, 188.)

The Trapezium is of very irregular form. It may be distinguished by a deep groove, for the tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis muscle. It is situated at the external and inferior part of the carpus, between the scaphoid and first metacarpal bone. The superior surface, concave and smooth, is directed upwards and inwards, and articulates with the scaphoid. The inferior surface, directed downwards and outwards, is oval, concave from side to side, convex from before backwards, so as to form a saddle-shaped surface, for articulation with the base of the first metacarpal bone. The anterior or palmar surface is narrow and rough. At its upper part is a deep groove, running from above obliquely downwards and inwards; it transmits the tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis, and is bounded externally by a prominent ridge, the oblique ridge of the trapezium. This surface gives attachment to the Abductor pollicis, Flexor ossis metacarpi, and Flexor brevis pollicis muscles; and the anterior annular ligament. The posterior or dorsal surface is rough, and the external surface also broad and rough, for the attachment of ligaments. The internal surface presents two articular facets: the upper one, large and concave, articulates with the trapezoid; the lower one, narrow and flattened, with the base of the second metacarpal bone.

Lay it with its prominent ridge upwards and towards yourself. The saddle-shaped surface for the thumb is on the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations. With four bones: the scaphoid above, the trapezoid and second metacarpal bones internally, the first metacarpal below.

Attachment of Muscles. Abductor pollicis, Flexor ossis metacarpi, and part of the Flexor brevis pollicis.

1 The prominent ridge is between the deep groove for the tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis and the non-articular surface.
The Trapezoid is the smallest bone in the second row. It may be known by its wedge-shaped form, the broad end of the wedge forming the dorsal, the narrow end the palmar surface; and by its having four articular surfaces touching each other, and separated by sharp edges. The superior surface, quadrilateral in form, smooth and slightly concave, articulates with the scaphoid. The inferior surface articulates with the upper end of the second metacarpal bone;

Fig. 188.—Bones of the Left Hand. Palmar Surface.
it is convex from side to side, concave from before backwards, and subdivided by an elevated ridge, into two unequal lateral facets. The posterior or dorsal and anterior or palmar surfaces are rough, for the attachment of ligaments, the former being the larger of the two. The external surface, convex and smooth, articulates with the trapezium. The internal surface is concave and smooth below, for articulation with the os magnum; rough above, for the attachment of an interosseous ligament.

Lay it with its smaller non-articular surface upwards, and the edge which separates the two concave articular facets forwards. The lower end of the bone will then curve away from the side to which it belongs.  

Articulations. With four bones: the scaphoid above, second metacarpal bone below, trapezium externally, os magnum internally.

Attachment of Muscles. Part of the Flexor brevis pollicis.

The Os Magnum is the largest bone of the carpus, and occupies the centre of the wrist. It presents above a rounded portion or head, which is received into the concavity formed by the scaphoid and semilunar bones; a constricted portion or neck; and, below, the body. The superior surface is rounded, smooth, and articulates with the semilunar. The inferior surface is divided by two ridges into three facets, for articulation with the second, third, and fourth metacarpal bones; that for the third (the middle facet) being the largest of the three. The posterior or dorsal surface is broad and rough; the anterior or palmar, narrow, rounded, and also rough, for the attachment of ligaments. The external surface articulates with the trapezoid by a small facet at its anterior inferior angle, behind which is a rough depression for the attachment of an interosseous ligament. Above this is a deep and rough groove, which forms part of the neck, and serves for the attachment of ligaments, bounded superiorly by a smooth convex surface, for articulation with the scaphoid. The internal surface articulates with the unciform by a smooth, concave, oblong facet, which occupies its posterior and superior parts; and is rough in front, for the attachment of an interosseous ligament.

Lay it on the table with the narrower (convex) non-articular surface upwards, and the head towards you. The prominent corner at the lower anterior part of the bone inclines away from the side to which it belongs.

Articulations. With seven bones: the scaphoid and semilunar above; the second, third, and fourth metacarpal below; the trapezoid on the radial side; and the unciform on the ulnar side.

Attachment of Muscles. Part of the Flexor brevis pollicis.

The Unciform bone may be readily distinguished by its wedge-shaped form, and the hook-like process that projects from its palmar surface. It is situated at the inner and lower angle of the carpus, with its base downwards, resting on the two inner metacarpal bones, and its apex directed upwards and outwards. The superior surface, the apex of the wedge, is narrow, convex, smooth, and articulates with the semilunar. The inferior surface articulates with the fourth and fifth metacarpal bones, the concave surface for each being separated by a ridge, which runs from before backwards. The posterior or dorsal surface is triangular and rough, for ligamentous attachment. The anterior or palmar surface presents, at its lower and inner side, a curved hook-like process of bone, the unciform process, directed from the palmar surface forwards and outwards. It gives attachment by its apex, to the annular ligament; by its inner surface, to the Flexor brevis minimi digitii, and the Flexor ossis metacarpii minimi digitii; and is grooved on its outer side, for the passage of the Flexor tendons into the

---

1 If the bone be not well marked, the following method, suggested by Mr. E. J. Spitta, Demonstrator of Anatomy at St. George's Hospital School, will be found more simple. Let the superior—t. e. the smooth quadrilateral articular—surface be directed towards the stuent; and the posterior—the larger rough non-articular—surface upwards; the latter will then be found to present a wedge-shaped outline, the base of which points to the side to which the bone belongs.
palm of the hand. This is one of the four eminences on the front of the carpus, to which the anterior annular ligament is attached; the others being the pisi-form internally, the oblique ridge of the trapezium and the tuberosity of the scaphoid externally. The internal surface articulates with the cuneiform by an oblong facet, cut obliquely from above, downwards and inwards. The external surface articulates with the os magnum by its upper and posterior part, the remaining portion being rough, for the attachment of ligaments.

Lay it with the hooked process upwards, and the articular surface divided into two parts for the metacarpal bones forwards. The concavity of the process will be on the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations. With five bones: the semilunar above, the fourth and fifth metacarpal below, the cuneiform internally, the os magnum externally.

Attachment of Muscles. To two: the Flexor brevis minimi digiti, and Flexor ossis metacarpi minimi digiti; and to the anterior annularligament.

THE METACARPUS.

The Metacarpal Bones are five in number: they are long cylindrical bones, presenting for examination a shaft, and two extremities.

COMMON CHARACTERS OF THE METACARPAL BONES.

The shaft is prismatic in form, and curved longitudinally, so as to be convex in the longitudinal direction behind, concave in front. It presents three surfaces; two lateral, and one posterior. The lateral surfaces are concave, for the attachment of the Interossei muscles, and separated from one another by a prominent line. The posterior or dorsal surface is triangular, smooth, and flattened below, and covered, in the recent state, by the tendons of the Extensor muscles. In its upper half it is divided by a ridge into two narrow lateral depressions, for the attachment of the Dorsal interossei muscles. This ridge bifurcates a little above the centre of the bone, and its branches run to the small tubercles on each side of the digital extremity.

The carpal extremity, or base, is of a cuboidal form, and broader behind than in front: it articulates above with the carpus, and on each side with the adjoining metacarpal bones; its dorsal and palmar surfaces being rough, for the attachment of tendons and ligaments.

The digital extremity, or head, presents an oblong surface, flattened at each side, for articulation with the first phalanx; it is broader, and extends farther forwards in front than behind, and is longer in the antero-posterior than in the transverse diameter. On either side of the head is a deep depression, surmounted by a tubercle, for the attachment of the lateral ligament of the metacarpo-phalangeal joint. The posterior surface, broad and flat, supports the Extensor tendons; the anterior surface presents a median groove, bounded on each side by a tubercle, for the passage of the Flexor tendons.

PECULIAR CHARACTERS OF THE METACARPAL BONES.

The metacarpal bone of the thumb is shorter and wider than the rest, diverges to a greater degree from the carpus, and its palmar surface is directed inwards towards the palm. The shaft is flattened and broad on its dorsal aspect, and does not present the bifurcated ridge which is found on the other metacarpal bones; it is concave from before backwards on its palmar surface. The carpal extremity, or base, presents a concavo-convex surface, for articulation with the trapezium, and has no lateral facets. The digital extremity is less convex than that of the other metacarpal bones, broader from side to side than from before backwards, and terminates anteriorly in a small articular eminence on each side, over which play two sesamoid bones.
The side to which this bone belongs may be known by observing the little facet, which is marked on the inner side of its posterior surface just above the base, for the tendon of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis. Mr. Holden directs that the bone be placed with its dorsal surface upwards, and its head towards the student, which is the reverse of the ordinary position. This facet will then mark the side to which the bone belongs.

The metacarpal bone of the index finger is the longest, and its base the largest of the other four. Its carpal extremity is prolonged upwards and inwards. The dorsal and palmar surfaces of this extremity are rough, for the attachment of tendons and ligaments. It presents four articular facets: the first, at the end of the bone, is concave from side to side, convex from before backwards, and articulates with the trapezoid; the second, on the radial side, is a flat quadrilateral facet, for the trapezium; the third, which occupies the outer part of the ulnar side of the extremity, is a long narrow facet, for the os magnum; and the fourth, which occupies the inner part of the same side, is a considerably broader surface, for the third metacarpal bone.

The side to which this bone belongs is marked by the absence of the lateral facet on the outer (radial) side of its head, so that if the bone be placed with its base towards the student, and the palmar surface upwards, the side on which there is no lateral facet will be that to which it belongs. If the head of the bone be indistinctly marked, the base can be recognized, its ulnar or inner surface being marked by the two long narrow facets for the os magnum and third metacarpal, easily distinguishable from the single quadrangular facet on the radial side for the trapezium, which will then mark the side to which the bone belongs.

The metacarpal bone of the middle finger is a little smaller than the preceding; it presents a pyramidal eminence on the radial side of its base (dorsal aspect), which extends upwards behind the os magnum. The carpal articular facet is concave behind, flat and horizontal in front, and corresponds to the os magnum. On the radial side is a smooth concave facet, for articulation with the second metacarpal bone; and on the ulnar side two small oval facets, for articulation with the fourth metacarpal.

The side to which this bone belongs is easily recognized by the projecting angle on the lower radial corner of its base. With the palmar surface uppermost, and the base towards the student, this projection points towards the side to which the bone belongs.

The metacarpal bone of the ring-finger is shorter and smaller than the preceding, and its base small and quadrilateral; the carpal surface of the base presenting two facets, for articulation with the unciform and os magnum. On the radial side are two oval facets, for articulation with the third metacarpal bone; and on the ulnar side a single concave facet, for the fifth metacarpal.

If this bone is placed with the base towards the student, and the palmar surface upwards, the radial side of the base, which has two facets for articulation with the third metacarpal bone, will be on the side to which it belongs. If, as sometimes happens in badly marked bones, one of these facets is indistinguishable, the side may be known by the greatly larger size in such cases of the facet for the fifth metacarpal bone, which is therefore situated on the side to which the bone does not belong.

The metacarpal bone of the little finger may be distinguished by the concavo-convex form of its carpal surface, which articulates with the unciform; and by its having only one lateral articular facet, which corresponds with the fourth metacarpal bone. On its ulnar side is a prominent tubercle, for the insertion of the tendon of the Extensor carpi ulnaris. The dorsal surface of the shaft is marked by an oblique ridge, which extends from near the ulnar side of the upper extremity to the radial side of the lower. The outer division of this surface serves for the attachment of the fourth Dorsal interosseous muscle; the inner division is smooth, and covered by the Extensor tendons of the little finger.

If this bone is placed with its base towards the student, and its palmar surface
PHALANGES.

upwards, the side of the head which has a lateral facet will be that to which the bone belongs.

Articulations. Besides the phalangeal articulations, the first metacarpal bone articulates with the trapezium; the second with the trapezium, trapezoides, os magnum, and third metacarpal bones; the third with the os magnum, and second and fourth metacarpal bones; the fourth with the os magnum, unciform, and third and fifth metacarpal bones; and the fifth with the unciform and fourth metacarpal.

Attachment of Muscles. To the metacarpal bone of the thumb, three: the Flexor ossis metacarpi pollicis, Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, and first Dorsal interosseous. To the second metacarpal bone, five: the Flexor carpi radialis, Extensor carpi radialis longior, first and second Dorsal interosseous, and first Palmar interosseous. To the third, five: the Extensor carpi radialis brevior, Flexor brevis pollicis, Adductor pollicis, and second and third Dorsal interosseous. To the fourth, three: the third and fourth Dorsal and second Palmar interosseous. To the fifth, five: the Extensor carpi ulnaris, Flexor carpi ulnaris, Flexor ossis metacarpi minimi digiti, fourth Dorsal, and third Palmar interosseous.

PHALANGES.

The Phalanges are the bones of the fingers; they are fourteen in number, three for each finger, and two for the thumb. They are long bones, and present for examination a shaft, and two extremities. The shaft tapers from above downwards, is convex posteriorly, concave in front from above downwards, flat from side to side, and marked laterally by rough ridges, which give attachment to the fibrous sheaths of the Flexor tendons. The metacarpal extremity or base, in the first row, presents an oval concave articular surface, broader from side to side than from before backwards; and the same extremity in the other two rows, a double concavity separated by a longitudinal median ridge, extending from before backwards. The digital extremities are smaller than the others, and terminate, in the first and second row, in two small lateral condyles, separated by a slight groove; the articular surface being prolonged farther forwards on the palmar than on the dorsal surface, especially in the first row.

The Ungual phalanges are convex on their dorsal, flat on their palmar surfaces; they are recognized by their small size, and by a roughened elevated surface of a horseshoe form on the palmar aspect of their ungual extremity, which serves to support the sensitive pulp of the finger.

Articulations. The first row with the metacarpal bones, and the second row of phalanges; the second row with the first and third; the third, with the second row.

Attachment of Muscles. To the base of the first phalanx of the thumb, four muscles: the Extensor primi internodi pollicis, Flexor brevis pollicis, Abductor pollicis, Adductor pollicis. To the second phalanx, two: the Flexor longus pollicis, and the Extensor secundi internodi. To the base of the first phalanx of the index finger, the first Dorsal and the first Palmar interosseous; to that of the middle finger, the second and third Dorsal interosseous; to that of the ring-finger, the fourth Dorsal and the second Palmar interosseous; and to that of the little finger, the third Palmar interosseous, the Flexor brevis minimi digitii, and Abductor minimi digitii. To the second phalanges, the Flexor sublimis digitorum, Extensor communis digitorum; and, in addition, the Extensor indicis to the index finger, the Extensor minimi digitii to the little finger. To the third phalanges, the Flexor profundus digitorum and Extensor communis digitorum.
Development of the Bones of the Hand.

The Carpal bones are each developed by a single centre. At birth they are all cartilaginous. Ossification proceeds in the following order (Fig. 189): in the os magnum and unciform an ossific point appears during the first year, the former preceding the latter; in the cuneiform, at the third year; in the trapezium and semilunar, at the fifth year, the former preceding the latter; in the scaphoid, at the sixth year; in the trapezoid, during the eighth year; and in the pisiform, about the twelfth year.

Fig. 189.—Plan of the Development of the Hand.

The Metacarpal bones are each developed by two centres: one for the shaft, and one for the digital extremity, for the four inner metacarpal bones; one for the shaft, and one for the base, for the metacarpal bone of the thumb, which in this respect resembles the phalanges. Ossification commences in the centre of the shaft about the sixth week, and gradually proceeds to either end of the bone; about the third year the digital extremities of the four inner metacarpal bones, and the base of the first metacarpal, commence to ossify, and they unite about the twentieth year.

The Phalanges are each developed by two centres: one for the shaft, and one for the base. Ossification commences in the shaft, in all three rows, at about the sixth week, and gradually involves the whole of the bone excepting the upper extremity. Ossification of the base commences in the first row between the third and fourth years, and a year later in those of the second and third rows.
OS INNOMINATUM.

The two centres become united in each row, between the eighteenth and twentieth years.

OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The Lower Extremity consists of three segments, the thigh, leg, and foot, which correspond to the arm, forearm, and hand in the upper extremity. It is connected to the trunk through the os innominatum, or haunch, which is homologous with the shoulder.

THE OS INNOMINATUM.

The Os innominatum, or nameless bone, so called from bearing no resemblance to any known object, is a large irregular-shaped bone, which, with its fellow of

Fig. 190.—Right Os Innominatum. External Surface.
the opposite side, forms the sides and anterior wall of the pelvic cavity. In young subjects it consists of three separate parts, which meet and form the large cup-like cavity, situated near the middle of the outer side of the bone; and, although in the adult these have become united, it is usual to describe the bone as divisible into three portions—the ilium, the ischium, and the pubes.

The ilium, so called from its supporting the flank (ilia), is the superior broad and expanded portion which runs upwards from the upper and back part of the acetabulum, and forms the prominence of the hip.

The ischium (ischi, the hip) is the inferior and strongest portion of the bone; it proceeds downwards from the acetabulum, expands into a large tuberosity, and then, curving upwards, forms with the descending ramus of the pubes a large aperture, the obturator foramen.

Fig. 191.—Right Os Inominatum. Internal Surface.
to the same extent: it forms the front of the pelvis, supports the external organs of generation, and has received its name from being covered with hair.

The Ilium presents for examination two surfaces, an external and an internal, a crest, and two borders, an anterior and a posterior.

External Surface or Dorsum of the Ilium (Fig. 190). The back part of this surface is directed backwards, downwards, and outwards; its front part forwards, downwards, and outwards. It is smooth, convex in front, deeply concave behind; bounded above by the crest, below by the upper border of the acetabulum; in front and behind, by the anterior and posterior borders. This surface is crossed in an arched direction by three semicircular lines, the superior, middle, and inferior curved lines. The superior curved line, the shortest of the three, commences at the crest, about two inches in front of its posterior extremity; it is at first distinctly marked, but as it passes downwards and outwards to the upper part of the great sacro-sciatic notch, where it terminates, it becomes less marked, and is often altogether lost. The rough surface included between this line and the crest, affords attachment to part of the Gluteus maximus above, and a few fibres of the Pyriformis below. The middle curved line, the longest of the three, commences at the crest, about an inch behind its anterior extremity, and, taking a curved direction downwards and backwards, terminates at the upper part of the great sacro-sciatic notch. The space between the middle and superior curved lines and the crest is concave, and affords attachment to the Gluteus medius muscle. Near the central part of this line may often be observed the orifice of a nutrient foramen. The inferior curved line, the least distinct of the three, commences in front at the upper part of the anterior inferior spinous process, and taking a curved direction backwards and downwards, terminates at the anterior part of the great sacro-sciatic notch. The surface of bone included between the middle and inferior curved lines is concave from above downwards, convex from before backwards, and affords attachment to the Gluteus minimus muscle. Beneath the inferior curved line, and corresponding to the upper part of the acetabulum, is a smooth eminence (sometimes a depression), to which is attached the reflected tendon of the Rectus femoris muscle.

The Internal surface (Fig. 191) of the ilium is bounded above by the crest, below by a prominent line, the lineæ ilio-psectinea, and before and behind by the anterior and posterior borders. It presents anteriorly a large smooth concave surface, called the internal iliac fossa, or venter of the ilium, which lodges the Iliacus muscle, and presents at its lower border the orifice of a nutrient canal. Behind the iliac fossæ is a rough surface, divided into two portions, a superior and an inferior. The inferior or auricular portion, so called from its resemblance in shape to the ear, is coated with cartilage in the recent state, and articulates with a surface of similar shape on the side of the sacrum. The superior portion is concave and rough, for the attachment of the posterior sacro-iliac ligaments.

The crest of the ilium is convex in its general outline and sinuously curved, being bent inwards anteriorly, outwards posteriorly. It is longer in the female than in the male, very thick behind, and thinner at the centre than at the extremities. It terminates at either end in a prominent eminence, the anterior superior and posterior superior spinous process. The surface of the crest is broad, and divided into an external lip, an internal lip, and an intermediate space. To the external lip is attached the Tensor vaginae femoris, Obliquus externus abdominis, and Latissimus dorsi, and by its whole length the fascia lata; to the interspace between the lips, the Internal oblique; to the internal lip, the Transversalis, Quadratus lumborum, and Erector spine, also the fascia iliaca.

The anterior border of the ilium is concave. It presents two projections, separated by a notch: Of these, the uppermost, situated at the conjunction of the crest and anterior border, is called the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium, the outer border of which gives attachment to the fascia lata, and the origin of the Tensor vaginae femoris; its inner border, to the Iliacus internus; whilst its extremity affords attachment to Poupart's ligament, and the origin of
the opposite side, forms the sides and anterior wall of the pelvic cavity. In young subjects it consists of three separate parts, which meet and form the large cup-like cavity, situated near the middle of the outer side of the bone; and, although in the adult these have become united, it is usual to describe the bone as divisible into three portions—the ilium, the ischium, and the pubes.

The ilium, so called from its supporting the flank (ilia), is the superior broad and expanded portion which runs upwards from the upper and back part of the acetabulum, and forms the prominence of the hip.

The ischium (ischion, the hip) is the inferior and strongest portion of the bone; it proceeds downwards from the acetabulum, expands into a large tuberosity, and then, curving upwards, forms with the descending ramus of the pubes a large aperture, the obturator foramen.

Fig. 191.—Right Os Inominatum. Internal Surface.

The pubes is that portion which runs horizontally inwards from the inner side of the acetabulum for about two inches, then makes a sudden bend, and descends
to the same extent: it forms the front of the pelvis, supports the external organs of generation, and has received its name from being covered with hair.

The *Ilium* presents for examination two surfaces, an external and an internal, a crest, and two borders, an anterior and a posterior.

*External Surface or Dorsum of the Ilium* (Fig. 190). The back part of this surface is directed backwards, downwards, and outwards; its front part forwards, downwards, and outwards. It is smooth, convex in front, deeply concave behind; bounded above by the crest, below by the upper border of the acetabulum; in front and behind, by the anterior and posterior borders. This surface is crossed in an arched direction by three semicircular lines, the superior, middle, and inferior curved lines. The superior curved line, the shortest of the three, commences at the crest, about two inches in front of its posterior extremity; it is at first distinctly marked, but as it passes downwards and outwards to the upper part of the great sacro-sciatic notch, where it terminates, it becomes less marked, and is often altogether lost. The rough surface included between this line and the crest, affords attachment to part of the Gluteus maximus above, and a few fibres of the Pyriformis below. The middle curved line, the longest of the three, commences at the crest, about an inch behind its anterior extremity, and, taking a curved direction downwards and backwards, terminates at the upper part of the great sacro-sciatic notch. The space between the middle and superior curved lines and the crest is concave, and affords attachment to the Gluteus medius muscle. Near the central part of this line may often be observed the orifice of a nutrient foramen. The inferior curved line, the least distinct of the three, commences in front at the upper part of the anterior inferior spinous process, and taking a curved direction backwards and downwards, terminates at the anterior part of the great sacro-sciatic notch. The surface of bone included between the middle and inferior curved lines is concave from above downwards, convex from before backwards, and affords attachment to the Gluteus minimus muscle. Beneath the inferior curved line, and corresponding to the upper part of the acetabulum, is a smooth eminence (sometimes a depression), to which is attached the reflected tendon of the Rectus femoris muscle.

The *Internal surface* (Fig. 191) of the ilium is bounded above by the crest, below by a prominent line, the linea ilio-pectinea, and before and behind by the anterior and posterior borders. It presents anteriorly a large smooth concave surface, called the internal *iliac fossa*, or *venter of the ilium*, which lodges the Iliacus muscle, and presents at its lower part the orifice of a nutrient canal. Behind the iliace fossa is a rough surface, divided into two portions, a superior and an inferior. The inferior or auricular portion, so called from its resemblance in shape to the ear, is coated with cartilage in the recent state, and articulates with a surface of similar shape on the side of the sacrum. The superior portion is concave and rough, for the attachment of the posterior sacro-iliac ligaments.

The crest of the ilium is convex in its general outline and sinuously curved, being bent inwards anteriorly, outwards posteriorly. It is longer in the female than in the male, very thick behind, and thinner at the centre than at the extremities. It terminates at either end in a prominent eminence, the anterior superior and posterior superior spinous process. The surface of the crest is broad, and divided into an *external lip*, an *internal lip*, and an intermediate space. To the external lip is attached the Tensor vaginae femoris, Obliquus externus abdominis, and Latissimus dorsi, and by its whole length the fascia lata; to the interspace between the lips, the Internal oblique; to the internal lip, the Transversalis, Quadratus lumborum, and Erector spine, also the fascia iliaca.

The anterior border of the ilium is concave. It presents two projections, separated by a notch. Of these, the uppermost, situated at the junction of the crest and anterior border, is called the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium, the outer border of which gives attachment to the fascia lata, and the origin of the Tensor vaginae femoris; its inner border, to the Iliacus internus; whilst its extremity affords attachment to Poupart's ligament, and the origin of
the Sartorius. Beneath this eminence is a notch which gives attachment to the Sartorius muscle, and across which passes the external cutaneous nerve. Below the notch is the anterior inferior spinous process, which terminates in the upper lip of the acetabulum; it gives attachment to the straight tendon of the Rectus femoris muscle. On the inner side of the anterior inferior spinous process is a broad shallow groove, over which passes the Iliacus muscle. The posterior border of the ilium, shorter than the anterior, also presents two projections separated by a notch, the posterior superior and the posterior inferior spinous processes. The former corresponds with that portion of the posterior surface of the ilium which serves for the attachment of the oblique portion of the sacro-iliac ligaments and the Multifidus spine; the latter to the auricular portion which articulates with the sacrum. Below the posterior inferior spinous process is a deep notch, the great sacro-sciatic.

The Ischium forms the lower and back part of the os innominatum. It is divisible into a thick and solid portion, the body; the tuberosity, a large rough eminence, on which the body rests in sitting; and a thin ascending part, the ramus.

The body, somewhat triangular in form, presents three surfaces, external, internal, and posterior. The external surface corresponds to that portion of the acetabulum formed by the ischium; it is smooth and concave above, and forms a little more than two-fifths of that cavity; its outer margin is bounded by a prominent rim or lip, to which the cotyloid fibro-cartilage is attached. Below the acetabulum, between it and the tuberosity, is a deep groove, along which the tendon of the Obturator externus muscle runs, as it passes outwards to be inserted into the digital fossa of the femur. The internal surface is smooth, concave, and forms the lateral boundary of the true pelvic cavity; it is broad above, and separated from the venter of the ilium by the linea ilipectinea, narrow below; its posterior border is encroached upon, a little below its centre, by the spine of the ischium, above and below which are the greater and lesser sacro-sciatic notches; in front, it presents a sharp margin, which forms the outer boundary of the obturator foramen. This surface is perforated by two or three large vascular foramina, and affords attachment to part of the Obturator internus muscle. The posterior surface is quadrilateral in form, broad and smooth above, narrow below where it becomes continuous with the tuberosity; it is limited in front, by the margin of the acetabulum; behind, by the front part of the great sacro-sciatic notch. This surface supports the Pyriformis, the two Gemelli, and the Obturator internus muscles, in their passage outwards to the great trochanter. The body of the ischium presents three borders, posterior, inferior, and internal. The posterior border presents, a little below the centre, a thin and pointed triangular eminence, the spine of the ischium, more or less elongated in different subjects. Its external surface gives attachment to the Gemellus superior, its internal surface to the Coccygeus and Levator ani; whilst to the pointed extremity is connected the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament. Above the spine is a notch of large size, the great sacro-sciatic, converted into a foramen by the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament; it transmits the Pyriformis muscle, the gluteal vessels, and superior gluteal nerve passing out of the pelvis above the muscle; the sacrotuberous ligament, the greater and lesser sciatic nerves, the internal pudic vessels and nerve, and a small nerve to the Obturator internus muscle below it. Below the spine is a smaller notch, the lesser sacro-sciatic; it is smooth, coated in the recent state with cartilage, the surface of which presents numerous markings corresponding to the subdivision of the tendon of the Obturator internus which winds over it. It is converted into a foramen by the sacro-sciatic ligaments, and transmits the tendon of the Obturator internus, the nerve which supplies that muscle, and the internal pudic vessels and nerve. The inferior border is thick and broad; at its point of junction with the posterior is the tuberosity of the ischium. The internal border is thin, and forms the outer circumference of the obturator foramen.
OS INNOMINATUM.

The tuberosity presents for examination an external lip, an internal lip, and an intermediate space. The external lip gives attachment to the Quadratus femoris, and part of the Adductor magnus muscles. The inner lip is bounded by a sharp ridge, for the attachment of a falciform prolongation of the great sacro-sciatic ligament; it presents a groove on the inner side of this for the lodgment of the internal pudic vessels and nerve; and, more anteriorly, has attached the Transversus perinei and Erector penis muscles. The intermediate surface presents four distinct impressions. Two of these, seen at the front part of the tuberosity, are rough, elongated, and separated from each other by a prominent ridge; the outer one gives attachment to the Adductor magnus, the inner one to the great sacro-sciatic ligament. Two, situated at the back part, are smooth, larger in size, and separated by an oblique ridge: from the upper and outer arises the Semi-membranosus; from the inner and lower, the Biceps and Semi-tendinosus. The uppermost part of the tuberosity gives attachment to the Gemellus inferior.

The ramus, or ascending ramus, is the thin flattened part of the ischium, which ascends from the tuberosity upwards and inwards, and joins the ramus of the pubes—their point of junction being indicated in the adult by a rough eminence. The outer surface of the ramus is rough, for the attachment of the Obturator externus muscle, also some fibres of the Adductor magnus, and of the Gracilis; its inner surface forms part of the anterior wall of the pelvis. Its inner border is thick, rough, slightly everted, forms part of the outlet of the pelvis, and serves for the attachment of the crus penis. Its outer border is thin and sharp, and forms part of the inner margin of the obturator foramen.

The Pubes forms the anterior part of the os innominatum; it is divisible into a horizontal ramus or body, and a perpendicular ramus.

The body, or horizontal ramus, presents for examination two extremities, an outer and an inner, and four surfaces. The outer extremity, the thickest part of the bone, forms one-fifth of the cavity of the acetabulum; it presents, above, a rough eminence, the ilio-pectineal, which serves to indicate the point of junction of the ilium and pubes. The inner extremity is the symphysis; it is oval, covered by eight or nine transverse ridges, or a series of nipple-like processes arranged in rows, separated by grooves; they serve for the attachment of the connecting fibro-cartilage, placed between it and the opposite bone. The upper surface, triangular in form, wider externally than internally, is bounded behind by a sharp ridge, the pectineal line; or linea ilio-pectinea, which, running outwards, marks the brim of the true pelvis. The surface of bone in front of the pubic portion of the linea ilio-pectinea, serves for the attachment of the Pectineus muscle. This ridge terminates internally at a tubercle, which projects forwards, and is called the spine of the pubes. The portion of bone included between the spine and inner extremity of the pubes is called the crest; it serves for the attachment of the Rectus, Pyramidalis, and conjointed tendon of the Internal oblique and Transversalis. The point of junction of the crest with the symphysis is called the angle of the pubes. The inferior surface presents, externally, a broad and deep oblique groove, for the passage of the obturator vessels and nerve; and, internally, a sharp margin, which forms part of the circumference of the obturator foramen. Its external surface, flat and compressed, serves for the attachment of muscles. Its internal surface, convex from above downwards, concave from side to side, is smooth, and forms part of the anterior wall of the pelvis.

The descending ramus of the pubes passes outwards and downwards, becoming thinner and narrower as it descends, and joins with the ramus of the ischium. Its external surface is rough, for the attachment of muscles; the Adductor magnus above, the Adductor brevis below; the Gracilis along its inner border, the Compressor urethrae towards its internal aspect; and a portion of the Obturator externus where it enters into the formation of the foramen of that name. Its inner surface is smooth. Its inner border is thick, rough, and everted, especially
in females. In the male it serves for the attachment of the crus penis. Its outer border forms part of the circumference of the obturator foramen.

The cotyloid cavity, or acetabulum, is a deep, cup-shaped, hemispherical depression; formed, internally, by the pubes, above by the ilium, behind and below by the ischium; a little less than two-fifths being formed by the ilium, a little more than two-fifths by the ischium, and the remaining fifth by the pubes. It is bounded by a prominent uneven rim, which is thick and strong above, and serves for the attachment of a fibro-cartilaginous structure which contracts its orifice, and deepens the surface for articulation. It presents on its inner side a deep notch, the cotyloid notch, which transmits the nutrient vessels into the interior of the joint, and is continuous with a circular depression at the bottom of the cavity: this depression is perforated by numerous apertures, lodges a mass of fat, and its margins serve for the attachment of the ligamentum teres. The notch is converted, in the natural state, into a foramen by a dense ligamentous band which passes across it. Through this foramen the nutrient vessels and nerves enter the joint.

The obturator or thyroid foramen is a large aperture, situated between the ischium and pubes. In the male it is large, of an oval form, its longest diameter being obliquely from above downwards; in the female it is smaller, and more triangular. It is bounded by a thin uneven margin, to which a strong membrane is attached; and presents, at its upper and outer part, a deep groove, which runs from the pelvis obliquely forwards, inwards, and downwards. This groove is converted into a foramen by the obturator membrane, and transmits the obturator vessels and nerve.

Structure. This bone consists of much cancellous tissue, especially where it is thick, inclosed between two layers of dense compact tissue. In the thinner
parts of the bone, as at the bottom of the acetabulum and centre of the iliac fossa, it is usually semi-transparent, and composed entirely of compact tissue.

Development (Fig. 192). By eight centres: three primary—one for the ilium, one for the ischium, and one for the pubes; and five secondary—one for the crest of the ilium its whole length, one for the anterior inferior spinous process (said to occur more frequently in the male than the female), one for the tuberosity of the ischium, one for the symphysis pubis (more frequent in the female than the male), and one for the Y-shaped piece at the bottom of the acetabulum. These various centres appear in the following order: First, in the ilium, at the lower part of the bone, immediately above the sciatic notch, at about the same period that the development of the vertebrae commences. Secondly, in the body of the ischium, at about the third month of fetal life. Thirdly, in the body of the pubes, between the fourth and fifth months. At birth, the three primary centres are quite separate, the crest, the bottom of the acetabulum, and the rami of the ischium and pubes, being still cartilaginous. At about the sixth year, the rami of the pubes and ischium are almost completely ossified. About the thirteenth or fourteenth year, the three divisions of the bone have extended their growth into the bottom of the acetabulum, being separated from each other by a Y-shaped portion of cartilage, which now presents traces of ossification. The ilium and ischium then become joined, and lastly the pubes, through the intervention of this Y-shaped portion. At about the age of puberty, ossification takes place in each of the remaining portions, and they become joined to the rest of the bone about the twenty-fifth year.

Articulations. With its fellow of the opposite side, the sacrum and femur.

Attachment of Muscles. Ilium. To the outer lip of the crest, the Tensor vaginae femoris, Obliquus externus abdominis, and Latissimus dorsi; to the internal lip, the Transversalis, Quadratus lumborum, and Erector spine; to the interspace between the lips, the Obliquus internus. To the outer surface of the ilium, the Gluteus maximus, Gluteus medius, Gluteus minimus, reflected tendon of Rectus, portion of Pyriformis; to the internal surface, the Iliacus, and the Multifidus spine to the internal surface of the posterior superior spine; to the anterior border, the Sartorius and straight tendon of the rectus. Ischium. To its outer surface, the Obturator externus; internal surface, Obturator internus and Levator ani. To the spine, the Gemellus superior, Levator ani, and Coccygens. To the tuberosity, the Biceps, Semi-tendinosus, Semi-membranosus, Quadratus femoris, Adductor magnus, Gemellus inferior, Transversus perinei, Erector penis. To the Pubes, the Obliquus externus, Obliquus internus, Transversalis, Rectus, Pyramidalis, Psoas parvus, Pectineus, Adductor longus, Adductor brevis, Gracilis, Obturator externus and internus, Levator ani, Compressor urethrae, and occasionally a few fibres of the Accelerator uraei.

The Pelvis (Figs. 193, 194).

The Pelvis, so called from its resemblance to a basin, is stronger and more massively constructed than either the cranial or thoracic cavity; it is a bony ring interposed between the lower end of the spine, which it supports, and the lower extremities, upon which it rests. It is composed of four bones: the two ossa innominata, which bound it on either side and in front; and the sacrum and coccyx, which complete it behind.

The pelvis is divided by a prominent line, the linea ilio-pectinea, into the false and true pelvis.

The false pelvis is all that expanded portion of the pelvic cavity which is situated above the linea ilio-pectinea. It is bounded on each side by the ossa illi; in front it is incomplete, presenting a wide interval between the spinous processes of the ilia on either side, which is filled up in the recent state by the parietes of the abdomen; behind, in the middle line, is a deep notch. This broad shallow
cavity is fitted to support the intestines, and to transmit part of their weight to the anterior wall of the abdomen.

The true pelvis is all that part of the pelvic cavity which is situated beneath the linea iliopectinea. It is smaller than the false pelvis, but its walls are more perfect. For convenience of description, it is divided into a superior circumference or inlet, an inferior circumference or outlet, and a cavity.

Fig. 193.—Male Pelvis (Adult).

Fig. 194.—Female Pelvis (Adult).

The superior circumference forms the margin or brim of the pelvis, the included space being called the inlet. It is formed by the linea ilio-pectinea, completed in front by the spine and crest of the pubes, and behind by the anterior margin of the base of the sacrum and sacro-vertebral angle.
The inlet of the pelvis is somewhat heart-shaped, obtusely pointed in front, diverging on either side, and enroached upon behind by the projection forwards of the promontory of the sacrum. It has three principal diameters: antero-posterior (sacro-pubic), transverse, and oblique. The antero-posterior extends from the sacro-vertebral angle to the symphysis pubis; its average measurement is four inches. The transverse extends across the greatest width of the inlet, from the middle of the brim on one side to the same point on the opposite; its average measurement is five inches. The oblique extends from the margin of the pelvis, corresponding to the ilio-pectineal eminence on one side, to the sacro-iliac symphysis on the opposite side; its average measurement is also five inches.

The cavity of the true pelvis is bounded in front by the symphysis pubis; behind by the concavity of the sacrum and coccyx, which, curving forwards above and below, contracts the inlet and outlet of the canal; and laterally it is bounded by a broad, smooth, quadrangular plate of bone, corresponding to the inner surface of the body of the ischium. The cavity is shallow in front, measuring at the symphysis an inch and a half in depth, three inches and a half in the middle, and four inches and a half posteriorly. From this description, it will be seen that the cavity of the pelvis is a short curved canal, considerably deeper on its posterior than on its anterior wall, and broader in the middle than at either extremity, from the projection forwards of the sacro-coccygeal column above and below. This cavity contains, in the recent subject, the rectum, bladder, and part of the organs of generation. The rectum is placed at the back of the pelvis, and corresponds to the curve of the sacro-coccygeal column; the bladder in front, behind the symphysis pubis. In the female, the uterus and vagina occupy the interval between these parts.

The lower circumference of the pelvis is very irregular, and forms what is called the outlet. It is bounded by three prominent eminences: one posterior, formed by the point of the coccyx; and one on each side, the tuberosities of the ischia. These eminences are separated by three notches: one in front, the pubic arch, formed by the convergence of the rami of the ischia and pubes on each side. The other notches, one on each side, are formed by the sacrum and coccyx behind, the ischium in front, and the ilium above; they are called the sacro-sciatic notches; in the natural state they are converted into foramina by the lesser and greater sacro-sciatic ligaments.

The diameters of the outlet of the pelvis are two, antero-posterior and transverse. The antero-posterior extends from the tip of the coccyx to the lower part of the symphysis pubis, and the transverse from the posterior part of one ischiatic tuberosity to the same point on the opposite side: the average measurement of both is four inches. The antero-posterior diameter varies with the length of the coccyx, and is capable of increase or diminution, on account of the mobility of that bone.

Position of the Pelvis. In the erect posture, the pelvis is placed obliquely with regard to the trunk of the body: the pelvic surface of the symphysis pubis looking upwards and backwards, the concavity of the sacrum and coccyx looking downwards and forwards; the base of the sacrum in well-formed female bodies being nearly four inches above the upper border of the symphysis pubis.

Fig. 195.—Vertical Section of the Pelvis, with lines indicating the Axes of the Pelvis.
and the apex of the coccyx a little more than half an inch above its lower border. The obliquity is much greater in the fetus, and at an early period of life, than in the adult.

*Axes of the Pelvis* (Fig. 195). The plane of the inlet of the true pelvis will be represented by a line drawn from the base of the sacrum to the upper margin of the symphysis pubis. A line carried at right angles with this at its middle, would correspond at one extremity with the umbilicus, and at the other with the middle of the coccyx; the axis of the inlet is therefore directed downwards and backwards. The axis of the outlet produced upwards would touch the base of the sacrum, and is therefore directed downwards and forwards. The axis of the cavity is curved like the cavity itself: this curve corresponds to the concavity of the sacrum and coccyx, the extremities being indicated by the central points of the inlet and outlet. A knowledge of the direction of these axes serves to explain the course of the fetus in its passage through the pelvis during parturition. It is also important to the surgeon, as indicating the direction of the force required in the removal of calculi from the bladder, and as determining the direction in which instruments should be used in operations upon the pelvic viscera.

*Differences between the Male and Female Pelvis*. In the male the bones are thicker and stronger, and the muscular eminences and impressions on their surfaces more strongly marked. The male pelvis is altogether more massive; its cavity is deeper and narrower, and the obturator foramina of larger size. In the female the bones are lighter and more expanded, the muscular impressions on their surfaces are only slightly marked, and the pelvis generally is less massive in structure. The iliac fossae are broad, and the spines of the ilia widely separated; hence the great prominence of the hips. The inlet and the outlet are larger; the cavity is more capacious, and the spines of the ischia project less into it. The promontory is less projecting, the sacrum wider and less curved, and the coccyx more movable. The arch of the pubes is wider, and its edges more everted. The tuberosities of the ischia and the acetabula are wider apart.

In the fetus and for several years after birth, the pelvis is small in proportion to that of the adult. The cavity is deep, and the projection of the sacro-vertebral angle less marked. The antero-posterior and transverse diameters are nearly equal. *About puberty*, the pelvis in both sexes presents the general characters of the adult male pelvis, but *after puberty* it acquires its proper sexual characters.

**The Femur or Thigh-Bone.**

The Femur is the longest, largest, and strongest bone in the skeleton, and almost perfectly cylindrical in the greater part of its extent. In the erect posture it is not vertical, being separated from its fellow above by a considerable interval, which corresponds to the entire breadth of the pelvis, but inclining gradually downwards and inwards, so as to approach its fellow towards its lower part, for the purpose of bringing the knee-joint near the line of gravity of the body. The degree of this inclination varies in different persons, and is greater in the female than in the male, on account of the greater breadth of the pelvis. The femur, like other long bones, is divisible into a shaft, and two extremities.

The Upper Extremity presents for examination a head, a neck, and the greater and lesser trochanters.

The head, which is globular, and forms rather more than a hemisphere, is directed upwards, inwards, and a little forwards, the greater part of its convexity being above and in front. Its surface is smooth, coated with cartilage in the

---

1 It is not unusual, however, to find the sacrum in the female presenting a considerable curve extending throughout its whole length.
recent state, and presents, a little behind and below its centre, an ovoid depression, for the attachment of the ligamentum teres. The neck is a flattened pyramidal process of bone, which connects the head with the shaft. It varies in length and obliquity at various periods of life, and under different circumstances. Before puberty it is directed obliquely, so as to form a gentle curve from the axis of the shaft. In the adult male it forms an obtuse angle with the shaft, being directed upwards, inwards, and a little forwards. In the female it approaches more nearly a right angle. Occasionally, in very old subjects, and more especially in those greatly debilitated, its direction becomes horizontal; so that the head sinks below the level of the trochanter, and its length diminishes to such a degree, that the head becomes almost contiguous with the shaft. The neck is flattened from before backwards, contracted in the middle, and broader at its outer extremity, where it is connected with the shaft, than at its summit, where it is attached to the head. It is much broader in the vertical than in the antero-posterior diameter, and much thicker below than above, on account of the greater amount of resistance required in sustaining the weight of the trunk. The anterior surface of the neck is perforated by numerous vascular foramina. The posterior surface is smooth, and is broader and more concave than the anterior; it receives towards its outer side the attachment of the capsular ligament of the hip. The superior border is short and thick, bounded externally by the great trochanter, and its surface perforated by large foramina. The inferior
border, long and narrow, curves a little backwards, to terminate at the lesser trochanter.

The Trochanters (τροχαντής, to run or roll) are prominent processes of bone which afford leverage to the muscles which rotate the thigh on its axis. They are two in number, the greater and the lesser.

The Great Trochanter is a large irregular quadrilateral eminence, situated at the outer side of the neck, at its junction with the upper part of the shaft. It is directed a little outwards and backwards, and, in the adult, is about three-quarters of an inch lower than the head. It presents for examination two surfaces, and four borders. The external surface, quadrilateral in form, is broad, rough, convex, and marked by a prominent diagonal line, which extends from the posterior superior to the anterior inferior angle: this line serves for the attachment of the tendon of the Gluteus medius. Above the line is a triangular surface, sometimes rough for part of the tendon of the same muscle, sometimes smooth for the interposition of a bursa between that tendon and the bone. Below and behind the diagonal line is a smooth triangular surface over which the tendon of the Gluteus maximus muscle plays, a bursa being interposed. The internal surface is of much less extent than the external, and presents at its base a deep depression, the digital or trochanteric fossa, for the attachment of the tendon of the Obturator externus muscle. The superior border is free; it is thick and irregular, and marked by impressions for the attachment of the Pyriformis behind, the Obturator internus and Gemelli in front. The inferior border corresponds to the point of junction of the base of the trochanter with the outer surface of the shaft; it is rough, prominent, slightly curved, and gives attachment to the upper part of the Vastus externus muscle. The anterior border is prominent, somewhat irregular, as well as the surface of bone immediately below it; it affords attachment by its outer part to the Gluteus minimus. The posterior border is very prominent, and appears as a free rounded edge, which forms the back part of the digital fossa.

The Lesser Trochanter is a conical eminence, which varies in size in different subjects; it projects from the lower and back part of the base of the neck. Its base is triangular, and connected with the adjacent parts of the bone by three well-marked borders: two of these are above—the internal continuous with the lower border of the neck; the external with the posterior intertrochanteric line, while the inferior border is continuous with the middle division of the linea aspera. Its summit, which is directed inwards and backwards, is rough, and gives insertion to the tendon of the Psoas magnus. The Iliacus is inserted into the shaft below the lesser trochanter, between the Vastus internus in front, and the Pectineus behind. A well-marked prominence, of variable size, which projects from the upper and front part of the neck, at its junction with the great trochanter, is called the tubercle of the femur; it is the point of meeting of five muscles, the Gluteus minimus externally, the Vastus externus below, and the tendon of the Obturator internus and Gemelli above. Running obliquely downwards and inwards from the tubercle is the spiral line of the femur, or anterior intertrochanteric line; it winds round the inner side of the shaft, below the lesser trochanter, and terminates in the linea aspera, about two inches below this eminence. Its upper half is rough, and affords attachment to the capsular ligament of the hip joint; its lower half is less prominent, and gives attachment to the upper part of the Vastus internus. The posterior intertrochanteric line is very prominent, and runs from the summit of the great trochanter downwards and inwards to the upper and back part of the lesser trochanter. Its upper half forms the posterior border of the great trochanter. A well-marked eminence commences about the middle of the posterior intertrochanteric line, and passes vertically downwards for about two inches along the back part of the shaft: it is called the linea quadrati, and gives attachment to the Quadratus femoris, and a few fibres of the Adductor magnus muscles.

The Shaft, almost perfectly cylindrical in form, is a little broader above than
in the centre, and somewhat flattened from before backwards below. It is slightly arched, so as to be convex in front; concave behind, where it is strengthened by a prominent longitudinal ridge, the linea aspera. It presents for examination three borders separating three surfaces. Of the three borders, one, the linea aspera, is posterior; the other two are placed laterally.

The *linea aspera* (Fig. 197) is a prominent longitudinal ridge or crest, presenting, on the middle third of the bone, an external lip, an internal lip, and a rough intermediate space. A little above the centre of the shaft, this crest divides into three lines:¹ the most external one becomes very rough, and is continued almost vertically upwards to the base of the great trochanter; the middle one, the least distinct, is continued to the base of the trochanter minor; and the internal one is lost above in the spiral line of the femur. Below, the linea aspera divides into two bifurcations, which inclose between them a triangular space (the popliteal space), upon which rests the popliteal artery. Of these two bifurcations, the outer branch is the more prominent, and descends to the summit of the outer condyle. The inner branch is less marked, presents a broad and shallow groove for the passage of the femoral artery, and terminates in a small tubercle at the summit of the internal condyle.

To the inner lip of the linea aspera, along its whole length, is attached the Vastus internus; and to the whole length of the outer lip, the Vastus externus. The Adductor magnus is also attached to the whole length of the linea aspera, being connected with the outer lip above, and the

¹ Of these three lines, only the outer and inner are described by many anatomists: the linea aspera is then said to bifurcate above and below.
inner lip below. Between the Vastus externus and the Adductor magnus are attached two muscles, viz., the Gluteus maximus above, and the short head of the Biceps below. Between the Adductor magnus and the Vastus internus four muscles are attached: the Iliacus and Pectineus above (the latter to the middle of the upper divisions); below these, the Adductor brevis and Adductor longus. The linea aspera is perforated a little below its centre by the nutrient canal, which is directed obliquely upwards.

The two lateral borders of the femur are only slightly marked, the outer one extending from the anterior inferior angle of the great trochanter to the anterior extremity of the external condyle; the inner one from the spiral line, at a point opposite the trochanter minor, to the anterior extremity of the internal condyle. The internal border marks the limit of attachment of the Crureus muscle internally.

The anterior surface includes that portion of the shaft which is situated between the two lateral borders. It is smooth, convex, broader above and below than in the centre, slightly twisted, so that its upper part is directed forwards and a little outwards, its lower part forwards and a little inwards. To the upper three-fourths of this surface the Crureus is attached; the lower fourth is separated from the muscle by the intervention of the synovial membrane of the knee-joint, and affords attachment to the Subcrureus to a small extent. The external surface includes the portion of bone between the external border and the outer lip of the linea aspera; it is continuous above with the outer surface of the great trochanter; below with the outer surface of the internal condyle: to its upper three-fourths is attached the outer portion of the Crureus muscle. The internal surface includes the portion of bone between the internal border and the inner lip of the linea aspera; it is continuous, above, with the lower border of the neck; below, with the inner side of the internal condyle: it is covered by the Vastus internus muscle.

The Lower Extremity, larger than the upper, is of a cuboid form, flattened from before backwards, and divided into two large eminences, the condyles (πόδας, a knuckle), by an interval which presents a smooth depression in front called the trochlea, and a notch of considerable size behind—the intercondyloid notch. The external condyle is the more prominent anteriorly, and is the broader both in the antero-posterior and transverse diameters. The internal condyle is the narrower, longer, and more prominent internally. This difference in the length of the two condyles is only observed when the bone is perpendicular, and depends upon the obliquity of the thigh-bones, in consequence of their separation above at the articulation with the pelvis. If the femur is held obliquely, the surfaces of the two condyles will be seen to be nearly horizontal. The two condyles are directly continuous in front, and form a smooth, trocholear surface, the external border of which is more prominent, and ascends higher than the internal one. This surface articulates with the patella. It presents a median groove, which extends downwards and backwards to the intercondyloid notch; and two lateral convexities, of which the external is the broader, more prominent, and prolonged further upwards upon the front of the outer condyle. The intercondyloid notch lodges the crucial ligaments; it is bounded laterally by the opposed surfaces of the two condyles, and in front by the lower end of the shaft.

Outer Condyle. The outer surface of the external condyle presents, a little behind its centre, an eminence, the outer tuberosity; it is less prominent than the inner tuberosity, and gives attachment to the external lateral ligament of the knee. Immediately beneath it, is a groove which commences at a depression a little behind the centre of the lower border of this surface: the depression is for the tendon of origin of the Popliteus muscle; the groove in which this tendon is contained is smooth, covered with cartilage in the recent state, and runs upwards and backwards to the posterior extremity of the condyle. The inner surface of the outer condyle forms one of the lateral boundaries of
the intercondyloid notch, and gives attachment, by its posterior part, to the 

antior cruciate ligament. The inferior surface is convex, smooth, and broader 
than that of the internal condyle. The posterior extremity is convex and 
smooth: just above the articular surface is a depression for the tendon of the 
outer head of the Gastrocnemius, above which is the origin of the Plantaris.

Inner Condyle. The inner surface of the inner condyle presents a convex 
eminence, the inner tuberosity, rough, for the attachment of the internal lateral 
ligament. Above this tuberosity, at the termination of the inner bifurcation of 
the linea aspera, is a tuberolc, for the insertion of the tendon of the Adductor 
magnus; and behind and beneath the tubercle a depression for the tendon of the 
inner head of the Gastrocnemius. The outer side of the inner condyle forms 
one of the lateral boundaries of the intercondyloid notch, and gives attachment, 
by its anterior part, to the posterior cruciate ligament. Its inferior or articular 
surface is convex, and presents a less extensive surface than the external condyle.

Structure. The shaft of the femur is a cylinder of compact tissue, hollowed 
by a large medullary canal. The cylinder is of great thickness and density in 
the middle third of the shaft, where the bone is narrowest, and the medullary 
canal well formed; but above and below this, the cylinder gradually becomes 
thinner, owing to a separation of the layers of the bone into cancelli, which pro-
ject into the medullary canal and finally obliterare it, so that the upper and lower 
ends of the shaft, and the articular ex-
tremities more especially, consist of can-
cellated tissue, invested by a thin compact 
layer.

The arrangement of the cancelli in the 
ends of the femur is remarkable. In the 
upper end (Fig. 198), they run in parallel 
columns a a from the summit of the head 
to the thick under wall of the neck, while 
a series of transverse fibres b b cross the 
parallel columns, and connect them to the 
thin upper wall of the neck. Another 
series of plates c c springs from the whole 
interior of the cylinder above the lesser 
trochanter; these pass upwards and con-
verge to form a series of arches beneath 
the upper wall of the neck, near its junction with the great trochanter. This 
structure is admirably adapted to sustain, with the greatest mechanical advan-
tage, concussion or weight transmitted from above, and serves an important 
office in strengthening a part especially liable to fracture.

In the lower end, the cancelli spring on all sides from the inner surface of the 
cylinder, and descend in a perpendicular direction to the articular surface, the 
cancelli being strongest and having a more accurately perpendicular course 
above the condyles.

Articulations. With three bones: the os innominatum, tibia, and patella.

Development (Fig. 199). The femur is developed by five centres: one for the 
shaft, one for each extremity, and one for each trochanter. Of all the long 
bones, except the clavicle, it is the first to show traces of ossification; this com-
ences in the shaft, at about the fifth week of fetal life, the centres of ossifica-
tion in the epiphyses appearing in the following order: First, in the lower end 
of the bone, at the ninth month of fetal life; from this the condyles and tube-
rosities are formed; in the head, at the end of the first year after birth; in the 
great trochanter, during the fourth year; and in the lesser trochanter, between 
the thirteenth and fourteenth. The order in which the epiphyses are joined to 
the shaft, is the reverse of that of their appearance; their junction does not 
commence until after puberty, the lesser trochanter being first joined, then the
greater, then the head, and, lastly, the inferior extremity (the first in which ossification commenced), which is not united until the twentieth year.

Attachment of Muscles. To the great trochanter: the Gluteus medius, Gluteus minimus, Pyriformis, Obturator internus, Obturator externus, Gemellus superior, Gemellus inferior, and Quadratus femoris. To the lesser trochanter: the Psoas magnus, and the Iliacus below it. To the shaft, its posterior surface: the Vastus externus, Gluteus maximus, short head of the Biceps, Vastus internus, Adductor magnus, Pectineus, Adductor brevis, and Adductor longus; to its anterior surface, the Crureus and Subcrureus. To the condyles: the Gastrocnemius, Plantaris, and Popliteus.

Fig. 199.—Plan of the Development of the Femur. By Five Centres.

Fig. 200.—Right Patella. Anterior Surface.

Fig. 201.—Posterior Surface.

THE LEG.

The skeleton of the Leg consists of three bones: the Patella, a large sesamoid bone, placed in front of the knee; and the Tibia, and Fibula.

THE PATELLA. (Figs. 200, 201.)

The Patella is a flat, triangular bone, situated at the anterior part of the knee-joint. It resembles the sesamoid bones, from being developed in the tendon of the Quadriceps extensor, and in its structure, being composed throughout of dense cancellous tissue; but it is generally regarded as analogous to the olecranon process of the ulna, which occasionally exists as a separate piece, connected to the shaft of the bone by a continuation of the tendon of the Triceps muscle. 1

1 Professor Owen states, that, “in certain bats, there is a development of a sesamoid bone in the biceps brachii, which is the true homotype of the patella in the leg,” regarding the olecranon as homologous, not with the patella, but with an extension of the upper end of the fibula above the knee-joint, which is met with in some animals. (On the Nature of Limbs, pp. 19, 24.)
It serves to protect the front of the joint, and increases the leverage of the Quadriceps extensor by making it act at a greater angle. It presents an anterior and posterior surface, three borders, a base, and an apex.

The anterior surface is convex, perforated by small apertures, for the passage of nutrient vessels, and marked by numerous rough longitudinal striae. This surface is covered, in the recent state, by an expansion from the tendon of the Quadriceps extensor, and separated from the integument by a bursa. It gives attachment below to the ligamentum patellae. The posterior surface presents a smooth, oval-shaped, articular surface, covered with cartilage in the recent state, and divided into two facets by a vertical ridge, which descends from the superior towards the inferior angle of the bone. The ridge corresponds to the groove on the trochlear surface of the femur, and the two facets to the articular surfaces of the two condyles; the outer facet, for articulation with the outer condyle, being the broader and deeper. This character serves to indicate the side to which the bone belongs. Below the articular surface is a rough, convex, non-articular depression, the lower half of which gives attachment to the ligamentum patellae; the upper half being separated from the head of the tibia by adipose tissue.

The superior and lateral borders give attachment to the tendon of the Quadriceps extensor; the superior border, to that portion of the tendon which is derived from the Rectus and Crureus muscles; and the lateral borders, to the portion derived from the external and internal Vasti muscles.

The base, or superior border, is
Fig. 203.—Bones of the Right Leg. Posterior Surface.

The Tibia. (Figs. 202, 203.)

The Tibia is situated at the front and inner side of the leg, and, excepting the femur, is the longest and largest bone in the skeleton. It is prismatic in form, expanded above, where it enters into the knee-joint, more slightly enlarged below. In the male, its direction is vertical, and parallel with the bone of the opposite side; but in the female it has a slight oblique direction downwards and outwards, to compensate for the oblique direction of the femur inwards. It presents for examination a shaft and two extremities.

The Upper Extremity, or head, is large and expanded on each side into two lateral eminences, the tuberosities. Superiorly, the tuberosities present two smooth concave surfaces, which articulate with the condyles of the femur; the internal articular surface is longer than the external, and oval from before backwards,
to articulate with the internal condyle; the external one being broader, flatter, and more circular, to articulate with the external condyle. Between the two articular surfaces, and nearer the posterior than the anterior aspect of the bone, is an eminence, the spinous process of the tibia, surmounted by a prominent tubercle on each side, which gives attachment to the extremities of the semilunar fibro-cartilages; in front and behind the spinous process is a rough depression for the attachment of the anterior and posterior crucial ligaments and the semilunar cartilages. The anterior surfaces of the tuberosities are continuous with one another, forming a single large surface, which is somewhat flattened: it is triangular, broad above, and perforated by large vascular foramina, narrow below, where it terminates in a prominent oblong elevation of large size, the tubercle of the tibia; the lower half of this tubercle is rough, for the attachment of the ligamentum patellae; the upper half is a smooth facet corresponding, in the recent state, with a bursa which separates the ligament from the bone. Posteriorly, the tuberosities are separated from each other by a shallow depression, the popliteal notch, which gives attachment to the posterior crucial ligament. The posterior surface of the inner tuberosity presents a deep transverse groove, for the insertion of the tendon of the Semimembranosus; and the posterior surface of the outer one, a flat articular facet, nearly circular in form, directed downwards, backwards, and outwards, for articulation with the fibula. The lateral surfaces are convex and rough; the internal one, the most prominent, gives attachment to the internal lateral ligament.

The Shaft of the tibia is of a triangular prismatic form, broad above, gradually decreasing in size to the commencement of its lower fourth, its most slender part where fracture most frequently occurs; it then enlarges again towards its lower extremity. It presents for examination three surfaces and three borders.

The anterior border, the most prominent of the three, is called the crest of the tibia, or, in popular language, the shin; it commences above at the tubercle, and terminates below at the anterior margin of the inner malleolus. This border is very prominent in the upper two-thirds of its extent, smooth and rounded below. It presents a very flexuous course, being curved outwards above, and inwards below; it gives attachment to the deep fascia of the leg.

The internal border is smooth and rounded above and below, but more prominent in the centre; it commences at the back part of the inner tuberosity, and terminates at the posterior border of the inner malleolus; its upper part gives attachment to the internal lateral ligament of the knee to the extent of about two inches, and to some fibres of the Popliteus muscle; its middle third, to some fibres of the Soleus and Flexor longus digitorum muscles.

The external border, or interosseous ridge, is thin and prominent, especially its central part, and gives attachment to the interosseous membrane; it commences above in front of the fibular articular facet, and bifurcates below, to form the boundaries of a triangular rough surface, for the attachment of the interosseous ligament connecting the tibia and fibula.

The internal surface is smooth, convex, and broader than below; its upper third, directed forwards and inwards, is covered by the aponeurosis derived from the tendon of the Sartorius, and by the tendons of the Gracilis and Semitendinosus, all of which are inserted nearly as far forwards as the anterior border; in the rest of its extent it is subcutaneous.

The external surface is narrower than the internal; its upper two-thirds present a shallow groove for the attachment of the Tibialis anticus muscle; its lower third is smooth, convex, curves gradually forwards to the anterior part of the bone, and is covered from within outwards by the tendons of the following muscles: Tibialis anticus, Extensor proprius pollicis, Extensor longus digitorum, Peroneus tertius.

The posterior surface (Fig. 203) presents, at its upper part, a prominent ridge, the oblique line of the tibia, which extends from the back part of the articular facet for the fibula, obliquely downwards, to the internal border, at the junction
of its upper and middle thirds. It marks the limit for the insertion of the Popliteus muscle, and serves for the attachment of the popliteal fascia, and part of the Soleus, Flexor longus digitorum, and Tibialis posticus muscles; the triangular concave surface, above and to the inner side of this line, gives attachment to the Popliteus muscle. The middle third of the posterior surface is divided by a vertical ridge into two lateral halves: the ridge is well marked at its commencement at the oblique line, but becomes gradually indistinct below: the inner and broader half gives attachment to the Flexor longus digitorum, the outer and narrower to part of the Tibialis posticus. The remaining part of the bone is covered by the Tibialis posticus, Flexor longus digitorum, and Flexor longus pollicis muscles. Immediately below the oblique line is the medullary foramen, which is directed obliquely downwards.

The Lower Extremity, much smaller than the upper, presents five surfaces; it is prolonged downwards, on its inner side, into a strong process, the internal malleolus. The inferior surface of the bone is quadrilateral, and smooth, for articulation with the astragalus. This surface is narrow internally, where it becomes continuous with the articular surface of the inner malleolus, broader externally, and traversed from before backwards by a slight elevation, separating two lateral depressions. The anterior surface of the lower extremity is smooth and rounded above, and covered by the tendons of the Extensor muscles of the toes; its lower margin presents a rough transverse depression, for the attachment of the anterior ligament of the ankle-joint: the posterior surface presents a superficial groove directed obliquely downwards and inwards, continuous with a similar groove on the posterior extremity of the astragalus, and serving for the passage of the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis: the external surface presents a triangular rough depression for the attachment of the inferior interosseous ligament connecting it with the fibula; the lower part of this depression is smooth in some bones, covered with cartilage in the recent state, and articulating with the fibula. This surface is bounded by two prominent ridges, continuous above with the interosseous ridge: they afford attachment to the anterior and posterior tibiofibular ligaments. The internal surface of the lower extremity is prolonged downwards to form a strong pyramidal process, flattened from without inwards, the inner malleolus. The inner surface of this process is convex and subcutaneous; its outer surface, smooth and slightly concave, deepens the articular surface for the astragalus; its anterior border is rough, for the attachment of ligamentous fibres; its posterior border presents a broad and deep groove, directed obliquely downwards and inwards, which is occasionally double: this groove transmits the tendons of the Tibialis posticus and Flexor longus digitorum muscles. The summit of the internal malleolus is marked by a rough depression behind, for the attachment of the internal lateral ligament of the ankle-joint.

Structure. Like that of the other long bones.

Development. By three centres (Fig. 204): one for the shaft, and one for each extremity. Ossification commences in the centre of the shaft about the same time as in the femur, the fifth week, and gradually extends towards either extremity. The centre for the upper epiphysis appears at birth; it is flattened in form, and has a thin tongue-shaped process in front, which forms the tubercle.

That for the lower epiphysis appears in the second year. The lower epiphysis joins the shaft at about the twentieth year, and the upper one about the twenty-fifth year. Two additional centres occasionally exist, one for the tongue-shaped process of the upper epiphysis, the tubercle, and one for the inner malleolus.

Articulations. With three bones: the femur, fibula, and astragalus.

Attachment of Muscles. To the inner tuberosity, the Semimembranosus; to the outer tuberosity, the Tibialis anticus and Extensor longus digitorum; to the shaft, its internal surface, the Sartorius, Gracilis, and Semitendinosus; to its external surface, the Tibialis anticus; to its posterior surface, the Popliteus, Soleus Flexor longus digitorum, and Tibialis posticus; to the tubercle, the ligamentum patellae.
The Fibula. (Figs. 202, 203.)

The Fibula is situated at the outer side of the leg. It is the smaller of the two bones, and, in proportion to its length, the most slender of all the long bones; it is placed nearly parallel with the tibia. Its upper extremity is small, placed below the level of the knee-joint, and excluded from its formation; the lower extremity inclines a little forwards, so as to be on a plane anterior to that of the upper end, projects below the tibia, and forms the outer ankle. It presents for examination a shaft and two extremities.

The Upper Extremity, or Head, is of an irregular rounded form, presenting above a flattened articular facet, directed upwards and inwards, for articulation with a corresponding facet on the external tuberosity of the tibia. On the outer side is a thick and rough prominence, continued behind into a pointed eminence, the styloid process, which projects upwards from the posterior part of the head. The prominence gives attachment to the tendon of the Biceps muscle, and to the long external lateral ligament of the knee, the ligament dividing the tendon into two parts. The summit of the styloid process gives attachment to the short external lateral ligament. The remaining part of the circumference of the head is rough, for the attachment of the anterior superior tibio-fibular ligament, and the upper and anterior part of the Peroneus longus in front; and of the posterior superior tibio-fibular ligament and the upper fibres of the outer head of the Soleus muscle behind.

The Lower Extremity, or external malleolus, is of a pyramidal form, somewhat flattened from without inwards, and is longer, and descends lower, than the internal malleolus. Its external surface is convex, subcutaneous, and continuous with a triangular (also subcutaneous) surface on the outer side of the shaft. The internal surface presents in front a smooth triangular facet, broader above than below, and convex from above downwards, which articulates with a corresponding surface on the outer side of the astragalus. Behind and beneath the articular surface is a rough depression, which gives attachment to the posterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament of the ankle. The anterior border is thick and rough, and marked below by a depression for the attachment of the anterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament. The posterior border is broad and marked by a shallow groove for the passage of the tendons of the Peroneus longus and brevis muscles. The summit is rounded, and gives attachment to the middle fasciculus of the external lateral ligament.

The Shaft presents three surfaces and three borders. The anterior border commences above in front of the head, runs vertically downwards to a little below the middle of the bone, and then, curving a little outwards, bifurcates below. The two lines so formed bound the triangular subcutaneous surface immediately above the outer side of the external malleolus. This border gives attachment to an intermuscular septum, which separates the muscles on the anterior surface from those on the external.
The **internal border**, or **interosseous ridge**, is situated close to the inner side of the preceding, and runs nearly parallel with it in the upper third of its extent, but diverges from it so as to include a broader space in the lower two-thirds. It commences above just beneath the head of the bone (sometimes it is quite indistinct for about an inch below the head), and terminates below at the apex of a rough triangular surface immediately above the articular facet of the **external malleolus**. It serves for the attachment of the interosseous membrane, and separates the extensor muscles in front from the flexor muscles behind. The portion of bone included between the anterior and interosseous lines forms the **anterior surface**.

The **posterior border** is sharp and prominent; it commences above at the base of the styloid process, and terminates below in the posterior border of the outer malleolus. It is directed outwards above, backwards in the middle of its course, backwards and a little inwards below, and gives attachment to an aponeurosis which separates the muscles on the outer from those on the inner surface of the shaft. The portion of bone included between this line and the interosseous ridge, and which includes more than half of the whole circumference of the **fibula**, is known as the **internal surface**. Its upper three-fourths are subdivided into two parts, an anterior and a posterior, by a very prominent ridge, the **oblique line of the fibula**, which commences above at the inner side of the head, and terminates by becoming continuous with the interosseous ridge at the lower fourth of the bone. The oblique line attaches an aponeurosis which separates the Tibialis posticus from the Soleus above, and the Flexor longus pollicis below. This line sometimes ceases just before approaching the interosseous ridge.

The **anterior surface** is the interval between the anterior and interosseous borders. It is extremely narrow and flat in the upper third of its extent; broader and grooved longitudinally in its lower third; it serves for the attachment of three muscles, the Extensor longus digitorum, Peroneus tertius, and Extensor proprius pollicis.

The **external surface**, much broader than the preceding, and often deeply grooved, is directed outwards in the upper two-thirds of its course, backwards in the lower third, where it is continuous with the posterior border of the external malleolus. This surface is completely occupied by the Peroneus longus and brevis muscles.

The **internal surface** is the interval between the interosseous ridge and the posterior border, and occupies nearly two-thirds of the circumference of the bone. Its upper three-fourths are divided into an anterior and a posterior portion by a very prominent ridge already mentioned, the oblique line of the fibula. The anterior portion is directed inwards, and is grooved for the attachment of the Tibialis posticus muscle. The posterior portion is continuous below with the rough triangular surface above the articular facet of the outer malleolus; it is directed backwards above, backwards and inwards at its middle, directly inwards below. Its upper third is rough, for the attachment of the Soleus muscle; its lower part presents a triangular rough surface, connected to the tibia by a strong interosseous ligament, and between these two points the entire surface is covered by the fibres of origin of the Flexor longus pollicis muscle. At about the middle of this surface is the nutrient foramen, which is directed downwards.

In order to distinguish the side to which the bone belongs, hold it with the lower extremity downwards, and the broad groove for the Peronei tendons backwards, towards the holder: the triangular subcutaneous surface will then be directed to the side to which the bone belongs.

**Articulations.** With two bones: the tibia and astragalus.

**Development.** By three centres (Fig. 205): one for the shaft, and one for each extremity. Ossification commences in the shaft about the sixth week of fetal life, a little later than in the tibia, and extends gradually towards the extremities. At birth both ends are cartilaginous. Ossification commences in the lower end in the second year, and in the upper one about the fourth year.
CALCANEUM.

The lower epiphysis, the first in which ossification commences, becomes united to the shaft first, contrary to the law which appears to prevail with regard to the junction of epiphyses with diaphyses: this takes place about the twentieth year; the upper epiphysis is joined about the twenty-fifth year. 1

Attachment of Muscles. To the head, the Biceps, Soleus, and Peroneus longus: to the shaft, its anterior surface, the Extensor longus digitorum, Peroneus tertius, and Extensor proprius pollicis; to the internal surface, the Soleus, Tibialis posticus, and Flexor longus pollicis: to the external surface, the Peroneus longus and brevis.

THE FOOT. (Figs. 206, 207.)

The skeleton of the Foot consists of three divisions: the Tarsus, Metatarsus, and Phalanges.

THE TARSUS.

The bones of the Tarsus are seven in number: viz., the calcaneum, or os calcis, astragalus, cuboid, scaphoid, internal, middle, and external cuneiform bones.

THE CALCANEUM.

The Calcaneum, or Os Calcis, is the largest and strongest of the tarsal bones. It is irregularly cuboidal in form, and situated at the lower and back part of the foot, serving to transmit the weight of the body to the ground, and forming a strong lever for the muscles of the calf. It presents for examination six surfaces: superior, inferior, external, anterior, and posterior.

The superior surface is formed behind, of the upper aspect of that part of the os calcis which projects backwards to form the heel. It varies in length in different individuals; is convex from side to side, concave from before backwards, and corresponds above to a mass of adipose substance placed in front of the tendon Achillls. In the middle of the superior surface are two (sometimes three) articular facets, separated by a broad shallow groove, which is directed obliquely forwards and outwards, and is rough for the attachment of the interosseous ligament connecting the astragalus and os calcis. Of the two articular surfaces, the external is the larger, and situated on the body of the bone: it is of an oblong form, wider behind than in front, and convex from before backwards. The internal articular surface is supported on a projecting process of bone, called the lesser process of the calcaneum (sustentaculum tali); it is also oblong, concave longitudinally, and sometimes subdivided into two parts, which differ in size and shape. More anteriorly is seen the upper surface of the greater process, marked by a rough depression for the attachment of numerous ligaments, and the origin of the Extensor brevis digitus muscle.

The inferior surface is narrow, rough, uneven, wider behind than in front, and convex from side to side; it is bounded posteriorly by two tubercles, separated by a rough depression; the external, small, prominent, and rounded, gives attachment to part of the Abductor minimi digiti; the internal, broader and

1 It will be observed that in the fibula, as in other long bones, the epiphysis towards which the nutrient artery is directed is the one first joined to the shaft.
Fig. 206.—Bones of the Right Foot. Dorsal Surface.
CUBOID.

larger, for the support of the heel, gives attachment, by its prominent inner margin, to the Abductor pollicis, and in front to the Flexor brevis digitorum muscles; the depression between the tubercles attaches the Abductor minimi digiti and plantar fascia. The rough surface in front of the tubercles gives attachment to the long plantar ligament, and to the outer head of the Flexor accessorius muscle; and to a prominent tubercle nearer the anterior part of the bone, as well as to a transverse groove in front of it, is attached the short plantar ligament.

The external surface is broad, flat, and almost subcutaneous; it presents near its centre a tubercle, for the attachment of the middle fasciculus of the external lateral ligament. Above the tubercle is a broad smooth surface, giving attachment, at its upper and anterior part, to the external calcaneo-astragaloid ligament; and in front of the tubercle a narrow surface marked by two oblique grooves, separated by an elevated ridge: the superior groove transmits the tendon of the Peroneus brevis; the inferior, the tendon of the Peroneus longus; the intervening ridge gives attachment to a prolongation from the external annular ligament.

The internal surface presents a deep concavity, directed obliquely downwards and forwards, for the transmission of the plantar vessels and nerves and Flexor tendons into the sole of the foot; it affords attachment to part of the Flexor accessorius muscle. This surface presents an eminence of bone, the lesser process, which projects horizontally inwards from its upper and fore part, and to which a slip of the tendon of the Tibialis posticus is attached. This process is concave above, and supports the anterior articular surface of the astragalus; below, it is convex, and grooved for the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis. Its free margin is rough for the attachment of ligaments.

The anterior surface, of a somewhat triangular form, is smooth, concavo-convex, and articulates with the cuboid. It is surmounted, on its outer side, by a rough prominence, which forms an important guide to the surgeon in the performance of Chopart's amputation.

The posterior surface is rough, prominent, convex, and wider below than above. Its lower part is rough, for the attachment of the tendo Achillis, and of the Plantaris muscle; its upper part is smooth, coated with cartilage, and corresponds to a bursa which separates that tendon from the bone.

Articulations. With two bones: the astragalus and cuboid.

Attachment of Muscles. Part of the Tibialis posticus, the tendo Achillis, Plantaris, Abductor pollicis, Abductor minimi digiti, Flexor brevis digitorum, Flexor accessorius, and Extensor brevis digitorum.

THE CUBOID.

The Cuboid Bone is placed on the outer side of the foot, in front of the os calcis, and behind the fourth and fifth metatarsal bones. It is of a pyramidal shape, its base being directed upwards and inwards, its apex downwards and outwards. It may be distinguished from the other tarsal bones by the existence of a deep groove on its under surface, for the tendon of the Peroneus longus muscle. It presents for examination six surfaces: three articular and three non-articular.

The non-articular surfaces are the superior, inferior, and external. The superior or dorsal surface, directed upwards and outwards, is rough, for the attachment of numerous ligaments. The inferior or plantar surface presents in front a deep groove, which runs obliquely from without, forwards and inwards; it lodges the tendon of the Peroneus longus, and is bounded behind by a prominent ridge, terminating externally in an eminence, the tuberosity of the cuboid, the surface of which presents a convex facet, for articulation with the sesamoid bone of the tendon contained in the groove. The ridge and surface of bone behind it are rough, for the attachment of the long and short plantar ligaments.
A few fibres of the Flexor brevis pollicis may be traced to this surface. The *external surface*, the smallest and narrowest of the three, presents a deep notch formed by the commencement of the peroneal groove.

The articular surfaces are the posterior, anterior, and internal. The *posterior surface* is smooth, triangular and concavo-convex, for articulation with the anterior surface of the os calcis. The *anterior*, of smaller size, but also irregularly triangular, is divided by a vertical ridge into two facets: the inner facet, quadrilateral in form, articulates with the fourth metatarsal bone: the outer one, larger and more triangular, articulates with the fifth metatarsal. The *internal surface* is broad, rough, irregularly quadrilateral, presenting at its middle and upper part a small oval facet, for articulation with the external cuneiform bone; and behind this (occasionally) a smaller facet, for articulation with the scaphoid; it is rough in the rest of its extent, for the attachment of strong interosseous ligaments.

To ascertain to which foot it belongs, hold the bone so that its under surface, marked by the peroneal groove, looks downwards, and the large concavo-convex articular surface backwards, towards the holder: the narrow non-articular surface, marked by the commencement of the peroneal groove, will point to the side to which the bone belongs.

*Articulations.* With four bones: the os calcis, external cuneiform, and the fourth and fifth metatarsal bones, occasionally with the scaphoid.

*Attachment of Muscles.* Part of the Flexor brevis pollicis.

### The Astragalus.

The Astragalus (Fig. 206) is the largest of the tarsal bones, next to the os calcis. It occupies the middle and upper part of the tarsus, supporting the tibia above, articulating with the malleoli on either side, resting below upon the os calcis, and joined in front to the scaphoid. This bone may easily be recognized by its large rounded head, by the broad articular facet on its upper convex surface, or by the two articular facets separated by a deep groove on its under concave surface. It presents six surfaces for examination.

The *superior surface* presents, behind, a broad smooth trochlear surface, for articulation with the tibia. The trochlea is broader in front than behind, convex from before backwards, slightly concave from side to side; in front of it is the upper surface of the neck of the astragalus; rough for the attachment of ligaments. The *inferior surface* presents two articular facets separated by a deep groove. The groove runs obliquely forwards and outwards, becoming gradually broader and deeper in front: it corresponds with a similar groove upon the upper surface of the os calcis, and forms, when articulated with that bone, a canal, filled up in the recent state by the calcaneo-astragaloid interosseous ligament. Of the two articular facets, the posterior is the larger, of an obtuse form, and deeply concave from side to side; the anterior, although nearly of equal length, is narrower, of an elongated oval form, convex longitudinally, and often subdivided into two by an elevated ridge; of these the posterior articulates with the lesser process of the os calcis; the anterior, with the upper surface of the calcaneo-scaphoid ligament. The *internal surface* presents at its upper part a pear-shaped articular facet for the inner malleolus, continuous above with the trochlear surface; below the articular surface is a rough depression, for the attachment of the deep portion of the internal lateral ligament. The *external surface* presents a large triangular facet, concave from above downwards, for articulation with the external malleolus; it is continuous above with the trochlear surface; and in front of it is a rough depression for the attachment of the anterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament. The *anterior surface*, convex and rounded, forms the head of the astragalus; it is smooth, of an oval form, and directed obliquely inwards and downwards; it is continuous below with that part of the anterior facet on the under surface which rests upon the cal-
Fig. 207.—Bones of the Right Foot. Plantar Surface.
canoe-scaphoid ligament. The head is surrounded by a constricted portion, the neck of the astragalus. The posterior surface is narrow, and traversed by a groove, which runs obliquely downwards and inwards, and transmits the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis, external to which is a horizontal notch or depression, in which the posterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament is lodged.

To ascertain to which foot it belongs, hold the bone with the broad articular surface upwards, and the rounded head forwards; the lateral triangular articular surface for the external malleolus will then point to the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations. With four bones: tibia, fibula, os calcis and scaphoid.

The Scaphoid.

The Scaphoid or Navicular Bone, so called from its fancied resemblance to a boat, is situated at the inner side of the tarsus, between the astragalus behind and the three cuneiform bones in front. This bone may be distinguished by its form, being concave behind, convex and subdivided into three facets in front.

The anterior surface, of an oblong form, is convex from side to side, and subdivided by two ridges into three facets, for articulation with the three cuneiform bones. The posterior surface is oval, concave, broader externally than internally, and articulates with the rounded head of the astragalus. The superior surface is convex from side to side, and rough for the attachment of ligaments. The inferior is somewhat concave, irregular, and also rough for the attachment of ligaments. The internal surface presents a rounded tubercular eminence, the tuberosity of the scaphoid, which gives attachment to part of the tendon of the Tibialis posticus. The external surface is broad, rough, and irregular, for the attachment of ligamentous fibres, and occasionally presents a small facet for articulation with the cuboid bone.

To ascertain to which foot it belongs, hold the bone with the concave articular surface backwards, and the convex dorsal surface upwards; the broad external surface will point to the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations. With four bones: astragalus and three cuneiform; occasionally also with the cuboid.

Attachment of Muscles. Part of the Tibialis posticus.

The Cuneiform Bones have received their name from their wedge-like shape. They form with the cuboid the most anterior row of the tarsus, being placed between the scaphoid behind, the three innermost metatarsal bones in front, and the cuboid externally. They are called the first, second, and third, counting from the inner to the outer side of the foot, and, from their position, internal, middle, and external.

The Internal Cuneiform.

The Internal Cuneiform is the largest of the three. It is situated at the inner side of the foot, between the scaphoid behind and the base of the first metatarsal in front. It may be distinguished from the other two by its large size, and its more irregular wedge like form. Without the others, it may be known by the large kidney-shaped anterior articulating surface, and by the prominence on the non-articular surface (or base of the wedge), for the attachment of a large tendon. It presents for examination six surfaces.

The internal surface is subcutaneous, and forms part of the inner border of the foot; it is broad, quadrilateral, and presents at its anterior inferior angle a smooth oval facet, over which the tendon of the Tibialis anticus muscle glides; in the rest of its extent it is rough, for the attachment of ligaments. The external surface is concave, presenting, along its superior and posterior borders, a narrow surface for articulation with the middle cuneiform behind, and second
metatarsal bone in front: in the rest of its extent, it is rough for the attachment of ligaments, and prominent below, where it forms part of the tuberosity. The anterior surface, kidney-shaped, articulates with the metatarsal bone of the great toe. The posterior surface is triangular, concave, and articulates with the innermost and largest of the three facets on the anterior surface of the scaphoid. The inferior or plantar surface is rough, and presents a prominent tuberosity at its back part for the attachment of part of the tendon of the Tibialis posticus. It also gives attachment in front to part of the tendon of the Tibialis anticus. The superior surface is the narrow pointed end of the wedge, which is directed upwards and outwards; it is rough for the attachment of ligaments.

To ascertain to which side it belongs, hold the bone so that its superior narrow edge looks upwards, and the long, kidney-shaped, articular surface forwards; the external surface, marked by its vertical and horizontal articular facets, will point to the side to which it belongs.

Articulations. With four bones: scaphoid, middle cuneiform, first and second metatarsal bones.

Attachment of Muscles. The Tibialis anticus and posticus.

THE MIDDLE CUNEIFORM.

The Middle Cuneiform, the smallest of the three, is of very regular wedge-like form, the broad extremity being placed upwards, the narrow end downwards. It is situated between the other two bones of the same name, and corresponds to the scaphoid behind, and the second metatarsal in front. It may be distinguished from the external cuneiform bone, which it much resembles in general appearance, by the articular facet, of angular form, which runs round the upper and back part of its inner surface; and if the two bones from the same foot are together, the middle cuneiform is much the smaller.

The anterior surface, triangular in form, and narrower than the posterior, articulates with the base of the second metatarsal bone. The posterior surface, also triangular, articulates with the scaphoid. The internal surface presents an articular facet, running along the superior and posterior borders, for articulation with the internal cuneiform, and is rough below for the attachment of ligaments. The external surface presents posteriorly a smooth facet for articulation with the external cuneiform bone. The superior surface forms the base of the wedge; it is quadrilateral, broader behind than in front, and rough for the attachment of ligaments. The inferior surface, pointed and tubercular, is also rough for ligamentous attachment.

To ascertain to which foot the bone belongs, hold its superior or dorsal surface upwards, the broadest edge being towards the holder: the smooth facet (limited to the posterior border) will then point to the side to which it belongs.

Articulations. With four bones: scaphoid, internal and external cuneiform, and second metatarsal bone.

Attachment of Muscle. A slip from the tendon of the Tibialis posticus is attached this bone.

THE EXTERNAL CUNEIFORM.

The External Cuneiform, intermediate in size between the two preceding, is of a very regular wedge-like form, the broad extremity being placed upwards, the narrow end downwards. It occupies the centre of the front row of the tarsus between the middle cuneiform internally, the cuboid externally, the scaphoid behind, and the third metatarsal in front. It is distinguished from the internal cuneiform bone by its more regular wedge-like shape, and by the absence of the kidney-shaped articular surface: from the middle cuneiform, by the absence of the bent, or angular, facet, and by the two articular facets which mark both its inner and outer surfaces. It has six surfaces for examination.
The anterior surface, triangular in form, articulates with the third metatarsal bone. The posterior surface articulates with the most external facet of the scaphoid, and is rough below for the attachment of ligamentous fibres. The internal surface presents two articular facets separated by a rough depression; the anterior one, situated at the superior angle of the bone, articulates with the outer side of the base of the second metatarsal bone; the posterior one skirts the posterior border, and articulates with the middle cuneiform; the rough depression between the two gives attachment to an interosseous ligament. The external surface also presents two articular facets, separated by a rough non-articular surface; the anterior facet, situated at the superior angle of the bone, is small, and articulates with the inner side of the base of the fourth metatarsal; the posterior, and larger one articulates with the cuboid; the rough non-articular surface serves for the attachment of an interosseous ligament. The three facets for articulation with the three metatarsal bones are continuous with one another, and covered by a prolongation of the same cartilage; the facets for articulation with the middle cuneiform and scaphoid are also continuous, but that for articulation with the cuboid is usually separate. The superior or dorsal surface, of an oblong form, is rough for the attachment of ligaments. The inferior or plantar surface is an obtuse rounded margin, and serves for the attachment of part of the tendon of the Tibialis posticus, part of the Flexor brevis pollicis, and ligaments.

To ascertain to which side it belongs, hold the bone with the broad dorsal surface upwards, the prolonged edge backwards; the separate articular facet for the cuboid will point to the proper side.

Articulations. With six bones: the scaphoid, middle cuneiform, cuboid, and second, third, and fourth metatarsal bones.

Attachment of Muscles. Part of Tibialis posticus, and Flexor brevis pollicis.

The Metatarsal Bones.

The Metatarsal Bones are five in number; they are long bones, and subdivided into a shaft and two extremities.

Common characters. The Shaft is prismoid in form, tapers gradually from the tarsal to the phalangeal extremity, and is slightly curved longitudinally, so as to be concave below, slightly convex above. The Posterior Extremity, or Base, is wedge-shaped, articulating by its terminal surface with the tarsal bones, and by its lateral surfaces with the contiguous metatarsal bones; its dorsal and plantar surfaces being rough for the attachment of ligaments. The Anterior Extremity, or Head, presents a terminal rounded articular surface, oblong from above downwards, and extending further backwards below than above. Its sides are flattened, and present a depression, surmounted by a tubercle, for ligamentous attachment. Its under surface is grooved in the middle line for the passage of the Flexor tendon, and marked on each side by an articular eminence continuous with the terminal articular surface.

Peculiar characters. The Foot is remarkable for its great size, but is the shortest of all the metatarsal bones. The Shaft is strong, and of well-marked prismoid form. The posterior extremity presents no lateral articular facets; its terminal articular surface is of large size, of semilunar form, and its circumference grooved for the tarsometatarsal ligaments; its inferior angle presents a rough oval prominence for the insertion of the tendon of the Peroneus longus. The head is of large size; on its plantar surface are two grooved facets, over which glide sesamoid bones; the facets are separated by a smooth elevated ridge.

This bone is known by the single kidney-shaped articular surface on its base; the deeply grooved appearance of the plantar surface of its head; and its great thickness, relatively to its length. When it is placed in its natural position, the concave border of the kidney-shaped articular surface on its base points to the side to which the bone belongs.
The Second is the longest and largest of the remaining metatarsal bones, being prolonged backwards into the recess formed between the three cuneiform bones. Its tarsal extremity is broad above, narrow and rough below. It presents four articular surfaces: one, behind, of a triangular form, for articulation with the middle cuneiform; one at the upper part of its internal lateral surface, for articulation with the internal cuneiform; and two on its external lateral surface, a superior and an inferior, separated by a rough depression. Each of the latter articular surfaces is divided by a vertical ridge into two parts; the anterior segment of each facet articulates with the third metatarsal; the two posterior (sometimes continuous) with the external cuneiform.

The facets on the tarsal extremity of the second metatarsal bone serve at once to distinguish it from the rest and to indicate the foot to which it belongs; there being one facet at the upper angle of the internal surface, and two facets, each subdivided into two parts, on the external surface, pointing to the side to which the bone belongs. The fact that the two posterior subdivisions of these external facets sometimes run into one should not be forgotten.

The Third articulates behind, by means of a triangular smooth surface, with the external cuneiform; on its inner side, by two facets, with the second metatarsal; and on its outer side, by a single facet, with the fourth metatarsal. The latter facet is of circular form, and situated at the upper angle of the base.

The third metatarsal is known by its having at its tarsal end two undivided facets on the inner side, and a single facet on the outer. This distinguishes it from the second metatarsal, in which the two facets, found on one side of its tarsal end, are each subdivided into two. The single facet (when the bone is put in its natural position) is on the side to which the bone belongs.

The Fourth is smaller in size than the preceding; its tarsal extremity presents a terminal quadrilateral surface, for articulation with the cuboid; a smooth facet on the inner side, divided by a ridge into an anterior portion for articulation with the third metatarsal, and a posterior portion for articulation with the external cuneiform; on the outer side a single facet, for articulation with the fifth metatarsal.

The fourth metatarsal is known by its having a single facet, on either side of the tarsal extremity, that on the inner side being divided into two parts. If this subdivision be not recognizable, the fact that its tarsal end is bent somewhat outwards will indicate the side to which it belongs, as Mr. Holden points out.

The Fifth is recognized by the tubercular eminence on the outer side of its base. It articulates behind, by a triangular surface cut obliquely from without inwards, with the cuboid: and internally, with the fourth metatarsal.

The projection on the outer side of this bone at its tarsal end at once distinguishes it from the others, and points to the side to which it belongs.

Articulations. Each bone articulates with the tarsal bones by one extremity, and by the other with the first row of phalanges. The number of tarsal bones with which each metatarsal articulates, is one for the first, three for the second, one for the third, two for the fourth, and one for the fifth.

Attachment of Muscles. To the first metatarsal bone, three: part of the Tibialis anticus, the Peroneus longus, and First dorsal interosseous. To the second, three: the Adductor pollicis, and First and Second dorsal interosseous. To the third, four: the Adductor pollicis, Second and Third dorsal, and first plantar interosseous. To the fourth, four: the Adductor pollicis, Third and Fourth dorsal, and Second plantar interosseous. To the fifth, five: the Peroneus brevis, Peroneus tertius, Flexor brevis minimi digiti, Fourth dorsal, and Third plantar interosseous.

PHALANGES.

The Phalanges of the foot, both in number and general arrangement, resemble those in the hand; there being two in the great toe, and three in each of the other toes.
THE SKELETON.

The phalanges of the first row resemble closely those of the hand. The shaft is compressed from side to side, convex above, concave below. The posterior extremity is concave; and the anterior extremity presents a trochlear surface, for articulation with the second phalanges.

The phalanges of the second row are remarkably small and short, but rather broader than those of the first row.

The ungual phalanges, in form, resemble those of the fingers; but they are smaller, flattened from above downwards, presenting a broad base for articulation with the second row, and an expanded extremity for the support of the nail and end of the toe.

Articulation. The first row, with the metatarsal bones, and second phalanges; the second of the great toe, with the first phalanx, and of the other toes, with the first and third phalanges; the third with the second row.


DEVELOPMENT OF THE FOOT. (Fig. 208.)

The Tarsal bones are each developed by a single centre, excepting the os calcis, which has an epiphysis for its posterior extremity. The centres make their appearance in the following order: os calcis, at the sixth month of fetal life; astragalus, about the seventh month; cuboid, at the ninth month; external cuneiform, during the first year; internal cuneiform in the third year; middle cuneiform and scaphoid in the fourth year. The epiphysis for the posterior tuberosity of the os calcis appears at the tenth year, and unites with the rest of the bone soon after puberty.

The Metatarsal bones are each developed by two centres; one for the shaft, and one for the digital extremity, in the four outer metatarsal; one for the shaft, and one for the base, in the metatarsal bone of the great toe. Ossification commences in the centre of the shaft about the seventh week, and extends towards either extremity, and in the digital epiphyses about the third year; they become joined between the eighteenth and twentieth years.

The Phalanges are developed by two centres for each bone: one for the shaft, and one for the metatarsal extremity.

SESAMOID BONES.

These are small rounded masses, cartilaginous in early life, osseous in the adult, which are developed in those tendons which exert a great amount of pressure upon the parts over which they glide. It is said that they are more commonly found in the male than in the female, and in persons of an active muscular habit than in those who are weak and debilitated. They are invested throughout their whole surface by the fibrous tissue of the tendon in which they are found, excepting that side which lies in contact with the part over which they play, where they present a free articular facet. They may be divided into two kinds: those which glide over the articular surfaces of joints, and those which play over the cartilaginous facets found on the surfaces of certain bones.

The sesamoid bones of the joints are, in the lower extremity, the patella, which
is developed in the tendon of the Quadriceps extensor; two small sesamoid bones, found in the tendons of the Flexor brevis pollicis opposite the metatarso-phalangeal joint of the great toe, and occasionally one in the metatarso-phalangeal joint of the second toe, the little toe, and, still more rarely, the third and fourth toes.

Fig. 208.—Plan of the Development of the Foot.

In the upper extremity, there are two on the palmar surface of the metacarpo-phalangeal joint in the thumb, developed in the tendons of the Flexor brevis pollicis, occasionally one or two opposite the metacarpo-phalangeal articulations of the fore and little fingers, and, still more rarely, one opposite the same joints of the third and fourth fingers.

Those found in the tendons which glide over certain bones, occupy the following situations: one in the tendon of the Peroneus longus, where it glides through the groove in the cuboid bone; one appears late in life in the tendon of the Tibialis anticus, opposite the smooth facet on the internal cuneiform bone; one is found in the tendon of the Tibialis posticus, opposite the inner side of the astragalus; one in the outer head of the Gastrocnemius, behind the outer condyle of the femur; and one in the Psoas and Iliacus, where they glide over the body of the pubes. Sesamoid bones are found occasionally in the tendon of the Biceps, opposite the tuberosity of the radius; in the tendon of the Gluteus maximus, as it passes over the great trochanter; and in the tendons which wind round the inner and outer malleoli.
The Articulations.

The various bones of which the skeleton consists are connected together at different parts of their surfaces, and such a connection is designated by the name of Joint or Articulation. If the joint is immovable, as between the cranial and most of the facial bones, their adjacent margins are applied in almost close contact, a thin layer of fibrous membrane, the sutural ligament, and, at the base of the skull, in certain situations, a thin layer of cartilage being interposed. Where slight movement is required, combined with great strength, the osseous surfaces are united by tough and elastic fibro-cartilages, as in the joints of the spine, the sacro-ilial, and interpubic articulations; but in the movable joints, the bones forming the articulation are generally expanded for greater convenience of mutual connection, covered by cartilage, held together by strong bands or capsules of fibrous tissue, called ligaments, and lined by a membrane, the synovial membrane, which secretes a fluid to lubricate the various parts of which the joint is formed; so that the structures which enter into the formation of a joint are bone, cartilage, fibro-cartilage, ligament, and synovial membrane.

Bone constitutes the fundamental element of all the joints. In the long bones, the extremities are the parts which form the articulations; they are generally somewhat enlarged, consisting of spongy cancellous tissue, with a thin coating of compact substance. In the flat bones, the articulations usually take place at the edges; and, in the short bones, at various parts of their surface. The layer of compact bone which forms the articular surface, and to which the cartilage is attached, is called the articular lamella. It is of a white color, extremely dense, and varies in thickness. Its structure differs from ordinary bone tissue in this respect, that it contains no Haversian canals, and its lacunae are much larger than in ordinary bone, and have no canaliculi. The vessels of the cancellous tissue, as they approach the articular lamella, turn back in loops, and do not perforate it; this layer is consequently more dense and firmer than ordinary bone, and is evidently designed to form a firm and unyielding support for the articular cartilage.

The articular will be found described along with the other kinds of cartilage in the Introduction.

Ligaments are found in nearly all the movable articulations; they consist of bands of various forms, serving to connect together the articular extremities of bones, and composed mainly of bundles of white fibrous tissue placed parallel with, or closely interlaced with, one another, and presenting a white, shining silvery aspect. Ligament is pliant and flexible, so as to allow of the most perfect freedom of movement, but strong, tough, and inextensible, so as not readily to yield under the most severely applied force; it is consequently well adapted to serve as the connecting medium between the bones. Some ligaments consist entirely of yellow elastic tissue, as the ligamenta subflava, which connect together the adjacent arches of the vertebrae, and the ligamentum nuchae in the lower animals. In these cases, it will be observed that the elasticity of the ligament is intended to act as a substitute for muscular power.

Synovial Membrane is a thin, delicate membrane, arranged in the form of a short wide tube, attached by its open ends to the margins of the articular extremities of the bones, and covering the inner surface of the various ligaments which connect the articulating surfaces. It resembles the serous membranes in structure, but differs in the nature of its secretion, which is thick, viscid, and glairy, like the white of egg; and hence termed synovia. The synovial mem-
branes found in the body admit of subdivision into three kinds, articular, bursal, and vaginal.

The articular synovial membranes are found in all the freely movable joints. In the fetus, this membrane is said, by Toynbee, to be continued over the surface of the cartilages; but in the adult it is wanting, excepting at their circumference, upon which it encroaches for a short distance; it then invests the inner surface of the capsular or other ligaments enclosing the joint, and is reflected over the surface of any tendons passing through its cavity, as the tendon of the Popliteus in the knee, and the tendon of the Biceps in the shoulder. In most of the joints, the synovial membrane is thrown into folds, which project into the cavity. Some of these folds contain large masses of fat. These are especially distinct in the hip and the knee. Others are flattened folds, subdivided at their margins into fringe-like processes, the vessels of which have a convoluted arrangement. The latter generally project from the synovial membrane near the margin of the cartilage, and lie flat upon its surface. They consist of connective tissue, covered with epithelium, and contain fat cells in variable quantity, and, more rarely, isolated cartilage cells. They are found in most of the bursal and vaginal, as well as in the articular synovial membranes, and were described, by Clopton Havers, as mucilaginous glands, and as the source of the synovial secretion. Under certain diseased conditions, similar processes are found covering the entire surface of the synovial membrane, forming a mass of pedunculated fibro-fatty growths, which project into the joint.

The bursae are found interposed between surfaces which move upon each other, producing friction, as in the gliding of a tendon, or of the integument over projecting bony surfaces. They admit of subdivision into two kinds, the bursa mucosa, and the synovial bursae. The former are large, simple, or irregular cavities in the subcutaneous areolar tissue, enclosing a clear viscid fluid. They are found in various situations, as between the integument and front of the patella, over the olecranon, the malleoli, and other prominent parts. The synovial bursae are found interposed between muscles or tendons as they play over projecting bony surfaces, as between the Glutei muscles and the surface of the great trochanter. They consist of a thin wall of connective tissue, partially covered by epithelium, and contain a viscid fluid. Where one of these exists in the neighborhood of a joint, it usually communicates with its cavity, as is generally the case with the bursa between the tendon of the Psoas and Iliacus and the capsular ligament of the hip, or the one interposed between the surface of the Subscapularis and the neck of the scapula.

The vaginal synovial membranes (synovial sheaths) serve to facilitate the gliding of tendons in the osseo-fibrous canals through which they pass. The membrane is here arranged in the form of a sheath, one layer of which adheres to the wall of the canal, and the other is reflected upon the outer surface of the contained tendon; the space between the two free surfaces of the membrane being partially filled with synovia. These sheaths are chiefly found surrounding the tendons of the flexor and extensor muscles of the fingers and toes, as they pass through the osseo-fibrous canals in the hand or foot.

Synovia is a transparent, yellowish-white, or slightly reddish fluid, viscid like the white of egg, having an alkaline reaction, and slightly saline taste. It consists, according to Berthold, in the ox, of 94.85 water, 0.56 mucus and epithelium, 0.08 fat, 3.51 albumen and extractive matter, and 1.0 salts.

The Articulations are divided into three classes: Synarthrosis, or immovable; Amphiarthrosis, or mixed; and Diarthrosis, or movable joints.


Synarthrosis includes all those articulations in which the surfaces of the bones are in almost direct contact, not separated by an intervening synovial cavity, and immovably connected with each other, as the joints between the bones of
the cranium and face, excepting those of the lower jaw. The varieties of synarthrosis are three in number: Sutura, Schindylesis, and Gomphosis.

Sutura (a seam). Where the articulating surfaces are connected by a series of processes and indentations interlocked together, it is termed sutura vera; of which there are three varieties: sutura dentata, serrata, and limbosa. The surfaces of the bones are not in direct contact, being separated by a layer of membrane, continuous externally with the pericranium, internally with the dura mater. The sutura dentata (dens, a tooth) is so called from the tooth-like form of the projecting articular processes, as in the suture between the parietal bones. In the sutura serrata (serra, a saw), the edges of the two bones forming the articulation are serrated like the teeth of a fine saw, as between the two portions of the frontal bone. In the sutura limbosa (limbus, a selvage), besides the dentated processes, there is a certain degree of bevelling of the articular surfaces, so that the bones overlap one another, as in the suture between the parietal and frontal bones. When the articulation is formed by roughened surfaces placed in apposition with one another, it is termed the false suture, sutura notha, of which there are two kinds: the sutura squamosa (squama, a scale), formed by the overlapping of two contiguous bones by broad bevelled margins, as in the temporal-parietal (squamous) suture; and the sutura harmonia (harmoia, a joining together), where there is simple apposition of two contiguous rough bony surfaces as in the articulation between the two superior maxillary bones, or of the horizontal plates of the palatine bones.

Schindylesis (σχίνδυλεσις, a fissure) is that form of articulation in which a thin plate of bone is received into a cleft or fissure formed by the separation of two laminae of another, as in the articulation of the rostrum of the sphenoid, and perpendicular plate of the ethmoid with the vomer, or in the reception of the latter in the fissure between the superior maxillary and palatine bones.

Gomphosis (γόμφος, a nail) is an articulation formed by the insertion of a conical process into a socket, as a nail is driven into a board; this is not illustrated by any articulations between bones, properly so called, but is seen in the articulation of the teeth with the alveoli of the maxillary bones.


In this form of articulation, the contiguous osseous surfaces are either connected together by broad flattened disks of fibro-cartilage, which adhere to the end of both bones, as in the articulation between the bodies of the vertebrae, or that between the first two pieces of the sternum; or else the articulating surfaces are covered with fibro-cartilage, partially lined by synovial membrane, and connected together by external ligaments, as in the sacro-iliac and pubic symphyses; both these forms being capable of limited motion in every direction. The former resemble the synarthrodial joints in the continuity of their surfaces, and absence of synovial sac; the latter, the diarthrodial. These joints occasionally become obliterated in old age; as is frequently the case in the pubic articulation, and occasionally in the intervertebral and sacro-iliac.


This form of articulation includes the greater number of the joints in the body, mobility being their distinguishing character. They are formed by the approximation of two contiguous bony surfaces, covered with cartilage, connected by ligaments, and lined by synovial membrane. The varieties of joints in this class have been determined by the kind of motion permitted in each; they are four in number: Arthrodia, Enarthrosis, Ginglymus, Diarthrosis rotatoria.

Arthrodia is that form of joint which admits of a gliding movement; it is formed by the approximation of plane surfaces, or one slightly concave, the other slightly convex; the amount of motion between them being limited by the liga-
ments, or osseous processes, surrounding the articulation; as in the articular processes of the vertebrae, temporo-maxillary, sterno- and acromio-clavicular, inferior radio-ulnar, carpal, carpo-metacarpal, superior tibio-fibular, tarsal, and tarsometatarsal articulations.

*Enarthrosis* is that form of joint which is capable of motion in all directions. It is formed by the reception of a globular head into a deep cup-like cavity (hence the name "ball and socket"), the parts being kept in apposition by a capsular ligament strengthened by accessory ligamentous bands. Examples of this form of articulation are found in the hip and shoulder.

*Ginglymus, Hinge-joint* (*γίγλυμος, a hinge*). In this form of joint, the articular surfaces are moulded to each other in such a manner as to permit motion only in two directions, forwards and backwards, the extent of motion at the same time being considerable. The articular surfaces are connected together by strong lateral ligaments, which form their chief bond of union. The most perfect forms of ginglymus are the elbow and ankle; the knee is less perfect, as it allows a slight degree of rotation in certain positions of the limb: there are also the metatarso-phalangeal and phalangeal joints in the lower extremity, and the metacarlo-phalangeal and phalangeal joints in the upper extremity.

*Diarhrosis rotatoria* (Lateral Ginglymus). Where the movement is limited to rotation, the joint is formed by a pivot-like process turning within a ring, or the ring on the pivot, the ring being formed partly of bone, partly of ligament. In the articulation of the odontoid process of the axis with the atlas, the ring is formed in front by the anterior arch of the atlas; behind, by the transverse ligament; here the ring rotates round the odontoid process. In the superior radio-ulnar articulation, the ring is formed partly by the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna; in the rest of its extent, by the orbicular ligament; here, the head of the radius rotates within the ring.

Subjoined, in a tabular form, are the names, distinctive characters, and examples of the different kinds of articulations.
STRUCTURE OF JOINTS.

Dentata, having tooth-like processes. As in interparietal suture.

Serrata, having serrated edges, like the teeth of a saw. As in interfrontal suture.

Limbosa, having bevelled margins, and dentated processes. As in fronto-parietal suture.

Squamosa, formed by thin bevelled margins, overlapping each other. As in squamo-parietal suture.

Harmonia, formed by the opposition of contiguous rough surfaces. As in intermaxillary suture.

Synarthrosis, or immovable joint. Surfaces separated by fibrous membrane, without any intervening synovial cavity, and immovably connected with each other. As in joints of cranium and face (except lower jaw).

Sutural articulation by processes and indentations interlocked together.

Sutura vera (true) articulate by indented borders.

Sutura noda (false) articulate by rough surfaces.

Schindylesis. Articulation formed by the reception of a thin plate of one bone into a fissure of another. As in articulation of rostrum of sphenoid with vomer.

Gomphosis. Articulation formed by the insertion of a conical process into a socket.

The teeth.

1. Surfaces connected by fibro-cartilage, not separated by synovial membrane, and having limited motion. As in joints between bodies of vertebrae.

2. Surfaces covered by fibro-cartilage; lined by a partial synovial membrane. As in sacro-iliac and pubic symphyses.

Arthrodia. Gliding joint; articulations by plane surfaces, which glide upon each other. As in sterno-acromioclavicular articulations.

Enarthrosis. Ball-and-socket joint; capable of motion in all directions. Articulations by a globular head received into a cup-like cavity. As in hip and shoulder joints.

Ginglymus. Hinge joint; motion limited to two directions, forwards and backwards. Articular surfaces fitted together so as to permit of movement in one plane. As in the elbow, ankle, and knee.

Diarthrosis rotatoria or Lateral Ginglymus. Articulation by a pivot process turning within a ring, or ring around a pivot. As in superior radio-ulnar articulation, and atlo-axoid joint.
THE KINDS OF MOVEMENT ADMITTED IN JOINTS.

The movements admissible in joints may be divided into four kinds: gliding, angular movement, circumduction, and rotation.

Gliding movement is the most simple kind of motion that can take place in a joint, one surface gliding over another. It is common to all movable joints, but in some, as in the articulations of the carpus and tarsus, it is the only motion permitted. This movement is not confined to plane surfaces, but may exist between any two contiguous surfaces, of whatever form, limited by the ligaments which inclose the articulation.

Angular movement occurs only between the long bones, and may take place in four directions, forwards and backwards, constituting flexion and extension, or inwards and outwards, constituting adduction and abduction. The strictly ginglymoid or hinge joints admit of flexion and extension only. Abduction and adduction, combined with flexion and extension, are met with in the more movable joints; as in the hip, shoulder, and metacarpal joint of the thumb, and partially in the wrist and ankle.

Circumduction is that limited degree of motion which takes place between the head of a bone and its articular cavity, whilst the extremity and sides of the limb are made to circumscribe a conical space, the base of which corresponds with the inferior extremity of the limb, the apex with the articular cavity; this kind of motion is best seen in the shoulder and hip joints.

Rotation is the movement of a bone upon its own axis, the bone retaining the same relative situation with respect to the adjacent parts; as in the articulation between the atlas and axis, where the odontoid process serves as a pivot around which the atlas turns; or in the rotation of the radius upon the humerus, and also in the hip and shoulder.

The actions of the different joints of a limb are combined by means of the long muscles which pass over more than one joint, and which act to a certain extent as elastic ligaments in restraining certain actions of one joint, except when combined with corresponding movements of the other—these latter movements being usually in the opposite direction. Thus the shortness of the hamstring-muscles prevents complete flexion of the hip, unless the knee-joint be also flexed so as to bring their attachments nearer together. The uses of this arrangement are threefold. 1. It co-ordinates the kinds of movement which are the most habitual and necessary, and enables them to be performed with the least expenditure of power. "Thus in the usual gesture of the arms, whether in grasping or rejecting, the shoulder and the elbow are flexed simultaneously, and simultaneously extended," in consequence of the passage of the Biceps and Triceps cubiti over both joints. 2. It enables the short muscles which pass over only one joint to act upon more than one. "Thus if the Rectus femoris remain tonically of such length that when stretched over the extended hip, it compels extension of the knee, then the Gluteus maximus becomes not only an extensor of the hip, but an extensor of the knee as well." 3. It provides the joints with ligaments which, while they are of very great power in resisting movements to an extent incompatible with the mechanism of the joint, at the same time spontaneously yield when necessary. "Taxed beyond its strength a ligament will be ruptured, whereas a contracted muscle is easily relaxed; also, if neighboring joints be united by ligaments, the amount of flexion or extension of each must remain in constant proportion to that of the other; while, if the union be by muscles, the separation of the points of attachment of those muscles may vary considerably in different varieties of movement, the muscles adapting themselves tonically to the length required." The quotations are from a very interesting paper, by Dr. Cleland, in the "Journal of Anatomy and Physiology," No. 1, 1866, p. 85; by whom I believe this important fact in the mechanism of joints was first clearly pointed out, though it has been independently observed afterwards by other anatomists.
The articular surfaces may be arranged into those of the trunk, those of the upper extremity, and those of the lower extremity.

ARTICULATIONS OF THE TRUNK.

These may be divided into the following groups, viz.:—
I. Of the vertebral column.
II. Of the atlas with the axis.
III. Of the atlas with the occipital bone.
IV. Of the axis with the occipital bone.
V. Of the lower jaw.
VI. Of the ribs with the vertebrae.
VII. Of the cartilages of the ribs with the sternum, and with each other.
VIII. Of the sternum.
IX. Of the vertebral column with the pelvis.
X. Of the pelvis.

I. ARTICULATIONS OF THE VERTEBRAL COLUMN.

The different segments of the spine are connected together by ligaments, which admit of the same arrangement as the vertebrae. They may be divided into five sets. 1. Those connecting the bodies of the vertebrae. 2. Those connecting the laminae. 3. Those connecting the articular processes. 4. Those connecting the spinous processes. 5. Those of the transverse processes.

The articulations of the bodies of the vertebrae with each other form a series of amphiarthroidal joints: those between the articular processes form a series of arthrodial joints.

1. THE LIGAMENTS OF THE BODIES.


The Anterior Common Ligament (Figs. 209, 210, 217, 220) is a broad and strong band of ligamentous fibres, which extends along the front surface of the bodies of the vertebrae, from the axis to the sacrum. It is broader below than above, thicker in the dorsal than in the cervical or lumbar regions, and somewhat thicker opposite the front of the body of each vertebra, than opposite the intervertebral substance. It is attached, above, to the body of the axis by a pointed process, which is connected with the tendon of insertion of the Longus colli muscle; and extends down as far as the upper bone of the sacrum. It consists of dense longitudinal fibres, which are intimately adherent to the intervertebral substance, and the prominent margins of the vertebrae; but less closely to the middle of the bodies. In the latter situation the fibres are exceedingly thick, and serve to fill up the concavities on their front surface, and to make the anterior surface of the spine more even. This ligament is composed of several layers of fibres, which vary in length, but are closely interlaced with each other. The most superficial or longest fibres extend between four or five vertebrae. A second superficial set extend between two or three vertebrae; whilst a third set, the shortest and deepest, extend from one vertebra to the next. At the side of the bodies, the ligament consists of a few short fibres, which pass from one vertebra to the next, separated from the median portion by large oval apertures, for the passage of vessels.

The Posterior Common Ligament (Figs. 209, 213) is situated within the spinal canal, and extends along the posterior surface of the bodies of the vertebrae, from the body of the axis above, where it is continuous with the occipito-axoid ligament, to the sacrum below. It is broader at the upper than at the lower part of the spine, and thicker in the dorsal than in the cervical or lumbar regions. In the situation of the intervertebral substance and contiguous margins of the vertebrae, where the ligament is more intimately adherent, it is broad,
and presents a series of dentations with intervening concave margins; but it is narrow and thick over the centre of the bodies, from which it is separated by the *vema basis vertebrae*. This ligament is composed of smooth, shining, longitudinal fibres, denser and more compact than those of the anterior ligament, and composed of a superficial layer occupying the interval between three or four vertebrae, and of a deeper layer which extends between one vertebra and the next adjacent to it. It is separated from the dura mater of the spinal cord by some loose filamentous tissue, very liable to serous infiltration.

The *Intervertebral Substance* (Fig. 209) is a lenticular disk of fibro-cartilage, interposed between the adjacent surfaces of the bodies of the vertebrae, from the

Fig. 209.—Vertical Section of two Vertebrae and their Ligaments, from the Lumbar Region.

axis to the sacrum, and forming the chief bond of connection between these bones. These disks vary in shape, size, and thickness, in different parts of the spine. In shape they accurately correspond with the surfaces of the bodies between which they are placed, being oval in the cervical and lumbar regions, and circular in the dorsal. Their size is greatest in the lumbar region. In thickness they vary not only in the different regions of the spine, but in different parts of the same region: thus, they are uniformly thick in the lumbar region; thickest, in front, in the cervical and lumbar regions which are convex forwards; and behind, to a slight extent, in the dorsal region. They thus contribute, in a great measure, to the curvatures of the spine in the neck and loins; whilst the concavity of the dorsal region is chiefly due to the shape of the bodies of the vertebrae. The intervertebral disks form about one-fourth of the spinal column, exclusive of the first two vertebrae; they are not equally distributed, however, between the various bones; the dorsal portion of the spine having, in proportion to its length, a much smaller quantity than in the cervical and lumbar regions, which necessarily gives to the latter parts greater pliancy and freedom of movement. The intervertebral disks are adherent, by their surfaces, to the adjacent parts of the bodies of the vertebrae; and by their circumference are closely connected in front to the anterior, and behind to the posterior common ligament; whilst, in the dorsal region, they are connected laterally, by means of the inter-
OF THE SPINE.

articulare ligament, to the heads of those ribs which articulate with two vertebrae; they, consequently, form part of the articular cavities in which the heads of those bones are received.

The intervertebral substance is composed, at its circumference, of laminae of fibrous tissue and fibro-cartilage; and, at its centre, of a soft, elastic, pulpy matter. The laminae are arranged concentrically one within the other, with their edges turned towards the corresponding surfaces of the vertebrae, and consist of alternate plates of fibrous tissue and fibro-cartilage. These plates are not quite vertical in their direction, those near the circumference being curved outwards and closely approximated; whilst those nearest the centre curve in the opposite direction, and are somewhat more widely separated. The fibres of which each plate is composed, are directed, for the most part, obliquely from above downwards; the fibres of an adjacent plate have an exactly opposite arrangement, varying in their direction in every layer; whilst in some few they are horizontal. This laminar arrangement belongs to about the outer half of each disk, the central part being occupied by a soft, pulpy, highly elastic substance, of a yellowish color, which rises up considerably above the surrounding level, when the disk is divided horizontally. This substance presents no concentric arrangement, and consists of white fibrous tissue, with cells of variable shape and size interspersed. The pulpy matter, which is especially well developed in the lumbar region, is separated from immediate contact with the vertebrae by the interposition of thin plates of cartilage.

2. Ligaments Connecting the Laminae.

Ligamenta Subflava.

The Ligamenta Subflava (Fig. 209) are interposed between the laminae of the vertebrae, from the axis to the sacrum. They are most distinct when seen from the interior of the spinal canal; when viewed from the outer surface, they appear short, being overlapped by the laminae. Each ligament consists of two lateral portions, which commence on each side at the root of either articular process, and pass backwards to the point where the laminae converge to form the spinous process, where their margins are thickest, and separated by a slight interval, filled up with areolar tissue. These ligaments consist of yellow elastic tissue, the fibres of which, almost perpendicular in direction, are attached to the anterior surface of the margin of the lamina above, and to the posterior surface, as well as to the margin of the lamina below. In the cervical region, they are thin in texture, but very broad and long; they become thicker in the dorsal region: and in the lumbar acquire very considerable thickness. Their highly elastic property serves to preserve the upright posture, and to assist in resuming it, after the spine has been flexed. These ligaments do not exist between the occiput and atlas, or between the atlas and axis.

3. Ligaments Connecting the Articular Processes.

The Capsular Ligaments (Fig. 211) are thin and loose ligamentous sacs, attached to the contiguous margins of the articulating processes of each vertebra, through the greater part of their circumference, and completed internally by the ligamenta subflava. They are longer and more loose in the cervical than in the dorsal or lumbar regions. The capsular ligaments are lined on their inner surface by synovial membrane.

4. Ligaments Connecting the Spinous Processes.

Interspinous. Supraspinous.

The Interspinous Ligaments (Fig. 209), thin and membranous, are interposed between the spinous processes in the dorsal and lumbar regions. Each ligament
extends from the root to near the summit of each spinous process, and connects together their adjacent margins. They are narrow and elongated in the dorsal region, broader, quadrilateral in form, and thicker in the lumbar region.

The **Supraspinous Ligament** is a strong fibrous cord, which connects together the apices of the spinous processes from the seventh cervical to the spine of the sacrum. It is thicker and broader in the lumbar than in the dorsal region, and intimately blended, in both situations, with the neighboring aponeuroses. The most superficial fibres of this ligament connect three or four vertebrae; those deeper seated pass between two or three vertebrae; whilst the deepest connect the contiguous extremities of neighboring vertebrae.

5. **Ligaments connecting the Transverse Processes.**

**Intertransverse.**

The **Intertransverse Ligaments** consist of a few thin scattered fibres, interposed between the transverse processes. They are generally wanting in the cervical region; in the dorsal, they are rounded cords; in the lumbar region they are thin and membranous.

**Actions.** The movements permitted in the spinal column are, Flexion, Extension, Lateral movement, Circumduction, and Rotation.

In **Flexion**, or movement of the spine forwards, the anterior common ligament is relaxed, and the intervertebral substances are compressed in front; while the posterior common ligament, the ligamenta subflava, and the inter- and supraspinous ligaments, are stretched, as well as the posterior fibres of the intervertebral disks. The interspaces between the laminae are widened, and the inferior articular processes of the vertebrae above glide upwards, upon the articular processes of the vertebrae below. Flexion is the most extensive of all the movements of the spine.

In **Extension**, or movement of the spine backwards, an exactly opposite disposition of the parts takes place. This movement is not extensive, being limited by the anterior common ligament, and by the approximation of the spinous processes.

Flexion and extension are most free in the lower part of the lumbar, and in the cervical regions; extension in the latter region being greater than flexion, the reverse of which is the case in the lumbar region. These movements are least free in the middle and upper part of the back.

In **Lateral Movement**, the sides of the intervertebral disks are compressed, the extent of motion being limited by the resistance offered by the surrounding ligaments, and by the approximation of the transverse processes. This movement may take place in any part of the spine, but is most free in the neck and loins.

**Circumduction** is very limited, and is produced merely by a succession of the preceding movements.

**Rotation** is produced by the twisting of the intervertebral substances; this, although only slight between any two vertebrae, produces a great extent of movement, when it takes place in the whole length of the spine, the front of the column being turned to one or the other side. This movement takes place only to a slight extent in the neck, but is more free in the lower part of the dorsal and lumbar regions.

It is thus seen that the **cervical region** enjoys the greatest extent of each variety of movement, flexion and extension especially being very free. In the **dorsal region**, especially at its upper part, the movements are most limited; flexion, extension, and lateral motion taking place only to a slight extent.

II. **Articulation of the Atlas with the Axis.**

The articulation of the anterior arch of the atlas with the odontoid process forms a lateral ginglymus joint, whilst that between the articulating processes
of the two bones forms a double artrodia. The ligaments which connect these bones are, the

Two Anterior Atlo-axoid.
Posterior Atlo-axoid.

Transverse.
Two Capsular.

Of the Two Anterior Atlo-axoid Ligaments (Fig. 210), the more superficial is a rounded cord, situated in the middle line; it is attached, above, to the tubercle

Fig. 210.—Occipito-atloid and Atlo-axoid Ligaments. Front View.

on the anterior arch of the atlas; below, to the base of the odontoid process and body of the axis. The deeper ligament is a membranous layer, attached, above, to the lower border of the anterior arch of the atlas; below, to the base of the odontoid process, and body of the axis. These ligaments are in relation, in front, with the Recti antici majores.

The Posterior Atlo-axoid Ligament (Fig. 211) is a broad and thin membranous layer, attached, above, to the lower border of the posterior arch of the atlas; below, to the upper edge of the laminae of the axis. This ligament supplies the place of the ligamenta subflava, and is in relation, behind, with the Inferior oblique muscles.

The Transverse Ligament (Figs. 212, 213) is a thick and strong ligamentous band, which arches across the ring of the atlas, and serves to retain the odontoid process in firm connection with its anterior arch. This ligament is flattened from before backwards, broader and thicker in the middle than at either extremity, and firmly attached on each side of the atlas to a small tubercle on the inner surface of its lateral mass. As it crosses the odontoid process, a small fasciculus is derived from its upper and lower borders; the former passing upwards, to be inserted into the basilar process of the occipital bone; the latter, downwards, to be attached to the root of the odontoid process; hence, the whole ligament has received the name of cruciform. The transverse ligament divides

1 It has been found necessary to describe the transverse ligament with those of the atlas and axis; but the student must remember that it is really a portion of the mechanism by which the movements of the head on the spine are regulated; so that the connections between the atlas and axis ought always to be studied together with those between the latter bones and the skull.
the ring of the atlas into two unequal parts: of these, the posterior and larger serves for the transmission of the cord and its membranes; the anterior and

Fig. 211.—Occipito-axoid and Atlo-axoid Ligaments. Posterior View.

Fig. 212.—Articulation between Odontoid Process and Atlas.

smaller contains the odontoid process. Since the lower border of the space between the anterior arch of the atlas and the transverse ligament is smaller than the upper (because the transverse ligament embraces firmly the narrow neck of the odontoid process), this process is retained in firm connection with the atlas when all the other ligaments have been divided.

The Capsular Ligaments are two thin and loose capsules, connecting the articular surfaces of the atlas and axis, the fibres being strongest on the anterior and external part of the articulation.

There are four Synovial Membranes in this articulation; one lining the inner surface of each of the capsular ligaments; one between the anterior surface of the odontoid process and the anterior arch of the atlas; and one between the
posterior surface of the odontoid process and the transverse ligament. The latter often communicates with those between the condyles of the occipital bone and the articular surfaces of the atlas.

Fig. 213.—Occipito-axoid and Alto-axoid Ligaments. Posterior View, obtained by removing the arches of the Vertebrae and the posterior part of the skull.

**Actions.** This joint is capable of great mobility, and allows the rotation of the atlas (and, with it, of the cranium) upon the axis, the extent of rotation being limited by the odontoid ligaments.

**Articulations of the Spine with the Cranium.**

The ligaments connecting the spine with the cranium may be divided into two sets, those connecting the occipital bone with the atlas, and those connecting the occipital bone with the axis.

**III. Articulation of the Atlas with the Occipital Bone.**

This articulation is a double arthrodia. Its ligaments are the

- Two Anterior Occipito-axoid.
- Posterior Occipito-axoid.
- Two Lateral Occipito-axoid.
- Two Capsular.

Of the **Two Anterior Ligaments** (Fig. 210), the superficial is a strong, narrow, rounded cord, attached, above, to the basilar process of the occiput; below, to the tubercle on the anterior arch of the atlas; the deeper ligament is a broad and thin membranous layer which passes between the anterior margin of the foramen magnum above, and the whole length of the upper border of the anterior arch of the atlas below. This ligament is in relation, in front, with the Recti antici minores; behind, with the odontoid ligaments.

The **Posterior Occipito-axoid Ligament** (Fig. 211) is a very broad but thin membranous lamina, intimately blended with the dura mater. It is connected,
above, to the posterior margin of the foramen magnum; below, to the upper border of the posterior arch of the atlas. This ligament is incomplete at each side, and forms, with the superior intervertebral notch, an opening for the passage of the vertebral artery and sub-occipital nerve. It is in relation, behind, with the Recti postici minores and Obliqui superiores; in front, with the dura mater of the spinal canal, to which it is intimately adherent.

The **Lateral Ligaments** are strong fibrous bands, directed obliquely upwards and inwards, attached above to the jugular process of the occipital bone; below, to the base of the transverse process of the atlas.

The **Capsular Ligaments** surround the condyles of the occipital bone, and connect them with the articular surfaces of the atlas; they consist of thin and loose capsules, which inclose the synovial membrane of the articulation. The synovial membranes between the occipital bone and atlas communicate occasionally with that between the posterior surface of the odontoid process and transverse ligaments.

**Actions.** The movements permitted in this joint are flexion and extension, which give rise to the ordinary forward or backward nodding of the head, besides slight lateral motion to one or the other side. When either of these actions is carried beyond a slight extent, the whole of the cervical portion of the spine assists in its production. According to Cruveilhier, there is a slight motion of rotation in this joint.

---

**IV. Articulation of the Axis with the Occipital Bone.**

**Occipito-axoid.** Three Odontoid.

To expose these ligaments, the spinal canal should be laid open by removing the posterior arch of the atlas, the laminae and spinous process of the axis, and the portion of the occipital bone behind the foramen magnum, as seen in Fig. 213.

The **Occipito-axoid Ligament** (Apparatus ligamentosus colli) is situated at the upper part of the front surface of the spinal canal. It is a broad and strong ligamentous band, which covers the odontoid process and its ligaments, and appears to be a prolongation upwards of the posterior common ligament of the spine. It is attached, below, to the posterior surface of the body of the axis, and, becoming expanded as it ascends, is inserted into the basilar groove of the occipital bone, in front of the foramen magnum.

**Relations.** By its anterior surface, it is intimately connected with the transverse ligament, by its posterior surface with the dura mater. By cutting this ligament across, and turning its ends aside, the transverse and odontoid ligaments are exposed.

The **Odontoid or Check Ligaments** are strong, rounded, fibrous cords, which arise on either side of the apex of the odontoid process, and, passing obliquely upwards and outwards, are inserted into the rough depressions on the inner side of the condyles of the occipital bone. In the triangular interval left between these ligaments and the margin of the foramen magnum, a third strong ligamentous band (ligamentum suspensorium) may be seen, which passes almost perpendicularly from the apex of the odontoid process to the anterior margin of the foramen, being intimately blended with the anterior occipito-atl oid ligament, and upper fasciculus of the transverse ligament of the atlas.

**Actions.** The odontoid ligaments serve to limit the extent to which rotation of the cranium may be carried; hence they have received the name of **check ligaments.**

---

**V. Temporo-maxillary Articulation.**

This is an arthrodial joint; the parts entering into its formation are, on each side, the anterior part of the glenoid cavity of the temporal bone and the
Eminentia articularis above; with the condyle of the lower jaw below. The ligaments are the following:

- External Lateral
- Internal Lateral
- Interarticular Fibro-cartilage
- Stylo-maxillary
- Capsular

Fig. 214.—Temporo-maxillary Articulation. External View.

The External Lateral Ligament (Fig. 214) is a short, thin, and narrow fasciculus attached above to the outer tubercle on its lower border; below, to the outer surface and posterior border of the neck of the lower jaw. This ligament is broader above than below; its fibres are placed parallel with one another, and directed obliquely downwards and backwards. Externally, it is covered by the parotid gland and by the integument. Internally, it is in relation with the interarticular fibro-cartilage and the synovial membrane.

The Internal Lateral Ligament (Fig. 215) is a long, thin, and loose band, which is attached above to the spinous process of the sphenoid bone, and becoming broader as it descends, is inserted into the inner margin of the dental foramen. Its outer surface is in relation above with the External pterygoid muscle; lower down it is separated from the neck of the condyle by the in-

Fig. 215.—Temporo-maxillary Articulation. Internal View.
ternal maxillary artery; and still more inferiorly the inferior dental vessels and nerve separate it from the ramus of the jaw. Internally, it is in relation with the Internal pterygoid.1

The **Stylo-maxillary Ligament** is a thin aponeurotic cord, which extends from near the apex of the styloid process of the temporal bone, to the angle and posterior border of the ramus of the lower jaw, between the Masseter and Internal pterygoid muscles. This ligament separates the parotid from the sub-maxillary gland, and has attached to its inner side part of the fibres of origin of the Stylo-glossus muscle. Although usually classed among the ligaments of the jaw, it can only be considered as an accessory in the articulation.

Along with the stylo-maxillary ligament, may be described the **stylo-hyoid ligament**, although it is in no way connected with the functions of the lower jaw. This is a fibrous cord, which continues the styloid process down to the hyoid bone, being attached to the tip of the former and the small cornu of the latter. It is often more or less ossified.

The **Capsular Ligament** forms a thin and loose ligamentous capsule, attached above to the circumference of the glenoid cavity and the articular surface immediately in front; below, to the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw. It consists of a few thin scattered fibres, and can hardly be considered as a distinct ligament; it is thickest at the back part of the articulation.

The **Interarticular Fibro-cartilage** (Fig. 216) is a thin plate of an oval form, placed horizontally between the condyle of the jaw and the glenoid cavity. Its upper surface is concave from before backwards, and a little convex transversely, to accommodate itself to the form of the glenoid cavity. Its under surface, where it is in contact with the condyle, is concave. Its circumference is connected externally to the external lateral ligament; internally, to the capsular ligament; and in front to the tendon of the External pterygoid muscle. It is thicker at its circumference, especially behind, than at its centre, where it is sometimes perforated. The fibres of which it is composed have a concentric arrangement, more apparent at the circumference than at the centre. Its surfaces are smooth, and divide the joint into two cavities, each of which is furnished with a separate synovial membrane. When the fibro-cartilage is perforated, the synovial membranes are continuous with one another.

The **Synovial Membranes**, two in number, are placed one above, and the other below the fibro-cartilage. The upper one, the larger and looser of the two, is continued from the margin of the cartilage covering the glenoid cavity and eminentia articularis, over the upper surface of the fibro-cartilage. The lower one is interposed between the under surface of the fibro-cartilage and the condyle of the jaw, being prolonged downwards a little further behind than in front.

The **Nerves** of this joint are derived from the auriculo-temporal and masseteric branches of the inferior maxillary.

**Actions.** The movements permitted in this articulation are very extensive. Thus, the jaw may be depressed or elevated, or it may be carried forwards or backwards, or from side to side. It is by the alternation of these movements

---

1 Dr. Humphry describes the internal portion of the capsular ligament separately, as the short internal lateral ligament; and it certainly seems as deserving of a separate description as the external lateral ligament is.
performed in succession, that a kind of rotatory movement of the lower jaw upon
the upper takes place, which materially assists in the mastication of the food.

If the movement of depression is carried only to a slight extent, the condyles
remain in the glenoid cavities, their anterior part descending only slightly; but
if the depression is considerable, the condyles glide from the glenoid fossa on to
the articular eminences, carrying with them the interarticular fibro-cartilages.
When this movement is carried to too great an extent, as for instance, during a
convulsive yawn, dislocation of the condyle into the zygomatic fossa may occur;
the interarticular cartilage being carried forwards, and the capsular ligament
ruptured. When the jaw is elevated, after forced depression, the condyles and
fibro-cartilages are carried backwards into their original position. When the
jaw is carried horizontally forwards and backwards, or from side to side, a
horizontal gliding movement of the fibro-cartilages and condyles upon the
glenoid cavities takes place in the corresponding direction.

VI. Articulation of the Ribs with the Vertebræ.

The articulation of the ribs with the vertebral column may be divided into
two sets: 1. Those which connect the heads of the ribs with the bodies of the
vertebræ; 2. Those which connect the necks and tubercles of the ribs with the
transverse processes.

1. Articulations between the Heads of the Ribs and the Bodies
of the Vertebræ. (Fig. 217.)

These constitute a series of ginglymoid joints, formed by the articulations of
the heads of the ribs with the cavities on the contiguous margins of the bodies
of the dorsal vertebrae, connected together by the following ligaments:——

Anterior Costo-vertebral or Stellite.
Capsular.
Interarticular.

The Anterior Costo-vertebral or Stellite Ligament connects the anterior part
of the head of each rib with the sides of the bodies of two vertebrae, and the
intervertebral disk between them. It consists of three flat bundles of liga-
mentous fibres, which
radiate from the anterior
part of the head of the
rib. The superior fasci-
culus passes upwards to
be connected with the
body of the vertebra
above; the inferior one
descends to the body of
the vertebra below; and
the middle one, the
smallest and least dis-
tinct, passes horizontally
inwards to be attached
to the intervertebral
substance.

Relations. In front,
with the thoracic ganglia
of the sympathetic, the
pleura, and on the right
side, with the vena
azygos major; behind,
with the interarticular
ligament and synovial
membranes.

Fig. 217.—Costo-vertebral and Costo-transverse Articulations.
Anterior View.
ARTICULATIONS.

In the first rib, which articulates with a single vertebra only, this ligament does not present a distinct division into three fasciculi; its superior fibres, however, pass to be attached to the body of the last cervical vertebra, as well as to the body of the vertebra with which the rib articulates. In the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth ribs also, which likewise articulate with a single vertebra, the division does not exist; but the upper fibres of the ligament, in each case, are connected with the vertebra above, as well as that with which the ribs articulate.

The Captuslar Ligament is a thin and loose ligamentous bag, which surrounds the joint between the head of the rib and the articular cavity formed by the junction of the vertebra. It is very thin, firmly connected with the anterior ligament, and most distinct at the upper and lower parts of the articulation.

The Intercostal Ligament is situated in the interior of the joint. It consists of a short band of fibres, flattened from above downwards, attached by one extremity to the sharp crest on the head of the rib, and by the other to the intervertebral disk. It divides the joint into two cavities, which have no communication with one another, but are each lined by a separate synovial membrane. In the first, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth ribs, the interarticular ligament does not exist; consequently, there is but one synovial membrane.

Actions. The movement permitted in these articulations are limited to elevation, depression, and a slight amount of movement forwards and backwards. The mobility, however, of the different ribs varies very much. The first rib is almost immovable, excepting in deep inspiration. The movement of the second rib is also not very extensive. In the other ribs, their mobility increases successively down to the last two, which are very movable. The ribs are generally more movable in the female than in the male.

2. ARTICULATIONS OF THE NECKS AND TUBERCLES OF THE RIBS WITH THE TRANSVERSE PROCESSES. (Fig. 218.)

The ligaments connecting these parts are—

Anterior Costo-transverse.
Middle Costo-transverse (Interosseous).
Posterior Costo-transverse.
Capsular.

The Anterior Costo-transverse Ligament is a broad and strong band of fibres, attached below to the sharp crest on the upper border of the neck of each rib, and passing obliquely upwards and outwards, to the lower border of the transverse process immediately above. It is broader below than above, broader and thinner between the lower ribs than between the upper, and more distinct in front than behind. This ligament is in relation, in front, with the intercostal vessels and nerves; behind, with the Longissimus dorsi. Its internal border completes an aperture formed between it and the articular processes, through which pass the posterior branches of the intercostal vessels and nerves. Its external border is continuous with a thin aponeurosis, which covers the External intercostal muscle.

The first and last ribs have no anterior costo-transverse ligament.

The Middle Costo-transverse or Interosseous Ligament consists of short, but strong, fibres, which pass between the rough surface on the posterior part of the neck of each rib, and the anterior surface of the adjacent transverse process. In order fully to expose this ligament, a horizontal section should be made across the transverse process and corresponding part of the rib; or the rib may be forcibly separated from the transverse process, and its fibres put on the stretch.

In the eleventh and twelfth ribs, this ligament is quite rudimentary.

The Posterior Costo-transverse Ligament is a short, but thick and strong, fasciculus, which passes obliquely from the summit of the transverse process to the rough non-articular portion of the tubercle of the rib. This ligament is shorter
and more oblique in the upper than in the lower ribs. Those corresponding to the superior ribs ascend, and those of the inferior ones slightly descend.

Fig. 218.—Costo-transverse Articulation. Seen from above.

In the eleventh and twelfth ribs, this ligament is wanting.

The articular portion of the tubercle of the rib, and adjacent transverse process, form an arthrodiad joint, provided with a thin Capsular ligament attached to the circumference of the articulating surfaces, and enclosing a small synovial membrane.

In the eleventh and twelfth ribs, this articulation is wanting.

Actions. The movement permitted in these joints is limited to a slight gliding motion of the articular surfaces one upon the other.

VII. ARTICULATION OF THE CARTILAGES OF THE RIBS WITH THE STERNUM, ETC.

(Fig. 219.)

The articulations of the cartilages of the true ribs with the sternum are arthrodiad joints. The ligaments connecting them are—

Anterior Costo-ternal.
Posterior Costo-ternal.
Capsular.

The Anterior Costo-ternal Ligament is a broad and thin membranous band that radiates from the inner extremity of the cartilages of the true ribs to the anterior surface of the sternum. It is composed of fasciculi, which pass in different directions. The superior fasciculi ascend obliquely, the inferior pass obliquely downwards, and the middle fasciculi horizontally. The superficial fibres of this ligament are the longest; they intermingle with the fibres of the ligaments above and below them, with those of the opposite side, and with the tendinous fibres of origin of the Pectoralis major; forming a thick fibrous membrane, which covers the surface of the sternum. This is more distinct at the lower than at the upper part.

The Posterior Costo-ternal Ligament, less thick and distinct than the anterior, is composed of fibres which radiate from the posterior surface of the sternum end of the cartilages of the true ribs, to the posterior surface of the sternum, becoming blended with the periosteum.
The Capsular Ligament surrounds the joints formed between the cartilages of the true ribs and the sternum. It is very thin, intimately blended with the anterior and posterior ligaments, and strengthened at the upper and lower part of the articulation by a few fibres, which pass from the cartilage to the side of the sternum. These ligaments protect the synovial membranes.

Fig. 219.—Costo-ternal, Costa-ziphoid, and Intercostal Articulations. Anterior View.

Synovial Membranes. The cartilage of the first rib is directly continuous with the sternum, without any synovial membrane. The cartilage of the second rib is connected with the sternum by means of an interarticular ligament, attached by one extremity to the cartilage of the second rib, and by the other extremity to the cartilage which unites the first and second pieces of the sternum. This articulation is provided with two synovial membranes. That of the third rib has also two synovial membranes; and that of the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh, each a single synovial membrane. Thus there are eight synovial cavi-
ties on each side in the articulations between the costal cartilages of the true ribs and the sternum. They may be demonstrated by removing a thin section from the anterior surface of the sternum and cartilages, as seen in the figure. After middle life, the articular surfaces lose their polish, become roughened, and the synovial membranes appear to be wanting. In old age, the articulations do not exist, the cartilages of most of the ribs becoming continuous with the sternum. The cartilage of the seventh rib, and occasionally also that of the sixth, is connected to the anterior surface of the ensiform appendix, by a band of ligamentous fibres, which varies in length and breadth in different subjects. It is called the costo-xiphoïd ligament.

Actions. The movements which are permitted in the costo-sternal articulations, are limited to elevation and depression; and these only to a slight extent.

Articulations of the Cartilages of the Ribs with each other (Interchondral). (Fig. 219.)

The cartilages of the sixth, seventh, and eighth ribs articulate, by their lower borders, with the corresponding margin of the adjoining cartilages, by means of a small, smooth, oblong-shaped facet. Each articulation is enclosed in a thin capsular ligament, lined by synovial membrane, and strengthened externally and internally by ligamentous fibres (intercostal ligaments), which pass from one cartilage to the other. Sometimes the cartilage of the fifth rib, more rarely that of the ninth, articulates, by its lower border, with the adjoining cartilage by a small oval facet; more frequently they are connected together by a few ligamentous fibres. Occasionally, the articular surfaces above mentioned are wanting.

Articulations of the Ribs with their Cartilages (Costo-chondral). (Fig. 219.)

The outer extremity of each costal cartilage is received into a depression in the sternal end of the ribs, and held together by the periosteum.

VIII. Ligaments of the Sternum.

The first and second pieces of the sternum are united by a layer of cartilage, which rarely ossifies, except at an advanced period of life. These two segments are connected by an anterior and posterior ligament. (See on this head p. 207 note.)

The anterior sternal ligament consists of a layer of fibres, having a longitudinal direction; it blends with the fibres of the anterior costo-sternal ligaments on both sides, and with the aponeurosis of origin of the Pectoralis major. This ligament is rough, irregular, and much thicker at the lower than at the upper part of the bone.

The posterior sternal ligament is disposed in a somewhat similar manner on the posterior surface of the articulation.

IX. Articulation of the Pelvis with the Spine.

The ligaments connecting the last lumbar vertebra with the sacrum are similar to those which connect the segments of the spine with each other, viz. —1. The continuation downwards of the anterior and posterior common ligaments. 2. The intervertebral substance connecting the flattened oval surfaces of the two bones, and forming an amphiarthrodial joint. 3. Ligamenta subflava, connecting the arch of the last lumbar vertebra with the posterior border of the sacral canal. 4. Capsular ligaments connecting the articulating processes and forming a double arthrodia. 5. Interspinous and supraspinous ligaments.
The two proper ligaments connecting the pelvis with the spine are the lumbo-sacral and ilio-lumbar.

The *Lumbo-sacral Ligament* (Fig. 220) is a short, thick, triangular fasciculus, which is connected above to the lower and front part of the transverse process of the last lumbar vertebra, passes obliquely outwards, and is attached below to the lateral surface of the base of the sacrum, becoming blended with the anterior sacro-iliac-ligament. This ligament is in relation in front with the Psoas muscle.

The *Ilio-lumbar Ligament* (Fig. 220) passes horizontally outwards from the apex of the transverse process of the last lumbar vertebra, to the crest of the ilium immediately in front of the sacro-iliac articulation. It is of a triangular form, thick and narrow internally, broad and thinner externally. It is in relation, in front, with the Psoas muscle; behind, with the muscles occupying the vertebral groove; above, with the Quadratus lumborum.

X. **Articulations of the Pelvis.**

The ligaments connecting the bones of the pelvis with each other may be divided into four groups:—1. Those connecting the sacrum and ilium. 2. Those passing between the sacrum and ischium. 3. Those connecting the sacrum and coccyx. 4. Those between the two pubic bones.

1. **Articulation of the Sacrum and Ilium.**

The sacro-iliac articulation is an amphiarthrodial joint, formed between the lateral surfaces of the sacrum and ilium. The anterior or auricular portion of each articular surface is covered with a thin plate of cartilage, thicker on the
sacrum than on the ilium. The surfaces of these cartilages in the adult are rough and irregular, and separated from one another by a soft yellow pulpy substance. At an early period of life, occasionally in the adult, and in the female during pregnancy, they are smooth, and lined by a delicate synovial membrane. The ligaments connecting these surfaces are the anterior and posterior sacro-iliac.

The Anterior Sacro-iliac Ligament (Fig. 220) consists of numerous thin ligamentous bands, which connect the anterior surfaces of the sacrum and ilium.

The Posterior Sacro-iliac (Fig. 221) is a strong interosseous ligament, situated in a deep depression between the sacrum and ilium behind, and forming the chief bond of connection between those bones. It consists of numerous strong fasciculi, which pass between the bones in various directions. Three of these are of large size; the two superior, nearly horizontal in direction, arise from the first and second transverse tubercles on the posterior surface of the sacrum, and are inserted into the rough uneven surface at the posterior part of the inner surface of the ilium. The third fasciculus, oblique in direction, is attached by one extremity to the third transverse tubercle on the posterior surface of the sacrum, and by the other to the posterior superior spine of the ilium; it is sometimes called the oblique sacro-iliac ligament.

2. Ligaments passing between the Sacrum and Ischium. (Fig. 221.)

The Great Sacro-sciatic (Posterior).
The Lesser Sacro-sciatic (Anterior).

The Great or Posterior Sacro-sciatic Ligament is situated at the lower and back part of the pelvis. It is thin, flat, and triangular in form; narrower in the middle than at the extremities; attached by its broad base to the posterior inferior spine of the ilium, to the fourth and fifth transverse tubercles on the sacrum, and to the lower part of the lateral margin of that bone and the coccyx; passing obliquely downwards, outwards, and forwards, it becomes narrow and thick; and at its insertion into the inner margin of the tuberosity of the ischium, it increases in breadth, and is prolonged forwards along the inner margin of the ramus, forming what is known as the falciform ligament. The free concave edge of this ligament has attached to it the obturator fascia, with which it forms a kind of groove protecting the internal pudic vessels and nerve. One of its surfaces is turned towards the perineum, the other towards the Obturator internus muscle.

The posterior surface of this ligament gives origin, by its whole extent, to fibres of the Gluteus maximus. Its anterior surface is united to the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament. Its superior border forms the lower boundary of the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen. Its lower border forms part of the boundary of the perineum. It is pierced by the coccygeal branch of the sciatic artery.

The Lesser or Anterior Sacro-sciatic Ligament, much shorter and smaller than the preceding, is thin, triangular in form, attached by its apex to the spine of the ischium, and internally, by its broad base, to the lateral margin of the sacrum and coccyx, anterior to the attachment of the great sacro-sciatic ligament, with which its fibres are intermingled.

It is in relation, anteriorly, with the Coccygeus muscle; posteriorly, it is covered by the posterior ligament, and crossed by the internal pudic vessels and nerve. Its superior border forms the lower boundary of the great sacro-sciatic foramen; its inferior border, part of the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen.

These two ligaments convert the sacro-sciatic notches into foramina. The superior or great sacro-sciatic foramen is bounded, in front and above, by the posterior border of the os innominatum; behind, by the great sacro-sciatic ligament; and below, by the lesser ligament. It is partially filled up, in the recent state, by the Pyriformis muscle. Above this muscle, the gluteal vessels and
superior gluteal nerve emerge from the pelvis; and below it, the ischiatic vessels and nerves, the internal pudic vessels and nerve, and the nerve to the Obturator internus. The inferior or lesser sacro-sciatic foramen is bounded, in front, by the tuber ischii; above, by the spine and lesser ligament; behind, by the greater ligament. It transmits the tendon of the Obturator internus muscle, its nerve, and the internal pudic vessels and nerve.

3. Articulation of the Sacrum and Coccyx.

This articulation is an amphiarthrodial joint, formed between the oval surface on the apex of the sacrum, and the base of the coccyx. It is analogous to the joints between the bodies of the vertebrae, and is connected by similar ligaments. They are the

Anterior Sacro-coccygeal.
Posterior Sacro-coccygeal.
Interposed Fibro-cartilage.

The Anterior Sacro-coccygeal Ligament consists of a few irregular fibres, which descend from the anterior surface of the sacrum to the front of the coccyx, becoming blended with the periosteum.

The Posterior Sacro-coccygeal Ligament is a flat band of ligamentous fibres, of a pearly tint, which arises from the margin of the lower orifice of the sacral canal, and descends to be inserted into the posterior surface of the coccyx. This ligament completes the lower and back part of the sacral canal. Its superficial fibres are much longer than the deep-seated; the latter extend from the apex of the sacrum to the upper cornua of the coccyx. This ligament is in relation in front with the arachnoid membrane of the sacral canal, a portion of the sacrum
and almost the whole of the posterior surface of the coccyx; behind, with the Gluteus maximus.

A Fibro-cartilage is interposed between the contiguous surfaces of the sacrum and coccyx; it differs from that interposed between the bodies of the vertebrae in being thinner, and its central part more firm in texture. It is somewhat thicker in front and behind than at the sides. Occasionally, a synovial membrane is found when the coccyx is freely movable, which is more especially the case during pregnancy.

The different segments of the coccyx are connected together by an extension downwards of the anterior and posterior sacro-coccygeal ligaments, a thin annular disk of fibro-cartilage being interposed between each of the bones. In the adult male, all the pieces become ossified; but in the female, this does not commonly occur until a later period of life. The separate segments of the coccyx are first united, and at a more advanced age the joint between the sacrum and coccyx is obliterated.

Actions. The movements which take place between the sacrum and coccyx, and between the different pieces of the latter bone, are slightly forwards and backwards; they are very limited. Their extent increases during pregnancy.

4. Articulation of the Pubes. (Fig. 222.)

The articulation between the pubic bones is an amphiarthrodial joint, formed by the junction of the two oval articular surfaces of the osa pubis. The articular surface has been described above under the name of symphysis, and the same name is given to the joint. The ligaments of this articulation are the

- Anterior Pubic.
- Posterior Pubic.
- Superior Pubic.
- Subpubic.
- Interposed Fibro-cartilage.

The Anterior Pubic Ligament consists of several superimposed layers, which pass across the front of the articulation. The superficial fibres pass obliquely from one bone to the other, decussating and forming an interlacement with the fibres of the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle. The deep fibres pass transversely across the symphysis, and are blended with the fibro-cartilage.

Fig. 222.—Vertical Section of the Symphysis Pubis. Made near its Posterior Surface.

The Posterior Pubic Ligament consists of a few thin, scattered fibres, which unite the two pubic bones posteriorly.

The Superior Pubic Ligament is a band of fibres, which connects together the two pubic bones superiorly.
The **Subpubic Ligament** is a thick, triangular arch of ligamentous fibres, connecting together the two pubic bones below, and forming the upper boundary of the pubic arch. Above, it is blended with the interarticular fibro-cartilage; laterally, with the rami of the pubes. Its fibres are of a yellowish color, closely connected, and have an arched direction.

The **Interposed Fibro-cartilage** consists of two oval-shaped plates, one covering the surface of each symphysia pubis. They vary in thickness in different subjects, and project somewhat beyond the level of the bones, especially behind. The outer surface of each plate is firmly connected to the bone by a series of nipple-like processes, which accurately fit within corresponding depressions on the osseous surface. Their opposed surfaces are connected in the greater part of their extent, by an intermediate elastic fibrous tissue; and by their circumference to the various ligaments surrounding the joint. An interspace is left between the plates at the upper and back part of the articulation, where the fibrous tissue is deficient, and the surface of the fibro-cartilage is lined by epithelium. This space is found at all periods of life, both in the male and female; but it is larger in the latter, especially during pregnancy, and after parturition. It is most frequently limited to the upper and back part of the joint, but it occasionally reaches to the front, and may extend the entire length of the cartilage. This structure may be easily demonstrated, by making a vertical section of the symphysis pubis near its posterior surface.

The **Obturator Ligament** is more properly regarded as analogous to the muscular fascia, with which it will therefore be described.

**ARTICULATIONS OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.**

The articulations of the Upper Extremity may be arranged in the following groups:—I. Sterno-clavicular articulation. II. Scapulo-clavicular articulation. III. Ligaments of the Scapula. IV. Shoulder-joint. V. Elbow-joint. VI. Radio-ulnar articulations. VII. Wrist-joint. VIII. Articulation of the Carpal bones. IX. Carpo-metacarpal articulations. X. Metacarpo-phalangeal articulations. XI. Articulations of the Phalanges.

I. **STERNO-CLAVICULAR ARTICULATION.** (Fig. 223.)

The **Sternal-clavicular** is an arthrodial joint. The parts entering into its formation are the sternal end of the clavicle, the upper and lateral part of the first piece of the sternum, and the cartilage of the first rib. The articular surface of the clavicle is much larger than that of the sternum, and invested with a layer of cartilage,¹ which is considerably thicker than that on the latter bone. The ligaments of this joint are the

- Anterior Sterno-clavicular.
- Posterior Sterno-clavicular.
- Interclavicular.
- interclavicular (rhomboid).
- Interarticular Fibro-cartilage.

The **Anterior Sterno-clavicular Ligament** is a broad band of fibres, which covers the anterior surface of the articulation, being attached, above, to the upper and front part of the inner extremity of the clavicle; and, passing obliquely downwards and inwards, is attached, below, to the front and upper part of the first piece of the sternum. This ligament is covered in front by the sternal portion of the Sterno-pleuro-mastoïd and the integument; behind, it is in relation with the interarticular fibro-cartilage and the two synovial membranes.

The **Posterior Sterno-clavicular Ligament** is a similar band of fibres, which

¹ According to Bruch, the sternal end of the clavicle is covered by a tissue, which is rather fibrous than cartilaginous in structure.
covers the posterior surface of the articulation, being attached, above, to the posterior part of the inner extremity of the clavicle; and which, passing obliquely downwards and inwards, is connected, below, to the posterior and upper part of

\[\text{Fig. 223.—Sterno-clavicular Articulation. Anterior View.}\]

the sternum. It is in relation, in front, with the interarticular fibro-cartilage and synovial membranes; behind, with the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles.

The \textit{Interclavicular Ligament} is a flattened band, which varies considerably in form and size in different individuals; it passes from the upper part of the inner extremity of one clavicle to the other, and is closely attached to the upper margin of the sternum. It is in relation, in front, with the integument; behind, with the Sterno-thyroid muscles.

The \textit{Costo-clavicular Ligament (rhomboid)} is short, flat, and strong: it is of a rhomboid form, attached, below, to the upper and inner part of the cartilage of the first rib: it ascends obliquely backwards and outwards, and is attached above to the rhomboid depression on the under surface of the clavicle. It is in relation, in front, with the tendon of origin of the subclavius; behind, with the subclavian vein.

The \textit{Interarticular Fibro-cartilage} is a flat and nearly circular disk, interposed between the articulating surfaces of the sternum and clavicle. It is attached, above, to the upper and posterior border of the clavicle; below, to the cartilage of the first rib, at its junction with the sternum; and by its circumference to the anterior and posterior sterno-clavicular ligaments. It is thicker at the circumference, especially its upper and back part, than at its centre, or below. It divides the joint into two cavities, each of which is furnished with a separate synovial membrane; when the fibro-cartilage is perforated, which not unfrequently occurs, the synovial membranes communicate.

Of the \textit{two Synovial Membranes} found in this articulation, one is reflected from the sternal end of the clavicle, over the adjacent surface of the fibro-cartilage, and cartilage of the first rib; the other is placed between the articular surface of the sternum and adjacent surface of the fibro-cartilage; the latter is the more loose of the two. They seldom contain much synovia.

\textit{Actions.} This articulation is the centre of the movements of the shoulder, and admits of motion in nearly every direction—upwards, downwards, backwards, forwards, as well as circumduction. "The movements attendant on elevation and depression of the shoulder take place between the clavicle and the interarticular ligament; the bone rotating upon the ligament on an axis drawn from before backwards through its own articular facet. When the shoulder is
moved forwards and backwards, the clavicle, with the interarticular ligament, rolls to and fro on the articular surface of the sternum, revolving, with a slightly sliding movement, round an axis drawn nearly vertically through the sternum. In the circumduction of the shoulder, which is compounded of these two movements, the clavicle revolves upon the interarticular cartilage, and the latter, with the clavicle, rolls upon the sternum."

II. SCAPULO-CLAVICULAR ARTICULATION. (Fig. 224.)

The Scapulo-clavicular is an arthrodial joint, formed between the outer extremity of the clavicle, and the upper edge of the acromion process of the scapula. Its ligaments are the

Superior Acromio-clavicular.
Inferior Acromio-clavicular.

\{ Trapezoid
Coraco-clavicular \} and
\{ Conoid.

Interarticular Fibro-cartilage.

The Superior Acromio-clavicular Ligament is a broad band, of a quadrilateral form, which covers the superior part of the articulation, extending between the upper part of the outer end of the clavicle, and the adjoining part of the acromion. It is composed of parallel fibres, which interface with the aponeurosis of the Trapezius and Deltoid muscles; below, it is in contact with the interarticular fibro-cartilage and synovial membranes.

The Inferior Acromio-clavicular Ligament, somewhat thinner than the preceding, covers the under part of the articulation, and is attached to the adjoining surfaces of the two bones. It is in relation, above, with the interarticular fibro-cartilage (when it exists) and the synovial membranes; below, with the tendon of the Supraspinatus. These two ligaments are continuous with each other in front and behind, and form a complete capsule around the joint.

The Coraco-clavicular Ligament serves to connect the clavicle with the coracoid process of the scapula. It consists of two fasciculi, called the trapezoid and conoid ligaments.

The trapezoid ligament, the anterior and external fasciculus, is broad, thin, and quadrilateral: it is placed obliquely between the coracoid process and the clavicle. It is attached, below, to the upper surface of the coracoid process; above, to the oblique line on the under surface of the clavicle. Its anterior border is free; its posterior border is joined with the conoid ligament, the two forming by their junction a projecting angle.

The conoid ligament, the posterior and internal fasciculus, is a dense band of fibres, conical in form, the base being turned upwards, the summit downwards. It is attached by its apex to a rough depression at the base of the coracoid process, internal to the preceding; above, by its expanded base, to the conoid tubercle on the under surface of the clavicle, and to a line proceeding internally from it for half an inch. These ligaments are in relation, in front, with the Subclavius; behind, with the Trapezius: they serve to limit rotation of the scapula forwards and backwards.

The Interarticular Fibro-cartilage is most frequently absent in this articulation. When it exists, it generally only partially separates the articular surfaces, and occupies the upper part of the articulation. More rarely, it completely separates the joint into two cavities.

There are two Synovial Membranes when a complete interarticular cartilage exists; more frequently there is only one synovial membrane.

Actions. The movements of this articulation are of two kinds. 1. A gliding

motion of the articular end of the clavicle on the acromion. 2. Rotation of the scapula forwards and backwards upon the clavicle, the extent of this rotation being limited by the two portions of the coraco-clavicular ligament.

Fig. 224.—The Left Shoulder-joint, Scapulo-clavicular Articulations, and proper Ligaments of Scapula.

The scapulo-clavicular joint has important functions in the movements of the upper extremity. It has been well pointed out by Prof. Humphry, that if there had been no joint between the clavicle and scapula the circular movement of the scapula on the ribs (as in throwing both shoulders back or forward) would have been attended with a greater alteration in the direction of the shoulder than is consistent with the free use of the arm in such positions, and it would have been impossible to give a blow straight forward with the full force of the arm, that is to say, with the combined force of the scapula, arm, and forearm. “This joint,” as he happily says, “is so adjusted as to enable either bone to turn in a hinge-like manner upon a vertical axis drawn through the other, and it permits the surfaces of the scapula, like the baskets in a round-about swing, to look the same way in every position, or nearly so.” Again, when the whole arch formed by the clavicle and scapula rises and falls (in elevation or depression of the shoulders), the joint between these two bones enables the scapula still to maintain its lower part in contact with the ribs.

III. Proper Ligaments of the Scapula. (Fig. 224.)

The proper ligaments of the scapula are, the

Coraco-acromial. Transverse.

The Coraco-acromial Ligament is a broad, thin, flat band, of a triangular shape, extended transversely above the upper part of the shoulder-joint, between
the coracoid and acromion processes. It is attached, by its apex, to the summit of the acromion just in front of the articular surface for the clavicle; and by its broad base, to the whole length of the outer border of the coracoid process. Its posterior fibres are directed obliquely backwards and outwards, its anterior fibres transversely. This ligament completes the vault formed by the coracoid and acromion processes for the protection of the head of the humerus. It is in relation, above, with the clavicle and under surface of the Deltoid; below, with the tendon of the Supraspinatus muscle, a bursa being interposed. Its anterior border is continuous with a dense cellular lamina that passes beneath the Deltoid upon the tendons of the Supraspinatus and Infraspinatus muscles.

The Transverse or Coracoid Ligament converts the suprascapular notch into a foramen. It is a thin and flat fasciculus, narrower at the middle than at the extremities, attached, by one end, to the base of the coracoid process, and, by the other, to the inner extremity of the scapular notch. The suprascapular nerve passes through the foramen; the suprascapular vessels above it.

IV. SHOULDER-JOINT. (Fig. 224.)

The Shoulder is an enarthrodial or ball-and-socket joint. The bones entering into its formation, are the large globular head of the humerus, received into the shallow glenoid cavity of the scapular, an arrangement which permits of very considerable movement, whilst the joint itself is protected against displacement by the strong ligaments and tendons which surround it, and above by an arched vault, formed by the under surface of the coracoid and acromion processes, and the coraco-acromial ligament. The articular surfaces are covered by a layer of cartilage: that on the head of the humerus is thicker at the centre than at the circumference, the reverse being the case in the glenoid cavity. The ligaments of the shoulder are, the

Capsular. Coraco-humeral.
Glenoid.

The Capsular Ligament completely encircles the articulation; being attached, above, to the circumference of the glenoid cavity beyond the glenoid ligament; below, to the anatomical neck of the humerus, approaching nearer to the articular cartilage above than in the rest of its extent. It is thicker above than below, remarkably loose and lax, and much larger and longer than is necessary to keep the bones in contact, allowing them to be separated from each other more than an inch, an evident provision for that extreme freedom of movement which is peculiar to this articulation. Its external surface is strengthened, above, by the Supraspinatus; above and internally, by the coraco-humeral ligament; below, by the long head of the Triceps; externally, by the tendons of the Infraspinatus and Teres minor; and internally, by the tendon of the Subscapularis. The capsular ligament usually presents three openings; one at its inner side, below the coracoid process, partially filled up by the tendon of the Subscapularis; it establishes a communication between the synovial membrane of the joint and a bursa beneath the tendon of that muscle. The second, which is not constant, is at the outer part, where a communication sometimes exists between the joint and a bursal sac belonging to the Infraspinatus muscle. The third is seen in the lower border of the ligament, between the two tuberosities, at the passage of the long tendon of the Biceps muscle.

The pectoral or Accessory Ligament is a broad band which strengthens the upper and inner part of the capsular ligament. It arises from the outer border of the coracoid process, and passes obliquely downwards and outwards

The long tendon of origin of the Biceps muscle also acts as one of the ligaments of this articular capsule. See the observations on p. 384, on the function of the muscles passing over more than one
to the front of the great tuberosity of the humerus, being blended with the
tendon of the Supraspinatus muscle. This ligament is intimately united to the
capsular in the greater part of its extent.

The **Glenoid Ligament** is a firm fibrous band attached round the margin of
the glenoid cavity. It is triangular on section, the thickest portion being fixed
to the circumference of the cavity, the free edge being thin and sharp. It is
continuous above with the long tendon of the Biceps muscle, which bifurcates
at the upper part of the cavity into two fasciculi, encircling the margin of the
glenoid cavity and uniting at its lower part. This ligament deepens the cavity
for articulation, and protects the edges of the bone. It is lined by the synovial
membrane.

The **Synovial Membrane** lines the margin of the glenoid cavity and the fibro-
cartilaginous rim surrounding it; it is then reflected over the internal surface
of the capsular ligament, covers the lower part and sides of the neck of the
humerus, and is continued a short distance over the cartilage covering the head
of the bone. The long tendon of the Biceps muscle which passes through the
capsular ligament, is inclosed in a tubular sheath of synovial membrane, which
is reflected upon it at the point where it perforates the capsule, and is continued
around it as far as the summit of the glenoid cavity. The tendon of the Biceps
is thus enabled to traverse the articulation, but is not contained in the interior
of the synovial cavity. The synovial membrane communicates with a large
bursal sac beneath the tendon of the Subscapularis, by an opening at the inner
side of the capsular ligament; it also occasionally communicates with another
bursal sac, beneath the tendon of the Infraspinatus, through an orifice at its
outer part. A third bursal sac, which does not communicate with the joint, is
placed between the under surface of the deltoïd and the outer surface of the
capsule.

The **Muscles** in relation with the joint are, above, the Supraspinatus; below,
the long head of the Triceps; internally, the Subscapularis; externally, the
Infraspinatus, and Teres minor; within, the long tendon of the Biceps. The
Deltoïd is placed most externally, and covers the articulation on its outer side,
as well as in front and behind.

The **Arteries** supplying the joint are articular branches of the anterior and
posterior circumflex, and suprascapular.

The **Nerves** are derived from the circumflex and suprascapular.

**Actions.** The shoulder-joint is capable of movement in every direction, for-
wards, backwards, abduction, adduction, circumduction, and rotation.

The most striking peculiarities in this joint are: 1. The large size of the head
of the humerus in comparison with the depth of the glenoid cavity, even when
supplemented by the glenoid ligament. 2. The looseness of the capsule of the
joint. 3. The intimate connection of the capsule with the muscles attached to the
head of the humerus. 4. The peculiar relation of the biceps tendon to the joint.

It is in consequence of the relative size of the two articular surfaces that the
joint enjoys so free movement in every possible direction. When these move-
ments of the arm are arrested in the shoulder-joint by the contact of the bony
surfaces, and by the tension of the corresponding fibres of the capsule, together
with that of the muscles acting as accessory ligaments, they can be carried con-
siderably further by the movements of the scapula, involving, of course, motion
at the coraco- and sterno-clavicular joints. These joints are therefore to be
regarded as accessory structures to the shoulder-joint. The extent of these
movements of the scapula is very considerable, especially in extreme elevation
of the arm, which movement is best accomplished when the arm is thrown
somewhat forward, since the articular surface of the humerus is broader in the
middle than at either end, especially the lower, so that the range of elevation
directly forward is less, and that directly backward still more restricted. The

---

the coracoid and acromion processes. It is attached, by its apex, to the summit of the acromion just in front of the articular surface for the clavicle; and by its broad base, to the whole length of the outer border of the coracoid process. Its posterior fibres are directed obliquely backwards and outwards, its anterior fibres transversely. This ligament completes the vault formed by the coracoid and acromion processes for the protection of the head of the humerus. It is in relation, above, with the clavicle and under surface of the Deltoid; below, with the tendon of the Supraspinatus muscle, a bursa being interposed. Its anterior border is continuous with a dense cellular lamina that passes beneath the Deltoid upon the tendons of the Supraspinatus and Infraspinatus muscles.

The Transverse or Coracoid Ligament converts the suprascapular notch into a foramen. It is a thin and flat fasciculus, narrower at the middle than at the extremities, attached, by one end, to the base of the coracoid process, and, by the other, to the inner extremity of the scapular notch. The suprascapular nerve passes through the foramen; the suprascapular vessels above it.

IV. SHOULDER-JOINT. (Fig. 224.)

The Shoulder is an enarthrodial or ball-and-socket joint. The bones entering into its formation, are the large globular head of the humerus, received into the shallow glenoid cavity of the scapular, an arrangement which permits of very considerable movement, whilst the joint itself is protected against displacement by the strong ligaments and tendons which surround it, and above by an arched vault, formed by the under surface of the coracoid and acromion processes, and the coraco-acromial ligament. The articular surfaces are covered by a layer of cartilage: that on the head of the humerus is thicker at the centre than at the circumference, the reverse being the case in the glenoid cavity. The ligaments of the shoulder are, the

Capsular. Coraco-humeral. Glenoid.¹

The Capsular Ligament completely encircles the articulation; being attached, above, to the circumference of the glenoid cavity beyond the glenoid ligament; below, to the anatomical neck of the humerus, approaching nearer to the articular cartilage above than in the rest of its extent. It is thicker above than below, remarkably loose and lax, and much larger and longer than is necessary to keep the bones in contact, allowing them to be separated from each other more than an inch, an evident provision for that extreme freedom of movement which is peculiar to this articulation. Its external surface is strengthened, above, by the Supraspinatus; above and internally, by the coraco-humeral ligament; below, by the long head of the Triceps; externally, by the tendons of the Infraspinatus and Teres minor; and internally, by the tendon of the Subscapularis. The capsular ligament usually presents three openings; one at its inner side, below the coracoid process, partially filled up by the tendon of the Subscapularis; it establishes a communication between the synovial membrane of the joint and a bursa beneath the tendon of that muscle. The second, which is not constant, is at the outer part, where a communication sometimes exists between the joint and a bursal sac belonging to the Infraspinatus muscle. The third is seen in the lower border of the ligament, between the two tuberosities, for the passage of the long tendon of the Biceps muscle.

The Coraco-humeral or Accessory Ligament is a broad band which strengthens the upper and inner part of the capsular ligament. It arises from the outer border of the coracoid process, and passes obliquely downwards and outwards

¹ The long tendon of origin of the Biceps muscle also acts as one of the ligaments of this joint. See the observations on p. 284, on the function of the muscles passing over more than one joint.
to the front of the great tuberosity of the humerus, being blended with the
tendon of the Supraspinatus muscle. This ligament is intimately united to the
capsular in the greater part of its extent.

The Glenoid Ligament is a firm fibrous band attached round the margin of
the glenoid cavity. It is triangular in section, the thickest portion being fixed
to the circumference of the cavity, the free edge being thin and sharp. It is
continuous above with the long tendon of the Biceps muscle, which bifurcates
at the upper part of the cavity into two fasciculi, encircling the margin of the
glenoid cavity and uniting at its lower part. This ligament deepens the cavity
for articulation, and protects the edges of the bone. It is lined by the synovial
membrane.

The Synovial Membrane lines the margin of the glenoid cavity and the fibro-
cartilaginous rim surrounding it; it is then reflected over the internal surface
of the capsular ligament, covers the lower part and sides of the neck of the
humerus, and is continued a short distance over the cartilage covering the head
of the bone. The long tendon of the Biceps muscle which passes through the
capsular ligament, is inclosed in a tubular sheath of synovial membrane, which
is reflected upon it at the point where it perforates the capsule, and is continued
around it as far as the summit of the glenoid cavity. The tendon of the Biceps
is thus enabled to traverse the articulation, but is not contained in the interior
of the synovial cavity. The synovial membrane communicates with a large
bursal sac beneath the tendon of the Subscapularis, by an opening at the inner
side of the capsular ligament; it also occasionally communicates with another
bursal sac, beneath the tendon of the Infraspinatus, through an orifice at its
outer part. A third bursal sac, which does not communicate with the joint, is
placed between the under surface of the deltoid and the outer surface of the
capsule.

The Muscles in relation with the joint are, above, the Supraspinatus; below,
the long head of the Triceps; internally, the Subscapularis; externally, the
Infraspinatus, and Teres minor; within, the long tendon of the Biceps. The
Deltoid is placed most externally, and covers the articulation on its outer side,
as well as in front and behind.

The Arteries supplying the joint are articular branches of the anterior and
posterior circumflex, and suprascapular.

The Nerves are derived from the circumflex and suprascapular.

Actions. The shoulder-joint is capable of movement in every direction, for-
wards, backwards, abduction, adduction, circumduction, and rotation.

The most striking peculiarities in this joint are: 1. The large size of the head
of the humerus in comparison with the depth of the glenoid cavity, even when
supplemented by the glenoid ligament. 2. The looseness of the capsule of the
joint. 3. The intimate connection of the capsule with the muscles attached to the
head of the humerus. 4. The peculiar relation of the biceps tendon to the joint.

It is in consequence of the relative size of the two articular surfaces that the
joint enjoys so free movement in every possible direction. When these move-
ments of the arm are arrested in the shoulder-joint by the contact of the bony
surfaces, and by the tension of the corresponding fibres of the capsule, together
with that of the muscles acting as accessory ligaments, they can be carried con-
siderably further by the movements of the scapula, involving, of course, motion
at the coraco- and sterno-clavicular joints. These joints are therefore to be
regarded as accessory structures to the shoulder-joint.¹ The extent of these
movements of the scapula is very considerable, especially in extreme elevation
of the arm, which movement is best accomplished when the arm is thrown
somewhat forward, since the articular surface of the humerus is broader in the
middle than at either end, especially the lower, so that the range of elevation
directly forward is less, and that directly backward still more restricted. The

¹ See pp. 306, 327.
the coracoid and acromion processes. It is attached, by its apex, to the summit
of the acromion just in front of the articular surface for the clavicle; and by its
broad base, to the whole length of the outer border of the coracoid process. Its
posterior fibres are directed obliquely backwards and outwards, its anterior
fibres transversely. This ligament completes the vault formed by the coracoid
and acromion processes for the protection of the head of the humerus. It is in
relation, above, with the clavicle and under surface of the Deltoid; below, with
the tendon of the Supraspinatus muscle, a bursa being interposed. Its anterior
border is continuous with a dense cellular lamina that passes beneath the Deltoid
upon the tendons of the Supraspinatus and Infraspinatus muscles.

The Transverse or Coracoid Ligament converts the suprascapular notch into a
foramen. It is a thin and flat fasciculus, narrower at the middle than at the
extremities, attached, by one end, to the base of the coracoid process, and, by
the other, to the inner extremity of the scapular notch. The suprascapular
nerve passes through the foramen; the suprascapular vessels above it.

IV. SHOULDER-JOINT. (Fig. 224.)

The Shoulder is an enarthrodial or ball-and-socket joint. The bones entering
into its formation, are the large globular head of the humerus, received into the
shallow glenoid cavity of the scapular, an arrangement which permits of very
considerable movement, whilst the joint itself is protected against displacement
by the strong ligaments and tendons which surround it, and above by an arched
vault, formed by the under surface of the coracoid and acromion processes, and
the coraco-acromial ligament. The articular surfaces are covered by a layer of
cartilage: that on the head of the humerus is thicker at the centre than at the
circumference, the reverse being the case in the glenoid cavity. The ligaments
of the shoulder are, the

Capsular. Coraco-humeral.

Glenoid.¹

The Capsular Ligament completely encircles the articulation; being attached,
above, to the circumference of the glenoid cavity beyond the glenoid ligament;
below, to the anatomical neck of the humerus, approaching nearer to the articu-
lar cartilage above than in the rest of its extent. It is thicker above than
below, remarkably loose and lax, and much larger and longer than is necessary
to keep the bones in contact, allowing them to be separated from each other
more than an inch, an evident provision for that extreme freedom of movement
which is peculiar to this articulation. Its external surface is strengthened,
above, by the Supraspinatus; above and internally, by the coraco-humeral
ligament; below, by the long head of the Triceps; externally, by the tendons
of the Infraspinatus and Teres minor; and internally, by the tendon of the Sub-
scapularis. The capsular ligament usually presents three openings; one at its
inner side, below the coracoid process, partially filled up by the tendon of the
Subscapularis; it establishes a communication between the synovial membrane
of the joint and a bursa beneath the tendon of that muscle. The second, which
is not constant, is at the outer part, where a communication sometimes exists
between the joint and a bursal sac belonging to the Infraspinatus muscle. The
third is seen in the lower border of the ligament, between the two tuberosities,
for the passage of the long tendon of the Biceps muscle.

The Coraco-humeral or Accessory Ligament is a broad band which strengthens
the upper and inner part of the capsular ligament. It arises from the outer
border of the coracoid process, and passes obliquely downwards and outwards

¹ The long tendon of origin of the Biceps muscle also acts as one of the ligaments of this
joint. See the observations on p. 284, on the function of the muscles passing over more than one
joint.
to the front of the great tuberosity of the humerus, being blended with the
tendon of the Supraspinatus muscle. This ligament is intimately united to the
capsular in the greater part of its extent.

The Glenoid Ligament is a firm fibrous band attached round the margin of
the glenoid cavity. It is triangular on section, the thickest portion being fixed
to the circumference of the cavity, the free edge being thin and sharp. It is
continuous above with the long tendon of the Biceps muscle, which bifurcates
at the upper part of the cavity into two fasciculi, encircling the margin of the
glenoid cavity and uniting at its lower part. This ligament deepens the cavity
for articulation, and protects the edges of the bone. It is lined by the synovial
membrane.

The Synovial Membrane lines the margin of the glenoid cavity and the fibro-
cartilaginous rim surrounding it; it is then reflected over the internal surface
of the capsular ligament, covers the lower part and sides of the neck of the
humerus, and is continued a short distance over the cartilage covering the head
of the bone. The long tendon of the Biceps muscle which passes through the
capsular ligament, is inclosed in a tubular sheath of synovial membrane, which
is reflected upon it at the point where it perforates the capsule, and is continued
around it as far as the summit of the glenoid cavity. The tendon of the Biceps
is thus enabled to traverse the articulation, but is not contained in the interior
of the synovial cavity. The synovial membrane communicates with a large
bursal sac beneath the tendon of the Subscapularis, by an opening at the inner
side of the capsular ligament; it also occasionally communicates with another
bursal sac, beneath the tendon of the Infraspinatus, through an orifice at its
outer part. A third bursal sac, which does not communicate with the joint, is
placed between the under surface of the deltoid and the outer surface of the
capsule.

The Muscles in relation with the joint are, above, the Supraspinatus; below,
the long head of the Triceps; internally, the Subscapularis; externally, the
Infraspinatus, and Teres minor; within, the long tendon of the Biceps. The
Deltoid is placed most externally, and covers the articulation on its outer side,
as well as in front and behind.

The Arteries supplying the joint are articular branches of the anterior and
posterior circumflex, and suprascapular.

The Nerves are derived from the circumflex and suprascapular.

Actions. The shoulder-joint is capable of movement in every direction, for-
wards, backwards, abduction, adduction, circumduction, and rotation.

The most striking peculiarities in this joint are: 1. The large size of the head
of the humerus in comparison with the depth of the glenoid cavity, even when
supplemented by the glenoid ligament. 2. The looseness of the capsule of the
joint. 3. The intimate connection of the capsule with the muscles attached to the
head of the humerus. 4. The peculiar relation of the biceps tendon to the joint.

It is in consequence of the relative size of the two articular surfaces that the
joint enjoys so free movement in every possible direction. When these move-
ments of the arm are arrested in the shoulder-joint by the contact of the bony
surfaces, and by the tension of the corresponding fibres of the capsule, together
with that of the muscles acting as accessory ligaments, they can be carried con-
siderably further by the movements of the scapula, involving, of course, motion
at the coraco- and sterno-clavicular joints. These joints are therefore to be
regarded as accessory structures to the shoulder-joint.\(^1\) The extent of these
movements of the scapula is very considerable, especially in extreme elevation
of the arm, which movement is best accomplished when the arm is thrown
somewhat forward, since the articular surface of the humerus is broader in the
middle than at either end, especially the lower, so that the range of elevation
directly forward is less, and that directly backward still more restricted. The

great width of the central portion of the humeral head allows of very free horizontal movement when the arm is raised to a right angle, in which movement the arch formed by the acromion, the coracoid process, and the coracoacromial ligament, constitutes a sort of supplemental articular cavity for the head of the bone.

The looseness of the capsule is so great that the arm will fall about an inch from the scapula when the muscles are dissected from the capsular ligament, and an opening made in it to remove the atmospheric pressure. The movements of the joint, therefore, are not regulated by the capsule, so much as by the surrounding muscles and by the pressure of the atmosphere, an arrangement which "renders the movements of the joint much more easy than they would otherwise have been, and permits a swinging pendulum-like vibration of the limb, when the muscles are at rest." (Humphry.) The fact, also, that in all ordinary positions of the joint the capsule is not put on the stretch, enables the arm to move freely in all directions. Extreme movements are checked by the tension of appropriate portions of the capsule, as well as by the interlocking of the bones. Thus it is said that "abduction is checked by the contact of the great tuberosity with the upper edge of the glenoid cavity, adduction, by the tension of the coraco-humeral ligament." (Beaunis et Bouchard.)

The intimate union of the tendons of the four short muscles with the capsule converts these muscles into elastic and spontaneously acting ligaments of the joint, and it is regarded as being also intended to prevent the folds into which all portions of the capsule would alternately fall in the varying positions of the joint from being driven between the bones by the pressure of the atmosphere.

The peculiar relations of the biceps tendon to the shoulder-joint appear to subserve various purposes. In the first place by its connection with both the shoulder and elbow, the muscle harmonizes the action of the two joints, and acts as an elastic ligament in all positions, in the manner previously adverted to. Next it strengthens the upper part of the articular cavity, and prevents the head of the humerus from being pressed up against the acromion process, when the deltoid contracts, instead of forming the centre of motion in the glenoid cavity. By its passage along the bicipital groove it assists to render the head of the humerus steady in the various movements of the arm and forearm. To these offices Prof. Humphry adds, that "it assists the supra- and infraspinatus muscles to cause the head of the humerus to revolve in the glenoid cavity when the arm is raised from the side, and that it holds the head of the humerus firmly in contact with the glenoid cavity, and prevents its slipping over the lower edge of the cavity or being displaced by the action of the latissimus dorsi and pectoralis major when the arm is raised from the side, as in climbing and many other movements."

V. Elbow-Joint.

The Elbow is a ginglymus or hinge joint. The bones entering into its formation are the trochlear surface of the humerus, which is received in the greater sigmoid cavity of the ulna, and admits of the movements peculiar to this joint, those of flexion and extension, whilst the cup-shaped depression on the head of the radius articulates with the lesser, or radial, head of the humerus, and the circumference of the head of the radius with the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna, allowing of the movement of rotation of the radius on the ulna, the chief action of the superior radio-ulnar articulation. The articular surfaces are covered with a thin layer of cartilage, and connected together by the following ligaments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anterior</th>
<th>Internal Lateral</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Posterior</td>
<td>External Lateral</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 See p. 284.
The orbicular ligament of the upper radio-ulnar articulation must also be reckoned among the ligaments of the elbow.

The Anterior Ligament (Fig. 225) is a broad and thin fibrous layer, which covers the anterior surface of the joint. It is attached to the front of the humerus immediately above the coronoid fossa; below, the anterior surface of the coronoid process of the ulna and orbicular ligament, being continuous on each side with the lateral ligaments. Its superficial or oblique fibres pass from the inner condyle of the humerus outwards to the orbicular ligament. The middle fibres, vertical in direction, pass from the upper part of the coronoid depression, and become blended with the preceding. A third, or transverse set, intersect these at right angles. This ligament is in relation, in front, with the Brachialis anticus; behind, with the synovial membranes.

The Posterior Ligament (Fig. 226) is a thin and loose membranous fold, attached, above, to the lower end of the humerus, immediately above the olecranon fossa; below, to the margin of the olecranon. The superficial or transverse fibres pass between the adjacent margins of the olecranon fossa. The deeper portion consists of vertical fibres, which pass from the upper part of the olecranon fossa to the margin of the olecranon. This ligament is in relation, behind, with the tendon of the Triceps and the Anconeus; in front, with the synovial membrane.

The Internal Lateral Ligament (Fig. 225) is a thick triangular band, consisting of two distinct portions, an anterior and posterior. The anterior portion, directed obliquely forwards, is attached, above, by its apex, to the front part of the internal condyle of the humerus; and, below, by its broad base, to the inner margin of the coronoid process. The posterior portion, also of triangular form, is attached, above, by its apex, to the lower and back part of the internal condyle; below, to the inner margin of the olecranon. This ligament is in relation, internally, with the Triceps and Flexor carpi ulnaris muscles, and the ulnar nerve.

The External Lateral Ligament (Fig. 226) is a short and narrow fibrous fasciculus, less distinct than the internal, attached, above, to the external condyle of the humerus; below, to the orbicular ligament, some of its most posterior fibres passing over that ligament, to be inserted into the outer margin of the ulna. This ligament is intimately blended with the tendon of origin of the Supinator brevis muscle.

The Synovial Membrane is very extensive. It covers the margin of the articular surface of the humerus, and lines the coronoid and olecranon fossae on that bone; from these points, it is reflected over the anterior, posterior, and lateral ligaments; and forms a pouch between the lesser sigmoid cavity, the internal surface of the orbicular ligament, and the circumference of the head of the radius.
ARTICULATIONS.

The Muscles in relation with the joint are, in front, the Brachialis anticus; behind, the Triceps and Anconeus; externally, the Supinator brevis, and the common tendon of origin of the Extensor muscles; internally, the common tendon of origin of the Flexor muscles, and the Flexor carpi ulnaris, with the ulnar nerve.

The Arteries supplying the joint are derived from the communicating branches between the superior profunda, inferior profunda, and anastomotic branches of the brachial, with the anterior, posterior, and interosseous recurrent branches of the ulnar, and the recurrent branch of the radial. These vessels form a complete chain of inosculation around the joint.

The Nerves are derived from the ulnar, as it passes between the internal condyle and the olecranon; and a few filaments from the musculocutaneous.

Actions. The elbow-joint comprises three different portions: viz., the joint between the ulna and humerus, that between the head of the radius and the humerus, and the superior radio-ulnar articulation, described below. All these articular surfaces are invested by a common synovial membrane, and the movements of the whole joint should be studied together. The combination of the movements of flexion and extension of the forearm with those of pronation and supination of the hand, which is ensured by the two being performed at the same joint, is essential to the accuracy of the various minute movements of the hand.

The portion of the joint between the ulna and humerus is a simple hinge-joint, and allows of movements of flexion and extension only. The shape of the trochlear surface of the humerus, with its prominences and depressions accurately adapted to the opposing surfaces of the olecranon, prevents any lateral movement. In the ordinary position assumed by the humerus, when resting on the prominent internal condyle, this direct movement of flexion carries the hand inwards, towards the chest and mouth.

The joint between the head of the radius and the capitellum or radial head of the humerus is an arthrodial joint. The bony surfaces would of themselves constitute an enarthrosis and allow of movement in all directions, were it not for the orbicular ligament by which the head of the radius is bound down firmly to the sigmoid cavity of the ulna, and which prevents any separation of the two bones laterally. It is to the same ligament that the head of the radius owes its security from dislocation, which would otherwise constantly occur, as a consequence of the shallowness of the cup-like surface on the head of the radius. In fact, but for this ligament, the tendon of the biceps would be liable to pull the head of the radius out of the joint. In complete extension, the head of the radius glides so far back on the outer condyle that its edge is plainly felt at the back of the joint.

In combination with any position of flexion or extension, the head of the radius can be rotated in the upper radio-ulnar joint, carrying the hand with it. The hand is articulated to the lower surface of the radius only, and the concave or sigmoid surface on the lower end of the radius travels round the lower end of the radius. The hand can be turned from the radial side to the ulnar side without any rotation of the radius or the elbow articulation.

1 Humphry, op. cit. p. 419.
of the ulna. The latter bone is excluded from the wrist-joint (as will be seen in the sequel) by the triangular fibro-cartilage. Thus, rotation of the head of the radius round an axis which passes through the external condyle of the humerus, imparts circular movement to the hand through a very considerable arc. If it is necessary to turn the hand upwards and downwards without changing its place (as in using a corkscrew), this circular movement is obviated by rapid instinctive compensating changes in the position of the elbow.

VI. Radio-ulnar Articulations.

The articulation of the radius with the ulna is effected by ligaments, which connect together both extremities as well as the shafts of these bones. They may, consequently, be subdivided into three sets: 1. The superior radio-ulnar, which is a portion of the elbow-joint; 2, the middle radio-ulnar; and, 3, the inferior radio-ulnar articulations.


This articulation is a lateral ginglymus. The bones entering into its formation are the inner side of the circumference of the head of the radius rotating within the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna. These surfaces are covered with cartilage, and invested with a dupliciture of synovial membrane, continuous with that which lines the elbow-joint. Its only ligament is the annular or orbicular.

The Orbicular Ligament (Fig. 226) is a strong, flat band of ligamentous fibres, which surrounds the head of the radius, and retains it in firm connection with the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna. It forms about three-fourths of a fibrous ring, attached by each end to the extremities of the lesser sigmoid cavity, and is broader at the upper part of its circumference than below, by which means the head of the radius is more securely held in its position. Its outer surface is strengthened by the external lateral ligament of the elbow, and affords origin to part of the Supinator brevis muscle. Its inner surface is smooth, and lined by synovial membrane.

Actions. The movement which takes place in this articulation is limited to rotation of the head of the radius within the orbicular ligament, and upon the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna; rotation forwards being called pronation; rotation backwards, supination.

2. Middle Radio-ulnar Articulation.

The interval between the shafts of the radius and ulna is occupied by two ligaments.

Oblique. Interosseous.

The Oblique or Round Ligament (Fig. 225) is a small, round fibrous cord, which extends obliquely downwards and outwards, from the tubercle of the ulna at the base of the coronoid process, to the radius a little below the bicipital tuberosity. Its fibres run in the opposite direction to those of the interosseous ligament; and, it appears to be placed as a substitute for it in the upper part of the interosseous interval. This ligament is sometimes wanting.

The Interosseous Membrane is a broad and thin plane of aponeurotic fibres, descending obliquely downwards and inwards, from the interosseous ridge on the radius to that on the ulna. It is deficient above, commencing about an inch beneath the tubercle of the radius; is broader in the middle than at either extremity; and presents an oval aperture just above its lower margin for the passage of the anterior interosseous vessels to the back of the forearm. This ligament serves to connect the bones, and to increase the extent of surface for
the attachment of the deep muscles. Between its upper border and the oblique ligament an interval exists, through which the posterior interosseous vessels pass. Two or three fibrous bands are occasionally found on the posterior surface of this membrane, which descend obliquely from the ulna towards the radius, and which have consequently a direction contrary to that of the other fibres. It is in relation, in front, by its upper three-fourths with the Flexor longus pollicis on the outer side, and with the Flexor profundus digitorum on the inner, lying upon the interval between which are the anterior interosseous vessels and nerve, by its lower fourth with the Pronator quadratus; behind, with the Supinator brevis, Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, Extensor primi internodii pollicis, Extensor secundi internodii pollicis, Extensor indicis; and, near the wrist, with the anterior interosseous artery and posterior interosseous nerve.


This is a lateral ginglymus, formed by the head of the ulna received into the sigmoid cavity at the inner side of the lower end of the radius. The articular surfaces are covered by a thin layer of cartilage, and connected together by the following ligaments:—

- Anterior Radio-ulnar.
- Posterior Radio-ulnar.
- Triangular Interarticular Fibro-cartilage.

The Anterior Radio-ulnar Ligament (Fig. 227) is a narrow band of fibres, extending from the anterior margin of the sigmoid cavity of the radius to the anterior surface of the head of the ulna.

![Fig. 227.—Ligaments of Wrist and Hand. Anterior View.](image)

The Posterior Radio-ulnar Ligament (Fig. 228) extends between similar points on the posterior surface of the articulation.

The Triangular Fibro-cartilage (Fig. 229, p. 320) is placed transversely beneath the head of the ulna, binding the lower end of this bone and the radius firmly together. Its circumference is thicker than its centre, which is thin and occasionally perforated. It is attached by its apex to a depression which separates
the styloid process of the ulna from the head of that bone; and, by its base, which is thin, to the prominent edge of the radius, which separates the sigmoid cavity from the carpal articulating surface. Its margins are united to the ligaments of the wrist-joint. Its upper surface, smooth and concave, is contiguous

with the head of the ulna; its under surface, also concave and smooth, with the cuneiform bone. Both surfaces are lined by a synovial membrane: the upper surface by one peculiar to the radio-ulnar articulation; the under surface, by the synovial membrane of the wrist.

The Synovial Membrane (Fig. 229) of this articulation has been called, from its extreme looseness, the membrana saciformis; it covers the margin of the articular surface of the head of the ulna, and where reflected from this bone on to the radius, forms a very loose cul-de-sac; from the radius, it is continued over the upper surface of the fibro-cartilage. The quantity of synovia which it contains is usually considerable. When the fibro-cartilage is perforated, the synovial membrane is continuous with that which lines the wrist.

Actions. The arrangement in the inferior radio-ulnar articulation is just the reverse of that between the two bones above; motion is limited to rotation of the radius round the head of the ulna; rotation forwards being termed pronation, rotation backwards supination. In pronation, the sigmoid cavity glides forward on the articular edge of the ulna; in supination, it rolls in the opposite direction, the extent of these movements being limited by the anterior and posterior ligaments.

VII. RADIO-CARPAL OR WRIST-JOINT.

The Wrist presents some of the characters of an enarthrodial joint, but is more correctly regarded as an arthrodia. The parts entering into its formation are, the lower end of the radius, and under surface of the triangular interarticular fibro-cartilage above; and the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform bones below. The articular surfaces of the radius and interarticular fibro-cartilage form a transversely elliptical concave surface. The surface of the radius is subdivided into two parts by a line extending from before backwards; and these, together with the interarticular cartilage, form three facets, one for each
carnal bone. The three carpal bones are connected together, and form a convex surface, which is received into the concavity above mentioned. All the bony surfaces of the articulation are covered with cartilage, and connected together by the following ligaments:—

External Lateral.  Anterior.
Internal Lateral.  Posterior.

The External Lateral Ligament (radio-carpal) (Fig. 227) extends from the summit of the styloid process of the radius to the outer side of the scaphoid, some of its fibres being prolonged to the trapezium and annular ligament.

The Internal Lateral Ligament (ulno-carpal) is a rounded cord, attached, above, to the extremity of the styloid process of the ulna: and dividing below into two fasciculi, which are attached, one to the inner side of the cuneiform bone, the other to the pisiform bone and annular ligament.

The Anterior Ligament is a broad membranous band, consisting of three fasciculi, attached, above, to the anterior margin of the lower end of the radius, its styloid process, and the ulna; its fibres pass downwards and inwards, to be inserted into the palmar surface of the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform bones. This ligament is perforated by numerous apertures for the passage of vessels, and is in relation, in front, with the tendons of the Flexor profundus digitorum and Flexor longus pollicis; behind, with the synovial membrane of the wrist-joint.

The Posterior Ligament (Fig. 228), less thick and strong than the anterior, is attached, above, to the posterior border of the lower end of the radius; its fibres pass obliquely downwards and inwards to be attached to the dorsal surface of the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform bones, being continuous with those of the dorsal carpal ligaments. This ligament is in relation, behind, with the extensor tendons of the fingers; in front, with the synovial membrane of the wrist.

The Synovial Membrane (Fig. 229) lines the under surface of the triangular interarticular fibro-cartilage above; and is reflected on the inner surface of the ligaments just described.

Relations. The wrist-joint is covered in front by the flexor, and behind by the extensor tendons; it is also in relation with the radial and ulnar arteries.

The Arteries supplying the joint are the anterior and posterior carpal branches of the radial and ulnar, the anterior and posterior interosseous, and some ascending branches from the deep palmar arch.

The Nerves are derived from the ulnar and posterior interosseous.

Actions. The movements permitted in this joint are flexion, extension, abduction, adduction, and circumduction. It is totally incapable of rotation, one of the characteristic movements in true enchondral joints. Its action will be further studied with those of the carpus, with which they are combined.

VIII. Articulations of the Carpus.

These articulations may be subdivided into three sets.

1. The Articulations of the First Row of Carpal Bones.
2. The Articulations of the Second Row of Carpal Bones.
3. The Articulations of the Two Rows with each other.

1. Articulations of the First Row of Carpal Bones.

These are arthrodial joints. The articular surfaces are covered with cartilage, and connected together by the following ligaments:—

Two Dorsal.  Two Palmar.
Two Interosseous.
OF THE CARPUS.

The Dorsal Ligaments are placed transversely behind the bones of the first row; they connect the scaphoid and semilunar, and the semilunar and cuneiform.

The Palmar Ligaments connect the scaphoid and semilunar, and the semilunar and cuneiform bones; they are less strong than the dorsal, and placed very deep under the anterior ligament of the wrist.

The Interosseous Ligaments (Fig. 229) are two narrow bundles of fibrous tissue, connecting the semilunar bone, on one side with the scaphoid, on the other with the cuneiform. They close the upper part of the interspaces between the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform bones, their upper surfaces being smooth, and lined by the synovial membrane of the wrist-joint.

The articulation of the pisiform with the cuneiform is provided with a separate synovial membrane, protected by a thin capsular ligament. There are also two strong fibrous fasciculi, which connect this bone to the unciform and the base of the fifth metacarpal bone (Fig. 227).

2. Articulations of the Second Row of Carpal Bones.

These are also arthrodial joints. The articular surfaces are covered with cartilage, and connected by the following ligaments:—

Three Dorsal. Three Palmar.

Two Interosseous.

The three Dorsal Ligaments extend transversely from one bone to another on the dorsal surface, connecting the trapezium with the trapezoid, the trapezoid with the os magnum, and the os magnum with the unciform.

The three Palmar Ligaments have a similar arrangement on the palmar surface.

The two Interosseous Ligaments, much thicker than those of the first row, are placed one on each side of the os magnum, connecting it with the trapezoid externally, and the unciform internally. The former is less distinct than the latter.

3. Articulations of the Two Rows of Carpal Bones with each other.

The articulations between the two rows of the carpus consist of a joint in the middle, formed by the reception of the head of the os magnum into a cavity formed by the scaphoid and semilunar bones, and of an arthrodial joint on each side, the outer one formed by the articulation of the scaphoid with the trapezium and trapezoid, the internal one by the articulation of the cuneiform and unciform.

The articular surfaces are covered by a thin layer of cartilage, and connected by the following ligaments:—

Anterior or Palmar. External Lateral.
Posterior or Dorsal. Internal Lateral.

The Anterior or Palmar Ligaments consist of short fibres, which pass obliquely between the bones of the first and second row on the palmar surface.

The Posterior or Dorsal Ligaments have a similar arrangement on the dorsal surface of the carpus.

The Lateral Ligaments are very short; they are placed, one on the radial, the other on the ulnar side of the carpus; the former, the stronger and more distinct, connecting the scaphoid and trapezium bones, the latter the cuneiform and unciform; they are continuous with the lateral ligaments of the wrist-joint.

The common Synovial Membrane of the Carpus is very extensive; it lines the under surface of the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform bones, sending upwards two prolongations between their contiguous surfaces; it is then reflected over the bones of the second row, and sends down three prolongations between them, which line their contiguous surfaces, and invest the carpal extremities of the four inner metacarpal bones. There is a separate synovial membrane between the pisiform and cuneiform bones.
ARTICULATIONS.

Actions. The articulation of the hand and wrist, considered as a whole, is divided by Meyer into three parts:—1. The radius and the triangular cartilage. 2. The hand proper, viz., the metacarpal bones with the four carpal bones on which they are supported, the unciform, os magnum, trapezoid, and trapezium; and 3. The meniscus, formed by the cuneiform, semilunar, and scaphoid; the pisiform bone having no essential part in the movements of the hand.

These three elements form two joints:—1. The anterior between the hand and meniscus (transverse carpal joint, as it may be called), mainly ginglymoid in character; 2. The posterior (wrist-joint proper) between the meniscus and bones of the forearm, chiefly arthrodial.

1. The joint between the meniscus and the other four bones of the carpus is subdivided into three portions—the central formed between the deep cup of the semilunar above and the head of the os magnum with the adjacent part of the unciform below, is a ginglymoid joint in which some rotation is allowed; the radial portion formed by the scaphoid articulating with a portion of the os magnum, the trapezoid, and trapezium, represents also a ginglymoid joint in which rotation is permitted; while the ulnar portion or articulation of the cuneiform with the unciform partakes more of the arthrodial character. The axes of movement of these joints are inclined to each other at a considerable angle, so that in flexion of the hand on the forearm the carpal bones are brought together, and on the contrary are separated in extension.

Extension of the hand on the forearm or dorsi-flexion Meyer divides into three movements, corresponding to the three portions of the transverse joint. In the first the semilunar moves in its hinge-joint around the head of the os magnum and the edge of the unciform until its motion is checked by its bony surface coming into contact with the adjoining portions of those bones. The second part of the movement consists of a hinge-like motion of the scaphoid round the os magnum continued by a rotation of the same bone on a pivot formed by the head of the os magnum until it is checked by the tension of the ligaments uniting it to the trapezium and trapezoid. The third part is effected by the cuneiform which glides outwards or towards the radial side on the unciform to a certain extent and carries the semilunar with it, so that it is disengaged from its contact with the os magnum and unciform, and undergoes a further separation from those bones towards the radial side.

Flexion of the hand on the forearm, or palmar flexion, is accomplished by the semilunar (with the cuneiform) hinging around the os magnum and unciform, and the scaphoid moving in the same sense until the movement is checked by these two bones coming together.

It follows from this that the movement of extension in this joint is considerable, while that of flexion is but slight. A very trifling rotation is permitted around the head of the os magnum as a pivot; but only to the extent which is determined by the tension of the ligaments connected with that bone.

2. The articulation between the forearm and carpus is formed chiefly by the radius articulating with the scaphoid and semilunar, the articulation between the triangular cartilage and cuneiform being of subordinate importance. The ridge which divides the two concave surfaces on the end of the radius is the centre of motion in the chief part of the joint. This ridge is so inclined as to represent a portion of a spiral line passing from the point of the styloid process of the ulna to the ridge on the scaphoid which fits in between the trapezium and trapezoid. The result of this arrangement is that in flexion and extension of the hand, its radial border describes more of a curve than its ulnar, which moves more parallel to the axis of the forearm. The ulnar border of the hand is also brought more

2 It may not be amiss to note that Prof. Humphry attributes a very considerable share in the flexion of the hand to this transverse carpal joint, and believes that extension in the wrist-joint is more free than flexion. The Human Skeleton, p. 430.
towards the middle line of the forearm than its radial—the meniscus (carrying the hand with it) is displaced towards the radial side in extension and towards the ulnar in flexion. As above noted, extension takes place to a considerable extent in the transverse carpal joint as well as in the wrist-joint, while flexion takes place chiefly in the latter.

With regard to abduction and adduction of the hand (or "radial" and "ulnar" flexion), these also are effected chiefly in the latter joint, or indeed entirely, if considered accurately, i.e., if the terms are limited, as in strictness they should be, to movements in the plane which passes through the axis of the forearm and the straight line joining the styloid processes of the radius and ulna when these bones are at rest on each other. In abduction or radial flexion, the tubercle of the scaphoid glides towards the styloid process of the radius, carrying the meniscus towards the ulnar side, till its movement is stopped by the tension of the internal lateral ligament of the wrist, and by atmospheric pressure. The same traction which pulls the hand to the radial side, exerts, however, an influence on the transverse carpal joint which produces a movement of extension or dorsi-flexion, and as the meniscus follows this movement to a slight extent, the tubercle of the scaphoid is disengaged to some degree from its contact with the styloid process of the radius, and the abduction can be then carried a little further. From this it follows that any considerable abduction of the hand must also be combined with extension. The force which produces abduction Meyer regards as being usually the resultant of the action of the combined tendons of the Flexor carpi radialis and the two Extensores carpi radiales, passing through the posterior part of the axis of the scaphoid bone.

Adduction, or ulnar flexion, of the hand is less opposed than abduction. In this movement, the semilunar is drawn across the ridge on the radius, drawing with it the cuneiform along the face of the triangular fibro-cartilage. This movement does not tend to separate the scaphoid very much from the radius, since the curved surface formed by the end of the radius and its styloid process, is much the same in shape as the opposed surface of the scaphoid; consequently, the movement of adduction is much more extensive and uncomplicated than that of abduction. It is easily combined with flexion or extension, by preponderating actions of the Flexor or Extensor carpi ulnaris respectively, but extension is much more easily permitted than flexion.

IX. CARPO-METACARPAL ARTICULATIONS.

1. ARTICULATION OF THE METACARPAL BONE OF THE THUMB WITH THE TRAPEZIUM.

This is an arthrodial joint, which enjoys great freedom of movement, on account of the configuration of its articular surfaces, which are saddle-shaped, so that, on section, each bone appears to be received into a cavity in the other, according to the direction in which they are cut. Hence this joint is sometimes described as one "by reciprocal reception." Its ligaments are a capsular and synovial membrane.

The capsular ligament is a thick but loose capsule, which passes from the circumference of the upper extremity of the metacarpal bone to the rough edge bounding the articular surface of the trapezium; it is thickest externally and behind, and lined by a separate synovial membrane.

2. ARTICULATIONS OF THE METACARPAL BONES OF THE FINGERS WITH THE CARPUS.

The joints formed between the carpus and four inner metacarpal bones are connected together by dorsal, palmar, and interosseous ligaments.

The Dorsal Ligaments, the strongest and most distinct, connect the carpal
and metacarpal bones on their dorsal surface. The second metacarpal bone receives two fasciculi, one from the trapezium, the other from the trapezoid; the third metacarpal receives one from the os magnum; the fourth two, one from the os magnum, and one from the unciform; the fifth receives a single fasciculus from the unciform bone.

The Palmar Ligaments have a somewhat similar arrangement on the palmar surface, with the exception of the third metacarpal, which has three ligaments, an external one from the trapezium, situated above the sheath of the tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis; a middle one, from the os magnum; and an internal one from the unciform.

The Interosseous Ligaments consist of short thick fibres, which are limited to one part of the carpo-metacarpal articulation; they connect the contiguous inferior angles of the os magnum and unciform with the adjacent surfaces of the third and fourth metacarpal bones.

The Synovial Membrane is a continuation of that between the two rows of carpal bones. Occasionally, the articulation of the unciform with the fourth and fifth metacarpal bones has a separate synovial membrane.

The synovial membranes of the wrist (Fig. 229) are thus seen to be five in number. The first, the membrana sacciformis, lines the lower end of the ulna, the sigmoid cavity of the radius, and the upper surface of the triangular inter-articular fibro-cartilage. The second lines the lower end of the radius and inter-

Fig. 229.—Vertical Section through the Articulations at the Wrist, showing the five Synovial Membranes.

articular fibro-cartilage above, and the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform bones below. The third, the most extensive, covers the contiguous surfaces of the two rows of carpal bones, and passing between the bones of the second row, lines the carpal extremities of the four inner metacarpal bones. The fourth lines the adjacent surfaces of the trapezium and metacarpal bone of the thumb. The fifth lines the adjacent surfaces of the cuneiform and pisiform bones.

Actions. The movement permitted in the carpo-metacarpal articulations is limited to a slight gliding of the articular surfaces upon each other, the extent of which varies in the different joints. Thus the articulation of the metacarpal
bone of the thumb with the trapezium is most movable, then the fifth metacarpal, and then the fourth. The second and third are almost immovable. In the articulation of the metacarpal bone of the thumb with the trapezium, the movements permitted are flexion, extension, adduction, abduction, and circumduction.

3. Articulations of the Metacarpal Bones with Each Other.

The carpal extremities of the metacarpal bones articulate with one another at each side by small surfaces covered with cartilage, and connected together by dorsal, palmar, and interosseous ligaments.

The Dorsal and Palmar Ligaments pass transversely from one bone to another on the dorsal and palmar surfaces. The Interosseous Ligaments pass between their contiguous surfaces, just beneath their lateral articular facets.

The Synovial Membrane lining the lateral facets is a reflection from that between the two rows of carpal bones.

The digital extremities of the metacarpal bones are connected together by a narrow fibrous band, the transverse ligament (Fig. 230) which passes transversely across their anterior surfaces, and is blended with the ligaments of the metacarpophalangeal articulations. Its anterior surface presents four grooves for the passage of the flexor tendons. Its posterior surface blends with the ligaments of the metacarpophalangeal articulations.

X. Metacarpophalangeal Articulations. (Fig. 230.)

These articulations are of the ginglymus kind, formed by the reception of the rounded head of the metacarpal bone into a superficial cavity in the extremity of the first phalanx. They are connected by the following ligaments:—

Anterior. Two Lateral.

The Anterior Ligaments (Glenoid Ligaments of Cruveilhier) are thick, dense, and fibro-cartilaginous in texture. Each is placed on the palmar surface of the joint, in the interval between the lateral ligaments, to which they are connected; they are loosely united to the metacarpal bone, but very firmly to the base of the first phalanges. Their palmar surface is intimately blended with the transverse ligament, forming a groove for the passage of the flexor tendons, the sheath surrounding which is connected to each side of the groove. By their
ARTICULATIONS.

deep surface, they form part of the articular surface for the head of the metacarpal bone, and are lined by a synovial membrane.

The Lateral Ligaments are strong rounded cords, placed one on each side of the joint, each being attached by one extremity to the tubercle on the side of the head of the metacarpal bone, and by the other to the contiguous extremity of the phalanx.

The posterior ligament is supplied by the extensor tendon placed over the back of each joint.

Actions. The movements which occur in these joints are flexion, extension, adduction, abduction, and circumduction; the lateral movements are very limited.

XI. ARTICULATIONS OF THE PHALANGES.

These are ginglymus joints, connected by the following ligaments:—

Anterior.

Two Lateral.

The arrangement of these ligaments is similar to those in the metacarpophalangeal articulations; the extensor tendon supplies the place of a posterior ligament.

Actions. The only movements permitted in the phalangeal joints are flexion and extension; these movements are more extensive between the first and second phalanges than between the second and third. The movement of flexion is very considerable, but the extension is limited by the anterior and lateral ligaments.

ARTICULATIONS OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The articulations of the Lower Extremity comprise the following groups:—
I. The hip-joint. II. The knee-joint. III. The articulations between the tibia and fibula. IV. The ankle-joint. V. The articulations of the tarsus. VI. The tarso-metatarsal articulations. VII. The metatarso-phalangeal articulations. VIII. The articulations of the phalanges.

I. HIP-JOINT. (Fig. 281.)

This articulation is an enarthrodial, or ball-and-socket joint, formed by the reception of the head of the femur into the cup-shaped cavity of the acetabulum. The articulating surfaces are covered with cartilage, that on the head of the femur being thicker at the centre than at the circumference, and covering the entire surface with the exception of a depression just below its centre at the ligamentum teres; that covering the acetabulum is much thinner at the centre than at the circumference, being deficient in the situation of the circular depression at the bottom of the cavity. The ligaments of the joint are the

Capsular. Teres.  
Ilio-femoral. Cotyloid.  

Transverse.

The Capsular Ligament is a strong, dense, ligamentous capsule, embracing the margin of the acetabulum above, and surrounding the neck of the femur below. Its upper circumference is attached to the acetabulum two or three lines external to the cotyloid ligament; but opposite the notch where the margin of this cavity is deficient, it is connected with the transverse ligament, and by a few fibres to the edge of the obturator foramen. Its lower circumference surrounds the neck of the femur, being attached, in front, to the spiral or anterior intertrochanteric line; above, to the base of the neck; behind, to the middle of the neck of the bone, about half an inch above the posterior intertrochanteric line. It is much thicker at the upper and fore part of the joint where the
The greatest amount of resistance is required, than below, where it is thin, loose, and longer than in any other part. Its external surface (Fig. 220, p. 300) is rough, covered by numerous muscles, and separated in front from the Psoas and Iliacus by a synovial bursa, which not unfrequently communicates by a circular aperture with the cavity of the joint. It differs from the capsular ligament of the shoulder, in being much less loose and lax, and in not being perforated for the passage of a tendon.

The Ilio-femoral Ligament (Fig. 220) is an accessory band of fibres, extending obliquely across the front of the joint; it is intimately connected with the capsular ligament, and serves to strengthen it in this situation. It is attached, above, to the anterior inferior spine of the ilium; below, to the anterior intertrochanteric line. Its lower part is sometimes bifurcated, an arrangement which Bigelow seems to regard as the usual one, so that he describes it under the name of "the Y-ligament."\(^1\)

The Ligamentum Teres is a triangular band of fibres, implanted, by its apex, into the depression a little behind and below the centre of the head of the femur, and by its broad base, which consists of two bundles of fibres, into the margins of the notch at the bottom of the acetabulum, becoming blended with the transverse ligament. It is formed of a bundle of fibres, the thickness and strength of which are very variable, surrounded by a tubular sheath of synovial membrane. Sometimes, only the synovial fold exists, or the ligament may be altogether absent. The use of the round ligament is to check rotation outwards, as well as adduction in the flexed position (Figs. 232, 283): it thus assists in preventing dislocation of the head of the femur forwards and outwards, an

---

\(^1\) Bigelow on the Hip-joint.
accident likely to occur from the necessary mechanism of the joint, if not provided against by this ligament and the thick anterior part of the capsule.¹

Fig. 232.—The Hip-Joint laid open from the Pelvis, to show the Ligamentum Teres put on the stretch by rotation of the Femur outwards.

The Cotyloid Ligament is a fibro-cartilaginous rim attached to the margin of the acetabulum, the cavity of which it deepens: at the same time it protects the edges of the bone, and fills up the inequalities on its surface. It is prismatic in form, its base being attached to the margin of the acetabulum, and its opposite

Fig. 233.—The same view of the Hip as in the former figure, to show the Ligamentum Teres put on the stretch by adduction in the flexed position.

edge being free and sharp; whilst its two surfaces are invested by synovial membrane, the external one being in contact with the capsular ligament, the internal one being inclined inwards so as to narrow the acetabulum and embrace the cartilaginous surface of the head of the femur. It is much thicker above and behind than below and in front, and consists of close compact fibres which

¹ See an interesting paper "On the Use of the Round Ligament of the Hip-Joint," by Dr. J. Struthers. Edinburgh Medical Journal. 1858. This ligament is best studied with the assistance of a preparation in which the floor of the acetabulum has been removed with a trephine, and the ligament exposed by cleaning away the fat. Mr. Savory, without denying the other uses attributed to this ligament, says that it is always made tense in the upright position, and is still further tightened in standing on one leg; and therefore he maintains that its main function is to support the weight of the body, and distribute its pressure equally over the whole surface of the acetabulum and head of the femur. Lancet, May 23, 1874.
arise from different points of the circumference of the acetabulum, and interlace with each other at very acute angles.

The Transverse Ligament is a strong flattened band of fibres, which crosses the notch at the lower part of the acetabulum, and converts it into a foramen. It is continuous at each side with the cotyloid ligament. An interval is left beneath the ligament for the passage of nutrient vessels to the joint.

The Synovial Membrane is very extensive. Commencing at the margin of the cartilaginous surface of the head of the femur, it covers all that portion of the neck which is contained within the joint; from the head it is reflected on the internal surface of the capsular ligament, covers both surfaces of the cotyloid ligament, and the mass of fat contained in the fossa at the bottom of the acetabulum, and is prolonged in the form of a tabular sheath around the ligamentum teres, as far as the head of the femur.

The muscles in relation with the joint are, in front, the Psoas and Iliacus, separated from the capsular ligament by a synovial bursa; above, the straight head of the Rectus and Gluteus minimus, the latter being closely adherent to the capsule; internally, the Obturator externus and Pectineus; behind the Pyriformis Gemellus superior, Obturator internus, Gemellus inferior, Obturator externus, and Quadratus femoris.

The arteries supplying the joint are derived from the obturator, sciatic, internal circumflex, and gluteal.

The Nerves are articular branches from the sacral plexus, great sciatic, obturator, and accessory obturator nerves.

Actions. The movements of the hip, like all enarthrodial joints, are very extensive; they are, flexion, extension, adduction, abduction, circumduction, and rotation.

The hip-joint presents a very striking contrast to the other great enarthrodial joint—the shoulder—in the much more complete mechanical arrangements for its security and for the limitation of its motions. In the shoulder, as we have seen, the head of the humerus is not adapted at all in shape to the glenoid cavity, and is hardly restrained in any of its ordinary movements by the capsular ligament. In the hip-joint, on the contrary, the head of the femur is closely fitted to the acetabulum for a distance extending over nearly half a sphere, and at the margin of the bony cup it is still more closely embraced by the ligamentous ring of the cotyloid ligament, so that the head of the femur is held in its place by that ligament even when the fibres of the capsule have been quite divided (Humphry). The anterior portion of the capsule described as the ilio-femoral or accessory ligament, is the strongest of all the ligaments in the body, and is put on the stretch by any attempt to extend the femur beyond a straight line with the trunk.

That is to say, this ligament is the chief agent in maintaining the erect position without muscular fatigue, the action of the extensor muscles of the buttock being balanced by the tension of the ilio-femoral and capsular ligaments. The security of the joint is also provided for by the two bones being directly united through the ligamentum teres. Flexion of the hip-joint is arrested by the soft parts of the thigh and abdomen being brought into contact; extension by the tension of the ilio-femoral ligament and front of the capsule; adduction by the upper part of the accessory ligament and of the capsule, and in the flexed position of the limb by the ligamentum teres; abduction by the lower portion of the ilio-femoral ligament and of the capsule; rotation outwards by the front part of the capsule, and the ligamentum teres, and rotation inwards by the back part of the capsule.

II. KNEE-JOINT.

The Knee is a ginglymus, or hinge joint; the bones entering into its formation are, the condyles of the femur above, the head of the tibia below, and the patella

1 The hip-joint cannot be completely flexed, in most persons, without at the same time flexing the knee; on account of the shortness of the ham-string muscles. Cleland, Journ. of Anat. and Phys. No. I. Old Series, p. 87.
pass upwards and forwards, and are inserted into the outer side of the inner tuberosity of the tibia, one in front, the other behind the posterior crucial ligament; the third fasciculus is inserted into the back part of the anterior crucial ligament.

The Transverse Ligament is a band of fibres, which passes transversely from the anterior convex margin of the external semilunar cartilage to the anterior extremity of the internal cartilage; its thickness varies considerably in different subjects.

The Coronary Ligaments consist of numerous short fibrous bands, which connect the convex border of the semilunar cartilages with the circumference of the head of the tibia, and with the other ligaments surrounding the joint.

The Synovial Membrane of the knee-joint is the largest and most extensive in the body. Commencing at the upper border of the patella, it forms a large cul-de-sac beneath the Extensor tendon of the thigh: this is sometimes replaced by a synovial bursa interposed between the tendon and the front of the femur, which in some subjects communicates with the synovial membrane of the knee-joint by an orifice of variable size. On each side of the patella, the synovial membrane extends beneath the aponeurosis of the Vasti muscles, and more especially beneath that of the Vastus internus; and, below the patella, it is separated from the anterior ligament by a considerable quantity of adipose tissue. In this situation it sends off a triangular prolongation, containing a few ligamentous fibres, which extends from the anterior part of the joint below the patella, to the front of the intercondyloid notch. This fold has been termed the ligamentum mucosum. The ligamenta alaria consist of two fringe-like folds, which extend from the sides of the ligamentum mucosum, upwards and outwards, to the sides of the patella. The synovial membrane invests the semilunar fibro-cartilages, and on the back part of the external one forms a cul-de-sac between the groove on its surface, and the tendon of the Popliteus; it is continued to the articular surface of the tibia; surrounds the crucial ligaments, and the inner surface of the ligaments which enclose the joint; lastly, it approaches the condyles of the femur, and from them is continued on to the lower part of the front of the shaft. The pouch of synovial membrane between the Extensor tendon and front of the femur is supported, during the movements of the knee, by a small muscle, the Subseruræus, which is inserted into it.

The Arteries supplying the joint are derived from the anastomotic branch of the femoral, articular branches of the popliteal, and recurrent branch of the anterior tibial.

The Nerves are derived from the obturator, anterior crural, and external and internal popliteal.

Actions. The knee-joint allows of movement of flexion and extension, and of slight rotation inwards and outwards. The complicated mechanism of this joint renders it necessary to study each of these movements separately, pointing out incidentally the functions of each of the principal components of the joint. The tibia executes a rotatory movement during flexion around an imaginary axis drawn transversely through its upper end. This causes a change in the apposition of the tibia and femur. Thus, in extreme extension, it is the anterior portion of the tibia which is in contact with the femur; in the semiflexed position, its middle; in complete flexion, its posterior edge. Also, during flexion the articular surface of the tibia, covered by the interarticular cartilages, glides backwards on the femur. The patella is attached by the inextensible ligamentum patellæ to the tubercle of the tibia, and as the tibia glides backwards, the patella falls more and more into the intercondyloid notch of the femur. The ligamentum patellæ is put on the stretch during flexion, as is also the posterior crucial ligament in extreme flexion. The other ligaments are all relaxed by flexion of the joint, though the relaxation of the anterior crucial ligament is very trifling. In

1 See Plate XLVII. in Humphry, on The Skeleton.
ATTACHMENTS.

... bones upon the stretch, and while some rotation of the joint is permitted by the contact of the leg with the becomes relaxed, and, in extreme lateral movement to the patella, of the femur. The other ligaments that have been brought into a straight line except the posterior cruciate ligament, which is susceptible are permitted in the varus (inversion of both cruciate ligaments, as well as varus or pronation of the leg) is checked by the agent in effecting this movement varus (or supination) is checked by the mainst by the Biceps. The main as a direct bond of union between the upper bone from being carried too far above the lateral ligaments in resisting any particular cartilages are intended, as it is the shape of the femur to a certain would otherwise be left in the varying jars which would be so frequently on the feet. The patella is a great cavity indented in front, and it distributes surface during kneeling the pressure which under the condyles; it also affords a muscle to act upon the tibia, and Mr. varied in the various positions of the exposes velocity at the expense of force contrary, at the close of extension the shock to the ligaments; whilst be and powerfully forwards, and thus main...

fatty processes contained in them up interspaces and obviate con-...membrane will be found described...in the Tibia and Fibula.

as and Fibula are effected by ligaments which as the sides of the bones. They may, con-...superior Tibio-fibular articulation. 3. The Inferior Tibio-fibular

SINTERULAR ARTICULATION.

... The contiguous surfaces of the bones with cartilage, and connected together by

or Tibio-fibular.

or Tibio-fibular.

286) consists of two or three broad and...
flat bands, which pass obliquely upwards and inwards from the head of the fibula to the outer tuberosity of the tibia.

The Posterior Superior Ligament is a single thick and broad band, which passes from the back part of the head of the fibula to the back part of the outer tuberosity of the tibia. It is covered by the tendon of the Popliteus muscle.

A Synovial membrane lines this articulation, which at its upper and back part is occasionally continuous with that of the knee-joint.

2. MIDDLE Tibio-fibular Articulation.

An interosseous membrane extends between the contiguous margins of the tibia and fibula, and separates the muscles on the front from those on the back of the leg. It consists of a thin aponeurotic lamina composed of oblique fibres, which pass between the interosseous ridges on the two bones. It is broader above than below, and presents at its upper part a large oval aperture for the anterior tibial artery forwards to the anterior aspect of the leg; and at its lower part an opening for the passage of the anterior peroneal vessels. It is continuous below with the inferior interosseous ligament; and is perforated in numerous parts for the passage of small vessels. It is in relation in front with the Tibialis anticus, Extensor longus digitorum, Extensor proprius pollicis, Peroneus tertius, and the anterior tibial vessels and nerve; behind, with the Tibialis posticus and Flexor longus pollicis.

3. Inferior Tibio-fibular Articulation.

This articulation is formed by the rough convex surface of the inner side of the lower end of the fibula, connected with a similar rough surface on the outer side of the tibia. Below, to the extent of about two lines, these surfaces are smooth and covered with cartilage, which is continuous with that of the ankle-joint. The ligaments of this joint are—

Inferior Interosseous. Posterior Inferior Tibio-fibular.
Anterior Inferior Tibio-fibular. Transverse.

The Inferior Interosseous Ligament consists of numerous short, strong fibrous bands, which pass between the contiguous rough surfaces of the tibia and fibula, and constitute the chief bond of union between the bones. This ligament is continuous, above, with the interosseous membrane.

The Anterior Inferior Ligament (Fig. 239) is a flat, triangular band of fibres, broader below than above, which extends obliquely downwards and outwards between the adjacent margins of the tibia and fibula on the front aspect of the articulation. It is in relation, in front, with the Peroneus tertius, the aponeurosis of the leg, and the integument; behind, with the inferior interosseous ligament; and lies in contact with the cartilage covering the astragalus.

The Posterior Inferior Ligament, smaller than the preceding, is disposed in a similar manner on the posterior surface of the articulation.

The Transverse Ligament is a long narrow band, continuous with the preceding, passing transversely across the back of the joint, from the external malleolus to the tibia, a short distance from its malleolar process. This ligament projects below the margin of the bones, and forms part of the articulating surface for the astragalus.

The Synovial Membrane lining the articular surface is derived from that of the ankle-joint.

Actions. The movement permitted in these articulations is limited to a very slight gliding of the articular surfaces one upon another.

IV. ANKLE-JOINT.

The Ankle is a ginglymus or hinge joint. The bones entering into its formation are the lower extremity of the tibia and its malleolus, and the external
in front. The articular surfaces are covered with cartilage, and connected together by ligaments, some of which are placed on the exterior of the joint, whilst others occupy its interior.

**Exterior Ligaments.**
- Anterior, or Ligamentum Patellae.
- Posterior, or Ligamentum Posticum Winslowii.
- Internal Lateral.
- Two External Lateral.
- Capsular.

**Interior Ligaments.**
- Anterior, or External Crucial.
- Posterior, or Internal Crucial.
- Two Semilunar Fibro-cartilages.
- Transverse.
- Coronary.
- Ligamentum mucosum.
- Ligamenta alaria.

The *Anterior Ligament, or Ligamentum Patellae* (Fig. 234), is that portion of the common tendon of the extensor muscles of the thigh which is continued from the patella to the tubercle of the tibia, supplying the place of an anterior liga-
ment. It is a strong, flat, ligamentous band, about three inches in length, attached, above, to the apex of the patella and the rough depression on its poste-
rior surface; below to the lower part of the tuberosity of the tibia; its superficial fibres being continuous across the front of the patella with those of the tendon of the Quadriceps extensor. Two synovial bursæ are connected with this liga-
ment and the patella; one is interposed between the patella and the skin covering its anterior surface; the other, of small size, between the ligamentum patellæ and the upper part of the tuberosity of the tibia. The posterior surface of this ligament is separated above from the knee-joint by a large mass of adipose tissue; its lateral margins are continuous with the aponeuroses derived from the Vastu muscles.
The Posterior Ligament, Ligamentum Posticum Winslowii (Fig. 235), is a broad, flat, fibrous band, which covers over the whole of the back part of the joint. It consists of a central and two lateral portions, the latter formed chiefly of vertical fibres, which arise above from the condyles of the femur, and are connected below with the back part of the head of the tibia, being closely united with the tendons of the Gastrocnemius, Plantaris, and Popliteus muscles; the central portion is formed of fasciculi, obliquely directed and separated from one another by apertures for the passage of vessels. The strongest of these fasciculi is derived from the tendon of the Semi-membranosus, and passes from the back part of the inner tuberosity of the tibia, obliquely upwards and outwards to the back part of the outer condyle of the femur. The posterior ligament forms part of the floor of the popliteal space, and the popliteal artery rests upon it.

The Internal Lateral Ligament is a broad, flat, membranous band, thicker behind than in front, and situated nearer to the back than the front of the joint. It is attached, above, to the inner tuberosity of the femur; below, to the inner tuberosity and inner surface of the shaft of the tibia, to the extent of about two inches. It is crossed, at its lower part, by the aponeurosis of the Sartorius, and the tendons of the Gracilis and Semitendinosus muscles, a synovial bursa being interposed. Its deep surface covers the anterior portion of the tendon of the Semi-membranosus, the synovial membrane of the joint, and the inferior internal articular artery and nerve; it is intimately adherent to the internal semilunar fibrocartilage.

The Long External Lateral Ligament is a strong, rounded, fibrous cord, situated nearer to the back than the front of the joint. It is attached, above, to the outer tuberosity of the femur; below, to the outer part of the head of the fibula. Its outer surface is covered by the tendon of the Biceps, which divides at its insertion into two parts, separated by the ligament. The ligament has, passing beneath it, the tendon of the Popliteus muscle, and the inferior external articular vessels and nerve.

The Short External Lateral Ligament is an accessory bundle of fibres, placed behind and parallel with the preceding; attached, above, to the lower part of the outer tuberosity of the femur; below, to the summit of the styloid process of the fibula. This ligament is intimately connected with the capsular ligament, and has, passing beneath it, the tendon of the Popliteus muscle.

The Capsular Ligament consists of an exceedingly thin, but strong, fibrous membrane, which fills in the intervals left by the preceding ligaments. It is attached to the femur immediately above its articular surface; below, to the upper border and sides of the patella and the margins of the head of the tibia and interarticular cartilages, and is continuous behind with the posterior ligament. This membrane is strengthened by fibrous expansions, derived from the fascia lata, from the Vasti and Crureus muscles, and from the Biceps, Sartorius, and tendon of the Semimembranosus.

The Crucial are two interosseous ligaments of considerable strength, situated in the interior of the joint, nearer its posterior than its anterior part. They are called crucial, because they cross each other, somewhat like the lines of the letter X; and have received the names anterior and posterior, from the position of their attachment to the tibia.

The Anterior or External Crucial Ligament (Fig. 236), smaller than the posterior, is attached to the inner side of the depression in front of the spine of the tibia, being blended with the anterior extremity of the external semilunar fibro-cartilage, and passing obliquely upwards, backwards, and outwards, is inserted into the inner and back part of the outer condyle of the femur.

The Posterior or Internal Crucial Ligament is larger in size, but less oblique in its direction than the anterior. It is attached to the back part of the depression behind the spine of the tibia, to the popliteal notch, and to the posterior extremity of the external semilunar fibro-cartilage; and passes upwards, forwards, and inwards, to be inserted into the outer and fore-part of the inner
condyle of the femur. As it crosses the anterior crucial ligament, a fasciculus is given off from it, which blends with the posterior part of that ligament. It is in relation, in front, with the anterior crucial ligament; behind, with the liga-

Fig. 236.—Right Knee-joint. Showing Internal Ligaments.

mentum posticum Winslowii.

The Semilunar Fibro-cartilages (Fig. 237) are two crescentic lamellae, which are attached to the margins of the head of the tibia, and serve to deepen its surface for articulation with the condyles of the femur. The circumference of each cartilage is thick and convex; the inner free border, thin and concave. Their upper surfaces are concave, and in relation with the condyles of the femur; their lower surfaces are flat, and rest upon the head of the tibia. Each cartilage covers nearly the outer two-thirds of the corresponding articular surface of the tibia, leaving the inner third uncovered; both surfaces are smooth, and invested by synovial mem-

brane.

The Internal Semilunar Fibro-cartilage is nearly semicircular in form, a little elongated from before backwards, and broader behind than in front; its convex border is united to the internal lateral ligament, and to the head of the tibia, by means of the coronary ligaments; its anterior extremity, thin and pointed, is firmly implanted into a depression in front of the inner articular surface of the tibia; its posterior ex-

Fig. 237.—Head of Tibia, with Semilunar Cartilages, etc. Seen from above. Right Side.

tremity into the depression behind the spine, between the attachment of the external cartilage and posterior crucial ligament.

The External Semilunar Fibro-cartilage forms nearly an entire circle, covering a larger portion of the articular surface than the internal one. It is grooved on its outer side, for the tendon of the Popliteus muscle. Its circumference is held in connection with the head of the tibia, by means of the coronary ligaments; and its two extremities are firmly implanted in the depressions in front and behind the spine of the tibia. These extremities, at their insertion, are interposed between the at-

tachments of the internal cartilage. The external semilunar fibro-cartilage gives off from its anterior border a fasciculus, which forms the transverse ligament. By its anterior extremity, it is continuous with the anterior crucial ligament. Its posterior extremity divides into three slips; two of these
KNEE-JOINT.

pass upwards and forwards, and are inserted into the outer side of the inner tuberosity of the tibia, one in front, the other behind the posterior cruciate ligament; the third fasciculus is inserted into the back part of the anterior cruciate ligament.

The Transverse Ligament is a band of fibres, which passes transversely from the anterior convex margin of the external semilunar cartilage to the anterior extremity of the internal cartilage; its thickness varies considerably in different subjects.

The Coronary Ligaments consist of numerous short fibrous bands, which connect the convex border of the semilunar cartilages with the circumference of the head of the tibia, and with the other ligaments surrounding the joint.

The Synovial Membrane of the knee-joint is the largest and most extensive in the body. Commencing at the upper border of the patella, it forms a large cul-de-sac beneath the Extensor tendon of the thigh: this is sometimes replaced by a synovial bursa interposed between the tendon and the front of the femur, which in some subjects communicates with the synovial membrane of the knee-joint by an orifice of variable size. On each side of the patella, the synovial membrane extends beneath the aponeurosis of the Vasti muscles, and more especially beneath that of the Vastus internus; and, below the patella, it is separated from the anterior ligament by a considerable quantity of adipose tissue. In this situation it sends off a triangular prolongation, containing a few ligamentous fibres, which extends from the anterior part of the joint below the patella, to the front of the intercondyloid notch. This fold has been termed the ligamentum mucosum. The ligamenta alaria consist of two fringe-like folds, which extend from the sides of the ligamentum mucosum, upwards and outwards, to the sides of the patella. The synovial membrane invests the semilunar fibro-cartilages, and on the back part of the external one forms a cul-de-sac between the groove on its surface, and the tendon of the Popliteus; it is continued to the articular surface of the tibia; surrounds the cruciate ligaments, and the inner surface of the ligaments which enclose the joint; lastly, it approaches the condyles of the femur, and from them is continued on to the lower part of the front of the shaft. The pouch of synovial membrane between the Extensor tendon and front of the femur is supported, during the movements of the knee, by a small muscle, the Suberuræus, which is inserted into it.

The Arteries supplying the joint are derived from the anastomotic branch of the femoral, articular branches of the popliteal, and recurrent branch of the anterior tibial.

The Nerves are derived from the obturator, anterior crural, and external and internal popliteal.

Actions. The knee-joint allows of movement of flexion and extension, and of slight rotation inwards and outwards. The complicated mechanism of this joint renders it necessary to study each of these movements separately, pointing out incidentally the functions of each of the principal components of the joint. The tibia executes a rotatory movement during flexion around an imaginary axis drawn transversely through its upper end. This causes a change in the apposition of the tibia and femur. Thus, in extreme extension, it is the anterior portion of the tibia which is in contact with the femur; in the semiflexed position, its middle; in complete flexion, its posterior edge. Also, during flexion the articular surface of the tibia, covered by the interarticular cartilages, glides backwards on the femur. The patella is attached by the inextensible ligamentum patellae to the tubercle of the tibia, and as the tibia glides backwards, the patella falls more and more into the intercondylloid notch of the femur. The ligamentum patellæ is put on the stretch during flexion, as is also the posterior cruciate ligament in extreme flexion. The other ligaments are all relaxed by flexion of the joint, though the relaxation of the anterior cruciate ligament is very trifling. In

1 See Plate XLVII. in HUMPHRY, on The Skeleton.
ARTICULATIONS.

Partial flexion, before the ligamentum patellæ comes upon the stretch, and while both crucial ligaments are somewhat relaxed, some rotation of the joint is permitted. Flexion is only checked during life by the contact of the leg with the thigh. In extension, the ligamentum patellæ becomes relaxed, and, in extreme extension, completely so, so as to allow free lateral movement to the patella, which then rests on the front of the condyles of the femur. The other ligaments are all on the stretch. When the limb has been brought into a straight line extension is checked, mainly by the tension of the posterior crucial ligament. The movements of rotation of which the knee is susceptible are permitted in the semiflexed condition by the partial relaxation of both crucial ligaments, as well as the lateral ligaments. Rotation inwards (or pronation of the leg) is checked by the anterior cruciate ligament. The chief agent in effecting this movement is the Popliteus muscle. Rotation outwards (or supination) is checked by the posterior cruciate ligament. It is effected mainly by the Biceps. The main function of the crucial ligaments is to act as a direct bond of union between the tibia and femur, preventing the former bone from being carried too far backwards or forwards. They also assist the lateral ligaments in resisting any lateral bending of the joint. The interarticular cartilages are intended, as it seems, to adapt the surface of the tibia to the shape of the femur to a certain extent, so as to fill up the intervals which would otherwise be left in the varying positions of the joint, and to interrupt the jabs which would be so frequently transmitted up the limb in jumping or falls on the feet. The patella is a great defence to the knee-joint from any injury inflicted in front, and it distributes upon a large and tolerably even surface during kneeling the pressure which would otherwise fall upon the prominent ridges of the condyles; it also affords leverage to the Quadriceps extensor muscle to act upon the tibia, and Mr. Ward has pointed out how this leverage varies in the various positions of the joint, so that the action of the muscle produces velocity at the expense of force in the commencement of extension, and on the contrary, at the close of extension tends to diminish the velocity, and therefore the shock to the ligaments; whilst in the standing position it draws the tibia powerfully forwards, and thus maintains it in its place.

The folds of synovial membrane and the fatty processes contained in them act, as it seems, mainly as padding to fill up interspaces and obviate concussions.

The bursa in connection with the synovial membrane will be found described with the regional anatomy of the popliteal space.

III. ARTICULATIONS BETWEEN THE TIBIA AND FIBULA.

The articulations between the tibia and fibula are effected by ligaments which connect both extremities, as well as the shafts of the bones. They may, consequently, be subdivided into three sets:—1. The Superior Tibio-fibular articulation. 2. The Middle Tibio-fibular articulation. 3. The Inferior Tibio-fibular articulation.

1. SUPERIOR TIBIO-FIBULAR ARTICULATION.

This articulation is an arthrodial joint. The contiguous surfaces of the bones present two flat oval facets covered with cartilage, and connected together by the following ligaments:—

Anterior Superior Tibio-fibular.
Posterior Superior Tibio-fibular.

The Anterior Superior Ligament (Fig. 236) consists of two or three broad and

---

1 "Human Osteology," p. 405.
flat bands, which pass obliquely upwards and inwards from the head of the fibula to the outer tuberosity of the tibia.

The *Posterior Superior Ligament* is a single thick and broad band, which passes from the back part of the head of the fibula to the back part of the outer tuberosity of the tibia. It is covered by the tendon of the Popliteus muscle.

A *Synovial membrane* lines this articulation, which at its upper and back part is occasionally continuous with that of the knee-joint.

2. **Middle Tibio-fibular Articulation.**

An interosseous membrane extends between the contiguous margins of the tibia and fibula, and separates the muscles on the front from those on the back of the leg. It consists of a thin aponeurotic lamina composed of oblique fibres, which pass between the interosseous ridges on the two bones. It is broader above than below, and presents at its upper part a large oval aperture for the anterior tibial artery forwards to the anterior aspect of the leg; and at its lower part an opening for the passage of the anterior peroneal vessels. It is continuous below with the inferior interosseous ligament; and is perforated in numerous parts for the passage of small vessels. It is in relation in front with the Tibialis anticus, Extensor longus digitorum, Extensor proprius pollicis, Peroneus tertius, and the anterior tibial vessels and nerve; behind, with the Tibialis posticus and Flexor longus pollicis.

3. **Inferior Tibio-fibular Articulation.**

This articulation is formed by the rough convex surface of the inner side of the lower end of the fibula, connected with a similar rough surface on the outer side of the tibia. Below, to the extent of about two lines, these surfaces are smooth and covered with cartilage, which is continuous with that of the ankle-joint. The ligaments of this joint are—

- Inferior Interosseous.
- Posterior Inferior Tibio-fibular.

*Anterior Inferior Tibio-fibular. Transverse.*

The *Inferior Interosseous Ligament* consists of numerous short, strong fibrous bands, which pass between the contiguous rough surfaces of the tibia and fibula, and constitute the chief bond of union between the bones. This ligament is continuous, above, with the interosseous membrane.

The *Anterior Inferior Ligament* (Fig. 239) is a flat, triangular band of fibres, broader below than above, which extends obliquely downwards and outwards between the adjacent margins of the tibia and fibula on the front aspect of the articulation. It is in relation, in front, with the Peroneus tertius, the aponeurosis of the leg, and the integument; behind, with the inferior interosseous ligament; and lies in contact with the cartilage covering the astragalus.

The *Posterior Inferior Ligament*, smaller than the preceding, is disposed in a similar manner on the posterior surface of the articulation.

The *Transverse Ligament* is a long narrow band, continuous with the preceding, passing transversely across the back of the joint, from the external malleolus to the tibia, a short distance from its malleolar process. This ligament projects below the margin of the bones, and forms part of the articulating surface for the astragalus.

The *Synovial Membrane* lining the articular surface is derived from that of the ankle-joint.

**Actions.** The movement permitted in these articulations is limited to a very slight gliding of the articular surfaces one upon another.

IV. **Ankle-joint.**

The Ankle is a ginglymus or hinge joint. The bones entering into its formation are the lower extremity of the tibia and its malleolus, and the external
malleolus of the fibula. These bones are united above, and forms an arch, to receive the upper convex surface of the astragalus and its two lateral facets. The bony surfaces are covered with cartilage, and connected together by the following ligaments:—

Anterior. Internal Lateral.
External Lateral.

The Anterior or Tibio-tarsal Ligament (Fig. 238) is a broad, thin, membranous layer, attached, above, to the margin of the articular surface of the tibia; below,

Fig. 238.—Ankle-joint: Tarsal and Tarso-metatarsal Articulation. Internal View. Right Side.

to the margin of the astragalus, in front of its articular surface. It is in relation, in front, with the Extensor tendons of the toes, with the tendons of the Tibialis anticus and Peroneus tertius, and the anterior tibial vessels and nerve; behind, it lies in contact with the synovial membrane.

The Internal Lateral or Deltoid Ligament consists of two layers, superficial and deep. The superficial layer is a strong, flat, triangular band, attached, above, to the apex and anterior and posterior borders of the inner malleolus. The most anterior fibres pass forwards to be inserted into the scaphoid; the middle descend almost perpendicularly to be inserted into the os calcis; and the posterior fibres pass backwards and outwards to be attached to the inner side of the astragalus. The deeper layer consists of a short, thick, and strong fasciculus, which passes from the apex of the malleolus to the inner surface of the astragalus, below the articular surface. This ligament is covered by the tendons of the Tibialis posticus and Flexor longus digitorum muscles.

The External Lateral Ligament (Fig. 239) consists of three fasciculi, taking different directions, and separated by distinct intervals; for which reason it is described by some anatomists as three distinct ligaments.\(^1\) This would seem the preferable description, were it not that the old nomenclature has passed into general use.

The anterior fasciculus, the shortest of the three, passes from the anterior

\(^1\) Humphry, on The Skeleton, p. 559.
The *posterior fasciculus*, the most deeply seated, passes from the depression at the inner and back part of the external malleolus to the astragalus, behind its external malleolar facet. Its fibres are almost horizontal in direction.

The *middle fasciculus*, the longest of the three, is a narrow rounded cord, passing from the apex of the external malleolus downwards and slightly backwards to the middle of the outer side of the os calcis. It is covered by the tendons of the Peroneus longus and brevis.

There is no posterior ligament, its place being supplied by the transverse ligament of the inferior tibio-fibular articulation.

The *Synovial Membrane* invests the inner surface of the ligaments, and sends a duplicature upwards between the lower extremities of the tibia and fibula for a short distance.

**Relations.** The tendons, vessels, and nerves in connection with the joint are, in front, from within outwards, the Tibialis anticus, Extensor proprius pollicis, anterior tibial vessels, anterior tibial nerve, Extensor communis digitorum, and Peroneus tertius; behind, from within outwards, Tibialis posticus, Flexor longus digitorum, posterior tibial vessels, posterior tibial nerve, Flexor longus pollicis; and, in the groove behind the external malleolus, the tendons of the Peroneus longus and brevis.

The *Arteries* supplying the joint are derived from the malleolar branches of the anterior tibial and peroneal.

The *Nerves* are derived from the anterior tibial.

**Actions.** The movements of the joint are limited to flexion and extension. There is no lateral motion; the astragalus being embraced by the two malleoli, and held securely in its place in all positions of the foot. Of these the external malleolus is longer than the internal, and is situated further backwards, an arrangement which Prof. Humphry connects with the direction in which the weight of the body appears to be transmitted to each side of the foot when planted.
on and raised off the ground. The lower tibio-fibular joint and the elasticity of
the fibula permit of some separation of the two bones in flexion and extension
of the limb, corresponding to the varying size of the surface of the astragalus;
the latter is considerably wider in front than behind (Fig. 206, p. 268) in order to
resist the tendency to dislocation of the foot backwards in alighting on the toes.
Of the ligaments, the internal, or deltoid, is of very great power—so much so
that it usually resists a force which fractures the process of bone to which it is
attached. Its middle portion, together with the middle fasciculus of the external
lateral ligament, binds the bones of the leg firmly to the foot and resists displace-
ment in every direction. Its anterior and posterior fibres limit extension and flexion of the foot respectively, and the anterior fibres also limit abduction.
The posterior portion of the external lateral ligament assists the middle
portion in resisting the displacement of the foot backwards, and deepens the
cavity for the reception of the astragalus. The anterior fasciculus is a security
against the displacement of the foot forwards, and limits extension of the joint.
The movements of abduction and adduction of the foot, together with the minute
changes in form by which it is applied to the ground or takes hold of an object
in climbing, etc., are effected in the tarsal joints; the one which enjoys the
greatest amount of motion being that between the astragalus and os calcis behind,
and the scaphoid and cuboid in front. This is often called the transverse tarsal
joint, and it, with the subordinate joints of the tarsus, can replace the ankle-joint
in a great measure when the latter has become ankylosed.

V. ARTICULATIONS OF THE TARSUS.

These articulations may be subdivided into three sets:—1. The articulations
of the first row of tarsal bones. 2. The articulations of the second row of tarsal
bones. 3. The articulations of the two rows with each other.

1. ARTICULATIONS OF THE FIRST ROW OF TARSAL BONES.

The articulations between the astragalus and os calcis are two in number—
ante rior and posterior. They are arti throidal joints. The bones are connected
together by three ligaments:—


  Interosseous.

The *External Calcaneo-astragaloid Ligament* (Fig. 239) is a short strong fasci-
culus, passing from the outer edge of the astragalus, immediately beneath its
external malleolar facet, to the outer edge of the os calcis. It is placed in front
of the middle fasciculus of the external lateral ligament of the ankle-joint, with
the fibres of which it is parallel.

The *Posterior Calcaneo-astragaloid Ligament* (Fig. 238) connects the posterior
extremity of the astragalus with the upper contiguous surface of the os calcis;
it is a short narrow band, the fibres of which are directed obliquely backwards
and inwards.

The *interosseous Ligament* forms the chief bond of union between the bones.
It consists of numerous vertical and oblique fibres, attached by one extremity to
the groove between the articulating surface of the astragalus; by the other, to
a corresponding depression on the upper surface of the os calcis. It is very thick
and strong, being at least an inch in breadth from side to side, and serves to
unite the os calcis and astragalus solidly together.

1 The fact should be remembered in operative surgery. Thus the ankle-joint is more easily
opened at the inside than the outside, in consequence of the relative shortness of the internal
malleolus. Again, in cutting the flaps for Syme's amputation, if the knife is carried as far upwards
and forwards as the point of the inner malleolus, the posterior flap will be unmanageably long,
and great difficulty will be found in reflecting it over the os calcis.
The Synovial Membranes (Fig. 241) are two in number: one for the posterior calcaneo-astragaloid articulation; a second for the anterior calcaneo-astragaloid joint. The latter synovial membrane is continued forwards between the contiguous surfaces of the astragalus and scaphoid bones.


The articulations between the scaphoid, cuboid, and three cuneiform are effected by the following ligaments:—

Dorsal. Plantar. Interosseous.

The Dorsal Ligaments are small bands of parallel fibres, which pass from each bone to the neighboring bones with which it articulates.

The Plantar Ligaments have the same arrangement on the plantar surface.

The Interosseous Ligaments are four in number. They consist of strong transverse fibres, which pass between the rough non-articular surfaces of adjoining bones. There is one between the sides of the scaphoid and cuboid; a second between the internal and middle cuneiform bones; a third between the middle and external cuneiform; and a fourth between the external cuneiform and cuboid. The scaphoid and cuboid, when in contact, present each a small articulating facet, covered with cartilage, and lined either by a separate synovial membrane, or by an offset from the great tarsal synovial membrane.

3. Articulations of the Two Rows of the Tarsus with Each Other.

These may be conveniently divided into three sets: The joint between the os calcis and the cuboid. The ligaments connecting the os calcis with the scaphoid. The joint between the astragalus and the scaphoid.

The ligaments connecting the os calcis with the cuboid are four in number:—


The Superior Calcaneo-cuboid Ligament (Fig. 239) is a thin and narrow fasciculus, which passes between the contiguous surfaces of the os calcis and cuboid, on the dorsal surface of the joint.

The Internal Calcaneo-cuboid (Interosseous) Ligament (Fig. 239) is a short, but thick and strong, band of fibres, arising from the os calcis, in a deep groove which intervenes between it and the astragalus; and closely blended, at its origin, with the superior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament. It is inserted into the inner side of the cuboid bone. This ligament forms one of the chief bonds of union between the first and second row of the tarsus.

The Long Calcaneo-cuboid (Fig. 240), the more superficial of the two plantar ligaments, is the longest of all the ligaments of the tarsus; it is attached to the under surface of the os calcis, from near the tuberosities, as far forwards as the anterior tubercle; its fibres pass forwards to be attached to the ridge on the under surface of the cuboid bone, the more superficial fibres being continued onwards to the bases of the second, third, and fourth metatarsal bones. This ligament crosses the groove on the under surface of the cuboid bone, converting it into a canal for the passage of the tendon of the Peroneus longus.

The Short Calcaneo-cuboid Ligament lies nearer to the bones than the preceding, from which it is separated by a little areolar adipose tissue. It is exceedingly broad, about an inch in length, and extends from the tubercle and the depression in front of it on the fore part of the under surface of the os calcis, to the inferior surface of the cuboid bone behind the peroneal groove. A separate synovial membrane is found in the calcaneo-cuboid articulation.
The ligaments connecting the os calcis with scaphoid are two in number:

Superior Calcaneo-scaphoid.  Inferior Calcaneo-scaphoid.

The Superior Calcaneo-scaphoid (Fig. 239) arises, as already mentioned, with the internal calcaneo-cuboid in the deep groove between the astragalus and os calcis; it passes forwards from the inner side of the anterior extremity of the os calcis to the outer side of the scaphoid bone. These two ligaments resemble the letter Y, being blended together behind, but separated in front.

The Inferior Calcaneo-scaphoid (Fig. 240) is by far the larger and stronger of the two ligaments of this articulation; it is a broad and thick band of fibres, which passes forwards and inwards from the anterior and inner extremity of the os calcis to the under surface of the scaphoid bone. This ligament not only serves to connect the os calcis and scaphoid, but supports the head of the astragalus, forming part of the articular cavity in which it is received. The upper surface is lined by the synovial membrane continued from the anterior calcaneo-astragaloid articulation. Its under surface is in contact with the tendon of the Tibialis posticus muscle.¹

The articulation between the astragalus and scaphoid is an arthrodial joint; the rounded head of the astragalus being received into the concavity formed by the posterior surface of the scaphoid, the anterior articulating surface of the calcaneum, and the upper surface of the calcaneo-scaphoid ligament, which fills up the triangular interval between those bones. The only ligament of this joint is the superior astragalo-scaphoid, a broad band, which passes obliquely forwards from the neck of the astragalus to the superior surface of the scaphoid bone. It is thin and weak in texture, and covered by the Extensor tendons. The inferior calcaneo-scaphoid supplies the place of an inferior ligament.

The Synovial Membrane which lines the joint is continued forwards from the anterior calcaneo-astragaloid articulation. This articulation permits of considerable mobility; but its feebleness is such as to allow occasionally of dislocation of the astragalus.

The Synovial Membranes (Fig. 241) found in the articulations of the tarsus, are four in number: one for the posterior calcaneo-astragaloid articulation; a second for the anterior calcaneo-astragaloid and astragalo-scaphoid articulations; a third for the calcaneo-cuboid articulation; and a fourth for the articulations of the scaphoid with the three cuneiform, the three cuneiform with each other, the external cuneiform with the cuboid, and the middle and external cuneiform with the bases of the second and third metatarsal bones. The prolongation which

¹ Mr. Hancock describes an extension of this ligament upwards on the inner side of the foot which completes the socket of the joint in that direction. Lancet, 1866, vol. i. p. 618.
lines the metatarsal bones passes forwards between the external and middle cuneiform bones. A small synovial membrane is sometimes found between the contiguous surfaces of the scaphoid and cuboid bones.

Fig. 241.—Oblique Section of the Articulations of the Tarsus and Metatarsus. Showing the Six Synovial Membranes.

Actions. The movements permitted between the bones of the first row, the astragalus and os calcis, are limited to a gliding upon each other from before backwards, and from side to side. The gliding movement which takes place between the bones of the second row is very slight, the articulation between the scaphoid and cuneiform bones being more movable than those of the cuneiform with each other and with the cuboid. The movement which takes place between the two rows is more extensive, and consists in a sort of rotation, by means of which the sole of the foot may be slightly flexed, and extended, or carried inwards and outwards.

VI. Tarso-metatarsal Articulations.

These are arthrodial joints. The bones entering into their formation are four tarsal bones, viz., the internal, middle and external cuneiform, and the cuboid, which articulate with the metatarsal bones of the five toes. The metatarsal bone of the great toe articulates with the internal cuneiform; that of the second is deeply wedged in between the internal and external cuneiform, resting against the middle cuneiform, and being the most strongly articulated of all the metatarsal bones; the third metatarsal articulates with the extremity of the external cuneiform; the fourth with the cuboid and external cuneiform; and the fifth with the cuboid. The articular surfaces are covered with cartilage, lined by synovial membrane, and connected together by the following ligaments:—

Dorsal.

Interosseous.

The Dorsal Ligaments consist of strong, flat, fibrous bands, which connect the tarsal with the metatarsal bones. The first metatarsal is connected to the internal cuneiform by a single broad, thin, fibrous band; the second has three dorsal ligaments, one from each cuneiform bone; the third has one from the external cuneiform; and the fourth and fifth have one each from the cuboid.

The Plantar Ligaments consist of longitudinal and oblique fibrous bands connecting the tarsal and metatarsal bones, but disposed with less regularity than on the dorsal surface. Those for the first and second metatarsal are the most strongly marked; the second and third metatarsal receive strong fibrous bands, which pass obliquely across from the internal cuneiform; the plantar ligaments
of the fourth and fifth metatarsal consist of a few scanty fibres derived from the cuboid.

The Interosseous Ligaments are three in number: internal, middle, and external. The internal one passes from the outer extremity of the internal cuneiform to the adjacent angle of the second metatarsal. The middle one, less strong than the preceding, connects the external cuneiform with the adjacent angle of the second metatarsal. The external interosseous ligament connects the outer angle of the external cuneiform with the adjacent side of the third metatarsal.

The Synovial Membranes of these articulations are three in number: one for the metatarsal bone of the great toe, with the internal cuneiform; one for the second and third metatarsal bones, with the middle and external cuneiform; this is a part of the great tarsal synovial membrane; and one for the fourth and fifth metatarsal bones with the cuboid. The synovial membranes of the tarsus and metatarsus are thus seen to be six in number (Fig. 241).

ARTICULATIONS OF THE METATARSAL BONES WITH EACH OTHER.

The bases of the metatarsal bones, except the first, are connected together by dorsal, plantar, and interosseous ligaments. The dorsal and plantar ligaments pass from one metatarsal bone to another. The interosseous ligaments lie deeply between the rough non-articular portions of their lateral surfaces. The articular surfaces are covered with cartilage, and provided with synovial membrane, continued forwards from the tarso-metatarsal joints. The digital extremities of the metatarsal bones are united by the transverse metatarsal ligament. It connects the great toe with the rest of the metatarsal bones; in this respect it differs from the transverse ligament in the hand.

Actions. The movement permitted in the tarsal ends of the metatarsal bones is limited to a slight gliding of the articular surfaces upon one another; considerable motion, however, takes place in the digital extremities.

VII. METATARSO-PHALANGEAL ARTICULATIONS.

The heads of the metatarsal bones are connected with the concave articular surfaces of the first phalanges by the following ligaments:—

Plantar. Two Lateral.

Their arrangement is precisely similar to the corresponding parts in the hand. The expansion of the Extensor tendon supplies the place of a dorsal ligament.

Actions. The movements permitted in the metatarso-phalangeal articulations are flexion, extension, abduction, and adduction.

VIII. ARTICULATIONS OF THE PHALANGES.

The ligaments of these articulations are similar to those found in the hand; each pair of phalanges being connected by a plantar and two lateral ligaments, and their articular surfaces lined by synovial membrane. Their actions are also similar.

For further information on this subject, the student is referred to Cruveilhier’s "Anatomie Descriptive," to Dr. Humphry’s work on "The Human Skeleton, including the Joints," to Arnold’s "Tabulae Anatomicae," Fascic. 4. Part 2, Icones Articularum et Ligamentorum; and to the papers by Prof. Hermann Meyer ("Beiträge zur Mechanik des menschlichen Knochengerüstes") in Reichert u. Du Bois Reymond’s Archiv.
The Muscles and Fasciae. ¹

The muscles are connected with the bones, cartilages, ligaments, and skin, either directly or through the intervention of fibrous structures, called tendons or aponeuroses. Where a muscle is attached to bone or cartilage, the fibres terminate in blunt extremities upon the periosteum or perichondrium, and do not come into direct relation with the osseous or cartilaginous tissue. Where muscles are connected with the skin, they either lie as a flattened layer beneath it, or are connected with its areolar tissue by larger or smaller bundles of fibres, as in the muscles of the face.

The muscles vary extremely in their form. In the limbs, they are of considerable length, especially the more superficial ones, the deep ones being generally broad; they surround the bones, and form an important protection to the various joints. In the trunk, they are broad, flattened, and expanded, forming the piaeties of the cavities which they inclose; hence the reason of the terms, long, broad, short, etc., used in the description of a muscle.

There is a considerable variation in the arrangement of the fibres of certain muscles with reference to the tendons to which they are attached. In some, the fibres are arranged longitudinally, and terminate at either end in a narrow tendon. If the fibres converge, like the plumes of a pen, to one side of a tendon, which runs the entire length of a muscle, the muscle is said to be penniform, as the Peronei; if they converge to both sides of the tendon, the muscle is called bipenniform, as the Rectus femoris; if they converge from a broad surface to a narrow tendinous point, the muscle is said to be radiated, as the Temporal and Glutei muscles.

They differ no less in size; the Gastrocnemius forms the chief bulk of the back of the leg, and the fibres of the Sartorius are nearly two feet in length, whilst the Stapedius, a small muscle of the internal ear, weighs about a grain, and its fibres are not more than two lines in length.

The names applied to the various muscles have been derived: 1, from their situation, as the Tibialis, Radialis, Ulnaris, Peroneus; 2, from their direction, as the Rectus abdominis, Obliqui capitis, Transversalis; 3, from their uses, as Flexors, Extensors, Abductors, etc.; 4, from their shape, as the Deltoid, Trapezius, Rhomboideus; 5, from the number of their divisions, as the Biceps, the Triceps; 6, from their points of attachment, as the Sterno-cleido-mastoid, Sterno-hyoid, Sterno-thyroid.

In the description of a muscle, the term origin is meant to imply its more fixed or central attachment; and the term insertion the movable point to which the force of the muscle is directed; but the origin is absolutely fixed in only a very small number of muscles, such as those of the face, which are attached by one extremity to the bone, and by the other to the movable integument; in the greater number, the muscle can be made to act from either extremity.

In the dissection of the muscles, the student should pay especial attention to the exact origin, insertion, and actions, of each, and its more important relations with surrounding parts. An accurate knowledge of the points of attachment of

¹ The Muscles and Fasciae are described conjointly, in order that the Student may consider the arrangement of the latter in his dissection of the former. It is rare for the student of anatomy in this country to have the opportunity of dissecting the fasciae separately; and it is for this reason, as well as from the close connection that exists between the muscles and their investing aponeuroses, that they are considered together. Some general observations are first made on the anatomy of the muscles and fasciae, the special description being given in connection with the different regions.
the muscles is of great importance in the determination of their action. By a
knowledge of the action of the muscles, the surgeon is able to explain the causes
of displacement in various forms of fracture, and the causes which produce dis-
tortion in various deformities, and consequently, to adopt appropriate treatment
in each case. The relations, also, of some of the muscles, especially those in
immediate apposition with the larger bloodvessels, and the surface-markings
they produce, should be especially remembered, as they form useful guides in
the application of a ligature to those vessels.

Tendons are white, glistening, fibrous cords, varying in length and thickness,
sometimes round, sometimes flattened, of considerable strength, and only slightly
clastic. They consist almost entirely of white fibrous tissue, the fibrils of which
have an undulating course parallel with each other, and are firmly united
together. They are very sparingly supplied with bloodvessels, the smaller ten-
dons presenting in their interior not a trace of them. Nerves also are not
present in the smaller tendons; but the larger ones, as the tendon Achillis, receive
nerves which accompany the nutrient vessels. The tendons consist principally
of a substance which yields gelatine.

Aponeuroses are fibrous membranes, of a pearly-white color, iridescent, glist-
ing, and similar in structure to the tendons. They are destitute of nerves, and
the thicker ones only sparingly supplied with bloodvessels.

The tendons and aponeuroses are connected, on the one hand, with the mus-
cles; and, on the other hand, with the movable structures, as the bones, carti-
lages, ligaments, fibrous membranes (for instance, the sclerotic), and the synovial
membranes (subcruceus, subanconeous). Where the muscular fibres are in a
direct line with those of the tendon or aponeurosis, the two are directly continu-
ous, the muscular fibre being distinguishable from that of the tendon only by its
striation. But where the muscular fibre joins the tendon or aponeurosis at an
oblique angle, the former terminates, according to Kölliker, in rounded extremi-
ties, which are received into corresponding depressions on the surface of the
latter, the connective tissue between the fibres being continuous with that of the
tendon. The latter mode of attachment occurs in all the penniform and bipen-
niform muscles, and in those muscles the tendons of which commence in a mem-
branous form, as the Gastrocnemius and Soleus.

The Fasciae (fascia, a bandage) are fibro-areolar or aponeurotic laminae, of
variable thickness and strength, found in all regions of the body, investing the
softer and more delicate organs. The fasciae have been subdivided, from the
structure which they present, into two groups, fibro-areolar or superficial fasciae,
and aponeurotic or deep fasciae.

The fibro-areolar fascia is found immediately beneath the integument over
almost the entire surface of the body, and is generally known as the superficial
fascia. It connects the skin with the deep or aponeurotic fascia, and consists of
fibro-areolar tissue, containing in its meshes pellicles of fat in varying quan-
tity. In the eyelids and scrotum, where adipose tissue is rarely deposited, this
tissue is very liable to serous infiltration. The superficial fascia varies in thick-
ness in different parts of the body: in the groin it is so thick as to be capable
of being subdivided into several laminae, but in the palm of the hand it is of
extreme thinness, and intimately adherent to the integument. The superficial
fascia is capable of separation into two or more layers, between which are found
the superficial vessels and nerves, and superficial lymphatic glands; as the super-
fi cial epigastric vessels in the abdominal region, the radial and ulnar veins in
the forearm, the saphenous veins in the leg and thigh; certain cutaneous mus-
cles also are situated in the superficial fascia, as the Platysma myoides in the
neck, and the Orbicularis palpebrarum around the eyelids. This fascia is most
distinct at the lower part of the abdomen, the scrotum, perineum, and extremi-
ties; is very thin in those regions where muscular fibres are inserted into the
integument, as on the side of the neck, the face, and around the margin of the
anus; and is almost entirely wanting in the palms of the hands and soles of the
MUSCLES AND FASCIAE OF THE CRANIUM AND FACE.

The muscles of the Cranium and Face consist of ten groups, arranged according to the region in which they are situated.

1. Cranial Region.
2. Auricular Region.
3. Palpebral Region.
4. Orbital Region.
5. Nasal Region.
6. Superior Maxillary Region.
7. Inferior Maxillary Region.
8. Intermaxillary Region.
9. Temporo-maxillary Region.
10. Pterygo-maxillary Region.

The muscles contained in each of these groups are the following:

1. Cranial Region.
   Occipito-frontalis.

2. Auricular Region.
   Attollens aurem.
   Attraheus aurem.
   Retraheus aurem.

3. Palpebral Region.
   Orbicularis palpebrarum.
   Corrugator supercilii.
   Levator palpebrae superioris.
   Tensor tarsi.

4. Orbital Region.
   Levator palpebrae superioris.
   Rectus superior.
Rectus inferior.
Rectus internus.
Rectus externus.
Obliquus superior.
Obliquus inferior.

7. Inferior Maxillary Region.
Levator labii inferioris.
Depressor labii inferioris.
Depressor anguli oris.

5. Nasal Region.
Pyramidalis nasi.
Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi.
Dilatator naris posterior.
Dilatator naris anterior.
Compressor nasi.
Compressor narium minor.
Depressor alae nasi.

8. Intermaxillary Region.
Orbicularis oris.
Buccinator.
Risorius.

6. Superior Maxillary Region.
Levator labii superioris.
Levator anguli oris.
Zygomaticus major.
Zygomaticus minor.

9. Temporo-maxillary Region.
Masseter.
Temporal.

10. Pterygo-maxillary Region.
Pterygoideus externus.
Pterygoideus internus.

1. Cranial Region—Occipito-frontalis.

Dissection (Fig. 242). The head being shaved, and a block placed beneath the back of the neck, make a vertical incision through the skin from before backwards, commencing at the root of the nose in front, and terminating behind at the occipital protuberance; make a second incision in a horizontal direction along the forehead and round the side of the head, from the anterior to the posterior extremity of the preceding. Raise the skin in front from the subjacent muscle from below upwards; this must be done with extreme care, removing the integument from the outer surface of the vessels and the nerves which lie between the two.

The superficial fascia in the cranial region is a firm, dense layer, intimately adherent to the integument, and to the Occipito-frontalis and its tendinous aponeurosis; it is continuous, behind, with the superficial fascia at the back part of the neck; and, laterally, is continued over the temporal aponeurosis: it contains between its layers the small muscles of the auricle, and the superficial temporal vessels and superficial nerves.
The *Occipito-frontalis* (Fig. 243) is a broad musculo-fibrous layer, which covers the whole of one side of the vertex of the skull, from the occiput to the eyebrow. It consists of two muscular slips, separated by an intervening tendinous aponeurosis. The *occipital portion*, thin, quadrilateral in form, and about an inch and a half in length, arises from the outer two-thirds of the superior curved line of the occipital bone, and from the mastoid portion of the temporal. Its fibres of origin are tendinous, but they soon become muscular, and ascend in a parallel direction to terminate in the tendinous aponeurosis. The *frontal portion* is thin, of a quadrilateral form, and intimately adherent to the skin. It is broader, its fibres are longer, and their structure paler than the occipital portion. Its internal fibres are continuous with those of the *Pyramidalis nasi*. Its middle fibres become blended with the *Corrugator supercilii* and *Orbicularis*: and the outer fibres are also blended with the latter muscle over the external angular process,
From this attachment, the fibres are directed upwards and join the aponeurosis below the coronal suture. The inner margins of the frontal portions of the two muscles are joined together for some distance above the root of the nose; but between the occipital portions there is a considerable though variable interval.

The aponeurosis covers the upper part of the vertex of the skull, being continuous across the middle line with the aponeurosis of the opposite muscle. Behind, it is attached, in the interval between the occipital origins, to the occipital protuberance and superior curved lines above the attachment of the Trapezius; in front, it forms a short angular prolongation between the frontal portions; and on each side, it has connected with it the Attollens and Attrahens aurem muscles; in this situation it loses its aponeurotic character, and is continued over the temporal fascia to the zygoma by a layer of laminated areolar tissue. This aponeurosis is closely connected to the integument by a dense fibro-cellular tissue, which contains much granular fat, and in which ramify the numerous vessels and nerves of the integument; it is loosely connected with the pericranium by a quantity of loose cellular tissue, which allows of a considerable degree of movement of the integument.

Nerves. The frontal portion of the Occipito-frontalis is supplied by the facial nerve; its occipital portion by the posterior auricular branch of the facial, and sometimes by the occipitalis minor.

Actions. The frontal portion of the muscle raises the eyebrows and the skin over the root of the nose; at the same time throwing the integument of the forehead into transverse wrinkles, a predominant expression in the emotions of delight. By bringing alternately into action the occipital and frontal portions, the entire scalp may be moved from before backwards.

2. Auricular Region. (Fig. 248.)
Attollens Aurem. Attrahens Aurem.
Retrahens Aurem.

These three small muscles are placed immediately beneath the skin around the external ear. In man, in whom the external ear is almost immovable, they are rudimentary. They are the analogues of large and important muscles in some of the mammalia.

Dissection. This requires considerable care, and should be performed in the following manner:—To expose the Attollens aurem, draw the pinna or broad part of the ear downwards, when a tense band will be felt beneath the skin, passing from the side of the head to the upper part of the concha; by dividing the skin over the tendon, in a direction from below upwards, and then reflecting it on each side, the muscle is exposed. To bring into view the Attrahens aurem, draw the helix backwards by means of a hook, when the muscle will be made tense, and may be exposed in a similar manner to the preceding. To expose the Retrahens aurem, draw the pinna forwards; when the muscle being made tense may be felt beneath the skin, at its insertion into the back part of the concha, and may be exposed in the same manner as the other muscles.

The Attollens Aurem, the largest of the three, is thin, and fan-shaped: its fibres arise from the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis, and converge to be inserted by a thin, flattened tendon into the upper part of the cranial surface of the pinna.

Relations. Externally, with the integument; internally, with the temporal aponeurosis.

The Attrahens Aurem, the smallest of the three, is thin, fan-shaped, and its fibres pale and indistinct; they arise from the lateral edge of the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis, and converge to be inserted into a projection on the front of the helix.

Relations. Externally, with the skin; internally, with the temporal fascia, which separates it from the temporal artery and vein.

The Retrahens Aurem consists of two or three fleshy fasciculi, which arise from the mastoid portion of the temporal bone by short aponeurotic fibres. They are inserted into the lower part of the cranial surface of the concha.
PALPEBRAL REGION.

Relations. Externally, with the integument; internally, with the mastoid portion of the temporal bone.

Nerves. The Attollens aurem is supplied by the occipitalis minor; the Attrahens aurem, by the facial; and the Retrahens aurem, by the posterior auricular branch of the facial.

Actions. In man, these muscles possess very little action; the Attollens aurem slightly raises the ear; the Attrahens aurem draws it forwards and upwards; and the Retrahens aurem draws it backwards.

3. PALPEBRAL REGION. (Fig. 243.)

Orbicularis Palpebrarum. Levator Palpebrae Superioris.
Corrugator Supercrili. Tensor Tarsi.

Dissection (Fig. 242). In order to expose the muscles of the face, continue the longitudinal incision, made in the dissection of the Occipito-frontalis, down the median line of the face to the tip of the nose, and from this point onwards to the upper lip; and carry another incision along the margin of the lip to the angle of the mouth, and transversely across the face to the angle of the jaw. Then make an incision in front of the external ear, from the angle of the jaw upwards, to join the transverse incision made in exposing the Occipito-frontalis. These incisions include a square-shaped flap, which should be removed in the direction marked in the figure, with care, as the muscles at some points are intimately adherent to the integument.

The Orbicularis Palpebrarum is a sphincter muscle, which surrounds the circumference of the orbit and eyelids. It arises from the internal angular process of the frontal bone, from the nasal process of the superior maxillary in front of the lachrymal groove, and from the anterior surface and borders of a short tendon, the tendo palpebrarum, placed at the inner angle of the orbit. From this origin, the fibres are directed outwards, forming a broad, thin, and flat layer, which covers the eyelids, surrounds the circumference of the orbit, and spreads out over the temple, and downwards on the cheek, becoming blended with the Occipito-frontalis and Corrugator supercrili. The palpebral portion (ciliaris) of the Orbicularis is thin and pale; it arises from the bifurcation of the tendo palpebrarum, and forms a series of concentric curves, which are united on the outer side of the eyelids at an acute angle by a cellular raphé, some being inserted into the external tarsal ligament and malar bone. The orbicular portion (orbicularis latus) is thicker and of a reddish color: its fibres are well developed, and form complete ellipses.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the integument. By its deep surface, above, with the Occipito-frontalis and Corrugator supercrili, with which it is intimately blended, and with the supra-orbital vessels and nerve; below, it covers the lachrymal sac, and the origin of the Levator labii superioris, and the Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi muscles. Internally, it is occasionally blended with the Pyramidalis nasi. Externally, it lies on the temporal fascia. On the eyelids, it is separated from the conjunctiva by a fibrous membrane and the tarsal cartilages.

The tendo palpebrarum (tendo oculi) is a short tendon, about two lines in length and one in breadth, attached to the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone in front of the lachrymal groove. Crossing the lachrymal sac, it divides into two parts, each division being attached to the inner extremity of the corresponding tarsal cartilage. As the tendon crosses the lachrymal sac, a strong aponeurotic lamina is given off from the posterior surface, which expands over the sac, and is attached to the ridge on the lachrymal bone. This is the reflected aponeurosis of the tendon palpebrarum.

The Corrugator Supercrili is a small, narrow, pyramidal muscle, placed at the inner extremity of the eyebrow, beneath the Occipito-frontalis and Orbicularis palpebrarum muscles. It arises from the inner extremity of the superciliary ridge; from whence its fibres pass upwards and outwards, to be inserted into the under surface of the orbicularis, opposite the middle of the orbital arch.

Relations. By its anterior surface, with the Occipito-frontalis and Orbicularis...
palpebrarum muscles. By its posterior surface, with the frontal bone and supra-
trochlear nerve.

The Levator Palpebræ will be described with the muscles of the orbital region.

The Tensor Tarsi is a small thin muscle, about three lines in breadth and six
in length, situated at the inner side of the orbit, behind the tendon oculi. It arises
from the crest and adjacent part of the orbital surface of the lacrymal bone,
and passing across the lacrymal sac, divides into two slips, which cover the
lacrymal canals, and are inserted into the tarsal cartilages near the puncta
lacrymalia. Its fibres appear to be continuous with those of the palpebral
portion of the Orbicularis; it is occasionally very indistinct.

Nerves. The Orbicularis palpebrarum, Corrugator supercili, and Tensor tarsi
are supplied by the facial nerve.

Actions. The Orbicularis palpebrarum is the sphincter muscle of the eyelids.
The palpebral portion acts involuntarily in closing the lids, and independently
of the orbicular portion, which is subject to the will. When the entire muscle
is brought into action, the integument of the forehead, temple, and cheek is
drawn inwards towards the inner angle of the eye, and the eyelids are firmly
closed. The Levator palpebræ is the direct antagonist of this muscle; it raises
the upper eyelid and exposes the globe. The Corrugator supercili draws the
eyebrow downwards and inwards, producing the vertical wrinkles of the fore-
head. This muscle may be regarded as the principal agent in the expression of
grief. The Tensor tarsi draws the eyelids and the extremities of the lacrymal
canals inwards, and compresses them against the surface of the globe of the eye;
thus placing them in the most favorable situation for receiving the tears. It
serves, also, to compress the lacrymal sac.

4. ORBITAL REGION. (Fig. 244.)

| Levator Palpebræ Superioris. | Rectus Internus. |
| Rectus Superior. | Rectus Externus. |
| Rectus Inferior. | Obliquus Superior. |

Obliquus Inferior.

Dissection. To open the cavity of the orbit, remove the skull-cap and brain; then saw through
the frontal bone at the inner extremity of the supraorbital ridge, and externally at its junction
with the malar. Break in pieces the thin roof of the orbit by a few slight blows of the hammer,
and take it away; drive forward the superciliary portion of the frontal bone by a smart stroke,
but do not remove it, as that would destroy the pulley of the Obliquus superior. When the
fragments are cleared away, the periorbitæ of the orbit will be exposed; this being removed,
together with the fat which fills the cavity of the orbit, the several muscles of this region can be
examined. The dissection will be facilitated by distending the globe of the eye. In order to
effect this, puncture the optic nerve near the eyeball, with a curved needle, and push the needle
onwards into the globe; insert the point of a blow-pipe through this aperture, and force a little
air into the cavity of the eyeball; then apply a ligature round the nerve, so as to prevent the air
escaping. The globe being now drawn forwards, the muscles will be put upon the stretch.

The Levator Palpebræ Superioris is thin, flat, and triangular in shape. It
arises from the under surface of the lesser wing of the sphenoid, immediately in
front of the optic foramen; and is inserted, by a broad aponeurosis, into the
upper border of the superior tarsal cartilage. At its origin, it is narrow and
tendinous; but soon becomes broad and fleshy, and finally terminates in a broad
aponeurosis.

Relations. By its upper surface, with the frontal nerve and artery, the perio-
osteum of the orbit; and, in front, with the inner surface of the broad tarsal
ligament. By its under surface, with the Superior rectus; and in the lid, with
the conjunctiva. A small branch of the third nerve enters its under surface.

The Rectus superior, the thinnest and narrowest of the four Recti, arises from
the upper margin of the optic foramen, beneath the Levator Palpebræ and
Superior oblique, and from the fibrous sheath of the optic nerve; and is inserted,
by a tendinous expansion, into the sclerotic coat, about three or four lines from
the margin of the cornea.
ORBITAL REGION.

Relations. By its upper surface, with the Levator Palpebræ. By its under surface, with the optic nerve, the ophthalmic artery, the nasal nerve, and the branch of the third nerve, which supplies it; and, in front, with the tendon of the Superior oblique, and the globe of the eye.

Fig. 244.—Muscles of the Right Orbit.

The Inferior and Internal Recti arise by a common tendon (the ligament of Zinn), which is attached round the circumference of the optic foramen, except at its upper and outer part. The External rectus has two heads: the upper one arises from the outer margin of the optic foramen immediately beneath the Superior rectus; the lower head, partly from the ligament of Zinn, and partly from a small pointed process of bone on the lower margin of the sphenoidal fissure. Each muscle passes forward in the position implied by its name, to be inserted, by a tendinous expansion (the tunica albignea), into the sclerotic coat, about three or four lines from the margin of the cornea. Between the two heads of the External rectus is a narrow interval, through which pass the third, nasal branch of the fifth and sixth nerves, and the ophthalmic vein. Although nearly all of these muscles present a common origin, and are inserted in a similar manner in the sclerotic coat, there are certain differences to be observed in them, as regards their length and breadth. The Internal Rectus is the broadest; the External, the longest; and the Superior, the thinnest and narrowest.

The Superior Oblique is a fusiform muscle, placed at the upper and inner side of the orbit, internal to the Levator palpebræ. It arises about a line above the inner margin of the optic foramen, and, passing forwards to the inner angle of the orbit, terminates in a rounded tendon, which plays in a ring or pulley, formed by fibro-cartilaginous tissue attached to a depression beneath the internal angular process of the frontal bone, the contiguous surfaces of the tendon and ring being lined by a delicate synovial membrane, and enclosed in a thin fibrous investment. The tendon is reflected backwards and outwards beneath the Superior rectus to the outer part of the globe of the eye, and is inserted into the sclerotic coat, midway between the cornea and entrance of the optic nerve, the insertion of the muscle lying between the Superior and External recti.

Fig. 245.—The relative position and attachment of the Muscles of the Left Eyeball.
Relations. By its upper surface, with the periosteum covering the roof of the orbit, and the fourth nerve. The tendon, where it lies on the globe of the eye, is covered by the Superior rectus. By its under surface, with the nasal nerve, and the upper border of the Internal rectus.

The Inferior Oblique is a thin, narrow muscle, placed near the anterior margin of the orbit. It arises from a depression in the orbital plate of the superior maxillary bone, external to the lachrymal groove. Passing outwards and backwards beneath the Inferior rectus, and between the eyeball and the External rectus, it is inserted into the outer part of the sclerotic coat between the Superior and External rectus, near the tendon of insertion of the Superior oblique.

Relations. By its upper surface, with the globe of the eye, and with the Inferior rectus. By its under surface, with the periosteum covering the floor of the orbit, and with the external rectus. Its borders look forwards and backwards; the posterior one receives a branch of the third nerve.

Nerves. The Levator palpebrae, Inferior oblique, and all the recti excepting the External, are supplied by the third nerve; the Superior oblique, by the fourth; the External rectus, by the sixth.

Actions. The Levator palpebrae raises the upper eyelid, and is the direct antagonist of the Orbicularis palpebrarum. The four Recti muscles are attached in such a manner to the globe of the eye, that, acting singly, they will turn it either upwards, downwards, inwards, or outwards, as expressed by their names. If any two Recti act together, they carry the globe of the eye in the diagonal of these directions, viz., upwards and inwards, upwards and outwards, downwards and inwards, or downwards and outwards. The movement of circumduction, as in looking round a room, is performed by the alternate action of the four Recti. By some anatomists, these muscles have been considered the chief agents in adjusting the sight at different distances, by compressing the globe, and so lengthening its antero-posterior diameter. The Oblique muscles rotate the eyeball on its antero-posterior axis, this kind of movement being required for the correct viewing of an object, when the head is moved laterally, as from shoulder to shoulder, in order that the picture may fall in all respects on the same part of the retina of each eye.  

Surgical Anatomy. The position and exact point of insertion of the tendons of the Internal and External recti muscles into the globe should be carefully examined from the front of the eyeball, as the surgeon is often required to divide one or the other muscle for the cure of strabismus. In convergent strabismus, which is the most common form of the disease, the eye is turned inwards, requiring the division of the Internal rectus. In the divergent form, which is more rare, the eye is turned outwards, the External rectus being especially implicated. The deformity produced in either case is to be remedied by division of one or the other muscle. The operation is thus effected: the lids are to be well separated; the eyeball being drawn outwards, the conjunctiva should be raised by a pair of forceps, and divided immediately beneath the lower border of the tendon of the Internal rectus, a little behind its insertion into the sclerotic; the submu cosa areolar tissue is then divided, and into the small aperture thus made, a blunt hook is passed upwards between the muscle and the globe, and the tendon of the muscle and conjunctiva covering it, divided by a pair of blunt-pointed scissors. Or the tendon may be divided by a subconjunctival incision, one blade of the scissors being passed upwards between the tendon and the conjunctiva, and the other between the tendon and the sclerotic. The student, when dissecting these muscles, should remove on one side of the subject the conjunctiva from the front of the eye, in order to see more accurately the position of the tendons, while on the opposite side the operation may be performed.

1 "On the Oblique Muscles of the Eye in Man and Vertebrate Animals," by John Struthers, M.D., "Anatomical and Physiological Observations." For a more full account of the various co-ordinated actions of the muscles of a single eye and of both eyes than our space allows, the reader may be referred to Dr. M. Foster's Text-book of Physiology, pp. 385-388.
5. NASAL REGION. (Fig. 243.)

Pyramidalis Nasi.
Levator Labii Superioris Alaeque Nasi.
Dilatator Naris Posterior.
Dilatator Naris Anterior.
Compressor Nasi.
Compressor Narium Minor.
Depressor Ala Nasi.

The Pyramidalis Nasi is a small pyramidal slip, prolonged downwards from the Occipito-frontalis upon the side of the nose, where it becomes tendinous and blends with the Compressor nasi. As the two muscles descend, they diverge, leaving an angular interval between them.

Relations. By its upper surface, with the skin. By its under surface, with the frontal and nasal bones.

The Levator Labii Superioris Alaeque Nasi is a thin triangular muscle, placed by the side of the nose, and extending between the inner margin of the orbit and upper lip. It arises by a pointed extremity from the upper part of the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone, and passing obliquely downwards and outwards, divides into two slips, one of which is inserted into the cartilage of the ala of the nose; the other is prolonged into the upper lip, becoming blended with the Orbicularis and Levator labii superioris proprius.

Relations. In front, with the integument; and with a small part of the Orbicularis palpebrarum above.

Lying upon the superior maxillary bone, beneath this muscle, is a longitudinal muscular fasciculus about an inch in length. It is attached by one end near the origin of the Compressor nasi, and by the other to the nasal process about an inch above it; it was described by Albinus as the "Musculus anomalous," and by Santorini, as the "Rhomboideus."

The Dilatator Naris Posterior is a small muscle, which is placed partly beneath the proper elevator of the nose and lip. It arises from the margin of the nasal notch of the superior maxilla, and from the sphenoid cartilages, and is inserted into the skin near the margin of the nostril.

The Dilatator Naris Anterior is a thin delicate fasciculus, passing from the cartilage of the ala of the nose to the integument near its margin. This muscle is situated in front of the preceding.

The Compressor Nasi is a small, thin, triangular muscle, arising by its apex from the superior maxillary bone, above and a little external to the incisive fossa; its fibres proceed upwards and inwards, expanding into a thin aponeurosis which is attached to the fibro-cartilage of the nose, and is continuous on the bridge of the nose with that of the muscle of the opposite side, and with the aponeurosis of the Pyramidalis nasi.

The Compressor Narium Minor is a small muscle, attached by one end to the alar cartilage, and by the other to the integument at the end of the nose.

The Depressor Ala Nasi is a short, radiated muscle, arising from the incisive fossa of the superior maxilla; its fibres ascend to be inserted into the septum, and back part of the ala of the nose. This muscle lies between the mucous membrane and muscular structure of the lip.

Nerves. All the muscles of this group are supplied by the facial nerve.

Actions. The Pyramidalis nasi draws down the inner angle of the eyebrows; by some anatomists it is also considered as an elevator of the ala, and, consequently, a dilator of the nose. The Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi draws upwards the upper lip and ala of the nose; its most important action is upon the nose, which it dilates to a considerable extent. The action of this muscle produces a marked influence over the countenance, and it is the principal agent in the expression of contempt. The two Dilatatores nasi enlarge the aperture
of the nose, and the Compressor nasi appears to press upon the nose so as to increase its breadth, and thus tends rather to open than to close the nostrils. The Depressor alae nasi is a direct antagonist of the preceding muscles, drawing the ala of the nose downwards, and thereby constricting the aperture of the nares.

6. Superior Maxillary Region. (Fig. 248.)

- Levator Labii Superioris.
- Zygomaticus Major.
- Levator Anguli Oris.
- Zygomaticus Minor.

The Levator Labii Superioris (proprius) is a thin muscle of a quadrilateral form. It arises from the lower margin of the orbit immediately above the infraorbital foramen, some of its fibres being attached to the superior maxilla, others to the malar bone; its fibres converge to be inserted into the muscular substance of the upper lip.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the lower segment of the Orbicularis palpebrarum; below, it is subcutaneous. By its deep surface, it conceals the origin of the Compressor nasi and Levator anguli oris muscles, and the infraorbital vessels and nerves, as they escape from the infraorbital foramen.

The Levator Anguli Oris arises from the canine fossa, immediately below the infraorbital foramen; its fibres incline downwards and a little outwards, to be inserted into the angle of the mouth, intermingling with those of the Zygomatici, the Depressor anguli oris, and the Orbicularis.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Levator labii superioris and the infraorbital vessels and nerves. By its deep surface, with the superior maxilla, the Buccinator, and the mucous membrane.

The Zygomaticus Major is a slender fasciculus, which arises from the malar bone, in front of the zygomatic suture, and, descending obliquely downwards and inwards, is inserted into the angle of the mouth, where it blends with the fibres of the Orbicularis and Depressor anguli oris.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the subcutaneous adipose tissue. By its deep surface, with the malar bone, and the Masseter and Buccinator muscles.

The Zygomaticus Minor arises from the malar bone, immediately behind the maxillary suture, and, passing downwards and inwards, is continuous with the outer margin of the Levator labii superioris. It lies in front of the preceding.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the integument and the Orbicularis palpebrarum above. By its deep surface, with the Levator anguli oris.

Nerves. This group of muscles is supplied by the facial nerve.

Actions. The Levator labii superioris is the proper elevator of the upper lip, carrying it at the same time a little outwards. The Levator anguli oris raises the angle of the mouth and draws it inwards; whilst the Zygomatici raise the upper lip and draw it somewhat outwards, as in laughing.

7. Inferior Maxillary Region. (Fig. 248.)

- Levator Labii Inferioris (Levator menti).
- Depressor Labii Inferioris (Quadratus menti).
- Depressor Anguli Oris (Triangularis menti).

Dissection. The muscles in this region may be dissected by making a vertical incision through the integument from the margin of the lower lip to the chin: a second incision should then be carried along the margin of the lower jaw as far as the angle, and the integument carefully removed in the direction shown in Fig. 242.

The Levator Labii Inferioris (Levator menti) is to be dissected by evertting the lower lip and raising the mucous membrane. It is a small conical fasciculus, placed on the side of the frenum of the lower lip. It arises from the incisive fossa, external to the symphysis of the lower jaw: its fibres descend to be inserted into the integument of the chin.
INTERMAXILLARY REGION.

Relations. On its inner surface, with the mucous membrane; in the median line, it is blended with the muscle of the opposite side; and on its outer side, with the Depressor labii inferioris.

The Depressor Labii Inferioris (Quadratus menti) is a small quadrilateral muscle, situated at the outer side of the preceding. It arises from the external oblique line of the lower jaw, between the symphysis and mental foramen, and passes obliquely upwards and inwards, to be inserted into the integument of the lower lip, its fibres blending with the Orbicularis, and with those of its fellow of the opposite side. It is continuous with the fibres of the Platysma at its origin. This muscle contains much yellow fat intermingled with its fibres.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with part of the Depressor anguli oris, and with the integument, to which it is closely connected. By its deep surface, with the mental vessels and nerves, the mucous membrane of the lower lip, the labial glands, and the Levator menti, with which it is intimately united.

The Depressor Anguli Oris (Triangularis menti) is triangular in shape, arising, by its broad base, from the external oblique line of the lower jaw, from whence its fibres pass upwards, to be inserted, by a narrow fasciculus, into the angle of the mouth. It is continuous with the Platysma at its origin, and with the Orbicularis and Risorius at its insertion, and some of its fibres are directly continuous with those of the Levator anguli oris.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the integument. By its deep surface, with the Depressor labii inferioris and Buccinator.

Nerves. This group of muscles is supplied by the facial nerve.

Actions. The Levator labii inferioris raises the lower lip, and protrudes it forwards, and at the same time wrinkles the integument of the chin. The Depressor labii inferioris draws the lower lip directly downwards and a little outwards. The Depressor anguli oris depresses the angle of the mouth, being the antagonist to the Levator anguli oris and Zygomaticus major; acting with these muscles, it will draw the angle of the mouth directly backwards.

8. INTERMAXILLARY REGION.


Dissection. The dissection of these muscles may be considerably facilitated by filling the cavity of the mouth with tow, so as to distend the cheeks and lips; the mouth should then be closed by a few stitches, and the integument carefully removed from the surface.

The Orbicularis Oris is a sphincter muscle, elliptic in form, composed of concentric fibres, which surround the orifice of the mouth. It consists of two thick semicircular planes of muscular fibre, which interlace on either side with those of the Buccinator and other muscles inserted into the lips. On the free margin of the lips the muscular fibres are continued uninterruptedly from one lip to the other, around the corner of the mouth, forming a roundish fasciculus of fine pale fibres closely approximated. To the outer part of each segment some special fibres are added, by which the lips are connected directly with the maxillary bones and septum of the nose. The additional fibres for the upper segment consist of four bands, two of which (Accessorii orbicularis superiores) arise from the alveolar border of the superior maxilla, opposite the incisor teeth, and arching outwards on each side, are continuous at the angles of the mouth with the other muscles inserted into this part. The two remaining muscular slips, called the Naso-labialis, connect the upper lip to the septum of the nose: as they descend from the septum, an interval is left between them, which corresponds to that left by the divergence of the accessory portions of the Orbicularis above described. It is this interval which forms the depression seen on the surface of the skin beneath the septum of the nose. The additional fibres for the lower segment (Accessorii orbicularis inferiores) arise from the inferior maxilla, externally to the Levator labii inferioris, and arch outwards to the angles of the mouth, to join the Buccinator and the other muscles attached to this part.
MUSCLES AND FASCIAE.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the integument, to which it is closely connected. By its deep surface, with the buccal mucous membrane, the labial glands, and coronary vessels. By its outer circumference, it is blended with the numerous muscles which converge to the mouth from various parts of the face. Its inner circumference is free, and covered by the mucous membrane.

The Buccinator is a broad, thin muscle, quadrilateral in form, which occupies the interval between the jaws at the side of the face. It arises from the outer surface of the alveolar processes of the upper and lower jaws, corresponding to the three molar teeth; and, behind, from the anterior border of the pterygo-maxillary ligament. The fibres converge towards the angle of the mouth, where the central fibres intersect each other, those from below being continuous with the upper segment of the Orbicularis oris; and those from above with the inferior segment; the highest and lowest fibres continue forward uninterruptedly into the corresponding segment of the lip, without decussation.

Relations. By its superficial surface, behind, with a large mass of fat, which separates it from the ramus of the lower jaw, the Masseter, and a small portion of the Temporal muscle; anteriorly, with the Zygomatici, Risorius, Levator anguli oris, Depressor anguli oris, and Steno's duct, which pierces it opposite the second molar tooth of the upper jaw; the facial artery and vein cross it from below upwards; it is also crossed by the branches of the facial and buccal nerve. By its internal surface, with the buccal glands and mucous membrane of the mouth.

The pterygo-maxillary ligament separates the Buccinator muscle from the Superior constrictor of the pharynx. It is a tendinous band, attached by one extremity to the apex of the internal pterygoid plate, and by the other to the posterior extremity of the internal oblique line of the lower jaw. Its inner surface corresponds to the cavity of the mouth, and is lined by mucous membrane. Its outer surface is separated from the ramus of the jaw by a quantity of adipose tissue. Its posterior border gives attachment to the Superior constrictor of the pharynx: its anterior border, to the fibres of the Buccinator.

The Risorius (Santorini) consists of a narrow bundle of fibres, which arises in the fascia over the Masseter muscle, and passing horizontally forwards, is inserted into the angle of the mouth, joining with the fibres of the Depressor anguli oris. It is placed superficial to the Platysma, and is broadest at its outer extremity. This muscle varies much in its size and form.

Nerves. The Orbicularis oris is supplied by the facial, the Buccinator by the facial and by the buccal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve, which latter, however, is by many anatomists regarded as a sensory nerve only.

Actions. The Orbicularis oris is the direct antagonist of all those muscles which converge to the lips from the various parts of the face, its ordinary action producing the direct closure of the lips; and its forcible action throwing the integument into wrinkles, on account of the firm connection between the latter and the surface of the muscle. The Buccinators contract and compress the cheeks, so that, during the process of mastication, the food is kept under the immediate pressure of the teeth.

9. TEMPORO-MAXILLARY REGION.

Masseter. Temporal.

The Masseter has been already exposed by the removal of the integument from the side of the face (Fig. 243); it is a short thick muscle, somewhat quadrilateral in form, consisting of two portions, superficial and deep. The superficial portion, the larger, arises by a thick tendinous aponeurosis from the malar process of the superior maxilla, and from the anterior two-thirds of the lower border of the zygomatic arch: its fibres pass downwards and backwards, to be inserted into the angle and lower half of the ramus of the jaw. The deep portion is much
smaller, and more muscular in texture; it arises from the posterior third of the lower border and the whole of the inner surface of the zygomatic arch; its fibres pass downwards and forwards, to be inserted into the upper half of the ramus and outer surface of the coronoid process of the jaw. The deep portion of the muscle is partly concealed, in front, by the superficial portion; behind, it is covered by the parotid gland. The fibres of the two portions are united at their insertion.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the integument; above, with the Orbicularis palpebrarum and Zygomatici; and with Steno’s duct, the branches of the facial nerve, and the transverse facial vessels, which cross it. By its deep surface, with the ramus of the jaw, and the Buccinator, from which it is separated by a mass of fat. Its posterior margin is overlapped by the parotid gland. Its anterior margin projects over the Buccinator muscle; and the facial artery lies on it below.

The temporal fascia is seen, at this stage of the dissection, covering in the Temporal muscle. It is a strong aponeurotic investment, affording attachment, by its inner surface, to the superficial fibres of the muscle. Above, it is a single layer, attached to the entire extent of the temporal ridge; but below, where it is attached to the zygoma, it consists of two layers, one of which is inserted into the outer, and the other into the inner border of the zygomatic arch. A small quantity of fat, the orbital branch of the temporal artery, and a filament from the orbital branch of the superior maxillary nerve, are contained between these two layers. It is covered, on its outer surface, by the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis, the Orbicularis palpebrarum, the Attoilens and Attraheus aurem muscles; the temporal vessels and nerves cross it from below upwards.

Fig. 246.—The Temporal Muscle, the Zygoma and Masseter having been removed.

Dissection. In order to expose the Temporal muscle, remove the temporal fascia, which may be effected by separating it at its attachment along the upper border of the zygoma, and dissecting it upwards from the surface of the muscle. The zygomatic arch should then be divided in front, at its junction with the malar bone; and, behind, near the external auditory meatus, and drawn downwards with the Masseter, which should be detached from its insertion into the ramus and angle of the jaw. The whole extent of the temporal muscle is then exposed.

The Temporal (Fig. 246) is a broad radiating muscle, situated at the side of the head, and occupying the entire extent of the temporal fossa. It arises from
the whole of the temporal fossa, which extends from the external angular process of the frontal in front, to the mastoid portion of the temporal behind; and from the curved line on the frontal and parietal bones above, to the pterygoid ridge on the great wing of the sphenoid below. It is also attached to the inner surface of the temporal fascia. Its fibres converge as they descend, and terminate in an aponeurosis, the fibres of which, radiated at its commencement, converge into a thick and flat tendon, which is inserted into the inner surface, apex, and anterior border of the coronoid process of the jaw, nearly as far forwards as the last molar tooth.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the integument, the temporal fascia, the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis, the Attolens and Attrahens aurum muscles, the temporal vessels and nerves, the zygoma and Masseter. By its deep surface, with the temporal fossa, the External pterygoid and part of the Buccinator muscles, the internal maxillary artery, its deep temporal branches, and the temporal nerves.

Nerves. Both muscles are supplied by the inferior maxillary nerve.

Actions. These will be described with the muscles of the pterygo-maxillary region.

10. Pterygo-maxillary Region. (Fig. 247.)

Internal Pterygoid. External Pterygoid.

Dissection. The temporal muscle having been examined, saw through the base of the coronoid process, and draw it upwards, together with the Temporal muscle, which should be detached from the surface of the temporal fossa. Divide the ramus of the jaw just below the condyle, and also, by a transverse incision extending across the commencement of its lower third, just above the dental foramen; remove the fragment, and the Pterygoid muscles will be exposed.

Fig. 247.—The Pterygoid Muscles; the Zygomatic Arch and a portion of the Ramus of the Jaw having been removed.

The Internal Pterygoid is a thick quadrilateral muscle, and resembles the Masseter, in form, structure, and the direction of its fibres. It arises from the pterygoid fossa, being attached to the inner surface of the external pterygoid plate, and to the grooved surface of the tuberosity of the palate bone; its fibres pass downwards, outwards, and backwards, to be inserted, by strong tendinous laminae, into the lower and back part of the inner side of the ramus and angle of the lower jaw, as high as the dental foramen.
Relations. By its external surface, with the ramus of the lower jaw, from which it is separated, at its upper part, by the External pterygoid, the internal lateral ligament, the internal maxillary artery, and the dental vessels and nerves. By its internal surface, with the Tensor palati, being separated from the Superior constrictor of the pharynx by a cellular interval.

The External Pterygoid is a short thick muscle, somewhat conical in form, which extends almost horizontally between the zygomatic fossa and the condyle of the jaw. It arises from the pterygoid ridge on the great wing of the sphenoid, and the portion of bone included between it and the base of the pterygoid process; from the outer surface of the external pterygoid plate; and from the tuberosity of the palate and superior maxillary bones. Its fibres pass horizontally backwards and outwards, to be inserted into a depression in front of the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw, and into the corresponding part of the interarticular fibro-cartilage. This muscle, at its origin, appears to consist of two portions separated by a slight interval; hence the terms upper and lower head, sometimes used in the description of the muscle.

Relations. By its external surface, with the ramus of the lower jaw, the internal maxillary artery, which crosses it, the tendon of the Temporal muscle, and the Masseter. By its internal surface, it rests against the upper part of the internal pterygoid, the internal lateral ligament, the middle meningeal artery, and inferior maxillary nerve; by its upper border, it is in relation with the temporal and masseteric branches of the inferior maxillary nerve.

Nerves. These muscles are supplied by the inferior maxillary nerve.

Actions. The Temporal, Masseter, and internal pterygoid raise the lower jaw against the upper with great force. The superficial portion of the masseter, and the Internal pterygoid, assist the External pterygoid in drawing the lower jaw forwards upon the upper, the jaw being drawn back again by the deep fibres of the Masseter, and posterior fibres of the Temporal. The external pterygoid muscles are the direct agents in the attrition of the food, drawing the lower jaw directly forwards, so as to make the lower teeth project beyond the upper. If the muscle of one side acts, the corresponding side of the jaw is drawn forwards, and, the other condyle remaining fixed, the symphysis deviates to the opposite side. The alternation of these movements on the two sides produces attrition.

MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE NECK.

The muscles of the Neck may be arranged into groups, corresponding with the region in which they are situated.

These groups are nine in number:—

1. Superficial Region.
2. Depressors of the Os Hyoides and Larynx.
3. Elevators of the Os Hyoides and Larynx.
4. Muscles of the Tongue.
5. Muscles of the Pharynx.
7. Muscles of the Anterior Vertebral Region.
8. Muscles of the Lateral Vertebral Region.

Infra-hyoid Region.

1. Platysma myoides.
2. Depressors of the Os Hyoides and Larynx.
   Sterno-hyoid.
   Sterno-thyroid.
   Thyro-hyoid.
   Omo-hyoid.

1 This is the usual relation; but in many cases the artery will be found below the muscle.
**MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supra-hyoid Region.</th>
<th>Palatal Region.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Digastric.</td>
<td>Levator palati.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stylo-hyoid.</td>
<td>Tensor palati.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mylo-hyoid.</td>
<td>Azygos uvulae.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lingual Region.</th>
<th>7. Muscles of the Anterior Vertebral Region.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genio-hyo-glossus.</td>
<td>Rectus capitis anticus minor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyo-glossus.</td>
<td>Rectus lateralis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingualis.</td>
<td>Longus coli.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stylo-glossus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palato-glossus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pharyngeal Region.</th>
<th>8. Muscles of the Lateral Vertebral Region.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constrictor inferior.</td>
<td>Scalenus medius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constrictor medius.</td>
<td>Scalenus posticus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constrictor superior.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stylo-pharyngeus.</td>
<td>Included in the description of the Larynx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palato-pharyngeus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1. SUPERFICIAL CERVICAL REGION.**

**Platysma Myoïdes.**

**Sternocleido-mastoid.**

*Dissection.* A block having been placed at the back of the neck, and the face turned to the side opposite to that to be dissected, so as to place the parts upon the stretch, make two transverse incisions: one from the chin, along the margin of the lower jaw, to the mastoid process; and the other along the upper border of the clavicle. Connect these by an oblique incision made in the course of the Sternomastoid muscle, from the mastoid process to the sternum; the two flaps of integument having been removed in the direction shown in Fig. 242, the superficial fascia will be exposed.

The superficial cervical fascia is exposed on the removal of the integument from the side of the neck; it is an extremely thin aponeurotic lamina, which is hardly demonstrable as a separate membrane. Beneath it are found the Platymsa myoïdes muscle, the external jugular vein, and some superficial branches of the cervical plexus of nerves.

The *Platysma Myoïdes* (Fig. 243) is a broad thin plane of muscular fibres, placed immediately beneath the skin on each side of the neck. It arises from the clavicle and acromion, and from the fascia covering the upper part of the Pectoral, Deltoid, and Trapezius muscles; its fibres proceed obliquely upwards and inwards along the side of neck, to be inserted into the lower jaw beneath the external oblique line, some passing forwards to the angle of the mouth, and others becoming lost in the cellular tissue of the face. The most anterior fibres interlace, in front of the jaw, with the fibres of the muscle of the opposite side; those next in order become blended with the Depressor labii inferioris and the Depressor anguli oris; others are prolonged upon the side of the cheek, and interlace, near the angle of the mouth, with the muscles in this situation, and may occasionally be traced to the Zygomatic muscles, or to the margin of the Orbicularis palpebrarum. Beneath the Platysma, the external jugular vein may be seen descending from the angle of the jaw to the clavicle. It is essential to remember the direction of the fibres of the Platysma, in connection with the operation of bleeding from this vessel; for if the point of the lancet be introduced in the direction of the muscular fibres, the orifice made will be filled up by the
contraction of the muscle, and blood will not flow; but if the incision is made across the course of the fibres, they will retract, and expose the orifice in the vein, and so facilitate the flow of blood.

Relations. By its external surface, with the integument, to which it is united closely below, but more loosely above. By its internal surface, with the Pectoralis major, Deltoid, and Trapezius, and with the clavicle. In the neck, with the external and anterior jugular veins, the deep cervical fascia, the superficial branches of the cervical plexus, the Stperno-mastoid, Stperno-hyoid, Omo-hyoid, and Digastric muscles. In front of the Stperno-mastoid, it covers the sheath of the carotid vessels; and behind it, the Scaleni muscles and the nerves of the brachial plexus. On the face, it is in relation with the parotid gland, the facial artery and vein, and the Masseter and Buccinator muscles.

The deep cervical fascia is exposed on the removal of the Platysma myoides. It is a strong fibrous layer, which invests the muscles of the neck, and incloses the vessels and nerves. It commences, as an extremely thin layer, at the back part of the neck, where it is attached to the spinous processes of the cervical vertebrae, and to the ligamentum nuchae; and, passing forwards to the posterior border of the Stperno-mastoid muscle, divides into two layers, one of which passes in front, and the other behind that muscle. These join again at the anterior border of the Stperno-mastoid; and, being continued forwards to the front of the neck, blend with the fascia of the opposite side. The superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia (that which passes in front of the Stperno-mastoid), if traced upwards, is found to pass across the parotid gland and Masseter muscle, forming the parotid and masseteric fascia, and is attached to the lower border of the zygoma, and more anteriorly to the lower border of the body of the jaw; if the same layer is traced downwards, it is seen to pass to the upper border of the clavicle and sternum, being pierced just above the former bone by the external jugular vein. In the middle line of the neck, the fascia is thin above, and connected to the hyoid bone; but it becomes thicker below, and divides, just below the thyroid gland, into two layers, the more superficial of which is attached to the upper border of the sternum and interclavicular ligament; the deeper and stronger layer is connected to the posterior border of that bone, covering in the Stperno-hyoid and Stperno-thyroid muscles. Between these two layers is a little areolar tissue and fat, and occasionally a small lymphatic gland. The deep layer of the cervical fascia (that which lies behind the posterior surface of the Stperno-mastoid) sends numerous prolongations, which invest the muscles and vessels of the neck; if traced upwards, a process of the fascia, of extreme density, is found passing behind and to the inner side of the parotid gland, to be attached to the base of the styloid process and angle of the lower jaw, termed the stylo-maxillary ligament; if traced downwards and outwards, the fascia will be found to inclose the posterior belly of the Omo-hyoid muscle, binding it down by a distinct process, which descends to be inserted into the clavicle and cartilage of the first rib. The deep layer of the cervical fascia also assists in forming the sheath which incloses the common carotid artery, internal jugular vein, and pneumogastric nerve. There are fibrous septa intervening between each of these parts, which, however, are included together in one common investment. More internally, a thin layer is continued across the trachea and thyroid gland, beneath the Stperno-thyroid muscles; and at the root of the neck this may be traced, over the large vessels, to be continuous with the fibrous layer of the pericardium.

The Stperno-mastoid or Stperno-cleido-mastoid (Fig. 248) is a large thick muscle, which passes obliquely across the side of the neck, being inclosed between the two layers of the deep cervical fascia. It is thick and narrow at its central part, but is broader and thinner at each extremity. It arises, by two heads, from the sternum and clavicle. The sternal portion is a rounded fasciculus, tendinous in front, fleshy behind, which arises from the upper and anterior part of the first piece of the sternum, and is directed upwards, outwards, and backwards. The clavicular portion arises from the inner third of the superior border of the clavicle,
being composed of fleshy and aponeurotic fibres; it is directed almost vertically upwards. These two portions are separated from one another, at their origin, by a triangular cellular interval; but become gradually blended, below the middle of the neck, into a thick rounded muscle, which is inserted, by a strong
tendon, into the outer surface of the mastoid process, from its apex to its superior border, and by a thin aponeurosis into the outer two-thirds of the superior curved line of the occipital bone. The Stero-mastoid varies much in its extent of attachment to the clavicle: in one case the clavicular may be as narrow as the sternal portion; in another, as much as three inches in breadth. When the clavicular origin is broad, it is occasionally subdivided into numerous slips, separated by narrow intervals. More rarely, the corresponding margins of the Stero-mastoid and Trapezius have been found in contact. In the application of a ligature to the third part of the subclavian artery, it will be necessary, where the muscles come close together, to divide a portion of one or of both.
This muscle divides the quadrilateral space at the side of the neck into two triangles, an anterior and a posterior. The boundaries of the anterior triangle are in front, the median line of the neck; above, the lower border of the body of the jaw, and an imaginary line drawn from the angle of the jaw to the mastoid process; behind, the anterior border of the Stero-mastoid muscle. The boundaries of the posterior triangle are, in front, the posterior border of the Stero-mastoid; below, the upper border of the clavicle; behind, the anterior margin of the Trapezius.  

The anterior edge of the muscle forms a very prominent ridge beneath the skin which it is important to notice, as it forms a guide to the surgeon in

1 The anatomy of these triangles will be more exactly described with that of the vessels of the neck.
making the necessary incisions for ligature of the common carotid artery, and for oesophagotomy.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the integument and Platysma, from which it is separated by the external jugular vein, the superficial branches of the cervical plexus, and the anterior layer of the deep cervical fascia. By its deep surface, it rests on the sterno-clavicular articulation, the deep layer of the cervical fascia, the Sterno-hyoid, Sterno-thyroid, Omo-hyoid, the posterior belly of the Digastric, Levator anguli scapulae, the Splenius and Scaeni muscles. Below, it is in relation with the lower part of the common carotid artery, internal jugular vein, pneumogastric, descendens noni and communicans noni nerves, and with the deep lymphatic glands; with the spinal accessory nerve, which pierces its upper third, the cervical plexus, the occipital artery, and a part of the parotid gland.

Nerves. The Platysma myoides is supplied by the facial and superficial branches of the cervical plexus; the Sterno-cleido-mastoid by the spinal accessory and deep branches of the cervical plexus.

Actions. The Platysma myoides produces a slight wrinkling of the surface of the skin of the neck, in an oblique direction, where the entire muscle is brought into action. Its anterior portion, the thickest part of the muscle, depresses the lower jaw; it also serves to draw down the lower lip and angle of the mouth on each side, being one of the chief agents in the expression of melancholy. The Sterno-mastoid muscles, when both are brought into action, serve to depress the head upon the neck, and the neck upon the chest. Either muscle, acting singly, flexes the head, and (combined with the Splenius) draws it towards the shoulder of the same side, and rotates it so as to carry the face towards the opposite side.

Surgical Anatomy. The relations of the sternal and clavicular parts of the Sterno-mastoid should be carefully examined, as the surgeon is sometimes required to divide one or both portions of the muscle in very narrow necks. One variety of this distortion is produced by spasmodic contraction or rigidity of the Sterno-mastoid; the head being carried down towards the shoulder of the same side, and the face turned to the opposite side, and fixed in that position. When all other remedies for the relief of this disease have failed, subcutaneous division of the muscle is resorted to. This is performed by introducing a long narrow bistoury beneath it, about half an inch above its origin, and dividing it from behind forwards whilst the muscle is put well upon the stretch. There is seldom any difficulty in dividing the sternal portion. In dividing the clavicular portion care must be taken to avoid wounding the external jugular vein, which runs parallel with the posterior border of the muscle in this situation.

2. INFRA-HYOID REGION. (Figs. 248, 249.)

DEPRESSORS OF THE OS HYOIDES AND LARYNX.

Sterno-hyoid. Thyro-hyoid.
Sterno-thyroid. Omo-hyoid.

Dissection. The muscles in this region may be exposed by removing the deep fascia from the front of the neck. In order to see the entire extent of the Omo-hyoid, it is necessary to divide the Sterno-mastoid at its centre, and turn its ends aside, and to detach the Trapezius from the clavicle and scapula. This, however, should not be done unless the Trapezius has been dissected.

The Sterno-hyoid is a thin, narrow, riband-like muscle, which arises from the inner extremity of the clavicle, and the upper and posterior part of the first piece of the sternum; and, passing upwards and inwards, is inserted, by short tendinous fibres, into the lower border of the body of the os hyoides. This muscle is separated, below, from its fellow by a considerable interval; but they approach one another in the middle of their course, and again diverge as they ascend. It often presents, immediately above its origin, a transverse tendinous intersection, like those in the Rectus abdominis.

Variations. This muscle sometimes arises from the inner extremity of the clavicle, and the posterior sterno-clavicular ligament; or from the sternum and this ligament; from either bone alone, or from all these parts; and occasionally has a fasciculus connected with the cartilage of the first rib.
Relations. By its superficial surface, below, with the sternum, the sternal end of the clavicle, and the Sterno-mastoid; and above, with the Platysma and deep cervical fascia. By its deep surface, with the Sterno-thyroid, Crico-thyroid, and Thyro-hyoid muscles, the thyroid gland, the superior thyroid vessels, the crico-thyroid and thyro-hyoid membranes.

The Sterno-thyroid is situated beneath the preceding muscle, but is shorter and wider than it. It arises from the posterior surface of the first bone of the sternum, below the origin of the sterno-hyoid, and occasionally from the edge of the cartilage of the first rib; and is inserted into the oblique line on the side of the ala of the thyroid cartilage. This muscle is in close contact with its fellow at the lower part of the neck; and is frequently traversed by a transverse or oblique tendinous intersection, like those in the Rectus abdominis.

Variations. This muscle is sometimes continuous with the Thyro-hyoid and Inferior constrictor of the pharynx; and a lateral prolongation from it sometimes passes as far as the os hyoideum.

Relations. By its anterior surface, with the Sterno-hyoid, Omo-hyoid, and Sterno-mastoid. By its posterior surface, from below upwards, with the trachea, vena innominata, common carotid (and on the right side the arteria innominata), the thyroid gland and its vessels, and the lower part of the larynx. The middle thyroid vein lies along its inner border, a relation which it is important to remember in the operation of tracheotomy.

Fig. 249.—Muscles of the Neck. Anterior View.

The Thyro-hyoid is a small quadrilateral muscle appearing like a continuation of the Sterno-thyroid. It arises from the oblique line on the side of the thyroid cartilage, and passes vertically upwards to be inserted into the lower border of the body and greater cornu of the hyoid bone.

Relations. By its external surface, with the Sterno-hyoid and Omo-hyoid muscles. By its internal surface, with the thyroid cartilage, the thyro-hyoid membrane, and the superior laryngeal vessels and nerve.
SUPRA-HYOID REGION.

The Omo-hyoid passes across the side of the neck, from the scapula to the hyoid bone. It consists of two fleshy bellies, united by a central tendon. It arises from the upper border of the scapula, and occasionally from the transverse ligament which crosses the suprascapular notch; its extent of attachment to the scapula varying from a few lines to an inch. From this origin, the posterior belly forms a flat, narrow fasciculus, which inclines forwards across the lower part of the neck, behind the Sterno-mastoid muscle, where it becomes tendinous; it then changes its direction, forming an obtuse angle, and the anterior belly ascends almost vertically upwards, close to the outer border of the Sterno-hyoid, to be inserted into the lower border of the body of the os hyoides, just external to the insertion of the Sterno-hyoid. The tendon of this muscle, which varies much in its length and form in different subjects, is held in its position by a process of the deep cervical fascia, which includes it in a sheath, and is prolonged down to be attached to the cartilage of the first rib. It is by this means that the angular form of the muscle is maintained.

This muscle subdivides each of the two large triangles at the side of the neck into two smaller triangles: the two posterior ones being the posterior superior or occipital, and the posterior inferior or subclavian; the two anterior, the anterior superior or superior carotid, and the anterior inferior or inferior carotid triangle.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Trapezius, Subclavius, the clavicle, the Sterno-mastoid, deep cervical fascia, Platysma, and integument. By its deep surface, with the Scaleni, brachial plexus, sheath of the common carotid artery, and internal jugular vein, the descendens noni nerve, Sterno-thyroid and Thyro-hyoid muscles.

Nerves. The Thyro-hyoid is supplied by the hypoglossal; the other muscles of this group by branches from the loop of communication between the descendens and communicans noni.

Actions. These muscles depress the larynx and hyoid bone, after they have been drawn up with the pharynx in the act of deglutition. The Omo-hyoid muscles not only depress the hyoid bone, but carry it backwards, and to one or the other side. They are also tensors of the cervical fascia. The Thyro-hyoid may act as an elevator of the thyroid cartilage, when the hyoid bone ascends, drawing upwards the thyroid cartilage behind the os hyoides.\(^1\)

3. SUPRA-HYOID REGION. (Figs. 248, 249.)

ELEVATORS OF THE OS HYOIDES—DEPRESSORS OF THE LOWER JAW.

Digastric.
Mylo-hyoid.

Stylo-hyoid.
Genio-hyoid.

Dissection. To dissect these muscles, a block should be placed beneath the back of the neck, and the head drawn backwards and retained in that position. On the removal of the deep fascia, the muscles are at once exposed.

The Digastric consists of two fleshy bellies united by an intermediate rounded tendon. It is a small muscle, situated below the side of the body of the lower jaw, and extending, in a curved form, from the side of the head to the symphysis of the jaw. The posterior belly, longer than the anterior, arises from the digastric groove on the inner side of the mastoid process of the temporal bone, and passes downwards, forwards, and inwards. The anterior belly, being reflected upwards and forwards, is inserted into a depression on the inner side of the lower border of the jaw, close to the symphysis. The tendon of the muscle perforates the Stylo-hyoid, and is held in connection with the side of the body of the hyoid bone by an aponeurotic loop, lined by a synovial membrane. A broad aponeurotic layer is given off from the tendon of the Digastric on each side, which is

---

\(^1\) It is this action of the Thyro-hyoid muscle which, as Dr. Buchanan has pointed out, "causes or permits the folding back of the epiglottis over the upper orifice of the larynx."—*Journal of Anat. and Phys.*, 2d series, No. III. p. 255.
attached to the body and great cornu of the hyoid bone: this is termed the supra-hyoid aponeurosis. It forms a strong layer of fascia between the anterior portion of the two muscles, and a firm investment for the other muscles of the supra-hyoid region which lie deeper.

The Digastric muscle divides the anterior superior triangle of the neck into two smaller triangles; the upper, or submaxillary, being bounded, above, by the lower jaw and mastoid process; below, by the two bellies of the Digastric muscle: the lower, or superior carotid triangle, being bounded, above, by the posterior belly of the Digastric; behind, by the Sterno-mastoid; below, by the Omo-hyoid.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Platysma, Sterno-mastoid and Tracheo-mastoid, part of the Stylo-hyoid muscle, and the parotid and submaxillary glands. By its deep surface, the anterior belly lies on the Mylo-hyoid; the posterior belly on the Stylo-glossus, Stylo-pharyngeus, and Hyo-glossus muscles, the external carotid artery, and its lingual and facial branches, the internal carotid artery, internal jugular vein, and hypoglossal nerve.

The Stylo-hyoid is a small, slender muscle, lying in front of, and above, the posterior belly of the Digastric. It arises from the middle of the outer surface of the styloid process; and, passing downwards and forwards, is inserted into the body of the hyoid bone, just at its junction with the greater cornu, and immediately above the Omo-hyoid. This muscle is perforated, near its insertion, by the tendon of the Digastric.

Relations. The same as the posterior belly of the Digastric.

The Digastric and Stylo-hyoid should be removed, in order to expose the next muscle.

The Mylo-hyoid is a flat triangular muscle, situated immediately beneath the anterior belly of the Digastric, and forming, with its fellow of the opposite side, a muscular floor for the cavity of the mouth. It arises from the whole length of the mylo-hyoid ridge, from the symphysis in front to the last molar tooth behind. The posterior fibres pass obliquely forwards, to be inserted into the body of the os hyoidei. The middle and anterior fibres are inserted into a median fibrous raphé, where they join at an angle with the fibres of the opposite muscle. This median raphé is sometimes wanting; the muscular fibres of the two sides are then directly continuous with one another.

Relations. By its cutaneous surface, with the Platysma, the anterior belly of the Digastric, the supra-hyoid fascia, the submaxillary gland, and submental vessels. By its deep or superior surface, with the Genio-hyoid, part of the Hyoglossus, and Stylo-glossus muscles, the lingual and gustatory nerves, the sublingual gland, and the buccal mucous membrane. Wharton's duct curves round its posterior border in its passage to the mouth.

Dissection. The Mylo-hyoid should now be removed, in order to expose the muscles which lie beneath; this is effected by detaching it from its attachments to the hyoid bone and jaw, and separating it by a vertical incision from its fellow of the opposite side.

The Genio-hyoid is a narrow, slender muscle, situated immediately beneath the inner border of the preceding. It arises from the inferior genial tubercle on the posterior surface of the symphysis of the jaw, and passes downwards and backwards, to be inserted into the anterior surface of the body of the os hyoidei. This muscle lies in close contact with its fellow of the opposite side, and increases slightly in breadth as it descends.

Relations. It is covered by the mylo-hyoid, and lies on the Genio-hyo-glossus.

Nerves. The Digastric is supplied, its anterior belly, by the mylo-hyoid branch of the inferior dental; its posterior belly, by the facial; the Stylo-hyoid, by the facial; the Mylo-hyoid, by the mylo-hyoid branch of the inferior dental; the Genio-hyoid, by the hypoglossal.

Actions. This group of muscles performs two very important actions. They

1 This refers to the depth of the muscles from the skin in dissecting. In the erect position of the body each of these muscles lies above the preceding.
raise the hyoid bone, and with it the base of the tongue, during the act of
deglutition; or, when the hyoid bone is fixed by its depressors and those of
the larynx, they depress the lower jaw. During the first act of deglutition,
when the mass is being driven from the mouth into the pharynx, the hyoid
bone, and with it the tongue, is carried upwards and forwards by the anterior
belly of the Digastric, the Mylo-hyoid, and Genio-hyoid muscles. In the second
act, when the mass is passing through the pharynx, the direct elevation of the
hyoid bone takes place by the combined action of all the muscles; and after
the food has passed, the hyoid bone is carried upwards and backwards by the
posterior belly of the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles, which assist in pre-
venting the return of the morsel into the mouth.

4. Lingual Region.

Muscles of the Tongue.

Genio-hyo-glossus. Lingualis.
Hyo-glossus. Stylo-glossus.
Palato-glossus.

Dissection. After completing the dissection of the preceding muscles, saw through the lower
jaw just external to the symphysis. Then draw the tongue forwards, and attach it, by a stitch,
to the nose; and its muscles, which are thus put on the stretch, may be examined.

The Genio-hyo-glossus has received its name from its triple attachment to
the jaw, hyoid bone, and tongue; it is a thin, flat, triangular muscle, placed

Fig. 250.—Muscles of the Tongue. Left Side.

vertically on either side of the middle line, its apex corresponding with its
point of attachment to the lower jaw, its base with its insertion into the tongue
and hyoid bone. It arises by a short tendon from the superior genial tubercle on the inner side of the symphysis of the jaw, immediately above the Geniohyoid; from this point, the muscle spreads out in a fan-like form, the inferior fibres passing downwards, to be inserted into the upper part of the body of the hyoid bone, a few being continued into the side of the pharynx; the middle fibres passing backwards, and the superior ones upwards and forwards, to be attached to the whole length of the under surface of the tongue, from the base to the apex.

**Relations.** By its *internal surface*, it is in contact with its fellow of the opposite side, from which it is separated, at the back part of the tongue, by the fibrous septum, which extends through the middle of the organ. By its *external surface*, with the Lingualis, Hyo-glossus, and Stylo-glossus, the lingual artery and hypoglossal nerve, the gustatory nerve, and sublingual gland. By its *upper border*, with the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth (frænum linguae). By its *lower border*, with the Genio-hyoid.

The **Hyo-glossus** is a thin, flat, quadrilateral muscle, which arises from the side of the body, the lesser cornu, and whole length of the greater cornu of the hyoid bone, and passing almost vertically upwards, is inserted into the side of the tongue, between the Stylo-glossus and Lingualis. Those fibres of this muscle which arise from the body, are directed upwards and backwards, overlapping those from the greater cornu, which are directed obliquely forwards. Those from the lesser cornu extend forwards and outwards along the side of the tongue, under cover of the portion arising from the body.

The difference in the direction of the fibres of this muscle, and their separate origin from different parts of the hyoid bone, led Albinus and other anatomists to describe it as three muscles, under the names of the Basio-glossus, the Keratoglossus, and the Chondro-glossus.

**Relations.** By its *external surface*, with the Digastri, the Stylo-hyoid, Stylo-glossus, and Mylo-hyoid muscles, the gustatory and hypoglossal nerves, Wharton's duct, and the sublingual gland. By its *deep surface*, with the Genio-hyo-glossus, Lingualis, and Middle constrictor, the lingual vessels, and the glossopharyngeal nerve.

The greater part of the muscular substance of the tongue is formed by its *intrinsic muscle*, the Lingualis, inferior, superficial, transverse and vertical. The

---

_Fig. 251.—A Longitudinal Section of the Tongue near the middle line, to show the Superficial Lingualis and the Intrinsic Vertical Fibres._

**inferior lingualis** (Figs. 250, 251) is a longitudinal band of muscular fibres situated on the under surface of the tongue, lying in the interval between the Hyoglossus and Genio-hyo-glossus, and extending from the base to the apex of the organ. Posteriorly, some of its fibres are lost in the base of the tongue, and others are occasionally attached to the hyoid bone. It blends with the fibres of the
LINGUAL REGION.

Stylo-glossus, in front of the Hyo-glossus, and is continued forwards as far as the apex of the tongue. It is in relation, by its under surface, with the ranine artery. The superficial lingualis (Fig. 251) consists of fibres running more or less longitudinally along the back of the tongue beneath the mucous membrane, and

Fig. 252.—A Transverse Section of the Tongue, showing the various Intrinsic and Extrinsic Muscles in their relative positions. The Intrinsic Vertical Fibres and the Ranine Artery are removed on one side, and shown on the other.

blending with the deeper fibres. At the sides of the tongue these fibres are crossed by those of the palato- and hyo-glossus. Between these two are found transverse fibres (Fig. 252) which arise from the median septum, and blend with the fibres of the palato-glossus and other muscles, as well as a large number of vertical fibres. The vertical fibres are arranged somewhat parallel with those of the genio-hyo-glossus, with which many of those near the middle line are continuous; they extend from the upper to the lower surface of the tongue, decussating with the fibres of the other muscles, and especially with the transverse. The interstices of the muscular fibres are filled with a large quantity of fat and glandular tissue.

A very distinct fibrous septum exists between the two halves of the tongue, so that the anastomoses between the two lingual arteries are not very free, a fact often illustrated by injecting one half of the tongue with colored size, while the other is left un.injected, or is injected of a different color.

The Stylo-glossus, the shortest and smallest of the three styloid muscles, arises from the anterior and outer side of the styloid process, near its centre, and from the stylo-maxillary ligament, to which its fibres, in most cases, are attached by a thin aponeurosis. Passing downwards and forwards, so as to become nearly horizontal in its direction, it divides upon the side of the tongue into two portions: one longitudinal, which is inserted along the side of the tongue, blending with the fibres of the Lingualis in front of the Hyo-glossus; the other oblique, which overlaps the Hyo-glossus muscle, and decussates with its fibres.

Relations. By its external surface, from above downwards, with the parotid gland, the Internal pterygoid muscle, the sublingual gland, the gustatory nerve, and the mucous membrane of the mouth. By its internal surface, with the tonsil, the Superior constrictor, and the Hyo-glossus muscle.

The Palato-glossus, or Constrictor Isthmi Fauclium, although it is one of the muscles of the tongue, serving to draw its base upwards during the act of deglutition, is more nearly associated with the soft palate, both in its situation and function; it will, consequently, be described with that group of muscles.

Nerves. The Palato-glossus is supplied by the palatine branches of Meckel's ganglion; the Lingualis, according to some authors, by the chorda tympani; the remaining muscles of this group, by the hypoglossal.

Actions. The movements of the tongue, although numerous and complicated, may be understood by carefully considering the direction of the fibres of its muscles. The Genio-hyo-glossi, by means of their posterior and inferior fibres, draw upwards the hyoid bone, bringing it and the base of the tongue forwards,
so as to protrude the apex from the mouth. The anterior fibres will draw the tongue back into the mouth. The whole length of these two muscles acting along the middle line of the tongue will draw it downwards, so as to make it concave from side to side, forming a channel along which fluids may pass towards the pharynx, as in sucking. The Hyo-glossi muscles draw down the sides of the tongue, so as to render it convex from side to side. The Lingual, superficial and inferior, by drawing downwards the centre and apex of the tongue, render it convex from before backwards. The Palato-glossi draw the base of the tongue upwards, and the Stylo-glossi upwards and backwards.

5. PHARYNGEAL REGION.

MUSCLES OF THE PHARYNX.

Constrictor Inferior. Constrictor Superior.
Constrictor Medius. Stylo-pharyngeus.

Palato-pharyngeus.

Dissection (Fig. 253). In order to examine the muscles of the pharynx, cut through the trachea and oesophagus just above the sternum, and draw them upwards by dividing the loose areolar tissue connecting the pharynx with the front of the vertebral column. The parts being drawn well forwards, apply the edge of the saw immediately behind the styloid processes, and saw the base of the skull through from below upwards. The pharynx and mouth should then be stuffed with tow, in order to distend its cavity and render the muscles tense and easier of dissection.

The Inferior Constrictor, the most superficial and the thickest of the three constrictors, arises from the side of the cricoid and thyroid cartilages. To the cricoid cartilage it is attached in the interval between the crico-thyroid muscle, in front, and the articular facet for the thyroid cartilage behind. To the thyroid cartilage it is attached to the oblique line on the side of the great ala, the cartilaginous surface behind it, nearly as far as its posterior border, and to the inferior cornu. From these attachments, the fibres spread backwards and inwards, to be inserted into the fibrous raphé in the posterior median line of the pharynx. The inferior fibres are horizontal, and continuous with the fibres of the oesophagus; the rest ascend, increasing in obliquity, and overlap the Middle constrictor. The superior laryngeal nerve passes near the upper border, and the inferior, or recurrent laryngeal, beneath the lower border of this muscle, previous to their entering the larynx.

Relations. It is covered by a dense cellular membrane which surrounds the entire pharynx. Behind, it is in relation with the vertebral column and the Longus colli muscle; laterally, with the thyroid gland, the common carotid artery, and the Sterno-thyroid muscle; by its internal surface, with the Middle constrictor, the Stylo-pharyngeus, Pa- lato-pharyngeus, the pharyngeal aponeurosis, and the mucous membrane of the pharynx.
PHARYNGEAL REGION.

The Middle Constrictor is a flattened, fan-shaped muscle, smaller than the preceding, and situated on a plane anterior to it. It arises from the whole length of the greater cornu of the hyoid bone, from the lesser cornu, and from the stylo-hyoid ligament. The fibres diverge from their origin: the lower ones descending beneath the Inferior constrictor, the middle fibres passing transversely, and the upper fibres ascending and overlapping the Superior constrictor. The muscle is inserted into the posterior median fibrous raphe, blending in the middle line with that of the opposite side.

Relations. This muscle is separated from the Superior constrictor by the glosso-pharyngeal nerve and the Stylo-pharyngeus muscle; and from the Inferior constrictor, by the superior laryngeal nerve. Behind, it lies on the vertebral column, the Longus colli, and the Rectus anticus major. On each side it is in relation with the carotid vessels, the pharyngeal-plexus, and some lymphatic glands. Near its origin, it is covered by the Hyo-glossus, from which it is separated by the lingual vessels. It lies upon the Superior constrictor, the Stylo-pharyngeus, the Palato-pharyngeus, the pharyngeal aponeurosis, and the mucous membrane.

The Superior Constrictor is a quadrilateral muscle, thinner and paler than the other constrictors, and situated at the upper part of the pharynx. It arises from the lower third of the margin of the internal pterygoid plate and its hamular process, from the contiguous portion of the palate bone and the reflected tendon of the Tensor palati muscle, from the pterygo-maxillary ligament, from the alveolar process above the posterior extremity of the mylo-hyoid ridge, and by a few fibres from the side of the tongue in connection with the Genio-hyo-glossus. From these points, the fibres curve backwards, to be inserted into the median raphe, being also prolonged by means of a fibrous aponeurosis to the pharyngeal spine on the basilar process of the occipital bone. The superior fibres arch beneath the Levator palati and the Eustachian tube, the interval between the upper border of the muscle and the basilar process being deficient in muscular fibres, and closed by fibrous membrane.

Relations. By its outer surface, with the vertebral column, the carotid vessels, the internal jugular vein, the three divisions of the eighth nerve and the ninth nerve, the Middle constrictor which overlaps it, and the Stylo-pharyngeus. It covers the Palato-pharyngeus and the tonsil, and is lined by the pharyngeal aponeurosis and by mucous membrane.

The Stylo-pharyngeus is a long, slender muscle, round above, broad and thin below. It arises from the inner side of the base of the styloid process, passes downwards along the side of the pharynx between the Superior and Middle constrictors, and spreads out beneath the mucous membrane, where some of its fibres are lost in the Constrictor muscles, and others, joining with the Palato-pharyngeus, are inserted into the posterior border of the thyroid cartilage. The glosso-pharyngeal nerve runs on the outer side of this muscle, and crosses over it in passing forward to the tongue.

Relations. Externally, with the Stylo-glossus muscle, the external carotid artery, the parotid gland, and the Middle constrictor. Internally, with the internal carotid, the internal jugular vein, the Superior constrictor, Palato-pharyngeus and mucous membrane.

Nerves. The muscles of this group are supplied by branches from the pharyngeal plexus and glosso-pharyngeal nerve, and the inferior constrictor, by an additional branch from the external laryngeal nerve, and by the recurrent laryngeal.

Actions. When deglutition is about to be performed, the pharynx is drawn upwards and dilated in different directions, to receive the morsel propelled into it from the mouth. The Stylo-pharyngei, which are much further removed from one another at their origin than at their insertion, draw the sides of the pharynx upwards and outwards, its breadth in the antero-posterior direction being increased by the larynx and tongue being carried forwards in their ascent.
As soon as the morsel is received in the pharynx, the Elevator muscles relax, the bag descends, and the Constrictors contract upon the morsel, and convey it gradually downwards into the oesophagus. Besides its action in deglutition, the pharynx also exerts an important influence in the modulation of the voice, especially in the production of the higher tones.

6. Palatal Region.

Muscles of the Soft Palate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Levator Palati</th>
<th>Azygos Uvulae</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tensor Palati</td>
<td>Palato-glossus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palato-Pharyngeus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dissection (Fig. 254). Lay open the pharynx from behind, by a vertical incision extending from its upper to its lower part, and partially divide the occipital attachment by a transverse incision on each side of the vertical one; the posterior surface of the soft palate is then exposed. Having fixed the uvula so as to make it tense, the mucous membrane and glands should be carefully removed from the posterior surface of the soft palate, and the muscles of this part are at once exposed.

Fig. 254.—Muscles of the Soft Palate. The Pharynx being laid open from behind.

The Levator Palati is a long, thick, rounded muscle, placed on the outer side of the posterior nares. It arises from the under surface of the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, and from the adjoining cartilaginous portion of the Eustachian tube; after passing into the pharynx, above the upper concave margin of the Superior constrictor, it descends obliquely downwards.
and inwards, its fibres spreading out in the posterior surface of the soft palate as far as the middle line, where they blend with those of the opposite side.

Relations. Externally, with the Tensor palati and Superior constrictor. Internally, with the mucous membrane of the pharynx. Posteriorly, with the mucous lining of the soft palate. This muscle must be removed and the pterygoid attachment of the Superior constrictor dissected away, in order to expose the next muscle.

The Circumflexus or Tensor Palati is a broad, thin, riband-like muscle, placed on the outer side of the preceding, and consisting of a vertical and a horizontal portion. The vertical portion arises by a broad, thin, and flat lamella from the scaphoid fossa at the base of the internal pterygoid plate, its origin extending as far back as the spine of the sphenoid; it also arises from the anterior aspect of the cartilaginous portion of the Eustachian tube; descending vertically between the internal pterygoid plate and the inner surface of the Internal pterygoid muscle, it terminates in a tendon which winds round the hamular process, being retained in this situation by some of the fibres of origin of the Internal pterygoid muscle, and lubricated by a bursa. The tendon or horizontal portion then passes horizontally inwards, and expands into a broad aponeurosis on the anterior surface of the soft palate, which unites in the median line with the aponeurosis of the opposite muscle, the fibres being attached in front to the transverse ridge on the horizontal portion of the palate bone.

Relations. Externally, with the Internal pterygoid. Internally, with the Levator palati, from which it is separated by the Superior constrictor, and the internal pterygoid plate. In the Soft palate, its aponeurotic expansion is anterior to that of the Levator palati, being covered by mucous membrane.

The Azygos Uvulae is not a single muscle, as implied by its name, but a pair of narrow cylindrical fleshy fasciculi, placed side by side in the median line of the soft palate. Each muscle arises from the posterior nasal spine of the palate bone, and from the contiguous tendinous aponeurosis of the soft palate, and descends to be inserted into the uvula.

Relations. Anteriorly, with the tendinous expansion of the Levatores palati; behind, with the mucous membrane.

The two next muscles are exposed by removing the mucous membranes from the pillars of the soft palate throughout nearly their whole extent.

The Palato-glossus (Constrictor Inlami Facium) is a small, fleshy fasciculus, narrower in the middle than at either extremity, forming, with the mucous membrane covering its surface, the anterior pillar of the soft palate. It arises from the anterior surface of the soft palate on each side of the uvula, and passing downwards, forwards, and outwards in front of the tonsil, is inserted into the side and dorsum of the tongue, where it blends with the fibres of the Stylo-glossus muscle. In the soft palate, the fibres of this muscle are continuous with those of the muscle of the opposite side.

The Palato-pharyngeus is a long, fleshy fasciculus, narrower in the middle than at either extremity, forming, with the mucous membrane covering its surface, the posterior pillar of the soft palate. It is separated from the preceding by an angular interval, in which the tonsil is lodged. It arises from the soft palate by an expanded fasciculus, which is divided into two parts by the Levator palati. The anterior fasciculus, the thicker, lies in the soft palate between the Levator and Tensor, and joins in the middle line the corresponding part of the opposite muscle; the posterior fasciculus lies in contact with the mucous membrane, and also joins with the corresponding muscle in the middle line. Passing outwards and downwards behind the tonsil, the Palato-pharyngeus joins the Stylo-pharyngeus, and is inserted with that muscle into the posterior border of the thyroid cartilage, some of its fibres being lost on the side of the pharynx, and others passing across the middle line posteriorly, to decussate with the muscle of the opposite side.
MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ.

**Relations.** In the soft palate, its anterior and posterior surfaces are covered by mucous membrane, from which it is separated by a layer of palatine glands. By its superior border, it is in relation with the Levator palati. Where it forms the posterior pillar of the fauces, it is covered by mucous membrane, excepting on its outer surface. In the pharynx it lies between the mucous membrane and the Constrictor muscles.

**Nerves.** The Tensor palati is supplied by a branch from the otic ganglion; the Levator palati, and Azygos uvule, by the facial, through the connection of its trunk with the Vidian, by the petrosal nerves; the other muscles, by the palatine branches of Meckel's ganglion.

**Actions.** During the first act of deglutition, the morsel of food is driven back into the fauces by the pressure of the tongue against the hard palate; the base of the tongue being, at the same time, retracted, and the larynx raised with the pharynx, and carried forwards under it. During the second stage, the epiglottis is pressed over the superior aperture of the larynx, and the morsel glides past it; then the Palato-glossi muscles, the constrictors of the fauces, contract behind the food; the soft palate is slightly raised by the Levator palati, and made tense by the Tensor palati; and the Palato-pharyngei contract, and come nearly together, the uvula filling up the slight interval between them. By these means the food is prevented passing into the upper part of the pharynx or the posterior nares; at the same time, the latter muscles form an inclined plane, directed obliquely downwards and backwards, along which the morsel descends into the lower part of the pharynx.

**Surgical Anatomy.** The muscles of the soft palate should be carefully dissected, the relations they bear to the surrounding parts especially examined, and their action attentively studied upon the dead subject, as the surgeon is required to divide one or more of these muscles in the operation of staphyloraphy. Sir W. Ferguson has shown, that in the congenital deficiency, called cleft palate, the edges of the fissure are forcibly separated by the action of the Levatores palati and Palato-pharyngei muscles, producing very considerable impediment to the healing process after the performance of the operation for uniting their margins by adhesion; he has, consequently, recommended the division of these muscles as one of the most important steps in the operation. This he effects by an incision made with a curved knife introduced behind the flap. The incision is to be half-way between the hamular process and Eustachian tube, and perpendicular to a line drawn between them. This incision perfectly accomplishes the division of the Levator palati. The Palato-pharyngeus may be divided by cutting across the posterior pillar of the soft palate, just below the tonsil, with a pair of blunt-pointed curved scissors; and the anterior pillar may be divided also. To divide the Levator palati, the plan recommended by Mr. Pollock is to be greatly preferred. The flap being put upon the stretch, a double-edged knife is passed through the soft palate, just on the inner side of the hamular process, and above the line of the Levator palati. The handle being now alternately raised and depressed, a sweeping cut is made along the posterior surface of the soft palate, and the knife withdrawn, leaving only a small opening in the mucous membrane on the anterior surface. If this operation is performed on the dead body, and the parts afterwards dissected, the Levator palati will be found completely divided.

7. VERTEBRAL REGION (ANTERIOR).

| Rectus Capitis Anticus Major. | Rectus Lateralis. |
| Rectus Capitis Anticus Minor. | Longus Colli. |

The **Rectus Capitis Anticus Major** (Fig. 255), broad and thick above, narrow below, appears like a continuation upwards of the Sca lentus anticus. It arises by four tendinous slips from the anterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebrae, and ascends, converging towards its fellow of the opposite side, to be inserted into the basilar process of the occipital bone.

**Relations.** By its anterior surface, with the pharynx, the sympathetic nerve, and the sheath inclosing the carotid artery, internal jugular vein, and phe nogastric nerve. By its posterior surface, with the Longus colli, the Rectus anticus minor, and the upper cervical vertebrae.

The **Rectus Capitis Anticus Minor** is a short flat muscle, situated immediately behind the upper part of the preceding. It arises from the anterior surface of
the lateral mass of the atlas, and from the root of its transverse process, and passing obliquely upwards and inwards, is inserted into the basilar process immediately behind the preceding muscle.

*Relations.* By its anterior surface, with the Rectus anticus major. By its posterior surface, with the front of the occipito-atlantal articulation. Externally, with the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic.

Fig. 255.—The Prevertebral Muscles.

The *Rectus Lateralis* is a short flat muscle, which arises from the upper surface of the transverse process of the atlas, and is inserted into the under surface of the jugular process of the occipital bone.

*Relations.* By its anterior surface, with the internal jugular vein. By its posterior surface, with the vertebral artery. On its outer side lies the occipital artery.

The *Longus Colli* is a long flat muscle, situated on the anterior surface of the spine, between the atlas and the third dorsal vertebra. It is broad in the middle, narrow and pointed at each extremity, and consists of three portions, a superior oblique, an inferior oblique, and a vertical portion. The *superior oblique portion* arises from the anterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the third, fourth, and fifth cervical vertebrae; and, ascending obliquely inwards, is inserted by a narrow tendon into the tubercle on the anterior arch of the atlas. The *inferior oblique portion*, the smallest part of the muscle, arises from the bodies of the first two or three dorsal vertebrae; and ascending obliquely outwards, is inserted into the transverse processes of the fifth and sixth cervical vertebrae.

The *vertical portion* lies directly on the front of the spine, and is extended
between the bodies of the lower three cervical and the upper three dorsal vertebre below, and the bodies of the second, third, and fourth cervical vertebre above.

**Relations.** By its anterior surface, with the pharynx, the oesophagus, sympathetic nerve, the sheath of the great vessels of the neck, the inferior thyroid artery, and recurrent laryngeal nerve. By its posterior surface, with the cervical and dorsal portions of the spine. Its inner border is separated from the opposite muscle by a considerable interval below; but they approach each other above.

8. VERTEBRAL REGION (LATERAL).

**Scalenus Anticus.**

**Scalenus Medius.**

**Scalenus Posticus.**

The *Scalenus Anticus* is a conical-shaped muscle, situated deeply at the side of the neck, behind the Sterno-mastoid. It arises by a narrow, flat tendon from the tubercle on the inner border and upper surface of the first rib; and, ascending almost vertically, is inserted into the anterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebre. The lower part of this muscle separates the subclavian artery and vein: the latter being in front, and the former, with the brachial plexus, behind.

**Relations.** In front, with the clavicle, the Subclavius, Sterno-mastoid, and Omo-hyoid muscles, the Transversalis colli, and ascending cervical arteries, the subclavian vein, and the phrenic nerve. By its posterior surface, with the pleura, the subclavian artery, and brachial plexus of nerves. It is separated from the *Longus colli*, on the inner side, by the vertebral artery.

The *Scalenus Medius*, the largest and longest of the three Scaleni, arises, by a broad origin, from the upper surface of the first rib, behind the groove for the subclavian artery, as far back as the tubercle; and, ascending along the side of the vertebral column, is inserted, by separate tendinous slips, into the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the lower six cervical vertebre. It is separated from the *Scalenus anticus* by the subclavian artery below, and the cervical nerves above.

**Relations.** By its anterior surface, with the Sterno-mastoid; it is crossed by the clavicle, the Omo-hyoid muscle, and subclavian artery. To its outer side is the Levator anguli scapulae, and the *Scalenus posticus* muscle.

The *Scalenus Posticus*, the smallest of the three Scaleni, arises by a thin tendon from the outer surface of the second rib, behind the attachment of the Serratus magnus, and, enlarging as it ascends, is inserted, by two or three separate tendons, into the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the lower two or three cervical vertebre. This is the most deeply placed of the three Scaleni, and is occasionally blended with the *Scalenus medius*.

**Nerves.** The Rectus capitis anticus major and minor and the Rectus lateralis are supplied by the suboccipital and deep branches of the cervical plexus; the *Longus colli* and *Scaleni*, by branches from the lower cervical nerves.

**Actions.** The Rectus anticus major and minor are the direct antagonists of the muscles at the back of the neck, serving to restore the head to its natural position after it has been drawn backwards. These muscles also serve to flex the head, and, from their obliquity, rotate it, so as to turn the face to one or the other side. The *Longus colli* will flex and slightly rotate the cervical portion of the spine. The Scaleni muscles, taking their fixed point from below, draw down the transverse processes of the cervical vertebre, bending the spinal column to one or the other side. If the muscles of both sides act, the spine will be kept erect. When they take their fixed point from above, they elevate the first and second ribs, and are, therefore, inspiratory muscles.
MUSCLES AND FASCIAE OF THE TRUNK.

The muscles of the Trunk may be arranged in four groups: the muscles of the Back, of the Abdomen, of the Thorax, and of the Perinaenum.

MUSCLES OF THE BACK.

The muscles of the Back are very numerous, and may be subdivided into five layers:—

**FIRST LAYER.**
- Trapezius.
- Latissimus dorsi.
- **Cervical Region.**
  - Longissimus dorsi.
  - Spinalis dorsi.

**SECOND LAYER.**
- Levator anguli scapulae.
- Rhomboideus minor.
- Rhomboideus major.
- Cervicalis ascendens.
- Transversalis colli.
- Trachelo-mastoid.
- Complexus.
- Biventer cervicis.
- Spinalis colli.

**THIRD LAYER.**
- Serratus posticus superior.
- Serratus posticus inferior.
- Splenius capitis.
- Splenius colli.
- Semispinalis dorsi.
- Semispinalis colli.
- Multifidus spineae.
- Rotatores spineae.
- Supraspinales.
- Interspinales.
- Extensor coccygis.
- Intertransversales.

**FOURTH LAYER.**
- Sacral and Lumbar Regions.
- Erector spineae.
- Dorsal Region.
- Sacro-lumbalis.
- Musculus accessorius ad sacro-lumbalem.
- Rectus capitis posticus major.
- Rectus capitis posticus minor.
- Obliquus capitis superior.
- Obliquus capitis inferior.

**FIRST LAYER.**

**Latissimus Dorsi.**

*Dissection (Fig. 256).* Place the body in the prone position, with the arms extended over the sides of the table, and the chest and abdomen supported by several blocks, so as to render the muscles tense. Then make an incision along the middle line of the back, from the occipital protuberance to the coccyx. Make a transverse incision from the upper end of this to the mastoid process; and a third incision from its lower end, along the crest of the ilium to about its middle. This large intervening space should, for convenience of dissection, be subdivided by a fourth incision, extending obliquely from the spinous process of the last dorsal vertebra, upwards and outwards, to the acromion process. This incision corresponds with the lower border of the Trapezius muscle. The flaps of integument are then to be removed in the direction shown in the figure.

The Trapezius is a broad, flat, triangular muscle, placed immediately beneath the skin, and covering the upper and back part of the neck and shoulders. It arises from the inner third of the superior curved line of the occipital bone; from the ligamentum nuchae, the spinous process of the seventh cervical, and those of all the dorsal vertebrae; and from the corresponding portion of the supraspinous ligament. From this origin, the superior fibres proceed downwards and outwards, the inferior ones, upwards and outwards; and the middle fibres, horizontally; and are inserted, the superior ones, into the outer third of the posterior border of the clavicle; the middle fibres into the inner margin of the acromion process, and into the superior lip of the crest of the spine of the scapula; the inferior fibres converge near the scapula, and are attached to a
triangular aponeurosis, which glides over a smooth surface at the inner extremity of the spine, and is inserted into a tubercle at the outer part of the surface. The Trapezius is fleshy in the greater part of its extent, but tendinous at its origin and insertion. At its occipital origin, it is connected to the bone by a thin fibrous lamina, firmly adherent to the skin, and wanting the lustrous, shining appearance of aponeurosis. At its origin from the spines of the vertebrae, it is connected to the bones by means of a broad semi-elliptical aponeurosis, which occupies the space between the sixth cervical and the third dorsal vertebrae, and forms, with the aponeurosis of the opposite muscle, a tendinous ellipse. The rest of the muscle arises by numerous short tendinous fibres. If the Trapezius is dissected on both sides, the two muscles resemble a trapezium, or diamond-shaped quadrangle; two angles corresponding to the shoulders; a third to the occipital protuberance; and the fourth to the spinous process of the last dorsal vertebra.

The clavicular insertion of this muscle varies as to the extent of its attachment; it sometimes advances as far as the middle of the clavicle, and may even become blended with the posterior edge of the Sterno-mastoid, or overlap it. This should be borne in mind in the operation for tying the third part of the subclavian artery.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the integument, to which it is closely adherent above, but separated below by an aponeurotic lamina. By its deep surface, in the neck, with the Complexus, Splenius, Levator anguli scapulae, and Rhomboideus minor; in the back, with the Rhomboideus major, Supraspinatus, Infra-spina, a small portion of the Serratus posticus superior, the vertebral aponeurosis (which separates it from the Erector spinae), and the Latissimus dorsi. The spinal accessory nerve passes beneath the anterior border of this muscle, near the clavicle. The interior margin of its cervical portion forms the posterior boundary of the posterior triangle of the neck, the other boundaries being the Sterno-mastoid in front, and the clavicle below.

The Ligamentum Nuchae (Fig. 257) is a thin band of condensed cellulose-fibrous membrane, placed in the line of union between the two Trapezi in the neck. It extends from the external occipital protuberance to the spinous process of the seventh cervical vertebra, where it is continuous with the supraspinous ligament. From its anterior surface a fibrous slip is given off to the spinous process of each of the cervical vertebrae, excepting the atlas, so as to form a septum between the muscles on each side of the neck. In man, it is merely the rudiment of an important elastic ligament, which, in some of the lower animals, serves to sustain the weight of the head.

The Latissimus Dorsi is a broad flat muscle, which covers the lumbar and the lower half of the dorsal regions, and is gradually contracted into a narrow fasciculus at its insertion into the humerus. It arises by an aponeurosis from the spinous processes of the six inferior dorsal, from those of the lumbar and sacral vertebrae, and from the supraspinous ligament. Over the sacrum, the aponeurosis of this muscle blends with the tendon of the Erector spinae. It also arises from
Fig. 257.—Muscles of the Back. On the Left Side is exposed the First Layer; on the Right Side, the Second Layer and part of the Third.
the external lip of the crest of the ilium, behind the origin of the External oblique, and by fleshy digitations from the three or four lower ribs, which are interposed between similar processes of the External oblique muscle (Fig. 260, p. 386). From this extensive origin the fibres pass in different directions, the upper ones horizontally, the middle obliquely upwards, and the lower vertically upwards, so as to converge and form a thick fasciculus, which crosses the inferior angle of the scapula, and occasionally receives a few fibres from it. The muscle then curves around the lower border of the Teres major, and is twisted upon itself, so that the superior fibres become at first posterior and then inferior, and the vertical fibres at first anterior and then superior. It then terminates in a short quadrilateral tendon, about three inches in length, which, passing in front of the tendon of the Teres major, is inserted into the inner lip and into the bottom of the bicipital groove of the humerus, and its insertion extends higher on the humerus than that of the tendon of the Pectoralis major. The lower border of the tendon of this muscle is united with that of the Teres major, the surfaces of two being separated by a bursa; another bursa is sometimes interposed between the muscle and the inferior angle of the scapula.

A muscular slip, varying from 3 to 4 inches in length, and from \( \frac{1}{2} \) to \( \frac{3}{4} \) of an inch in breadth, occasionally arises from the upper edge of the Latissimus dorsi, above the middle of the posterior fold of the axilla, and crosses the axilla in front of the axillary vessels and nerves, to join the under surface of the tendon of the Pectoralis major, the Coraco-brachialis, or the fascia over the Biceps. The position of this abnormal slip is a point of interest in its relation to the axillary artery, as it crosses the vessel just above the spot usually selected for the application of a ligature, and may mislead the surgeon during the operation. It may be easily recognized by the transverse direction of its fibres. Dr. Struthers found it, in 8 out of 105 subjects, occurring seven times on both sides.

**Relations.** Its superficial surface is subcutaneous, excepting at its upper part, where it is covered by the Trapezius. By its deep surface, it is in relation with the Erector spinae, the Serratus posterior inferior, the lower intercostal muscles and ribs, the Serratus magnus, inferior angle of the scapula, Rhomboideus major, Infraspinatus, and Teres major. Its outer margin is separated below, from the External oblique, by a small triangular interval; and another triangular interval exists between its upper border and the margin of the Trapezius, in which the Intercostal and Rhomboideus major muscles are exposed.

**Nerves.** The Trapezius is supplied by the spinal accessory, and deep branches of the cervical plexus; the Latissimus dorsi by the long subscapular nerve.

---

**SECOND LAYER.**

**Levator Anguli Scapulae.**

**Rhomboideus Minor.**

**Rhomboideus Major.**

**Dissection.** The Trapezius must be removed in order to expose the next layer; to effect this, detach the muscle from its attachment to the clavicle and spine of the scapula, and turn it back towards the spine.

The **Levator Anguli Scapulae** is situated at the back part and side of the neck. It arises by four tendinous slips from the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the three or four upper cervical vertebrae; these becoming fleshy are united so as to form a flat muscle, which, passing downwards and backwards, is inserted into the posterior border of the scapula, between the superior angle and the triangular smooth surface at the root of the spine.

**Relations.** By its superficial (anterior) surface, with the integument, Trapezius, and Sternal-mastoid. By its deep (posterior) surface, with the Splenius colli, Transversalis colli, Cervicalis ascendens, and Serratus posticus superior, and with the transversalis colli and posterior scapular arteries.

The **Rhomboideus Minor** arises from the ligamentum nuchae and spinous processes of the seventh cervical and first dorsal vertebrae. Passing downwards and outwards, it is inserted into the margin of the triangular smooth surface at
the root of the spine of the scapula. This small muscle is usually separated from the Rhomboideus major by a slight cellular interval.

The Rhomboideus Major is situated immediately below the preceding, the adjacent margins of the two being occasionally united. It arises by tendinous fibres from the spinous processes of the four or five upper dorsal vertebrae and the supraspinous ligament, and is inserted into a narrow tendinous arch, attached above to the triangular surface near the spine; below, to the inferior angle, the arch being connected to the border of the scapula by a thin membrane. When the arch extends, as it occasionally does, but a short distance, the muscular fibres are inserted into the scapula itself.

Relations. By their superficial (posterior) surface, with the integument and Trapezius; the Rhomboideus major, with the Latissimus dorsi. By their deep (anterior) surface, with the Serratus posticus superior, posterior scapular artery, part of the Erector spinae, the intercostal muscles and ribs.

Nerves. These muscles are supplied by branches from the fifth cervical nerve, and additional filaments from the deep branches of the cervical plexus are distributed to the Levator anguli scapulae.

Actions. The movements effected by the preceding muscles are numerous, as may be conceived from their extensive attachment. If the head is fixed, the upper part of the Trapezius will elevate the point of the shoulder, as in supporting weights; when the middle and lower fibres are brought into action, a partial rotation of the scapula upon the side of the chest is produced. If the shoulders are fixed, both Trapezi in acting together will draw the head directly backwards, or if only one acts, the head is drawn to the corresponding side.

The Latissimus Dorsi, when it acts upon the humerus, draws it backwards and downwards, and at the same time rotates it inwards. If the arm is fixed, the muscle may act in various ways upon the trunk; thus, it may raise the lower ribs and assist in forcible inspiration, or if both arms are fixed, the two muscles may assist the abdominal and great Pectoral muscles in drawing the whole trunk forwards, as in climbing or walking on crutches.

The Levator Anguli Scapulae raises the superior angle of the scapula after it has been depressed by the lower fibres of the Trapezius, whilst the Rhomboid muscles carry the inferior angle backwards and upwards, thus producing a slight rotation of the scapula upon the side of the chest. If the shoulder be fixed, the Levator anguli scapulae may incline the neck to the corresponding side. The Rhomboid muscles acting together with the middle and inferior fibres of the Trapezius, will draw the scapula directly backwards towards the spine.

Third Layer.

Serratus Posticus Superior. Serratus Posticus Inferior.

Splenius Splenius Capitis. { Splenius Colli.

Dissection. To bring into view the third layer of muscles, remove the whole of the second, together with the Latissimus dorsi; by cutting through the Levator anguli scapulae and Rhomboideus muscles near their insertion, and reflecting them upwards, to expose the Serratus posticus superior, dividing the Latissimus dorsi in the middle by a vertical incision carried from its upper to its lower part, and reflecting the two halves of the muscle.

The Serratus Posticus Superior is a thin, flat, quadrilateral muscle, situated at the upper and back part of the thorax. It arises by a thin and broad aponeurosis from the ligamentum nuchæ, and from the spinous processes of the last cervical and two or three upper dorsal vertebrae. Inclining downwards and outwards, it becomes muscular, and is inserted, by four fleshy digitations, into the upper borders of the second, third, fourth, and fifth ribs, a little beyond their angles.

Relations. By its superficial surface with the Trapezius, Rhomboidei, and
the external lip of the crest of the ilium, behind the origin of the External oblique, and by fleshy digitations from the three or four lower ribs, which are interposed between similar processes of the External oblique muscle (Fig. 260, p. 386). From this extensive origin the fibres pass in different directions, the upper ones horizontally, the middle obliquely upwards, and the lower vertically upwards, so as to converge and form a thick fasciculus, which crosses the inferior angle of the scapula, and occasionally receives a few fibres from it. The muscle then curves around the lower border of the Teres major, and is twisted upon itself, so that the superior fibres become at first posterior and then inferior, and the vertical fibres at first anterior and then superior. It then terminates in a short quadrilateral tendon, about three inches in length, which, passing in front of the tendon of the Teres major, is inserted into the inner lip and into the bottom of the bicipital groove of the humerus, and its insertion extends higher on the humerus than that of the tendon of the Pectoralis major. The lower border of the tendon of this muscle is united with that of the Teres major, the surfaces of two being separated by a bursa; another bursa is sometimes interposed between the muscle and the inferior angle of the scapula.

A muscular slip, varying from 3 to 4 inches in length, and from ½ to ¾ of an inch in breadth, occasionally arises from the upper edge of the Latissimus dorsi, about the middle of the posterior fold of the axilla, and crosses the axilla in front of the axillary vessels and nerves, to join the under surface of the tendon of the Pectoralis major, the Coraco-brachialis or the fascia over the Biceps. The position of this abnormal slip is a point of interest in its relation to the axillary artery, as it crosses the vessel just above the spot usually selected for the application of a ligature, and may mislead the surgeon during the operation. It may be easily recognized by the transverse direction of its fibres. Dr. Struthers found it, in 8 out of 105 subjects, occurring seven times on both sides.

Relations. Its superficial surface is subcutaneous, excepting at its upper part, where it is covered by the Trapezius. By its deep surface, it is in relation with the Erector spinae, the Serratus posticus inferior, the lower intercostal muscles and ribs, the Serratus magnus, inferior angle of the scapula, Rhomboideus major, Infraspinitus, and Teres major. Its outer margin is separated below, from the External oblique, by a small triangular interval; and another triangular interval exists between its upper border and the margin of the Trapezius, in which the Intercostal and Rhomboideus major muscles are exposed.

Nerves. The Trapezius is supplied by the spinal accessory, and deep branches of the cervical plexus; the Latissimus dorsi by the long subscapular nerve.

SECOND LAYER.

Levator Anguli Scapulae. Rhomboideus Minor.
Rhomboideus Major.

Dissection. The Trapezius must be removed in order to expose the next layer; to effect this, detach the muscle from its attachment to the clavicle and spine of the scapula, and turn it back towards the spine.

The Levator Anguli Scapulae is situated at the back part and side of the neck. It arises by four tendinous slips from the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the three or four upper cervical vertebrae; these becoming fleshy are united so as to form a flat muscle, which, passing downwards and backwards, is inserted into the posterior border of the scapula, between the superior angle and the triangular smooth surface at the root of the spine.

Relations. By its superficial (anterior) surface, with the integument, Trapezius, and Sterno-mastoid. By its deep (posterior) surface, with the Splenius colli, Transversalis colli, Cervicalis ascendens, and Serratus posticus superior, and with the transversalis colli and posterior scapular arteries.

The Rhomboideus Minor arises from the ligamentum nuchae and spino-cervical processes of the seventh cervical and first dorsal vertebrae. Passing downwards and outwards, it is inserted into the margin of the triangular smooth surface at
the root of the spine of the scapula. This small muscle is usually separated from the Rhomboideus major by a slight cellular interval.

The Rhomboideus Major is situated immediately below the preceding, the adjacent margins of the two being occasionally united. It arises by tendinous fibres from the spinous processes of the four or five upper dorsal vertebrae and the supraspinous ligament, and is inserted into a narrow tendinous arch, attached above to the triangular surface near the spine; below, to the inferior angle, the arch being connected to the border of the scapula by a thin membrane. When the arch extends, as it occasionally does, but a short distance, the muscular fibres are inserted into the scapula itself.

Relations. By their superficial (posterior) surface, with the integument and Trapezius; the Rhomboideus major, with the Latissimus dorsi. By their deep (anterior) surface, with the Serratus posticus superior, posterior scapular artery, part of the Erector spinae, the intercostal muscles and ribs.

Nerves. These muscles are supplied by branches from the fifth cervical nerve, and additional filaments from the deep branches of the cervical plexus are distributed to the Levator anguli scapulae.

Actions. The movements effected by the preceding muscles are numerous, as may be conceived from their extensive attachment. If the head is fixed, the upper part of the Trapezius will elevate the point of the shoulder, as in supporting weights; when the middle and lower fibres are brought into action, a partial rotation of the scapula upon the side of the chest is produced. If the shoulders are fixed, both Trapeziu acting together will draw the head directly backwards, or if only one acts, the head is drawn to the corresponding side.

The Latissimus Dorsi, when it acts upon the humerus, draws it backwards and downwards, and at the same time rotates it inwards. If the arm is fixed, the muscle may act in various ways upon the trunk; thus, it may raise the lower ribs and assist in forcible inspiration, or if both arms are fixed, the two muscles may assist the abdominal and great Pectoral muscles in drawing the whole trunk forwards, as in climbing or walking on crutches.

The Levator Anguli Scapulae raises the superior angle of the scapula after it has been depressed by the lower fibres of the Trapezius, whilst the Rhomboid muscles carry the inferior angle backwards and upwards, thus producing a slight rotation of the scapula upon the side of the chest. If the shoulder is fixed, the Levator anguli scapulae may incline the neck to the corresponding side. The Rhomboid muscles acting together with the middle and inferior fibres of the Trapezius, will draw the scapula directly backwards towards the spine.

Third Layer.

Serratus Posticus Superior. Serratus Posticus Inferior.

Splenius { Splenius Capitis.
{ Splenius Colli.

Dissection. To bring into view the third layer of muscles, remove the whole of the second, together with the Latissimus dorsi; by cutting through the Levator anguli scapulae and Rhomboideus muscles near their insertion, and reflecting them upwards, to expose the Serratus posticus superior, dividing the Latissimus dorsi in the middle by a vertical incision carried from its upper to its lower part, and reflecting the two halves of the muscle.

The Serratus Posticus Superior is a thin, flat, quadrilateral muscle, situated at the upper and back part of the thorax. It arises by a thin and broad aponeurosis from the ligamentum nuchae, and from the spinous processes of the last cervical and two or three upper dorsal vertebrae. Inclining downwards and outwards, it becomes muscular, and is inserted, by four fleshy digitations, into the upper borders of the second, third, fourth, and fifth ribs, a little beyond their angles.

Relations. By its superficial surface with the Trapezius, Rhomboidei, and
Serratus magnus. By its deep surface, with the Splenius, upper part of the Erector spinae, Intercostal muscles and ribs.

The Serratus Posticus Inferior is situated at the junction of the dorsal and lumbar regions: it is of an irregularly quadrilateral form, broader than the preceding, and separated from it by a considerable interval. It arises by a thin aponeurosis from the spinoïd processes of the last two dorsal and two or three upper lumbar vertebrae, and from the interspinous ligaments. Passing obliquely upwards and outwards, it becomes fleshy, and divides into four flat digitations, which are inserted into the lower borders of the four lower ribs, a little beyond their angles.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Latissimus dorsi, with the aponeurosis of which its own aponeurotic origin is inseparably blended. By its deep surface, with the lumbar fascia, the Erector spinae, ribs and Intercostal muscles. Its upper margin is continuous with the vertebral aponeurosis.

The Vertebral Aponeurosis is a thin aponeurotic lamina, extending along the whole length of the back part of the thoracic region, serving to bind down the Erector spinae, and separating it from those muscles which connect the spine to the upper extremity. It consists of longitudinal and transverse fibres blended together, forming a thin lamella, which is attached in the median line to the spinoïd processes of the dorsal vertebrae; externally, to the angles of the ribs; and below, to the upper border of the Inferior serratus and tendon of the Latissimus dorsi; above, it passes beneath the Splenius, and blends with the deep fascia of the neck.

Now detach the Serratus posticus superior from its origin, and turn it outwards, when the Splenius muscle will be brought into view.

The Splenius is situated at the back of the neck and upper part of the dorsal region. At its origin, it is a single muscle, narrow, and pointed in form; but it soon becomes broader, and divides into two portions, which have separate insertions. It arises, by tendinous fibres, from the lower half of the ligamentum nuchae, from the spinoïd processes of the last cervical and of the six upper dorsal vertebrae, and from the supraspinous ligament. From this origin, the fleshy fibres proceed obliquely upwards and outwards, forming a broad flat muscle, which divides as it ascends into two portions, the Splenius capitis and Splenius colli.

The Splenius Capitis is inserted into the mastoid process of the temporal bone, and into the rough surface on the occipital bone beneath the superior curved line.

The Splenius Colli is inserted, by tendinous fasciculi, into the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the three or four upper cervical vertebrae.

The Splenius is separated from its fellow of the opposite side by a triangular interval, in which is seen the Complexus.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Trapezius, from which it is separated below by the Rhomboïdei and the Serratus posterior superior. It is covered at its insertion by the Sterno-mastoid. By its deep surface, with the Spinalis dorsi, Longissimus dorsi, Semispinalis colli, Complexus, Trachelomastoid, and Transversalis colli.

Nerves. The Splenius and Superior serratus are supplied from the external posterior branches of the cervical nerves; the Inferior serratus from the external branches of the dorsal nerves.

Actions. The Serrati are respiratory muscles acting in antagonism to each other. The Serratus posterior superior elevates the ribs; it is, therefore, an inspiratory muscle; while the Serratus inferior draws the lower ribs downwards, and is a muscle of expiration. This muscle is also probably a tensor of the vertebral aponeurosis. The Splenii muscles of the two sides, acting together, draw the head directly backwards, assisting the Trapezius and Complexus;
acti ng separately, they draw the head to one or the other side, and slightly rotate it, turning the face to the same side. They also assist in supporting the head in the erect position.

**FOURTH LAYER.**

**Sacral and Lumbar Regions.**

- Erector Spinae.
- Dorsal Region.
- Sacro-lumbalis.
- Musculus Accessorius ad Sacro-lumbalem.
- Longissimus Dorsi.
- Spinalis Dorsi.

**Cervical Region.**

- Cervicalis Ascendens.
- Transversalis Colli.
- Tracheo-mastoid.
- Complexus.
- Biventer Cervicis.
- Spinalis Colli.

**Dissection.** To expose the muscles of the fourth layer, remove entirely the Serrati and vertebral aponeurosis. Then detach the Splenius by separating its attachment to the spinous processes, and reflecting it outwards.

The **Erector Spinae** (Fig. 258), and its prolongations in the dorsal and cervical regions, fill up the vertebral groove on each side of the spine. It is covered in the lumbar region by the lumbar aponeurosis; in the dorsal region by the Serrati muscles and the vertebral aponeurosis; and in the cervical region by a layer of cervical fascia continued beneath the Trapezius. This large muscular and tendinous mass varies in size and structure at different parts of the spine. In the sacral region, the Erector spinae is narrow and pointed, and its origin chiefly tendinous in structure. In the lumbar region, the muscle becomes enlarged, and forms a large fleshy mass. In the dorsal region, it subdivides into two parts, which gradually diminish in size as they ascend to be inserted into the vertebræ and ribs, and are gradually lost in the cervical region, where a number of special muscles are superadded; which are continued upwards to the head, and support it upon the spine.

The Erector spinae arises from the sacro-iliac groove, and from the anterior surface of a very broad and thick tendon, which is attached, internally, to the spines of the sacrum, to the spinous processes of the lumbar and three lower dorsal vertebrae, and the supraspinous ligament; externally, to the back part of the inner lip of the crest of the ilium, and to the series of eminences on the posterior part of the sacrum, which represent the transverse processes, where it blends with the great sacro-sciatic ligament. The muscular fibres form a single large fleshy mass, bounded in front by the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae, and by the middle lamella of the aponeurosis of origin of the Transversalis muscle. Opposite the last rib, it divides into two parts, the Sacro-lumbalis, and the Longissimus dorsi.

The **Sacro-lumbalis** (Ilio-costalis), the external and smaller portion of the Erector spinae, is inserted, by six or seven flattened tendons, into the angles of the six lower ribs. If this muscle is reflected forwards, it will be seen to be reinforced by a series of muscular slips, which arise from the angles of the ribs; by means of these the Sacro-lumbalis is continued upwards to the upper ribs, and the cervical portion of the spine. The accessory portions form two additional muscles, the Musculus accessorius and the Cervicalis ascendens.

The **Musculus accessorius ad Sacro-lumbalem** arises, by separate flattened tendons, from the angles of the six lower ribs; these become muscular, and are finally inserted, by separate tendons, into the angles of the six upper ribs.

The **Cervicalis ascendens** is the continuation of the Accessorius upwards into the neck; it is situated on the inner side of the tendons of the Accessorius, arising from the angles of the four or five upper ribs, and is inserted by a series

---

1 This muscle is sometimes called "Cervicalis descendens." The student should remember that these long muscles take their fixed point from above or from below, according to circumstances.
Fig. 258.—Muscles of the Back. Deep Layers.
OF THE BACK.

of slender tendons into the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebrae.

The Longissimus Dorsi, the inner and larger portion of the Erector spine, arises, with the Sacro-lumbalis, from the common origin above described. In the lumbar region, where it is as yet blended with the Sacro-lumbalis, some of the fibres are attached to the whole length of the posterior surface of the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae, to the tubercles at the back of the articular processes, and to the middle layer of the aponeurosis of origin of the Transversalis abdominis muscle. In the dorsal region, the Longissimus dorsi is inserted, by long thin tendons, into the tips of the transverse processes of all the dorsal vertebrae, and into from seven to eleven ribs between their tubercles and angles. This muscle is continued upwards, to the cranium and cervical portion of the spine, by means of two additional muscles, the Transversalis colli and Trachelo-mastoid.

The Transversalis Colli, placed on the inner side of the Longissimus dorsi, arises by long thin tendons from the summits of the transverse processes of the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth dorsal vertebrae, and is inserted by similar tendons into the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the five lower cervical.

The Trachelo-mastoid lies on the inner side of the preceding, between it and the Complexus muscle. It arises by four tendons, from the transverse processes of the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth dorsal vertebrae and by additional separate tendons from the articular processes of the three or four lower cervical. The fibres form a small muscle, which ascends to be inserted into the posterior margin of the mastoid process, beneath the Splenius and Sterno-mastoid muscles. This small muscle is almost always crossed by a tendinous intersection near its insertion into the mastoid process.

The Spinalis Dorsi connects the spinous processes of the upper lumbar and the dorsal vertebrae together by a series of muscular and tendinous slips, which are intimately blended with the Longissimus dorsi. It is situated at the inner side of the Longissimus dorsi, arising, by three or four tendons, from the spinous processes of the first two lumbar and the last two dorsal vertebrae: these uniting, form a small muscle, which is inserted, by separate tendons, into the spinous processes of the dorsal vertebrae, the number varying from four to eight. It is intimately united with the Semispinalis dorsi, which lies beneath it.

The Spinalis Colli is a small muscle, connecting together the spinous processes of the cervical vertebrae, and analogous to the Spinalis dorsi in the dorsal region. It varies considerably in its size, and in its extent of attachment to the vertebrae, not only in different bodies, but on the two sides of the same body. It usually arises by fleshy or tendinous slips, varying from two to four in number, from the spinous processes of the fifth and sixth cervical vertebrae, and occasionally from the first and second dorsal, and is inserted into the spinous process of the axis, and occasionally into the spinous process of the two vertebrae below it. This muscle was found absent in five cases out of twenty-four.

The Complexus is a broad thick muscle, situated at the upper and back part of the neck, beneath the Splenius, and internal to the Transversalis colli and Trachelo-mastoid. It arises, by a series of tendons, about seven in number, from the tips of the transverse processes of the upper three dorsal and seventh cervical, and from the articular processes of the three cervical above this. The tendons uniting form a broad muscle, which passes obliquely upwards and inwards, and is inserted into the innermost depression between the two curved lines of the occipital bone. This muscle, about its middle, is traversed by a transverse tendinous intersection.

The Biventer Cervicis is a small fasciculus, situated on the inner side of the preceding, and in the majority of cases blended with it; it has received its name from having a tendon intervening between two fleshy bellies. It is sometimes described as a separate muscle, arising, by from two to four tendinous slips, from the transverse processes of as many of the upper dorsal vertebrae, and inserted,
on the inner side of the Complexus, into the superior curved line of the occipital bone.

_Relations._ The muscles of the fourth layer are bound down to the vertebrae and ribs in the dorsal and lumbar regions by the lumbar fascia and vertebral aponeurosis. The inner part covers the muscles of the fifth layer. In the neck they are in relation, by their superficial surface, with the Trapezius and Splenius; by their deep surface, with the Semispinalis dorsi, Semispinalis colli, the Recti and Obliqui. The Biventer cervicis is separated from its fellow of the opposite side by the ligamentum nuchae, and the Complexus from the Semispinalis colli by the profunda cervicis artery, the princeps cervicis artery, and branches of the posterior cervical plexus of nerves.

_Nerves._ The Erector spinae and its subdivisions in the dorsal region are supplied by the external posterior branches of the lumbar and dorsal nerves; the Cervicalis ascendens, Transversalis colli, Tracheo-mastoid, and Spinalis cervicis, by the external posterior branches of the cervical nerves; the Complexus by the internal posterior branches of the cervical nerves, the suboccipital, and great occipital.

**Fifth Layer.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semispinalis Dorsi.</th>
<th>Extensor Coccygis.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Semispinalis Colli.</td>
<td>Intertransversales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifidus Spinae.</td>
<td>Rectus Capitis Posticus Major.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotatores Spinae.</td>
<td>Rectus Capitis Posticus Minor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supraspinales.</td>
<td>Obliquus Capitis Superior.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interspinales.</td>
<td>Obliquus Capitis Inferior.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

_Dissection._ Remove the muscles of the preceding layer by dividing and turning aside the Complexus; then detaching the Spinalis and Longissimus dorsi from their attachments, dividing the Erector Spinae at its connection below to the sacral and lumbar spines, and turning it outwards. The muscles filling up the interval between the spinous and transverse processes are then exposed.

The _Semispinales muscles_ (Fig. 258) connect the transverse and articular processes to the spinous processes of the vertebrae, extending from the lower part of the dorsal region to the upper part of the cervical.

The _Semispinalis Dorsi_ consists of thin, narrow, fleshy fasciculi, interposed between tendons of considerable length. It arises by a series of small tendons from the transverse processes of the lower dorsal vertebrae, from the tenth or eleventh to the fifth or sixth; and is inserted, by five or six tendons, into the spinous processes of the upper four dorsal and lower two cervical vertebrae.

The _Semispinalis Colli_, thicker than the preceding, arises by a series of tendinous and fleshy points from the transverse processes of the upper four dorsal vertebrae and from the articular processes of the lower four cervical vertebrae; and is inserted into the spinous processes of four cervical vertebrae, from the axis to the fifth cervical. The fasciculus connected with the axis is the largest, and chiefly muscular in structure.

_Relations._ By their superficial surface, from below upwards, with the Longissimus dorsi, Spinalis dorsi, Splenius, Complexus, the profunda cervicis artery, the princeps cervicis artery, and the posterior cervical plexus of nerves. By their deep surface, with the Multifidus spine.

The _Multifidus Spinae_ consists of a number of fleshy and tendinous fasciculi, which fill up the groove on either side of the spinous processes of the vertebrae, from the sacrum to the axis. In the sacral region, these fasciculi arise from the back of the sacrum, as low as the fourth sacral foramen, and from the aponeurosis of origin of the Erector spinae; in the iliac region, from the inner surface of the posterior superior spine of the ilium, and posterior sacro-iliac ligaments; in the lumbar and cervical regions, from the articular processes; and in the dorsal region, from the transverse processes. Each fasciculus, ascending obliquely upwards
and inwards, is inserted into the lamina and whole length of the spinous process of one of the vertebrae above. These fasciculi vary in length: the most superficial, the longest, pass from one vertebra to the third or fourth above; those next in order pass from one vertebra to the second or third above; whilst the deepest connect two contiguous vertebrae.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the Longissimus dorsi, Spinalis dorsi, Semispinalis dorsi, and Semispinalis colli. By its deep surface, with the laminae and spinous processes of the vertebrae, and with the rotatores spine in the dorsal region.

The Rotatores Spinae are found only in the dorsal region of the spine, beneath the Multifidus spine; they are eleven in number on each side. Each muscle is small and somewhat quadrilateral in form; it arises from the upper and back part of the transverse process, and is inserted into the lower border and outer surface of the lamina of the vertebra above, the fibres extending as far inwards as the root of the spinous process. The first is found between the first and second dorsal; the last, between the eleventh and twelfth. Sometimes the number of these muscles is diminished by the absence of one or more from the upper or lower end.

The Supraspinales consist of a series of fleshy bands, which lie on the spinous processes in the cervical region of the spine.

The Interspinales are short muscular fasciculi, placed in pairs between the spinous processes of the contiguous vertebrae. In the cervical region they are most distinct, and consist of six pairs, the first being situated between the axis and third vertebra, and the last between the last cervical and the first dorsal. They are small narrow bundles, attached, above and below, to the spines of the spinous processes. In the dorsal region, they are found between the first and second vertebrae, and occasionally between the second and third; and below, between the eleventh and twelfth. In the lumbar region, there are four pairs of these muscles in the intervals between the five lumbar vertebrae. There is also occasionally one in the interspinous space, between the last dorsal and first lumbar, and between the fifth lumbar and the sacrum.

The Extensor Coccygis is a slender muscular fasciculus, occasionally present, which extends over the lower part of the posterior surface of the sacrum and coccyx. It arises by tendinous fibres from the last bone of the sacrum, or first piece of the coccyx, and passes downwards to be inserted into the lower part of the coccyx. It is a rudiment of the Extensor muscle of the caudal vertebrae which exists in some animals.

The Intertransversales are small muscles placed between the transverse processes of the vertebrae. In the cervical region, they are most developed, consisting of two rounded muscular and tendinous fasciculi, which pass between the anterior and posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of two contiguous vertebrae, separated from one another by the anterior branch of a cervical nerve, which lies in the groove between them, and by the vertebral artery and vein. In this region there are seven pairs of these muscles, the first being between the atlas and axis, and the last between the seventh cervical and first dorsal vertebrae. In the dorsal region, they are at least developed, consisting chiefly of rounded tendinous cords in the intertransverse spaces of the upper dorsal vertebrae; but between the transverse processes of the lower three dorsal vertebrae, and the first lumbar, they are muscular in structure. In the lumbar region, they are four in number, and consist of a single muscular layer, which occupies the entire interspace between the transverse processes of the lower lumbar vertebrae, whilst those between the transverse processes of the upper lumbar are not attached to more than the breadth of the process.

The Rectus Capitis Posticus Major arises by a pointed tendinous origin from the spinous process of the axis, and, becoming broader as it ascends, is inserted into the inferior curved line of its occipital bone and the surface of bone immediately below it. As the muscles of the two sides ascend upwards and outwards,
they leave between them a triangular space, in which are seen the Recti capitis postici minores muscles.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Complexus, and, at its insertion, with the Superior oblique. By its deep surface, with the posterior arch of the atlas, the posterior occipito-atloid ligament, and part of the occipital bone.

The Rectus Capitis Posticus Minor, the smallest of the four muscles in this region, is of a triangular shape; it arises by a narrow pointed tendon from the tubercle on the posterior arch of the atlas, and, becoming broader as it ascends, is inserted into the rough surface beneath the inferior curved line, nearly as far as the foramen magnum, nearer to the middle line than the preceding.

Relations. By its superficial surface with the Complexus. By its deep surface, with the posterior occipito-atloid ligament.

The Obliquus Capitis Inferior, the larger of the two oblique muscles, arises from the apex of the spinous process of the axis, and passes almost horizontally outwards, to be inserted into the apex of the transverse process of the atlas.

Relations. By its superficial surface with the Complexus, and with the posterior branch of the second cervical nerve which crosses it. By its deep surface, with the vertebral artery, and posterior atlo-axoid ligament.

The Obliquus Capitis Superior, narrow below, wide and expanded above, arises by tendinous fibres from the upper part of the transverse process of the atlas, joining with the insertion of the preceding, and, passing obliquely upwards and inwards, is inserted into the occipital bone, between the two curved lines, external to the Complexus. Between the two Oblique muscles and the Rectus posticus major a triangular interval exists, in which are seen the vertebral artery, and the posterior branch of the suboccipital nerve.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Complexus and Tracheo-mastoid. By its deep surface, with the posterior occipito-atloid ligament.

Nerves. The Semispinalis dorsi and Rotatores spineæ are supplied by the internal posterior branches of the dorsal nerves; the Semispinalis colli, Supraspinales, and Interspinales, by the internal posterior branches of the cervical nerves; the Intertransversales, by the internal posterior branches of the cervical, dorsal, and lumbar nerves; the Multifidus spineæ, by the same, with the addition of the internal posterior branches of the sacral nerves. The Recti and Obliqui muscles are all supplied by the suboccipital and great occipital nerves.

Actions. The Erector spineæ, comprising the Sacro-lumbalis, with its accessory muscles, the Longissimus dorsi and Spinalis dorsi, serves, as its name implies, to maintain the spine in the erect posture; it also serves to bend the trunk backwards when it is required to counterbalance the influence of any weight at the front of the body, as, for instance, when a heavy weight is suspended from the neck, or when there is any great abdominal development, as in pregnancy or dropsy; the peculiar gait under such circumstances depends upon the spine being drawn backwards, by the counterbalancing action of the Erector spineæ muscles. The muscles which form the continuation of the Erector spineæ upwards steady the head and neck, and fix them in the upright position. If the Sacro-lumbalis and Longissimus dorsi of one side act, they serve to draw down the chest and spine to the corresponding side. The Cervicalis ascendens, taking its fixed point from the cervical vertebra, elevates those ribs to which it is attached. The Multifidus spineæ acts successively upon the different parts of the spine; thus, the sacrum furnishes a fixed point from which the fasciculi of this muscle act upon the lumbar region; these then become the fixed points for the fasciculi moving the dorsal region, and so on throughout the entire length of the spine; it is by the successive contraction and relaxation of the separate fasciculi of this and other muscles, that the spine preserves the erect posture without the fatigue that would necessarily have been produced, had this position been maintained by the action of a single muscle. The Multifidus spineæ, besides preserving the erect position of the spine, serves to rotate it, so that the front of the trunk is turned to the side opposite to that from which the muscle acts,
this muscle being assisted in its action by the Obliquus externus abdominis. The Complexi, the analogues of the Multifidus spinae in the neck, draw the head directly backward; if one muscle acts, it draws the head to one side, and rotates it so that the face is turned to the opposite side. The Rectus capitis posticus minor and the Obliquus superior draw the head backwards; and the latter, from the obliquity in the direction of its fibres, may turn the face to the opposite side. The Rectus capitis posticus major and the Obliquus inferior rotate the atlas, and, with it, the cranium round the odontoid process, and turn the face to the same side.

MUSCLES OF THE ABDOMEN.

The Muscles in this region are, the
Obliquus Externus.
Obliquus Internus.
Transversalis.
Rectus.
Pyramidalis.
Quadratus Lumborum.

Dissection (Fig. 259). To dissect the abdominal muscles, make a vertical incision from the ensiform cartilage to the pubes, a second incision from the umbilicus obliquely upwards and outwards to the outer surface of the chest, as high as the lower border of the fifth or sixth rib, and a third, commencing midway between the umbilicus and pubes, transversely outwards to the anterior superior iliac spine, and along the crest of the ilium as far as its posterior third. Then reflect the three flaps included between these incisions from within outwards, in the line of direction of the muscular fibres. If necessary, the abdominal muscles may be made tense by inflating the peritoneal cavity through the umbilicus.

The External or Descending Oblique Muscle (Fig. 260) is situated on the side and fore part of the abdomen; being the largest and the most superficial of the three flat muscles in this region. It is broad, thin, and irregularly quadrilateral, its muscular portion occupying the side, its aponeurosis the anterior wall of the abdomen. It arises, by eight fleshy digitations, from the external surface and lower borders of the eight inferior ribs; these digitations are arranged in an oblique line running downwards and backwards; the upper ones being attached close to the cartilages of the corresponding ribs; the lowest, to the apex of the cartilage of the last rib; the intermediate ones, to the ribs at some distance from their cartilages. The five superior serrations increase in size from above downwards, and are received between corresponding processes of the Serratus magnus; the three lower ones diminish in size from above downwards, receiving between them corresponding processes from the Latissimus dorsi. From these attachments, the fleshy fibres proceed in various directions. Those from the lowest ribs pass nearly vertically downwards, to be inserted into the anterior half of the outer lip of the crest of the ilium; the middle and upper fibres, directed downwards and forwards, terminate in tendinous fibres, which spread out into a broad aponeurosis. This aponeurosis, joined with that of the opposite muscle along the median line, covers the whole of the front of the abdomen; above, it is connected with the lower border of the Pectoralis major; below, its fibres are closely aggregated together, and extend obliquely across from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to the spine of the os pubis and the linea ilio-pectinea. In the median line, it interlaces with the aponeurosis of the opposite muscle, forming the linea alba, and extends from the ensiform cartilage to the symphysis pubis.
MUSCLES AND FASCIAE.

That portion of the aponeurosis which extends between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the spine of the os pubis, is a broad band, folded inwards, and continuous below with the fascia lata; it is called Poupart's ligament. The portion which is reflected from Poupart's ligament into the pectineal line is called Gimbert's ligament.¹ From the point of attachment of the latter to the pectineal line, a few fibres pass upwards and inwards, behind the inner pillar of the ring, to the linea alba. They diverge as they ascend, and form a thin, triangular, fibrous band, which is called the triangular ligament.

Fig. 260.—The External Oblique Muscle.

In the aponeurosis of the External oblique, immediately above the crest of the os pubis, is a triangular opening, the external abdominal ring, formed by a separation of the fibres of the aponeurosis in this situation; it serves for the transmission of the spermatic cord in the male, and the round ligament in the female. This opening is directed obliquely upwards and outwards, and corre-

¹ All these parts will be found more particularly described hereafter, with the Surgical Anatomy of Hernia.
OF THE ABDOMEN.

sponds with the course of the fibres of the aponeurosis. It is bounded, below, by the crest of the os pubis; above, by some curved fibres, which pass across the aponeurosis at the upper angle of the ring, so as to increase its strength; and, on either side, by the margins of the aponeurosis, which are called the pillars of the ring. Of these, the external, which is, at the same time, inferior, from the obliquity of its direction, is inserted into the spine of the os pubis. The internal, or superior pillar, is attached to the front of the pubes and symphysis pubis, and interlaces with the corresponding fibres of the opposite muscle, the fibres of the right muscle being superficial. To the margins of the pillars of the external abdominal ring is attached an exceedingly thin and delicate fascia, which is prolonged down over the outer surface of the cord and testis. This has received the name of intercolumnar fascia, from its attachment to the pillars of the ring. It is also called the external spermatic fascia, from being the most external of the fasciae which cover the spermatic cord.

Relations. By its external or superficial surface, with the superficial fascia, superficial epigastric and circumflex iliac vessels, and some cutaneous nerves. By its internal or deep surface, with the Internal oblique, the lower part of the eight inferior ribs, and Intercostal muscles, cremaster, the spermatic cord in the male, and round ligament in the female. Its posterior border is occasionally overlapped by the Lattissimus dorsi; sometimes an interval exists between the two muscles, in which is seen a portion of the Internal oblique.

Dissection. Detach the External oblique by dividing it across, just in front of its attachment to the ribs, as far as its posterior border, and separating it below from the crest of the ilium as far as the spine; then separate the muscle carefully from the Internal oblique, which lies beneath, and turn it towards the opposite side.

The Internal or Ascending Oblique Muscle (Fig. 261), thinner and smaller than the preceding, beneath which it lies, is of an irregularly quadrilateral form, and situated at the side and fore part of the abdomen. It arises, by fleshy fibres, from the outer half of Poupart's ligament, being attached to the groove on its upper surface; from the anterior two-thirds of the middle lip of the crest of the ilium, and from the lumbar fascia. From this origin, the fibres diverge: those from Poupart's ligament, few in number and paler in color than the rest, arch downwards and inwards across the spermatic cord, to be inserted, conjointly with those of the Transversalis, into the crest of the os pubis and pectineal line, to the extent of half an inch, forming what is known as the conjointed tendon of the Internal oblique and Transversalis; those from the anterior superior iliac spine are horizontal in their direction; whilst those which arise from the fore part of the crest of the ilium pass obliquely upwards and inwards, and terminate in an aponeurosis, which is continued forwards to the linea alba; the most posterior fibres ascend almost vertically upwards, to be inserted into the lower borders of the cartilages of the four lower ribs, being continuous with the Internal Intercostal muscles.

The conjointed tendon of the Internal oblique and Transversalis is inserted into the crest of the os pubis and pectineal line, immediately behind the external abdominal ring, serving to protect what would otherwise be a weak point in the abdomen. Sometimes this tendon is sufficient to resist the pressure from within, and is carried forward in front of the protrusion through the external ring, forming one of the coverings of direct inguinal hernia.

The aponeurosis of the Internal oblique is continued forward to the middle line of the abdomen, where it joins with the aponeurosis of the opposite muscle at the linea alba, and extends from the margin of the thorax to the pubes. At the outer margin of the Rectus muscles, this aponeurosis, for the upper three-fourths of its extent, divides into two lamellæ, which pass, one in front and the other behind the muscle, inclosing it in a kind of sheath, and reuniting on its inner border at the linea alba; the anterior layer is blended with the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle; the posterior layer with that of the Transversalis. Along the lower fourth, the aponeurosis passes altogether in front of the Rectus without any separation.
Relations. By its external surface, with the External oblique, Latissimus dorsi, spermatic cord, and external ring. By its internal surface, with the Transversalis muscle, fascia transversalis, internal ring, and spermatic cord. Its lower border forms the upper boundary of the spermatic canal.

Fig. 261.—The Internal Oblique Muscle.

Dissection. Detach the Internal oblique in order to expose the Transversalis beneath. This may be effected by dividing the muscle, above, at its attachment to the ribs; below, at its connection with Poupart's ligament and the crest of the ilium; and behind, by a vertical incision extending from the last rib to the crest of the ilium. The muscle should previously be made tense by drawing upon it with the fingers of the left hand, and if its division is carefully effected, the cellular interval between it and the Transversalis, as well as the direction of the fibres of the latter muscle, will afford a clear guide to their separation; along the crest of the ilium the circumflex iliac vessels are interposed between them, and form an important guide in separating them. The muscle should then be thrown forwards towards the linea alba.

The Transversalis muscle (Fig. 262), so called from the direction of its fibres, is the most internal flat muscle of the abdomen, being placed immediately beneath the Internal oblique. It arises by fleshy fibres from the outer third of Poupart's ligament, from the inner lip of the crest of the ilium, its anterior three-fourths, from the inner surface of the cartilages of the six lower ribs, interdigitating with the Diaphragm, and by a broad aponeurosis from the spinous and transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae. The lower fibres curve downwards, and are inserted, together with those of the Internal oblique, into the crest of the os pubis and pectineal line, forming what was described above as the conjointed tendon of these muscles. Throughout the rest of its
extent the fibres pass horizontally inwards, and near the outer margin of the Rectus, terminate in an aponeurosis, which is inserted into the linea alba; its upper three-fourths passing behind the Rectus muscle, blending with the posterior lamella of the Internal oblique; its lower fourth passing in front of the Rectus.

Fig. 262.—The Transversalis, Rectus, and Pyramidalis Muscles.

Relations. By its external surface, with the Internal oblique, the inner surface of the lower ribs, and Internal intercostal muscles. Its inner surface is lined by the fascia transversalis, which separates it from the peritoneum. Its lower border forms the upper boundary of the spermatic canal.

Lumbar Fascia (Fig. 263). The vertebral aponeurosis of the Transversalis divides into three layers: an anterior, very thin, which is attached to the front part of the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae, and, above, to the lower margin of the last rib, where it forms the ligamentum arcuatum exter-
num: a middle layer, much stronger, which is attached to the spines of the transverse processes; and a posterior layer, attached to the spines of the spinous processes. Between the anterior and middle layers is situated the Quadratus lumborum; between the middle and posterior, the Erector spinae. The posterior lamella of this aponeurosis receives the attachment of the Internal oblique; it is also blended with the aponeurosis of the Serratus posticus inferior and with that of the Latissimus dorsi, forming the lumbar fascia.

Fig. 263. — A Transverse Section of the Abdomen in the Lumbar Region.

Dissection. To expose the Rectus muscle, open its sheath by a vertical incision extending from the margin of the thorax to the pubes, and then reflect the two portions from the surface of the muscle, which is easily done, excepting at the line transversæ, where so close an adhesion exists, that the greatest care is requisite in separating them. Now raise the outer edge of the muscle, in order to examine the posterior layer of the sheath. By dividing the muscle in the centre, and turning its lower part downwards, the point where the posterior wall of the sheath terminates in a thin curved margin will be seen.

The Rectus Abdominis is a long flat muscle, which extends along the whole length of the front of the abdomen, being separated from its fellow of the opposite side by the linea alba. It is much broader above than below, and arises by two tendons, the external or larger being attached to the crest of the os pubis; the internal, smaller portion, interlacing with its fellow of the opposite side, and being connected with the ligaments covering the symphysis pubis. The fibres ascend vertically, and the muscle, becoming broader and thinner at its upper part, is inserted by three portions of unequal size into the cartilages of the fifth, sixth, and seventh ribs. Some fibres are occasionally connected with the costo-xiphoïd ligaments, and side of the ensiform cartilage.

The Rectus muscle is traversed by a series of tendinous intersections, which vary from two to five in number, and have received the name Lineæ transversæ. One of these is usually situated opposite the umbilicus, and two above that point; of the latter, one corresponds to the ensiform cartilage, and the other, to the interval between the ensiform cartilage and the umbilicus; there is occasionally one below the umbilicus. These intersections pass transversely or obliquely across the muscle in a zigzag course; they rarely extend completely through its substance, sometimes pass only halfway across it, and are intimately adherent to the sheath in which the muscle is inclosed.

The Rectus is inclosed in a sheath (Fig. 263) formed by the aponeurosis of the Oblique and Transversalis muscles, which are arranged in the following manner. When the aponeurosis of the Internal oblique arrives at the outer margin of the Rectus, it divides into two lamellæ, one of which passes in front of the Rectus,
OF THE ABDOMEN.

blending with the aponeurosis of the External oblique; the other, behind it, blending with the aponeurosis of the Transversalis: and these, joining again at its inner border, are inserted into the linea alba. This arrangement of the fasciae exists along the upper three-fourths of the muscle: at the commencement of the lower fourth, the posterior wall of the sheath terminates in a thin curved margin, or falciform edge, the concavity of which looks downwards towards the pubes; the aponeuroses of all three muscles passing in front of the Rectus without any separation. The Rectus muscle, in the situation where its sheath is deficient, is separated from the peritoneum by the transversalis fascia.

The Pyramidalis is a small muscle, triangular in shape, placed at the lower part of the abdomen, in front of the Rectus, and contained in the same sheath with that muscle. It arises by tendinous fibres from the front of the os pubis and the anterior pubic ligament: the fleshy portion of the muscle passes upwards, diminishing in size as it ascends, and terminates by a pointed extremity, which is inserted into the linea alba, midway between the umbilicus and the os pubis. This muscle is sometimes found wanting on one or both sides; the lower end of the Rectus then becomes proportionately increased in size. Occasionally, it has been found double on one side, or the muscles of the two sides are of unequal size. Sometimes its length exceeds what is stated above.

The Quadratus Lumborum (Fig. 258, p. 380) is situated in the lumbar region; it is irregularly quadrilateral in shape, broader below than above, and consists of two portions. One portion arises by aponeurotic fibres from the ilio-lumbar ligament, and the adjacent portion of the crest of the ilium for about two inches, and is inserted into the lower border of the last rib, about half its length, and by four small tendons, into the apices of the transverse processes of the third, fourth, and fifth lumbar vertebrae. The other portion of the muscle, situated in front of the preceding, arises from the upper borders of the transverse processes of the third, fourth, and fifth lumbar vertebrae, and is inserted into the lower margin of the last rib. The Quadratus lumborum is contained in a sheath formed by the anterior and middle lamellae of the aponeurosis of origin of the Transversalis.

Relations. Its anterior surface (or rather the fascia which covers its anterior surface) is in relation with the colon, the kidney, the psoas muscle, and the diaphragm. Its posterior sheath separates the Quadratus in front from the Erector spinae behind, the external edge of the Quadratus, however, overlapping the Erector spinae to a slight extent.

Nerves. The abdominal muscles are supplied by the lower intercostal, ilio-hypogastric, and ilio-inguinal nerves. The Quadratus lumborum receives filaments from the anterior branches of the lumbar nerves.

In the description of the abdominal muscles, mention has frequently been made of the linea alba, lineæ semilunares and lineæ transverse; when the dissection of the muscles is completed, these structures should be examined.

The linea alba is a tendinous raphe or cord seen along the middle line of the abdomen, extending from the ensiform cartilage to the pubes. It is placed between the inner borders of the Recti muscles, and is formed by the blending of the aponeuroses of the Oblique and Transversalis muscles. It is narrow below, corresponding to the narrow interval existing between the Recti, but broader above, as these muscles diverge from one another in their ascent, becoming of considerable breadth after great distension of the abdomen from pregnancy or ascites. It presents numerous apertures for the passage of vessels and nerves; the largest of these is the umbilicus, which in the fetus transmits the umbilical vessels, but in the adult is obliterated, the cicatrix being stronger than the neighboring parts; hence umbilical hernia occurs in the adult above the umbilicus, whilst in the fetus it occurs at the umbilicus. The linea alba is in relation, in front, with the integument, to which it is adherent, especially at the umbilicus; behind, it is separated from the peritoneum by the transversalis fascia; and below, by the urachus, and the bladder when that organ is distended.
The *lineae semilunares* are two curved tendinous lines, placed one on each side of the *linea alba*. Each corresponds with the outer border of the Rectus muscle, extends from the cartilage of the eighth rib to the pubes, and is formed by the aponeurosis of the internal oblique at its point of division to inclose the Rectus, where it is reinforced in front and behind by the External oblique and Transversalis.

The *lineae transversae* are three or four narrow transverse lines which intersect the Rectus muscle as already mentioned: they connect the *lineae semilunares* with the *linea alba*.

**Actions.** The abdominal muscles perform a threefold action.

When the pelvis and thorax are fixed, they compress the abdominal viscera, by constricting the cavity of the abdomen, in which action they are materially assisted by the descent of the diaphragm. By these means the foetus is expelled from the uterus, the feces from the rectum, the urine from the bladder, and its contents from the stomach in vomiting.

If the spine is fixed, these muscles compress the lower part of the thorax, materially assisting in expiration. If the spine is not fixed, the thorax is bent directly forward, when the muscles of both sides act, or to either side when those of the two sides act alternately, rotation of the trunk at the same time taking place to the opposite side.

If the thorax is fixed, these muscles acting together, draw the pelvis upwards, as in climbing; or, acting singly, they draw the pelvis upwards, and rotate the vertebral column to one side or the other. The Recti muscles, acting from below, depress the thorax, and consequently flex the vertebral column; when acting from above, they flex the pelvis upon the vertebral column. The Pyramidales are tensors of the *linea alba*.

The Quadratus lumborum, by the portion inserted into the last rib, draws down and fixes that bone, acting thereby as a muscle of forced expiration: by the portion inserted into the lumbar vertebrae, it draws the spine towards the ilium, and thus inclines the trunk towards its own side: or, if the thorax and spine be fixed, it may act upon the pelvis—raising it towards its own side when only one muscle is put in action, and when both muscles act together, either from below or above, they flex the trunk.

**Muscles and Fasciae of the Thorax.**

The muscles exclusively connected with the bones in this region are few in number. They are the

*Intercostales Externi.*
*Intercostales Interni.*
*Infracostales.*
*Triangularis Sterni.*
*Levatores Costarum.*

**Intercostal Fasciae.** A thin but firm layer of fascia covers the outer surface of the External intercostal and the inner surface of the Internal intercostal muscles; and a third layer, more delicate, is interposed between the two planes of muscular fibres. These are the intercostal fasciae; they are best marked in those situations where the muscular fibres are deficient, as between the External intercostal muscles and sternum, in front; and between the Internal intercostals and spine, behind.

The *Intercostal Muscles* (Fig. 267) are two thin planes of muscular and tendinous structure, placed one over the other, filling up the intercostal spaces, and being directed obliquely between the margins of the adjacent ribs. They have received the name "external" and "internal," from the position they bear to one another.

The *External Intercostals* are eleven in number on each side, being attached to the adjacent margins of each pair of ribs, and extending from the tubercles of the ribs, behind, to the commencement of the cartilages of the ribs, in front,
where they terminate in a thin membranous aponeurosis, which is continued forwards to the sternum. They arise from the outer lip of the groove on the lower border of each rib, and are inserted into the upper border of the rib below. In the two lowest spaces they extend to the end of the ribs. Their fibres are directed obliquely downwards and forwards, in a similar direction with those of the External oblique muscle. They are thicker than the Internal intercostals.

Relations. By their outer surface, with the muscles which immediately invest the chest, viz., the Pectoralis major and minor, Serratus magnus, and Rhomboideus major, Serratus posticus superior and inferior, scalenus posticus, Saccolumbalis, Longissimus dorsi, Cervicalis ascendens, Transversalis colli, Levatores costarum, and the Obliquis externus abdominis. By their internal surface, with a thin layer of fascia, which separates them from the intercostal vessels and nerve, and the Internal intercostal muscles, and, behind, from the pleura.

The Internal intercostals, also eleven in number on each side, are placed on the inner surface of the preceding, commencing anteriorly at the sternum, in the interspaces between the cartilages of the true ribs, and from the anterior extremities of the cartilages of the false ribs. They extend backwards as far as the angles of the ribs; whence they are continued to the vertebral column by a thin aponeurosis. They arise from the inner lip of the groove on the lower border of each rib, as well as from the corresponding costal cartilage, and are inserted into the upper border of the rib below. Their fibres are directed obliquely downwards and backwards, decussating with the fibres of the preceding.

Relations. By their external surface, with the External intercostals, and the intercostal vessels and nerves. By their internal surface, with the Pleura costalis, triangularis sterni, and Diaphragm.

The Intercostal muscles consist of muscular and tendinous fibres, the latter being longer and more numerous than the former; hence the walls of the intercostal spaces possess very considerable strength, to which the crossing of the muscular fibres materially contributes.

A muscle or muscular slip is occasionally found running more or less vertically upwards over the anterior parts of the ribs, which has been named "Supracostal muscle" by Mr. J. Wood ("Proc. Royal Soc.," June 15, 1865), and "Rectus thoracis" by Prof. Turner ("Journ. of Anat. and Phys.," ser. 2, No. II., p. 392). The latter writer conjectures that it is homologous with the prolongation of the Rectus abdominis muscle to the thorax, which is met with in some animals. In a case figured by Prof. Turner, the muscle arose by two heads, one from the fifth rib (the breadth of which alone separated it from the Rectus abdominis) and the other from the fourth, and ascended beneath the Pectoralis major muscle to be inserted into the first rib, close to the tendon of the Subclavius muscle.

The Infracostales consist of muscular and aponeurotic fasciculi, which vary in number and length; they arise from the inner surface of one rib, and are inserted into the inner surface of the first, second, or third rib below. Their direction is most usually oblique, like the Internal intercostals. They are most frequent between the lower ribs.

The Triangularis Sterni is a thin plane of muscular and tendinous fibres, situated upon the inner wall of the front of the chest. It arises from the lower part of the side of the sternum, from the inner surface of the ensiform cartilage, and from the sternal ends of the costal cartilages of the three or four lower true ribs. Its fibres diverge upwards and outwards, to be inserted by fleshy digitations into the lower border and inner surfaces of the costal cartilages of the second, third, fourth, and fifth ribs. The lowest fibres of this muscle are horizontal in their direction, and are continuous with those of the Transversalis; those which succeed are oblique, whilst the superior fibres are almost vertical. This muscle varies much in its attachment, not only in different bodies, but on opposite sides of the same body.

Relations. In front, with the sternum, ensiform cartilage, costal cartilages, Internal intercostal muscles, and internal mammary vessels. Behind, with the pleura, pericardium, and anterior mediastinum.

The Levatores Costarum (Fig. 258), twelve in number on each side, are small
tendinous and fleshy bundles, which arise from the extremities of the transverse processes of the dorsal vertebrae, and passing obliquely downwards and outwards, are inserted into the upper rough surface of the rib below them, between the tubercle and the angle. That for the first rib arises from the transverse process of the last cervical vertebra, and that for the last from the eleventh dorsal. The Inferior levatores divide into two fasciculi, one of which is inserted as above described; the other fasciculus passes down to the second rib below its origin; thus, each of the lower ribs receives fibres from the transverse processes of two vertebrae.

**Nerves.** The muscles of this group are supplied by the intercostal nerves.

**Actions.** The Intercostals are the chief agents in the movement of the ribs in ordinary respiration. The External intercostals raise the ribs, especially their fore part, and so increase the capacity of the chest from before backwards; at the same time they evert their lower borders, and so enlarge the thoracic cavity transversely. The Internal intercostals, at the side of the thorax, depress the ribs, and invert their lower borders, and so diminish the thoracic cavity; but at the fore part of the chest these muscles assist the External intercostals in raising the cartilages.\(^1\) The Levatores costarum assist the External intercostals in raising the ribs. The Triangularis sterni draws down the costal cartilages; it is therefore an expiratory muscle.

**Muscles of Inspiration and Expiration.** The muscles which assist the action of the Diaphragm in inspiration are the Intercostals and the Levatores costarum as above stated, the Scaleni, the Serratus posterior superior, and to a slight extent the Subclavius. When the need for more forcible action exists, the shoulders and the base of the scapula are fixed, and then the powerful muscles of forced inspiration come into play; the chief of these are the Serratus magnus, Latissimus dorsi, and the Pectorales, particularly the Pectoralis minor. The Sterno-mastoid also, when the head is fixed, assists in forced inspiration, by drawing up the sternum, and by fixing the clavicle, and thus affording a fixed point for the action of the muscles of the chest.

The ordinary action of expiration is merely passive, the resilience of the ribs and the elasticity of the lungs being sufficient to produce it. This causes the ascent of the abdominal viscera covered by the Diaphragm. Forced expiratory actions are performed mainly by the flat muscles (Obliqui and Transversals) of the abdomen, assisted also by the Rectus. Other muscles of forced expiration are the Internal intercostals and Triangularis sterni (as above mentioned), the Serratus posterior inferior, the Quadratus lumborum, and the Sacro-lumbalis.

**Diaphragmatic Region.**

**Diaphragm.**

The Diaphragm (διάφραγμα, a partition wall) (Fig. 264) is a thin musculo-fibrous septum, placed obliquely at the junction of the upper with the middle third of the trunk, and separating the thorax from the abdomen, forming the floor of the former cavity and the roof of the latter. It is elliptical, its longest diameter being from side to side, somewhat fan-shaped, the broad elliptical portion being hor-

---

\(^1\) The view of the action of the Intercostal muscles given in the text is that which is taught by Hutchinson ("Cycl. of Anat. and Phys.," art. *Thorax*), and is usually adopted in our schools. It is, however, much disputed. Hamberger believed that the External intercostals act as elevators of the ribs, or muscles of inspiration, while the Internal act in expiration. Haller taught that both sets of muscles act in common—viz., as muscles of inspiration—and this view is adopted by many of the best anatomists of the Continent, and appears supported by many observations made on the human subject under various conditions of disease, and on living animals in whom the muscles have been exposed under chloroform. The reader may consult an interesting paper by Dr. Cleland, in the "Journal of Anat. and Phys.," No. II., May, 1867, p. 209, "On the Hutchinsonian Theory of the Action of the Intercostal Muscles," who refers also to Henle, Luschka, Budge, and Bumler, "Observations on the Action of the Intercostal Muscles," Erlangen, 1860. (In "New Syd. Soc.'s Year-Book for 1861," p. 69.)
DIAFRAGMATIC REGION.

horizontal, the narrow part, which represents the handle of the fan, vertical, and joined at right angles to the former. It is from this circumstance that some anatomists describe it as consisting of two portions, the upper or great muscle of the Diaphragm, and the lower or lesser muscle. It arises from the whole of the internal circumference of the thorax, being attached, in front, by fleshy fibres to the ensiform cartilage; on either side, to the inner surface of the cartilages

Fig. 264.—The Diaphragm. Under Surface.

and bony portions of the six or seven inferior ribs, interdigitating with the Transversalis; and behind, to two aponeurotic arches, named the ligamentum arcuatum externum and internum, and to the lumbar vertebrae. The fibres from these sources vary in length; those arising from the ensiform appendix are very short and occasionally aponeurotic; those from the ligamenta arcuata, and more especially those from the ribs at the side of the chest, are longer, describe well-marked curves as they ascend, and finally converge to be inserted into the circumference of the central tendon. Between the sides of the muscular slip from the ensiform appendix and the cartilages of the adjoining ribs, the fibres of the Diaphragm are deficient, the interval being filled by areolar tissue, covered on the thoracic side by the pleura; on the abdominal, by the peritoneum. This is, consequently, a weak point, and a portion of the contents of the abdomen may protrude into the chest, forming phrenic or diaphragmatic hernia, or a collection of pus in the mediastinum may descend through it, so as to point at the epigastrium.

The ligamentum arcuatum internum is a tendinous arch, thrown across the upper part of the Psoas magnus muscle, on each side of the spine. It is connected, by one end, to the outer side of the body of the first, and occasionally the second lumbar vertebra, being continuous with the outer side of the tendon of the
corresponding crus; and, by the other end, to the front of the transverse process of the second lumbar vertebra.

The ligamentum arcuatum externum is the thickened upper margin of the anterior lamella of the transversalis fascia; it arches across the upper part of the Quadratus lumorum, being attached, by one extremity, to the front of the transverse process of the second lumbar vertebra: and, by the other, to the apex and lower margin of the last rib.

To the spine the Diaphragm is connected by two crura, which are situated on the bodies of the lumbar vertebrae, on each side of the aorta. The crura, at their origin, are tendinous in structure; the right crus, larger and longer than the left, arising from the anterior surface of the bodies and intervertebral substances of the second, third, and fourth lumbar vertebrae; the left, from the second and third; both blending with the anterior common ligament of the spine. A tendinous arch is thrown across the front of the vertebral column, from the tendon of one crus to that of the other, beneath which pass the aorta, vena cava major, and thoracic duct. The tendons terminate in two large fleshy bellies, which, with the tendinous portions above alluded to, are called the crura or pillars of the diaphragm. The outer fasciculi of the two crura are directed upwards and outwards to the central tendon; but the inner fasciculi decussate in front of the aorta, and then diverge, so as to surround the oesophagus before ending in the central tendon. The anterior and larger of these fasciculi is formed by the right crus.

The Central or Cordiform Tendon of the Diaphragm is a thin tendinous aponeurosis, situated at the centre of the vault formed by the muscle, immediately below the pericardium, with which its circumference is blended. It is shaped somewhat like a trefoil leaf, consisting of three divisions, or leaflets, separated from one another by slight indentations. The right leaflet is the largest; the middle one, directed towards the ensiform cartilage, the next in size; and the left, the smallest. In structure, the tendon is composed of several planes of fibres, which intersect one another at various angles, and unite into straight or curved bundles—an arrangement which affords it additional strength.

The Openings connected with the Diaphragm are three large and several smaller apertures. The former are the aortic, the oesophageal, and the opening for the vena cava.

The aortic opening is the lowest and most posterior of the three large apertures connected with this muscle. It is situated in the middle line, immediately in front of the bodies of the vertebrae; and is, therefore, behind the Diaphragm, not in it. It is an osseo-aponeurotic aperture, formed by a tendinous arch thrown across the front of the bodies of the vertebrae, from the crus on one side to that on the other, and transmits the aorta, vena cava major, thoracic duct, and occasionally the left sympathetic nerve.

The oesophageal opening, elliptical in form, muscular in structure, and formed by the two crura, is placed above, and, at the same time, anterior, and a little to the left of the preceding. It transmits the oesophagus and pneumogastric nerves. The anterior margin of this aperture is occasionally tendinous, being formed by the margin of the central tendon.

The opening for the vena cava is the highest; it is quadrilateral in form, tendinous in structure, and placed at the junction of the right and middle leaflets of the central tendon, its margins being bounded by four bundles of tendinous fibres, which meet at right angles.

The right crus transmits the sympathetic and the greater and lesser splanchnic nerves of the right side; the left crus, the greater and lesser splanchnic nerves of the left side, and the vena cava minor.

The Serous Membranes in relation with the Diaphragm, are four in number: three lining its upper or thoracic surface; one its abdominal. The three serous membranes on its upper surface are the pleura on either side, and the serous layer of the pericardium, which covers the middle portion of the tendinous
centre. The serous membrane covering its under surface is a portion of the general peritoneal membrane of the abdominal cavity.

The Diaphragm is arched, being convex towards the chest, and concave to the abdomen. The right portion forms a complete arch from before backwards, being accurately moulded over the convex surface of the liver, and having rested upon it the concave base of the right wing. The left portion is arched from before backwards in a similar manner; but the arch is narrower in front, being encroached upon by the pericardium, and lower than the right, at its summit, by about three-quarters of an inch. It supports the base of the left lung, and covers the great end of the stomach, the spleen and left kidney. The central portion, which supports the heart, is higher, in front at the sternum, and behind at the vertebræ, than the lateral portions; the reverse is the case in the parts further removed from the surface of the body.

The height of the Diaphragm is constantly varying during respiration, the muscle being carried upwards or downwards from the average level; its height also varies according to the degree of distension of the stomach and intestines, and the size of the liver. After a forced expiration, the right arch is on a level, in front, with the fourth costal cartilage; at the side, with the fifth, sixth, and seventh ribs; and behind, with the eighth rib; the left arch being usually from one to two ribs' breadth below the level of the right one. In a forced inspiration, it descends from one to two inches; its slope would then be represented by a line drawn from the ensiform cartilage towards the tenth rib.

Nerves. The Diaphragm is supplied by the phrenic nerves.

Actions. The action of the Diaphragm modifies considerably the size of the chest and the position of the thoracic and abdominal viscera. During a forced inspiration, the cavity of the thorax is enlarged in the vertical direction from two to three inches, partly by the ascent of the walls of the chest, partly by the descent of the Diaphragm. The chest, consequently, encroaches upon the abdomen: the lungs are expanded, and lowered, in relation with the ribs, nearly two inches; the heart being drawn down about an inch and a half; the descent of the latter organ taking place indirectly through the medium of its connection with the lungs, as well as directly by means of the central tendon to which the pericardium is attached. The abdominal viscera are also pushed down (the liver, to the extent of nearly three inches), so that these organs are no longer protected by the ribs. During expiration, when the Diaphragm is passive, it is pushed up by the action of the abdominal muscles; the cavity of the abdomen (with the organs contained in it) encroaches upon the chest, by which the lungs and heart are compressed upwards, and the vertical diameter of the thoracic cavity diminished. The Diaphragm is passive when raised or lowered, by the abdominal organs, independently of respiration, in proportion as they are large or small, full or empty; hence the oppression felt in the chest after a full meal, or from flatulent distension of the stomach and intestines.

In all expulsive acts the Diaphragm is called into action, to give additional power to each expulsive effort. Thus, before sneezing, coughing, laughing, and crying; before vomiting; previous to the expulsion of the urine and feces, or of the fetus from the womb, a deep inspiration takes place.\footnote{For a detailed description of the general relations of the Diaphragm, and its action, refer to Dr. Sibson's "Medical Anatomy."}
MUSCLES AND FASCIAE OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The Muscles of the Upper Extremity are divisible into groups, corresponding with the different regions of the limb.

OF THE SHOULDER.

Anterior Thoracic Region.
Pectoralis major.
Pectoralis minor.
Subclavius.

Lateral Thoracic Region.
Serratus magnus.

Acromial Region.
Deltoid.

Anterior Scapular Region.
Subscapularis.

Posterior Scapular Region.
Supraspinatus.
Infraspinatus.
Teres minor.
Teres major.

Radial Region.
Supinator longus.
Extensor carpi radialis longior.
Extensor carpi radialis brevior.

Posterior Brachial Region.
Extensor communis digitorum.
Extensor minimi digiti.
Extensor carpi ulnaris.
Anconeus.

OF THE ARM.

Anterior Humeral Region.
Coraco-brachialis.
Biceps.
Brachialis anticus.

Posterior Humeral Region.
Triceps.
Subanconeus.

OF THE HAND.

Radial Region.
Abductor pollicis.
Opponens pollicis (Flexor ossis metacarpi).
Flexor brevis pollicis.
Adductor pollicis.

Ulnar Region.
Palmaris brevis.
Abductor minimi digitii.
Flexor brevis minimi digitii.
Opponens minimi digitii (Flexor ossis metacarpi).

Middle Palmar Region.
Lumbricales.
Interossei palmares.
Interossei dorsales.

OF THE FOREARM.

Anterior Brachial Region.

Pronator radii teres.
Flexor carpi radialis.
Palmaris longus.
Flexor carpi ulnaris.
Flexor sublimis digitorum.
Flexor profundus digitorum.
Flexor longus pollicis.
Pronator quadratus.

Dissection of Pectoral Region and Axilla (Fig. 265). The arm being drawn away from the side nearly at right angles with the trunk, and rotated outwards, make a vertical incision through the integument in the median line of the chest, from the upper to the lower part of the sternum; a second incision along the lower border of the Pectoral muscle, from the eusiform cartilage to the inner side of the axilla; a third, from the sternum along the clavicle, as far as its centre; and a fourth, from the middle of the clavicle obliquely downwards, along the interspace between the Pectoral and Deltoid muscles, as low as the fold of the arm-pit. The flap of integument is then to be dissected off in the direction indicated in the figure, but not entirely removed, as it should be replaced on completing the dissection. If a transverse incision is now made from the lower end of the sternum to the side of the chest, as far as the posterior fold of the arm-pit, and the integument reflected outwards, the axillary space will be more completely exposed.
The superficial fascia of the thoracic region is a loose cellulo-fibrous layer, continuous with the superficial fascia of the neck and upper extremity above, and of the abdomen below; opposite the mamma, it subdivides into two layers, one of which passes in front, the other behind that gland; and from both of these layers numerous septa pass into its substance, supporting its various lobes: from the anterior layer, fibrous processes pass forward to the integument and nipple, inclosing in their areolar masses of fat. These processes were called by Sir A. Cooper the ligamenta suspensoria, from the support they afford to the gland in this situation. On removing the superficial fascia with the mamma the deep fascia of the thoracic region is exposed: it is a thin aponeurotic lamina, covering the surface of the great Pectoral muscle, and sending numerous prolongations between its fasciculi: it is attached, in the middle line, to the front of the sternum; and, above, to the clavicle: it is very thin over the upper part of the muscle, somewhat thicker in the interval between the Pectoralis major and Latissimus dorsi, where it closes in the axillary space, and divides at the outer margin of the latter muscle into two layers, one of which passes in front, and the other behind it; these proceed as far as the spinous processes of the dorsal vertebrae, to which they are attached. At the lower part of the thoracic region, this fascia is well developed, and is continuous with the fibrous sheath of the Recti muscles.

Anterior Thoracic Region.

Pectoralis Major.

Pectoralis Minor.

Subclavius.

The Pectoralis Major (Fig. 266) is a broad, thick, triangular muscle, situated at the upper and fore part of the chest in front of the axilla. It arises from the anterior surface of the sternal half of the clavicle; from half the breadth of the anterior surface of the sternum, as low down as the attachment of the cartilage of the sixth or seventh rib; its origin consisting of aponeurotic fibres, which intersect with those of the opposite muscle; it also arises from the cartilages of all the true ribs, with the exception, frequently, of the first, or of the seventh, or both; and from the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle of the abdomen. The fibres from this extensive origin converge towards its insertion, giving to the muscle a radiated appearance. Those fibres which arise from the clavicle pass obliquely outwards and downwards, and are usually separated from the rest by a cellular interval: those from the lower part of the sternum and the cartilages of the lower true ribs, pass upwards and outwards; whilst
the middle fibres pass horizontally. As these three sets of fibres converge, they are so disposed that the upper overlap the middle, and the middle the lower portion, the fibres of the lower portion being folded backwards upon themselves; so that those fibres which are lowest in front become highest at their point of insertion. They all terminate in a flat tendon, about two inches broad, which is inserted into the anterior bicipital ridge of the humerus. This tendon consists of two laminae, placed one in front of the other, and usually blended together below. The anterior, the thicker, receives the clavicular and upper half of the sternal portion of the muscle; the posterior lamina receiving the attachment of the lower half of the sternal portion. From this arrangement it results, that the fibres of the upper and middle portions of the muscle are inserted into the lower part of the bicipital ridge; those of the lower portion, into the upper part. The tendon, at its insertion, is connected with that of the Deltoid; it sends up an expansion over the bicipital groove towards the head of the hume-
rurus; another backwards, which lines the groove; and a third to the fascia of the arm.

Relation. By its anterior surface, with the integument, the superficial fascia, the Platysma, and the mammary gland. By its posterior surface—its thoracic portion, with the sternum, the ribs and costal cartilages, the Subclavius, Pectoralis minor, Serratus magnus, and the Intercostals; its axillary portion forms the anterior wall of the axillary space, and covers the axillary vessels and nerves. Its upper border lies parallel with the Deltoid, from which it is separated by the cephalic vein and descending branch of the thoracico-acromialis artery. Its lower border forms the anterior margin of the axilla, being at first separated from the Latissimus dorsi by a considerable interval; but both muscles gradually converge towards the outer part of the space.

Peculiarities. In muscular subjects, the sternal origins of the two Pectoral muscles are separated only by a narrow interval; but this interval is enlarged where these muscles are ill developed. Very rarely, the whole of the sternal portion is deficient. Occasionally, one or two additional muscular slips arise from the aponeurosis of the External oblique, and become united to the lower margin of the Pectoralis major. A slender muscular slip is occasionally found lying parallel with the outer margin of the sternum, overlapping the origin of the pectoral muscle. It is attached, by one end, to the upper part of the sternum near the origin of the sterno-mastoid; and, by the other, to the anterior wall of the sheath of the Rectus abdominis. It has received the name "Rectus sternalis."

Dissection. Detach the Pectoralis major by dividing the muscle along its attachment to the clavicle, and by making a vertical incision through its substance a little external to its line of attachment to the sternum and costal cartilages. The muscle should then be reflected upwards, and its tendon carefully examined. The Pectoralis minor is now exposed, and immediately above it, in the interval between its upper border and the clavicle, a strong fascia, the costo-coracoid membrane.

The costo-coracoid membrane protects the axillary vessels and nerves; it is very thick and dense externally, where it is attached to the coracoid process, and is continuous with the fascia of the arm; more internally, it is connected with the lower border of the clavicle, as far as the sternal extremity of the first rib; traced downwards, it passes behind the Pectoralis minor, surrounding, in a more or less complete sheath, the axillary vessels and nerves; and, above, it sends a prolongation behind the Subclavius, which is attached to the lower border of the clavicle, and so incloses the muscle in a kind of sheath. The costo-coracoid membrane is pierced by the cephalic vein, the thoracico-acromialis artery and vein, superior thoracic artery, and anterior thoracic nerves.

The Pectoralis Minor (Fig. 267) is a thin, flat, triangular muscle, situated at the upper part of the thorax, beneath the Pectoralis major. It arises by three tendinous digitations, from the upper margin and outer surface of the third, fourth, and fifth ribs, near their cartilages, and from the aponeurosis covering the Intercostal muscles; the fibres pass upwards and outwards, and converge to form a flat tendon, which is inserted into the anterior border of the coracoid process of the scapula.

Relation. By its anterior surface, with the Pectoralis major, and the superior thoracic vessels and nerves. By its posterior surface, with the ribs, Intercostal muscles, Serratus magnus, the axillary space, and the axillary vessels and nerves. Its upper border is separated from the clavicle by a triangular interval, broad internally, narrow externally, bounded in front by the costo-coracoid membrane, and internally by the ribs. In this space are seen the axillary vessels and nerves.

The costo-coracoid membrane should now be removed, when the Subclavius muscle will be seen.

The Subclavius is a long, thin, spindle-shaped muscle, placed in the interval between the clavicle and the first rib. It arises by a short, thick tendon from the cartilage of the first rib, in front of the rhomboid ligament; the fleshy fibres proceed obliquely outwards, to be inserted into a deep groove on the under surface of the middle third of the clavicle.

Relation. By its upper surface, with the clavicle. By its under surface, it is separated from the first rib by the subclavian or axillary vessels and brachial
plexus of nerves. Its anterior surface is separated from the Pectoralis major by the costo-coracoid aponeurosis, which, with the clavicle, forms an osteo-fibrous sheath in which the muscle is inclosed.

If the costal attachment of the Pectoralis minor is divided across, and the muscle reflected outwards, the axillary vessels and nerves are brought fully into view, and should be examined.

Nerves. The Pectoral muscles are supplied by the anterior thoracic nerves; the Subclavius, by a filament from the cord formed by the union of the fifth and sixth cervical nerves.

Actions. If the arm has been raised by the Deltoid, the Pectoralis major will, conjointly with the Latissimus dorsi and Teres major, depress it to the side of the chest; and, if acting singly, it will draw the arm across the front of the chest. The Pectoralis minor depresses the point of the shoulder, drawing the scapula downwards and inwards to the thorax. The Subclavius depresses the shoulder, drawing the clavicle downwards and forwards. When the arms are fixed, all three muscles act upon the ribs, drawing them upwards and expanding the chest, and thus becoming very important agents in forced inspiration. Asthmatic patients always assume this attitude, fixing the shoulders, so that all these muscles may be brought into action to assist in dilating the cavity of the chest.

LATERAL THORACIC REGION.

Serratus Magnus.

The Serratus Magnus (Fig. 267) is a broad, thin, and irregularly quadrilateral muscle, situated at the upper part and side of the chest. It arises by nine fleshy digitations from the outer surface and upper border of the eight upper ribs (the second rib having two), and from the aponeurosis covering the upper intercostal spaces, and is inserted into the whole length of the inner margin of the posterior border of the scapula. This muscle has been divided into three portions, a superior, middle, and inferior, on account of the difference in the direction, and in the extent of attachment of each part. The upper portion, separated from the rest by a cellular interval, is a narrow, but thick fasciculus, which arises by two digitations from the first and second ribs, and from the aponeurotic arch between them; its fibres proceed upwards, outwards, and backwards, to be inserted into the triangular smooth surface on the inner side of the superior angle of the scapula. The middle portion of the muscle arises by three digitations from the second, third, and fourth ribs; it forms a thin and broad muscular layer, which proceeds horizontally backwards to be inserted into the posterior border of the scapula, between the superior and inferior angles. The lower portion arises from the fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth ribs, by four digitations, in the intervals between which are received corresponding processes of the External oblique; the fibres pass upwards, outwards, and backwards, to be inserted into the inner surface of the inferior angle of the scapula, by an attachment partly muscular, partly tendinous.

Relations. This muscle is covered, in front, by the Pectoral muscles; behind, by the Subscapularis; above, by the axillary vessels and nerves. Its deep surface rests upon the ribs and Intercostal muscles.

Nerves. The Serratus magnus is supplied by the posterior thoracic nerve.

Actions. The Serratus magnus is the most important external inspiratory muscle. When the shoulders are fixed, it elevates the ribs, and so dilates the cavity of the chest, assisting the Pectoral and Subclavius muscles. This muscle, especially its middle and lower segments, draws the base and inferior angle of the scapula forwards, and so raises the point of the shoulder by causing a rotation of the bone on the side of the chest; assisting the Trapezius muscle in supporting weights upon the shoulder, the thorax being at the same time fixed by preventing the escape of the included air.
Dissection. After completing the dissection of the Axilla, if the muscles of the back have been dissected, the upper extremity should be separated from the trunk. Saw through the clavicle at its centre, and then cut through the muscles which connect the scapula and arm with the trunk, viz., the Pectoralis minor, in front, Serratus magnus, at the side, and the Levator anguli scapulae, the Rhomboids, Trapezius, and Latissimus dorsi behind. These muscles should be cleaned and traced to their respective insertions. Then make an incision through the integument, commencing at the outer third of the clavicle, and extending along the margin of that bone, the acromion process, and spine of the scapula; the integument should be dissected from above downwards and outwards, when the fascia covering the Deltoid is exposed (Fig. 265, No. 3).

Fig. 267.—Muscles of the Chest and Front of the Arm, with the Boundaries of the Axilla.

The superficial fascia of the upper extremity, is a thin cellulo-fibrous lamina, containing between its layers the superficial veins and lymphatics, and the cutaneous nerves. It is most distinct in front of the elbow, and contains very large superficial veins and nerves; in the hand it is hardly demonstrable, the integument being closely adherent to the deep fascia by dense fibrous bands. Small subcutaneous bursae are found in this fascia, over the acromion, the olecranon, and the knuckles. The deep fascia of the upper extremity comprises the aponcurosis of the shoulder, arm, and forearm, the anterior and posterior annular ligaments of the carpus, and the palmar fascia. These will be considered in the description of the muscles of the several regions.
ACROMIAL REGION.

Deltoid.

The deep fascia covering the Deltoid (deltoid aponeurosis) is a thick and strong fibrous layer, which incloses the outer surface of the muscles, and sends down numerous prolongations between its fasciculi; it is continuous, internally, with the fascia covering the great Pectoral muscle: behind, with that covering the Infraspinatus and back of the arm: above, it is attached to the clavicle, the acromion, and spine of the scapula.

The Deltoid (Fig. 266) is a large, thick, triangular muscle, which forms the convexity of the shoulder, and has received its name from its resemblance to the Greek letter Α reversed. It surrounds the shoulder-joint in the greater part of its extent, covering it on its outer side, and in front and behind. It arises from the outer third of the anterior border and upper surface of the clavicle; from the outer margin and upper surface of the acromion process; and from the whole length of the lower border of the spine of the scapula. From this extensive origin, the fibres converge towards their insertion, the middle passing vertically, the anterior obliquely backwards, the posterior obliquely forwards; they unite to form a thick tendon, which is inserted into a rough prominence on the middle of the outer side of the shaft of the humerus. This muscle is remarkably coarse in texture, and intersected by three or four tendinous laminae; these are attached, at intervals, to the clavicle and acromion, extend into the substance of the muscle, and give origin to a number of fleshy fibres. The largest of these laminae extends from the summit of the acromion.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the integument, the superficial fascia, Platysma, and supra-acromial nerves. Its deep surface is separated from the head of the humerus by a large sacculated synovial bursa, and covers the coracoid process, coraco-acromial ligament, Pectoralis minor, Coraco-brachialis, both heads of the Biceps, tendon of the Pectoralis major, Infraspinatus, Teres minor, Triceps (its scapular and external heads), the circumflex vessels and nerve, and the humerus. Its anterior border is separated from the Pectoralis major by a cellular interspace, which lodges the cephalic vein and descending branch of the thoraco-acromialis artery. Its posterior border rests on the Infraspinatus and Triceps muscles.

Nerves. The Deltoid is supplied by the circumflex nerve.

Actions. The Deltoid raises the arm directly from the side, so as to bring it at right angles with the trunk. Its anterior fibres, assisted by the Pectoralis major, draw the arm forwards; and its posterior fibres, aided by the Teres major and Latissimus dorsi, draw it backwards.

Dissection. Divide the Deltoid across, near its upper part, by an incision carried along the margin of the clavicle, the acromion process, and spine of the scapula, and reflect it downwards; the bursa will be seen on its under surface, as well as the circumflex vessels and nerve. The insertion of the muscle should be carefully examined.

ANTERIOR SCAPULAR REGION.

Subscapularis.

The subscapular aponeurosis is a thin membrane, attached to the entire circumference of the subscapular fossa, and affording attachment by its inner surface to some of the fibres of the Subscapularis muscle: when this is removed, the Subscapularis muscle is exposed.

The Subscapularis (Fig. 267) is a large triangular muscle, which fills up the subscapular fossa, arising from its internal two-thirds, with the exception of a narrow margin along the posterior border, and the inner side of the superior and inferior angles, which afford attachment to the Serratus magnus. Some fibres arise from tendinous laminae, which intersect the muscle, and are attached
POSTERIOR SCAPULAR REGION. 405
to ridges on the bone; and others from an aponeurosis, which separates the
muscle from the Teres major and the long head of the Triceps. The fibres pass
outwards, and, gradually converging, terminate in a tendon, which is inserted
into the lesser tuberosity of the humerus. Those fibres which arise from the
axillary border of the scapula are inserted into the neck of the humerus to the
extent of an inch below the tuberosity. The tendon of the muscle is in close
contact with the capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint, and glides over a large
bursa, which separates it from the base of the coracoid process. This bursa
communicates with the cavity of the joint by an aperture in the capsular liga-
mament.

Relations. By its anterior surface, with the Serratus magnus, Coraco-brachialis,
and Biceps, and the axillary vessels and nerves. By its posterior surface, with
the scapula, the subscapular vessels and nerves, and the capsular ligament of
the shoulder-joint. Its lower border is contiguous with the Teres Major and
Latissimus dorsi.

Nerves. It is supplied by the upper and lower subscapular nerves.

Actions. The Subscapularis rotates the head of the humerus inwards; when
the arm is raised, it draws the humerus downwards. It is a powerful defence
to the front of the shoulder-joint, preventing displacement of the head of the
bone forwards.

POSTERIOR SCAPULAR REGION. (Fig. 268.)

| Supraspinatus. | Teres Minor. |
| Infra- spinatus. | Teres Major. |

Dissection. To expose these muscles, and to examine their mode of insertion into the humerus,
detach the Deltoid and Trapezius from their attachment to the spine of the scapula and acromion
process. Remove the clavicle by dividing the ligaments connecting it with the coracoid process,
and separate it at its articulation with its scapula; divide the acromion process near its root with
a saw. The fragments being removed, the tendons of the posterior Scapular muscles will be fully
exposed, and can be examined. A block should be placed beneath the shoulder-joint, so as to
make the muscles tense.

The supraspinous aponeurosis is a thick and dense membranous layer, which
completes the osseo-fibrous case in which the Supraspinatus muscle is contained;
affording attachment, by its inner surface, to some of the fibres of the muscle.
It is thick internally, but thinner externally under the coraco-acromial ligament.
When this fascia is removed, the Supraspinatus muscle is exposed.

The Supraspinatus muscle occupies the whole of the supraspinous fossa,
 ARISING FROM ITS INTERNAL TWO-THIRDS, AND FROM THE STRONG FASCIA WHICH COVERS ITS
surface. The muscular fibres converge to a tendon, which passes across the
capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint, to which it is intimately adherent, and
is inserted into the highest of the three facets on the great tuberosity of the
humerus.

Relations. By its upper surface, with the Trapezius, the clavicle, the acromion,
the coraco-acromial ligament, and the Deltoid. By its under surface, with the
scapula, the subscapular vessels and nerve, and upper part of the shoulder-
joint.

The infraspinous aponeurosis is a dense fibrous membrane, covering in the
Infraspinatus muscle, and attached to the circumference of the infraspinous fossa;
it affords attachment, by its inner surface, to some fibres of that muscle, is con-
tinuous externally with the fascia of the arm, and gives off from its under surface
intermuscular septa, which separate the Infraspinatus from the Teres minor,
and the latter from the Teres major.

The Infraspinatus is a thick triangular muscle, which occupies the chief part
of the infraspinous fossa, arising by fleshy fibres, from its internal two-thirds;
and by tendonous fibres, from the ridges on its surface; it also arises from a strong
fascia which covers it externally, and separates it from the Teres major and
minor. The fibres converge to a tendon, which glides over the external border.
of the spine of the scapula, and, passing across the capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint, is inserted into the middle facet on the great tuberosity of the humerus. The tendon of this muscle is occasionally separated from the spine of the scapula by a synovial bursa, which communicates with the synovial membrane of the shoulder-joint.

Fig. 268.—Muscles on the Dorsum of the Scapula and the Triceps.

_Relations._ By its posterior surface, with the Deltoid, the Trapezius, Latissimus dorsi, and the integument. By its anterior surface, with the scapula, from which it is separated by the suprascapular and dorsalis scapulae vessels, and with the capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint. Its lower border is in contact with the Teres minor, and occasionally united with it, and with the Teres major.

The Teres Minor is a narrow, elongated muscle, which lies along the inferior border of the scapula. It arises from the dorsal surface of the axillary border of the scapula for the upper two-thirds of its extent, and from two aponeurotic laminae, one of which separates this muscle from the Infraspinatus, the other from the Teres major; its fibres pass obliquely upwards and outwards, and terminate in a tendon, which is inserted into the lowest of the three facets on the great tuberosity of the humerus, and, by fleshy fibres, into the humerus, immediately below it. The tendon of this muscle passes across the capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint.

_Relations._ By its posterior surface, with the Deltoid, the Latissimus dorsi, and the integument. By its anterior surface, with the scapula, the dorsal branch of the subscapular artery, the long head of the Triceps, and the shoulder-joint. By its upper border, with the infraspinatus. By its lower border, with the Teres major, from which it is separated anteriorly by the long head of the Triceps.

The Teres Major is a broad and somewhat flattened muscle, which arises from
the dorsal aspect of the inferior angle of the scapula, and from the fibrous septa interposed between it and the Teres minor and Infraspinatus; the fibres are directed upwards and outwards, and terminate in a flat tendon, about two inches in length, which is inserted into the posterior bicipital ridge of the humerus. The tendon of this muscle, at its insertion into the humerus, lie behind that of the Latissimus dorsi, from which it is separated by a synovial bursa.

Relations. By its posterior surface, with the integument, from which it is separated, internally, by the Latissimus dorsi; and externally, by the long head of the Triceps. By its anterior surface, with the Subscapularis, Latissimus dorsi, Coraco-brachialis, short head of the Biceps, the axillary vessels, and brachial plexus of nerves. Its upper border is at first in relation with the Teres minor, from which it is afterwards separated by the long head of the Triceps. Its lower border forms, in conjunction with the Latissimus dorsi, part of the posterior boundary of the axilla.

Nerves. The Supraspinatus and Infraspinatus muscles are supplied by the suprascapular nerve; the Teres minor, by the circumflex, and the Teres major, by the lower subscapular.

Actions. The Supraspinatus assists the Deltoid in raising the arm from the side, and fixes the head of the humerus in its socket. The Infraspinatus and Teres minor rotate the head of the humerus outwards: when the arm is raised, they assist in retaining it in that position, and carrying it backwards. One of the most important uses of these three muscles is the great protection they afford to the shoulder-joint, the Supraspinatus supporting it above, and preventing displacement of the head of the humerus upwards, whilst the Infraspinatus and Teres minor protect it behind, and prevent dislocation backwards. The Teres major assists the Latissimus dorsi in drawing the humerus downwards and backwards when previously raised, and rotating it inwards; when the arm is fixed, it may assist the Pectoral and Latissimus dorsi muscles in drawing the trunk forwards.

Anterior Humeral Region. (Fig. 267.)


Dissection. The arm being placed on the table, with the front surface uppermost, make a vertical incision through the integument along the middle line, from the middle of the interval between the folds of the axilla, to about two inches below the elbow-joint, where it should be joined by a transverse incision, extending from the inner to the outer side of the forearm; the two flaps being reflected on either side, the fascia should be examined.

The deep fascia of the arm, continuous with that covering the shoulder and front of the great Pectoral muscle, is attached, above, to the clavicle, acromion, and spine of the scapula; it forms a thin, loose, membranous sheath investing the muscles of the arm, sending down septa between them, and composed of fibres disposed in a circular or spiral direction, and connected together by vertical fibres. It differs in thickness at different parts, being thin over the Biceps, but thicker where it covers the Triceps, and over the condyles of the humerus; it is strengthened by fibrous aponeuroses, derived from the Pectoralis major and Latissimus dorsi, on the inner side, and from the Deltoid externally. On either side it gives off a strong intermuscular septum, which is attached to the condyloid ridge and condyle of the humerus. These septa serve to separate the muscles of the anterior from those of the posterior brachial region. The external intermuscular septum extends from the lower part of the anterior bicipital ridge, along the external condyloid ridge, to the outer condyle; it is blended with the tendon of the Deltoid; gives attachment to the Triceps behind, to the Brachialis anticus, Supinator longus, and Extensor carpi radialis longior, in front; and is perforated by the musculo-spiral nerve, and superior profunda artery. The internal intermuscular septum, thicker than the preceding, extends from the lower part of the posterior lip of the bicipital groove below the Teres
major, along the internal condyloid ridge to the inner condyle; it is blended with the tendon of the Coraco-brachialis, and affords attachment to the Triceps behind, and the Brachialis anticus in front. It is perforated by the ulnar nerve, and the inferior profunda and anastomotic arteries. At the elbow, the deep fascia is attached to all the prominent points round the joint, and is continuous with the fascia of the forearm. On the removal of this fascia, the muscles of the anterior humeral region are exposed.

The Coraco-brachialis, the smallest of the three muscles in this region, is situated at the upper and inner part of the arm. It arises by fleshy fibres from the apex of the coracoid process, in common with the short head of the Biceps, and from the intermuscular septum between the two muscles; the fibres pass downwards, backwards, and a little outwards, to be inserted by means of a flat tendon into a rough ridge at the middle of the inner side of the shaft of the humerus. It is perforated by the musculo-cutaneous nerve. The inner border of the muscle forms a guide to the position of the vessel, in tying the brachial artery in the upper part of its course.

Relations. By its anterior surface, with the Deltoid and Pectoralis major above, and at its insertion with the brachial vessels and median nerve which cross it. By its posterior surface, with the tendons of the Subscapularis, Latissimus dorsi, and Teres major, the short head of the Triceps, the humerus, and the anterior circumflex vessels. By its inner border, with the brachial artery, and the median and musculo-cutaneous nerves. By its outer border, with the short head of the Biceps and Brachialis anticus.

The Biceps is a long fusiform muscle, occupying the whole of the anterior surface of the arm, and divided above into two portions or heads, from which circumstance it has received its name. The short head arises by a thick flattened tendon from the apex of the coracoid process, in common with the Coraco-brachialis. The long head arises from the upper margin of the glenoid cavity, by a long rounded tendon, which is continuous with the glenoid ligament. This tendon arches over the head of the humerus, being inclosed in a special sheath of the synovial membrane of the shoulder-joint; it then pierces the capsular ligament at its attachment to the humerus, and descends in the bicipital groove in which it is retained by a fibrous prolongation from the tendon of the Pectoralis major. The fibres from this tendon form a rounded belly, and about the middle of the arm, join with the portion of the muscle derived from the short head. The belly of the muscle, narrow and somewhat flattened, terminates above the elbow in a flattened tendon, which is inserted into the back part of the tuberosity of the radius, a synovial bursa being interposed between the tendon and the front of the tuberosity. The tendon of the muscle is thin and broad; as it approaches the radius it becomes narrow and twisted upon itself, being applied by a flat surface to the back part of the tuberosity: opposite the bend of the elbow the tendon gives off, from its inner side, a broad aponeurosis, the bicipital fascia, which passes obliquely downwards and inwards across the brachial artery, and is continuous with the fascia of the forearm (Fig. 266). The inner border of this muscle forms a guide to the position of the vessel, in tying the brachial artery in the middle of the arm.  

Relations. Its anterior surface is overlapped above by the Pectoralis major and Deltoid; in the rest of its extent it is covered by the superficial and deep fascia and the integument. Its posterior surface rests on the shoulder-joint and humerus, from which it is separated by the Subscapularis, Teres major, Latissimus dorsi, Brachialis anticus, and the musculo-cutaneous nerve. Its inner border

1 A third head to the Biceps is occasionally found (Theile says as often as once in eight or nine subjects), arising at the upper and inner part of the Brachialis anticus, with the fibres of which it is continuous, and inserted into the bicipital fascia and inner side of the tendon of the Biceps. In most cases, this additional slip passes behind the brachial artery in its course down the arm. Occasionally, the third head consists of two slips, which pass down, one in front, the other behind the artery, concealing the vessel in the lower half of the arm.
is in relation with the Coraco-brachialis, the brachial vessels, and median nerve; its outer border, with the Deltoid and Supinator longus.

The Brachialis Anticus is a broad muscle, which covers the elbow-joint and the lower half of the front of the humerus. It is somewhat compressed from before backward, and is broader in the middle than at either extremity. It arises from the lower half of the outer and inner surfaces of the shaft of the humerus: and commences above at the insertion of the Deltoid, which it embraces by two angular processes. Its origin extends below, to within an inch of the margin of the articular surface, and is limited on each side by the external and internal borders of the shaft of the humerus. It also arises from the intermuscular septa on each side, but more extensively from the inner than the outer. Its fibres converge to a thick tendon, which is inserted into a rough depression on the anterior surface of the coronoid process of the ulna, being received into an interval between two fleshy slips of the Flexor digitorum profundus.

Relations. By its anterior surface, with the Biceps, the brachial vessels, musculo-cutaneous and median nerves. By its posterior surface, with the humerus and front of the elbow-joint. By its inner border, with the Triceps, ulnar nerve, and Pronator radii teres, from which it is separated by the intermuscular septum. By its outer border, with the musculo-spiral nerve, radial recurrent artery, the Supinator longus, and Extensor carpi radialis longior.

Nerves. The muscles of this group are supplied by the musculo-cutaneous nerve. The Brachialis anticus usually receives an additional filament from the musculo-spiral.

Actions. The Coraco-brachialis draws the humerus forwards and inwards, and at the same time assists in elevating it towards the scapula. The Biceps and Brachialis anticus are flexors of the forearm: the former muscle is also a supinator, and serves to render tense the fascia of the forearm by means of the broad aponeurosis given off from its tendon. When the forearm is fixed, the Biceps and Brachialis anticus flex the arm upon the forearm, as is seen in efforts of climbing. The Brachialis anticus forms an important defence to the elbow-joint.

**Posterior Humeral Region.**

**Triceps.**

The Triceps (Fig. 268) is situated on the back of the arm, extending the entire length of the posterior surface of the humerus. It is of large size, and divided above into three parts; hence its name. These three portions have been named, (1) the middle, scapular, or long head, (2) the external, or long humeral, and (3) the internal, or short humeral head.

The middle or scapular head arises, by a flattened tendon, from a rough triangular depression, immediately below the glenoid cavity, being blended at its upper part with the capsular and glenoid ligaments; the muscular fibres pass downwards between the two other portions of the muscle, and join with them in the common tendon of insertion.

The external head arises from the posterior surface of the shaft of the humerus, between the insertion of the Teres minor and the upper part of the musculo-spiral groove, from the external border of the humerus and the external intermuscular septum: the fibres from this origin converge towards the common tendon of insertion.

The internal head arises from the posterior surface of the shaft of the humerus, below the groove for the musculo-spiral nerve, commencing above, narrow and pointed, below the insertion of the Teres major, and extending to within an inch of the trochlear surface: it also arises from the internal border of the humerus and internal intermuscular septum. The fibres of this portion of the muscle are directed, some downwards to the olecranon, whilst others converge to the common tendon of insertion.

The common tendon of the Triceps commences about the middle of the back
part of the muscle: it consists of two aponeurotic laminae, one of which is subcutaneous and covers the posterior surface of the muscle for the lower half of its extent: the other is more deeply seated in the substance of the muscle: after receiving the attachment of the muscular fibres, they join together above the elbow, and are inserted into the back part of the under surface of the olecranon process, a small bursa, occasionally multilocular, being interposed between the tendon and front of this surface.

The long head of the Triceps descends between the Teres minor and Teres major, dividing the triangular space between these two muscles and the humerus into two smaller spaces, one triangular, the other quadrangular (Fig. 268). The triangular space contains the dorsalis scapulae vessels; it is bounded by the Teres minor above, the Teres major below, and the scapular head of the Triceps externally: the quadrangular space transmits the posterior circumflex vessels and nerve; it is bounded by the Teres minor above, the Teres major below, the scapular head of the Triceps internally, and the humerus externally.

Relations. By its posterior surface, with the Deltoid above: in the rest of its extent it is subcutaneous. By its anterior surface, with the humerus, musculospiral nerve, superior profunda vessels, and back part of the elbow-joint. Its middle or long head is in relation, behind, with the Deltoid and Teres minor; in front, with the Subscapularis, Latissimus dorsi, and Teres major.

The Subanconeus is a small muscle distinct from the Triceps, and analogous to the Subcureus in the lower limb. It may be exposed by removing the Triceps from the lower part of the humerus. It consists of one or two slender fasciculi, which arise from the humerus, immediately above the olecranon fossa, and are inserted into the posterior ligament of the elbow-joint.

Nerves. The Triceps and Subanconeus are supplied by the musculo-spiral nerve.

Actions. The Triceps is the great Extensor muscle of the forearm; serving, when the forearm is flexed, to draw it into a right line with the arm. It is the direct antagonist of the Biceps and Brachialis anticus. When the arm is extended, the long head of the muscle may assist the Teres major and Latissimus dorsi in drawing the humerus backwards. The long head of the Triceps protects the under part of the shoulder-joint, and prevents displacement of the head of the humerus downwards and backwards.

Muscles of the Forearm.

Dissection. To dissect the forearm, place the limb in the position indicated in Fig. 265; make a vertical incision along the middle line from the elbow to the wrist, and a transverse incision at each extremity of this; the flaps of integument being removed, the fascia of the forearm is exposed.

The deep fascia of the forearm, continuous above with that inclosing the arm, is a dense highly glistening aponeurotic investment, which forms a general sheath inclosing the muscles in this region; it is attached behind to the olecranon and posterior border of the ulna, and gives off from its inner surface numerous intermuscular septa, which inclose each muscle separately. It consists of circular and oblique fibres, connected together by numerous vertical fibres. It is much thicker on the dorsal than on the palmar surface, and at the lower than at the upper part of the forearm, and is strengthened by tendinous fibres derived from the Brachialis anticus and Biceps in front, and from the Triceps behind. Its inner surface gives origin to muscular fibres, especially at the upper part of the inner and outer sides of the forearm, and forms the boundaries of a series of conical-shaped cavities, in which the muscles are contained. Besides the vertical septa separating each muscle, transverse septa are given off both on the anterior and posterior surfaces of the forearm, separating the deep from the superficial layer of muscles. Numerous apertures exist in the fascia for the passage of vessels and nerves; one of these, of large size, situated at the front of the elbow, serves for the passage of a communicating branch between the superficial and deep veins.
The muscles of the forearm may be subdivided into groups corresponding to the region they occupy. One group occupies the inner and anterior aspect of the forearm, and comprises the Flexor and Pronator muscles. Another group occupies its outer side; and a third, its posterior aspect. The two latter groups include all the Extensor and Supinator muscles.

**Anterior Brachial Region.**

*Superficial Layer.*

Pronator Radii Teres.  Flexor Carpi Ulnaris.
Flexor Carpi Radialis.  Flexor Sublimis Digitorum.
Palmaris Longus.

These muscles take origin from the internal condyle of the humerus by a common tendon.

The *Pronator Radii Teres* arises by two heads. One, the larger and more superficial, arises from the humerus, immediately above the internal condyle, and from the tendon common to the origin of the other muscles; also from the fascia of the forearm, and intermuscular septum between it and the *Flexor carpi radialis*. The other head is a thin fasciculus, which arises from the inner side of the coronoid process of the ulna, joining the preceding at an acute angle. Between the two heads passes the median nerve. The muscle passes obliquely across the forearm from the inner to the outer side, and terminates in a flat tendon, which turns over the outer margin of the radius, and is inserted into a rough ridge at the middle of the outer surface of the shaft of that bone.

*Variations.* The coronoid origin of this muscle presents numerous variations. It is occasionally absent, and in one case recorded by Dr. Macalister (Journal of Anat. and Phys. 2d series, No. 1, p. 9), it existed as a distinct muscle, inserted into the front of the radius higher up than the rest of the mass. In other cases the coronoid slip has been found connected with the Palmaris longus or the *Flexor carpi radialis*, instead of the Pronator teres, and other slighter anomalies have been recorded by Dr. Macalister.

*Relations.* By its anterior surface, with the deep fascia, the Supinator longus, and the radial vessels and nerve. By its posterior surface, with the Brachialis anticus, Flexor sublimis digitorum, the median nerve, and ulnar artery: the small, or deep, head being interposed between the two latter structures. Its outer border forms the inner boundary of a triangular space, in which is placed the brachial artery, median nerve, and tendon of the Biceps muscle. Its inner border is in contact with the *Flexor carpi radialis*.

The *Flexor Carpi Radialis* lies on the inner side of the preceding muscle. It arises from the internal condyle by the common tendon, from the fascia of the forearm, and from the intermuscular septa between it and the Pronator teres, on the outside; the Palmaris longus, internally; and the Flexor
sublimis digitorum, beneath. Slender and aponeurotic in structure at its commencement, it increases in size, and terminates in a tendon which forms the lower two-thirds of its length. This tendon passes through a canal on the outer side of the annular ligament, runs through a groove in the os trapezium (which is converted into a canal by a fibrous sheath, and lined by a synovial membrane), and is inserted into the base of the metacarpal bone of the index finger. The radial artery lies between the tendon of this muscle and the Supinator longus, and may easily be tied in this situation.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the deep fascia and the integument. By its deep surface, with the Flexor sublimis digitorum, Flexor longus pollicis and wrist-joint. By its outer border, with the Pronator radii teres, and the radial vessels. By its inner border, with the Palmaris longus above, and the median nerve below.

Mr. J. Wood describes a muscle occasionally found (6 times in 70 subjects) beneath the Flexor carpi radialis, and which he has named the Flexor carpi radialis brevis vel profundus. In the best marked specimen it arose from the outer side of the front surface of the radius, above the Pronator quadratus, and below the Flexor longus pollicis, and was inserted into the base of the middle metacarpal bone and os magnum; but several variations are described, both in its origin and insertion. Mr. Norton has also found an instance of a similar muscle attached to the middle metacarpal bone. *Journ. of Anat. and Phys.*, Nov. 1866, p. 55.

The Palmaris Longus is a slender, fusiform muscle, lying on the inner side of the preceding. It arises from the inner condyle of the humerus by the common tendon, from the deep fascia, and the intermuscular septa between it and the adjacent muscles. It terminates in a slender flattened tendon, which is inserted into the annular ligament, expanding to end in the palmar fascia.

Variations. This muscle is often absent; when present, it offers many varieties. Its fleshy belly is sometimes very long, or may occupy the middle of the muscle, which is tendinous at either extremity; or the Palmaris may be muscular at its lower extremity, its upper part being tendinous. Occasionally, there is a second Palmaris longus placed on the inner side of the preceding, terminating below, partly in the annular ligament or fascia, and partly in the small muscles of the little finger.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the deep fascia. By its deep surface, with the Flexor sublimis digitorum. Internally, with the Flexor carpi ulnaris. Externally, with the Flexor carpi radialis. The median nerve lies close to the tendon, just above the wrist, on its inner and posterior side.

The Flexor Carpi Ulnaris lies along the ulnar side of the forearm. It arises by two heads, connected by a tendinous arch, beneath which pass the ulnar nerve, and posterior ulnar recurrent artery. One head arises from the inner condyle of the humerus by the common tendon; the other, from the inner margin of the olecranon, by an aponeurosis from the upper two-thirds of the posterior border of the ulna, and from the intermuscular septum between it and the Flexor sublimis digitorum. The fibres terminate in a tendon, which occupies the anterior part of the lower half of the muscle, and is inserted into the pisiform bone, some fibres being prolonged to the annular ligament and base of the metacarpal bone of the little finger. The ulnar artery lies on the outer side of the tendon of this muscle, in the lower two-thirds of the forearm; the tendon forming a guide in tying the vessel in this situation.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the deep fascia, with which it is intimately connected for a considerable extent. By its deep surface, with the Flexor sublimis, the Flexor profundus, the Pronator quadratus, and the ulnar vessels and nerve. By its outer or radial border with the Palmaris longus above, and the ulnar vessels and nerve below.

The Flexor Sublimis Digitorum (perforatus) is placed beneath the preceding muscles, which therefore must be removed in order to bring its attachment into view. It is the largest of the muscles of the superficial layer, and arises by three heads. One head arises from the internal condyle of the humerus by the common tendon, from the internal lateral ligament of the elbow-joint, and from
the intermuscular septum common to it and the preceding muscles. The second head arises from the inner side of the coronoid process of the ulna, above the ulnar origin of the Pronator radii teres (Fig. 188, p. 229). The third head arises from the oblique line of the radius, extending from the tubercle to the insertion of the Pronator radii teres. The fibres pass vertically downwards, forming a broad and thick muscle, which divides into four tendons about the middle of the forearm; as these tendons pass beneath the annular ligament into the palm of the hand, they are arranged in pairs, the anterior pair corresponding to the middle and ring fingers; the posterior pair to the index and little fingers. The tendons diverge from one another as they pass onwards, and are finally inserted into the lateral margins of the second phalanges, about their middle. Opposite the base of the first phalanges, each tendon divides so as to leave a fissured interval, between which passes one of the tendons of the Flexor profundus, and the tendons of both the Flexors then enter an osseo-aponeurotic canal, formed by a strong fibrous band, which arches across them, and is attached on each side to the margins of the phalanges. The two portions into which the tendon of the Flexor sublimis divides, so as to admit of the passage of the deep flexor, expand somewhat, and form a grooved channel, into which the accompanying deep flexor tendon is received; the two divisions then unite, and finally subdivide a second amount, to be inserted into the fore part and sides of the second phalanges (Fig. 274). The tendons, whilst contained in the fibro-osseous canals, are connected to the phalanges by slender tendinous filaments, called vincula accessorii tendinum. A synovial sheath invests the tendons as they pass beneath the annular ligament; a prolongation from which surrounds each tendon as it passes along the phalanges.

**Relations.** In the forearm, by its superficial surface, with the deep fascia and all the preceding superficial muscles; by its deep surface, with the Flexor profundus digitorum, Flexor longus pollicis, the ulnar vessels and nerve, and the median nerve. In the hand, its tendons are in relation, in front, with the palmar fascia, superficial palmar arch, and the branches of the median nerve; behind, with the tendons of the deep flexor and the Lumbricales.

**Anterior Brachial Region.**

**Deep Layer.**


**Dissection.** Divide each of the superficial muscles at its centre, and turn either end aside; the deep layer of muscles, together with the median nerve and ulnar vessels, will then be exposed.

The *Flexor Profundus Digitorum (perforans)* (Fig. 270) is situated on the ulnar side of the forearm, immediately beneath the superficial Flexors. It arises from the upper two-thirds of the anterior and inner surfaces of the shaft of the ulna, embracing the insertion of the Brachialis anticus above, and extending, below, to within a short distance of the Pronator quadratus. It also arises from a depression on the inner side of the coronoid process, by an aponeurosis from the upper two-thirds of the posterior border of the ulna, and from the ulnar half of the interosseous membrane. The fibres form a fleshy belly of considerable size which divides into four tendons: these pass under the annular ligament beneath the tendons of the Flexor sublimis. Opposite the first phalanges, the tendons pass between the two slips of the tendons of the Flexor sublimis, and are finally inserted into the bases of the last phalanges. The tendon of the index finger is distinct; the rest are connected together by cellular tissue and tendinous slips, as far as the palm of the hand.

Four small muscles, the Lumbricales, are connected with the tendons of the Flexor profundus in the palm. They will be described with the muscles in that region.
Relations. By its superficial surface, in the forearm, with the Flexor sublimis digitorum, the Flexor carpi ulnaris, the ulnar vessels and nerve, and the median nerve; and in the hand, with the tendons of the superficial Flexor. By its deep surface, in the forearm, with the ulna, the interosseous membrane, the Pronator quadratus: and in the hand, with the Interossei, Adductor pollicis, and deep palmar arch. By its ulnar border, with the Flexor carpi ulnaris. By its radial border, with the Flexor longus pollicis, the anterior interosseous vessels and nerve being interposed.

The Flexor Longus Pollicis is situated on the radial side of the forearm, lying on the same plane as the preceding. It arises from the upper two-thirds of the grooved anterior surface of the shaft of the radius; commencing above, immediately below the tuberosity and oblique line, and extending, below, to within a short distance of the Pronator quadratus. It also arises from the adjacent part of the interosseous membrane, and occasionally by a fleshy slip from the base of the coronoid process. The fibres pass downwards, and terminate in a flattened tendon, which passes beneath the annular ligament, is then lodged in the interspace between the two heads of the Flexor brevis pollicis, and entering an osseo-aponeurotic canal similar to those for the other flexor tendons, is inserted into the base of the last phalanx of the thumb.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Flexor sublimis digitorum, Flexor carpi radialis, Supinator longus and radial vessels. By its deep surface, with the radius, interosseous membrane, and Pronator quadratus. By its ulnar border, with the Flexor profundus digitorum, from which it is separated by the anterior interosseous vessels and nerve.

The Pronator Quadratus is a small, flat, quadrilateral muscle,
extending transversely across the front of the radius and ulna, above their carpal extremities. It arises from the oblique line on the lower fourth of the anterior surface of the shaft of the ulna, and the surface of bone immediately below it; from the anterior border of the ulna; and from a strong aponeurosis which covers the inner third of the muscle. The fibres pass horizontally outwards, to be inserted into the lower fourth of the anterior surface and external border of the shaft of the radius.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the Flexor profundus digitorum, the Flexor longus pollicis, Flexor carpi radialis, and the radial vessels. By its deep surface, with the radius, ulna, and interosseous membrane.

**Nerves.** All the muscles of the superficial layer are supplied by the median nerves, excepting the Flexor carpi ulnaris, which is supplied by the ulnar. Of the deep layer, the Flexor profundus digitorum is supplied conjointly by the ulnar and by the median, through its branch, the anterior interosseous nerve, which also supplies the Flexor longus pollicis and Pronator quadratus.

**Actions.** These muscles act upon the forearm, the wrist, and hand. Those acting on the forearm, are the Pronator radii teres and Pronator quadratus, which rotate the radius upon the ulna, rendering the hand prone; when pronation has been fully effected, the Pronator radii teres assists the other muscles in flexing the forearm. The flexors of the wrist are the Flexor carpi ulnaris and radialis; and the flexors of the phalanges are the Flexor sublimis and profundus digitorum; the former flexing the second phalanges, and the latter the last. The Flexor longus pollicis flexes the last phalanx of the thumb. The three latter muscles, after flexing the phalanges, by continuing their action, act upon the wrist, assisting the ordinary flexors of this joint; and all those which are attached to the humerus assist in flexing the forearm upon the arm. The Palmaris longus is a tensor of the palmar fascia; when this action has been fully effected, it flexes the hand upon the forearm.

**Radial Region.** (Fig. 271.)

*Supinator Longus.*

*Extensor Carpi Radialis Longior.*

*Extensor Carpi Radialis Brevior.*

**Dissection.** Divide the integument in the same manner as in the dissection of the anterior brachial region; and after having examined the cutaneous vessels and nerves and deep fascia, remove all those structures. The muscles will then be exposed. The removal of the fascia will be considerably facilitated by detaching it from below upwards. Great care should be taken to avoid cutting across the tendons of the muscles of the thumb, which cross obliquely the larger tendons running down the back of the radius.

The *Supinator Longus* is the most superficial muscle on the radial side of the forearm: it is fleshy for the upper two-thirds of its extent, tendinous below. It arises from the upper two-thirds of the external condyloid ridge of the humerus, and from the external intermuscular septum, being limited above by the musculo-spiral groove. The fibres terminate above the middle of the forearm in a flat tendon, which is inserted into the styloid process of the radius.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the integument and fascia for the greater part of its extent; near its insertion it is crossed by the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis and the Extensor primi internodii pollicis. By its deep surface, with the humerus, the Extensor carpi radialis longior and brevior, the insertion of the Pronator radii teres, and the Supinator brevis. By its inner border, above the elbow, with the Brachialis anticus, the musculo-spiral nerve, and radial recurrent artery; and in the forearm, with the radial vessels and nerve.

The *Extensor Carpi Radialis Longior* is placed partly beneath the preceding muscle. It arises from the lower third of the external condyloid ridge of the humerus, and from the external intermuscular septum. The fibres terminate at the upper third of the forearm in a flat tendon, which runs along the outer border of the radius, beneath the extensor tendons of the thumb; it then passes through a groove common to it and the Extensor carpi radialis brevior imme-
diately behind the styloid process; and is inserted into the base of the metacarpal bone of the index finger, on its radial side.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Supinator longus, and fascia of the forearm. Its outer side is crossed obliquely by the extensor tendons of the thumb. By its deep surface, with the elbow-joint, the Extensor carpi radialis brevior, and back part of the wrist.

The Extensor Carpi Radialis Brevior is shorter, as its name implies, and thicker than the preceding muscle, beneath which it is placed. It arises from the external condyle of the humerus by a tendon common to it and the three following muscles; from the external lateral ligament of the elbow-joint; from a strong aponeurosis which covers its surface; and from the intermuscular septa between it and the adjacent muscles. The fibres terminate about the middle of the forearm in a flat tendon, which is closely connected with that of the preceding muscle, accompanies it to the wrist lying in the same groove on the posterior surface of the radius; passes beneath the annular ligament and, diverging somewhat from its fellow, is inserted into the base of the metacarpal bone of the middle finger on its radial side.

The tendons of the two preceding muscles pass through the same compartment of the annular ligament, and are lubricated by a single synovial membrane, but are separated from each other by a small vertical ridge of bone as they lie in the groove at the back of the radius.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Extensor carpi radialis longior, and with the Extensor muscles of the thumb, which cross it. By its deep surface, with the Supinator brevis, tendon of the Pronator radii teres, radius and wrist-joint. By its ulnar border, with the Extensor communis digitorum.

Actions. The actions of the muscles of this region will be described in connection with those of the posterior brachial region.
POSTERIOR BRACHIAL REGION.

Superficial Layer.

Extensor Communis Digitorum.
Extensor Carpi Ulnaris.
Extensor Minimi Digiti.
Anconeus.

The Extensor Communis Digitorum is situated at the back part of the forearm. It arises from the external condyle of the humerus by the common tendon, from the deep fascia, and the intermuscular septa between it and the adjacent muscles. Just below the middle of the forearm it divides into three tendons, which pass, together with the Extensor indicis, through a separate compartment of the annular ligament, lubricated by a synovial membrane. The tendons then diverge, the innermost one dividing into two; and all, after passing across the back of the hand, are inserted into the second and third phalanges of the fingers in the following manner: Each tendon becomes narrow and thickened opposite the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation, and gives off a thin fasciculus upon each side of the joint which serves as the posterior ligament; after having passed the joint, it spreads out into a broad aponeurosis, which covers the whole of the dorsal surface of the first phalanx; being reinforced, in this situation, by the tendons of the Interossei and Lumbricales. Opposite the first phalangeal joint this aponeurosis divides into three slips, a middle, and two lateral: the former is inserted into the base of the second phalanx; and the two lateral, which are continued onwards along the sides of the second phalanx, unite by their contiguous margins, and are inserted into the dorsal surface of the last phalanx. As the tendons cross the phalangeal joints, they furnish them with posterior ligaments. The tendons of the middle, ring, and little fingers are connected together, as they cross the hand, by small oblique tendinous slips. The tendons of the index and little fingers also receive, before their division, the special extensor tendons belonging to them.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the fascia of the forearm and hand, the posterior annular ligament, and integument. By its deep surface, with the Supinator brevis, the Extensor muscles of the thumb and index finger, the posterior interosseous vessels and nerve, the wrist-joint, carpus, metacarpus, and phalanges. By its radial border, with the Extensor carpi radius brevis. By its ulnar border, with the Extensor minimi digiti, and Extensor carpi ulnaris.

The Extensor Minimi Digiti is a slender muscle placed on the inner side of the Extensor communis, with which it is generally connected. It arises from the common tendon by a thin tendinous slip; and from the intermuscular septa between it and the adjacent muscles. Its tendon runs through a separate compartment in the annular ligament behind the inferior radio-ulnar joint, then divides into two as it crosses the hand, and, at the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation, unites with the tendon derived from the common Extensor, lying at first to the ulnar side of that tendon and somewhat more superficial. The common tendon then spreads into a broad aponeurosis, which is inserted into the second and third phalanges of the little finger in a similar manner to the common extensor tendons of the other fingers.

The Extensor Carpi Ulnaris is the most superficial muscle on the ulnar side of the forearm. It arises from the external condyle of the humerus, by the common tendon; from the middle third of the posterior border of the ulna below the Anconeus, and from the fascia of the forearm. This muscle terminates in a tendon, which runs through a groove behind the styloid process of the ulna, passes through a separate compartment in the annular ligament, and is inserted into the ulnar side of the base of the metacarpal bone of the little finger.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the fascia of the forearm. By its deep surface, with the ulna, and the muscles of the deep layer.

The Anconeus is a small triangular muscle, placed behind and below the elbow.
joint, and appears to be a continuation of the external portion of the Triceps. It arises by a separate tendon from the back part of the outer condyle of the humerus; and is inserted into the side of the olecranon, and upper fourth of the posterior surface of the shaft of the ulna; its fibres diverge from their origin, the upper ones being directed transversely, the lower obliquely inwards.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with a strong fascia derived from the Triceps. By its deep surface, with the elbow-joint, the orbicular ligament, the ulna, and a small portion of the Supinator brevis.

Posterior Brachial Region. (Fig. 272.)

Deep Layer.

Supinator Brevis. Extensor Primi Internodii Pollicis.
Extensor Indicus.

The Supinator Brevis is a broad muscle, of a hollow cylindrical form, curved round the upper third of the radius. It arises from the external condyle of the humerus, from the external lateral ligament of the elbow-joint, and the orbicular ligament of the radius, from the ridge on the ulna which runs obliquely downwards from the posterior extremity of the lesser sigmoid cavity, from the triangular depression in front of it, and from a tendinous expansion which covers the surface of the muscle. The muscle surrounds the upper part of the radius: the upper fibres forming a sling-like fasciculus, which encircles the neck of the radius above the tuberosity, and is attached to the back part of its inner surface; the middle fibres are attached to the outer edge of the bicipital tuberosity; the lower fibres to the oblique line of the radius, as low down as the insertion of the Pronator radii teres. This muscle is pierced by the posterior interosseous nerve.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the superficial Extensor and Supinator muscles, and the radial vessels and nerve. By its deep surface, with the elbow-joint, the interosseous membrane, and the radius.

The Extensor Ossis Metacarpi Pollicis is the most external and the largest of the deep Extensor muscles; it lies immediately below the Supinator brevis, with which it is sometimes united, it arises from the posterior surface of the shaft of the ulna below the insertion of the Anconeus, from the interosseous ligament, and from the middle third of the posterior surface of the shaft of the radius. Passing obliquely downwards and outwards, it terminates in a tendon which runs through a groove on the outer side of the styloid process of the radius, accompanied by the tendon of the Extensor primi internodii pollicis, and is inserted into the base of the metacarpal bone of the thumb.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Extensor communis digitorum, Extensor minimi digiti, and fascia of the forearm; and with the branches of the posterior interosseous artery and nerve which cross it. By its deep surface, with the ulna, interosseous membrane, radius, the tendons of the Extensor carpi radialis longior and brevior, which it crosses obliquely; and, at the outer side of the wrist, with the radial vessels. By its upper border, with the Supinator brevis. By its lower border, with the Extensor primi internodii pollicis.

The Extensor Primi Internodii Pollicis, the smallest muscle of this group, lies on the inner side of the preceding. It arises from the posterior surface of the shaft of the radius, below the Extensor ossis metacarpi, and from the interosseous membrane. Its direction is similar to that of the Extensor ossis metacarpi, its tendon passing through the same groove on the outer side of the styloid process to be inserted into the base of the first phalanx of the thumb.

Relations. The same as those of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis.

The Extensor Secundi Internodii Pollicis is much larger than the preceding muscle, the origin of which it partly covers in. It arises from the posterior surface of the shaft of the ulna, below the origin of the Extensor ossis metacarpi.
POLSTER BRACHIAL REGION.

pollicis, and from the interosseous membrane. It terminates in a tendon which passes through a separate compartment in the annular ligament, lying in a narrow oblique groove at the back part of the lower end of the radius. It then crosses obliquely the Extensor tendons of the carpus, being separated from the other Extensor tendons of the thumb by a triangular interval, in which the radial artery is found; and is finally inserted into the base of the last phalanx of the thumb.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the same parts as the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis. By its deep surface, with the ulna, interosseous membrane, radius, the wrist, the radial vessels, and metacarpal bone of the thumb.

The Extensor Indicis is a narrow elongated muscle, placed on the inner side of, and parallel with, the preceding. It arises from the posterior surface of the shaft of the ulna, below the origin of the Extensor secundii internodii pollicis, and from the interosseous membrane. Its tendon passes with the Extensor communis digitorum through the same canal in the annular ligament, and subsequently joins that tendon of the Extensor communis which belongs to the index finger, opposite the lower end of the corresponding metacarpal bone, lying to the ulnar side of the tendon from the common Extensor. It is finally inserted into the second and third phalanges of the index finger in the manner already described.

Relations. They are similar to those of the preceding muscles.

Nerves. The Supinator longus, Extensor carpi radialis longior, and Anconaeus, are supplied by branches from the musculo-spiral nerve. The remaining muscles of the radial and posterior brachial regions, by the posterior interosseous nerve.

Actions. The muscles of the
radial and posterior brachial regions, which comprise all the Extensor and Supinator muscles, act upon the forearm, wrist, and hand; they are the direct antagonists of the Pronator and Flexor muscles. The Anconae assists the Triceps in extending the forearm. The Supinator longus and brevis are the supinators of the forearm and hand; the former muscle more especially acting as a supinator when the limb is pronated. When supination has been produced, the Supinator longus, if still continuing to act, flexes the forearm. The Extensor carpi radialis longior and brevior, and Extensor carpi ulnaris muscles, are the Extensors of the wrist; continuing their action, they serve to extend the forearm upon the arm; they are the direct antagonists of the Flexor carpi radialis and ulnaris. The common Extensor of the fingers, the Extensors of the thumb, and the Extensors of the index and little fingers, serve to extend the phalanges into which they are inserted; and are the direct antagonists of the Flexors. By continuing their action, they assist in extending the forearm. The Extensors of the thumb, in consequence of the oblique direction of their tendons, assist in supinating the forearm when the thumb has been drawn inwards towards the palm.

MUSCLES AND FASCIAE OF THE HAND.

Dissection (Fig. 265). Make a transverse incision across the front of the wrist, and a second across the heads of the metacarpal bones: connect the two by a vertical incision in the middle line, and continue it through the centre of the middle finger. The anterior and posterior annular ligaments, and the palmar fascia, should then be dissected.

The Anterior Annular Ligament is a strong fibrous band, which arches over the carpus, converting the deep groove on the front of the carpal bones into a canal, beneath which pass the flexor tendons of the fingers. It is attached, internally, to the pisiform bone, and unciniform process of the unciniform bone; and externally, to the tuberosity of the scaphoid, and ridge on the trapezium. It is continuous, above, with the deep fascia of the forearm, and below, with the palmar fascia. It is crossed by the ulnar vessels and nerve, and the cutaneous branches of the median and ulnar nerves. It has inserted into its upper and inner part the tendon of the Palmaris longus and part of the tendon of the Flexor carpi ulnaris; and has, arising from it below, the small muscles of the thumb and little finger. It is pierced by the tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis; and, beneath it, pass the tendons of the Flexor sublimis and profundus digitorum, the Flexor longus pollicis, and the median nerve. There are two synovial membranes beneath this ligament; one of large size, inclosing the tendons of the Flexor sublimis and profundus; and a separate one for the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis, which is also very extensive, reaching from above the wrist to the extremity of the last phalanx of the thumb.

The Posterior Annular Ligament is a strong fibrous band, extending transversely across the back of the wrist, and continuous with the fascia of the forearm. It forms a sheath for the extensor tendons in their passage to the fingers, being attached, internally, to the ulna, the unciniform and pisiform bones, and palmar fascia; externally, to the margin of the radius: and, in its passage across the wrist, to the elevated ridges on the posterior surface of the radius. It presents six compartments for the passage of tendons, each of which is lined by a separate synovial membrane.
OF THE HAND.

These are, from without inwards—1. On the outer side of the styloid process for the tendons of the Extensor ossis metacarpi, and Extensor primi internodii pollicis. 2. Behind the styloid process, for the tendons of the Extensor carpi radialis longior and brevior. 3. Opposite the outer side of the posterior surface of the radius, for the tendon of the Extensor secundi internodii pollicis. 4. To the inner side of the latter, for the tendons of the Extensor communis digitorum and Extensor indicis. 5. For the Extensor minimi digiti, opposite the interval between the radius and ulna. 6. For the tendon of the Extensor carpi ulnaris, grooving the back of the ulna. The synovial membranes lining these sheaths are usually very extensive, reaching from above the annular ligament, down upon the tendons almost to their insertion.

The palmar fascia forms a common sheath which invests the muscles of the hand. It consists of a central and two lateral portions.

The central portion occupies the middle of the palm, is triangular in shape, of great strength and thickness, and binds down the tendons in this situation. It is narrow above, being attached to the lower margin of the annular ligament, and receives the expanded tendon of the Palmaris longus muscle. Below, it is broad and expanded, and opposite the heads of the metacarpal bones divides into four slips, for the four fingers. Each slip subdivides into two processes, which inclose the tendons of the Flexor muscles, and are attached to the sides of the first phalanx, and to the glenoid ligament: by this arrangement, four arches are formed, under which the Flexor tendons pass. The intervals left in the fascia, between the four fibrous slips, transmit the digital vessels and nerves, and the tendons of the Lumbricales. At the points of division of the palmar fascia into the slips above mentioned, numerous strong transverse fibres bind the separate processes together. The palmar fascia is intimately adherent to the integument by numerous fibrous bands, and gives origin by its inner margin to the Palmaris brevis; it covers the superficial palmar arch, the tendons of the flexor muscles, and the branches of the median and ulnar nerves; and on each side it gives off a vertical septum, which is continuous with the interosseous aponeurosis, and separates the lateral from the middle palmar group of muscles.

The lateral portions of the palmar fascia are thin fibrous layers, which cover, on the radial side, the muscles of the ball of the thumb; and, on the ulnar side, the muscles of the little finger; they are continuous with the dorsal fascia, and in the palm with the middle portion of the palmar fascia.

MUSCLES OF THE HAND.

The Muscles of the Hand are subdivided into three groups:—1. Those of the thumb, which occupy the radial side. 2. Those of the little finger, which occupy the ulnar side. 3. Those in the middle of the palm and between the interosseous spaces.

RADIAL REGION. (Fig. 274.)

Muscles of the Thumb.

Abductor Pollicis.
Opponens Pollicis (Flexor Ossis Metacarpi).
Flexor Brevis Pollicis.
Adductor Pollicis.

The Abductor Pollicis is a thin flat muscle, placed immediately beneath the integument. It arises from the ridge of the os trapezium and annular ligament; and, passing outwards and downwards, is inserted by a thin flat tendon into the radial side of the base of the first phalanx of the thumb.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the palmar fascia. By its deep surface, with the Opponens pollicis, from which it is separated by a thin aponeurosis. Its inner border is separated from the Flexor brevis pollicis by a narrow cellular interval.
The *Opponens Pollicis* is a small triangular muscle, placed beneath the preceding. It arises from the palmar surface of the trapezium and annular ligament, passes downwards and outwards, and is inserted into the whole length of the metacarpal bone of the thumb on its radial side.

Fig. 274.—Muscles of the Left Hand. Palmar Surface.

*Relations.* By its superficial surface, with the *Abductor pollicis*. By its deep surface, with the trapezio-metacarpal articulation. By its inner border, with the *Flexor brevis pollicis*.

The *Flexor Brevis Pollicis* is much larger than either of the two preceding muscles, beneath which it is placed. It consists of two portions, in the interval
between which lies the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis. The anterior and more superficial portion arises from the trapezium and outer two-thirds of the annular ligament; the deeper portion from the trapezoid, os magnum, base of the third metacarpal bone, and sheath of the tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis. The fleshy fibres unite to form a single muscle; this divides into two portions, which are inserted one on either side of the base of the first phalanx of the thumb, the outer portion being joined with the Adductor, and the inner with the Adductor. A sesamoid bone is developed in each tendon as it passes across the metacarlo-phalangeal joint.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the palmar fascia. By its deep surface, with the Adductor pollicis, and tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis. By its external surface, with the Opponens pollicis. By its internal surface, with the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis.

The Adductor Pollicis (Fig. 270) is the most deeply-seated of this group of muscles. It is of a triangular form, arising, by its broad base, from the whole length of the metacarpal bone of the middle finger on its palmar surface; the fibres, proceeding outwards, converge, to be inserted with the inner tendon of the Flexor brevis pollicis, into the ulnar side of the base of the first phalanx of the thumb, and into the internal sesamoid bone.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Flexor brevis pollicis, the tendons of the Flexor profundus and the Lumbricales. Its deep surface covers the first two intersosseous spaces, from which it is separated by a strong aponeurosis.

Nerves. The Adductor, Opponens, and outer head of the Flexor brevis pollicis, are supplied by the median nerve; the inner head of the Flexor brevis, and the Adductor pollicis, by the ulnar nerve.

Actions. The actions of the muscles of the thumb are almost sufficiently indicated by their names. This segment of the hand is provided with three Extensors—an Extensor of the metacarpal bone, an Extensor of the first, and an Extensor of the second phalanx; these occupy the dorsal surface of the forearm and hand. There are, also, three flexors on the palmar surface—a Flexor of the metacarpal bone, the Flexor osiss metacarpi (Opponens pollicis), the Flexor brevis pollicis, and the Flexor longus pollicis; there is also an Abductor and an Adductor. These muscles give to the thumb its extensive range of motion.

Ulnar Region. (Fig. 274.)

Muscles of the Little Finger.

Palmaris Brevis. Flexor Brevis Minimi Digitii.
Abductor Minimi Digitit. Opponens Minimi Digitii (Flexor Ossis Metacarpi).

The Palmaris Brevis is a thin quadrilateral muscle, placed beneath the integument on the ulnar side of the hand. It arises by tendinous fasciculi, from the annular ligament and palmar fascia; the fleshy fibres pass horizontally inwards to be inserted into the skin on the inner border of the palm of the hand.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the integument to which it is intimately adherent, especially by its inner extremity. By its deep surface, with the inner portion of the palmar fascia; which separates it from the ulnar vessels and nerve, and from the muscles of the ulnar side of the hand.

The Abductor Minimi Digitit is situated on the ulnar border of the palm of the hand. It arises from the pisiform bone, and from an expansion of the tendon of the Flexor carpi ulnaris; and terminates in a flat tendon, which is inserted into the ulnar side of the base of the first phalanx of the little finger.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the inner portion of the palmar fascia, and the Palmaris brevis. By its deep surface, with the Flexor osiss metacarpi. By its inner border, with the Flexor brevis minimi digitit.

The Flexor Brevis Minimi Digitit lies on the same plane as the preceding muscle, on its radial side. It arises from the tip of the unciform process of the
unciform bone, and anterior surface of the annular ligament, and is inserted into the base of the first phalanx of the little finger, with the preceding. It is separated from the Abductor at its origin, by the deep branches of the ulnar artery and nerve. This muscle is sometimes wanting; the Abductor is then, usually, of large size.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the internal portion of the palmar fascia, and the Palmaris brevis. By its deep surface, with the Opponens.

The Opponens Minimi Digit (Fig. 270) is of a triangular form, and placed immediately beneath the preceding muscles. It arises from the unciniform process of the unciform bone, and contiguous portion of the annular ligament; its fibres pass downwards and inwards, to be inserted into the whole length of the metacarpal bone of the little finger, along its ulnar margin.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the Flexor brevis, and Abductor minimi digiti. By its deep surface, with the Interossei muscles in the fourth metacarpal space, the metacarpal bone, and the Flexor tendons of the little finger.

**Nerves.** All the muscles of this group are supplied by the ulnar nerve.

**Actions.** The actions of the muscles of the little finger are expressed in their names. The Palmaris brevis corrugates the skin on the inner side of the palm of the hand.

### Middle Palmar Region.

**Lumbricales.**

**Interossei Palmares.**

**Interossei Dorsales.**

The _Lumbricales_ (Fig. 274) are four small fleshy fasciculi, accessories to the deep Flexor muscle. They arise by fleshy fibres from the tendons of the deep Flexor: the first and second, from the radial side and palmar surface of the tendons of the index and middle fingers; the third, from the contiguous sides of the tendons of the middle and ring fingers; and the fourth, from the contiguous sides of the tendons of the ring and little fingers. They pass forwards to the radial side of the corresponding fingers, and opposite the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation each tendon terminates in a broad aponeurosis, which is inserted into the tendinous expansion from the Extensor communis digitorum, covering the dorsal aspect of each finger.

The _Interossei Muscles_ are so named from occupying the intervals between the metacarpal bones. They are divided into two sets, a dorsal and palmar; the former are four in number, one in each metacarpal space; the latter, three in number, lie upon the metacarpal bones.

The _Dorsal Interossei_ are four in number, larger than the palmar, and occupy the intervals between the metacarpal bones.

They are bipenniform muscles, arising by two heads from the adjacent sides of the metacarpal bones, but more extensively from that side of the metacarpal bone which corresponds to the side of the finger in which the muscle is inserted. They are inserted into the base of the first phalanges and into the aponeurosis of the common Extensor tendon. Between the double origin of each of these...
muscles is a narrow triangular interval, through which passes a perforating branch from the deep palmar arch.

The First Dorsal Interosseous muscle, or Abductor indicis, is larger than the others. It is flat, triangular in form, and arises by two heads, separated by a fibrous arch, for the passage of the radial artery from the dorsum to the palm of the hand. The outer head arises from the upper half of the ulnar border of the first metacarpal bone; the inner head, from almost the entire length of the radial border of the second metacarpal bone; the tendon is inserted into the radial side of the index finger. The second and third dorsal interossei are inserted into the middle finger, the former into its radial, the latter into its ulnar side. The fourth is inserted into the ulnar side of the ring finger.

The Palmar Interossei, three in number, are smaller than the Dorsal, and placed upon the palmar surface of the metacarpal bones, rather than between them. They arise from the entire length of the metacarpal bone of one finger, and are inserted into the side of the base of the first phalanx and aponeurotic expansion of the common Extensor tendon of the same finger.

The first arises from the ulnar side of the second metacarpal bone, and is inserted into the same side of the index finger. The second arises from the radial side of the fourth metacarpal bone, and is inserted into the same side of the ring finger. The third arises from the radial side of the fifth metacarpal bone, and is inserted into the same side of the little finger. From this account it may be seen, that each finger is provided with two Interossei muscles, with the exception of the little finger, in which the Abductor muscle takes the place of one of the pair.

Nerves. The two outer Lumbricales are supplied by the median nerve; the rest of the muscles of this group, by the ulnar.

Actions. The Dorsal Interossei muscles abduct the fingers from an imaginary line drawn longitudinally through the centre of the middle finger; and the Palmar interossei abduct the fingers towards that line. They usually assist the Extensor muscles; but when the fingers are slightly bent, they assist in flexing them. The action of the Lumbricales and Internal or Dorsal interossei is said by Hunter to be to flex the first phalanges, and extend the last two (works by Palmer, iv. 237); and Cleland supports this ("Journ. of Anat. and Phys.," Old series, i. 85). M. Duchenne gives a different account of the mechanism of the extension of the fingers and of the action of the Interossei muscles from that usually accepted. According to him, the Extensor communis digitorum acts almost entirely on the first phalanges, extension of the second and third phalanges being effected by the Interossei muscles, which also act to a certain extent as flexors of the first phalanges. This action of the Interossei is additional to their action in abduction and adduction ("Physiologie des Mouvements," pp. 281–298).

1 M. Duchenne's view of the action of these muscles certainly derives support from the phenomena observed in lead-palay and from the results of galvanizing the common Extensor and the Interossei, as Dr. W. Ople has been kind enough to point out to me. Thus also in a case related by Mr. Hutchinson, in which the ulnar nerve had been divided below the part from which the Extensor communis was supplied (and therefore the Interossei were paralyzed while the Extensor acted), "the first phalanges were bent backwards on the metacarpal bones" (extended) "while the fingers were curved into the palm" (second and third phalanges flexed). London Hospital Reports, vol. iii. p. 307.
The Student, having completed the dissection of the muscles of the upper extremity, should consider the effects likely to be produced by the action of the various muscles in fracture of the bones. In considering the actions of the various muscles upon fractures of the upper extremity, I have selected the most common forms of injury, both for illustration and description.

Fracture of the clavicle is an exceedingly common accident, and is usually caused by indirect violence, as a fall upon the shoulder; it occasionally, however, occurs from direct force. Its more usual situation is just external to the centre of the bone, but it may occur at the sternal or acromial end.

Fracture of the middle of the clavicle (Fig. 277) is always attended with considerable displacement, the outer fragment being drawn downwards, forwards, and inwards; the inner fragment slightly upwards. The outer fragment is drawn down by the weight of the arm, and the action of the Deltoid, and forwards and inwards by the Pectoralis minor and Subclavius muscles; the inner fragment is slightly raised by the Sternal-cleido mastoid, but only to a very limited extent, as the attachment of the costo-clavicular ligament and Pectoralis major below and in front would prevent any very great displacement upwards. The causes of displacement having been ascertained, it is easy to apply the appropriate treatment. The outer fragment is to be drawn outwards, and together with the scapula, raised upwards to a level with the inner fragment, and retained in that position.

In fracture of the acromial end of the clavicle, between the conoid and trapezoid ligaments, only slight displacement occurs, as these ligaments, from their oblique insertion, serve to hold both portions of the bone in apposition. Fracture, also, of the sternal end, internal to the costo-clavicular ligament, is attended with only slight displacement, this ligament serving to retain the fragments in close apposition.

Fracture of the acromion process usually arises from violence applied to the upper and outer part of the shoulder; it is generally known by the rotundity of the shoulder being lost, from the Deltoid drawing the fractured portion downwards and forwards; and the displacement may easily be discovered by tracing the margin of the clavicle outwards, when the fragment will be found resting on the front and upper part of the head of the humerus. In order to relax the anterior and outer fibres of the Deltoid (the opposing muscle), the arm should be drawn forwards across the chest, and the elbow well raised, so that the head of the bone may press the acromion process upwards and retain it in its position.

Fracture of the coracoid process is an extremely rare accident, and is usually caused by a sharp blow on the point of the shoulder. Displacement is here produced by the combined actions of the Pectoralis minor, short head of the Biceps, and Coraco-brachialis, the former muscle drawing the fragment inwards, and the latter directly downwards, the amount of displacement being limited by the connection of this process to the acromion by means of the coraco-acromial ligament. In order to relax these muscles and replace the fragments in close apposition, the forearm should be flexed so as to relax the Biceps, and the arm drawn forwards and inwards across the chest so as to relax the Coraco-brachialis; the humerus should then be pushed upwards against the coraco-acromial ligament, and the arm retained in that position.

Fracture of the anatomical neck of the humerus within the capsular ligament is a rare accident, attended with very slight displacement, an impaired condition of the motions of the joint, and crepitus.

Fracture of the surgical neck (Fig. 278) is very common, is attended with considerable displacement, and its appearances correspond somewhat with those of dislocation of the head of the humerus into the axilla. The upper fragment is slightly elevated under the coraco-acromial ligament by the muscles attached to the greater and lesser tuberosities; the lower fragment is drawn inwards by the Pectoralis major, Latissimus...
dorsi, and Teres major; and the humerus is thrown obliquely outwards from the side by the Deltoid, and occasionally elevated so as to project beneath and in front of the coracoid process. The deformity is reduced by fixing the shoulder, and drawing the arm outwards and downwards. To counteract this by opposing muscles, and to keep the fragments in position, the arm should be drawn from the side, and postero-lateral splints applied on its four sides, a large conical-shaped pad should be placed in the axilla with the base turned upwards, and the elbow approximated to the side, and retained there by a broad roller passed round the chest; the forearm should then be flexed, and the hand supported in a sling, care being taken not to raise the elbow, otherwise the lower fragment may be displaced upwards.

In fracture of the shaft of the humerus below the insertion of the Pectoralis major, Latissimus dorsi, and Teres major, and above the insertion of the Deltoid, there is also considerable deformity, the upper fragment being drawn inwards by the first-mentioned muscles, and the lower fragment upwards and outwards by the Deltoid, producing shortening of the limb, and a considerable prominence at the seat of fracture, from the fractured ends of the bone riding over one another, especially if the fracture takes place in an oblique direction.

The fragments may be brought into apposition by extension from the elbow, and retained in that position by adopting the same means as in the preceding injury.

In fractures of the shaft of the humerus immediately below the insertion of the Deltoid the amount of deformity depends greatly upon the direction of the fracture. If the fracture occurs in a transverse direction, only slight displacement occurs, the upper fragment being drawn a little forwards; but in oblique fracture, the combined actions of the Biceps and Brachialis anterior muscles in front, and the Triceps behind, draw upwards the lower fragment, causing it to glide over the upper fragment, either backwards or forwards, according to the direction of the fracture. Simple extension reduces the deformity, and the application of splints on the four sides of the arm will retain the fragments in apposition. Care should be taken not to raise the elbow; but the forearm and hand may be supported in a sling.

Fracture of the humerus (Fig. 279) immediately above the condyles deserves very attentive consideration, as the general appearances correspond somewhat with those produced by separation of the epiphysis of the humerus, and with those of dislocation of the radius and ulna backwards. If the direction of the fracture is oblique from above, downwards, and forwards, the lower fragment is drawn upwards and backwards by the Brachialis anterior and Biceps in front, and the Triceps behind. This injury may be diagnosed from dislocation, by the increased mobility in fracture, the existence of crepitation, and the fact of the deformity being remedied by extension, on the discontinuance of which it is reproduced. The age of the patient is of importance in distinguishing this form of injury from separation of the epiphysis. If fracture occurs in the opposite direction to that shown in the accompanying figure, the lower fragment is drawn upwards and forwards, causing a considerable prominence in front; and the upper fragment projects backwards beneath the tendon of the Triceps muscle.

Fracture of the coronoid process of the ulna is an accident of rare occurrence, and is usually caused by violent action of the Brachialis anterior muscle. The amount of displacement varies according to the extent of the fracture. If the tip of the process only is broken off, the fragment is drawn upwards by the Brachialis anterior on a level with the coronoid depression of the humerus, and the power of flexion is partially lost. If the process is broken off near its root, the fragment is still displaced by the same muscle; at the same time, on extending the forearm, partial dislocation backwards of the ulna occurs from the action of the Triceps muscle. The appropriate treatment would be to relax the Brachialis anterior by flexing the forearm, and to retain the fragments in apposition by keeping the arm in this position. Union is generally ligamentous.

Fracture of the olecranon process (Fig. 280) is a more frequent accident, and is caused either by violent action of the Triceps muscle, or by a fall or blow upon the point of the elbow. The
detached fragment is displaced upwards, by the action of the Triceps muscle, from half an inch to two inches; the prominence of the elbow is consequently lost, and a deep hollow is felt at the back part of the joint, which is much increased on flexing the limb. The patient at the same time loses, more or less, the power of extending the forearm. The treatment consists in relaxing the Triceps by extending the limb, and retaining it in the extended position by means of a long straight splint applied to the front of the arm; the fragments are thus brought into close apposition, and may be further approximated by drawing down the upper fragment. Union is generally ligamentous.

Fracture of the neck of the radius is an exceedingly rare accident, and is generally caused by direct violence. Its diagnosis is somewhat obscure, on account of the slight deformity visible: the injured part being surrounded by a large number of muscles; but the movements of pronation and supination are entirely lost. The upper fragment is drawn outwards by the Supinator brevis, its extent of displacement being limited by the attachment of the orbicular ligament. The lower fragment is drawn forwards and slightly upwards by the Biceps, and inwards by the Pronator radii teres, its displacement forwards and upwards being counteracted in some degree by the Supinator brevis. The treatment essentially consists in relaxing the Biceps, Supinator brevis, and Pronator radii teres muscles, by flexing the forearm, and placing it in a position midway between pronation and supination, extension having been previously made so as to bring the parts in apposition.

Fracture of the radius (Fig. 281) is more common than fracture of the ulna, on account of the connection of the former bone with the wrist. Fracture of the shaft of the radius near its centre may occur from direct violence, but more frequently from a fall forwards, the weight of the body being received on the wrist and hand. The upper fragment is drawn upwards by the Biceps, and inwards by the Pronator radii teres, holding a position midway between pronation and supination, and a degree of fulness in the upper half of the forearm is thus produced: the lower fragment is drawn downwards and inwards towards the ulna by the Pronator quadratus, and thrown into a state of pronation by the same muscle; at the same time, the Supinator longus, by elevating the styloid process, into which it is inserted, will serve to depress the upper end of, the lower fragment still more towards the ulna. In order to relax the opposing muscle the forearm should be bent, and the limb placed in a position midway between pronation and supination; the fracture is then easily reduced by extension from the wrist and elbow; well-padded splints should then be applied on both sides of the forearm from the elbow to the wrist; the hand being allowed to fall, will, by its own weight, counteract the action of the Pronator quadratus and Supinator longus, and elevate the lower fragment to the level of the upper one.

Fracture of the shaft of the ulna is not a common accident; it is usually caused by direct violence. The more protected position of the ulna on the inner side of the limb, the greater strength of its shaft, and its indirect connection with the wrist, render it less liable to injury than the radius. The fracture usually occurs a little below the middle, which is the weakest part of the bone. The upper fragment retains its usual position, but the lower fragment is drawn outwards towards the radius by the Pronator quadratus, producing a well-marked depression at the seat of fracture, and some fulness on the dorsal and palmar surfaces of the forearm. The fracture is easily reduced by extension from the wrist and forearm. The forearm should be flexed, and placed in a position midway between pronation and supination, and well-padded splints applied from the elbow to the ends of the fingers.

Fracture of the shafts of the radius and ulna together is not a very common accident; it may arise from a direct blow, or from indirect violence. The lower fragments are drawn upwards, sometimes forwards, sometimes backwards, according to the direction of the fracture, by the combined actions of the Flexor and Extensor muscles, producing a degree of fulness on the dorsal or palmar surface of the forearm; at the same time the two fragments are drawn into contact by the Pronator quadratus, the radius in a state of pronation; the upper fragment of the radius is drawn upwards and inwards by the Biceps and Pronator radii teres to a higher level than the ulna; the upper portion of the ulna is slightly elevated by the Brachialis anticus. The fracture may be reduced by extension from the wrist and elbow, and the forearm should be placed in the same position as in fracture of the ulna.

In the treatment of all cases of fracture of the bones of the forearm, the greatest care is requisite to prevent the ends of the bones from being drawn inwards towards the interosseous space: if this point is not carefully attended to, the radius and ulna may become ankylosed, and the movements of pronation and supination entirely lost. To obviate this, the splints applied to the limb should be well padded, so as to press the muscles down into their normal situation in the interosseous space, and thus prevent the approximation of the fragments.

Fracture of the lower end of the radius (Fig. 282) is usually called Colles's fracture, from the name of the eminent Dublin surgeon who first accurately describe it. It is generally produced by the patient falling upon the hand, which receives the entire weight of the body. This fracture
MUSCLES AND FASCIAE OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

usually takes place from half an inch to an inch above the articular surface if it occurs in the adult; but in the child, before the age of sixteen, it is more frequently a separation of the epiphysis from the diaphysis. The displacement which is produced is very considerable, and bears some resemblance to dislocation of the carpus backwards, from which it should be carefully distinguished. The lower fragment is drawn upwards and backwards behind the upper fragment by the combined actions of the Supinator longus and the flexors and the extensors of the thumb and carpus, producing a well-marked prominence on the back of the wrist, with a deep depression above it. The upper fragment projects forwards, often lacerating the substance of the Pronator quadratus, and is drawn by this muscle into close contact with the lower end of the ulna, causing a projection on the anterior surface of the forearm, immediately above the carpus, from the flexor tendons being thrust forwards. This fracture may be distinguished from dislocation by the deformity being removed on making sufficient extension, when crepitus may be occasionally detected; at the same time, on extension being discontinued, the parts immediately resume their deformed appearance. The age of the patient will also assist in determining whether the injury is fracture or separation of the epiphysis. The treatment consists in flexing the forearm, and making powerful extension from the wrist and elbow, depressing at the same time the radial side of the hand, and retaining the parts in that position by well-padded pistol-shaped splints.

MUSCLES AND FASCIAE OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The Muscles of the Lower Extremity are subdivided into groups, corresponding with the different regions of the limb.

Iliac Region.

Psaoa magnus.
Psaoa parvus.
Illicus.

THIGH.

Anterior Femoral Region.

Tensor vaginae femoris.
Sartorius.
Rectus.
Vastus externus.
Vastus internus.
Crureus.
Subtrobureus.

Internal Femoral Region.

Gracilis.
Pectineus.
Adductor longus.
Adductor brevis.
Adductor magnus.

Gluteus maximus.
Gluteus medius.
Gluteus minimus.
Pyriformis.
Gemellus superior.
Obturator internus.
Gemellus inferior.
Obturator externus.
Quadratus femoris.

Posterior Femoral Region.

Biceps.
Semitendinosus.
Semimembranosus.

LEG.

Anterior Tibio-fibular Region.

Tibialis anticus.
Extensor proprius pollicis.
Extensor longus digitorum.
Peroneus tertius.
MUSCLES AND FASCIAE.

Posterior Tibio-fibular Region.

Superficial Layer.
Gastrocnemius.
Plantaris.
Soleus.

Deep Layer.
Popliteus.
Flexor longus pollicis.
Flexor longus digitorum.
Tibialis posterior.

Fibular Region.
Peroneus longus.
Peroneus brevis.

Foot.
Dorsal Region.
Extensor brevis digitorum.

Plantar Region.

First Layer.
Abductor pollicis.
Flexor brevis digitorum.
Abductor minimi digitii.

Second Layer.
Flexor accessorius.
Lumbricales.

Third Layer.
Flexor brevis pollicis.
Adductor pollicis.
Flexor brevis minimi digitii.
Transversus pedis.

Fourth Layer.
The Interossei.

ILIAC REGION.

Psoas Magnus.

Psoas Parvus.

Iliacus.

Dissection. No detailed description is required for the dissection of these muscles. On the removal of the viscera from the abdomen, they are exposed, covered by the peritoneum and a thin layer of fascia, the fascia iliaca.

The Iliac fascia is the aponeurotic layer which lines the back part of the abdominal cavity, and covers the Psoas and Iliacus muscles throughout their whole extent. It is thin above; and becomes gradually thicker below, as it approaches the femoral arch.

The portion investing the Psoas is attached, above, to the ligamentum arcuatum internum; internally, to the sacrum; and by a series of arched processes to the intervertebral substances, and prominent margins of the bodies of the vertebrae; the intervals so left, opposite the constricted portions of the bodies, transmitting the lumbar arteries and filaments of the sympathetic nerve. Externally, this portion of the iliac fascia is continuous with the fascia lumborum.

The portion investing the Iliacus is connected, externally, to the whole length of the inner border of the crest of the ilium; and internally to the brim of the true pelvis, where it is continuous with the perioscum, and receives the tendon of insertion of the Psoas parvus, when that muscle exists. External to the femoral vessels, this fascia is intimately connected with Poupart's ligament, and is continuous with the fascia transversalis; but, as the femoral vessels pass down into the thigh, it is prolonged down behind them, forming the posterior wall of the femoral sheath. Outside the femoral sheath, the iliac fascia surrounds the Psoas and Iliacus muscles to their termination, and becomes continuous with the iliac portion of the fascia lata. Internal to the femoral vessels, the iliac fascia is connected to the ilio-pectineal line, and is continuous with the pubic portion of the fascia lata. The external iliac vessels lie in front of the iliac fascia, but all the branches of the lumbar plexus behind it; it is separated from the peritoneum by a quantity of loose areolar tissue. In abscess accompanying caries of the lower part of the spine, the matter makes its way to the femoral arch, distending the sheath of the Psoas; and when it accumulates in considerable quantity, this muscle becomes absorbed, and the nervous cords contained in it are dissected out, and are exposed in the cavity of the abscess; the femoral vessels, however, remain intact, and the peritoneum seldom becomes implicated.

( Remove this fascia, and the muscles of the iliac region will be exposed.)
OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The *Psoas Magnus* (Fig. 284) is a long fusiform muscle, placed on the side of the lumbar region of the spine and margin of the pelvis. It arises from the sides of the bodies, from the corresponding intervertebral substances, and from the front of the bases of the transverse processes of the last dorsal and all the lumbar vertebrae. The muscle is connected to the bodies of the vertebrae by five slips; each slip is attached to the upper and lower margins of two vertebrae and to the intervertebral substance between them; the slips themselves being connected by the tendinous arches which extend across the constricted part of the bodies, and beneath which pass the lumbar arteries and sympathetic nerves. These tendinous arches also give origin to muscular fibres, and protect the blood-vessels and nerves from pressure during the action of the muscle. The first slip is attached to the contiguous margins of the last dorsal and first lumbar vertebrae; the last to the contiguous margins of the fourth and fifth lumbar, and to the intervertebral substance. From these points the muscle passes down across the brim of the pelvis, and, diminishing gradually in size, passes behind Poupart's ligament, and terminates in a tendon, which, after receiving the fibres of the Iliacus, is inserted into the lesser trochanter of the femur.

**Relations.** In the lumbar region. By its *anterior surface*, which is placed behind the peritoneum, with the iliac fascia, the ligamentum arcuatum internum, the kidney, *Psoas parvus*, renal vessels, ureter, spermatic vessels, genito-cranial nerve, the colon, and along its pelvic border, with the common and external iliac artery and vein. By its *posterior surface*, with the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae, and the Quadratus lumbarum, from which it is separated by the anterior lamella of the aponeurosis of the Transversalis. The anterior crural nerve is at first situated in the substance of the muscle, and emerges from its outer border at the lower part. The lumbar plexus is situated in the posterior part of the substance of the muscle. By its *inner side*, the muscle is in relation with the bodies of the lumbar vertebrae, the lumbar arteries, the ganglia of the sympathetic nerve, and their branches of communication with the spinal nerves; the lumbar glands; the vena cava inferior on the right, and the aorta on the left side. In the thigh it is in relation, in front, with the fascia lata; behind, with the capsular ligament of the hip, from which it is separated by a synovial bursa, which sometimes communicates with the cavity of the joint through an opening of variable size; by its *inner border*, with the Pectineus and the femoral artery, which slightly overlaps it; by its *outer border*, with the anterior crural nerve and Iliacus muscle.

The *Psoas Parvus* is a long slender muscle, placed in front of the preceding. It arises from the sides of the bodies of the last dorsal and first lumbar vertebrae and from the intervertebral substance between them. It forms a small flat muscular bundle, which terminates in a long flat tendon, inserted into the iliopsoas eminence, and continuous, by its outer border, with the iliac fascia. This muscle is present, according to M. Theile, in one out of every twenty subjects examined.

**Relations.** It is covered by the peritoneum, and at its origin by the ligamentum arcuatum internum; it rests on the *Psoas magnus.*

The *Iliacus* is a flat radiated muscle, which fills up the whole of the internal iliac fossa. It arises from the iliac fossa, and inner margin of the crest of the ilium; behind, from the ilio-lumbar ligament, and base of the sacrum; in front, from the anterior superior and anterior inferior spinous processes of the ilium, from the notch between them, and by a few fibres from the capsule of the hip-joint. The fibres converge to be inserted into the outer side of the tendon of the *Psoas*, some of them being prolonged into the oblique line which extends from the lesser trochanter to the linea aspera.

**Relations.** *Within the Pelvis:* by its *anterior surface*, with the iliac fascia which separates the muscle from the peritoneum, and with the external cutaneous nerve; on the right side, with the cecum; on the left side, with the sigmoid flexure of the colon. By its *posterior surface*, with the iliac fossa. By its *inner*
border, with the Psoas magnus, and anterior crural nerve. In the thigh, it is in relation, by its anterior surface, with the fascia lata, Rectus and Sartorius; behind, with the capsule of the hip-joint, a synovial bursa common to it and the Psoas magnus being interposed.

Nerves. The Psoas is supplied by the anterior branches of the lumbar nerves, the Iliacus by the anterior crural.

Actions. The Psoas and Iliacus muscles, acting from above, flex the thigh upon the pelvis, and, at the same time, rotate the femur outwards, from the obliquity of their insertion into the inner and back part of that bone. Acting from below, the femur being fixed, the muscles of both sides bend the lumbar portion of the spine and pelvis forwards. They also serve to maintain the erect position, by supporting the spine and pelvis upon the femur, and assist in raising the trunk when the body is in the recumbent posture.

The Psoas parvus is a tensor of the iliac fascia.

**Anterior Femoral Region.**

- Tensor Vaginae Femoris.
- Sartorius.
- Rectus.

Subcrureus.

**Dissection.** To expose the muscles and fasciae in this region, make an incision along Poupart's ligament, from the spine of the ilium to the pubes, a vertical incision from the centre of this, along the middle of the thigh to below the knee-joint, and a transverse incision from the inner to the outer side of the leg, at the lower end of the vertical incision. The flaps of integument having been removed, the superficial and deep fasciae should be examined. The more advanced student should commence the study of this region by an examination of the anatomy of femoral hernia, and Scarpas triangle, the incisions for the dissection of which are marked out in the accompanying figure.

**Fasciae of the Thigh.**

The *Superficial fascia* forms a continuous layer over the whole of the lower extremity, consisting of areolar tissue, containing in its meshes much adipose matter, and capable of being separated into two or more layers, between which are found the superficial vessels and nerves. It varies in thickness, in different parts of the limb; in the sole of the foot it is so thin as to be scarcely demonstrable, the integument being closely adherent to the deep fascia beneath, but in the groin it is thicker, and the two layers are separated from one another by the superficial inguinal glands, the internal saphenous vein, and several smaller vessels. One of these two layers, the superficial, is continuous above with the superficial fascia of the abdomen, the deep layer becoming blended with the fascia lata, a little below Poupart's ligament. The deep layer of superficial
fascia is intimately adherent to the margins of the saphenous opening in the fascia lata, and pierced in this situation by numerous small blood and lymphatic vessels; hence the name cribiform fascia, which has been applied to it. Subcutaneous bursae are found in the superficial fascia over the patella, point of the heel, and phalangeal articulations of the toes.

The deep fascia of the thigh is exposed on the removal of the superficial fascia, and is named, from its great extent, the fascia lata; it forms a uniform investment for the whole of this region of the limb, but varies in thickness in different parts; thus it is thicker in the upper and outer part of the thigh, where it receives a fibrous expansion from the Gluteus maximus muscle, and the Tensor vaginae femoris is inserted between its layers; it is very thin behind, and at the upper and inner part, where it covers the Adductor muscles, and again becomes stronger around the knee, receiving fibrous expansions from the tendon of the Biceps externally, and from the Sartorius, Gracilis, Semitendinosus, and Quadriceps extensor cruris in front. The fascia lata is attached, above, to Poupart's ligament, and the crest of the ilium; behind, to the margin of the sacrum and coccyx; internally, to the pubic arch, and linea iliopectinea; and below to all the prominent points around the knee-joint, the condyles of the femur, tuberosities of the tibia, and head of the fibula. That portion which invests the Gluteus medius (the Gluteal aponeurosis) is very thick and strong, and gives origin, by its inner surface, to some of the fibres of that muscle; at the upper border of the Gluteus maximus, it divides into two layers, the upper of which, very thin, covers the surface of the Gluteus maximus, and is continuous below with the fascia lata; the deep layer is thick above, where it blends with the great sartorius ligament, thin below, where it separates the Gluteus maximus from the deeper muscles. From the inner surface of the fascia lata are given off two strong intermuscular septa, which are attached to the whole length of the linea aspera: the external and stronger one, which extends from the insertion of the Gluteus maximus to the outer condyle, separates the Vastus externus in front from the short head of the Biceps behind, and gives partial origin to those muscles; the inner one, the thinner of the two, separates the Vastus internus from the Adductor muscles.
Besides these, there are numerous smaller septa, separating the individual muscles, and inclosing each in a distinct sheath. At the upper and inner part of the thigh, a little below Poupart's ligament, a large oval-shaped aperture is observed after the superficial fascia has been cleared off: it transmits the internal saphenous vein, and other smaller vessels, and is termed the saphenous opening. In order more correctly to consider the mode of formation of this aperture, the fascia lata is described as consisting, in this part of the thigh, of two portions, an iliac portion, and a pubic portion.

The **iliac portion** is all that part of the fascia lata on the outer side of the saphenous opening. It is attached, externally, to the crest of the ilium, and its anterior superior spine, to the whole length of Poupart's ligament, as far internally as the spine of the pubes, and to the pectineal line in conjunction with Gimbernat's ligament. From the spine of the pubes, it is reflected downwards and outwards, forming an arched margin, the superior cornu, or outer boundary of the saphenous opening; this margin overlies, and is adherent to the anterior layer of the sheath of the femoral vessels: to its edge is attached the cruraform fascia, and, below, it is continuous with the pubic portion of the fascia lata.

The **pubic portion** is situated at the inner side of the saphenous opening; at the lower margin of this aperture it is continuous with the iliac portion; traced upwards, it is seen to cover the surface of the Pectineus muscle, and passing behind the sheath of the femoral vessels, to which it is closely united, is continuous with the sheath of the Psoas and Iliacus muscles, and is finally lost in the fibrous capsule of the hip-joint. This fascia is attached above to the pectineal line in front of the insertion of the aponeurosis of the external oblique, and internally to the margin of the pubic arch. From this description it may be observed that the iliac portion of the fascia lata passes in front of the femoral vessels, and the pubic portion behind them, so that an apparent aperture exists between the two, through which the internal saphenous joins the femoral vein.  

The fascia should now be removed from the surface of the muscles. This may be effected by pinching it up between the forceps, dividing it, and separating it from each muscle in the course of its fibres.

The **Tensor Vaginis Femoris** is a short flat muscle, situated at the upper and outer side of the thigh. It arises from the anterior part of the outer lip of the crest of the ilium, and from the outer surface of the anterior superior spinous process, between the Gluteus medius and Sartorius. The muscle passes obliquely downwards, and a little backwards, to be inserted into the fascia lata, about one-fourth down the outer side of the thigh.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the fascia lata and the integument. By its deep surface, with the Gluteus medius, Rectus femoris, Vastus externus, and the ascending branches of the external circumflex artery. By its anterior border, with the Sartorius, from which it is separated below by a triangular space, in which is seen the Rectus femoris. By its posterior border, with the Gluteus medius.

The **Sartorius**, the longest muscle in the body, is flat, narrow, and riband-like: it arises by tendinous fibres from the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium and the upper half of the notch below it, passes obliquely across the upper and anterior part of the thigh, from the outer to the inner side of the limb, then descends vertically, as far as the inner side of the knee, passing behind the inner condyle of the femur, and terminates in a tendon, which, curving obliquely forwards, expands into a broad aponeurosis, inserted into the upper part of the inner surface of the shaft of the tibia, nearly as far forwards as the crest. This expansion covers the insertion of the tendons of the Gracilis and Semitendinosus, with which it is partially united, a synovial bursa being interposed between them. An offset is derived from the upper margin of this aponeurosis, which blends with the fibrous capsule of the knee-joint, and another, given off

---

1 These parts will be again more particularly described with the anatomy of Hernia.
ANTEOR FEMORAL REGION.

from its lower border, blends with the fascia on the inner side of the leg. The relations of this muscle to the femoral artery should be carefully examined, as its inner border forms the chief guide in tying the artery. In the upper third of the thigh, it forms the outer side of a triangular space, Scarpa's triangle, the inner side of which is formed by the Adductor longus, and the base, turned upwards, by Poupart's ligament; the femoral artery passes perpendicularly through the middle of this space from its base to its apex. In the middle third of the thigh, the femoral artery lies first along the inner border, and then behind the Sartorius.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the fascia lata and integument. By its deep surface, with the Iliacus, Psos, Rectus, Vastus internus, anterior crural nerve, sheath of the femoral vessels, Adductor longus, Adductor magnus, Gracilis, long saphenous nerve, and internal lateral ligament of the knee-joint.

The Quadriceps extensor includes the four remaining muscles on the front of the thigh. It is the great Extensor muscle of the leg, forming a large fleshy mass, which covers the front and sides of the femur, being united below into a single tendon, attached to the tibia, and above subdividing into separate portions which have received distinct names. Of these, one occupying the middle of the thigh, connected above with the ilium, is called the Rectus femoris, from its straight course. The other divisions lie in immediate connection with the shaft of the femur, which they cover from the condyles to the trochanters. The portion on the outer side of the femur is termed the Vastus externus; that covering the inner side, the Vastus internus; and that covering the front of the femur, the Crureus. The two latter portions are, however, so intimately blended, as to form but one muscle.

The Rectus Femoris is situated in the middle of the anterior region of the thigh; it is fusiform in shape, and its fibres are arranged in a bipenniform manner. It arises by two tendons: one, the straight tendon, or short head, from the anterior inferior spinous process of the ilium; the other is flattened, and curves outwards, to be attached to a groove above the brim of the acetabulum; this is the reflected tendon, or long head, of the Rectus; it unites with the straight tendon at an acute angle, and then spreads into an aponeurosis, from which the muscular fibres arise. The muscle terminates in a broad and thick aponeurosis, which occupies the lower two-thirds of its posterior surface, and, gradually becoming narrowed into a flattened tendon, is inserted into the patella in common with the Vasti and Crureus.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the anterior fibres of the Gluteus minimus, the Tensor vaginae femoris, Sartorius, and the Psos and Iliacus; by its lower three-fourths, with the fascia lata. By its posterior surface with the hip-joint, the external circumflex vessels, and the Crureus and Vasti muscles.

The three remaining muscles have been described collectively by some anatomists, separate from the Rectus, under the name of the Triceps extensor cruris. In order to expose them, divide the Sartorius and Rectus across the middle, and turn them aside, when the muscles in question will be fully brought into view.

The Vastus Externus is the largest part of the Quadriceps extensor. It arises by a broad aponeurosis, which is attached to the tubercle of the femur, to the anterior border of the great trochanter, to a horizontal ridge on its outer surface, to a rough line leading from the trochanter major to the linea aspera, and to the whole length of the outer lip of the linea aspera; this aponeurosis covers the upper three-fourths of the muscle, and from its inner surface many fibres arise. A few additional fibres arise from the tendon of the Gluteus maximus, and from the external intermuscular septum between the Vastus externus, and short head of the Biceps. The fibres form a large fleshy mass, which is attached to a strong aponeurosis, placed on the under surface of the muscle at its lower part: this becomes contracted and thickened into a flat tendon, which is inserted into the outer border of the patella, blending with the great extensor tendon.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Rectus, the Tensor vaginae
femoris, the fascia lata, and the Gluteus maximus, from which it is separated by a synovial bursa. By its deep surface, with the Crureus, some large branches of the external circumflex artery and anterior crural nerve being interposed.

The Vastus Internus and Crureus are so inseparably connected together, as to form but one muscle, as which it will be accordingly described. It is the smallest portion of the Quadriceps extensor. The anterior portion of it, covered by the Rectus, is called the Crureus; the internal portion, which lies immediately beneath the fascia lata, the Vastus internus. It arises by an aponeurosis, which is attached to the lower part of the line that extends from the inner side of the neck of the femur to the linea aspera, from the whole length of the inner lip of the linea aspera, and internal intermuscular septum. It also arises from nearly the whole of the internal, anterior, and external surfaces of the shaft of the femur, limited, above, by the line between the two trochanters, and extending, below, to within the lower fourth of the bone. From these different origins, the fibres converge to a broad aponeurosis, which covers the anterior surface of the middle portion of the muscle (the Crureus), and the deep surface of the inner division of the muscle (the Vastus internus), and which gradually narrows down to its insertion into the patella, where it blends with the other portions of the Quadriceps extensor. The muscular fibres of the Vastus internus extend lower down than those of the Vastus externus, so that the capsule of the joint is less covered with muscular fibres on the outer than on the inner side.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Psoas and Iliacus, the Rectus, Sartorius, Pectineus, Adductors, and fascia lata, femoral vessels, and saphenous nerve. By its deep surface, with the femur, Subcrureus, and synovial membrane of the knee-joint.

The student will observe the striking analogy that exists between the Quadriceps extensor and the Triceps muscle in the upper extremity. So close is this similarity, that M. Cruveilhier has described it under the name of the Triceps femorals. Like the Triceps brachialis, it consists of three distinct divisions, or heads: a middle or long head, analogous to the long head of the Triceps, attached to the ilium, and two other portions which may be called the external and internal heads of the Triceps femorals. These, it will be noticed, are strictly analogous to the outer and inner heads of the Triceps brachialis.

The tendons of the different portions of the Quadriceps extensor unite at the lower part of the thigh, so as to form a single strong tendon, which is inserted into the upper part of the patella. More properly, the patella may be regarded as a sesamoid bone, developed in the tendon of the Quadriceps; and the ligamentum patellae, which is continued from the lower part of the patella to the tuberosity of the tibia, as the proper tendon of insertion of the muscle. A synovial bursa is interposed between the tendon and the upper part of the tuberosity of the tibia. From the tendons corresponding to the Vasti, a fibrous prolongation is derived, which is attached below to the upper extremities of the tibia and fibula, and which serves to protect the knee-joint, being strengthened on its outer side by the fascia lata.

The Subcrureus is a small muscle, usually distinct from the Crureus, but occasionally blended with it, which arises from the anterior surface of the lower part of the shaft of the femur, and is inserted into the upper part of the synovial pouch that extends upwards from the knee-joint behind the patella. It sometimes consists of two separate muscular bundles.

Nerves. The Tensor vagiæ femoris is supplied by the superior gluteal nerve; the other muscles of this region, by branches from the anterior crural.

Actions. The Tensor vagiæ femoris is a tensor of the fascia lata; continuing its action, the oblique direction of its fibres enables it to rotate the thigh inwards. In the erect posture, acting from below, it will serve to steady the pelvis upon the head of the femur. The Sartorius flexes the leg upon the thigh, and continuing to act, flexes the thigh upon the pelvis, at the same time drawing the limb inwards, so as to cross one leg over the other. Taking its fixed point from
the leg, it flexes the pelvis upon the thigh, and, if one muscle acts, assists in rotating the pelvis. The Quadriceps extensor extends the leg upon the thigh. Taking its fixed point from the leg, as in standing, this muscle will act upon the femur, supporting it perpendicularly upon the head of the tibia, and thus maintaining the entire weight of the body. The Rectus muscle assists the Psoas and Iliacus, in supporting the pelvis and trunk upon the femur, or in bending it forwards.

INTERNAL FEMORAL REGION.

Gracilis.
Pectineus.
Adductor Longus.
Adductor Brevis.
Adductor Magnus.

Dissection. These muscles are at once exposed by removing the fascia from the fore part and inner side of the thigh. The limb should be abducted, so as to render the muscles tense, and easier of dissection.

The Gracilis (Figs. 284, 287) is the most superficial muscle on the inner side of the thigh. It is thin and flattened, broad above, narrow and tapering below. It arises by a thin aponeurosis between two and three inches in breadth, from the inner margin of the ramus of the pubes and ischium. The fibres pass vertically downwards, and terminate in a rounded tendon which passes behind the internal condyle of the femur, and curving round the inner tuberosity of the tibia, becomes flattened, and is inserted into the upper part of the inner surface of the shaft of the tibia, below the tuberosity. The tendon of this muscle is situated immediately above that of the Semitendinosus, and beneath the aponeurosis of the Sartorius, with which it is in part blended. As it passes across the internal lateral ligament of the knee-joint, it is separated from it by a synovial bursa common to it and the Semitendinosus muscle.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the fascia lata and the Sartorius below; the internal saphenous vein crosses it obliquely near its lower part, lying superficial to the fascia lata. The anterior crural nerve emerges between its tendon and that of the Sartorius. By its deep surface, with the three Adductors, and the internal lateral ligament of the knee-joint.

The Pectineus (Fig. 284) is a flat quadrangular muscle, situated at the anterior
part of the upper and inner aspect of the thigh. It arises from the linea iliopectinea, from the surface of bone in front of it, between the pectineal eminence and spine of the pubes, and from a tendinous prolongation of Gimbernat's ligament, which is attached to the crest of the pubes, and is continuous with the fascia covering the anterior surface of the muscle; the fibres pass downwards, backwards, and outwards, to be inserted into a rough line leading from the trochanter minor to the linea aspera.

**Relations.** By its anterior surface, with the pubic portion of the fascia lata, which separates it from the femoral vessels and internal saphenous vein. By its posterior surface, with the hip-joint, the Adductor brevis and Obturator externus muscles, the obturator vessels and nerve being interposed. By its outer border, with the Psoas, a cellular interval separating them, upon which lies the femoral artery. By its inner border, with the margin of the Adductor longus.

The Adductor Longus, the most superficial of the three Adductors, is a flat triangular muscle, lying on the same plane as the Pectineus, with which it is often blended above. It arises, by a flat narrow tendon, from the front of the tuberosity of the ischium, and by the symphysis; and soon expands into a broad fleshy belly, which, passing downwards, backwards, and outwards, is inserted, by an aponeurosis, into the middle third of the linea aspera, between the vastus internus and the Adductor magnus.

**Relations.** By its anterior surface, with the fascia lata, and, near its insertion, with the femoral artery and vein. By its posterior surface, with the Adductor brevis and magnus, the anterior branches of the obturator vessels and nerve, and with the profunda artery and vein near its insertion. By its outer border, with the Pectineus. By its inner border, with the Gracilis.

The Pectineus and Adductor longus should now be divided near their origin, and turned downwards, when the Adductor brevis and Obturator externus will be exposed.

The Adductor Brevis is situated immediately behind the two preceding muscles. It is somewhat triangular in form, and arises by a narrow origin from the outer surface of the descending ramus of the pubes, between the Gracilis and Obturator externus. Its fibres, passing backwards, outwards, and downwards, are inserted, by an aponeurosis, into the upper part of the linea aspera, immediately behind the Pectineus and upper part of the Adductor longus.

**Relations.** By its anterior surface, with the Pectineus, Adductor longus, and anterior branches of the obturator vessels and nerve. By its posterior surface, with the Adductor magnus, and posterior branches of the obturator vessels and nerve. By its outer border, with the Obturator externus, and conjoined tendon of the Psoas and Iliacus. By its inner border, with the Gracilis and Adductor magnus. This muscle is pierced, near its insertion, by the middle perforating branch of the profunda artery.

The Adductor brevis should now be cut away near its origin, and turned outwards, when the entire extent of the Adductor magnus will be exposed.

The Adductor Magnus is a large triangular muscle, forming a septum between the muscles on the inner and those on the back of the thigh. It arises from a small part of the descending ramus of the pubes, from the ascending ramus of the ischium, and from the outer margin and under surface of the tuberosity of the ischium. Those fibres which arise from the ramus of the pubes are very short, horizontal in direction, and are inserted into the rough line leading from the great trochanter to the linea aspera, internal to the Gluteus maximus; those from the ramus of the ischium are directed downwards and outwards with different degrees of obliquity, to be inserted, by means of a broad aponeurosis, into the whole length of the linea aspera and the upper part of its internal bifurcation below. The internal portion of the muscle, consisting principally of those fibres which arise from the tuberosity of the ischium, forms a thick fleshy mass consisting of coarse bundles which descend almost vertically, and
terminate about the lower third of the thigh in a rounded tendon, which is inserted into the tubercle above the inner condyle of the femur, being connected by a fibrous expansion to the line leading upwards from the tubercle to the linea aspera. Between the two portions of the muscle an angular interval is left, tendinous in front, fleshy behind, for the passage of the femoral vessels into the popliteal space. The external portion of the muscle is pierced by four apertures; the three superior, for the three superior perforating arteries; the fourth, for the passage of the profunda. This muscle gives off an aponeurosis, which passes in front of the femoral vessels, and joins with the Vastus internus.

Relations. By its anterior surface, with the Pectineus, Adductor brevis, Adductor longus, and the femoral vessels. By its posterior surface, with the great sciatic nerve, the Gluteus maximus, Biceps, Semitendinosus, and Semimembranosus. By its superior or shortest border, it lies parallel with the Quadratus femoris, the internal circumflex artery passing between them. By its internal or longest border, with the Gracilis, Sartorius, and fascia lata. By its external or attached border, it is inserted into the femur behind the Adductor brevis and Adductor longus, which separate from the Vastus internus; and in front of the Gluteus maximus and short head of the Biceps, which separate it from the Vastus externus.

Nerves. All the muscles of this group are supplied by the obturator nerve. The Pectineus receives additional branches from the accessory obturator and anterior crural; and the Adductor magnus an additional branch from the great sciatic.

Actions. The Pectineus and three Adductors adduct the thigh powerfully; they are especially used in horse exercise, the flanks of the horse being grasped between the knees by the action of these muscles. In consequence of the obliquity of their insertion into the linea aspera, they rotate the thigh outwards, assisting the external Rotators, and when the limb has been abducted, they draw it inwards, carrying the thigh across that of the opposite side. The Pectineus and Adductor brevis and longus assist the Psoas and Iliacus in flexing the thigh upon the pelvis. In progression, also, all these muscles assist in drawing forwards the hinder limb. The Gracilis assists the Sartorius in flexing the leg and drawing it inwards; it is also an Adductor of the thigh. If the lower extremities are fixed, these muscles may take their fixed point from below and act upon the pelvis, serving to maintain the body in the erect posture; or, if their action is continued, to flex the pelvis forwards upon the femur.

GLUTEAL REGION.

Gluteus Maximus.  
Gluteus Medius.  
Gluteus Minimus.  
Pyriformis.  

Gemellus Superior.  
Obturator Internus.  
Gemellus Inferior.  
Obturator Externus.

Quadratus Femoris.

Dissection (Fig. 286). The subject should be turned on its face, a block placed beneath the pelvis to make the buttocks tense, and the limbs allowed to hang over the end of the table, with the foot inverted, and the thigh adducted. Make an incision through the integument along the back part of the crest of the ilium and margin of the sacrum to the tip of the coccyx, and carry a second incision from that point obliquely downwards and outwards to the outer side of the thigh, four inches below the great trochanter. The portion of integument included between these incisions, together with the superficial fascia, is to be removed in the direction shown in the figure, when the Gluteus maximus and the dense fascia covering the Gluteus medius will be exposed.

The Gluteus Maximus (Fig. 287), the most superficial muscle in the gluteal region, is a very broad and thick fleshy mass, of a quadrilateral shape, which forms the prominence of the nates. Its large size is one of the most characteristic points in the muscular system in man, connected as it is with the power he has of maintaining the trunk in the erect posture. In structure the muscle is
remarkably coarse, being made up of muscular fasciculi lying parallel with one another, and collected together into large bundles, separated by deep cellular intervals. It arises from the superior curved line of the ilium, and the portion of bone including the crest, immediately behind it; from the posterior surface of the last piece of the sacrum, the side of the coccyx, and posterior surface of the great sacro-sciatic and posterior sacro-iliac ligaments. The fibres are directed obliquely downwards and outwards; those forming the upper and larger portion of the muscle (after converging somewhat) terminate in a thick tendinous lamina, which passes across the great trochanter, and is inserted into the fascia lata covering the outer side of the thigh, the lower portion of the muscle being inserted into the rough line leading from the great trochanter to the linea aspera between the Vastus externus and Adductor magnus.

Three synovial bursa are usually found separating the under surface of this muscle from the eminences which it covers. One of these, of large size, and generally multilocular, separates it from the great trochanter. A second, often wanting, is situated on the tuberosity of the ischium. A third is found between the tendon of this muscle and the Vastus externus.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with a thin fascia, which separates it from the subcutaneous tissue. By its deep surface, from above downwards, with the ilium, sacrum, coccyx, and great sacro-sciatic ligament, part of the Gluteus medius, Pyriformis, Gemelli, Obturator internus, Quadratus femoris, the tuberosity of the ischium, great trochanter, the origin of the Biceps, Semitendinosus, Semimembranosus, and Adductor magnus muscles. The gluteal vessels and superior gluteal nerve are seen issuing from the pelvis above the Pyriformis muscle, the sciatic and internal pudic vessels and nerves, and the nerve to the Obturator internus muscle below it. Its upper border is thin, and connected with the Gluteus medius by the fascia lata. Its lower border, free and prominent, forms the fold of the nates, and is directed towards the perineum.

Dissection. Now divide the Gluteus maximus near its origin, by a vertical incision carried from its upper to its lower border; a cellular interval will be exposed, separating it from the Gluteus medius and External rotator muscles beneath. The upper portion of the muscle is to be altogether detached, and the lower portion turned outwards; the loose areolar tissue filling up the interspace between the trochanter major and tuberosity of the ischium being removed, the parts already enumerated as exposed by the removal of this muscle will be seen.

The Gluteus Medius is a broad, thick, radiated muscle, situated on the outer surface of the pelvis. Its posterior third is covered by the Gluteus maximus; its anterior two-thirds by the fascia lata, which separates it from the integument. It arises from the outer surface of the ilium, between the superior and middle curved lines, and from the outer lip of that portion of the crest which is between them; it also arises from the dense fascia (gluteal aponeurosis) covering its anterior part. The fibres converge to a strong flattened tendon, which is inserted into the oblique line which traverses the outer surface of the great trochanter.
A synovial bursa separates the tendon of the muscle from the surface of the trochanter in front of its insertion.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Gluteus maximus behind, the Tensor vaginae femoris, and deep fascia in front. By its deep surface, with the Gluteus minimus and the gluteal vessels and superior gluteal nerve. Its anterior border is blended with the Gluteus minimus. Its posterior border lies parallel with the Pyriformis, the gluteal vessels intervening.

This muscle should now be divided near its insertion and turned upwards, when the Gluteus minimus will be exposed.

The Gluteus Minimus, the smallest of the three glutei, is placed immediately beneath the preceding. It is fan-shaped, arising from the outer surface of the ilium, between the middle and inferior curved lines, and behind, from the margin of the great sacro-sciatic notch; the fibres converge to the deep surface of a radiated aponeurosis, which, terminating in a tendon, is inserted into an impression on the anterior border of the great trochanter. A synovial bursa is interposed between the tendon and the great trochanter.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Gluteus medius, and the gluteal vessels and superior gluteal nerve. By its deep surface, with the ilium, the reflected tendon of the Rectus femoris, and capsular ligament of the hip-joint. Its anterior margin is blended with the Gluteus medius. Its posterior margin is often joined with the tendon of the Pyriformis.

The Pyriformis is a flat muscle, pyramidal in shape, lying almost parallel with the posterior margin of the Gluteus medius. It is situated partly within the pelvis at its poste-
rior part, and partly at the back of the hip-joint. It arises from the front of the sacrum by three fleshy digitations, attached to the portions of bone between the first, second, third, and fourth anterior sacral foramina, and also from the grooves leading from the foramina: a few fibres also arise from the margin of the great sacro-sciatic foramen, and from the anterior surface of the great sacro-sciatic ligament. The muscle passes out of the pelvis through the great sacro-sciatic foramen, the upper part of which it fills, and is inserted by a rounded tendon into the upper border of the great trochanter, being generally blended with the tendon of the Obturator internus.

Relations. By its anterior surface, within the pelvis, with the Rectum (especially on the left side), the sacral plexus of nerves, and the internal iliac vessels; external to the pelvis, with the os innominatum and capsular ligament of the hip-joint. By its posterior surface, within the pelvis, with the sacrum; and external to it, with the Gluteus maximus. By its upper border, with the Gluteus medius, from which it is separated by the gluteal vessels and superior gluteal nerve. By its lower border, with the Gemellus superior and Coccygeus; the sciatic vessels and nerves, the internal pudic vessels and nerve, and the nerve to the Obturator internus, passing from the pelvis in the interval between the two muscles.

Dissection. The next muscle, as well as the origin of the Pyriformis, can only be seen when the pelvis is divided, and the visera removed.

The Obturator membrane is a dense layer of interlacing fibres, which completely closes the obturator foramen, except at its upper and outer part, where a small oval canal is left for the obturator vessels and nerve. Each obturator muscle is connected with this membrane.

The Obturator Internus, like the preceding muscle, is situated partly within the cavity of the pelvis, partly at the back of the hip-joint. It arises from the inner surface of the anterior and external wall of the pelvis, around the inner side of the obturator foramen, being attached to the descending ramus of the pubes, and the ascending ramus of the ischium, and at the side to the inner surface of the body of the ischium, between the margin of the obturator foramen in front, the great sacro-sciatic notch behind, and the rim of the true pelvis above. It also arises from the inner surface of the obturator membrane and from the tendinous arch which completes the canal for the passage of the obturator vessels and nerve. The fibres are directed backwards and downwards, and terminate in four or five tendinous bands, which are found on its deep surface; these bands are reflected at a right angle over the inner surface of the tuberosity of the ischium, which is grooved for their reception: the groove is covered with cartilage, and lined with a synovial bursa. The muscle leaves the pelvis by the lesser sacro-sciatic notch; and the tendinous bands unite into a single flattened tendon, which passes horizontally outwards, and, after receiving the attachment of the Gemelli, is inserted into the upper border of the great trochanter in front of the Pyriformis. A synovial bursa, narrow and elongated in form, is usually found between the tendon of this muscle and the capsular ligament of the hip: it occasionally communicates with that between the tendon and the tuberosity of the ischium, the two forming a single sac.

In order to display the peculiar appearances presented by the tendon of this muscle, it must be divided near its insertion and reflected outwards.

Relations. Within the pelvis, this muscle is in relation, by its anterior surface, with the obturator membrane and inner surface of the anterior wall of the pelvis; by its posterior surface, with the pelvic and obturator fasciae, which separate it from the Levator ani; and it is crossed by the internal pudic vessels and nerve. This surface forms the outer boundary of the ischio-rectal fossa. External to the pelvis, it is covered by the great sciatic nerve and Gluteus maximus, and rests on the back part of the hip-joint.

The Gemelli are two small muscular fasciculi, accessories to the tendon of the
GLUTEAL REGION.

Obturator internus, which is received into a groove between them. They are called superior and inferior.

The Gemellus Superior, the smaller of the two, arises from the outer surface of the spine of the ischium, and passing horizontally outwards becomes blended with the upper part of the tendon of the Obturator internus, and is inserted with it into the upper border of the great trochanter. This muscle is sometimes wanting.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the Gluteus maximus and the sciatic vessels and nerves. By its deep surface, with the capsule of the hip-joint. By its upper border, with the lower margin of the Piriformis. By its lower border, with the tendon of the Obturator internus.

The Gemellus Inferior arises from the upper part of the outer border of the tuberosity of the ischium, and passing horizontally outwards is blended with the lower part of the tendon of the Obturator internus, and inserted with it into the upper border of the great trochanter.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the Gluteus maximus and the sciatic vessels and nerves. By its deep surface, with the capsular ligament of the hip-joint. By its upper border, with the tendon of the Obturator internus. By its lower border, with the tendon of the Obturator externus and Quadratus femoris.

The Quadratus Femoris is a short, flat muscle, quadrilateral in shape (hence its name), situated between the Gemellus inferior and the upper margin of the Adductor magnus. It arises from the outer border of the tuberosity of the ischium, and proceeding horizontally outwards is inserted into the upper part of the linea quadrati, on the posterior surface of the trochanter major. A synovial bursa is often found between the under surface of this muscle and the lesser trochanter, which it covers.

**Relations.** By its posterior surface, with the Gluteus maximus and the sciatic vessels and nerves. By its anterior surface, with the tendon of the Obturator externus and trochanter minor, and with the capsule of the hip-joint. By its upper border, with the Gemellus inferior. Its lower border is separated from the Adductor magnus by the terminal branches of the internal circumflex vessels.

**Dissection.** In order to expose the next muscle (the Obturator externus), it is necessary to remove the Psoas, Iliacus, Pectineus, and Adductor brevis and longus muscles from the front and inner side of the thigh; and the Gluteus maximus and Quadratus femoris from the back part. Its dissection should, consequently, be postponed until the muscles of the anterior and internal femoral regions have been examined.

The Obturator Externus (Fig. 285) is a flat triangular muscle, which covers the outer surface of the anterior wall of the pelvis. It arises from the margin of bone immediately around the inner side of the obturator foramen, viz. from the body and ramus of the pubes, and the ramus of the ischium; it also arises from the inner two-thirds of the outer surface of the obturator membrane, and from the tendinous arch which completes the canal for the passage of the obturator vessels and nerves. The fibres converging pass outwards and backwards, and terminate in a tendon which runs across the back part of the hip-joint, and is inserted into the digital fossa of the femur.

**Relations.** By its anterior surface, with the Psoas, Iliacus, Pectineus, Adductor longus, Adductor brevis, and Gracilis; and more externally, with the neck of the femur and capsule of the hip-joint. By its posterior surface, with the obturator membrane and Quadratus femoris.

**Nerves.** The Gluteus maximus is supplied by the inferior gluteal nerve and a branch from the sacral plexus; the Gluteus medius and minimus, by the superior gluteal; the Piriformis, Gemelli, Obturator internus, and Quadratus femoris, by branches from the sacral plexus, and the Obturator externus, by the obturator nerve.

**Actions.** The Glutei muscles, when they take their fixed point from the pelvis, are all abductors of the thigh. The Gluteus maximus and the posterior fibres
of the Gluteus medius, rotate the thigh outwards; the anterior fibres of the Gluteus medius and the Gluteus minimus rotate it inwards. The Gluteus maximus serves to extend the femur, and the Gluteus medius and minimus draw it forwards. The Gluteus maximus is also a tensor of the fascia lata. Taking their fixed point from the femur the Glutei muscles act upon the pelvis, supporting it and the whole trunk upon the head of the femur, which is specially obvious in standing on one leg. In order to gain the erect posture after the effort of stooping, these muscles draw the pelvis backwards, assisted by the Biceps, Semitendinosus, and Semimembranosus muscles. The remaining muscles are powerful rotators of the thigh outwards. In the sitting posture, when the thigh is flexed upon the pelvis, their action as rotators ceases, and they become abductors, with the exception of the Obturator externus, which still rotates the femur outwards. When the femur is fixed, the Pyriformis and Obturator muscles serve to draw the pelvis forwards if it has been inclined backwards, and assist in steadying it upon the head of the femur.

POSTERIOR FEMORAL REGION.

**Biceps.**

**Semitendinosus.**

**Semimembranosus.**

*Dissection* (Fig. 286). Make a vertical incision along the middle of the thigh, from the lower fold of the nates to about three inches below the back of the knee-joint, and there connect it with a transverse incision, carried from the inner to the outer side of the leg. Make a third incision transversely at the junction of the middle with the lower third of the thigh. The integument having been removed from the back of the knee, and the boundaries of the popliteal space examined, the removal of the integument from the remaining part of the thigh should be continued, when the fascia and muscles of this region will be exposed.

The *Biceps* (Fig. 287) is a large muscle, of considerable length, situated on the posterior and outer aspect of the thigh. It arises by two heads. One, the long head, arises from the lower and inner facet on the back part of the tuberosity of the ischium, by a tendon common to it and the Semitendinosus. The femoral, or short head, arises from the outer lip of the linea aspera, between the Adductor magnus and Vastus externus, extending from a short distance below the insertion of the Gluteus maximus, to within two inches of the outer condyle; it also arises from the external intermuscular septum. The fibres of the long head form a fusiform belly, which, passing obliquely downwards and a little outwards, terminate in an aponeurosis which covers the posterior surface of the muscle, and receives the fibres of the short head; this aponeurosis becomes gradually contracted into a tendon, which is inserted into the outer side of the head of the fibula. At its insertion, the tendon divides into two portions, which embrace the external lateral ligament of the knee-joint, a strong prolongation being sent forwards to the outer tuberosity of the tibia, which gives off an expansion to the fascia of the leg. The tendon of this muscle forms the outer ham-string.

*Relations.* By its superficial surface, with the Gluteus maximus above, the fascia lata and integument in the rest of its extent. By its deep surface, with the Semimembranosus, Adductor magnus, and Vastus externus, the great sciatic nerve, popliteal artery and vein, and near its insertion, with the external head of the Gastrocnemius, Plantaris, the superior external articular artery, and the external popliteal nerve.

The *Semitendinosus,* remarkable for the great length of its tendon, is situated at the posterior and inner aspect of the thigh. It arises from the tuberosity of the ischium by a tendon common to it and the long head of the Biceps; it also arises from an aponeurosis which connects the adjacent surfaces of the two muscles to the extent of about three inches after their origin. It forms a fusiform muscle, which, passing downwards and inwards, terminates a little below the middle of the thigh in a long round tendon which lies along the inner side of the popliteal space, then curves around the inner tuberosity of the tibia, and is inserted into the upper part of the inner surface of the shaft of that bone, nearly as far forwards as its anterior border. This tendon lies beneath the expansion
OF THE LEG.

... of the Sartorius, and below that of the Gracilis, to which it is united. A tendinous intersection is usually observed about the middle of the muscle.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the Gluteus maximus and fascia lata. By its deep surface, with the Semimembranosus, Adductor magnus, inner head of the Gastrocnemius, and internal lateral ligament of the knee-joint.

The Semimembranosus, so called from the membranous expansion on its anterior and posterior surfaces, is situated at the back part and inner side of the thigh. It arises by a thick tendon from the upper and outer facet on the back part of the tuberosity of the ischium, above and to the outer side of the Biceps and Semitendinosus, and is inserted into the inner and back part of the inner tuberosity of the tibia, beneath the internal lateral ligament. The tendon of the muscle at its origin expands into an aponeurosis, which covers the upper part of its anterior surface: from this aponeurosis, muscular fibres arise, and converge to another aponeurosis, which covers the lower part of its posterior surface and contracts into the tendon of insertion. The tendon of the muscle at its insertion divides into three portions: the middle portion is the fasciculus of insertion into the back part of the inner tuberosity; it sends down an expansion to cover the Popliteus muscle. The internal portion is horizontal, passing forwards beneath the internal lateral ligament, to be inserted into a groove along the inner side of the internal tuberosity. The posterior division passes upwards and backwards, to be inserted into the back part of the outer condyle of the femur, forming the chief part of the posterior ligament of the knee-joint.

The tendons of the two preceding muscles, with those of the Gracilis and Sartorius, form the inner ham-string.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the Semitendinosus, Biceps, and fascia lata. By its deep surface, with the popliteal vessels, Adductor magnus, and inner head of the Gastrocnemius, from which it is separated by a synovial bursa. By its inner border, with the Gracilis. By its outer border, with the great sciatic nerve, and its internal popliteal branch.

**Nerves.** The muscles of this region are supplied by the great sciatic nerve.

**Actions.** The ham-string muscles flex the leg upon the thigh. When the knee is semi-flexed, the Biceps, in consequence of its oblique direction downwards and outwards, rotates the leg slightly outwards; and the Semimembranosus, in consequence of its oblique direction, rotates the leg inwards, assisting the Popliteus. Taking their fixed point from below, these muscles serve to support the pelvis upon the head of the femur, and to draw the trunk directly backwards, as in feats of strength, when the body is thrown backwards in the form of an arch.

**Surgical Anatomy.** The tendons of these muscles occasionally require subcutaneous division in some forms of spurious anchylosis of the knee-joint, dependent upon permanent contraction and rigidity of the Flexor muscles, or from stiffening of the ligamentous and other tissues surrounding the joint, the result of disease. This is effected by putting the tendon upon the stretch, and inserting a narrow sharp-pointed knife between it and the skin; the cutting edge being then turned towards the tendon it should be divided, taking care that the wound in the skin is not at the same time enlarged.

**MUSCLES AND FASCIA OF THE LEG.**

**Dissection** (Fig. 283). The knee should be bent, a block placed beneath it, and the foot kept in an extended position; then make an incision through the integument in the middle line of the leg to the ankle, and continue it along the dorsum of the foot to the toes. Make a second incision transversely across the ankle, and a third in the same direction across the bases of the toes; remove the flap of integument included between these incisions, in order to examine the deep fascia of the leg.

The Fascia of the Leg forms a complete investment to the whole of this region of the limb, excepting to the inner surface of the tibia. It is continuous above with the fascia lata, receiving an expansion from the tendon of the Biceps on the outer side, and from the tendons of the Sartorius, Gracilis, and Semitendinosus on the inner side; in front it blends with the periosteum covering the
FASCIAE.

The anterior fibres of the Gluteus maximus inwards. The Gluteus maximus, medius and minimus draw it for- act upon the pelvis, supporting it, which is specially obvious in posture after the effort of stook- assisted by the Biceps, Semiten- remaining muscles are powerful posture, when the thigh is flexed and they become abductors, with still rotates the femur outwards.

Ocular muscles serve to draw towards, and assist in steadying it

REGION.

Semimembranosus.

the middle of the thigh, from the lower the knee-joint, and there connect it with side of the leg. Make a third incision third of the thigh. The integument the boundaries of the popliteal space examined part of the thigh should be continued, considerable length, situated on the arises by two heads. One, the long on the back part of the tuberosity and the Semitendinosus. The femoral, linea aspera, between the Adductor a short distance below the inser- inches of the outer condyle; it also to the muscle. The fibres of the long head downwards and a little outwards, the posterior surface of the muscle, this aponeurosis becomes gradually into the outer side of the head of the fibres into two portions, which embrace a strong prolongation being sent a which gives off an expansion to the muscle forms the outer ham-string.

With the Gluteus maximus above, the extent. By its deep surface, with the and Vastus externus, the great sciatic at its insertion, with the external head superior external articular artery, and the

great length of its tendon, is situated it arises from the tuberosity of and the long head of the Biceps; it also supports the adjacent surfaces of the two after their origin. It forms a fusiform inwards, terminates a little below the which lies along the inner side of the inner tuberosity of the tibia, and is surface of the shaft of that bone, nearly. This tendon lies beneath the expansion
tarsus: this surface also overlaps the anterior tibial vessels and nerve in the upper part of the leg. By its inner surface, with the tibia. By its outer surface, with the Extensor longus digitorum, and Extensor proprius pollicis, and the anterior tibial vessels and nerve.

The Extensor Proprius Pollicis is a thin, elongated, and flattened muscle, situated between the Tibialis anticus and Extensor longus digitorum. It arises from the anterior surface of the fibula for about the middle two-fourths of its extent, its origin being internal to that of the Extensor longus digitorum; it also arises from the interosseous membrane to a similar extent. The fibres pass downwards, and terminate in a tendon, which occupies the anterior border of the muscle, passes through a distinct compartment in the horizontal portion of the annular ligament, crosses the anterior tibial vessels near the bend of the ankle, and is inserted into the base of the last phalanx of the great toe. Opposite the metatarso-phalangeal articulation, the tendon gives off a thin prolongation on each side, which covers the surface of the joint.

Relations. By its anterior border, with the fascia, and the anterior annular ligament. By its posterior border, with the interosseous membrane, fibula, tibia, ankle-joint, and Extensor brevis digitorum. By its outer side, with the Extensor longus digitorum above, the dorsalis pedis vessels and anterior tibial nerve below. By its inner side, with the Tibialis anticus and the anterior tibial vessels above.

The Extensor Longus Digitorum is an elongated, flattened, semipenniform muscle, situated the most externally of all the muscles on the forepart of the leg. It arises from the outer tuberosity of the tibia; from the upper three-fourths of the anterior surface of the shaft of the fibula; from the interosseous membrane, and deep surface of the fascia; and from the intermuscular septa between it and the Tibialis anticus on the inner, and the Peronei on the outer side. The muscle terminates in three tendons, which pass through a canal in the annular ligament, with the Peroneus tertius, run across the dorsum of the foot, and are inserted into the second and third phalanges of the four lesser toes, the innermost tendon being subdivided into two. The mode in which the tendons are inserted is the following: Each tendon opposite the metatarso-phalangeal articulation is joined, on its outer side, by the tendon of the Extensor brevis digitorum (except the fourth), and receives a fibrous expansion from the Interossei and Lumbricales; it then spreads into a broad aponeurosis, which covers the dorsal surface of the first phalanx; this aponeurosis, at the articulation of the first with the second phalanx, divides into three slips, a middle one, which is inserted into the base of the second phalanx; and two lateral slips, which, after uniting on the dorsal surface of the second phalanx, are continued onwards, to be inserted into the base of the third.

Relations. By its anterior surface, with the fascia and the annular ligament. By its posterior surface, with the fibula, interosseous membrane, ankle-joint, and Extensor brevis digitorum. By its inner side, with the Tibialis anticus, Extensor proprius pollicis, and anterior tibial vessels and nerve. By its outer side, with the Peroneus longus and brevis.

The Peroneus Tertius is a part of the Extensor longus digitorum, and might be described as its fifth tendon. The fibres belonging to this tendon arise from the lower fourth of the anterior surface of the fibula, on its outer side; from the lower part of the interosseous membrane; and from an intermuscular septum between it and the Peroneus brevis. The tendon, after passing through the same canal in the annular ligament as the Extensor longus digitorum, is inserted into the dorsal surface of the base of the metatarsal bone of the little toe, on its inner side. This muscle is sometimes wanting.

Nerves. These muscles are supplied by the anterior tibial nerve.

Actions. The Tibialis anticus and Peroneus tertius are the direct flexors of the tarsus upon the leg; the former muscle, from the obliquity in the direction of its tendon, raises the inner border of the foot: and the latter, acting with the Peroneus brevis and longus, will draw the outer border of the foot upwards,
and the sole outwards. The Extensor longus digitorum and Extensor proprius pollicis extend the phalanges of the toes, and, continuing their action, flex the tarsus upon the leg. Taking their fixed point from below, in the erect posture, all these muscles serve to fix the bones of the leg in the perpendicular position, and give increased strength to the ankle-joint.

**Posterior Tibio-fibular Region.**

*Dissection* (Fig. 286). Make a vertical incision along the middle line of the back of the leg, from the lower part of the popliteal space to the heel, connecting it below by a transverse incision extending between the two malleoli; the flaps of integument being removed, the fascia and muscles should be examined.

The muscles in this region of the leg are subdivided into two layers, superficial and deep. The superficial layer constitutes a powerful muscular mass, forming the calf of the leg. Their large size is one of the most characteristic features of the muscular apparatus in man, and bears a direct connection with his ordinary attitude and mode of progression.

**Superficial Layer.**

Gastrocnemius. Solus.

Plantaris.

The Gastrocnemius is the most superficial muscle, and forms the greater part of the calf. It arises by two heads, which are connected to the condyles of the femur by two strong flat tendons. The inner head, the larger, and a little the more posterior, arises from a depression at the upper and back part of the inner condyle. The outer head arises from the upper and back part of the external condyle, immediately above the origin of the Popliteus. Both heads, also, arise by a few tendinous and fleshy fibres from the ridges which are continued upwards from the condyles to the linea aspera. Each tendon spreads out into an aponeurosis, which covers the posterior surface of that portion of the muscle to which it belongs; that covering the inner head being longer and thicker than the outer. From the anterior surface of these tendinous expansions, muscular fibres are given off. The fibres in the median line, which correspond to the accessory portions of the muscle derived from the bifurcations of the linea aspera, unite at an angle upon a median tendinous raphe below; the remaining fibres converge to the posterior surface of an aponeurosis which covers the front of the muscle, and this, gradually contracting, unites with the tendon of the Solus, and forms with it the Tendo Achillis.

*Relations.* By its superficial surface, with the fascia of the leg, which separates it from
the external saphenous vein and nerve. By its deep surface, with the posterior ligament of the knee-joint, the Popliteus, Soleus, Plantaris, popliteal vessels, and internal popliteal nerve. The tendon of the inner head corresponds with the back part of the inner condyle, from which it is separated by a synovial bursa, which, in some cases, communicates with the cavity of the knee-joint. The tendon of the outer head contains a sesamoid fibro-cartilage (rarely osseous), where it plays over the corresponding outer condyle; and one is occasionally found in the tendon of the inner head.

The Gastrocnemius should be divided across, just below its origin, and turned downwards, in order to expose the next muscles.

The Soleus is a broad flat muscle situated immediately beneath the preceding. It has received its name from its resemblance in shape to a sole-fish. It arises by tendinous fibres from the back part of the head of the fibula, and from the upper third of the internal surface of its shaft; from the oblique line of the tibia, and from the middle third of its internal border; some fibres also arise from a tendinous arch placed between the tibial and fibular origins of the muscle, beneath which the posterior tibial vessels and nerve pass. The fibres pass backwards to an aponeurosis which covers the posterior surface of the muscle, and this, gradually becoming thicker and narrower, joins with the tendon of the Gastrocnemius, and forms with it the Tendo Achillis.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Gastrocnemius and Plantaris. By its deep surface, with the Flexor longus digitorum, Flexor longus pollicis, Tibialis posticus, and posterior tibial vessels and nerve, from which it is separated by the transverse intermuscular septum or deep fascia of the leg.

The Tendo Achillis, the common tendon of the Gastrocnemius and Soleus, is the thickest and strongest tendon in the body. It is about six inches in length, and formed by the junction of the aponeurosis of the two preceding muscles. It commences about the middle of the leg, but receives fleshy fibres on its anterior surface, nearly to its lower end. Gradually becoming contracted below, it is inserted into the lower part of the posterior tuberosity of the os calcis, a synovial bursa being interposed between the tendon and the upper part of the tuberosity. The tendon spreads out somewhat at its lower end, so that its narrowest part is usually about an inch and a half above its insertion. The tendon is covered by the fascia and the integument, and is separated from the deep muscles and vessels by a considerable interval filled up with areolar and adipose tissue. Along its outer side, but superficial to it, is the external saphenous vein.

The Plantaris is an extremely diminutive muscle, placed between the Gastrocnemius and Soleus, and remarkable for its long and delicate tendon. It arises from the lower part of the outer bifurcation of the linea aspera, and from the posterior ligament of the knee-joint. It forms a small fusiform belly, about two inches in length, terminating in a long slender tendon which crosses obliquely between the two muscles of the calf, and running along the inner border of the tendo Achillis, is inserted with it into the posterior part of the os calcis. This muscle is occasionally double, and is sometimes wanting. Occasionally its tendon is lost in the internal annular ligament, or in the fascia of the leg.

Nerves. These muscles are supplied by the internal popliteal nerve.

Actions. The muscles of the calf possess considerable power, and are constantly called into use in standing, walking, dancing, and leaping; hence the large size they usually present. In walking, these muscles draw powerfully upon the os calcis, raising the heel, and with it, the entire body, from the ground; the body being thus supported on the raised foot, the opposite limb can be carried forwards. In standing, the Soleus, taking its fixed point from below, steadies the leg upon the foot, and prevents the body from falling forwards, to which there is a constant tendency from the superincumbent weight. The Gastrocnemius, acting from below, serves to flex the femur upon the tibia assisted
by the Popliteus. The Plantaris is the rudiment of a large muscle which exists in some of the lower animals, and serves as a tensor of the plantar fascia.

**Deep Layer.**

**Popliteus.**

**Flexor Longus Pollicis.**

**Flexor Longus Digitorum.**

**Tibialis Posticus.**

*Dissection.* Detach the Soleus from its attachment to the fibula and tibia, and turn it downwards, when the deep layer of muscles is exposed, covered by the deep fascia of the leg.

The **Deep Fascia** of the leg is a broad, transverse, intermuscular septum, interposed between the superficial and deep muscles in the posterior tibio-fibular region. On each side it is connected to the margins of the tibia and fibula. Above where it covers the Popliteus, it is thick and dense, and receives an expansion from the tendon of the Semimembranosus; it is thinner in the middle of the leg; but below, where it covers the tendons passing behind the malleoli, it is thickened. It is continued onwards in the interval between the ankle and the heel, where it covers the vessels, and is blended with the internal annular ligament.

This fascia should now be removed, commencing from below opposite the tendons, and detaching it from the muscles in the direction of their fibres.

The **Popliteus** is a thin, flat, triangular muscle, which forms part of the floor of the popliteal space, and is covered by a tendinous expansion, derived from the Semimembranosus muscle. It arises by a strong flat tendon about an inch in length, from a deep depression on the outer side of the external condyle of the femur, and from the posterior ligament of the knee-joint; and is inserted into the inner two-thirds of the triangular surface above the oblique line on the posterior surface of the shaft of the tibia, and into the tendinous expansion covering the surface of the muscle. The tendon of the muscle is covered by that of the Biceps and the external lateral ligament of the knee-joint; it grooves the outer surface of the external semilunar cartilage, and is invested by the synovial membrane of the knee-joint.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the fascia above mentioned, which separates it from the Gastrocnemius, Plantaris, popliteal vessels, and internal popliteal nerve. By its deep surface, with the superior tibio-fibular articulation, and back of the tibia.

The **Flexor Longus Pollicis** is situated on the fibular side of the leg, and is the most superficial and largest of the next three muscles. It arises from the lower two-thirds of the internal surface of the shaft of the fibula, with the ex-
ception of an inch at its lowest part; from the lower part of the interosseous membrane; from an intermuscular septum between it and the Peronei, externally; and from the fascia covering the Tibialis posticus. The fibres pass obliquely downwards and backwards, and terminate round a tendon which occupies nearly the whole length of the posterior surface of the muscle. This tendon passes through a groove on the posterior surface of the tibia, external to that for the Tibialis posticus and Flexor longus digitorum; it then passes through another groove on the posterior extremity of the astragalus, and along a third groove, beneath the lesser process of the os calcis, into the sole of the foot, where it runs forwards between the two heads of the Flexor brevis pollicis, and is inserted into the base of the last phalanx of the great toe. The grooves in the astragalus and os calcis which contain the tendon of the muscle, are converted by tendinous fibres into distinct canals, lined by synovial membrane; and as the tendon crosses the sole of the foot, it is connected to the common flexor by a tendinous slip.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Soleus and Tendo Achillis, from which it is separated by the deep fascia. By its deep surface, with the fibula, Tibialis posticus, the peroneal vessels, the lower part of the interosseous membrane, and the ankle-joint. By its outer border, with the Peronei. By its inner border, with the Tibialis posticus, and Flexor longus digitorum.

The Flexor Longus Digitorum (perforans) is situated on the tibial side of the leg. At its origin, it is thin and pointed, but gradually increases in size as it descends. It arises from the posterior surface of the shaft of the tibia immediately below the oblique line, to within three inches of its extremity external to the tibial origin of the Tibialis posticus; some fibres also arise from the intermuscular septum between it and the Tibialis posticus. The fibres terminate in a tendon, which runs nearly the whole length of the posterior surface of the muscle. This tendon passes, behind the malleolus, in a groove, common to it and the Tibialis posticus, but separated from the latter by a fibrous septum; each tendon being contained in a special sheath lined by a separate synovial membrane. It then passes obliquely forwards and outwards beneath the arch of the os calcis, into the sole of the foot (Fig. 292), where, crossing beneath the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis, to which it is connected by a strong tendinous slip, it becomes expanded, is joined by the Flexor accessorius, and finally divides into four tendons which are inserted into the bases of the last phalanges of the four lesser toes, each tendon passing through a fissure in the tendon of the Flexor brevis digitorum opposite the middle of the first phalanges.

Relations. In the leg: by its superficial surface, with the Soleus, and the posterior tibial vessels and nerve, from which it is separated by the deep fascia; by its deep surface, with the tibia and Tibialis posticus. In the foot, it is covered by the Abductor pollicis and Flexor brevis digitorum, and crosses beneath the Flexor longus pollicis.

The Tibialis Posticus lies between the two preceding muscles, and is the most deeply seated of all the muscles in the leg. It commences above by two pointed processes, separated by an angular interval, through which the anterior tibial vessels pass forwards to the front of the leg. It arises from the whole of the posterior surface of the interosseous membrane, excepting its lowest part, from the posterior surface of the shaft of the tibia, external to the Flexor longus digitorum, between the commencement of the oblique line above, and the middle of the external border of the bone below, and from the upper two-thirds of the inner surface of the shaft of the fibula; some fibres also arise from the deep fascia, and from the intermuscular septa, separating it from the adjacent muscles on each side. This muscle, in the lower fourth of the leg, passes in front of the Flexor longus digitorum, terminates in a tendon, which passes through a groove behind the inner malleolus, with the tendon of that muscle, but inclosed in a separate sheath; it then passes through another sheath, over the internal lateral ligament and beneath the calcaneo-scaphoid articulation, and is inserted into the
MUSCLES AND FASCIAE.

tuberosity of the scaphoid, and internal cuneiform bones. The tendon of this muscle contains a sesamoid bone, near its insertion, and gives off fibrous expansions, one of which passes backwards to the os calcis, others outwards to the middle and external cuneiform, and some forwards to the bases of the third and fourth metatarsal bones (Fig. 293).

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Soleus, and Flexor longus digitorum, the posterior tibial vessels and nerve, and the peroneal vessels, from which it is separated by the deep fascia. By its deep surface, with the interosseous ligament, the tibia, fibula, and ankle-joint.

Nerves. The Popliteus is supplied by the internal popliteal nerve, the remaining muscles of this group by the posterior tibial nerve.

Actions. The Popliteus assists in flexing the leg upon the thigh; when the leg is flexed, it will rotate the tibia inwards. The Tibialis posticus is a direct extensor of the tarsus upon the leg; acting in conjunction with the Tibialis anticus, it turns the sole of the foot inwards, antagonizing the Peroneus longus, which turns it outwards. The Flexor longus digitorum and Flexor longus pedis are the direct Flexors of the phalanges, and, continuing their action, extend the foot upon the leg; they assist the Gastrocnemius and Soleus in extending the foot, as in the act of walking, or in standing on tiptoe. In consequence of the oblique direction of the tendon of the long flexor, the toes would be drawn inwards, were it not for the Flexor accessorius muscle, which is inserted into the outer side of that tendon, and draws it to the middle line of the foot during its action. Taking their fixed point from the foot, these muscles serve to maintain the upright posture, by steadying the tibia and fibula, perpendicularly, upon the ankle-joint. They also serve to raise these bones from the oblique position they assume in the stooping posture.

FIBULAR REGION.

Peroneus Longus. Peroneus Brevis.

Dissection. These muscles are readily exposed, by removing the fascia covering their surface, from below upwards, in the line of direction of their fibres.

The Peroneus Longus is situated at the upper part of the outer side of the leg, and is the more superficial of the two muscles. It arises from the head, and upper two-thirds of the outer surface of the shaft of the fibula, from the deep surface of the fascia, and from the intermuscular septa, between it and the muscles on the front, and those on the back of the leg. It terminates in a long tendon, which passes behind the outer malleolus, in a groove common to it and the Peroneus brevis, the groove being converted into a canal by a fibrous band, and the tendons invested by a common synovial membrane; it is then reflected, obliquely forwards, across the outer side of the os calcis, being contained in a separate fibrous sheath, lined by a prolongation of the synovial membrane from that which lines the groove behind the malleolus. Having reached the outer side of the cuboid bone, it runs in a groove on the under surface of that bone, which is converted into a canal by the long calcaneo-cuboid ligament, and is lined by a synovial membrane: the tendon then crosses obliquely the sole of the foot and is inserted into the outer side of the base of the metatarsal bone of the great toe. The tendon changes its direction at two points: first, behind the external malleolus; secondly, on the outer side of the cuboid bone; in both of these situations, the tendon is thickened, and, in the latter, a sesamoid bone is usually developed in its substance.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the fascia and integument; by its deep surface, with the fibula, the Peroneus brevis, os calcis, and cuboid bone; by its anterior border, with an intermuscular septum, which intervenes between it and the Extensor longus digitorum; by its posterior border, with an intermuscular
OF THE FOOT.

septum, which separates it from the Soleus above, and the Flexor longus pollicis below.

The Peroneus Brevis lies beneath the Peroneus longus and is shorter and smaller than it. It arises from the middle third of the external surface of the shaft of the fibula, internal to the Peroneus longus; from the anterior and posterior borders of the bone; and from the intermuscular septa separating it from the adjacent muscles on the front and back part of the leg. The fibres pass vertically downwards, and terminate in a tendon, which runs in front of that of the preceding muscle through the same groove, behind the external malleolus, being contained in the same fibrous sheath, and lubricated by the same synovial membrane; it then passes through a separate sheath on the outer side of the os calcis, above that for the tendon of the Peroneus longus, and is finally inserted into the dorsal surface of the base of the metatarsal bone of the little toe, on its outer side.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Peroneus longus and the fascia of the leg and foot. By its deep surface, with the fibula and outer side of the os calcis.

Nerves. The Peroneus longus and brevis are supplied by the musculo-cutaneous branch of the external popliteal nerve.

Actions. The Peroneus longus and brevis extend the foot upon the leg, in conjunction with the Tibialis posticus, antagonizing the Tibialis anterior and Peroneus tertius, which are flexors of the foot. The Peroneus longus also everts the sole of the foot; hence the extreme eversion occasionally observed in fracture of the lower end of the fibula, where that bone offers no resistance to the action of this muscle. Taking their fixed point below, the Peronei serve to steady the leg upon the foot. This is especially the case in standing upon one leg, when the tendency of the superincumbent weight is to throw the leg inwards: the Peroneus longus overcomes this tendency, by drawing on the outer side of the leg, and thus maintains the perpendicular direction of the limb.

Surgical Anatomy. The student should now consider the position of the tendons of the various muscles of the leg, their relation with the ankle-joint and surrounding bloodvessels, and especially their action upon the foot, as their rigidity and contraction give rise to one or other of the kinds of deformity known as club-foot. The most simple and common deformity, and one that is rarely, if ever, congenital, is the talipes equinus, the heel being raised by rigidity and contraction of the Gastrocnemius muscle, and the patient walking upon the ball of the foot. In the talipes varus, which is the more common congenital form, the heel is raised by the Tendo Achillis, the inner border of the foot drawn upwards by the Tibialis anterior, and the anterior two-thirds of the foot twisted inwards by the Tibialis posterior and Flexor longus digitorum, the patient walking upon the outer edge of the foot, and in severe cases upon the dorsum and outer ankle. In the talipes valgus, the outer edge of the foot is raised by the Peronei muscles, and the patient walks on the inner ankle. In the talipes calcaneus the toes are raised by the Extensor muscles, the heel is depressed, and the patient walks upon it. Other varieties of deformity are met with, as the talipes equino-varus, equino-valgus, and calcaneo-valgus, whose names sufficiently indicate their nature. Each of these deformities may be successfully relieved (after other remedies fail) by division of the opposing tendons and fascia: by this means, the foot regains its proper position, and the tendons heal by the organization of lymph thrown out between the divided ends. The operation is easily performed by putting the contracted tendon upon the stretch, and dividing it by means of a narrow sharp-pointed knife inserted between it and the skin.

MUSCLES AND FASCIA OF THE FOOT.

The fibrous bands which bind down the tendons in front of and behind the ankle in their passage to the foot, should now be examined; they are termed the annular ligaments, and are three in number, anterior, internal, and external.

The Anterior Annular Ligament consists of a superior or vertical portion, which binds down the extensor tendons as they descend on the front of the tibia and fibula; and an inferior or horizontal portion, which retains them in connection with the tarsus, the two portions being connected by a thin intervening layer of fascia. The vertical portion is attached externally to the lower end of the fibula, internally to the tibia, and above is continuous with the fascia of the
MUSCLES AND FASCIAE.

leg: it contains two separate sheaths, one internally, for the tendon of the Tibialis anticus, one externally, for the tendons of the Extensor longus digitorum and Peroneus tertius; the tendon of the Extensor proprius pollicis, and the anterior tibial vessels and nerve pass beneath it, but without any distinct sheath. The horizontal portion is attached externally to the upper surface of the os calcis, in front of the depression for the interosseous ligament, and internally to the inner malleolus and plantar fascia: it contains three sheaths; the most internal for the tendon of the Tibialis anticus, the next in order for the tendon of the Extensor proprius pollicis, and the most external for the Extensor longus digitorum and Peroneus tertius: the anterior tibial vessels and nerve lie altogether beneath it. These sheaths are lined by separate synovial membranes.

The Internal Annular Ligament is a strong fibrous band, which extends from the inner malleolus above, to the internal margin of the os calcis below, converting a series of bony grooves in this situation into osseo-fibrous canals, for the passage of the tendons of the Flexor muscles and vessels into the sole of the foot. It is continuous above with the deep fascia of the leg, below with the plantar fascia and the fibres of origin of the Abductor pollicis muscle. The three canals which it forms, transmit from within outwards, first, the tendon of the Tibialis posticus; second, the tendon of the Flexor longus digitorum, then the posterior tibial vessels and nerve, which run through a broad space beneath the ligament: lastly, in a canal formed partly by the astragalus, the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis. Each of these canals is lined by a separate synovial membrane.

The External Annular Ligament extends from the extremity of the outer malleolus to the outer surface of the os calcis: it binds down the tendons of the Peronei muscles in their passage beneath the outer angle. The two tendons are inclosed in one synovial sac.

Dissection of the Sole of the Foot. The foot should be placed on a high block with the sole uppermost, and firmly secured in that position. Carry an incision round the heel and along the inner and outer borders of the foot to the great and little toes. This incision should divide the integument and thick layer of granular fat beneath, until the fascia is visible; the skin and fat should then be removed from the fascia in a direction from behind forwards, as seen in Fig. 186.

The Plantar Fascia, the densest of all the fibrous membranes, is of great strength, and consists of dense pearly-white glistening fibres, disposed, for the most part, longitudinally: it is divided into a central and two lateral portions.

The central portion, the thickest, is narrow behind and attached to the inner tubercle of the os calcis, behind the origin of the Flexor brevis digitorum, and becoming broader and thinner in front, divides opposite the middle of the metatarsal bones into five processes, one for each of the toes. Each of these processes divides opposite the metatarso-phalangeal articulation into two slips, which embrace the sides of the flexor tendons of the toes, and are inserted into the sides of the metatarsal bones, and into the transverse metatarsal ligament, thus forming a series of arches through which the tendons of the short and long flexors pass to the toes. The intervals left between the five processes allow the digital vessels and nerves, and the tendons of the Lumbricales muscles, to become superficial. At the point of division of the fascia into processes and slips, numerous transverse fibres are superadded, which serve to increase the strength of the fascia at this part, by binding the processes together, and connecting them with the integument. The central portion of the plantar fascia is continuous with the lateral portions at each side, and sends upwards into the foot, at their point of junction, two strong vertical intermascular septa, broader in front than behind, which separate the middle from the external and internal plantar group of muscles; from these again thinner transverse septa are derived, which separate the various layers of muscles in this region. The upper surface of this fascia gives attachment behind to the Flexor brevis digitorum muscle.

The lateral portions of the plantar fascia are thinner than the central piece and cover the sides of the foot.
OF THE FOOT.

The outer portion covers the under surface of the Abductor minimi digiti; it is thick behind, thin in front, and extends from the os calcis forwards to the base of the fifth metatarsal bone, into the outer side of which it is attached; it is continuous internally with the middle portion of the plantar fascia, and externally with the dorsal fascia.

The inner portion is very thin, and covers the Abductor pollicis muscle; it is attached behind to the internal annular ligament, and is continuous around the side of the foot with the dorsal fascia, and externally with the middle portion of the plantar fascia.

MUSCLES OF THE FOOT.

These are found in two regions: 1. On the dorsum; 2. On the plantar surface.

1. DORSAL REGION.

Extensor Brevis DIGITORUM.

The Fascia on the dorsum of the foot is a thin membranous layer, continuous above with the anterior margin of the annular ligament; it becomes gradually lost opposite the heads of the metatarsal bones, and on each side blends with the lateral portions of the plantar fascia; it forms a sheath for the tendons placed on the dorsum of the foot. On the removal of this fascia, the muscles and tendons of the dorsal region of the foot are exposed.

The Extensor Brevis DIGITORUM (Fig. 288) is a broad thin muscle, which arises from the outer side of the os calcis, in front of the groove for the Peroneus brevis; from the external calcaneo-astragaloid ligament; and from the horizontal portion of the anterior annular ligament. It passes obliquely across the dorsum of the foot, and terminates in four tendons. The innermost, which is the largest, is inserted into the first phalanx of the great toe, crossing the dorsalis pedis artery; the other three, into the outer sides of the long extensor tendons of the second, third, and fourth toes.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the fascia of the foot, the tendons of the Extensor longus digitorum and Extensor proprius pollicis. By its deep surface, with the tarsal and metatarsal bones, and the Dorsal interossei muscles.

Nerves. It is supplied by the anterior tibial nerve.

Actions. The Extensor brevis digitorum is an accessory to the long Extensor, extending the phalanges of the four inner toes, but acting only on the first phalanx of the great toe. The obliquity of its direction counteracts the oblique movement given to the toes by the long Extensor, so that, both muscles acting together, the toes are evenly extended.

2. PLANTAR REGION.

The muscles in the plantar region of the foot may be divided into three groups, in a similar manner to those in the hand. Those of the internal plantar region are connected with the great toe, and correspond with those of the thumb; those of the external plantar region, are connected with the little toe, and correspond with those of the little finger; and those of the middle plantar region are connected with the tendons intervening between the two former groups. But in order to facilitate the dissection of these muscles, it will be found more convenient to divide them into four layers, as they present themselves, in the order in which they are successively exposed.
**First Layer.**

*Abductor Pollicis.*  
*Flexor Brevis Digitorum.*  
*Abductor Minimi Digiti.*

**Dissection.** Remove the fascia on the inner and outer sides of the foot, commencing in front over the tendons, and proceeding backwards. The central portion should be divided transversely in the middle of the foot, and the two flaps dissected forwards and backwards.

The *Abductor Pollicis* lies along the inner border of the foot. It arises from the inner tubercle on the under surface of the os calcis; from the internal annular ligament; from the plantar fascia; and from the intermuscular septum between it and the Flexor brevis digitorum. The fibres terminate in a tendon, which is inserted, together with the innermost tendon of the Flexor brevis pollicis, into the inner side of the base of the first phalanx of the great toe. It is supplied by the internal plantar nerve.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the plantar fascia. By its deep surface, with the Flexor brevis pollicis, the Flexor accessorius, and the tendons of the Flexor longus digitorum and Flexor longus pollicis, the Tibialis anticus and posticus, the plantar vessels and nerves, and the articulations of the tarsus.

The *Flexor Brevis Digitorum* (*perforatus*) lies in the middle of the sole of the foot, immediately beneath the plantar fascia, with which it is firmly united. It arises by a narrow tendinous process, from the inner tubercle of the os calcis, from the central part of the plantar fascia; and from the intermuscular septa between it and the adjacent muscles. It passes forwards, and divides into four tendons. Opposite the middle of the first phalanges, each tendon presents a longitudinal slit, to allow of the passage of the corresponding tendon of the Flexor longus digitorum; the two portions form a groove for the reception of that tendon. The tendon of the short flexor then reunites and immediately divides a second time into two processes, which are inserted into the sides of the second phalanges. The mode of division of the tendons of the Flexor brevis digitorum, and their insertion into the phalanges, is analogous to the Flexor sublimis in the hand. It is supplied by the internal plantar nerve.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the plantar fascia. By its deep surface, with the Flexor accessorius, the Lumbricales, the tendons of the Flexor longus digitorum, and the external plantar vessels and nerve, from which it is separated by a thin layer of fascia. The outer and inner borders are separated from the adjacent muscles by means of vertical prolongations of the plantar fascia.

---

1 In the erect position, this would, of course, be above.
The Abductor Minimi Digitii lies along the outer border of the foot. It arises, by a very broad origin, from the outer tubercle of the os calcis, from the under surface of the os calcis in front of the tubercle, from the plantar fascia, and the intermuscular septum between it and the Flexor brevis digitorum. Its tendon, after gliding over a smooth facet on the under surface of the base of the fifth metatarsal bone, is inserted with the short Flexor of the little toe into the outer side of the base of the first phalanx of the little toe. It is supplied by the external plantar nerve.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the plantar fascia. By its deep surface, with the Flexor accessorius, the Flexor brevis minimi digiti, the long plantar ligament, and the tendon of the Peroneus longus. On its inner side are the external plantar vessels and nerve, and it is separated from the Flexor brevis digitorum by a vertical septum of fascia.

**Dissection.** The muscles of the superficial layer should be divided at their origin, by inserting the knife beneath each, and cutting obliquely backwards, so as to detach them from the bone; they should then be drawn forwards, in order to expose the second layer, but not cut away at their insertion. The two layers are separated by a thin membrane, the deep plantar fascia, on the removal of which is seen the tendon of the Flexor longus digitorum, the Flexor accessorius, the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis, and the Lumbricales. The long flexor tendons cross each other at an acute angle, the Flexor longus pollicis running along the inner side of the foot, on a plane superior to that of the Flexor longus digitorum, the direction of which is obliquely outwards.

**Second Layer.**

Flexor Accessorius.

Lumbricales.

The Flexor Accessorius arises by two heads: the inner or larger, which is muscular, being attached to the inner concave surface of the os calcis, and to the calcaneo scaphoid ligament; the outer head, flat and tendinous, to the under surface of the os calcis, in front of its outer tubercle, and to the long plantar ligament: the two portions join at an acute angle, and are inserted into the outer margin and upper and under surfaces of the tendon of the Flexor longus digitorum, forming a kind of groove, in which the tendon is lodged. It is supplied by the external plantar nerve.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the muscles of the superficial layer, from which it is separated by the external plantar vessels and nerves. By its deep surface, with the os calcis and long calcaneo-cuboid ligament.

The Lumbricales are four small muscles, accessory to the tendons of the Flexor longus digitorum: they arise from the tendons of the long flexor, as far back as their angle of division, each arising from two tendons, except the internal one. Each muscle terminates in a tendon, which passes forwards on the inner side of each of the lesser toes, and is inserted into the expansion of the
long extensor and base of the first phalanx of the corresponding toe. The two internal Lumbricales muscles are supplied by the internal, and the two external by the external plantar nerve.

**Dissection.** The flexor tendons should be divided at the back part of the foot, and the Flexor accessorius at its origin, and drawn forwards, in order to expose the third layer.

**Third Layer.**

- Flexor Brevis Pollicis
- Adductor Pollicis
- Flexor Brevis Minimi Digitii
- Transversus Pedis

The _Flexor Brevis Pollicis_ arises, by a pointed tendinous process, from the inner border of the cuboid bone, from the contiguous portion of the external cuneiform, and from the prolongation of the tendon of the Tibialis posterior, which is attached to that bone. The muscle divides, in front, into two portions, which are inserted into the inner and outer sides of the base of the first phalanx of the great toe, a sesamoid bone being developed in each tendon at its insertion. The inner portion of this muscle is blended with the Abductor pollicis previous to its insertion, the outer with the Adductor pollicis, and the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis lies in a groove between them.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the Abductor pollicis, the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis and plantar fascia. By its deep surface, with the tendon of the Peroneus longus, and metatarsal bone of the great toe. By its inner border, with the Abductor pollicis. By its outer border, with the Adductor Pollicis.

The _Adductor Pollicis_ is a large, thick, fleshy mass, passing obliquely across the foot, and occupying the hollow space between the four outer metatarsal bones. It arises from the tarsal extremities of the second, third, and fourth metatarsal bones, and from the sheath of the tendon of the Peroneus longus, and is inserted, together with the outer portion of the Flexor brevis pollicis, into the outer side of the base of the first phalanx of the great toe.

The _Flexor Brevis Minimi Digitii_ lies on the metatarsal bone of the little toe, and much resembles one of the Interossae. It arises from the base of the metatarsal bone of the little toe, and from the sheath of the Peroneus longus; its tendon is inserted into the base of the first phalanx of the little toe on its outer side.

**Relations.** By its superficial surface, with the plantar fascia and tendon of the Abductor minimi digitii. By its deep surface, with the fifth metatarsal bone.
The Transversus Pedis is a narrow, flat, muscular fasciculus, stretched transversely across the heads of the metatarsal bones, between them and the flexor tendons. It arises from the under surface of the head of the fifth metatarsal bone, and from the transverse ligament of the metatarsus; and is inserted into the outer side of the first phalanx of the great toe; its fibres being blended with the tendon of insertion of the Adductor pollicis. Nervous Supply. The Flexor brevis pollicis is supplied by the internal plantar nerve, and sometimes (according to Meckel) receives a branch from the external plantar. The other three muscles of this layer are supplied by the external plantar nerve. Relations. By its under surface, with the tendons of the long and short Flexors and Lumbricales. By its upper surface, with the Interossei.

Fourth Layer.
The Interossei.

The Interossei muscles in the foot are similar to those in the hand, with this exception, that they are grouped around the middle line of the second toe, instead of the middle line of the whole member, as in the hand. They are seven in number, and consist of two groups, dorsal and plantar.

The Dorsal Interossei, four in number, are situated between the metatarsal bones. They are bipenniform muscles, arising by two heads from the adjacent sides of the metatarsal bones between which they are placed; their tendons are inserted into the bases of the first phalanges, and into the aponeurosis of the common extensor tendon. In the angular interval left between the heads of each muscle at its posterior extremity, the perforating arteries pass to the dorsum of the foot; except in the first Interosseous muscle, where the interval allows the passage of the communicating branch of the dorsalis pedis artery. The first Dorsal interosseous muscle is inserted into the inner side of the second toe; the other three are inserted into the outer sides of the second, third, and fourth toes. They are all abductors from the middle line of the second toe.

The Plantar Interossei, three in number, lie beneath, rather than between, the metatarsal bones. They are single muscles, and are each connected with but one metatarsal bone. They arise from the base and inner sides of the shaft of the third, fourth, and fifth metatarsal bones, and are inserted into the inner sides of the bases of the first phalanges of the same toes, and into the aponeurosis of the common extensor tendon. These muscles are all adductors towards the middle line of the second toe.

All the Interossei muscles are supplied by the external plantar nerve.
long extensor and base of the first phalanx of the corresponding toe. The two internal Lumbricales muscles are supplied by the internal, and the two external by the external plantar nerve.

Dissection. The flexor tendons should be divided at the back part of the foot, and the Flexor accessorius at its origin, and drawn forwards, in order to expose the third layer.

Third Layer.

Flexor Brevis Pollicis.
Adductor Pollicis.

Flexor Brevis Minimi Digitii.
Transversus Pedis.

The Flexor Brevis Pollicis arises, by a pointed tendinous process, from the inner border of the cuboid bone, from the contiguous portion of the external cuneiform, and from the prolongation of the tendon of the Tibialis posticus, which is attached to that bone. The muscle divides, in front, into two portions, which are inserted into the inner and outer sides of the base of the first phalanx of the great toe, a sesamoid bone being developed in each tendon at its insertion. The inner portion of this muscle is blended with the Abductor pollicis previous to its insertion, the outer with the Adductor pollicis, and the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis lies in a groove between them.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the Abductor pollicis, the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis and plantar fascia. By its deep surface, with the tendon of the Peroneus longus, and metatarsal bone of the great toe. By its inner border, with the Abductor pollicis. By its outer border, with the Adductor Pollicis.

The Adductor Pollicis is a large, thick, fleshy mass, passing obliquely across the foot, and occupying the hollow space between the four outer metatarsal bones. It arises from the tarsal extremities of the second, third, and fourth metatarsal bones, and from the sheath of the tendon of the Peroneus longus, and is inserted, together with the outer portion of the Flexor brevis pollicis, into the outer side of the base of the first phalanx of the great toe.

The Flexor Brevis Minimi Digitii lies on the metatarsal bone of the little toe, and much resembles one of the Interossei. It arises from the base of the metatarsal bone of the little toe, and from the sheath of the Peroneus longus; its tendon is inserted into the base of the first phalanx of the little toe on its outer side.

Relations. By its superficial surface, with the plantar fascia and tendon of the Abductor minimi digitii. By its deep surface, with the fifth metatarsal bone.
OF THE SOLE OF THE FOOT. FOURTH LAYER. 459

The Transversus Pedis is a narrow, flat, muscular fasciculus, stretched transversely across the heads of the metatarsal bones, between them and the flexor tendons. It arises from the under surface of the head of the fifth metatarsal bone, and from the transverse ligament of the metatarsus; and is inserted into the outer side of the first phalanx of the great toe; its fibres being blended with the tendon of insertion of the Adductor pollicis.

Nervous Supply. The Flexor brevis pollicis is supplied by the internal plantar nerve, and sometimes (according to Meckel) receives a branch from the external plantar. The other three muscles of this layer are supplied by the external plantar nerve.

Relations. By its under surface, with the tendons of the long and short Flexors and Lumbricales. By its upper surface, with the Interossei.

Fourth Layer.

The Interossei.

The Interossei muscles in the foot are similar to those in the hand, with this exception, that they are grouped around the middle line of the second toe, instead of the middle line of the whole member, as in the hand. They are seven in number, and consist of two groups, dorsal and plantar.

The Dorsal Interossei, four in number, are situated between the metatarsal bones. They are bipenniform muscles, arising by two heads from the adjacent sides of the metatarsal bones between which they are placed; their tendons are inserted into the bases of the first phalanges, and into the aponeurosis of the common extensor tendon. In the angular interval left between the heads of each muscle at its posterior extremity, the perforating arteries pass to the dorsum of the foot; except in the first Interosseous muscle, where the interval allows the passage of the communicating branch of the dorsalis pedis artery. The first Dorsal interosseous muscle is inserted into the inner side of the second toe; the other three are inserted into the outer sides of the second, third, and fourth toes. They are all abductors from the middle line of the second toe.

The Plantar Interossei, three in number, lie beneath, rather than between, the metatarsal bones. They are single muscles, and are each connected with but one metatarsal bone. They arise from the base and inner sides of the shaft of the third, fourth, and fifth metatarsal bones, and are inserted into the inner sides of the bases of the first phalanges of the same toes, and into the aponeurosis of the common extensor tendon. These muscles are all adductors towards the middle line of the second toe.

All the Interossei muscles are supplied by the external plantar nerve.
The student should now consider the effects produced by the action of the various muscles in fractures of the bones of the lower extremity. The more common forms of fracture are selected for illustration and description.

Fracture of the neck of the femur internal to the capsular ligament (Fig. 296) is a very common accident, and is most frequently caused by indirect violence, such as slipping off the edge of the curbstone, the impetus and weight of the body falling upon the neck of the bone. It usually occurs in females, and seldom under fifty years of age. At this period of life, the cancellous tissue of the neck of the bone is atrophied, becoming soft and infiltrated with fatty matter; the compact tissue is partially absorbed: hence the bone is more brittle and more liable to fracture. The characteristic marks of this accident are slight shortening of the limb, and eversion of the foot, neither of which symptoms occurs, however, in some cases until some time after the injury. The eversion is caused by the combined action of the external rotator muscles, as well as by the Psoas and Iliacus, Pectineus, Adductors, and Glutei muscles. The shortening is produced by the action of the Glutei, and by the Rectus femoris in front, and the Biceps, Semitendinosus, and Semimembranosus behind.

Fracture of the femur just below the trochanters (Fig. 297) is an accident of not infrequent occurrence, and is attended with great displacement, producing considerable deformity. The upper fragment, the portion chiefly displaced, is tilted forwards almost at right angles with the pelvis, by the combined action of the Psoas and Iliacus; and, at the same time, everted and drawn outwards by the external rotators and Glutei muscles, causing a marked prominence at the upper and outer side of the thigh, and much pain from the bruising and laceration of the muscles. The limb is shortened, in consequence of the lower fragment being drawn upwards by the Rectus in front, and the Biceps, Semimembranosus, and Semitendinosus behind; and, at the same time, everted, and the upper end thrown outwards, the lower inwards, by the Pectineus and Adductor muscles. This fracture may be reduced in two different methods: either by direct relaxation of all the opposing muscles, to effect which the limb should be placed on a double inclined plane; or by overcoming the contraction of the muscles, by continued extension, which may be effected by means of the long splint.

Oblique fracture of the femur immediately above the condyles (Fig. 298) is a formidable injury, and attended with considerable displacement. On examination of the limb, the lower fragment may be felt deep in the popliteal space, being drawn backwards by the Gastrocnemius and Plantaris muscles, and upwards by the posterior Femoral and Rectus muscles. The pointed end of the upper fragment is drawn inwards by the Pectineus and Adductor muscles, and tilted forwards by the Psoas and Iliacus, piercing the Rectus muscle, and occasionally, the integument. Relaxation of these muscles and direct approximation of the broken fragments are effected by placing the limb on a double...
OF THE MUSCLES OF THE LOWER EXTREMIT Y. 461

inclined plane. The greatest care is requisite in keeping the pointed extremity of the upper fragment in proper position; otherwise, after union of the fracture, the power of extension of the

Fig. 298.—Fracture of the Femur above the Condyles.  Fig. 299.—Fracture of the Patella.

Fig. 300.—Oblique Fracture of the Shaft of the Tibia.

limb is partially destroyed, from the Rectus muscle being held down by the fractured end of the bone, and from the patella, when elevated, being drawn upwards against the projecting fragment.

Fracture of the patella (Fig. 299) may be produced by muscular action, or by direct violence. When produced by muscular action, it occurs thus: a person in danger of falling forwards attempts to recover himself by throwing the body backwards, and the violent action of the Quadriceps extensor upon the patella snaps that bone transversely across. The upper fragment is drawn up the thigh by the Quadriceps extensor, the lower fragment being retained in its position by the ligamentum patellae; the extent of separation of the two fragments depending upon the degree of laceration of the ligamentous structures around the bone. The patient is totally unable to straighten the limb; the prominence of the patella is lost; and a marked but varying interval can be felt between the fragments. The treatment consists in relaxing the opposing muscles, which may be effected by raising the trunk, and slightly elevating the limb, which should be kept in a straight position. Union is usually ligamentous. In fracture from direct violence, the bone is generally comminuted, or fractured obliquely or perpendicularly.

Oblique fracture of the shaft of the tibia (Fig. 300) usually occurs at the lower fourth of the bone, this being the narrowest and weakest part, and is usually accompanied with fracture of the fibula. If the fracture has taken place obliquely from above, downwards, and forwards, the fragments ride over one another, the lower fragments being drawn backwards and upwards by the powerful action of the muscles of the calf; the pointed extremity of the upper fragment projects forwards immediately beneath the integument, often protruding through it, and rendering the fracture a compound one. If the direction of the fracture is the reverse of that shown in the figure, the pointed extremity of the lower fragment projects forwards, riding upon the lower end of the upper one. By bending the knee, which relaxes the opposing muscles, and making extension from the knee and ankle, the fragments may be brought into apposition. It is often necessary, however, in compound fracture, to remove a portion of the projecting bone with the saw before complete adaptation can be effected.

Fracture of the fibula with displacement of the tibia (Fig. 301), commonly known as "Pott's Fracture," is one of the most frequent injuries of the ankle joint. The end of the tibia is displaced from the corresponding surface of the astragalus; the
internal lateral ligament is ruptured; and the inner malleolus projects inwards beneath the integument, which is tightly stretched over it and in danger of bursting. The fibula is broken, usually from two to three inches above the ankle, and occasionally that portion of the tibia with which it is more directly connected below; the foot is everted by the action of the Peroneus lon-

Fig. 301.—Fracture of the Fibula, with Displacement of the Tibia.—"Pott's Fracture."

gus, its inner border resting upon the ground, and, at the same time, the heel is drawn up by the muscles of the calf. This injury may be at once reduced by flexing the leg at right angles with the thigh, which relaxes all the opposing muscles, and by making slight extension from the knee and ankle.

Of the Arteries.

The Arteries are cylindrical tubular vessels, which serve to convey blood from both ventricles of the heart to every part of the body. These vessels were named arteries (ἀερία, air, ἀερίω, to contain), from the belief entertained by the ancients that they contained air. To Galen is due the honor of refuting this opinion; he showed that these vessels, though for the most part empty after death, contain blood in the living body.

The pulmonary artery, which arises from the right ventricle of the heart, carries venous blood directly into the lungs, whence it is returned by the pulmonary veins into the left auricle. This constitutes the lesser or pulmonic circulation. The great artery which arises from the left ventricle, the aorta, conveys arterial blood to the body generally; whence it is brought back to the right side of the heart by means of the veins. This constitutes the greater or systemic circulation.

The distribution of the systemic arteries is like a highly ramified tree, the common trunk of which, formed by the aorta, commences at the left ventricle of the heart, the smallest ramifications corresponding to the circumference of the body, and the contained organs. The arteries are found in nearly every part of the body, with the exception of the hairs, nails, epidermis, cartilages, and cornea; and the larger trunks usually occupy the most protected situations, running, in the limbs, along the flexor side, where they are less exposed to injury.

There is considerable variation in the mode of division of the arteries; occasionally a short trunk subdivides into several branches at the same point; as we observe in the coeliac and thyroid axes; or the vessel may give off several branches in succession, and still continue as the main trunk, as is seen in the arteries of the limbs; but the usual division is dichotomous, as, for instance, the aorta dividing into the two common iliacs; and the common carotid, into the external and internal.

The branches of arteries arise at very variable angles; some, as the superior intercostal arteries from the aorta, arise at an obtuse angle; others, as the lumbar arteries, at a right angle; or, as the spermatic, at an acute angle. An artery from which a branch is given off is smaller in size, but retains a uniform diameter until a second branch is derived from it. A branch of an artery is smaller than the trunk from which it arises; but if an artery divides into two branches, the combined area of the two vessels is, in nearly every instance, somewhat greater than that of the trunk; and the combined area of all the arterial branches greatly exceeds the area of the aorta; so that the arteries collectively may be regarded as a cone, the apex of which corresponds to the aorta; the base to the capillary system.

The arteries, in their distribution, communicate freely with one another, forming what is called an anastomosis (ἀνά, between; ὀρέγα, mouth), or inosculations; and this communication is very free between the large as well as between the smaller branches. The anastomoses between trunks of equal size are found where great freedom and activity of the circulation are requisite, as in the brain; here the two vertebral arteries unite to form the basilar, and the two internal carotid arteries are connected by a short communicating trunk; it is also found in the abdomen, the intestinal arteries having very free anastomoses between their larger branches. In the limbs, the anastomoses are most frequent and of largest size around the joints; the branches of an artery above freely inosculating with branches from the vessels below; these anastomoses are of consider-
invested in a tube of serous membrane, continued on to them from the surface of the heart.

**Relations.** The ascending part of the arch is covered at its commencement by the trunk of the pulmonary artery and the right appendix auricule, and, higher up, is separated from the sternum by the pericardium, some loose areolar tissue, and the remains of the thymus gland; behind, it rests upon the right pulmonary vessels and root of the right lung. On the right side, it is in relation with the superior vena cava and right auricle; on the left side, with the pulmonary artery.

**Plan of the Relations of the Ascending Part of the Arch.**

**In Front.**
- Pulmonary artery.
- Right appendix auricule.
- Pericardium.
- Remains of thymus gland.

**Right side.**
- Superior cava.
- Arch of Aorta. Ascending Portion.
- Right auricle.

**Left side.**
- Pulmonary artery.

**Behind.**
- Right pulmonary vessels.
- Root of right lung.

**Transverse Part of the Arch.**

The second or transverse portion of the arch commences at the upper border of the second chondro-sternal articulation of the right side in front, and passes from right to left, and from before backwards, to the left side of the third dorsal vertebra behind. Its upper border is usually about an inch below the upper margin of the sternum.

**Exterior.** Its **anterior surface** is covered by the left pleura and lung, and directed towards the left side by the left pneumogastric and phrenic nerves, and...
cardiac branches of the sympathetic. Its posterior surface lies on the trachea, just above its bifurcation, on the great, or deep, cardiac plexus, the oesophagus, thoracic duct, and left recurrent laryngeal nerve. Its upper border is in relation with the left innominate vein; and from its upper part are given off the innominate, left common carotid, and left subclavian arteries. Its lower border is in relation with the bifurcation of the pulmonary artery, and the remains of the ductus arteriosus, which is connected with the left division of that vessel; the left recurrent laryngeal nerve winds round it from before backwards, whilst the left bronchus passes below it.

**Plan of the Relations of the Transverse Part of the Arch.**

*Above.*
- Left innominate vein.
- Arteria innominata.
- Left carotid.
- Left subclavian.

*In Front.*
- Left pleura and lung.
- Left pneumogastric nerve.
- Left phrenic nerve.
- Cardiac nerves.

*Arch of Aorta, Transverse Portion.*

*Behind.*
- Trachea.
- Deep cardiac plexus.
- Oesophagus.
- Thoracic duct.
- Left recurrent nerve.

*Below.*
- Bifurcation of pulmonary artery.
- Remains of ductus arteriosus.
- Left recurrent nerve.
- Left bronchus.

**Descending Part of the Arch.**

The descending portion of the arch has a straight direction, inclining downwards on the left side of the body of the fourth dorsal vertebra, at the lower border of which it takes the name of thoracic aorta.

*Relations.* Its anterior surface is covered by the pleura and root of the left lung; behind, it lies on the left side of the body of the fourth dorsal vertebra. On its right side are the oesophagus and thoracic duct; on its left side it is covered by the pleura.

**Plan of the Relations of the Descending Part of the Arch.**

*In Front.*
- Pleura.
- Root of left lung.

*Right side.*
- Oesophagus.
- Thoracic duct.

*Arch of Aorta, Descending Portion.*

*Left side.*
- Pleura.

*Behind.*
- Left side of body of fourth dorsal vertebra.

The ascending, transverse, and descending portions of the arch vary in position according to the movements of respiration, being lowered, together with the trachea, bronchi, and pulmonary vessels, during inspiration by the descent of the Diaphragm, and elevated during expiration, when the Diaphragm ascends. These movements are greater in the ascending than the transverse, and in the latter than the descending part.
In the neck, the two common carotids resemble each other so closely, that one description will apply to both. Each vessel passes obliquely upwards, from behind the sterno-clavicular articulation, to a level with the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, where it divides into the external and internal carotid; these names being derived from the distribution of the arteries to the external parts of the head and face, and to the internal parts of the cranium respectively. The course of the common carotid is indicated by a line drawn from the sternal end of the clavicle below, to a point midway between the angle of the jaw and the mastoid process above.

Fig. 304.—Surgical Anatomy of the Arteries of the Neck. Right Side.

At the lower part of the neck the two common carotid arteries are separated from each other by a very small interval, which contains the trachea; but at the upper part, the thyroid body, the larynx and pharynx project forwards between the two vessels, and give the appearance of their being placed further
THE CORONARY.

Peculiarities. Position of the Branches. The branches, instead of arising from the highest part of the arch (their usual position), may be moved more to the right, arising from the commencement of the transverse or upper part of the ascending portion; or the distance from one another at their origin may be increased or diminished, the most frequent change in this respect being the approximation of the left carotid towards the innominate artery.

The Number of the primary branches may be reduced to two: the left carotid arising from the innominate artery; or (more rarely), the carotid and subclavian arteries of the left side arising from a left innominate artery. But the number may be increased to four, from the right carotid and subclavian arteries arising directly from the aorta, the innominate being absent. In most of these latter cases, the right subclavian has been found to arise from the left end of the arch; in other cases, it was the second or third branch given off instead of the first. Lastly, the number of trunks from the arch may be increased to five or six; in these instances, the external and internal carotids arise separately from the arch, the common carotid being absent on one or both sides.

Number usual. Arrangement different. When the aorta arches over to the right side, the three branches have an arrangement the reverse of what is usual, the innominate supplying the left side, and the carotid and subclavian (which arises separately) the right side. In other cases, the aorta takes its usual course, the two carotids may be joined in a common trunk, and the subclavians arise separately from the arch, the right subclavian generally arising from the left end of the arch.

Secondary Branches sometimes arise from the arch; most commonly such a secondary branch is the left vertebral, which usually takes origin between the left carotid and left subclavian, or beyond them. Sometimes, a thyroid branch is derived from the arch, or the right internal mammary, or right vertebral, or, more rarely, both vertebrales.¹

The CORONARY Arteries.

The Coronary Arteries supply the heart; they are two in number, right and left, arising near the commencement of the aorta immediately above the free margin of the semilunar valves.

The Right Coronary Artery, about the size of a crow's quill, arises from the aorta immediately above the free margin of the right semilunar valve, between the pulmonary artery and the right appendix auricule. It passes forwards to the right side, in the groove between the right auricle and ventricle, and curving around the right border of the heart, runs along its posterior surface as far as the posterior interventricular groove, where it divides into two branches, one of which continues onwards in the groove between the left auricle and ventricle, and anastomoses with the left coronary; the other descends along the posterior interventricular furrow, supplying branches to both ventricles and to the septum, and anastomosing at the apex of the heart with the descending branch of the left coronary.

This vessel sends a large branch along the thin margin of the right ventricle to the apex, and numerous small branches to the right auricle and ventricle, and the commencement of the pulmonary artery.

The Left Coronary, smaller than the former, arises immediately above the free edge of the left semilunar valve, a little higher than the right; it passes forwards between the pulmonary artery and the left appendix auricule, and descends obliquely towards the anterior interventricular groove, where it divides into two branches. Of these, one passes transversely outwards in the left auriculo-ventricular groove, and winds around the left border of the heart to its posterior surface, where it anastomoses with the superior branch of the right coronary; the other descends along the anterior interventricular groove to the apex of the heart, where it anastomoses with the descending branch of the right coronary. The left coronary supplies the left auricle and its appendix, both ventricles, and numerous small branches to the pulmonary artery, and commencement of the aorta.

Peculiarities. These vessels occasionally arise by a common trunk, or their number may be increased to three; the additional branch being of small size. More rarely, there are two additional branches.

¹ The anomalies of the aorta and its branches are minutely described by Krause in Heule's "Anatomy" (Brunswick, 1868), vol. iii. p. 203 et seq.
Innominate Artery.

Left side.
Remains of thymus.
Left Carotid.

The bifurcation of the innominate artery varies as regards a considerable distance above the sternal angle with it. In the former class of cases, its length is reduced to an inch or less. These are points of connection with the operation of tying this artery. It supplies a thyroid branch (middle thyroid artery) to the thyroid gland; and sometimes a branch from right pneumogastric nerve. The right subclavian arises directly from the right side, the innominate is directed to the left.

As illustrated, on the dead subject, the possibility of the ligature of the innominate artery, by tying and even an outer injection impelled into the aorta, passed to the arteries of the right arm, filling them and all the branches of the carotid arteries of opposite sides used to the right side of the head and neck; while the branches of the subclavian and the first aortic intercostal (see section of the thoracic aorta), would bring the blood to the right arm, while the epigastric, from the innominate with the internal mammary, compensates for any deficiency.

A deviation of tying the innominate artery has been performed by the right subclavian extending inwards as far as the clavicle, attended with success. Mott's patient, however, on the advice of Dr. Smyth of New Orleans. See the New Sydenham Soc. 6, p. 346.
COMMON CAROTID.

whom the operation was first performed, lived nearly four weeks, and Graefe's, more than two months. The main obstacles to the operation are, as the student will perceive from his dissection of this vessel, the deep situation of the artery behind and beneath the sternum, and the number of important structures which surround it in every part.

In order to apply a ligature to this vessel, the patient is to be placed upon his back, with the shoulders raised, and the head bent a little backwards, so as to draw out the artery from behind the sternum into the neck. An incision two inches long is then made along the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, terminating at the sternal end of the clavicle. From this point, a second incision is carried about the same length along the upper border of the clavicle. The skin is then dissected back, and the Platysma divided on a director: the sternal end of the Sterno-mastoid is now brought into view, and a director being passed beneath it, and close to its under surface, so as to avoid any small vessels, the muscle is to be divided transversely throughout the greater part of its attachment. By pressing aside any loose cellular tissue or vessels that may now appear, the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles will be exposed, and must be divided, a director being previously passed beneath them. The inferior thyroid veins may come into view, and must be carefully drawn either upwards or downwards, by means of a blunt hook. On no account should these vessels be divided, as it would add much to the difficulty of the operation, and endanger its ultimate success. After tearing through a strong fibro-cellular lamina, the right carotid is brought into view, and being traced downwards, the arteria vena innominata is arrived at. The left vena innominata should now be depressed, the right vena innominata, the internal jugular vein, and pneumogastric nerve drawn to the right side; and a curved aneurism needle may then be passed around the vessel, close to its surface, and in a direction from below upwards and inwards; care being taken to avoid the right pleural sac, the trachea, and cardiac nerves. The ligature should be applied to the artery as high as possible, in order to allow room between it and the aorta for the formation of a coagulum. The importance of avoiding the thyroid plexus of veins during the primary steps of the operation, and the pleural sac whilst including the vessel in the ligature, should be most carefully borne in mind, since secondary hemorrhage or pleurisy has been the cause of death in all the fatal cases hitherto recorded.

COMMON CAROTID ARTERIES.

The Common Carotid Arteries, although occupying a nearly similar position in the neck, differ in position, and, consequently, in their relations at their origin. The right carotid arises from the arteria innominata, behind the right sterno-clavicular articulation; the left from the highest part of the arch of the aorta. The left carotid is, consequently, longer and placed more deeply in the thorax. It will, therefore, be more convenient to describe first the course and relations of that portion of the left carotid which intervenes between the arch of the aorta and the left sterno-clavicular articulation (see Fig. 802).

The left carotid within the thorax ascends obliquely outwards from the arch of the aorta to the root of the neck. In front it is separated from the first piece of the sternum by the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the left innominate vein, and the remains of the thymus gland; behind, it lies on the trachea, oesophagus, and thoracic duct. Internally, it is in relation with the arteria innominata; externally, with the left pneumogastric nerve, and left subclavian artery.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE LEFT COMMON CAROTID.

THORACIC PORTION.

In Front.

Sternum.
Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles.
Left innominate vein.
Remains of thymus gland.

Internally.
Arteria innominata.

Externally.
Left pneumogastric nerve.
Left subclavian artery.

Behind.
Oesophagus.
Trachea.
Thoracic duct.

Left Common Carotid.
Thoracic Portion.
invested in a tube of serous membrane, continued on to them from the surface of the heart.

Relations. The ascending part of the arch is covered at its commencement by the trunk of the pulmonary artery and the right appendix auricule, and, higher up, is separated from the sternum by the pericardium, some loose areolar tissue, and the remains of the thymus gland; behind, it rests upon the right pulmonary vessels and root of the right lung. On the right side, it is in relation with the superior vena cava and right auricle; on the left side, with the pulmonary artery.

**Plan of the Relations of the Ascending Part of the Arch.**

**In Front.**
- Pulmonary artery.
- Right appendix auricule.
- Pericardium.
- Remains of thymus gland.

**Right side.**
- Superior cava.
- Right auricle.
- Arch of Aorta. Ascending Portion.

**Left side.**
- Pulmonary artery.

**Behind.**
- Right pulmonary vessels.
- Root of right lung.

**Transverse Part of the Arch.**

The second or transverse portion of the arch commences at the upper border of the second chondro-sternal articulation of the right side in front, and passes from right to left, and from before backwards, to the left side of the third dorsal vertebra behind. Its upper border is usually about an inch below the upper margin of the sternum.

Relations. Its anterior surface is covered by the left pleura and lung, and crossed towards the left side by the left pneumogastric and phrenic nerves, and

---

1 As regards the portion of the dorsal spine with which the transverse part of the arch of the aorta is in contact, I am indebted to Mr. Bennett, late Demonstrator of Anatomy at St. George's Hospital, for the following observation:—

In twelve subjects examined successively in the post-mortem room of the Hospital, in whom the vessels were healthy, the following was the result as regards the highest point on the vertebral column touched by the arch of the aorta. In nine it was opposite some part of the third dorsal vertebra: in one opposite the disk between the third and fourth, in one opposite the disk between the second and third, and in one opposite the second dorsal vertebra. Mr. J. Wood gives the following account of the relations and extent of the arch of the aorta, as the result of his observations on thirty-two subjects, fourteen male and eighteen female, in whom an antero-posterior vertical section of the spinal column from top to bottom had been made, with the viscera in situ.

The cardiac opening of the aorta lies in a horizontal plane drawn through the centre of the third bone of the sternum, passing midway between the third and fourth rib-cartilages, and emerging behind about the tip of the sixth dorsal spinous process. The highest point of the aortic arch lies from three-quarters of an inch to an inch from the posterior surface of the second bone of the sternum, close to its right border, and to the inner side of the joint between the second right rib-cartilage and the sternum. It approaches the lower border of the left side of the fourth dorsal vertebra, and first touches the spine usually about the intervertebral substance between the fourth and fifth vertebrae. It then assumes a more vertical direction, and lies against the left side of the body of the fifth dorsal vertebra, which is, in fact, the uppermost vertebra which shows on its body the impression or flattening produced by contact with the aorta (Journ. of Anat. and Phys., vol. iii.).

This anatomist accordingly puts the lower two portions of the arch onto vertebra lower than the account in the text, and he supports his observations by those of Pirogoff.
cardiac branches of the sympathetic. Its posterior surface lies on the trachea, just above its bifurcation, on the great, or deep, cardiac plexus, the esophagus, thoracic duct, and left recurrent laryngeal nerve. Its upper border is in relation with the left innominate vein; and from its upper part are given off the innominate, left common carotid, and left subclavian arteries. Its lower border is in relation with the bifurcation of the pulmonary artery, and the remains of the ductus arteriosus, which is connected with the left division of that vessel; the left recurrent laryngeal nerve winds round it from before backwards, whilst the left bronchus passes below it.

**PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE TRANSVERSE PART OF THE ARCH.**

**Above.**
- Left innominate vein.
- Arteria innominata.
- Left carotid.
- Left subclavian.

**In Front.**
- Left pleura and lung.
- Left pneumogastric nerve.
- Left phrenic nerve.
- Cardiac nerves.

**Arch of Aorta. Transverse Portion.**

**Behind.**
- Trachea.
- Deep cardiac plexus.
- Esophagus.
- Thoracic duct.
- Left recurrent nerve.

**Below.**
- Bifurcation of pulmonary artery.
- Remains of ductus arteriosus.
- Left recurrent nerve.
- Left bronchus.

**DESCENDING PART OF THE ARCH.**

The descending portion of the arch has a straight direction, inclining downwards on the left side of the body of the fourth dorsal vertebra, at the lower border of which it takes the name of thoracic aorta.

**Relations.** Its anterior surface is covered by the pleura and root of the left lung; behind, it lies on the left side of the body of the fourth dorsal vertebra. On its right side are the esophagus and thoracic duct; on its left side it is covered by the pleura.

**PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE DESCENDING PART OF THE ARCH.**

**In Front.**
- Pleura.
- Root of left lung.

**Right side.**
- Esophagus.
- Thoracic duct.

**Arch of Aorta. Descending Portion.**

**Left side.**
- Pleura.

**Behind.**
- Left side of body of fourth dorsal vertebra.

The ascending, transverse, and descending portions of the arch vary in position according to the movements of respiration, being lowered, together with the trachea, bronchi, and pulmonary vessels, during inspiration by the descent of the Diaphragm, and elevated during expiration, when the Diaphragm ascends. These movements are greater in the ascending than the transverse, and in the latter than the descending part.
Peculiarities. The height to which the aorta rises in the chest is usually about an inch below the upper border of the sternum; but it may ascend nearly to the top of that bone. Occasionally, it is found an inch and a half, more rarely three inches below this point.

In direction. Sometimes the aorta arches over the root of the right instead of the left lung, as in birds, and passes down on the right side of the spine. In such cases all the viscera of the thoracic and abdominal cavities are transposed. Less frequently, the aorta, after arching over the root of the right lung, is directed to its usual position on the left side of the spine, this peculiarity not being accompanied by any transposition of the viscera.

In conformation. The aorta occasionally divides, as in some quadrupeds, into an ascending and a descending trunk, the former vertically upward, and subdivides into three branches, to supply the head and upper extremities. Sometimes the aorta subdivides soon after its origin into two branches, which soon reunite. In one of these cases, the oesophagus and trachea were found to pass through the interval left by their division; this is the normal condition of the vessel in the reptilia.

Surgical Anatomy. Of all the vessels of the arterial system, the aorta, and more especially its arch, is most frequently the seat of disease; hence it is important to consider some of the consequences that may ensue from aneurism of this part.

It will be remembered, that the ascending part of the arch is contained in the pericardium, just behind the sternum, being crossed at its commencement by the pulmonary artery and right auricular appendix, and having the root of the right lung behind, the vena cava on the right side, and the pulmonary artery and left auricle on the left side.

Aneurism of the ascending aorta, in the situation of the aortic sinuses, in the great majority of cases, affects the right coronary sinus; this is mainly owing to the fact that the regurgitation of blood upon the sinuses takes place chiefly on the right anterior aspect of the vessel. As the aneurismal sac enlarges, it may compress any or all of the structures in immediate proximity with it, but chiefly projects towards the right anterior side; and, consequently, interferes mainly with those structures that have a corresponding relation with the vessel. In the majority of cases, it bursts into the cavity of the pericardium, the patient suddenly drops down dead, and, upon a post-mortem examination, the pericardial sac is found full of blood: or it may compress the right auricle, or the pulmonary artery, and adjoining part of the right ventricle, and open into one or the other of these parts, or may press upon the superior cava.

Aneurism of the ascending aorta, originating above the sinuses, frequently implicates the right anterior wall of the vessel; this is probably mainly owing to the blood being impelled against this part. The direction of the aneurism is also chiefly towards the right of the median line. If it attains a large size and projects forwards, it may absorb the sternum and the cartilages of the ribs, usually on the right side, and appear as a pulsating tumor on the front of the chest, just below the manubrium; or it may burst into the pericardium, or may compress, or open into the right lung, the trachea, bronchi, or oesophagus.

Regarding the transverse part of the arch, the student is reminded that the vessel lies on the trachea, the oesophagus, and thoracic duct; that the recurrent laryngeal nerve winds around it; and that from its upper part are given off three large trunks, which supply the head, neck, and upper extremities. Now an aneurismal tumor taking origin from the posterior part or right aspect of the vessel, its usual site, may press upon the trachea, impede the breathing, or produce cough, hemoptysis, or stridulous breathing, or it may ultimately burst into that tube, producing fatal hemorrhage. Again, its pressure on the laryngeal nerves may give rise to symptoms which so accurately resemble those of laryngitis, that the operation of tracheotomy has in some instances been mistaken for the supposition that disease existed in the larynx; or it may press upon the thoracic duct, and destroy life by inanition; or it may involve the oesophagus, producing dysphagia; or may burst into the oesophagus, when fatal hemorrhage will occur. Again, the innominate artery, or the left carotid, or subclavian, may be so obstructed by clots, as to produce a weakness, or even a disappearance, of the pulse in one or the other wrist; or the tumor may present itself at or above the manubrium, generally either in the median line, or to the right of the sternum, and may simulate an aneurism of one of the arteries of the neck.

Aneurism affecting the descending part of the arch is usually directed backwards and to the left side, causing absorption of the vertebrae and corresponding ribs; or it may press upon the trachea, left bronchus, oesophagus, and the right and left lungs, generally the latter. When rupture of the sac occurs, it usually takes place into the left pleural cavity; less frequently into the left bronchus, the right pleura, or into the substance of the lungs or tracheas. In this form of aneurism, pain is almost a constant and characteristic symptom, referred to either the back or chest, and usually radiating from the spine around the left side. This symptom depends upon the aneurismal sac compressing the intercostal nerves against the bone.

Branches of the Arch of the Aorta. (Figs. 302, 303.)

The branches given off from the arch of the aorta are five in number: two of small size from the ascending portion, the right and left coronary, and three of large size from the transverse portion, the innominate artery, the left common carotid, and the left subclavian.
**THE CORONARY.**

**Peculiarities. Position of the Branches.** The branches, instead of arising from the highest part of the arch (their usual position), may be moved more to the right, arising from the commencement of the transverse or upper part of the ascending portion; or the distance from one another at their origin may be increased or diminished, the most frequent change in this respect being the approximation of the left carotid towards the innominate artery.

The **Number** of the primary branches may be reduced to two: the left carotid arising from the innominate artery; or (more rarely), the carotid and subclavian arteries of the left side arising from a left innominate artery. But the number may be increased to four, from the right carotid and subclavian arteries arising directly from the aorta, the innominate being absent. In most of these latter cases, the right subclavian has been found to arise from the left end of the arch; in other cases, it was the second or third branch given off instead of the first. Lastly, the number of trunks from the arch may be increased to five or six; in these instances, the external and internal carotids arise separately from the arch, the common carotid being absent on one or both sides.

**Number usual, Arrangement different.** When the aorta arches over to the right side, the three branches have an arrangement the reverse of what is usual, the innominate supplying the left side, and the carotid and subclavian (which arises separately) the right side. In other cases, where the aorta takes its usual course, the two carotids may be joined in a common trunk, and the subclavians arise separately from the arch, the right subclavian generally arising from the left end of the arch.

**Secondary Branches** sometimes arise from the arch; most commonly such a secondary branch is the left vertebral, which usually takes origin between the left carotid and left subclavian, or beyond them. Sometimes, a thyroid branch is derived from the arch, or the right internal mammary, or right vertebral, or, more rarely, both vertebrae.¹

**THE CORONARY ARTERIES.**

The Coronary Arteries supply the heart; they are two in number, right and left, arising near the commencement of the aorta immediately above the free margin of the semilunar valves.

The **Right Coronary Artery,** about the size of a crow’s quill, arises from the aorta immediately above the free margin of the right semilunar valve, between the pulmonary artery and the right appendix auriculae. It passes forwards to the right side, in the groove between the right auricle and ventricle, and curving around the right border of the heart, runs along its posterior surface as far as the posterior interventricular groove, where it divides into two branches, one of which continues onwards in the groove between the left auricle and ventricle, and anastomoses with the left coronary; the other descends along the posterior interventricular furrow, supplying branches to both ventricles and to the septum, and anastomosing at the apex of the heart with the descending branch of the left coronary.

This vessel sends a large branch along the thin margin of the right ventricle to the apex, and numerous small branches to the right auricle and ventricle, and the commencement of the pulmonary artery.

The **Left Coronary,** smaller than the former, arises immediately above the free edge of the left semilunar valve, a little higher than the right; it passes forwards between the pulmonary artery and the left appendix auriculae, and descends obliquely towards the anterior interventricular groove, where it divides into two branches. Of these, one passes transversely outwards in the left auriculo-ventricular groove, and winds around the left border of the heart to its posterior surface, where it anastomoses with the superior branch of the right coronary; the other descends along the anterior interventricular groove to the apex of the heart, where it anastomoses with the descending branch of the right coronary. The left coronary supplies the left auricle and its appendix, both ventricles, and numerous small branches to the pulmonary artery, and commencement of the aorta.

**Peculiarities.** These vessels occasionally arise by a common trunk, or their number may be increased to three; the additional branch being of small size. More rarely, there are two additional branches.

¹ The anomalies of the aorta and its branches are minutely described by Krause in Henle’s “Anatomy” (Brunswick, 1868), vol. iii. p. 203 et seq.
ARTERIES.

Arteria Innominata.

The Innominate Artery is the largest branch given off from the arch of the aorta. It arises from the commencement of the transverse portion in front of the left carotid, and, ascending obliquely to the upper border of the right sterno-clavicular articulation, divides into the right common carotid and right subclavian arteries. This vessel varies from an inch and a half to two inches in length.

Relations. In front, it is separated from the first bone of the sternum by the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the remains of the thymus gland, and the left innominate and right inferior thyroid veins which cross its root. Behind, it lies upon the trachea, which it crosses obliquely. On the right side, it is the right vena innominata, right pneumogastric nerve, and the pleura; and on the left side, the remains of the thymus gland, and origin of the left carotid artery.

Plan of the Relations of the Innominate Artery.

In Front.

Sternum.
Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles.
Remains of thymus gland.
Left innominate and right inferior thyroid veins.
Inferior cervical cardiac branch from right pneumogastric nerve.

Right side.

Right vena innominata.
Right pneumogastric nerve.
Pleura.

Innominate Artery.

Left side.

Remains of thymus.
Left Carotid.

Behind.

Trachea.

Peculiarities in point of division. When the bifurcation of the innominate artery varies from the point above mentioned, it sometimes ascends a considerable distance above the sternal end of the clavicle; less frequently it divides below it. In the former class of cases, its length may exceed two inches; and, in the latter, be reduced to an inch or less. These are points of considerable interest for the surgeon to remember in connection with the operation of tying this vessel.

Branches. The arteria innominata occasionally supplies a thyroid branch (middle thyroid artery), which ascends along the front of the trachea to the thyroid gland; and sometimes a thymic or bronchial branch. The left carotid is frequently joined with the innominate artery at its origin. Sometimes, there is no innominate artery, the right subclavian arising directly from the arch of the aorta.

Position. When the aorta arches over to the right side, the innominate is directed to the left side of the neck instead of the right.

Collateral Circulation. Allan Burns demonstrated, on the dead subject, the possibility of the establishment of the collateral circulation after ligation of the innominate artery, by tying and dividing that artery, after which, he says: "Even coarse injection impelled into the aorta, passed freely by the anastomosing branches into the arteries of the right arm, filling them and all the vessels of the head completely." (Surgical Anatomy of the Head and Neck, p. 62.) The branches by which this circulation would be carried on are very numerous; thus, all the communications across the middle line between the branches of the carotid arteries of opposite sides would be available for the supply of blood to the right side of the head and neck; while the anastomosis between the superior intercostal of the subclavian and the first aortic intercostal (see infra on the collateral circulation after obliteration of the thoracic aorta), would bring the blood, by a free and direct course, into the right subclavian: the numerous connections, also, between the lower intercostal arteries and the branches of the axillary and internal mammary arteries would, doubtless, assist in the supply of blood to the right arm, while the epigastric, from the external iliac, would, by means of its anastomosis with the internal mammary, compensate for any deficiency in the vascularity of the wall of the chest.

Surgical Anatomy. Although the operation of tying the innominate artery has been performed by several surgeons, for aneurism of the right subclavian extending inwards as far as the Scalenus, in only one instance has it been attended with success.1 Mott's patient, however, on

1 The operation was performed by Dr. Smyth of New Orleans. See the New Sydenham Society's "Biennial Retrospect," for 1865–6, p. 346.
COMMON CAROTID. 471

whom the operation was first performed, lived nearly four weeks, and Graefe's, more than two months. The main obstacles to the operation are, as the student will perceive from his dissection of this vessel, the deep situation of the artery behind and beneath the sternum, and the number of important structures which surround it in every part.

In order to apply a ligature to this vessel, the patient is to be placed upon his back, with the shoulders raised, and the head bent a little backwards, so as to draw out the artery from behind the sternum into the neck. An incision two inches long is then made along the anterior border of the Stermeno-mastoid muscle, terminating at the sternal end of the clavicle. From this point, a second incision is carried about the same length along the upper border of the clavicle. The skin is then dissected back, and the Platyma divided on a director: the sternal end of the Sternum-mastoid is now brought into view, and a director being passed beneath it, and close to its under surface, so as to avoid any small vessels, the muscle is to be divided transversely throughout the greater part of its attachment. By pressing aside any loose cellular tissue or vessels that may now appear, the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles will be exposed, and must be divided, a director being previously passed beneath them. The inferior thyroid veins may come into view, and must be carefully drawn either upwards or downwards, by means of a blunt hook. On no account should these vessels be divided, as it would add much to the difficulty of the operation, and endanger its ultimate success. After tearing through a strong fibre-cellular lamina, the right carotid is brought into view, and being traced downwards, the arteria vena innominata is arrived at. The left vena innominata should now be depressed, the right vena innominata, the internal jugular vein, and pneumogastric nerve drawn to the right side; and a curved aneurism needle may then be passed around the vessel, close to its surface, and in a direction from below upwards and inwards; care being taken to avoid the right pleural sac, the trachea, and cardiac nerves. The ligature should be applied to the artery as high as possible, in order to allow room between it and the aorta for the formation of a coagulum. The importance of avoiding the thyroid plexus of veins during the primary steps of the operation, and the pleural sac whilst including the vessel in the ligature, should be most carefully borne in mind, since secondary hemorrhage or pleurisy has been the cause of death in all the fatal cases hitherto recorded.

COMMON CAROTID ARTERIES.

The Common Carotid Arteries, although occupying a nearly similar position in the neck, differ in position, and, consequently, in their relations at their origin. The right carotid arises from the arteria innominata, behind the right sternoclavicular articulation; the left from the highest part of the arch of the aorta. The left carotid is, consequently, longer and placed more deeply in the thorax. It will, therefore, be more convenient to describe first the course and relations of that portion of the left carotid which intervenes between the arch of the aorta and the left sternoclavicular articulation (see Fig. 302).

The left carotid within the thorax ascends obliquely outwards from the arch of the aorta to the root of the neck. In front it is separated from the first piece of the sternum by the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the left innominate vein, and the remains of the thymus gland; behind, it lies on the trachea, oesophagus, and thoracic duct. Internally, it is in relation with the arteria innominata; externally, with the left pneumogastric nerve, and left subclavian artery.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE LEFT COMMON CAROTID.

Thoracic Portion.

In Front.
- Sternum.
- Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles.
- Left innominate vein.
- Remains of thymus gland.

Internally.
- Arteria innominata.
- Left Common Carotid.
- Thoracic Portion.

Externally.
- Left pneumogastric nerve.
- Left subclavian artery.

Behind.
- Oesophagus.
- Trachea.
- Thoracic duct.
In the neck, the two common carotids resemble each other so closely, that one description will apply to both. Each vessel passes obliquely upwards, from behind the sterno-clavicular articulation, to a level with the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, where it divides into the external and internal carotid; these names being derived from the distribution of the arteries to the external parts of the head and face, and to the internal parts of the cranium respectively. The course of the common carotid is indicated by a line drawn from the sternal end of the clavicle below, to a point midway between the angle of the jaw and the mastoid process above.

Fig. 304.—Surgical Anatomy of the Arteries of the Neck. Right Side.

At the lower part of the neck the two common carotid arteries are separated from each other by a very small interval, which contains the trachea; but at the upper part, the thyroid body, the larynx and pharynx project forwards between the two vessels, and give the appearance of their being placed further
back in that situation. The common carotid artery is contained in a sheath derived from the deep cervical fascia, which also incloses the internal jugular vein and pneumogastric nerve, the vein lying on the outer side of the artery, and the nerve between the artery and vein, on a plane posterior to both. On opening the sheath, these three structures are seen to be separated from one another, each being inclosed in a separate fibrous investment.

Relations. At the lower part of the neck the common carotid artery is very deeply seated, being covered by the superficial fascia, Platysma, and deep fascia, the Sterno-mastoid, Sterno-hyoid, and Sterno-thyroid muscles, and by the Omo-hyoid opposite the cricoid cartilage; but in the upper part of its course, near its termination, it is more superficial, being covered merely by the integument, the superficial fascia, Platysma, deep fascia, and inner margin of the Sterno-mastoid, and is contained in a triangular space, bounded behind by the Sterno-mastoid, above by the posterior belly of the Digastric, and below by the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid. This part of the artery is crossed obliquely from within outwards by the Sterno-mastoid artery; it is crossed also by the facial, lingual, and superior thyroid veins, which terminate in the internal jugular, and descending on its sheath in front, is seen the descendens noni nerve, this filament being joined by one or two branches from the cervical nerves, which cross the vessel from without inwards. Sometimes the descendens noni is contained within the sheath. The middle thyroid vein crosses the artery about its middle, and the anterior jugular vein below. Behind, the artery lies in front of the cervical portion of the spine, resting first on the Longus colli muscle, then on the Rectus capitis anticus major, from which it is separated by the sympathetic nerve. The recurrent laryngeal nerve and inferior thyroid artery cross behind the vessel at its lower part. Internally, it is in relation with the trachea and thyroid gland, the inferior thyroid artery and recurrent laryngeal nerve being interposed: higher up, with the larynx and pharynx. On its outer side are placed the internal jugular vein and pneumogastric nerve.

At the lower part of the neck, the internal jugular vein on the right side diverges from the artery, but on the left side it approaches it, and often crosses its lower part. This is an important fact to bear in mind during the performance of any operation on the lower part of the left common carotid artery.

**Plan of the Relations of the Common Carotid Artery.**

**In Front.**
- Integument and fascia.
- Platysma.
- Sterno-mastoid.
- Sterno-hyoid.
- Sterno-thyroid.
- Omo-hyoid.
- Descendens noni nerve.
- Sterno-mastoid artery.
- Superior thyroid, lingual, and facial veins.
- Anterior jugular vein.

**Externally.**
- Internal jugular vein.
- Pneumogastric nerve.

**Common Carotid.**

**Internally.**
- Trachea.
- Thyroid gland.
- Recurrent laryngeal nerve.
- Inferior thyroid artery.
- Larynx.
- Pharynx.

**Behind.**
- Longus colli.
- Rectus capitis anticus major.
- Sympathetic nerve.
- Inferior thyroid artery.
- Recurrent laryngeal nerve.

Peculiarities as to Origin. The right common carotid may arise above or below its usual point, the upper border of the sterno-clavicular articulation. This variation occurs in one out of about eight cases and a half, and the origin is more frequently above than below the usual point; or the artery may arise as a separate branch from the aorta of the aorta, or in conjunction with the left carotid. The left common carotid varies more frequently in its origin than the right. In the majority of abnormal cases it arises with the innominate artery, or if the innominate artery is absent, the two carotids arise usually by a single trunk. The left carotid has a
tendency towards the right side of the arch of the aorta, being occasionally the first branch given off from the transverse portion. It rarely joins with the left subclavian, except in cases of transposition of the arch.

**Peculiarities as to Point of Division.** The most important peculiarities of this vessel, in a surgical point of view, relate to its place of division in the neck. In the majority of abnormal cases, this occurs higher than usual, the artery dividing into two branches opposite the hyoid bone, or even higher; more rarely, it occurs below its usual place opposite the middle of the larynx, or the lower border of the cricoid cartilage; and one case is related by Morgagni, where the common carotid, only an inch and a half in length, divided at the root of the neck. Very rarely, the common carotid ascends in the neck without any subdivision, the internal carotid being wanting; and in two cases, the common carotid has been found to be absent, the external and internal carotids arising directly from the arch of the aorta. This peculiarity existed on both sides in one subject, on one side in the other.

**Occasional Branches.** The common carotid usually gives off no branches; but it occasionally gives origin to the superior thyroid, or a laryngeal branch, the inferior thyroid, or, more rarely, the vertebral artery.

**Surgical Anatomy.** The operation of tying the common carotid artery may be necessary in a wound of that vessel or its branches, in an aneurism, or in a case of pulsating tumor of the orbit or skull. If the wound involves the trunk of the common carotid, it will be necessary to tie the artery above and below the wounded part. But in cases of aneurism, or where one of the branches of the common carotid is wounded in an inaccessible situation, it may be judged necessary to tie the trunk. In such cases, the whole of the artery is accessible, and any part may be tied, except close to either end, where the case is such as to allow of a choice being made; the lower part of the carotid should never be selected as the spot upon which to place a ligature, for not only is the artery in this situation placed very deeply in the neck, but it is covered by three layers of muscles, and on the left side the jugular vein, in the great majority of cases, passes obliquely in front of it. Neither should the upper end be selected, for here the superior thyroid, lingual, and facial veins would give rise to very considerable difficulty in the application of a ligature. The point most favorable for the operation is opposite the lower part of the larynx, and the liga-
ture may be applied on the vessel, either above or below the point where it is crossed by the Omohyoid muscle. In the former situation the artery is most accessible, and it may be tied there in cases of wounds, or aneurism of any of the large branches of the carotid; whilst in cases of aneurism of the upper part of the carotid, that part of the vessel may be selected which is below the Omohyoid. It occasionally happens that the carotid artery bifurcates below its usual position: if the artery be exposed at its point of bifurcation, both divisions of the vessel should be tied near their origin, in preference to tying the trunk of the artery near its termination; and if, in consequence of the entire absence of the common carotid, or from its early division, two arteries, the external and internal carotids, are met with, the ligature should be placed on that vessel which is found on compression to be connected with the disease.

In this operation, the direction of the vessel and the inner margin of the Sterno-mastoid are the chief guides to its performance.

**To tie the Common Carotid above the Omohyoid.** The patient should be placed on his back with the head thrown back: an incision is to be made, three inches long, in the direction of the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, from a little below the angle of the jaw to a level with the cricoid cartilage: after dividing the integument, superficial fascia, and Platysma, the deep fascia must be cut through on the direction, so as to avoid wounding numerous small veins that are usually found beneath. The head may now be brought forwards so as to relax the parts somewhat, and the margins of the wound held asunder by copper spatule. The descendens none nerve is now exposed, and must be avoided, and the sheath of the vessel having been raised by forceps, is to be opened over the artery to a small extent at its inner side. The internal jugular vein may now present itself alternately distended and relaxed; this should be compressed both above and below, and drawn outwards, in order to facilitate the operation. The aneurism needle is now passed from the outside, care being taken to keep the needle in close contact with the artery, and thus avoid the risk of injuring the jugular vein, or including the vagus nerve. Before the ligature is tied, it should be ascertained that nothing but the artery is included in it.

**To tie the Common Carotid, below the Omohyoid.** The patient should be placed in the same position as above mentioned. An incision about three inches in length is to be made, parallel with the inner edge of the Sterno-mastoid, commencing on a level with the cricoid cartilage. The inner border of the Sterno-mastoid having been exposed, the Sterno-mastoid artery and a large vein, the middle thyroid, will be seen, and must be carefully avoided; the Sterno-mastoid is to be drawn downwards, and the Sterno-hyoid and thyroid muscles inwards. The deep fascia must now be divided, and below the Omohyoid muscle, and the sheath having been exposed, must be opened, care being taken to avoid the descendens none, which here runs on the inner or tracheal side. The jugular vein and vagus nerve being then pressed to the outer side, the needle must be passed round the artery from without inwards, great care being taken to avoid the inferior thyroid artery, the recurrent laryngeal, and sympathetic nerves which lie behind it.

**Collateral Circulation.** After ligation of the common carotid, the collateral circulation can be perfectly established, by the free communication which exists between the carotid arteries of
opposite sides, both without and within the cranium—and by enlargement of the branches of the subclavian artery on the side corresponding to that on which the vessel has been tied, the chief communication outside the skull taking place between the superior and inferior thyroid arteries, and the profunda cervicis, and anterior princeps cervicis of the occipital; the vertebral taking the place of the internal carotid within the cranium.

Sir A. Cooper had an opportunity of dissecting, thirteen years after the operation, the case in which he first successfully tied the common carotid (the second case in which he performed the operation). Guy's Hospital Reports, i. 56. The injection, however, does not seem to have been a successful one. It showed merely that the arteries at the base of the brain (circle of Willis) were much enlarged on the side of the tied artery, and that the anastomosis between the branches of the external carotid on the affected side and those of the same artery on the sound side was free, so that the external carotid was pervious throughout.

EXTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY.

The External Carotid Artery (Fig. 304) arises opposite the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, and taking a slightly curved course, ascends upwards and forwards, and then inclines backwards, to the space between the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw, and the external meatus, where it divides into the temporal and internal maxillary arteries. It rapidly diminishes in size in its course up the neck, owing to the number and large size of the branches given off from it. In the child, it is somewhat smaller than the internal carotid; but in the adult, the two vessels are of nearly equal size. At its commencement, this artery is more superficial, and placed nearer the middle line than the internal carotid, and is contained in the triangular space bounded by the Sterno-mastoid behind, the Omo-hyoid below, and the posterior belly of the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid above; it is covered by the skin, Platysma, deep fascia, and anterior margin of the Sterno-mastoid, crossed by the hypoglossal nerve, and by the lingual and facial veins; it is afterwards crossed by the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles, and higher up passes deeply into the substance of the parotid gland, where it lies beneath the facial nerve and the junction of the temporal and internal maxillary veins.

Internally is the hyoid bone, the wall of the pharynx, and the ramus of the jaw, from which it is separated by a portion of the parotid gland.

Behind it, near its origin, is the superior laryngeal nerve; and higher up, it is separated from the internal carotid by the Stylo-glossus and Stylo-pharyngeus muscles, the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, and part of the parotid gland.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE EXTERNAL CAROTID.

In Front.
- Integument, superficial fascia.
- Platysma and deep fascia.
- Hypoglossal nerve.
- Lingual and facial veins.
- Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles.
- Parotid gland with facial nerve and temporomaxillary vein in its substance.

Behind.
- Superior laryngeal nerve.
- Stylo-glossus.
- Stylo-pharyngeus.
- Glosso-pharyngeal nerve.
- Parotid gland.

Internally.
- Hyoid bone.
- Pharynx.
- Parotid gland.
- Ramus of jaw.

Surgical Anatomy. The application of a ligature to the external carotid may be required in cases of wounds of this vessel, or of its branches when these cannot be tied, and in some cases of pulsating tumor of the scalp or face; the operation, however, is very rarely performed, ligature of the common carotid being preferable, on account of the number of branches given off from the external. To tie this vessel near its origin, below the point where it is crossed by the Digastric, an incision about three inches in length should be made along the margin of the Sterno-mastoid, from the angle of the jaw to the crico-oral cartilage, as in the operation for tying the common carotid. To tie the vessel above the Digastric, between it and the parotid gland, an incision should be made, from the lobe of the ear to the great cornu of the os hyoides, dividing successively
the skin, Platysma, and fascia. By separating the posterior belly of the Digastric and Stylohyoid muscles which are seen at the lower part of the wound, from the parotid gland, the vessel will be exposed, and a ligature may be applied to it. The circulation is at once re-established by the free communication between most of the large branches of the artery (facial, lingual, superior thyroid, occipital) and the corresponding arteries of the opposite side, and by the free anastomosis of the facial with branches from the internal carotid, of the occipital with branches of the subclavian, etc.

**Branches.** The external carotid artery gives off eight branches, which, for convenience of description, may be divided into four sets. (See Fig. 305, Plan of the Branches.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anterior</th>
<th>Posterior</th>
<th>Ascending</th>
<th>Terminal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superior Thyroid</td>
<td>Occipital</td>
<td>Ascending Pharyngeal</td>
<td>Temporal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingual</td>
<td>Posterior Auricular</td>
<td></td>
<td>Internal Maxillary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The student is here reminded that many variations are met with in the number, origin, and course of these branches in different subjects; but the above arrangement is that which is found in the great majority of cases.

The Superior Thyroid Artery (Figs. 304 and 309) is the first branch given off from the external carotid, being derived from that vessel just below the great cornu of the hyoid bone. At its commencement, it is quite superficial, being covered by the integument, fascia, and Platysma, and is contained in the triangular space bounded by the Sterno-mastoid, Digastric, and Omo-hyoid muscles. After running upwards and forwards for a short distance, it curves downwards and forwards, in an arched and tortuous manner, to the upper part of the thyroid gland, passing beneath the Omo-hyoid, Sterno-hyoid, and Sterno-thyroid muscles; and distributes numerous branches to the anterior surface of the gland, anastomosing with its fellow of the opposite side, and with the inferior thyroid arteries. Besides the arteries distributed to the muscles and the substance of the gland, the branches of the superior thyroid are the following:

Hyoid.
Superficial descending branch (Sterno-mastoid).
Superior Laryngeal.
Cricothyroid.

The hyoid is a small branch which runs along the lower border of the os hyoideum, beneath the thyro-hyoid muscle; after supplying the muscles connected to that bone, it forms an arch, by anastomosing with the vessel of the opposite side.

The superficial descending branch runs downwards and outwards across the sheath of the common carotid artery, and supplies the Sterno-mastoid and neighboring muscles and integument. It is of importance that the situation of this vessel be remembered, in the operation for tying the common carotid artery. There is often a distinct branch from the external carotid distributed to the Sterno-mastoid muscle.

The superior laryngeal, larger than either of the preceding, accompanies the superior laryngeal nerve, beneath the Thyro-hyoid muscle; it pierces the thyro-hyoid membrane, and supplies the muscles, mucous membrane, and glands of the larynx and epiglottis, anastomosing with the branch from the opposite side.

The crico-thyroid (inferior laryngeal) is a small branch which runs transversely across the crico-thyroid membrane, communicating with the artery of the opposite side. The position of this vessel should be remembered, as it may prove the source of troublesome hemorrhage during the operation of laryngotomy.

**Surgical Anatomy.** The superior thyroid, or some of its branches, is often divided in cases of cut throat, giving rise to considerable hemorrhage. In such cases, the artery should be secured, the wound being enlarged for that purpose, if necessary. The operation may be easily performed, the position of the artery being very superficial, and the only structures of importance covering it being a few small veins. The operation of tying the superior thyroid artery, in bronchocele, has been performed in numerous instances with partial or temporary success. When, however, the anastomosis between this vessel and the artery of the opposite side, and the inferior thyroid, is completely re-established, the tumor usually regains its former size.
LINGUAL.

The Lingual Artery (Fig. 309) arises from the external carotid between the superior thyroid and facial; it runs obliquely upwards and inwards to the great cornu of the hyoid bone, then passes horizontally forwards parallel with the great cornu, and, ascending perpendicularly to the under surface of the tongue, turns forwards on its under surface as far as the tip of that organ, under the name of the ranine artery.

Relations. Its first, or oblique portion, is superficial, being contained in the triangular space already described, resting upon the middle constrictor of the pharynx, and covered by the Platysma, and fascia of the neck. Its second, or horizontal portion, also lies upon the Middle constrictor, being covered at first by the tendon of the Digastric and the Stylo-hyoid muscle, and afterwards by the Hyo-glossus, the latter muscle separating it from the hypoglossal nerve. Its third, or ascending portion, lies between the Hyo-glossus and Genio-hyo-glossus muscles. The fourth, or terminal part, under the name of the ranine, runs along the under surface of the tongue to its tip: it is very superficial, being covered only by the mucous membrane, and rests on the Lingualis on the outer side of the Genio-hyo-glossus. The hypoglossal nerve lies nearly parallel with the lingual artery, separated from it, in the second part of its course, by the Hyo-glossus muscle.

The branches of the lingual artery are, the

- Hyoid.
- Sublingual.
- Dorsalis Linguae.
- Ranine.

The hyoid branch runs along the upper border of the hyoid bone, supplying the muscles attached to it and anastomosing with its fellow of the opposite side.

The dorsalis linguae (Fig. 309) arises from the lingual artery beneath the Hyo-glossus muscle (which, in the figure, has been partly cut away, to show the vessel); ascending to the dorsum of the tongue, it supplies the mucous membrane, the tonsil, soft palate, and epiglottis; anastomosing with its fellow from the opposite side.

The sublingual, which may be described as a branch of bifurcation of the lingual artery, arises at the anterior margin of the Hyo-glossus muscle, and, running forwards and outwards beneath the Mylo-hyoid to the sublingual gland, supplies its substance, giving branches to the Mylo-hyoid and neighboring muscles, the mucous membrane of the mouth and gums.

The ranine may be regarded as the other branch of bifurcation, or, as is more usual, as the continuation of the lingual artery; it runs along the under surface of the tongue, resting on the Lingualis, and covered by the mucous membrane of the mouth; it lies on the outer side of the Genio-hyo-glossus, and is covered by the Hyo-glossus and Stylo-glossus, accompanied by the gustatory nerve. On arriving at the tip of the tongue, it anastomoses with the artery of the opposite side. These vessels in the mouth are placed one on each side of the frenum.

Surgical Anatomy. The lingual artery may be divided near its origin in cases of cut throat, a complication that not unfrequently happens in this class of wounds, or severe hemorrhage which cannot be restrained by ordinary means, may ensue from a wound, or deep ulcer, of the tongue. In the former case, the primary wound may be enlarged if necessary, and the bleeding vessel secured. In the latter case, it has been suggested that the lingual artery should be tied near its origin. Ligation of the lingual artery is also occasionally practised, as a palliative measure, in cases of tumor of the tongue, in order to check the progress of the disease. The operation is a difficult one, on account of the depth of the artery, the number of important parts by which it is surrounded, the loose and yielding nature of the parts upon which it is supported, and its occasional irregularity of origin. An incision is to be made, about two and a half inches in length, running obliquely downwards and backwards, and having its centre opposite the point of the great cornu of the hyoid bone, which is the guide to the artery. The parts being gradually dissected, the hypoglossal nerve will come first into view, and then the artery must be carefully sought for among the loose tissue at the bottom of the wound, care being taken not to open the pharynx. Large veins, the internal jugular or some of its branches, may be met with, and prove a source of embarrassment.

1 That is to say, it is deeper than the muscle in dissecting from the surface. In the natural position of the body, the artery lies above the muscle.
Troublesome hemorrhage may occur in the division of the frenum in children, if the canine artery, which lies on each side of it, is cut through. The student should remember that the operation is always to be performed with a pair of blunt-pointed scissors, and the mucous membrane only is to be divided by a very superficial cut, which cannot endanger any vessel. The scissors, also, should be directed away from the tongue. Any further liberation of the tongue, which may be necessary, can be effected by tearing.

The Facial Artery (Fig. 306) arises a little above the lingual, and ascends obliquely forwards and upwards, beneath the body of the lower jaw, to the submaxillary gland, in which it lies imbedded in a groove on its posterior and upper border; this may be called the cervical part of the artery. It then curves upwards over the body of the jaw at the anterior inferior angle of the Masseter muscle, ascends forwards and upwards across the cheek to the angle of the mouth, passes up along the side of the nose, and terminates at the inner canthus of the eye, under the name of the angular artery. This vessel, both in the neck, and on the face, is remarkably tortuous; in the former situation, to accommodate itself to the movement of the pharynx in deglutition; and in the latter, to the movements of the jaw, and the lips and cheeks.

Relations. In the neck, its origin is superficial, being covered by the integument, Platysma, and fascia; it then passes beneath the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles, and the submaxillary gland. On the face, where it passes over the body

1 The muscular tissue of the lips must be supposed to have been cut away, in order to show the course of the coronary arteries.
of the lower jaw, it is comparatively superficial, lying immediately beneath the Platysma. In this situation, its pulsation may be distinctly felt and compression of the vessel effectually made against the bone. In its course over the face, it is covered by the integument, the fat of the cheek, and, near the angle of the mouth, by the Platysma and Zygomatic muscles. It rests on the Buccinator, the Levator anguli oris, and the Levator labii superioris. It is accompanied by the facial vein throughout its entire course; the vein is not tortuous like the artery, and, on the face, is separated from that vessel by a considerable interval, lying to its outer side. The branches of the facial nerve cross the artery, and the infra-orbital nerve lies beneath it.

The branches of this vessel may be divided into two sets, those given off below the jaw (cervical), and those on the face (facial):

**Cervical Branches.**

- Inferior or Ascending Palatine.
- Tonsillar.
- Submaxillary.
- Submental.

**Facial Branches.**

- Muscular.
- Inferior Labial.
- Inferior Coronary.
- Superior Coronary.
- Lateralis Nasi.
- Angular.

The *inferior or ascending palatine* (Fig. 309) passes up between the Styloglossus and Stylo-pharyngeus to the outer side of the pharynx. After supplying these muscles, the tonsil, and Eustachian tube, it divides, near the Levator palati, into two branches; one follows the course of the Tensor palati, and supplies the soft palate and the palatine glands; the other passes to the tonsil, which it supplies, anastomosing with the tonsillar artery. These vessels inosculate with the posterior palatine branch of the internal maxillary artery.

The *tonsillar branch* (Fig. 309) passes up along the side of the pharynx, and, perforating the Superior constrictor, ramifies in the substance of the tonsil and root of the tongue.

The *submaxillary* consist of three or four large branches, which supply the submaxillary gland, some being prolonged to the neighboring muscles, lymphatic glands, and integument.

The *submental*, the largest of the cervical branches, is given off from the facial artery, just as that vessel quits the submaxillary gland; it runs forwards upon the Mylo-hyoid muscle, just below the body of the jaw, and beneath the Digastric; after supplying the muscles attached to the jaw, and anastomosing with the sub-lingual artery, it arrives at the symphysis of the chin, where it divides into a superficial and deep branch; the former turns round the chin, and, passing between the integument and Depressor labii inferioris, supplies both, and anastomoses with the inferior labial. The deep branch passes beneath the latter muscle and the bone, supplies the lip, and anastomoses with the inferior labial and mental arteries.

The *muscular* branches are distributed to the internal Pterygoid, Masseter, and Buccinator.

The *inferior labial* passes beneath the Depressor anguli oris, to supply the muscles and integument of the lower lip, anastomosing with the inferior coronary, and submental branches of the facial, and with the mental branch of the inferior dental artery.

The *inferior coronary* is derived from the facial artery, near the angle of the mouth; it passes upwards and inwards beneath the Depressor anguli oris, and, penetrating the Orbicularis muscle, runs in a tortuous course along the edge of the lower lip between this muscle and the mucous membrane, inosculating with the artery of the opposite side. This artery supplies the labial glands, the mucous membrane, and muscles of the lower lip; and anastomoses with the inferior labial, and mental branch of the inferior dental artery.
The superior coronary is larger, and more tortuous in its course than the preceding. It follows the same course along the edge of the upper lip, lying between the mucous membrane and the Orbicularis, and anastomoses with the artery of the opposite side. It supplies the textures of the upper lip, and gives off in its course two or three vessels which ascend to the nose. One, named the artery of the septum, ramifies on the septum of the nares as far as the point of the nose; another supplies the ala of the nose.

The lateralis nasi is derived from the facial, as that vessel is ascending along the side of the nose; it supplies the ala and dorsum of the nose, anastomosing with its fellow, the nasal branch of the ophthalmic, the artery of the septum, and the infra-orbital.

The angular artery is the termination of the trunk of the facial; it ascends to the inner angle of the orbit, accompanied by a large vein, the angular; it distributes some branches on the cheek which anastomose with the infra-orbital, and, after supplying the lachrymal sac, and Orbicularis muscle, terminates by anastomosing with the nasal branch of the ophthalmic artery.

The anastomoses of the facial artery are very numerous, not only with the vessel of the opposite side, but with other vessels from different sources, viz., with the sublingual branch of the lingual, with the mental branch of the inferior dental as it emerges from the mental foramen, with the ascending pharyngeal and posterior palatine, and with the ophthalmic, a branch of the internal carotid; it also inosculates with the transverse facial, and with the infra-orbital.

Peculiarities. The facial artery not unfrequently arises by a common trunk with the lingual. This vessel also is subject to some variations in its size, and in the extent to which it supplies the face. It occasionally terminates as the submental, and not unfrequently supplies the face only as high as the angle of the mouth or nose. The deficiency is then supplied by enlargement of one of the neighboring arteries.

Surgical Anatomy. The passage of the facial artery over the body of the jaw would appear to afford a favorable position for the application of pressure in cases of hemorrhage from the lips, the result either of an accidental wound, or from an operation; but its application is useless, except for a very short time, on account of the free communication of this vessel with its fellow, and with numerous branches from different sources. In a wound involving the lip, it is better to seize the part between the fingers, and evert it, when the bleeding vessel may be at once secured with a tenaculum. In order to prevent hemorrhage in cases of excision, or in the removal of diseased growths from the part, the lip should be compressed on each side between the finger and thumb, whilst the surgeon excises the diseased part. In order to stop hemorrhage where the lip has been divided in an operation, it is necessary, in uniting the edges of the wound, to pass the sutures through the cut edges, almost as deep as its mucous surface; by these means, not only are the cut surfaces more neatly and securely adapted to each other, but the possibility of hemorrhage is prevented by including in the suture the divided artery. If the suture is, on the contrary, passed through merely the cutaneous portion of the wound, hemorrhage occurs into the cavity of the mouth. The student should, lastly, observe the relation of the angular artery to the lachrymal sac, and it will be seen that, as the vessel passes up along the inner margin of the orbit, it ascends on its nasal side. In operating for fistula lachrymalis, the sac should always be opened on its outer side, in order that this vessel may be avoided.

The Occipital Artery (Fig. 308) arises from the posterior part of the external carotid, opposite the facial, near the lower margin of the Digastric muscle. At its origin, it is covered by the posterior belly of the Digastric and Stylohyoid muscles, and part of the parotid gland, the hypoglossal nerve winding around it from behind forwards; higher up, it passes across the internal carotid artery, the internal jugular vein, and the pneumogastric and spinal accessory nerves; it then ascends to the interval between the transverse process of the atlas, and the mastoid process of the temporal bone, and passes horizontally backwards, grooving the surface of the latter bone, being covered by the Sternomastoid, Splenius, Digastric, and Trapezo-mastoid muscles, and resting upon the Complexus, Superior oblique, and Rectus capitis posticus major muscles: it then ascends vertically upwards, piercing the cranial attachment of the Trapezius, and passes in a tortuous course over the occiput, as high as the vertex, where it divides into numerous branches.
The branches given off from this vessel are,

**Muscular.**

**Auricular.**

**Meningeal.**

**Arteria Princeps Cervicis.**

The *muscular branches* supply the Digastric, Stylo-hyoid, Stermo-mastoid, Splenius, and Trachelo-mastoid muscles. The branch distributed to the Stermo-mastoid is of large size.

The *auricular branch* supplies the back part of the concha.

The *meningeal branch* ascends with the internal jugular vein, and enters the skull through the foramen lacerum posterius, to supply the dura mater in the posterior fossa.

The *arteria princeps cervicis* (Fig. 309) is a large branch which descends along the back part of the neck, and divides into a superficial and deep branch. The former runs beneath the Splenius, giving off branches which perforate that muscle to supply the Trapezius, anastomosing with the superficial cervical artery; the latter passes beneath the Complexus, between it and the Semi spinalis colli, and anastomoses with the vertebral and deep cervical branch of the superior intercostal. The anastomosis between these vessels serves mainly to establish the collateral circulation after ligature of the carotid or subclavian artery.

The cranial branches of the occipital artery are distributed upon the occiput; they are very tortuous, and lie between the integument and Occipito-frontalis, anastomosing with the artery of the opposite side, the posterior auricular, and temporal arteries. They supply the back part of the Occipito-frontalis muscle, the integument and pericranium, and one or two branches occasionally pass through the parietal or mastoid foramina, to supply the dura mater.

The *Posterior Auricular Artery* (Fig. 306) is a small vessel which arises from the external carotid, above the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles, opposite the apex of the styloid process. It ascends, under cover of the parotid gland, to the groove between the cartilage of the ear and the mastoid process, immediately above which it divides into two branches, an anterior, passing forwards to anastomose with the posterior division of the temporal; and a posterior, communicating with the occipital. Just before arriving at the mastoid process, this artery is crossed by the portio dura, and has beneath it the spinal accessory nerve.

Besides several small branches to the Digastric, Stylo-hyoid, and Stermo-mastoid muscles, and to the parotid gland, this vessel gives off two branches:

**Stylo-mastoid.**

**Auricular.**

The *stylo-mastoid branch* enters the stylo-mastoid foramen, and supplies the tympanum, mastoid cells, and semicircular canals. In the young subject a branch from this vessel forms, with the tympanic branch from the internal maxillary, a vascular circle, which surrounds the auditory meatus, and from which delicate vessels ramify on the membrana tympani.

The *auricular branch* is distributed to the back part of the cartilage of the ear, upon which it ramifies minutely, some branches curving round the margin of the fibro-cartilage, others perforating it, to supply its anterior surface.

The *Ascending Pharyngeal Artery* (Fig. 309), the smallest branch of the external carotid, is a long slender vessel, deeply seated in the neck, beneath the other branches of the external carotid and the Stylo-pharyngeus muscle. It arises from the back part of the external carotid, near the commencement of that vessel, and ascends vertically between the internal carotid and the side of the pharynx, to the under surface of the base of the skull, lying on the Rectus capitis antiquus major. Its branches may be subdivided into three sets: 1. Those directed outwards to supply muscles and nerves. 2. Those directed inwards to the pharynx. 3. Meningeal branches.

The *external branches* are numerous small vessels, which supply the Recti capitis antici muscles, the sympathetic, hypoglossal, and pneumogastric nerves, and
the lymphatic glands of the neck, anastomosing with the ascending cervical artery.

The pharyngeal branches are three or four in number. Two of these descend to supply the middle and inferior Constrictors and the Stylo-pharyngeus, ramifying in their substance and in the mucous membrane lining them. The largest of the pharyngeal branches passes inwards, running upon the Superior constrictor, and sends ramifications to the soft palate, Eustachian tube, and tonsil, which take the place of the ascending palatine branch of the facial artery, when that vessel is of small size.

The meningeal branches consist of several small vessels, which pass through foramina in the base of the skull, to supply the dura mater. One, the posterior meningeal, enters the cranium through the foramen lacerum posteiors, with the internal jugular vein. A second passes through the foramen lacerum medium; and occasionally a third through the anterior condyloid foramen. They are all distributed to the dura mater.

The Temporal Artery (Fig. 306), the smaller of the two terminal branches of the external carotid, appears, from its direction, to be the continuation of that vessel. It commences in the substance of the parotid gland, in the interspace between the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw and the external meatus, crosses over the root of the zygoma, immediately beneath the integument, and divides about two inches above the zygomatic arch into two branches, an anterior and a posterior.

The anterior temporal inclines forwards over the forehead, supplying the muscles, integument, and pericranium in this region, and anastomoses with the supra-orbital and frontal arteries, its branches being directed from before backwards.

The posterior temporal, larger than the anterior, curves upwards and backwards along the side of the head, lying above the temporal fascia, and inoculates with its fellow of the opposite side, and with the posterior auricular and occipital arteries.

The temporal artery, as it crosses the zygoma, is covered by the Atrahens aurem muscle, and by a dense fascia given off from the parotid gland; it is also usually crossed by one or two veins, and accompanied by branches of the facial and auriculo-temporal nerves. Besides some twigs to the parotid gland, the articulation of the jaw, and the Masseter muscle, its branches are the

Transverse Facial.  
Middle Temporal.  
Anterior Auricular.

The transverse facial is given off from the temporal before that vessel quits the parotid gland; running forwards through its substance, it passes transversely across the face, between Stieno's duct and the lower border of the zygoma, and divides on the side of the face into numerous branches, which supply the parotid gland, the Masseter muscle, and the integument, anastomosing with the facial and infraorbital arteries. This vessel rests on the Masseter, and is accompanied by one or two branches of the facial nerve. It is sometimes a branch of the external carotid.

The middle temporal artery arises immediately above the zygomatic arch, and perforating the temporal fascia, supplies the Temporal muscle, anastomosing with the deep temporal branches of the internal maxillary. It occasionally gives off an orbital branch, which runs along the upper border of the zygoma, between the two layers of the temporal fascia, to the outer angle of the orbit. This branch supplies the Orbicularis palpebrarum, and anastomoses with the lachrymal and palpebral branches of the ophthalmic artery.

The anterior auricular branches are distributed to the anterior portion of the pinna, the lobule, and part of the external meatus, anastomosing with branches of the posterior auricular.

Surgical Anatomy. It occasionally happens that the surgeon is called upon to perform the operation of arteriotomy upon this vessel in cases of inflammation of the eye or brain. Under
these circumstances, the anterior branch is the one usually selected. If the student will consider the relations of the trunk of this vessel, as it crosses the zygomatic arch, with the surrounding structures, he will observe that it is covered by a thick and dense fascia, crossed by one or two veins, and accompanied by branches of the facial and auriculo-temporal nerves. Bleeding should not be performed in this situation, as much difficulty may arise from the dense fascia over the vessel preventing a free flow of blood, and considerable pressure is requisite afterwards to repress the hemorrhage. Again, a varicose aneurism may be formed by the accidental opening of one of the veins in front of the artery; or severe neuralgic pain may arise from the operation implicating one of the nervous filaments in the neighborhood.

The anterior branch is, on the contrary, subcutaneous, is a large vessel, and as readily compressed as any other portion of the artery; it should consequently always be selected for the operation.

The Internal Maxillary (Fig. 307), the larger of the two terminal branches of the external carotid, passes inwards, at right angles from that vessel, to the inner side of the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw, to supply the deep structures of the face. At its origin, it is imbedded in the substance of the parotid gland, being on a level with the lower extremity of the lobe of the ear.

In the first part of its course (maxillary portion), the artery passes horizontally forwards and inwards, between the ramus of the jaw and the internal lateral ligament. The artery here lies parallel with the auriculo-temporal nerve; it crosses the inferior dental nerve, and lies beneath the narrow portion of the External pterygoid muscle.

In the second part of its course (pterygoid portion), it runs obliquely for-
wards and upwards upon the outer surface of the External pterygoid muscle, being covered by the ramus of the lower jaw, and lower part of the Temporal muscle.

In the third part of its course (spheno-maxillary portion), it approaches the superior maxillary bone, and enters the spheno-maxillary fossa, in the interval between the processes of origin of the External pterygoid, where it lies in relation with Meckel's ganglion, and gives off its terminal branches.

**Peculiarities.** Occasionally, this artery passes between the two Pterygoid muscles. The vessel in this case passes forwards to the interval between the processes of origin of the External pterygoid, in order to reach the superior maxillary bone. Sometimes the vessel escapes from beneath the External pterygoid by perforating the middle of that muscle.

The branches of this vessel may be divided into three groups, corresponding with its three divisions.

**Branches from the Maxillary Portion (Fig. 808).**

- Tympanic (anterior).
- Middle Meningeal.
- Small Meningeal.
- Inferior Dental.

The **tympanic branch** passes upwards behind the articulation of the lower jaw, enters the tympanum through the fissure of Glaser, supplies the Laxator tympani, and ramifies upon the membrana tympani, anastomosing with the stylo-mastoid, Vidian, and tympanic branch from the internal carotid.

The **middle meningeal** is the largest of the branches which supply the dura mater. It arises from the internal maxillary between the internal lateral ligament and the neck of the jaw, and passes vertically upwards to the foramen spinosum of the sphenoid bone. On entering the cranium, it divides into two branches, anterior and posterior. The anterior branch, the larger, crosses the great ala of the sphenoid, and reaches the groove, or canal, in the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone: it then divides into branches, which spread out between the dura mater and internal surface of the cranium, some passing upwards over the parietal bone as far as the vertex, and others backwards to the occipital bone. The posterior branch crosses the squamous portion of the temporal, and on the inner surface of the parietal bone divides into branches which supply the posterior part of the dura mater and cranium. The branches of this vessel are distributed partly to the dura mater, but chiefly to the bones; they anastomose with the arteries of the opposite side, and with the anterior and posterior meningeal.

The middle meningeal, on entering the cranium, gives off the following collateral branches: 1. Numerous small vessels to the ganglion of the fifth nerve, and to the dura mater in this situation. 2. A branch to the facial nerve, which enters the hiatus Fallopian, supplies the facial nerve, and anastomoses with the stylo-mastoid branch of the posterior auricular artery. 3. Orbital branches, which pass through the sphenoidal fissure, or through separate canals in the great wing of the sphenoid to anastomose with the lachrymal or other branches of the ophthalmic artery. 4. Temporal branches, which pass through foramina in the great wing of the sphenoid, and anastomose in the temporal fossa with the deep temporal arteries.

The **small meningeal** is sometimes derived from the preceding. It enters the skull through the foramen ovale, and supplies the Casserian ganglion and dura mater. Before entering the cranium, it gives off a branch to the nasal fossa and soft palate.

The **inferior dental** descends with the dental nerve, to the foramen on the inner side of the ramus of the jaw. It runs along the dental canal in the substance of the bone, accompanied by the nerve, and opposite the first bicuspid tooth divides into two branches, incisor and mental; the former is continued forwards beneath the incisor teeth as far as the symphysis, where it anastomoses with the artery of the opposite side; the mental branch escapes with the nerve at the
INTERNAL MAXILLARY.

mental foramen, supplies the structures composing the chin, and anastomoses with the submental, inferior labial, and inferior coronary arteries. As the dental artery enters the foramen, it gives off a mylo-hyoid branch, which runs in the Mylo-hyoid groove, and ramifies on the under surface of the Mylo-hyoid muscle. The dental and incisor arteries during their course through the substance of the bone give off a few twigs which are lost in the cancellous tissue, and a series of branches which correspond in number to the roots of the teeth; these enter the minute apertures at the extremities of the fangs, and supply the pulp of the teeth.

Branches of the Second, or Pterygoid Portion.

Deep Temporal. Masseteric.
Pterygoid. Buccal.

These branches are distributed, as their names imply, to the muscles in the maxillary region.

The deep temporal branches, two in number, anterior and posterior, each occupy that part of the temporal fossa indicated by its name. Ascending between the temporal muscle and pericranium, they supply that muscle, and anastomose with the other temporal arteries; the anterior branch communicating with the lachrymal through small branches which perforate the malar bone, and great wing of the sphenoid.

The pterygoid branches, irregular in their number and origin, supply the Pterygoid muscles.

The masseteric is a small branch which passes outwards above the sigmoid notch of the lower jaw, to the deep surface of the Masseter. It supplies that muscle, and anastomoses with the masseteric branches of the facial and with the transverse facial artery.

The buccal is a small branch which runs obliquely forwards between the Internal pterygoid and the ramus of the jaw, to the outer surface of the Buccinator, to which it is distributed, anastomosing with branches of the facial artery.

Branches of the Third, or Sphen-o-Maxillary Portion.

Alveolar. Vidian.
Infraorbital. Pterygo-palatine.
Posterior or Descending Palatine. Nasal or Spheno-palatine.

The alveolar is given off from the internal maxillary by a common branch with the infraorbital, and just as the trunk of the vessel is passing into the sphen-o-maxillary fossa. Descending upon the tuberosity of the superior maxillary bone, it divides into numerous branches; one, the superior dental, larger than the rest, supplies the molar and bicuspid teeth, its branches entering the foramina in the alveolar process; some branches pierce the bone to supply the lining of the antrum, and others are continued forwards on the alveolar process to supply the gums.

The infraorbital appears, from its direction, to be the continuation of the trunk of the internal maxillary. It arises from that vessel by a common trunk with the preceding branch, and runs along the infraorbital canal with the superior maxillary nerve, emerging upon the face at the infraorbital foramen, beneath the Levator labii, superioris. Whilst contained in the canal, it gives off branches which ascend into the orbit, and supply the Inferior rectus and Inferior oblique muscles, and the lachrymal gland. Other branches descend through canals in the bone, to supply the mucous membrane of the antrum, and the front teeth of the upper jaw. On the face, it supplies the lachrymal sac, and inner angle of the orbit, anastomosing with the facial artery and nasal
branch of the ophthalmic; and other branches descend beneath the Levator labii superioris, and anastomose with the transverse facial and buccal branches.

The four remaining branches arise from that portion of the internal maxillary which is contained in the sphenoid maxillary fossa.

The *descending palatine* passes down along the posterior palatine canal with the posterior palatine branches of Meckel’s ganglion, and emerging from the posterior palatine foramen, runs forwards in a groove on the inner side of the alveolar border of the hard palate to be distributed to the gums, the mucous membrane of the hard palate, and palate glands. Whilst it is contained in the palatine canal, it gives off branches, which descend in the accessory palatine canals to supply the soft palate, anastomosing with the ascending palatine artery; and anteriorly it terminates in a small vessel, which ascends in the anterior palatine canal, and anastomoses with the artery of the septum, a branch of the sphenopalatine.

The *Vidian branch* passes backwards along the Vidian canal with the Vidian nerve. It is distributed to the upper part of the pharynx and Eustachian tube, sending a small branch into the tympanum.

The *pterygo-palatine* is also a very small branch, which passes backwards through the pterygo-palatine canal with the pharyngeal nerve, and is distributed to the upper part of the pharynx and Eustachian tube.

The *nasal or sphenopalatine* passes through the sphenopalatine foramen into the cavity of the nose, at the back part of the superior meatus, and divides into two branches; one internal, the artery of the septum, passes obliquely downwards and forwards along the septum nasi, supplies the mucous membrane, and anastomoses in front with the ascending branch of the descending palatine. The external branches, two or three in number, supply the mucous membrane covering the lateral wall of the nose, the antrum, and the ethmoid and sphenoid cells.

**Surgical Anatomy of the Triangles of the Neck.**

The student having considered the relative anatomy of the large arteries of the neck and their branches, and the relations they bear to the veins and nerves, should now examine these structures collectively, as they present themselves in certain regions of the neck, in each of which important operations are being constantly performed.

For this purpose, the Sterno-mastoid, or any other muscles that have been divided in the dissection of the vessels, should be replaced in their normal position; the head should be supported by placing a block at the back of the neck, and the face turned to the side opposite to that which is being examined.

The side of the neck presents a somewhat quadrilateral outline, limited, above, by the lower border of the body of the jaw, and an imaginary line extending from the angle of the jaw to the mastoid process; below, by the prominent upper border of the clavicle; in front, by the median line of the neck; behind, by the anterior margin of the Trapezius muscle. This space is subdivided into two large triangles by the Sterno-mastoid muscle, which passes obliquely across the neck, from the sternum and clavicle, below, to the mastoid process, above. The triangular space in front of this muscle is called the *anterior triangle*; and that behind it, the *posterior triangle*.

**Anterior Triangular Space.**

The *Anterior Triangle* is limited, in front, by a line extending from the chin to the sternum; behind, by the anterior margin of the Sterno-mastoid; its base, directed upwards, is formed by the lower border of the body of the jaw, and a line extending from the angle of the jaw to the mastoid process; its apex is below, at the sternum. The space is covered by the integument, superficial fascia, Platysma, and deep fascia; it is crossed by branches of the facial and
superficial cervical nerves, and is subdivided into three smaller triangles by the Digastriacic muscle, above, and the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid, below. These smaller triangles are named from below upwards, the inferior carotid, the superior carotid, and the submaxillary triangle.

The Inferior Carotid Triangle is limited, in front, by the median line of the neck; behind, by the anterior margin of the Sterno-mastoid; above, by the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid; and is covered by the integument, superficial fascia, Platysma, and deep fascia; ramifying between which is seen the descending branch of the superficial colli nerve. Beneath these superficial structures, are the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, which, together with the anterior margin of the Sterno-mastoid, conceal the lower part of the common carotid artery.¹

This vessel is inclosed within its sheath, together with the internal jugular vein, and pneumogastric nerve; the vein lying on the outer side of the artery on the right side of the neck, but overlapping it, or passing directly across it on the left side; the nerve lying between the artery and vein, on a plane posterior to both. In front of the sheath are a few filaments descending from the loop of communication between the descendens and communicans noni; behind the sheath are seen the inferior thyroid artery, the recurrent laryngeal nerve, and the sympathetic nerve; and on its inner side, the trachea, the thyroid gland, much more prominent in the female than in the male, and the lower part of the larynx. By cutting into the upper part of this space, and slightly displacing the Sterno-mastoid muscle, the common carotid artery may be tied below the Omo-hyoid muscle.

The floor of the inferior carotid triangle is formed by the Longus colli muscle below, and by the Scalenus anterior above (see Fig. 255, p. 371), between which muscles the vertebral artery and vein will be found passing into the foramen in the sixth transverse process; a small portion of the origin of the Rectus capitis anterior major may also be seen in the floor of the space.

The Superior Carotid Triangle is bounded, behind, by the Sterno-mastoid; below by the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid; and above, by the posterior belly of the Digastriacic muscle. Its floor is formed by parts of the Thyro-hyoid, Hyo-glossus, and the inferior and middle Constrictor muscles of the pharynx; and it is covered by the integument, superficial fascia, Platysma, and deep fascia; ramifying between which, are branches of the facial and superficialis colli nerves. This space contains the upper part of the common carotid artery, which bifurcates opposite the upper border of the thyroid cartilage into the external and internal carotid. These vessels are occasionally somewhat concealed from view by the anterior margin of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, which overlaps them. The external and internal carotids lie side by side, the external being the more anterior of the two. The following branches of the external carotid are also met with in this space: the superior thyroid, running forwards and downwards; the lingual directly forwards; the facial, forwards and upwards; the occipital, backwards; and the ascending pharyngeal directly upwards on the inner side of the internal carotid. The veins met with are: the internal jugular, which lies on the outer side of the common and internal carotid arteries; and veins corresponding to the above-mentioned branches of the external carotid, viz., the superior thyroid, the lingual, facial, ascending pharyngeal, and sometimes the occipital; all of which accompany their corresponding arteries, and terminate in the internal jugular. The nerves in this space are the following: In front of the sheath of the common carotid is the descendens noni. The hypoglossal nerve

¹ Therefore the carotid artery and jugular vein are not, strictly speaking, contained in this triangle, since they are covered by the Sterno-mastoid muscle, that is to say, lie behind the anterior border of that muscle, which forms the posterior border of the triangle. But as they lie very close to the structures which are really contained in the triangle, and whose position it is essential to remember in operating on this part of the artery, it has seemed expedient to study the relations of all these parts together.
crosses both carotids above, curving round the occipital artery at its origin. Within the sheath, between the artery and vein, and behind both, is the pneumogastric nerve; behind the sheath, the sympathetic. On the outer side of the vessels the spinal accessory nerve runs for a short distance before it pierces the Sterno-mastoid muscle; and on the inner side of the internal carotid, just below the hyoid bone, may be seen the superior laryngeal nerve; and still more inferiorly, the external laryngeal nerve. The upper part of the larynx and lower part of the pharynx are also found in the front part of this space.

The Submaxillary Triangle corresponds to the part of the neck immediately beneath the body of the jaw. It is bounded, above, by the lower border of the body of the jaw, the parotid gland and the mastoid process; below, by the posterior belly of the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles; in front, by the middle line of the neck. The floor of this space is formed by the anterior belly of the Digastric, the Mylo-hyoid, and Hyo-glossus muscles; and it is covered by the integument, superficial fascia, Platysma, and deep fascia; ramifying between which are branches of the facial and ascending filaments of the superficial cervical nerve. This space contains, in front, the submaxillary gland, imbedded in the substance of which are the facial artery and vein, and their glandular branches; beneath this gland, on the surface of the Mylo-hyoid muscle, are the submental artery, and the mylo-hyoid artery and nerve. The back part of this space is separated from the front part by the stylo-maxillary ligament; it contains the external carotid artery ascending deeply in the substance of the parotid gland; this vessel here lies in front of, and superficial to, the internal carotid, being crossed by the facial nerve, and gives off in its course the posterior auricular, temporal, and internal maxillary branches; more deeply is the internal carotid, the internal jugular vein, and the pneumogastric nerve, separated from the external carotid by the Styloglossus and Stylo-pharyngeus muscles, and the glosso-pharyngeal nerve.¹

Posterior Triangular Space.

The Posterior Triangular Space is bounded, in front by the Sterno-mastoid muscle; behind, by the anterior margin of the trapezius; its base corresponds to the upper border of the clavicle; its apex, to the occiput. The space is crossed about an inch above the clavicle, by the posterior belly of the Omo-hyoid, which divides it unequally into two, an upper or occipital, and a lower or subclavian triangle.

The Occipital, the larger of the two posterior triangles, is bounded, in front, by the Sterno-mastoid; behind, by the Trapezius; below, by the Omo-hyoid. Its floor is formed from above downwards by the Splenius, Levator anguli scapulae, and the middle and posterior Scaleni muscles. It is covered by the integument, the Platysma below, the superficial and deep fascia; and crossed, above, by the ascending branches of the cervical plexus; the spinal accessory nerve is directed obliquely across the space from the Sterno-mastoid, which it pierces, to the under surface of the Trapezius; below, the descending branches of the cervical plexus and the transversalis colli artery and transversalis cervicis vein cross the space. A chain of lymphatic glands is also found running along the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, from the mastoid process to the root of the neck.

The Subclavian, the smaller of the two posterior triangles, is bounded, above by the posterior belly of the Omo-hyoid; below, by the clavicle; its base, directed forwards, being formed by the Sterno-mastoid. The size of this space varies according to the extent of attachment of the clavicular portion of the Sterno-mastoid and Trapezius muscles, and also according to the height at which the

¹ The same remark will apply to this triangle as was made about the inferior carotid triangle. The structures enumerated, as contained in the back part of the space, lie, strictly speaking, beneath the muscles which form the posterior boundary of the triangle; but as it is very important to bear in mind their close relation to the parotid gland and its boundaries (on account of the frequency of surgical operations on this gland), all these parts are spoken of together.
INTERNAL CAROTID.

Omo-hyoid crosses the neck above the clavicle. The height also of this space varies much, according to the position of the arm, being much diminished by raising the limb, on account of the ascent of the clavicle, and increased by drawing the arm downwards, when that bone is depressed. This space is covered by the integument, superficial and deep fascia; and crossed by the descending branches of the cervical plexus. Just above the level of the clavicle, the third portion of the subclavian artery curves outwards and downwards from the outer margin of the Scalenus anticus, across the first rib to the axilla. Sometimes this vessel rises as high as an inch and a half above the clavicle, or to any point intermediate between this and its usual level. Occasionally, it passes in front of the Scalenus anticus, or pierces the fibres of that muscle. The subclavian vein lies behind the clavicle, and is usually not seen in this space; but it occasionally rises as high up as the artery, and has even been seen to pass with that vessel behind the Scalenus anticus. The brachial plexus of nerves lies above the artery and in close contact with it. Passing transversely across the clavicular margin of the space, are the suprascapular vessels; and traversing its upper angle in the same direction, the transverse cervical vessels. The external jugular vein runs vertically downwards behind the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, to terminate in the Subclavian vein; it receives the transverse cervical and suprascapular veins, which occasionally form a plexus in front of the artery, and a small vein which crosses the clavicle from the cephalic. The small nerve to the subclavius also crosses this triangle about its middle. A lymphatic gland is also found in the space.

INTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY.

The Internal Carotid Artery commences at the bifurcation of the common carotid, opposite the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, and runs perpendicularly upwards, in front of the transverse processes of the three upper cervical vertebrae, to the carotid foramen in the petrous portion of the temporal bone. After ascending in it for a short distance, it passes forwards and inwards through the carotid canal, and, again ascending a little by the side of the sella Turcica, curves upwards by the anterior clinoid process, where it pierces the dura mater, and divides into its terminal branches.

This vessel supplies the anterior part of the brain, the eye, and its appendages. Its size, in the adult, is equal to that of the external carotid. In the child, it is larger than that vessel. It is remarkable for the number of curvatures that it presents in different parts of its course. In its cervical portion it occasionally presents one or two flexures near the base of the skull, whilst through the rest of its extent it describes a double curvature which resembles the italic letter S placed horizontally =S. These curvatures most probably diminish the velocity of the current of blood, by increasing the extent of surface over which it moves, and adding to the amount of impediment produced from friction. In considering the course and relations of this vessel, it may be conveniently divided into four portions: a cervical, petrous, cavernous, and cerebral.

Cervical Portion. This portion of the internal carotid is superficial at its commencement, being contained in the superior carotid triangle, and lying on the same level as the external carotid, but behind that artery, overlapped by the Sterno-mastoid, and covered by the Platysma, deep fascia, and integument: it then passes beneath the parotid gland, being crossed by the hypoglossal nerve, the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles, and the external carotid and occipital arteries. Higher up, it is separated from the external carotid by the Styloglossus and Stylo-pharyngeus muscles, the glossopharyngeal nerve, and pharyngeal branch of the pneumogastric. It is in relation, behind, with the Rectus capitis anticus major, the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, and superior laryngeal nerve; externally, with the internal jugular vein, and pneu-
gastric nerve; internally, with the pharynx, tonsil, and ascending pharyngeal artery.

Petrus Portion. When the internal carotid artery enters the canal in the petrous portion of the temporal bone, it first ascends a short distance, then curves forwards and inwards, and again ascends as it leaves the canal to enter the cavity of the skull. In this canal, the artery lies at first anterior to the tympanum, from which it is separated by a thin bony lamella, which is cribiform in the young subject, and often absorbed in old age. It is separated from the bony wall of the carotid canal by a prolongation of dura mater, and is surrounded by filaments of the carotid plexus.

Fig. 309.—The Internal Carotid and Vertebral Arteries. Right Side.
INTERNAL CAROTID.

Cavernous Portion. The internal carotid artery, in this part of its course, at first ascends to the posterior clinoid process, then passes forwards by the side of the body of the sphenoid bone, being situated on the inner wall of the cavernous sinus, in relation, externally, with the sixth nerve, and covered by the lining membrane of the sinus. The third, fourth, and ophthalmic nerves are placed on the outer wall of the sinus, being separated from its cavity by the lining membrane.

Cerebral Portion. On the inner side of the anterior clinoid process the internal carotid curves upwards, perforates the dura mater bounding the sinus, and is received into a sheath of the arachnoid. This portion of the artery is on the outer side of the optic nerve; it lies at the inner extremity of the fissure of Sylvius, having the third nerve externally.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE INTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY IN THE NECK.

In Front.
Skin, superficial and deep fascia.
Parotid gland.
Stylo-glossus and Stylo-pharyngeus muscles.
Glosso-pharyngeal nerve.

Externally.
Internal jugular vein.
Pneumogastric nerve.

Internally.
Pharynx.
Ascending pharyngeal artery.
Tonsil.

Behind.
Rectus capitis anterior major.
Sympathetic.
Superior laryngeal nerve.

Peculiarities. The length of the internal carotid varies according to the length of the neck, and also according to the point of bifurcation of the common carotid. Its origin sometimes takes place from the arch of the aorta; in such rare instances, this vessel has been found to be placed nearer the middle line of the neck than the external carotid, as far upwards as the larynx, when the latter vessel crossed the internal carotid. The course of the vessel, instead of being straight, may be very tortuous. A few instances are recorded in which this vessel was altogether absent: in one of these the common carotid passed up the neck, and gave off the usual branches of the external carotid: the cranial portion of the internal carotid being replaced by two branches of the internal maxillary, which entered the skull through the foramen rotundum and ovale, and joined to form a single vessel.

Surgical Anatomy. The cervical part of the internal carotid is sometimes wounded by a stab or gun-shot wound in the neck, or even occasionally by a stab from within the mouth, as when a person receives a thrust from the end of a parasol, or falls down with a tobacco-pipe in his mouth. In such cases a ligature should be applied to the common carotid. The relation of the internal carotid with the tonsil should be especially remembered, as instances have occurred in which the artery has been wounded during the operation of scarifying the tonsil, and fatal hemorrhage has supervened.

The branches given off from the internal carotid are:

From the Petrous Portion.
Tympanic (internal or deep).
Arteriae Receptaculi.

From the Cavernous Portion.
Anterior Meningeal.
Ophthalmic.
Anterior Cerebral.
Middle Cerebral.
Posterior Communicating.
Anterior Choroid.

From the Cerebral Portion.

The cervical portion of the internal carotid gives off no branches.
The tympanic is a small branch which enters the cavity of the tympanum, through a minute foramen in the carotid canal, and anastomoses with the tympanic branch of the internal maxillary, and with the stylo-mastoid artery.
The *arteriae receptaculi* are numerous small vessels, derived from the internal carotid in the cavernous sinus; they supply the pituitary body, the Casserian ganglion, and the walls of the cavernous and inferior petrosal sinuses. One of these branches, distributed to the dura mater, is called the *anterior meningeal*; it anastomoses with the middle meningeal.

The **Ophthalmic Artery** arises from the internal carotid, just as that vessel is emerging from the cavernous sinus, on the inner side of the anterior clinoid process, and enters the orbit through the optic foramen, below and on the outer side of the optic nerve. It then passes across the nerve, to the inner wall of the orbit, and thence horizontally forwards, beneath the lower border of the Superior oblique muscle to the inner angle of the eye, where it divides into two terminal branches, the frontal, and nasal.

**Branches.** The branches of this vessel may be divided into an orbital group, which are distributed to the orbit and surrounding parts; and an ocular group, which supply the muscles and globe of the eye.

![Image of Ophthalmic Artery and its Branches](image)

**Orbital Group.**
- Lachrymal.
- Supraorbital.
- Posterior Ethmoidal.
- Anterior Ethmoidal.
- Palpebral.
- Frontal.
- Nasal.

**Ocular Group.**
- Muscular.
- Anterior Ciliary.
- Short Ciliary.
- Long Ciliary.
- Arteria Centralis Retinae.

The *lachrymal* is the first, and one of the largest branches, derived from the ophthalmic, arising close to the optic foramen: not unfrequently it is given off from the artery before it enters the orbit. It accompanies the lachrymal nerve.
along the upper border of the External rectus muscle, and is distributed to the lacrimal gland. Its terminal branches, escaping from the gland, are distributed to the upper eyelid and conjunctiva, anastomosing with the palpebral arteries. The lacrimal artery gives off one or two malar branches; one of which passes through a foramen in the malar bone, to reach the temporal fossa, and anastomoses with the deep temporal arteries. The other appears on the cheek, and anastomoses with the transverse facial. A branch is also sent backwards through the sphenoidal fissure, to the dura mater, which anastomoses with a branch of the middle meningeal artery.

**Peculiarities.** The lacrimal artery is sometimes derived from one of the anterior branches of the middle meningeal artery.

The supraorbital artery, the largest branch of the ophthalmic, arises from that vessel above the optic nerve. Ascending so as to rise above all the muscles of the orbit, it passes forwards, with the frontal nerve, between the periorchum and Levator palpebrae; and passing through the supraorbital foramen, divides into a superficial and deep branch, which supply the muscles and integument of the forehead and periorbical, anastomosing with the temporal, the angular branch of the facial, and the artery of the opposite side. This artery in the orbit supplies the Superior rectus and the Levator palpebrae, sends a branch inwards, across the pulley of the Superior oblique muscle, to supply the parts at the inner canthus, and, at the supraorbital foramen, frequently transmits a branch to the dipoë.

The ethmoidal branches are two in number; posterior and anterior. The former, which is the smaller, passes through the posterior ethmoidal foramen, supplies the posterior ethmoidal cells, and, entering the cranium, gives off a meningeal branch, which supplies the adjacent dura mater, and nasal branches, which descend into the nose through apertures in the cribriform plate, anastomosing with branches of the sphenoidal-palatine. The anterior ethmoidal artery accompanies the nasal nerve through the anterior ethmoidal foramen, supplies the anterior ethmoidal cells and frontal sinuses, and, entering the cranium, divides into a meningeal branch, which supplies the adjacent dura mater, and a nasal branch which descends into the nose, through an aperture in the cribriform plate.

The palpebral arteries, two in number, superior and inferior, arise from the ophthalmic, opposite the pulley of the Superior oblique muscle; they encircle the eyelids near their free margin, forming a superior and an inferior arch, which lie between the orbicularis muscle and tarsal cartilages; the superior palpebral inosculating at the outer angle of the orbit with the orbital branch of the temporal artery, the inferior palpebral with the orbital branch of the infraorbital artery, at the inner side of the lid. From this anastomosis, a branch passes to the nasal duct, ramifying in its mucous membrane, as far as the inferior meatus.

The frontal artery, one of the terminal branches of the ophthalmic, passes from the orbit at its inner angle, and ascending on the forehead, supplies the muscles, integument, and pericranium, anastomosing with the supraorbital artery.

The nasal artery, the other terminal branch of the ophthalmic, emerges from the orbit above the teno oculi, and, after giving a branch to the lacrimal sac, divides into two, one of which anastomoses with the angular artery, the other branch, the dorsalis nasi, runs along the dorsum of the nose, supplies its entire surface, and anastomoses with the artery of the opposite side.

The ciliary arteries are divisible into three groups, the short, long, and anterior. The short ciliary arteries, from twelve to fifteen in number, arise from the ophthalmic, or some of its branches; they surround the optic nerve as they pass forwards to the posterior part of the eyeball, pierce the sclerotic coat around the entrance of the nerve, and supply the choroid coat and ciliary processes. The long ciliary arteries, two in number, also pierce the posterior part of the sclerotic,
and run forwards, along each side of the eyeball, between the sclerotic and choroid, to the ciliary ligament, where they divide into two branches; these form an arterial circle around the circumference of the iris, from which numerous radiating branches pass forwards, in its substance, to its free margin, where

Fig. 311.—The Arteries of the Base of the Brain. The right half of the Cerebellum and Pons have been removed.

they form a second arterial circle around its pupillary margin. The anterior ciliary arteries are derived from the muscular branches; they pierce the sclerotic a short distance from the cornea, and terminate in the great arterial circle of the iris.
The arteria centralis retinae is one of the smallest branches of the ophthalmic artery. It arises near the optic foramen, pierces the optic nerve obliquely, and runs forwards, in the centre of its substance, to the retina, in which its branches are distributed as far forwards as the ciliary processes. In the human fetus, a small vessel passes forwards, through the vitreous humor, to the posterior surface of the capsule of the lens.

The muscular branches, two in number, superior and inferior, supply the muscles of the eyeball. The superior, the smaller, often wanting, supplies the Levator palpebræ, Superior rectus, and Superior oblique. The inferior, more constant in its existence, passes forwards, between the optic nerve and Inferior rectus, and is distributed to the External and Inferior recti, and Inferior oblique. This vessel gives off most of the anterior ciliary arteries.

The Cerebral branches of the internal carotid are: the anterior cerebral, the middle cerebral, the posterior communicating, and the anterior choroid.

The anterior cerebral arises from the internal carotid, at the inner extremity of the fissure of Sylvius. It passes forwards in the great longitudinal fissure between the two anterior lobes of the brain, being connected, soon after its origin, with the vessel of the opposite side by a short anastomosing trunk, about two lines in length, the anterior communicating. The two anterior cerebral arteries, lying side by side, curve round the anterior border of the corpus callosum, and run along its upper surface to its posterior part, where they terminate by anastomosing with the posterior cerebral arteries. They supply the olfactory and optic nerves, the under surface of the anterior lobes, the third ventricle, the anterior perforated space, the corpus callosum, and the inferior surface of the hemispheres.

The anterior communicating artery is a short branch, about two lines in length, but of moderate size, connecting together the two anterior cerebral arteries across the longitudinal fissure. Sometimes this vessel is wanting, the two arteries joining together to form a single trunk, which afterwards subdivides. Or the vessel may be wholly, or partially subdivided into two; frequently, it is longer and smaller than usual.

The middle cerebral artery, the largest branch of the internal carotid, passes obliquely outwards along the fissure of Sylvius, within which it divides into three branches: an anterior, which supplies the pia mater, investing the surface of the anterior lobe; a posterior, which supplies the middle lobe; and a median branch, which supplies the small lobe at the outer extremity of the Sylvian fissure. Near its origin, this vessel gives off numerous small branches which enter the locus perforatus antiquus, to be distributed to the corpus striatum.

The posterior communicating artery arises from the back part of the internal carotid, runs directly backwards, and anastomoses with the posterior cerebral, a branch of the basilar. This artery varies considerably in size, being sometimes small, and occasionally so large that the posterior cerebral may be considered as arising from the internal carotid rather than from the basilar. It is frequently larger on one side than on the other side.

The anterior choroid is a small but constant branch which arises from the back part of the internal carotid, near the posterior communicating artery. Passing backwards and outwards, it enters the descending horn of the lateral ventricle, beneath the edge of the middle lobe of the brain. It is distributed to the hippocampus major, corpus fimbriatum, and choroid plexus.

ARTERIES OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The artery which supplies the upper extremity continues as a single trunk from its commencement down to the elbow; but different portions of it have received different names, according to the region through which it passes. That part of the vessel which extends from its origin to the outer border of the first rib, is termed the subclavian; beyond this point to the lower border of the axilla, it is termed the axillary; and from the lower margin of the axillary
space to the bend of the elbow, it is termed brachial; here, the single trunk terminates by dividing into two branches, the radial and ulnar, an arrangement precisely similar to what occurs in the lower limb.

**Subclavian Arteries.**

The Subclavian Artery on the right side arises from the arteria innominata opposite the right sterno-clavicular articulation; on the left side it arises from the arch of the aorta. It follows, therefore, that these two vessels must, in the first part of their course, differ in their length, their direction, and their relation with neighboring parts.

In order to facilitate the description of these vessels, more especially in a surgical point of view, each subclavian artery has been divided into three parts. The first portion, on the right side, ascends obliquely outwards from the origin of the vessel to the inner border of the Scalenus anticus. On the left side it ascends vertically to gain the inner border of that muscle. The second part passes outwards, behind the Scalenus anticus; and the third part passes from the outer margin of that muscle, beneath the clavicle, to the lower border of the first rib, where it becomes the axillary artery. The first portions of these two vessels differ so much in their course, and in their relation with neighboring parts, that they will be described separately. The second and third parts are precisely alike on both sides.

**First Part of the Right Subclavian Artery.** (Figs. 302, 304.)

The right subclavian artery arises from the arteria innominata, opposite the right sterno-clavicular articulation, passes upwards and outwards across the root of the neck, and terminates at the inner margin of the Scalenus anticus muscle. In this part of its course it ascends a little above the clavicle, the extent to which it does so varying in different cases. It is covered, in front, by the integument, superficial fascia, Platysma, deep fascia, the clavicular origin of the Sterno-mastoid, the Sterno-hyoid, and Sternal-thyroid muscles, and another layer of the deep fascia. It is crossed by the internal jugular and vertebral veins, and by the pneumogastric, the cardiac branches of the sympathetic, and the phrenic nerve. Beneath, the artery is invested by the pleura, and behind, it is separated by a cellular interval from the Longus colli, the transverse process of the seventh cervical or first dorsal vertebra, and the sympathetic: the recurrent laryngeal nerve winding around the lower and back part of the vessel. The subclavian vein lies below the subclavian artery, immediately behind the clavicle.

**Plan of Relations of First Portion of Right Subclavian Artery.**

**In front.**
- Clavicular origin of Sterno-mastoid.
- Sterno-hyoid and Sternal-thyroid.
- Internal jugular and vertebral veins.
- Pneumogastric, cardiac, and phrenic nerves.

**Beneath.**
- Pleura.

**Behind.**
- Recurrent laryngeal nerve.
- Sympathetic.
- Longus colli.
- Transverse process of seventh cervical or first dorsal vertebra.

---

1 In five cases recently examined successively the artery was found to lie on the transverse process of the first dorsal.
SUBCLAVIAN.

FIRST PART OF THE LEFT SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY. (Fig. 302.)

The left subclavian artery arises from the end of the transverse portion of the arch of the aorta, opposite the third dorsal vertebra, and ascends to the inner margin of the first rib, behind the insertion of the Scalenus anticus muscle. This vessel is, therefore, longer than the right, situated more deeply in the cavity of the chest, and directed almost vertically upwards instead of arching outwards like the vessel of the opposite side.

It is in relation, in front, with the pleura, the left lung, the pneumogastric, phrenic, and cardiac nerves, which lie parallel with it, the left carotid artery, left internal jugular and innominate veins, and is covered by the Sterno-thyroid, Sterno-hyoid, and Sterno-mastoid muscles; behind, it is in relation with the oesophagus, thoracic duct, inferior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, Longus colli, and vertebral column. To its inner side are oesophagus, trachea and thoracic duct; to its outer side, the pleura.

PLAN OF RELATIONS OF FIRST PORTION OF LEFT SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY.

In Front.
Pleura and left lung.
Pneumogastric, cardiac, and phrenic nerves.
Left carotid artery.
Left internal jugular and innominate veins.
Sterno-thyroid, Sterno-hyoid, and Sterno-mastoid muscles.

Inner side.
Oesophagus.
Trachea.
Thoracic duct.

Left Subclavian Artery.
First portion.

Outer side.
Pleura.

Behind.
Oesophagus and thoracic duct.
Inferior cervical ganglion of sympathetic.
Longus colli and vertebral column.

SECOND AND THIRD PARTS OF THE SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY. (Fig. 304.)

The Second Portion of the Subclavian Artery lies behind the Scalenus anticus muscle; it is very short, and forms the highest part of the arch described by that vessel.

Relations. It is covered, in front, by the integument, Platysma, Sterno-mastoid, cervical fascia, and by the phrenic nerve, which is separated from the artery by the Scalenus anticus muscle. Behind, it is in relation with the Middle Scalenus. Above, with the brachial plexus of nerves. Below, with the pleura. The subclavian vein lies below and in front of the artery, separated from it by the Scalenus anticus.

PLAN OF RELATIONS OF SECOND PORTION OF SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY.

In Front.
Scalenus anticus.
Phrenic nerve.
Subclavian vein.

Above.
Brachial plexus.

Subclavian Artery.
Second portion.

Below.
Pleura.

Behind.
Pleura and Middle Scalenus.
The Third Portion of the Subclavian Artery passes downwards and outwards from the outer margin of the Scalenus anterior to the lower border of the first rib, where it becomes the axillary artery. This portion of the vessel is the most superficial, and is contained in a triangular space, the base of which is formed in front by the Sterno-mastoid, and the two sides by the Omo-hyoid above and the clavicle below.

Relations. It is covered, in front, by the integument, the superficial fascia, the Platysma, deep fascia; and by the clavicle, the Subclavius muscle, and the suprascapular artery and vein; the clavicular descending branches of the cervical plexus and the nerve to the subclavius pass vertically downwards in front of the artery. The external jugular vein crosses it at its inner side, and receives the suprascapular and transverse cervical veins, which occasionally form a plexus in front of it. The subclavian vein is below the artery, lying close behind the clavicle. Behind, it lies on the Middle Scalenus muscle. Above it, and to its outer side, is the brachial plexus, and Omo-hyoid muscle. Below, it rests on the outer surface of the first rib.

Plan of Relations of Third Portion of Subclavian Artery.

In Front.

Cervical fascia.
External jugular, suprascapular, and transverse cervical veins.
Descending branches of cervical plexus.
Subclavius muscle, suprascapular artery, and clavicle.

Above.
Brachial plexus.
Omo-hyoid.

Subclavian Artery.
Third portion.

Below.
First rib.

Scalenus medius.

Peculiarities. The Subclavian arteries vary in their origin, their course, and the height to which they rise in the neck.

The origin of the right subclavian from the innominate takes place, in some cases, above the sterno-clavicular articulation; and occasionally, but less frequently, in the cavity of the thorax, below that joint. Or the artery may arise as a separate trunk from the arch of the aorta. In such cases it may be either the first, second, third, or even the last branch derived from that vessel; in the majority of cases, it is the first or last, rarely the second or third. When it is the first branch, it occupies the ordinary position of the innominate artery; when the second or third, it gains its usual position by passing behind the right carotid; and when the last branch, it arises from the left extremity of the arch, at its upper or back part, and passes obliquely towards the right side, usually behind the oesophagus and right carotid, sometimes between the oesophagus and trachea, to the upper border of the first rib, whence it follows its ordinary course. In very rare instances, this vessel arises from the thoracic aorta, as low down as the fourth dorsal vertebra. Occasionally, it perforates the anterior Scalenus; more rarely it passes in front of that muscle: sometimes the subclavian vein passes with the artery behind the Scalenus. The artery sometimes ascends as high as an inch and a half above the clavicle, or any intermediate point between this and the upper border of the bone; the right subclavian usually ascending higher than the left.

The left subclavian is occasionally joined at its origin with the left carotid.

Surgical Anatomy. The relations of the subclavian arteries of the two sides having been examined, the student should direct his attention to consider the best position in which compression of the vessel may be effected, or in what situation a ligature may be best applied in cases of aneurism or wound.

Compression of the subclavian artery is required in cases of operations about the shoulder, in the axilla, or at the upper part of the arm; and the student will observe that there is only one situation in which it can be effectually applied, viz., where the artery passes across the outer surface of the first rib. In order to compress the vessel in this situation, the shoulder should be depressed, and the surgeon grasping the side of the neck, may press with his thumb in the hollow behind the clavicle downwards against the rib; if from any cause the shoulder cannot be sufficiently depressed, pressure may be made from before backwards, so as to compress the artery against the middle Scalenus and transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra. In appro-
SUBCLAVIAN.

priate cases, a preliminary incision may be made through the cervical fascia, and the finger may be pressed down directly upon the artery.

Ligature of the subclavian artery may be required in cases of wounds, or of aneurism in the axilla; and the third part of the artery is that which is most favorable for an operation, on account of its being comparatively superficial, and most remote from the origin of the large branches. In those cases where the clavicle is not displaced, this operation may be performed with comparative facility; but when the clavicle is pushed up by a large aneurismatic tumor in the axilla, the artery is placed at a great depth from the surface, which materially increases the difficulty of the operation. Under these circumstances, it becomes a matter of importance to consider the height to which this vessel reaches above the bone. In ordinary cases, its arch is about half an inch above the clavicle, occasionally as high as an inch and a half, and sometimes so low as to be on a level with its upper border. If the clavicle is displaced, these variations will necessarily make the operation more or less difficult, according as the vessel is more or less accessible.

The chief points in the operation of tying the third portion of the subclavian artery are as follows: the patient being placed on a table in the horizontal position, and the shoulder depressed as much as possible, the integument should be drawn downwards upon the clavicle, and an incision made through it upon that bone from the anterior border of the Trapezius to the posterior border of the Sternal-mastoid, to which may be added a short vertical incision meeting the preceding in its centre; the Platysma and cervical fascia should be divided upon a director, and if the interval between the Trapezius and Sternal-mastoid muscles be insufficient for the performance of the operation, a portion of one or both may be divided. The external jugular vein will now be seen towards the inner side of the wound: this and the suprascapular and transverse cervical veins which terminate in it should be held aside, and if divided, both ends should be tied: the suprascapular artery should be avoided, and the Omo-hyoid muscle must now be looked for, and held aside if necessary. In the space beneath this muscle, careful search must be made for the vessel; the deep fascia having been divided with the finger-nail or silver scalpel, the outer margin of the Scalenus muscle must be felt for, and the finger being guided by it to the first rib, the pulsation of the subclavian artery will be felt as it passes over the rib. The aneurism needle may then be passed around the vessel from before backwards, by which means the vein will be avoided, care being taken not to include a branch of the brachial plexus instead of the artery in the ligature. If the clavicle be so raised by the tumor that the application of the ligature cannot be effected in this situation, the artery may be tied above the first rib, or even behind the Scalenus muscle; the difficulties of the operation in such a case will be materially increased, on account of the greater depth of the artery, and the alteration in position of the surrounding parts.

The second part of the subclavian artery, from being that portion which rises highest in the neck, has been considered favorable for the application of the ligature, when it is difficult to tie the artery in the third part of its course. There are, however, many objections to the operation in this situation. It is necessary to divide the Scalenus anterior muscle, upon which lies the phrenic nerve, and at the inner side of which is situated the internal jugular vein; and a wound of either of these structures might lead to the most dangerous consequences. Again, the artery is in contact, below, with the pleura, which must also be avoided; and, lastly, the proximity of so many of its larger branches arising internal to this point, must be a still further objection to the operation. If, however, it has been determined to perform the operation in this situation, it should be remembered that it occasionally happens, that the artery passes in front of the Scalenus anterior, or through the fibres of that muscle; and that the vein sometimes passes with the artery behind the Scalenus anterior.

In those cases of aneurism of the axillary or subclavian artery which encroach upon the outer portion of the Scalenus muscle to such an extent that a ligature cannot be applied in that situation, it may be deemed advisable, as a last resource, to tie the first portion of the subclavian artery. On the left side, this operation is almost impracticable; the great depth of the artery from the surface, its intimate relation with the pleura, and its close proximity to the thoracic duct and to so many important veins and nerves, present a series of difficulties which it is next to impossible to overcome. On the right side, the operation is practicable, and has been performed, though not with success. The main objection to the operation in this situation is the smallness of the interval which usually exists between the commencement of the vessel and the origin of the nearest branch. This operation may be performed in the following manner:—The patient being placed on the table in the horizontal position, with the neck extended, an incision should be made parallel with the posterior border of the inner part of the clavicle, and a second along the inner border of the Sternal-mastoid, meeting the former at an angle. The internal attachment of the Sternal-mastoid may now be divided on a director, and turned outwards; a few small arteries and veins, and occasionally the anterior jugular, must be avoided, and the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles divided in the same manner as the preceding muscle. After tearing through the deep fascia with the finger-nail, the internal jugular vein will be seen crossing the subclavian artery; this should be pressed aside, and the artery secured by passing the needle from below upwards, in which the pleura is more effectually avoided. The exact position of the vagus nerve, the recurrent laryngeal, the phrenic and sympathetic nerves should be remembered.

1 The operation was, however, performed in New York, by Dr. J. K. Rodgers, and the case is related in A System of Surgery, edited by T. Holmes, 2d ed. vol. iii. pp. 620, etc.
and the ligature should be applied near the origin of the vertebral, in order to afford as much room as possible for the formation of a coagulum between the ligature and the origin of the vessel. It should be remembered, that the right subclavian artery is occasionally deeply placed in the first part of its course, when it arises from the left side of the aortic arch, and passes in such cases behind the esophagus, or between it and the trachea.

Collateral Circulation. After ligature of the third part of the subclavian artery, the collateral circulation is mainly established by three sets of vessels, thus described in a dissection:—

"1. A posterior set, consisting of the suprascapular and posterior scapular branches of the subclavian, which anastomosed with the infrascapular from the axillary.

"2. An internal set produced by the connection of the internal mammary on the one hand, with the short and long thoracic arteries, and the infrascapular on the other.

"3. A middle or axillary set, which consisted of a number of small vessels derived from branches of the subclavian, above; and passing through the axilla, to terminate either in the main trunk, or some of the branches of the axillary below. This last set presented most conspicuously the peculiar character of newly-formed, or, rather, dilated arteries, being excessively tortuous, and forming a complete plexus.

"The chief agent in the restoration of the axillary artery below the tumor, was the infrascapular artery, which communicated most freely with the internal mammary, suprascapular, and posterior scapular branches of the subclavian, from all of which it received so great an influx of blood as to dilate it to three times its natural size.""}

**Branches of the Subclavian Artery.**

These are four in number. Three arise from the first portion of the vessel, the vertebral, the internal mammary, and the thyroid axis; and one from the second portion, the superior intercostal. The vertebral arises from the upper and back part of the first portion of the artery; the thyroid axis from the front, and the internal mammary from the under part of this vessel. The superior intercostal is given off from the upper and back part of the second portion of the artery. On the left side, the second portion usually gives off no branch, the superior intercostal arising at the inner side of the Scalenus anteicus. On both sides of the body, the first three branches arise close together at the inner margin of the Scalenus anteicus; in the majority of cases, a free interval of half an inch to an inch existing between the commencement of the artery and the origin of the nearest branch; in a smaller number of cases, an interval of more than an inch exists, never exceeding an inch and three-quarters. In a very few instances, the interval has been found less than half an inch.

The **Vertebral Artery** (Fig. 309) is generally the first and largest branch of the subclavian; it arises from the upper and back part of the first portion of the vessel, and, passing upwards, enters the foramen in the transverse process of the sixth cervical vertebra; and ascends through the foramina in the transverse processes of all the vertebrae above this. Above the upper border of the axis, it inclines outwards and upwards to the foramen in the transverse process of the atlas, through which it passes; it then winds backwards behind its articular process, runs in a deep groove on the upper surface of the posterior arch of this bone, and, piercing the posterior occipito-atlaid ligament and dura mater, enters the skull through the foramen magnum. It then passes in front

---

1. Guy's Hospital Reports, vol. i., 1836. Case of axillary aneurism, in which Mr. Aston Key had tied the subclavian artery on the outer edge of the Scalenus muscle, twelve years previously.

2. The vertebral artery sometimes enters the foramen in the transverse process of the fifth vertebra. Dr. Smyth, who tied this artery in the living subject, found it, in one of his dissections, passing into the foramen in the seventh vertebra.
of the medulla oblongata, and unites with the vessel of the opposite side at the lower border of the pons Varolii, to form the basilar artery.

At its origin, it is situated behind the internal jugular vein, and inferior thyroid artery; and, near the spine, lies between the Longus colli and Sphenus anticus muscles, having the thoracic duct in front of it on the left side. Within the foramina formed by the transverse processes of the vertebrae, it is accompanied by a plexus of nerves from the sympathetic, and lies between the vertebral vein, which is in front, and the cervical nerves, which issue from the intervertebral foramina behind it. Whilst winding round the articular process of the atlas, it is contained in a triangular space formed by the Rectus posticus major, the Superior and the Inferior oblique muscles; and is covered by the Rectus posticus major and Complexus. Within the skull, as it winds round the medulla oblongata, it is placed between the hypoglossal nerve and the anterior root of the suboccipital nerve.

Branches. These may be divided into two sets, those given off in the neck, and those within the cranium.

Cervical Branches. Cranial Branches.
Lateral Spinal. Posterior Meningeal.
Muscular. Anterior Spinal.

The lateral spinal branches enter the spinal canal through the intervertebral foramina, each dividing into two branches. Of these one passes along the roots of the nerves to supply the spinal cord and its membranes, anastomosing with the other spinal arteries; the other is distributed to the posterior surface of the bodies of the vertebrae.

Muscular branches are given off to the deep muscles of the neck, where the vertebral artery curves round the articular process of the atlas. They anastomose with the occipital and deep cervical arteries.

The posterior meningeal are one or two small branches given off from the vertebral opposite the foramen magnum. They ramify between the bone and dura mater in the cerebellar fossae, and supply the falx cerebelli.

The anterior spinal is a smaller branch, larger than the posterior spinal, which arises near the termination of the vertebral, and unites with its fellow of the opposite side in front of the medulla oblongata. The single trunk, thus formed, descends a short distance on the front of the spinal cord, and joins with a succession of small branches which enter the spinal canal through some of the intervertebral foramina; these branches are derived from the vertebral and ascending cervical in the neck; from the intercostal, in the dorsal region; and from the lumbar, ilio-lumbar, and lateral sacral arteries in the lower part of the spine. They unite, by means of ascending and descending branches, to form a single anterior median artery, which extends as far as the lower part of the spinal cord. This vessel is placed beneath the pia mater along the anterior median fissure; it supplies that membrane, and the substance of the cord, and sends off its branches at its lower part to be distributed to the cauda equina.

The posterior spinal arises from the vertebral, at the side of the medulla oblongata; passing backwards to the posterior aspect of the spinal cord, it descends on either side, lying behind the posterior roots of the spinal nerves; and is reinforced by a succession of small branches, which enter the spinal canal through the intervertebral foramina, and by which it is continued to the lower part of the cord, and to the cauda equina. Branches from these vessels form a free anastomosis round the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, and communicate, by means of very tortuous transverse branches, with the vessel of the opposite side. At its commencement, it gives off an ascending branch, which terminates on the side of the fourth ventricle.

The inferior cerebellar artery (Fig. 311), the largest branch of the vertebral,
winds backwards round the upper part of the medulla oblongata, passing between
the origin of the spinal accessory and pneumogastric nerves, over the restiform
body to the under surface of the cerebellum, where it divides into two branches:
an internal one, which is continued backwards to the notch between the two
hemispheres of the cerebellum; and an external one, which supplies the under
surface of the cerebellum, as far as its outer border, where it anastomoses with
the superior cerebellar. Branches from this artery supply the choroid plexus
of the fourth ventricle.

The Basilar artery, so named from its position at the base of the skull, is a
single trunk formed by the junction of the two vertebral arteries; it extends
from the posterior to the anterior border of the pons Varolii, where it divides
into two terminal branches, the posterior cerebral arteries. Its branches are,
on each side, the following:

| Transverse. | Superior Cerebellar. |
| Anterior Cerebellar. | Posterior Cerebral. |

The transverse branches supply the pons Varolii and adjacent parts of the
brain; one (internal auditory) accompanies the auditory nerve into the internal
auditory meatus; and another, of larger size, passes along the crus cerebelli, to
be distributed to the anterior border of the under surface of the cerebellum. It
is called the anterior inferior cerebellar artery.

The superior cerebellar arteries arise near the termination of the basilar. They
wind round the crus cerebri, close to the fourth nerve, and arriving at the upper
surface of the cerebellum, divide into branches which ramify in the pia mater
and anastomose with the inferior cerebellar. Several branches are given to the
pineal gland, and also to the velum interpositum.

The posterior cerebral arteries, the two terminal branches of the basilar, are
larger than the preceding, from which they are separated near their origin by the
third nerves. Winding round the crus cerebri, they pass to the under sur-
f ace of the posterior lobes of the cerebrum, which they supply, anastomosing
with the anterior and middle cerebral arteries. Near their origin, they receive
the posterior communicating arteries from the internal carotid, and give off
numerous branches which enter the posterior perforated space: they also give
off a branch, the posterior choroid, which supplies the velum interpositum and
choroid plexus, entering the interior of the brain beneath the posterior border
of the corpus callosum.

Circle of Willis. The remarkable anastomosis which exists between the
branches of the internal carotid and vertebral arteries at the base of the brain,
constitutes the circle of Willis. It is formed, in front, by the anterior cerebral
and anterior communicating arteries; on each side, by the trunk of the internal
carotid, and the posterior communicating; behind by the posterior cerebral, and
point of the basilar. It is by this anastomosis that the cerebral circulation is
equalized, and provision made for effectually carrying it on if one or more of
the branches are obliterated. The parts of the brain included within this
arterial circle are, the lamina cinerea, the commissure of the optic nerves, the
infundibulum, the tuber cinereum, the corpora albicantia, and the posterior
perforated space.

The Thyroid Axis (Fig. 304) is a short thick trunk, which arises from the
fore part of the first portion of the subclavian artery, close to the inner border
of the Scalene anticus muscle, and divides, almost immediately after its origin,
into three branches, the inferior thyroid, suprascapular, and transversalis coli.

The Inferior Thyroid Artery passes upwards, in a serpentine course,
behind the sheath of the common carotid vessel and sympathetic nerve (the
middle cervical ganglion resting upon it), and is distributed to the under surface
of the thyroid gland, anastomosing with the superior thyroid, and with the
corresponding artery of the opposite side. Its branches are the

| Laryngeal. | Esophageal. |
| Tracheal. | Ascending Cervical. |
The *laryngeal* branch ascends upon the trachea to the back part of the larynx, and supplies the muscles and mucous membrane of this part.

The *tracheal* branches are distributed upon the trachea, anastomosing below with the bronchial arteries.

The *oesophageal* branches are distributed to the oesophagus.

The *ascending cervical* is a small branch which arises from the inferior thyroid, just where that vessel is passing behind the common carotid artery, and runs up the neck in the interval between the Scalenus anticus and Rectus anticus major. It gives branches to the muscles of the neck, which communicate with those sent out from the vertebral, and sends one or two through the intervertebral foramina, along the cervical nerves, to supply the bodies of the vertebrae, the spinal cord, and its membranes.

The *Suprascapular Artery*, smaller than the transversalis colli, passes obliquely from within outwards, across the root of the neck. It at first lies on the lower part of the Scalenus anticus, being covered by the Sterno-mastoid; it then crosses the subclavian artery, and runs outwards behind and parallel with the clavicle and Subclavian muscle, and beneath the posterior belly of the Omohyoid, to the superior border of the scapula, where it passes over the transverse ligament of the scapula, to the supraspinous fossa. In this situation it lies close to the bone, and ramifies between it and the Supraspinatus muscle, to which it is mainly distributed, giving off a communicating branch, which crosses the neck of the scapula, to reach the infraspinous fossa, where it anastomoses with the dorsal branch of the subscapular artery. Besides distributing branches to the Sterno-mastoid, and neighboring muscles, it gives off a supra-acromial branch, which, piercing the Trapezius muscle, supplies the cutaneous surface of the acromion, anastomosing with the acromial thoracic artery. As the artery passes over the transverse ligament of the scapula, a branch descends into the subscapular fossa, ramifies beneath that muscle, and anastomoses with the posterior and subscapular arteries. It also supplies the shoulder-joint.

The *Transversalis Colli* passes transversely outwards, across the upper part of the subclavian triangle, to the anterior margin of the Trapezius muscle, beneath which it divides into two branches, the superficial cervical, and the posterior scapular. In its passage across the neck, it crosses in front of the
Scaleni muscles and the brachial plexus, between the divisions of which it sometimes passes, and is covered by the Platysma, Sterno-mastoid, Omo-hyoid, and Trapezius muscles.

The superficial cervical ascends beneath the anterior margin of the Trapezius, distributing branches to it, and to the neighboring muscles and glands in the neck.

The posterior scapular, the continuation of the transversalis colli, passes beneath the Levator anguli scapulae to the posterior angle of the scapula, and descends along the posterior border of that bone as far as the inferior angle, where it anastomoses with the subscapular branch of the axillary. In its course it is covered by the Rhomboid muscles, supplying these, the Latissimus dorsi and Trapezius, and anastomosing with the suprascapular and subscapular arteries, and with the posterior branches of some of the intercostal arteries.

Peculiarities. The superficial cervical frequently arises as a separate branch from the thyroid axis; and the posterior scapular, from the third, more rarely from the second, part of the subclavian.

The internal mammary arises from the under surface of the first portion of the subclavian artery, opposite the thyroid axis. It descends behind the clavicle to the inner surface of the anterior wall of the chest, resting upon the costal cartilages a short distance from the margin of the sternum; and, at the interval between the sixth and seventh cartilages, divides into two branches, the musculo-phrenic, and superior epigastric.

At its origin, it is covered by the internal jugular and subclavian veins, and crossed by the phrenic nerve. In the upper part of the thorax, it lies upon the costal cartilages, and internal Intercostal muscles in front, and is covered by the pleura behind. At the lower part of the thorax, the Triangularis sterni separates the artery from the pleura. It is accompanied by two veins, which join at the upper part of the thorax into a single trunk.

The branches of the internal mammary are—

Comes Nervi Phrenici (superior phrenic). Anterior Intercostal.
Mediastinal. Perforating.
Pericardiac.
Sternal. Musculo-phrenic.

Superior Epigastric.

The comes nervi phrenici (superior phrenic) is a long slender branch, which accompanies the phrenic nerve, between the pleura and pericardium, to the Diaphragm, to which it is distributed; anastomosing with the other phrenic arteries from the internal mammary, and abdominal aorta.

The mediastinal branches are small vessels, which are distributed to the areolar tissue in the anterior mediastinum, and the remains of the thymus gland.

The pericardiac branches supply the upper part of the pericardium, the lower part receiving branches from the musculo-phrenic artery. Some sternal branches are distributed to the Triangularis sterni, and both surfaces of the sternum.

The anterior intercostal arteries supply the five or six upper intercostal spaces. The branch corresponding to each space passes outwards, and soon divides into two, which run along the opposite borders of the ribs, and inosculate with the intercostal arteries from the aorta. They are at first situated between the pleura and the internal Intercostal muscles, and then between the two layers of those muscles. They supply the Intercostal and Pectoral muscles, and the mammary gland.

The perforating arteries correspond to the five or six upper intercostal spaces. They arise from the internal mammary, pass forwards through the intercostal spaces, and, curving outwards, supply the Pectoralis major, and the integument. Those which correspond to the first three spaces, are distributed to the mammary gland. In females, during lactation, these branches are of large size.

The musculo-phrenic artery is directed obliquely downwards and outwards, behind the cartilages of the false ribs, perforating the Diaphragm at the eighth
AXILLA.

or ninth rib, and terminating, considerably reduced in size, opposite the last intercostal space. It gives off anterior intercostal arteries to each of the intercostal spaces across which it passes: these diminish in size as the spaces decrease in length, and are distributed in a manner precisely similar to the anterior intercostals from the internal mammary. The musculo-phrenic also gives branches backwards to the Diaphragm, and downwards to the abdominal muscles.

The superior epigastric continues in the original direction of the internal mammary, descends behind the Rectus muscle, and, perforating its sheath, divides into branches which supply the Rectus, anastomosing with the epigastric artery from the external iliac. Some vessels perforate the sheath of the Rectus, and supply the muscles of the abdomen and the integument, and a small branch which passes inwards upon the side of the ensiform appendix, anastomoses in front of that cartilage with the artery of the opposite side.

The Superior Intercostal (Fig. 809) arises from the upper and back part of the subclavian artery, behind the anterior scalenus on the right side, and to the inner side of the muscle on the left side. Passing backwards, it gives off the deep cervical branch, and then descends behind the pleura in front of the necks of the first two ribs, and inosculates with the first aortic intercostal. In the first intercostal space, it gives off a branch which is distributed in a manner similar to the distribution of the aortic intercostals. The branch for the second intercostal space usually joins with one from the first aortic intercostal. Each intercostal gives off a branch to the posterior spinal muscles, and a small one, which passes through the corresponding intervertebral foramen to the spinal cord and its membranes.

The deep cervical branch (profunda cervicis) arises, in most cases, from the superior intercostal, and is analogous to the posterior branch of an aortic intercostal artery. Passing backwards, between the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra and the first rib, it runs up the back part of the neck, between the Complexus and Semispinalis colli muscles, as high as the axis, supplying these and adjacent muscles, and anastomosing with the artery princeps cervicis of the occipital, and with branches which pass outwards from the vertebral.

Surgical Anatomy of the Axilla.

The Axilla is a pyramidal space, situated between the upper and lateral part of the chest, and the inner side of the arm.

Boundaries. Its apex, which is directed upwards towards the root of the neck, corresponds to the interval between the two scaleni muscles on the first rib. The base, directed downwards, is formed by the integument, and a thick layer of fascia, extending between the lower border of the Pectoralis major in front and the lower border of the Latissimus dorsi behind; it is broad internally, at the chest, but narrow and pointed externally, at the arm. The anterior boundary is formed by the Pectoralis major and minor muscles, the former covering the whole of the anterior wall of the axilla, the latter covering only its central part. The posterior boundary, which extends somewhat lower than the anterior, is formed by the Subscapularis above, the Teres major and Latissimus dorsi below. On the inner side, are the first four ribs with their corresponding Intercostal muscles, and part of the Serratus magnus. On the outer side, where the anterior and posterior boundaries converge, the space is narrow, and bounded by the humerus, the Coraco-brachialis and Biceps muscles.

Contents. This space contains the axillary vessels, and brachial plexus of nerves, with their branches, some branches of the intercostal nerves, and a large number of lymphatic glands, all connected together by a quantity of fat and loose areolar tissue.

Their Position. The axillary artery and vein, with the brachial plexus of nerves, extend obliquely along the outer boundary of the axillary space, from its apex to its base, and are placed much nearer the anterior than the posterior.
wall, the vein lying to the inner or thoracic side of the artery, and altogether concealing it. At the fore part of the axillary space, in contact with the Pectoral muscles, are the thoracic branches of the axillary artery, and along the anterior margin of the axilla the long thoracic artery extends to the side of the chest. At the back part, in contact with the lower margin of the Subscapularis muscle, are the subscapular vessels and nerves: winding around the lower border of this muscle, is the dorsalis scapulae artery and veins; and towards the outer extremity of the muscle, the posterior circumflex vessels and the circumflex nerve are seen curving backwards towards the shoulder.

Along the inner or thoracic side no vessel of any importance exists, the upper part of the space being crossed merely by a few small branches from the superior thoracic artery. There are some important nerves, however, in this situation, viz., the posterior thoracic or external respiratory nerve, descending on the surface of the Serratus magnus, to which it is distributed; and perforating the upper and anterior part of this wall, the intercosto-humeral nerve or nerves, passing across the axilla to the inner side of the arm.

The cavity of the axilla is filled by a quantity of loose areolar tissue, a large number of small arteries and veins, all of which are, however, of inconsiderable size, and numerous lymphatic glands; these are from ten to twelve in number, and situated chiefly on the thoracic side, and lower and back part of this space.

The student should attentively consider the relation of the vessels and nerves in the several parts of the axilla; for it not unfrequently happens that the surgeon is called upon to extirpate diseased glands, or to remove a tumor from this situation. In performing such an operation, it will be necessary to proceed with much caution in the direction of the outer wall and apex of the space, as here the axillary vessels will be in danger of being wounded. Towards the posterior
AXILLARY.

wall, it will be necessary to avoid the subscapular, dorsalis scapulae, and posterior circumflex vessels, and, along the anterior wall, the thoracic branches. It is only along the inner or thoracic wall, and in the centre of the axillary cavity, that there are no vessels of any importance; a fortunate circumstance, for it is in this situation more especially that tumors requiring removal are usually situated.

THE AXILLARY ARTERY.

The Axillary Artery, the continuation of the subclavian, commences at the lower border of the first rib, and terminates at the lower border of the tendons of the Latissimus dorsi and Teres major muscles, where it takes the name of brachial. Its direction varies with the position of the limb: when the arm lies by the side of the chest, the vessel forms a gentle curve, the convexity being upwards and outwards; when it is directed at right angles with the trunk, the vessel is nearly straight; and when it is elevated still higher, the artery describes a curve, the concavity of which is directed upwards. At its commencement the artery is very deeply situated, but near its termination is superficial, being covered only by the skin and fascia. The description of the relations of this vessel is facilitated by its division into three portions: the first portion being that above the Pectoralis minor; the second portion, behind; and the third below, that muscle.

The first portion of the axillary artery is in relation, in front, with the clavicular portion of the Pectoralis major, the costo-coracoid membrane, the Subclavius, and the cephalic vein; behind, with the first intercostal space, the corresponding Intercostal muscle, the first serration of the Serratus magnus, and the posterior thoracic nerve; on its outer side, with the brachial plexus, from which it is separated by a little cellular interval; on its inner, or thoracic side, with the axillary vein.

RELATIONS OF THE FIRST PORTION OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY.

In front.
Pectoralis major.
Costo-coracoid membrane.
Subclavius.
Cephalic vein.

Outer side.
Brachial plexus.

Axillary Artery.
First portion.

Inner side.
Axillary vein.

Behind.
First intercostal space, and Intercostal muscle.
First serration of Serratus magnus.
Posterior thoracic nerve.

The second portion of the axillary artery lies behind the Pectoralis minor. It is covered, in front, by the Pectoralis major and minor muscles: behind, it is separated from the Subscapularis by a cellular interval; on the inner side is the axillary vein. The brachial plexus of nerves surrounds the artery, and separates it from direct contact with the vein and adjacent muscles.
RELATIONS OF THE SECOND PORTION OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY.

In front.
Pectoralis major and minor.

Outer side.
Outer cord of plexus.

Inner side.
Axillary vein.
Inner cord of plexus.

Behind.
Subscapularis.
Posterior cord of plexus.

The third portion of the axillary artery lies below the Pectoralis minor. It is in relation, in front, with the lower part of the Pectoralis major above, being covered only by the integument and fascia below; behind, with the lower part of the Subscapularis, and the tendons of the Latissimus dorsi and Teres major; on its outer side, with the Coraco-brachialis; on its inner, or thoracic side, with the axillary vein. The nerves of the brachial plexus bear the following relation to the artery in this part of its course: on the outer side is the median nerve, and the musculo-cutaneous for a short distance; on the inner side, the ulnar, the internal, and lesser internal cutaneous nerves; and behind the musculo-spiral, and circumflex, the latter extending only to the lower border of the Subscapularis muscle.

RELATIONS OF THE THIRD PORTION OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY.

In front.
Integument and fascia.
Pectoralis major.

Outer side.
Coraco-brachialis.
Median nerve.
Musculo-cutaneous nerve.

Inner side.
Ulnar nerve.
Internal cutaneous nerves.
Axillary vein.

Behind.
Subscapularis.
Tendons of Latissimus dorsi and Teres major.
Musculo-spiral, and circumflex nerves.

Peculiarities. The axillary artery, in about one case out of every ten, gives off a large branch, which forms either one of the arteries of the forearm, or a large muscular trunk. In the first set of cases, this artery is most frequently the radial (1 in 33), sometimes the ulnar (1 in 72), and, very rarely, the interosseous (1 in 506). In the second set of cases, the trunk has been found to give origin to the subscapular, circumflex, and profunda arteries of the arm. Sometimes, only one of the circumflex, or one of the profunda arteries, arose from the trunk. In these cases, the brachial plexus surrounded the trunk of the branches, and not the main vessel.

Surgical Anatomy. The student, having carefully examined the relations of the axillary artery in its various parts, should now consider in what situation compression of this vessel may be most easily effected, and the best position for the application of a ligature to it when necessary.

Compression of the vessel is required in the removal of tumors, or in amputation of the upper part of the arm; and the only situation in which this can be effectually made, is in the lower part of its course; by pressing on it in this situation from within outwards against the humerus, the circulation may be effectually arrested.

The application of a ligature to the axillary artery may be required in cases of aneurism of the upper part of the brachial; and there are only two situations in which it can be secured, viz., in the first and in the third parts of its course; for the axillary artery at its central part is so deeply seated, and, at the same time, so closely surrounded with large nervous trunks, that the application of a ligature to it in that situation would be almost impracticable.

In the third part of its course, the operation is most simple, and may be performed in the following manner: The patient being placed on a bed, and the arm separated from the side, with the hand supinated, the head of the humerus is felt for, and an incision made through the
Axillary.

Integument over it, about two inches in length, a little nearer to the anterior than the posterior fold of the axilla. After carefully dissecting through the areolar tissue and fascia, the median nerve and axillary vein are exposed; the former having been displaced to the outer, and the latter to the inner side of the arm, the elbow being at the same time bent, so as to relax the structures, and facilitate their separation, the ligature may be passed round the artery from the ulnar to the radial side. This portion of the artery is occasionally crossed by a muscular slip derived from the Latissimus dorsi, which may mislead the surgeon during an operation. The occasional existence of this muscular fasciculus was spoken of in the description of the muscles. It may easily be recognized by the transverse direction of its fibres.

The first portion of the axillary artery may be tied in cases of aneurism encroaching so far upwards that a ligature cannot be applied in the lower part of its course. Notwithstanding that this operation has been performed in some few cases, and with success, its performance is attended with much difficulty and danger. The student will remark that, in this situation, it would be necessary to divide a thick muscle, and, after separating the costo-coracoid membrane, the artery would be exposed at the bottom of a more or less deep space, with cephalic and axillary veins in such relation with it as must render the application of a ligature to this part of the vessel particularly hazardous. Under such circumstances it is an easier, and, at the same time, more advisable operation, to tie the subclavian artery in the third part of its course. In a case of wound of the vessel, the general practice of cutting down upon, and tying it above and below the wounded point, should be adopted in all cases.

Collateral circulation after ligature of the axillary artery. If the artery be tied above the origin of the acromial thoracic, the collateral circulation will be carried on by the same branches as after the ligature of the subclavian; if at a lower point, between the acromial thoracic and subscapular arteries, the latter anastomosing with the other scapular arteries, branches of the subclavian, will become the chief agent in carrying on the circulation, to which the long thoracic, if it be below the ligature, will materially contribute, by its anastomoses with the intercostal and internal mammary arteries. If the point included in the ligature be below the origin of the subscapular artery, the anastomoses are less free. The chief agents in restoring the circulation, will be the posterior circumflex, by its anastomoses with the suprascapular and acromial thoracic, and the communications between the subscapular and superior profunda, which will be afterwards referred to as performing the same office after ligature of the brachial. The cases in which the operation has been performed are few in number, and no published account of dissection of the collateral circulation appears to exist.

The branches of the axillary artery are,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>From 1st Part</th>
<th>Superior thoracic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acromial thoracic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From 2d Part</td>
<td>Thoracica longa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thoracica alaris.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Subscapular.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From 3d Part</td>
<td>Anterior circumflex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Posterior circumflex.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The superior thoracic is a small artery, which arises from the axillary separately, or by a common trunk with the acromial thoracic. Running forwards and inwards along the upper border of the Pectoralis minor, it passes between it and the Pectoralis major to the side of the chest. It supplies these muscles, and the parietes of the thorax, anastomosing with the internal mammary and intercostal arteries.

The acromial thoracic is a short trunk, which arises from the fore part of the axillary artery. Projecting forwards to the upper border of the Pectoralis minor, it divides into three sets of branches, thoracic, acromial, and descending. The thoracic branches, two or three in number, are distributed to the Serratus magnus, and Pectoral muscles, anastomosing with the intercostal branches of the internal mammary. The acromial branches are directed outwards towards the acromion, supplying the Deltoïd muscle, and anastomosing, on the surface of the acromion, with the suprascapular and posterior circumflex arteries. The descending branch passes in the interspace between the Pectoralis major and Deltoïd, accompanying the cephalic vein, and supplying both muscles.

The long thoracic passes downwards and inwards along the lower border of the Pectoralis minor to the side of the chest, supplying the Serratus magnus, the Pectoral muscles, and mammary gland, and sending branches across the axilla to the axillary glands and Subscapularis, which anastomose with the internal mammary and intercostal arteries.
The thoracica alaris is a small branch, which supplies the glands and areolar tissue of the axilla. Its place is frequently supplied by branches from some of the other thoracic arteries.

The subscapular, the largest branch of the axillary artery, arises opposite the lower border of the Subscapularis muscle, and passes downwards and backwards along its lower margin to the inferior angle of the scapula, where it anastomoses with the posterior scapular, a branch of the subclavian. It distributes branches to the Subscapularis, Serratus magnus, Teres major, and Latissimus dorsi muscles, and gives off, about an inch and a half from its origin, a large branch, the dorsalis scapulae, which curves round the inferior border of the scapula, leaving the axilla in the interspace between the Teres minor above, the Teres major below, and the long head of the Triceps in front. Three branches, or sets of branches, arise from the dorsalis scapulae: the first enters the subscapular fossa, beneath the Subscapularis, which it supplies, anastomosing with the posterior scapular and suprascapular arteries; the second, the trunk of the artery (dorsalis scapulae) turns round the axillary border of the scapula, and enters the infraspinous fossa, where it anastomoses with the suprascapular and posterior scapular arteries; and a third, or median branch, is continued along the axillary border of the scapula, between the Teres major and minor, and, at the dorsal surface of the inferior angle of the bone, anastomoses with the posterior scapular.

The circumflex arteries wind round the neck of the humerus. The posterior circumflex (Fig. 313), the larger of the two, arises from the back part of the axillary opposite the lower border of the Subscapularis muscle, and, passing backwards with the circumflex veins and nerve through the quadrangular space bounded by the Teres major and minor, the scapular head of the Triceps and the humerus winds round the neck of that bone and is distributed to the Deltoid muscle and shoulder-joint, anastomosing with the anterior circumflex, suprascapular and acromial thoracic arteries. The anterior circumflex (Figs. 313, 314), considerably smaller than the preceding, arises just below that vessel, from the outer side of the axillary artery. It passes horizontally outwards, beneath the Coracobrachialis and short head of the Biceps, lying upon the fore part of the neck of the humerus, and, on reaching the bicipital groove, gives off an ascending branch which passes upwards along the groove to supply the head of the bone and the shoul-
BRACHIAL.

The trunk of the vessel is then continued outwards beneath the Deltoid, which it supplies, and anastomoses with the posterior circumflex, and acromial thoracic arteries.

BRACHIAL ARTERY. (Fig. 315.)

The Brachial Artery commences at the lower margin of the tendon of the Teres major, and, passing down the inner and anterior aspect of the arm, terminates about half an inch below the bend of the elbow, where it divides into the radial and ulnar arteries.

The direction of this vessel is marked by a line drawn from the outer side of the axillary space between the folds of the axilla, to a point midway between the condyles of the humerus, which corresponds to the depression along the inner border of the Coraco-brachialis and Biceps muscles. In the upper part of its course, the artery lies internal to the humerus; but below, it is in front of that bone.

Relations. This artery is superficial throughout its entire extent, being covered, in front, by the integument, the superficial and deep fascia; the bicipital fascia separates it opposite the elbow from the median basilic vein; the median nerve crosses it at its middle; and the basilic vein lies in the line of the artery, but separated from it by the fascia, in the lower half of its course.

Behind, it is separated from the inner side of the humerus above, by the long and inner heads of the Triceps, the musculo-spiral nerve and superior profunda artery intervening; and from the front of the bone below, by the insertion of the Coraco-brachialis muscle, and by the Brachialis anticus. By its outer side, it is in relation with the commencement of the median nerve, and the Coraco-brachialis and Biceps muscles, which slightly overlaps the artery. By its inner side, its upper half is in relation with the internal cutaneous and ulnar nerves, its lower half with the median nerve. It is accompanied by two venae comitantes, which lie in close contact with the artery, being connected together at intervals by short transverse communicating branches.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE BRACHIAL ARTERY.

In Front.

Integument and fascia.
Bicipital fascia, median basilic vein.
Median nerve.

Outer side.
Median nerve.
Coraco-brachialis.
Biceps.

Brachial Artery.

Inner side.
Internal cutaneous and ulnar nerve.
Median nerve.

Behind.

Triceps.
Musculo-spiral nerve.
Superior profunda artery.
Coraco-brachialis.
Brachialis anticus.

BEND OF THE ELBOW.

At the bend of the elbow, the brachial artery sinks deeply into a triangular interval; the base of which is directed upwards towards the humerus, and the sides of which are bounded, externally, by the Supinator longus; internally, by the Pronator radii teres; its floor is formed by the Brachialis anticus and Supinator brevis. This space contains the brachial artery, with its accompanying veins; the radial and ulnar arteries; the median and musculo-spiral nerves; and the tendon of the Biceps. The brachial artery occupies the middle line of this space, and divides opposite the coronoid process of the ulna into the
radial and ulnar arteries; it is covered, in front, by the integument, the superficial fascia, and the median basilic vein, the vein being separated from direct contact with the artery by the bicipital fascia. Behind, it lies on the Brachialis anticus, which separates it from the elbow-joint. The median nerve lies on the inner side of the artery, but separated from it below by an interval of half an inch. The tendon of the Biceps lies to the outer side of the space, and the musculo-spiral nerve still more externally lying upon the Supinator brevis, and partly concealed by the Supinator longus.

Peculiarities of the Artery as regards its Course. The brachial artery, accompanied by the median nerve, may leave the inner border of the Biceps, and descend towards the inner condyle of the humerus, where it usually curves round a prominence of bone, to which it is connected by a fibrous band; it then inclines outwards, beneath or through the substance of the Pronator teres muscle, to the bend of the elbow. The variation bears considerable analogy with the normal condition of the artery in some of the carnivora; it has been referred to, above, in the description of the humerus.

As regards its Division. Occasionally, the artery is divided for a short distance at its upper part into two trunks, which are united above and below. A similar peculiarity occurs in the main vessel of the lower limb.

The point of bifurcation may be above or below the usual point, the former condition being by far the most frequent. Out of 481 examinations recorded by Mr. Quain, some made on the right, and some on the left side of the body, in 386 the artery bifurcated in its normal position. In one case only was the place of division lower than usual, being two or three inches below the elbow-joint. In 94 cases out of 481, or about one in 5½, there were two arteries instead of one in some part or in the whole of the arm.

There appears, however, to be no correspondence between the arteries of the two arms, with respect to their irregular division; for in sixty-one bodies it occurred on one side only in forty-three; on both sides, in different positions, in thirteen; on both sides, in the same position, in five.

The point of bifurcation takes place at different parts of the arm, being most frequent in the upper part, less so in the lower part, and least so in the middle, the most usual point for the application of a ligature; under any of these circumstances, two large arteries would be found in the arm instead of one. The most frequent (in three out of four) of these peculiarities is the high division of the radial. That artery often arises from the inner side of the brachial, and runs parallel with the main trunk to the elbow, where it crosses it, lying beneath the fascia; or it may perforate the fascia, and pass over the artery immediately beneath the integument.

The ulnar sometimes arises from the brachial high up, and then occasionally leaves that vessel at the lower part of the arm, and descends towards the inner condyle. In the forearm, it generally lies beneath the deep fascia, superficial to the Flexor muscles; occasionally between the integument and deep fascia, and very rarely beneath the Flexor muscles.

The interosseous artery sometimes arises from the upper part of the brachial or axillary: as it passes down the arm, it lies behind the main trunk, and, at the bend of the elbow, regains its usual position.

In some cases of high division of the radial, the remaining trunk (ulnar-interosseous) occasionally passes, together with the median nerve, along the inner margin of the arm to the inner condyle, and then passing from within outwards, beneath or through the Pronator teres, regains its usual position at the bend of the elbow.

Occasionally, the two arteries representing the brachial are connected at the bend of the elbow by a short transverse branch, and are even sometimes reunited.

Sometimes, long slender vessels, vasa aberrantia, connect the brachial or axillary arteries with one of the arteries of the forearm, or a branch from them. These vessels usually join the radial.

Varieties in Muscular Relations. The brachial artery is occasionally concealed, in some part of its course, by muscular or tendinous slips derived from various sources. In the upper third of the arm, the brachial vessels and median nerve have been seen concealed, to the extent of three inches, by a muscular layer of considerable thickness, derived from the Coraco-brachialis, which passed round to the inner side of the vessel, and joined the internal head of the Triceps. In the lower half of the arm the artery is occasionally concealed by a broad thin head to the Biceps muscle. A narrow fleshy slip from the Biceps has been seen to cross the artery, concealing it for an inch and a half, its tendon ending in the aponeurosis covering the Pronator teres. A muscular and tendinous slip has been seen to arise from the external bicipital ridge by a long tendon, cross obliquely behind the long tendon of the Biceps, and end in a fleshy belly, which appears on the inner side of the arm between the Biceps and Coraco-brachialis, passes down along the inner edge of the former, and crosses the artery very obliquely so as to lie in front of it for three inches, and, finally, gives rise to a narrow flattened tendon, which is inserted into the aponeurosis over the Pronator teres. A tendinous slip, arising from the deep part of the tendon of the Pectoralis major, has been seen to cross the artery obliquely at or below the Coraco-brachialis, and join the intermuscular septum above the inner condyle. The Brachialis anticus not unfrequently

1 See Stethers's Anatomical and Physiological Observations.
SURGICAL ANATOMY OF BRACHIAL ARTERY.

projects at the outer side of the artery, and occasionally overlaps it, sending inwards, across the artery, an aneponeurosis which binds the vessel down upon the Brachialis anticus. Sometimes, a fleshy slip from the muscle covers the vessel, in one case to the extent of three inches. In some cases of high origin of the Pronator teres, an aneponeurosis extends from it to join the Brachialis anticus external to the artery; a kind of arch being thus formed under which the principal artery and median nerve pass, so as to be concealed for half an inch above the transverse level of the condyle.

Surgical Anatomy. Compression of the brachial artery is required in cases of amputation and some other operations in the arm and forearm; and it will be observed, that it may be effected in almost any part of the course of the artery. If pressure is made in the upper part of the limb, it should be directed from within outwards, and if in the lower part, from before backwards, as the artery lies on the inner side of the humerus above, and in front of it below. The most favorable situation is near the insertion of the Coraco-brachialis.

The application of a ligature to the brachial artery may be required in cases of wounds of the vessel, and in some cases of wound of the palmar arch. It is also sometimes necessary in cases of aneurism of the brachial, the radial, ulnar, or interosseous arteries. The artery may be secured in any part of its course. The chief guides in determining its position are the surface-markings produced by the inner margin of the Coraco-brachialis and Biceps, the known course of the vessel, and its pulsation, which should be carefully felt for before any operation is performed, as the vessel occasionally lies in the arm. In its usual position in the arm, its pulsation is performed, great care is necessary, on account of the extreme thinness of the parts covering the artery, and the intimate connection which the vessel has throughout its whole course with important nerves and veins. Sometimes a thin layer of muscular fibre is met with concealing the artery; if such is the case, it must be cut across in order to expose the vessel.

In the upper third of the arm the artery may be exposed in the following manner: The patient being placed horizontally upon a table, the affected limb should be raised from the side, and the hand supinated. An incision about two inches in length should be made on the ulnar side of the Coraco-brachialis muscle, and the subjacent fascia cautiously divided, so as to avoid wounding the internal cutaneous nerve or basilic vein, which sometimes run on the surface of the artery as far as the axilla. The fascia having been divided, it should be remembered, that the ulnar and internal cutaneous nerves lie on the inner side of the artery, the median on the outer side, the latter nerve being occasionally superficial to the artery in this situation, and that the vein comites usually lies in relation with the vessel, one on either side. These being carefully separated, the aneurism needle should be passed round the artery from the ulnar to the radial side.

If two arteries are present in the arm, in consequence of a high division, they are usually placed side by side; and if they are exposed in an operation, the surgeon should endeavor to ascertain, by alternately pressing on each vessel, which of the two communicates with the wound or aneurism, when a ligature may be applied accordingly; or if pulsation or hemorrhage ceases only when both vessels are compressed, both vessels may be tied, as it may be concluded that the two communicate above the seat of disease, or are reunited.

It should also be remembered, that two arteries may be present in the arm in a case of high division, and that one of these may be found along the inner intermuscular septum, in a line towards the inner condyle of the humerus, or in the usual position of the brachial, but deeply placed beneath the common trunk; a knowledge of these facts will suggest the precautions necessary in every case, and indicate the measures to be adopted when anomalies are met with.

The arm, or brachial artery may be exposed by making an incision along the inner margin of the Biceps muscle. The forearm being bent so to relax the muscle, it should be drawn slightly aside, and, the fascia being carefully divided, the median nerve will be exposed lying upon the artery (sometimes beneath); this being drawn inwards and the muscle outwards, the artery should be separated from its accompanying veins and secured. In this situation the inferior profunda may be mistaken for the main trunk, especially if enlarged, from the collateral circulation having become established; this may be avoided by directing the incision externally towards the Biceps rather than inwards or backwards towards the Triceps.

The lower part of the brachial artery is of extreme interest in a surgical point of view, on account of the relation which it bears to the veins most commonly opened in venesection. Of these vessels, the median basilic is the largest and most prominent, and, consequently, the one usually selected for the operation. It should be remembered, that this vein runs parallel with the brachial artery, from which it is separated by the bicipital fascia, and that in no case should this vessel be selected for venesection, except in a part which is not in contact with the artery.

Collateral Circulation. After the application of a ligature to the brachial artery in the upper third of the arm, the circulation is carried on by branches from the circumflex and subscapular arteries, anastomosing with ascending branches from the superior profunda. If the brachial is tied below the origin of the profunda arteries, the circulation is maintained by the branches of the profunda, anastomosing with the recurrent radial, ulnar, and interosseous arteries. In two cases described by Mr. South, 1 in which the brachial artery had been tied some time previously, in one

---

1 Cullen's Surgery, vol. ii. p. 254. See also White's engraving referred to by Mr. South, of the anastomosing branches after ligature of the brachial, in White's Cases in Surgery. Porta also gives a case with drawings of the circulation after ligature of both brachial and radial. - Alterazioni Patologiche delle Arterie. 33
ARteries.

"a long portion of the artery had been obliterated, and sets of vessels are descending on either side from above the obliteration, to be received into others which ascend in a similar manner from below it. In the other, the obliteration is less extensive, and a single curved artery about as big as a crow-quill passes from the upper to the lower open part of the artery."

The branches of the brachial artery are the

Superior profunda. Inferior profunda.
Nutrient artery. Anastomotica magna.

Muscular.

The superior profunda arises from the inner and back part of the brachial, opposite the lower border of the Teres major, and passes backwards to the interval between the outer and inner heads of the Triceps muscle, accompanied by the musculo-spiral nerve; it winds round the back part of the shaft of the humerus in the spiral groove, between the Triceps and the bone, and descends on the outer side of the arm to the space between the Brachialis anticus and Supinator longus as far as the elbow, where it anastomoses with the recurrent branch of the radial artery. It supplies the Deltoid, Coraco-brachialis, and Triceps muscles, and whilst in the groove between the Triceps and the bone, it gives off the posterior articular artery, which descends perpendicularly between the Triceps and the bone, to the back part of the elbow-joint, where it anastomoses with the interosseous recurrent branch, and, on the inner side of the arm, with the posterior ulnar recurrent, and with the Anastomotica magna or inferior profunda (Fig. 318).

The nutrient artery of the shaft of the humerus arises from the brachial, about the middle of the arm. Passing downwards, it enters the nutrient canal of that bone, near the insertion of the Coraco-brachialis muscle.

The inferior profunda, of small size, arises from the brachial, a little below the middle of the arm; piercing the internal intermuscular septum, it descends on the surface of the inner head of the Triceps muscle, to the space between the inner condyle and olecranon, accompanied by the ulnar nerve, and terminates by anastomosing with the posterior ulnar recurrent, and Anastomotica magna. It also supplies a branch to the front of the internal condyle, which anastomoses with the anterior ulnar recurrent.

The Anastomotica magna arises from the brachial, about two inches above the elbow-joint. It passes transversely inwards upon the Brachialis anticus, and, piercing the internal intermuscular septum, winds round the back part of the humerus between the Triceps and the bone, forming an arch above the olecranon fossa, by its junction with the posterior articular branch of the superior profunda. As this vessel lies on the Brachialis anticus, an offset passes between the internal condyle and olecranon, which anastomoses with the inferior profunda and posterior ulnar recurrent arteries. Other branches ascend to join the inferior profunda; and some descend in front of the inner condyle, to anastomose with the anterior ulnar recurrent.

The muscular are three or four large branches, which are distributed to the muscles in the course of the artery. They supply the Coraco-brachialis, Biceps, and Brachialis anticus muscles.

The Anastomosis around the Elbow-joint (Fig. 318). The vessels engaged in this anastomosis may be conveniently divided into those situated in front of and behind the Internal and External Condyles. The branches anastomosing in front of the Internal Condyle are: The Anastomotica magna, the anterior ulnar recurrent, and the anterior terminal branch of the inferior profunda. Those behind the Internal Condyle are: The Anastomotica magna, the posterior ulnar recurrent, and the posterior terminal branch of the inferior profunda. The branches anastomosing in front of the External Condyle are: The radial recurrent and the termination of the superior profunda. Those behind the External Condyle (perhaps more properly described as being situated between the external condyle and the olecranon) are: The Anastomotica magna, the interosseous recurrent, and the posterior articular branch of the superior profunda. There is also
a large arch of anastomosis above the olecranon formed by the interosseous recurrent, joining with the anastomotica magna and posterior ulnar recurrent (Fig. 818).

From this description it will be observed that the anastomotica magna is the vessel most engaged, the only part of the anastomosis in which it is not employed being that in front of the external condyle.

**Radial Artery.**

The Radial Artery appears, from its direction, to be the continuation of the brachial, but, in size, it is smaller than the ulnar. It commences at the bifurcation of the brachial, just below the bend of the elbow, and passes along the radial side of the forearm to the wrist; it then winds backwards, round the outer side of the carpus, beneath the extensor tendons of the thumb, and, finally, passes forwards between the two heads of the first Dorsal interosseous muscle, into the palm of the hand, where it crosses the metacarpal bones to the ulnar border of the hand, to form the deep palmar arch. At its termination, it inoculates with the deep branch of the ulnar artery. The relations of this vessel may thus be conveniently divided into three parts, viz., in the forearm, at the back of the wrist, and in the hand.

*Relations.* In the forearm, this vessel extends from opposite the neck of the radius, to the fore part of the styloid process, being placed to the inner side of the shaft of the bone above, and in front of it below. It is superficial throughout its entire extent, being covered by the integument, the superficial and deep fascia, and slightly overlapped above by the Supinator longus. In its course downwards, it lies upon the tendon of the Biceps, the Supinator brevis, the Pronator radii teres, the radial origin of the Flexor sublimis digitorum, the Flexor longus pollicis, the Pronator quadratus, and the lower extremity of the radius. In the upper third of its course, it lies between the Supinator longus and the Pronator radii teres; in its lower two-thirds, between the tendons of the Supinator longus and the Flexor carpi radialis. The radial nerve lies along the outer side of the artery in the middle third of its course; and some filaments of the musculo-cutaneous nerve, after piercing the deep fascia, run along the lower part of the artery as it winds round the wrist. The vessel is accompanied by vasa comitantes throughout its whole course.

**Plan of the Relations of the Radial Artery in the Forearm.**

*In front.*
Integument—superficial and deep fascia.
Supinator longus.

*Inner side.*
- Pronator radii teres.
- Flexor carpi radialis.

*Radial Artery in Forearm.*

*Outer side.*
- Supinator longus.
- Radial nerve (middle third).

*Behind.*
- Tendon of Biceps.
- Supinator brevis.
- Pronator radii teres.
- Flexor sublimis digitorum.
- Flexor longus pollicis.
- Pronator quadratus.
- Radius.

*At the wrist,* as it winds round the outer side of the carpus, from the styloid process to the first interosseous space, it lies upon the external lateral ligament,
being covered by the extensor tendons of the thumb, subcutaneous veins, some filaments of the radial nerve, and the integument. It is accompanied by two veins and a filament of the musculo-cutaneous nerve.

In the hand, it passes from the upper end of the first interosseous space, between the heads of the Abductor indicis or first Dorsal interosseous muscle transversely across the palm, to the base of the metacarpal bone of the little finger, where it inosculates with the communicating branch from the ulnar artery, forming the deep palmar arch. It lies upon the carpal extremities of the metacarpal bones and the Interossei muscles, being covered by the flexor tendons of the fingers, the Lumbricales, the muscles of the little finger, and the Flexor brevis pollicis, and is accompanied by the deep branch of the ulnar nerve.

**Peculiarities.** The origin of the radial artery varies in the proportion nearly of one in eight cases. In one case the origin was lower than usual. In the other cases, the upper part of the brachial was a more frequent source of origin than the axillary. The variations in the position of this vessel in the arm, and at the bend of the elbow, have been already mentioned. In the forearm it deviates less frequently from its position than the ulnar. It has been found lying over the fascia, instead of beneath it. It has also been observed on the surface of the Supinator longus instead of along its inner border; and in turning round the wrist, it has been seen lying over, instead of beneath, the Extensor tendons.

**Surgical Anatomy.** The operation of tying the radial artery is required in cases of wounds either of its trunk, or in some of its branches, or for aneurism: and it will be observed, that the vessel may be exposed in any part of its course through the forearm without the division of any muscular fibres. The operation in the middle or inferior third of the forearm is easily performed; but in the upper third near the elbow, it is attended with some difficulty, from the greater depth of the vessel, and from its being overlapped by the Supinator longus and Pronator teres muscles.
To tie the artery in the upper third, an incision three inches in length should be made through the integument, from the bend of the elbow obliquely downwards and outwards, on the radial side of the forearm, avoiding the branches of the median vein; the fascia of the arm being divided and the Supinator longus drawn a little outwards, the artery will be exposed. The veins contained should be carefully separated from the vessel, and the ligature passed from the radial to the ulnar side.

In the middle third of the forearm the artery may be exposed by making an incision of similar length on the inner margin of the Supinator longus. In this situation, the radial nerve lies in close relation with the outer side of the artery, and should as well as the veins be carefully avoided.

In the lower third, the artery is easily secured by dividing the integument and fascia in the interval between the tendons of the Supinator longus and Flexor carpi radialis muscles.

The branches of the radial artery may be divided into three groups corresponding with the three regions in which the vessel is situated.

In the Forearm.

Radial recurrent.
Muscular.
Superficialis volae.
Anterior carpal.

In the Wrist.

Posterior carpal.
Metacarpal.
Dorsales pollicis.
Dorsalis indicis.

In the Hand.

Princeps pollicis.
Radialis indicis.
Perforating.
Interosseous.

The radial recurrent is given off immediately below the elbow. It ascends between the branches of the musculo-spiral nerve, lying on the Supinator brevis and then between the Supinator longus and Brachialis anticus, supplying these muscles and the elbow-joint, and anastomosing with the terminal branches of the superior profunda.

The muscular branches are distributed to the muscles on the radial side of the forearm.

The superficialis volae arises from the radial artery, just where this vessel is about to wind round the wrist. Running forwards, it passes between the muscles of the thumb, which it supplies, and sometimes anastomoses with the termination of the ulnar artery, completing the superficial palmar arch. This vessel varies considerably in size; usually it is very small, and terminates in the muscles of the thumb; sometimes it is as large as the continuation of the radial.

The carpal branches supply the joints of the wrist. The anterior carpal is a small vessel which arises from the radial artery near the lower border of the Pronator quadratus, and, running inwards in front of the radius, anastomoses with the anterior carpal branch of the ulnar artery. From the arch thus formed, branches descend to supply the articulations of the wrist.

The posterior carpal is a small vessel which arises from the radial artery beneath the extensor tendons of the thumb; crossing the carpus transversely to the inner border of the hand, it anastomoses with the posterior carpal branch of the ulnar. It sends branches upwards, which anastomose with the termination of the anterior interosseous artery; other branches descend to the metacarpal spaces; they are the dorsal interosseous arteries for the third and fourth interosseous spaces; they anastomose with the posterior perforating branches from the deep palmar arch.

The metacarpal (first dorsal interosseous branch) arises beneath the extensor tendons of the thumb, sometimes with the posterior carpal artery; running forwards on the second dorsal interosseous muscle, it communicates, behind, with the corresponding perforating branch of the deep palmar arch; and, in front, inosculates with the digital branch of the superficial palmar arch, and supplies the adjoining sides of the index and middle fingers.

The dorsales pollicis are two small vessels which run along the side of the dorsal aspect of the thumb. They arise separately or occasionally by a common trunk near the base of the first metacarpal bone.
The *dorsalis indicis*, also a small branch, runs along the radial side of the back of the index finger, sending a few branches to the Abductor indicis.

The *princeps pollicis* arises from the radial just as it turns inwards to the deep part of the hand; it descends between the Abductor indicis and Abductor pollicis, along the ulnar side of the metacarpal bone of the thumb, to the base of the first phalanx, where it divides into two branches, which run along the sides of the palmar aspect of the thumb, and form an arch on the under surface of the last phalanx, from which branches are distributed to the integument and cellular membrane of the thumb.

The *radialis indicis* arises close to the preceding, descends between the Abductor indicis and Adductor pollicis, and runs along the radial side of the index finger to its extremity, where it anastomoses with the collateral digital artery from the superficial palmar arch. At the lower border of the Adductor pollicis, this vessel anastomoses with the princeps pollicis, and gives a communicating branch to the superficial palmar arch.

The *perforating arteries*, three in number, pass backwards between the heads of the last three Dorsal interosseus muscles, to inosculate with the dorsal interosseous arteries.

The *palmar interosseus*, three or four in number, are branches of the deep palmar arch; they run forwards upon the Interossei muscles, and anastomose at the clefts of the fingers with the digital branches of the superficial arch.

**Ulnar Artery.**

The Ulnar Artery, the larger of the two subdivisions of the brachial, commences a little below the bend of the elbow, and crosses the inner side of the forearm obliquely inwards, to the commencement of its lower half; it then runs along its ulnar border to the wrist, crosses the annular ligament on the radial side of the pisiform bone, and passes across the palm of the hand, forming the superficial palmar arch, which sometimes terminates by inosculating with the superficialis volar.

*Relations in the Forearm.* In its upper half, it is deeply seated, being covered by all the superficial Flexor muscles, excepting the Flexor carpi ulnaris; it is
crossed by the median nerve, which lies to its inner side for about an inch, and it lies upon the Brachialis anticus and Flexor profundus digitorum muscles. In the lower half of the forearm, it lies upon the Flexor profundus, being covered by the integument, the superficial and deep fasciae, and is placed between the Flexor carpi ulnaris and Flexor sublimis digitorum muscles. It is accompanied by two vena comites; the ulnar nerve lies on its inner side for the lower two-thirds of its extent, and a small branch from the nerve descends on the lower part of the vessel to the palm of the hand.

**Plan of Relations of the Ulnar Artery in the Forearm.**

*In front.*
- Superficial layer of flexor muscles.
- Median nerve.
- Superficial and deep fasciae.
- Ulnar Artery in Forearm.

*Upper half.*

*Lower half.*

*Inner side.*
- Flexor carpi ulnaris.
- Ulnar nerve (lower two-thirds).

*Outer side.*
- Flexor sublimis digitorum.

*Behind.*
- Brachialis anticus.
- Flexor profundus digitorum.

At the wrist (Fig. 318), the ulnar artery is covered by the integument and fascia and lies upon the anterior annular ligament. On its inner side is the pisiform bone. The ulnar nerve lies at the inner side, and somewhat behind the artery.

In the palm of the hand, the continuation of the ulnar artery is called the superficial palmar arch; it passes obliquely outwards to the interspace between the ball of the thumb and the index finger, where it occasionally anastomoses with the superficialis volae, and a branch from the radialis indicis, thus completing the arch. The convexity of this arch is directed towards the fingers, its concavity towards the muscles of the thumb. If the thumb be put at right angles to the hand, the position of the superficial palmar arch will be roughly indicated by a line drawn along the lower margin of the thumb across the palm of the hand: the deep palmar arch is situated about a finger's breadth nearer to the carpus.

The superficial palmar arch is covered by the Palmaris brevis, the palmar fascia, and integument; and lies upon the annular ligament, the muscles of the little finger, the tendons of the superficial flexor, and the divisions of the median and ulnar nerves, the latter accompanying the artery a short part of its course.

**Relations of the Superficial Palmar Arch.**

*In front.*
- Integument.
- Palmaris brevis.
- Palmar fascia.

*Behind.*
- Annular ligament.
- Origin of muscles of little finger.
- Superficial flexor tendons.
- Division of median and ulnar nerves.

**Peculiarities.** The ulnar artery has been found to vary in its origin nearly in the proportion of one in thirteen cases, in one case arising lower than usual, about two or three inches below the elbow, and in all the other cases much higher, the brachial being a more frequent source of origin than the axillary.

Variations in the position of this vessel are more frequent than in the radial. When its origin is normal, the course of the vessel is rarely changed. When it arises high up, it is almost invariably superficial to the Flexor muscles in the forearm, lying commonly beneath the fascia, more
rarely between the fascia and integument. In a few cases, its position was subcutaneous in the upper part of the forearm, subaponeurotic in the lower part.

Surgical Anatomy. The application of a ligature to this vessel is required in cases of wound of the artery, or of its branches, or in consequence of aneurism. In the upper half of the forearm, the artery is deeply seated beneath the superficial Flexor muscles, and their division would be requisite in a case of recent wound of the artery in this situation, in order to secure it, but under no other circumstances. In the middle and lower third of the forearm, this vessel may be easily secured by making an incision on the radial side of the tendon of the Flexor carpi ulnaris: the deep fascia being divided, and the Flexor carpi ulnaris and its companion muscle, the Flexor sublimis, being separated from each other, the vessel will be exposed, accompanied by its veins coming, the ulnar nerve lying on its inner side. The veins being separated from the artery, the ligature should be passed from the ulnar to the radial side, taking care to avoid the ulnar nerve.

The branches of the ulnar artery may be arranged in the following groups:

- Anterior ulnar recurrent.
- Posterior ulnar recurrent.

Forearm:

- Anterior interosseous.
  - Anterior interosseous.
- Posterior interosseous.
  - Posterior interosseous.
- Muscular.

Wrist:

- Anterior carpal.
- Posterior carpal.

Hand:

- Deep or communicating branch.
- Digital.

The anterior ulnar recurrent (Fig. 317) arises immediately below the elbow joint, passes upwards and inwards between the Brachialis anticus and Pronator radii teres, supplies those muscles, and, in front of the inner condyle, anastomoses with the anastomotica magna and inferior profunda.

The posterior ulnar recurrent is much larger, and arises somewhat lower than the foregoing. It passes backwards and inwards, beneath the Flexor sublimis, and ascends behind the inner condyle of the humerus. In the interval between this process and the olecranon, it lies beneath the Flexor carpi ulnaris, ascending between the heads of that muscle, beneath the ulnar nerve; it supplies the neighboring muscles and joint, and anastomoses with the inferior profunda, anastomotica magna, and interosseous recurrent arteries (Fig. 318).

The interosseous artery (Fig. 317) is a short trunk, about an inch in length, and of considerable size, which arises immediately below the tuberosity of the radius, and, passing backwards to the upper border of the interosseous membrane, divides into two branches, the anterior and posterior interosseous.

The anterior interosseous passes down the forearm on the anterior surface of the interosseous membrane, to which it is connected by a thin aponeurotic arch. It is accompanied by the interosseous branch of the median nerve, and overlapped by the contiguous margins of the Flexor longus pollicis muscles, giving off in this situation muscular branches, and the nutrient arteries of the radius and ulna. At the upper border of the Pronator quadratus, a branch descends in front of that muscle, to anastomose in front of the carpus with branches from the anterior carpal and deep palmar arch. The continuation of the artery passes behind the Pronator quadratus (Fig. 318), and, piercing the interosseous membrane, descends to the back of the wrist, where it anastomoses with the posterior interosseous and the posterior carpal branches of the radial and ulnar arteries. The anterior interosseous gives off a long, slender branch, which accompanies the median nerve, and gives offets to its substance. This, the median artery, is sometimes much enlarged.

The posterior interosseous artery passes backwards through the interval between the oblique ligament and the upper border of the interosseous membrane, and runs down the back part of the forearm, between the superficial and deep layer of muscles, to both of which it distributes branches. Descending to the back of the wrist, it anastomoses with the termination of the anterior interosseous, and with the posterior carpal branches of the radial and ulnar arteries. This artery gives off, near its origin, the interosseous recurrent branch, a large vessel,
which ascends to the interval between the external condyle and olecranon, beneath the Anconeus and Supinator brevis, anastomosing with a branch from the superior profunda, and with the posterior ulnar recurrent, and anastomotica magna.

The muscular branches are distributed to the muscles along the ulnar side of the forearm.

The carpal branches are intended for the supply of the wrist-joint.

The anterior carpal is a small vessel which crosses the front of the carpus beneath the tendons of the Flexor profundus, and inosculates with a corresponding branch of the radial artery.

The posterior carpal arises immediately above the pisiform bone, winding backwards beneath the tendon of the Flexor carpi ulnaris; it gives off a branch which passes across the dorsal surface of the carpus beneath the extensor tendons, anastomosing with a corresponding branch of the radial artery, and forming the posterior carpal arch; it is then continued along the metacarpal bone of the little finger, forming its dorsal branch.

The deep or communicating branch (Fig. 317) arises at the commencement of the palmar arch, and passes deeply inwards between the Abductor minimi digitii and Flexor brevis minimi digitii, near their origins; it anastomoses with the termination of the radial artery, completing the deep palmar arch.

The digital branches (Fig. 318), four in number, are given off from the convexity of the superficial palmar arch. They supply the ulnar side of the little finger, and the adjoining sides of the little, ring, middle, and index fingers; the radial side of the index finger and thumb being supplied from the radial artery. The digital arteries at first lie superficial to the flexor tendons, but as they pass forwards with the digital nerves to the clefts between the fingers, they lie between them, and are there joined by the interosseous branches from the deep palmar arch. The digital arteries on the sides of the fingers lie beneath the digital nerves; and, about
the middle of the last phalanx, the two branches for each finger form an arch, from the convexity of which branches pass to supply the matrix of the nail.

**THE DESCENDING AORTA.**

The Descending Aorta is divided into two portions, the thoracic, and abdominal, in correspondence with the two great cavities of the trunk in which it is situated.

**THE THORACIC AORTA.**

The Thoracic Aorta commences at the lower border of the fourth dorsal vertebra, on the left side, and terminates at the aortic opening in the Diaphragm, in front of the last dorsal vertebra. At its commencement, it is situated on the left side of the spine; it approaches the median line as it descends; and, at its termination, lies directly in front of the column. The direction of this vessel being influenced by the spine, upon which it rests, it describes a curve which is concave forwards in the dorsal region. As the branches given off from it are small, the diminution in the size of the vessel is inconsiderable. It is contained in the back part of the posterior mediastinum, being in relation, in front, from above downwards, with the left pulmonary artery, the left bronchus, the pericardium, and the oesophagus; behind, with the vertebral column, and the vena azygos minor; on the right side, with the vena azygos major, and thoracic duct; on the left side, with the left pleura and lung. The oesophagus, with its accompanying nerves, lies on the right side of the aorta above: in front of the artery, in the middle of its course; whilst, at its lower part, it is on the left side, on a plane anterior to it.

**PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE THORACIC AORTA.**

- **In front.**
  - Left pulmonary artery.
  - Left bronchus.
  - Pericardium.
  - Oesophagus.

- **Right side.**
  - Oesophagus (above).
  - Vena azygos major.
  - Thoracic duct.

- **Thoracic Aorta.**

- **Left side.**
  - Pleura.
  - Left lung.
  - Oesophagus (below).

- **Behind.**
  - Vertebral column.
  - Vena azygos minor.

*Surgical Anatomy.* The student should now consider the effects likely to be produced by aneurism of the thoracic aorta, a disease of common occurrence. When we consider the great depth of the vessel from the surface, and the number of important structures which surround it on every side, it may be easily conceived what a variety of obscure symptoms may arise from disease of this part of the arterial system. and how they may be liable to be mistaken for those of other affections. Aneurism of the thoracic aorta most usually extends backwards, along the left side of the spine, producing absorption of the bodies of the vertebrae, with curvature of the spine; whilst the irritation or pressure on the cord will give rise to pain, either in the chest, back, or loins, with radiating pain in the left upper intercostal spaces, from pressure on the intercostal nerves; at the same time the tumor may project backwards on each side of the spine, beneath the integument, as a pulsating swelling, simulating abscess connected with diseased bone; or it may displace the oesophagus, and compress the lung on one or the other side. If the tumor extend forward, it may press upon and displace the heart, giving rise to palpitation and other symptoms of disease of that organ; or it may displace, or even compress, the oesophagus, causing pain and difficulty of swallowing, as in stricture of that tube, and ultimately even open into it by ulceration, producing fatal hemorrhage. If the disease make way to either side, it may press upon the thoracic duct; or it may burst into the pleural cavity, or into the trachea or lung; and lastly, it may open into the posterior mediastinum.
BRANCHES OF THE THORACIC AORTA.

The aorta is, comparatively often, found to be obliterated at a particular spot, viz., at the junction of the arch with the thoracic aorta, just below the ductus arteriosus. Whether this is the result of disease, or of congenital malformation, is immaterial to our present purpose; it affords an interesting opportunity of observing the resources of the collateral circulation. The course of the anastomosing vessels, by which the blood is brought from the upper to the lower part of the artery, will be found well described in an account of two cases in the *Pathological Transactions*, vols. viii. and x. In the former (p. 162), Mr. Sydney Jones thus sums up the detailed description of the anastomosing vessels. “The principal communications by which the circulation was carried on, were—Firstly, the internal mammary, anastomosing with the intercostal arteries, with the phrenic of the abdominal aorta by means of the musculo-phrenic and comes nervi phrenici, and largely with the deep epigastric. Secondly, the superior intercostal, anastomosing anteriorly by means of a large branch with the first aortic intercostal, and posteriorly with the posterior branch of the same artery. Thirdly, the inferior thyroid, by means of a branch about the size of an ordinary radial, formed a communication with the first aortic intercostal. Fourthly, the transversalis colli, by means of very large communications with the posterior branches of the intercostals. Fifthly, the branches (of the subclavian and axillary) going to the side of the chest were large and anastomosed freely with the lateral branches of the intercostals.” In the second case also (vol. x. p. 97), Mr. Wood describes the anastomoses in a somewhat similar manner, adding the remark, that “the blood which was brought into the aorta through the anastomoses of the intercostal arteries, appeared to be expended principally in supplying the abdomen and pelvis; while the supply to the lower extremities had passed through the internal mammary and epigastrics.”

BRANCHES OF THE THORACIC AORTA.

Pericardiac. Esophageal.
Bronchial. Posterior mediastinal.

Intercostal.

The *pericardiac* are a few small vessels, irregular in their origin, distributed to the pericardium.

The *bronchial* arteries are the nutrient vessels of the lungs, and vary in number, size, and origin. That of the right side arises from the first aortic intercostal, or by a common trunk with the left bronchial, from the front of the thoracic aorta. Those of the left side, usually two in number, arise from the thoracic aorta, one a little lower than the other. Each vessel is directed to the back part of the corresponding bronchus, along which they run, dividing and subdividing upon the bronchial tubes, supplying them, the cellular tissue of the lungs, the bronchial glands, and the esophagus.

The *oesophageal arteries*, usually four or five in number, arise from the front of the aorta, and pass obliquely downwards to the esophagus, forming a chain of anastomoses along that tube anastomosing with the oesophageal branches of the inferior thyroid arteries above, and with ascending branches from the phrenic and gastric arteries below.

The *posterior mediastinal arteries* are numerous small vessels which supply the glands and loose areolar tissue in the mediastinum.

The *Intercostal arteries* arise from the back part of the aorta. They are usually ten in number on each side, the superior intercostal space (and occasionally the second one) being supplied by the superior intercostal, a branch of the subclavian. The right intercostals are longer than the left, on account of the position of the aorta on the left side of the spine; they pass outwards, across the bodies of the vertebrae, to the intercostal spaces, being covered by the pleura, the oesophagus, thoracic duct, sympathetic nerve, and the vena azygos major; the left passing beneath the superior intercostal vein, the vena azygos minor, and sympathetic. In the intercostal spaces, each artery divides into two branches; an anterior, or proper intercostal branch; and a posterior, or dorsal branch.

The *anterior branch* passes outwards, at first lying upon the External intercostal muscle, covered in front by the pleura and a thin fascia. It then passes between the two layers of Intercostal muscles, and, having ascended obliquely to the lower border of the rib above, divides, near the angle of that bone, into two branches: of these the larger runs in the groove, on the lower border of
the rib above; the smaller branch along the upper border of the rib below; passing forward, they supply the Intercostal muscles, and anastomose with the anterior intercostal branches of the internal mammary, and with the thoracic branches of the axillary artery. The first aortic intercostal anastomoses with the superior intercostal, and the last three pass between the abdominal muscles, inosculating with the epigastric in front, and with the phrenic and lumbar arteries. Each intercostal artery is accompanied by a vein and nerve, the former being above, and the latter below, except in the upper intercostal spaces, where the nerve is at first above the artery. The arteries are protected from pressure during the action of the Intercostal muscles, by fibrous arches thrown across, and attached by each extremity to the bone.

Fig. 319.—The Abdominal Aorta and its Branches.

The posterior or dorsal branch, of each intercostal artery, passes backwards to the inner side of the anterior costo-transverse ligament, and divides into a spinal
branch, which supplies the vertebrae, the spinal cord and its membranes, and a muscular branch, which is distributed to the muscles and integument of the back.

**THE ABDOMINAL AORTA. (Fig. 319.)**

The Abdominal Aorta commences at the aortic opening of the Diaphragm, in front of the body of the last dorsal vertebra, and descending a little to the left side of the vertebral column, terminates on the body of the fourth lumbar vertebra, commonly a little to the left of the middle line, where it divides into the two common iliac arteries. It diminishes rapidly in size, in consequence of the many large branches which it gives off. As it lies upon the bodies of the vertebrae, the curve which it describes is convex forwards, the greatest convexity corresponding to the third lumbar vertebra, which is a little above and to the left side of the umbilicus.

**Relations.** It is covered, in front, by the lesser omentum and stomach, behind which are the branches of the celiac axis, and the solar plexus; below these, by the splenic vein, the pancreas, the left renal vein, the transverse portion of the duodenum, the mesentery, and aortic plexus. Behind, it is separated from the lumbar vertebrae by the left lumbar veins, the receptaculum chyli, and thoracic duct. On the right side, it is in relation with the superior vena cava (the right crus of the Diaphragm being interposed above), the vena azygos, thoracic duct, and right semilunar ganglion; on the left side, with the sympathetic nerve, and left semilunar ganglion.

**PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE ABDOMINAL AORTA.**

**In front.**
- Lesser omentum and stomach.
- Branches of celiac axis and solar plexus.
- Splenic vein.
- Pancreas.
- Left renal vein.
- Transverse duodenum.
- Mesentery.
- Aortic plexus.

**Right side.**
- Right crus of Diaphragm.
- Inferior vena cava.
- Vena azygos.
- Thoracic duct.
- Right semilunar ganglion.

**Left side.**
- Sympathetic nerve.
- Left semilunar ganglion.

**Behind.**
- Left lumbar veins.
- Receptaculum chyli.
- Thoracic duct.
- Vertebral column.

**Surgical Anatomy.** Aneurisms of the abdominal aorta near the celiac axis communicate in nearly equal proportion with the anterior and posterior parts of the artery. When an aneurismal sac is connected with the back part of the abdominal aorta, it usually produces absorption of the bodies of the vertebrae, and forms a pulsating tumor, that presents itself in the left hypochondriac or epigastric regions, accompanied by symptoms of disturbance of the alimentary canal. Pain is invariably present, and is usually of two kinds—a fixed and constant pain in the back, caused by the tumor pressing on or displacing the branches of the solar plexus and splanchnic nerves, and a sharp lancinating pain, radiating along those branches of the lumbar nerves which are pressed on by the tumor; hence the pain in the loins, the testes,

---

1 Prof. Lister, having accurately examined 30 bodies in order to ascertain the exact point of termination of this vessel, found it "either absolutely, or almost absolutely, mesial in 15, while in 13 it diviated more or less to the left, and in 2 was slightly to the right."—*Syst. of Surg.*, edited by T. Holmes, 2d ed. vol. v. p. 652.
the hypogastrum, and in the lower limb (usually of the left side). This form of aneurism usually bursts into the peritoneal cavity, or behind the peritoneum, in the left hypochondriac region; or it may form a large aneurismal sac, extending down as low as Poupart's ligament; hemorrhage in these cases being generally very extensive, but slowly produced, and not rapidly fatal.

When an aneurismal sac is connected with the front of the aorta near the coeliac axis, it forms a pulsating tumor in the left hypochondriac or epigastric regions, usually attended with symptoms of disturbance of the alimentary canal, as sickness, dyspepsia, or constipation, and accompanied by pain, which is constant, but nearly always fixed in the loins, epigastrium, or some part of the abdomen; the radiating pain being rare, as the lumbar nerves are seldom implicated. This form of aneurism may burst into the peritoneal cavity, or behind the peritoneum, between the layers of the mesentery, or, more rarely, into the duodenum; it rarely extends backwards so as to affect the spine.

The abdominal aorta has been tied several times, and although none of the patients permanently recovered, still, as one of them lived as long as ten days, the possibility of the re-establishment of the circulation may be considered to be proved. In the lower animals this artery is often successfully tied. The vessel may be reached in several ways. In the original operation, performed by Sir A. Cooper, an incision was made in the linea alba, the peritoneum opened in front, the finger carried down amongst the intestines towards the spine, the peritoneum again opened behind, by scratching through the mesentery, and the vessel thus reached. Or either of the operations, described below, for securing the common iliac artery, may, by extending the dissection a sufficient distance upwards, be made use of to expose the aorta. The chief difficulty in the dead subject consists in isolating the artery, in consequence of its great depth; but in the living subject, the embarrassment resulting from the proximity of the aneurismal tumor, and the great probability of disease in the vessel itself, add to the dangers and difficulties of this formidable operation so greatly, that it is very doubtful whether it ought ever to be performed.

The collateral circulation would be carried on by the anastomosis between the internal mammary and the epigastric; by the free communication between the superior and inferior mesenterics, if the ligature were placed above the latter vessel; or by the anastomosis between the inferior mesenteric and the internal pudic, when (as is more common) the point of ligature is below the origin of the inferior mesenteric; and possibly by the anastomoses of the lumbar arteries with the branches of the internal iliac.

The circulation through the abdominal aorta may be commanded, in thin persons, by firm pressure with the fingers. A tourniquet has been invented for this purpose, which is of the greatest use in amputation at the hip-joint and some other operations.

**Branches of the Abdominal Aorta.**

Phrenic.

Celiac axis.  
  | Gastric. | Renal. |
  | Hepatic. | Spermatic. |
  | Splenic. | Inferior mesenteric. |

Superior mesenteric.  
  | Lumbar. |

Suprarenal.  
  | Sacra media. |

The branches may be divided into two sets: 1. Those supplying the viscera. 2. Those distributed to the walls of the abdomen.

**Visceral Branches.**

Celiac axis.  
  | Gastric. |
  | Hepatic. |
  | Splenic. |

Superior mesenteric.  
  | Inferior mesenteric. |

Suprarenal.  
  | Renal. |

**Parietal Branches.**

Phrenic.  
  | Lumbar. |

Sacra media.  

**Celiac Axis. (Fig. 320.)**

To expose this artery, raise the liver, draw down the stomach, and then tear through the layers of the lesser omentum.

The Celiac Axis is a short thick trunk, about half an inch in length, which arises from the aorta, opposite the margin of the Diaphragm, and, passing nearly horizontally forwards (in the erect posture), divides into three large branches, the gastric, hepatic, and splenic, occasionally giving off one of the phrenic arteries.
Relations. It is covered by the lesser omentum. On the right side, it is in relation with the right semilunar ganglion, and the lobus Spigellii; on the left side, with the left semilunar ganglion and cardiac end of the stomach. Below, it rests upon the upper border of the pancreas.

The Gastric Artery (Coronaria Ventriculi), the smallest of the three branches of the cœeliac axis, passes upwards and to the left side, to the cardiac orifice of the stomach, distributing branches to the oesophagus, which anastomose with the aortic œsophageal arteries; others supply the cardiac end of the stomach, inosculating with branches of the splenic artery: it then passes from left to right, along the lesser curvature of the stomach to the pylorus, lying in its course between the layers of the lesser omentum, and giving branches to both surfaces of the organ: at its termination it anastomoses with the pyloric branch of the hepatic.

Fig. 320.—The Cœliac Axis and its Branches, the Liver having been raised, and the Lesser Omentum removed.

The Hepatic Artery in the adult is intermediate in size between the gastric and splenic; in the fetus, it is the largest of the three branches of the cæliac axis. It passes upwards to the right side, between the layers of the lesser omentum, and in front of the foramen of Winslow, to the transverse fissure of the liver, where it divides into two branches, right and left, which supply the corresponding lobes of that organ, accompanying the ramifications of the vena portæ and hepatic duct. The hepatic artery, in its course along the right border of the lesser omentum, is in relation with the ductus communis cholethodochus and portal veins, the duct lying to the right of the artery, and the vena portæ behind.
Its branches are the
Pyloric.
  Gastro-duodenalis.
  \{ Gastro-epiploica dextra.
  \} Pancreatico-duodenalis superior.
Cystic.

The pyloric branch arises from the hepatic, above the pylorus, descends to the pyloric end of the stomach, and passes from right to left along its lesser curvature, supplying it with branches, and inosculating with the gastric artery.

The gastro-duodenalis (Fig. 321) is a short but large branch, which descends behind the duodenum, near the pylorus, and divides at the lower border of the stomach into two branches, the gastro-epiploica dextra and the pancreatice-duodenalis superior. Previous to its division, it gives off two or three small inferior pyloric branches to the pyloric end of the stomach and pancreas.

Fig. 321.—The Celiac Axis and its Branches, the Stomach having been raised, and the Transverse Mesocolon removed.

The gastro-epiploica dextra runs from right to left along the greater curvature of the stomach, between the layers of the great omentum, anastomosing about the middle of the lower border of the stomach with the gastro-epiploica sinistra from the splenic artery. This vessel gives off numerous branches, some of which ascend to supply both surfaces of the stomach, whilst others descend to supply the great omentum.

The pancreatice-duodenalis superior descends along the contiguous margins of
the duodenum and pancreas. It supplies both these organs, and anastomoses with the inferior pancreatico-duodenal branch of the superior mesenteric artery.

In ulceration of the duodenum, which frequently occurs in connection with severe burns, this artery may be involved, and death may occur from hemorrhage into the intestinal canal.

The cystic artery (Fig. 320), usually a branch of the right hepatic, passes upwards and forwards along the neck of the gall bladder, and divides into two branches, one of which ramifies on its free surface, the other between it and the substance of the liver.

The Splenic Artery, in the adult, is the largest of the three branches of the coeliac axis, and is remarkable for the extreme tortuosity of its course. It passes horizontally to the left side behind the upper border of the pancreas, accompanied by the splenic vein, which lies below it; and, on arriving near the spleen, divides into branches, some of which enter the hilum of that organ to be distributed to its structure, whilst others are distributed to the great end of the stomach.

The branches of this vessel are:

- Pancreaticæ parvæ. Gastric (Vasa brevia).
- Pancreatica magna. Gastro-epiploica sinistra.

The pancreatic are numerous small branches derived from the splenic as it runs behind the upper border of the pancreas, supplying its middle and left parts. One of these, larger than the rest, is given off from the splenic near the left extremity of the pancreas; it runs from left to right near the posterior surface of the gland, following the course of the pancreatic duct, and is called the pancreaticæ magna. These vessels anastomose with the pancreatic branches of the pancreatico-duodenal arteries.

The gastric (vasa brevia) consist of from five to seven small branches, which arise either from the termination of the splenic artery, or from its terminal branches; and passing from left to right, between the layers of the gastro-splenic omentum, are distributed to the great curvature of the stomach; anastomosing with branches of the gastric and gastro-epiploica sinistra arteries.

The gastro-epiploica sinistra, the largest branch of the splenic, runs from left to right along the great curvature of the stomach, between the layers of the great omentum; and anastomoses with the gastro-epiploica dextra. In its course it distributes several branches to the stomach, which ascend upon both surfaces; others ascend to supply the omentum.

Superior Mesenteric Artery. (Fig. 322.)

In order to expose this vessel, raise the great omentum and transverse colon, draw down the small intestines, and cut through the peritoneum where the transverse mesocolon and mesentery join; the artery will then be exposed, just as it issues from beneath the lower border of the pancreas.

The Superior Mesenteric Artery supplies the whole length of the small intestine, except the first part of the duodenum; it also supplies the cecum, ascending and transverse colon: it is a vessel of large size, arising from the fore part of the aorta, about a quarter of an inch below the coeliac axis; being covered at its origin by the splenic vein and pancreas. It passes forwards, between the pancreas and transverse portion of the duodenum, crosses in front of this portion of the intestine, and descends between the layers of the mesentery to the right iliac fossa, where it terminates, considerably diminished in size. In its course it forms an arch, the convexity of which is directed forwards and downwards to the left side, the concavity backwards and upwards to the right. It is accompanied by the superior mesenteric vein, and is surrounded by the superior mesenteric plexus of nerves. Its branches are the:

- Inferior pancreatico-duodenal. Ileo-colic.
- Vasa intestini tenuis. Colica dextra.
- Colica media.
The *inferior pancreatico-duodenal* is given off from the superior mesenteric behind the pancreas, and is distributed to the head of the pancreas, with the transverse and descending portions of the duodenum; anastomosing with the superior pancreatico-duodenal artery.

Fig. 322.—The Superior Mesenteric Artery and its Branches.

The *vasa intestini tenuis* arise from the convex side of the superior mesenteric artery. They are usually from twelve to fifteen in number, and are distributed to the jejunum and ileum. They run parallel with one another between the layers of the mesentery; each vessel dividing into two branches, which unite with a similar branch on each side, forming a series of arches, the convexities of which are directed towards the intestine. From this first set of arches branches arise, which again unite with similar branches from either side, and thus a second series of arches is formed; and from these latter, a third, and a fourth, or even fifth series of arches are constituted, diminishing in size the nearer they approach the intestine. From the terminal arches numerous small straight vessels arise which encircle the intestine, upon which they are distributed, ramifying thickly between its coats.

The *ileo-colic artery* is the lowest branch given off from the concavity of the superior mesenteric artery. It descends between the layers of the mesentery to the right iliac fossa, where it divides into two branches. Of these, the inferior one inosculates with the lowest branches of the *vasa intestini tenuis*, from the
convexity of which branches proceed to supply the termination of the ileum, the cecum and appendix cecii, and the ileo-cecal valve. The superior division inosculates with the colica dextra, and supplies the commencement of the colon.

The colica dextra arises from about the middle of the concavity of the superior mesenteric artery, and, passing beneath the peritoneum to the middle of the ascending colon, divides into two branches: a descending branch, which inosculates with the ileo-colic; and an ascending branch, which anastomoses with the colica media. These branches form arches, from the convexity of which vessels are distributed to the ascending colon. The branches of this vessel are covered with peritoneum only on their anterior aspect.

The colica media arises from the upper part of the concavity of the superior mesenteric, and, passing forwards between the layers of the transverse mesocolon, divides into two branches: the one on the right side inosculating with the colica dextra; that on the left side, with the colica sinistra, a branch of the inferior mesenteric. From the arches formed by these inosculations, branches are distributed to the transverse colon. The branches of this vessel lie between two layers of peritoneum.

**Inferior Mesenteric Artery. (Fig. 323.)**

In order to expose this vessel, draw the small intestines and mesentery over to the right side of the abdomen, raise the transverse colon towards the thorax, and divide the peritoneum covering the left side of the aorta.

The **Inferior Mesenteric Artery** supplies the descending and sigmoid flexure of the colon, and the greater part of the rectum. It is smaller than the superior mesenteric; and arises from the left side of the aorta, between one and two inches above its division into the common iliacs. It passes downwards to the left iliac fossa, and then descends between the layers of the meso-rectum, into the pelvis, under the name of the superior hemorrhoidal artery. It lies at first in close relation with the left side of the aorta, and then passes in front of the left common iliac artery. Its branches are the

Colica sinistra. Sigmoid.
Superior hemorrhoidal.

The colica sinistra passes behind the peritoneum, in front of the left kidney, to reach the descending colon, and divides into two branches: an ascending branch, which inosculates with the colica media; and a descending branch, which anastomoses with the sigmoid artery. From the arches formed by these inosculations, branches are distributed to the descending colon.

The sigmoid artery runs obliquely downwards across the Psoas muscle to the sigmoid flexure of the colon, and divides into branches which supply that part of the intestine; anastomosing above, with the colica sinistra; and below, with the superior hemorrhoidal artery. This vessel is sometimes replaced by three or four small branches.

The superior hemorrhoidal artery, the continuation of the inferior mesenteric, descends into the pelvis between the layers of the meso-rectum, crossing, in its course, the ureter, and left common iliac vessels. Opposite the middle of the sacrum, it divides into two branches, which descend one on each side of the rectum, where they divide into several small branches, which are distributed between the mucous and muscular coats of that tube, nearly as far as its lower end; anastomosing with each other, with the middle hemorrhoidal arteries, branches of the internal iliac, and with the inferior hemorrhoidal branches of the internal pudic.

The student should especially remark, that the trunk of the vessel descends along the back part of the rectum as far as the middle of the sacrum before it divides; this is about a finger's length or four inches from the anus. In disease of this tube, the rectum should never be divided beyond this point in that direction, for fear of involving this artery.
The **Suprarenal Arteries** (Fig. 319) are two small vessels which arise, one on each side of the aorta, opposite the superior mesentric artery. They pass obliquely upwards and outwards to the under surface of the suprarenal capsules, to which they are distributed, anastomosing with capsular branches from the phrenic and renal arteries. In the adult these arteries are of small size; in the fetus they are as large as the renal arteries.

Fig. 323.—The Inferior Mesentric and its Branches.

The **Renal Arteries** are two large trunks, which arise from the sides of the aorta, immediately below the superior mesentric artery. Each is directed outwards, so as to form nearly a right angle with the aorta. The right is longer than the left, on account of the position of the aorta; it passes behind the inferior vena cava. The left is somewhat higher than the right. Previously to entering the kidney, each artery divides into four or five branches which are distributed to its substance. At the hilum, these branches lie between the renal vein and ureter, the vein being usually in front, the ureter behind. Each vessel gives off some small branches to the suprarenal capsules, the ureter and the surrounding cellular membrane and muscles.

The **Spermatic Arteries** are distributed to the testes in the male, and to the ovaria in the female. They are two slender vessels, of considerable length, which arise from the front of the aorta, a little below the renal arteries. Each artery passes obliquely outwards, and downwards, behind the peritoneum,
LUMBAR. 533

crossing the ureter, and resting on the Psoas muscle, the right spermatic lying in front of the inferior vena cava, the left behind the sigmoid flexure of the colon. On reaching the margin of the pelvis, each vessel passes in front of the corresponding external iliac artery, and takes a different course in the two sexes.

In the male, it is directed outwards, to the internal abdominal ring, and accompanies the other constituents of the spermatic cord along the spermatic canal to the testis, where it becomes tortuous, and divides into several branches, two or three of which accompany the vas deferens, and supply the epididymis, anastomosing with the artery of the vas deferens; others pierce the back part of the tunica albuginea, and supply the substance of the testis.

In the female, the spermatic arteries (ovarian) are shorter than in the male, and do not pass out of the abdominal cavity. On arriving at the margins of the pelvis each artery passes inwards, between the two laminae of the broad ligament of the uterus, to be distributed to the ovary. One or two small branches supply the Fallopian tube; another passes on to the side of the uterus, and anastomoses with the uterine arteries. Other offsets are continued along the round ligament, through the inguinal canal, to the integument of the labium and groin.

At an early period of foetal life, when the testes lie by the side of the spine, below the kidneys, the spermatic arteries are short; but as these organs descend from the abdomen into the scrotum, the arteries become gradually lengthened.

The PHRENIC ARTERIES are two small vessels, which present much variety in their origin. They may arise separately from the front of the aorta, immediately below the celiac axis, or by a common trunk, which may spring either from the aorta or from the celiac axis. Sometimes one is derived from the aorta, and the other from one of the renal arteries. In only one out of thirty-six cases examined did these arteries arise as two separate vessels from the aorta. They diverge from one another across the crura of the Diaphragm, and then pass obliquely upwards and outwards upon its under surface. The left phrenic passes behind the oesophagus, and runs forwards on the left side of the oesophageal opening. The right phrenic passes behind the liver and inferior vena cava, and ascends along the right side of the aperture for transmitting that vein. Near the back part of the central tendon, each vessel divides into two branches. The internal branch runs forwards to the front of the thorax, supplying the Diaphragm, and anastomosing with its fellow of the opposite side, and with the musculo-phrenic, a branch of the internal mammary. The external branch passes towards the side of the thorax, and inosculates with the intercostal arteries. The internal branch of the right phrenic gives off a few vessels to the inferior vena cava; and the left one some branches to the oesophagus. Each vessel also sends capsular branches to the suprarenal capsule of its own side. The spleen on the left side, and the liver on the right, also receive a few branches from these vessels.

The LUMBAR ARTERIES are analogous to the intercostal. They are usually four in number on each side, and arise from the back part of the aorta, nearly at right angles with that vessel. They pass outwards and backwards, around the sides of the body of the corresponding lumbar vertebra, behind the sympathetic nerve and the Psoas muscle; those on the right side being covered by the inferior vena cava, and the two upper ones on each side by the crura of the Diaphragm. In the interval between the transverse processes of the vertebrae each artery divides into a dorsal and an abdominal branch.

The dorsal branch gives off, immediately after its origin, a spinal branch, which enters the spinal canal; it then continues its course backwards, between the transverse processes, and is distributed to the muscles and integument of the back, anastomosing with each other, and with the posterior branches of the intercostal arteries.

The spinal branch, besides supplying offsets which run along the nerves to the dura mater and cauda equina, anastomosing with the other spinal arteries, divides
into two branches, one of which ascends on the posterior surface of the body of the vertebra above, and the other descends on the posterior surface of the body of the vertebra below, both vessels anastomosing with similar branches from neighboring spinal arteries. The inosculations of these vessels on each side, throughout the whole length of the spine, form a series of arterial arches behind the bodies of the vertebrae, which are connected with each other, and with a median longitudinal vessel, extending along the middle of the posterior surface of the bodies of the vertebrae, by transverse branches. From these vessels offsets are distributed to the periosteum and bones.

The abdominal branches pass outwards, behind the Quadratus lumborum, the lowest branch occasionally in front of that muscle, and, being continued between the abdominal muscles, anastomose with branches of the epigastric and internal mammary in front, the intercostals above, and those of the ilio-lumbar and circumflex iliac, below.

The Middle Sacral Artery is a small vessel, about the size of a crow-quill, which arises from the back part of the aorta, just at its bifurcation. It descends upon the last lumbar vertebra, and along the middle line of the front of the sacrum, to the upper part of the coccyx, where it anastomoses with the lateral sacral arteries, and terminates in a minute branch, which runs down to the situation of the body presently to be described as “Luschka’s gland.” From it, branches arise which run through the meso-rectum, to supply the posterior surface of the rectum. Other branches are given off on each side which anastomose with the lateral sacral arteries, and send off small offsets which enter the anterior sacral foramina.

Coccygeal Gland, or Luschka’s Gland.—Lying near the tip of the coccyx in a small tendinous interval formed by the union of the Levator ani muscles of either side, and just above the coccygeal attachment of the Sphincter ani, is a small conglobate body, about as large as a lentil or a pea, first described by Luschka, and named by him the coccygeal gland, but the real nature and uses of which are doubtful, nor does it seem at present certain that it always exists. Its most obvious connections are with the arteries of the part. It receives comparatively large branches from the middle and lateral sacral arteries; and its structure, according to Julius Arnold, consists in great measure of dilated arterial vessels. On this account Arnold proposes to call it not a gland, but “glomerulus arterio-coccygeus.” It is sometimes single, sometimes formed of several lobes, surrounded by a very dense capsule, into which the sympathetic filaments from the ganglion impar are to be traced and in which they are said by some observers to terminate. The structure of the body is composed of a number of cavities, which Luschka believes to be glandular follicles, but which are regarded by Arnold as fusiform dilations of the terminal branches from the middle sacral arteries. Nerves pass into this little body both from the sympathetic and from the fifth sacral, and in the interstices of the lobules nerve-cells are described.

This body has been variously regarded as an appendage to the nervous or to the arterial system. The former seems to be Luschka’s view, the latter is Arnold’s. Arnold’s view is supported by the observation of Dr. Macalister, that he has found in several birds the middle sacral arteries terminating in a bunch of interlacing and anastomosing capillaries, but without any capsule; and

2 Virchow, Arch., 1864, 5, 6; see also Krause and Meyer in Henle and Pfeiffer’s Zeitseh. f. rat. Medizin.
3 In a course of lectures recently delivered at the College of Surgeons, on the Development of the Brain, Mr. Callender suggests that Luschka’s gland may have the same relation to the development of the spinal cord as he proves the pineal and pituitary body to have to that of the brain. Brit. Med. Journ., June 13, 1874.
4 British Medical Journal, Jan. 11, 1868.
it is rendered in the highest degree probable, if Arnold’s observation be correct, that several small saccular bodies, of a somewhat similar kind, may be found connected with the middle sacral artery.

(For a more detailed description of this body, we would refer to the elaborate account in “Luschka’s Anatomie,” and to the authorities quoted in Dr. Macalister’s paper, as well as to a monograph by Dr. W. Mitchell Banks, reprinted in 1867 from the “Glasgow Medical Journal.”)

**COMMON Iliac Arteries.**

The abdominal aorta divides into the two Common Iliac arteries. The bifurcation usually takes place on the left side of the body of the fourth lumbar vertebra. This point corresponds to the left side of the umbilicus, and is on a level with a line drawn from the highest point of one iliac crest to the other. The common iliac arteries are about two inches in length; diverging from the termination of the aorta, they pass downwards and outwards to the margin of the pelvis, and divide opposite the intervertebral substance, between the last lumbar vertebra and the sacrum, into two branches, the external and internal iliac arteries: the former supplying the lower extremity; the latter, the viscera and parietes of the pelvis.

The right common iliac is somewhat larger than the left, and passes more obliquely across the body of the last lumbar vertebra. In front of it are the peritoneum, the ileum, branches of the sympathetic nerve, and, at its point of division, the ureter. **Behind,** it is separated from the last lumbar vertebra by the two common iliac veins. On its **outer side,** it is in relation with the inferior vena cava, and the right common iliac vein, above; and the Psoas magnus muscle below.

The left common iliac is in relation, in front, with the peritoneum, branches of the sympathetic nerve, the rectum and superior hemorrhoidal artery; and is crossed at its point of bifurcation by the ureter. The left common iliac vein lies partly on the inner side, and partly beneath the artery; on its outer side, the artery is in relation with the Psoas magnus.

**Branches.** The common iliac arteries give off small branches to the peritoneum, Psoas muscles, ureters, and the surrounding cellular membrane, and occasionally give origin to the ilio-lumbar, or renal arteries.

**PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE COMMON IliAC ArTERIES.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In front.</th>
<th>In front.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peritoneum.</td>
<td>Peritoneum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small intestines.</td>
<td>Sympathetic nerves.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sympathetic nerves.</td>
<td>Rectum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureter.</td>
<td>Superior hemorrhoidal artery.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Behind.**

Right and Left common iliac veins.

**Peculiarities.** The **point of origin** varies according to the bifurcation of the aorta. In three-fourths of a large number of cases, the aorta bifurcated either upon the fourth lumbar vertebra, or upon the intervertebral disk between it and the fifth; the bifurcation being, in one case out of nine below, and in one out of eleven above this point. In ten out of every thirteen cases, the vessel bifurcated within half an inch above or below the level of the crest of the ilium; more frequently below than above.
The point of division is subject to great variety. In two-thirds of a large number of cases it was between the last lumbar vertebra and the upper border of the sacrum; being above that point in one case out of eight, and below it in one case out of six. The left common iliac artery divides lower down more frequently than the right.

The relative length, also, of the two common iliac arteries varies. The right common iliac was the longer in sixty-three cases; the left in fifty-two; whilst they were both equal in fifty-three. The length of the arteries varied in five-sevenths of the cases examined, from an inch and a half to three inches; in about half of the remaining cases, the artery was longer; and in the other half, shorter; the minimum length being less than half an inch, the maximum four and a half inches. In one instance, the right common iliac was found wanting, the external and internal iliacs arising directly from the aorta.

Surgical Anatomy. The application of a ligature to the common iliac artery may be required on account of aneurism or hemorrhage, implicating the external or internal iliacs, or on account of secondary hemorrhage after amputation of the thigh high up. It has been seen that the origin of this vessel corresponds to the left side of the umbilicus on a level with a line drawn from the highest point of one iliac crest to the opposite one, and its course to a line extending from the left side of the umbilicus downwards towards the middle of Poupart's ligament. The line of incision required in the first steps of an operation for securing this vessel, would materially depend upon the nature of the disease. If the surgeon select the iliac region, a curved incision, about five inches in length, may be made, commencing on the left side of the umbilicus, carried outwards towards the anterior superior iliac spine, and then along the upper border of Poupart's ligament, as far as its middle. But if the aneurismal tumor should extend high up in the abdomen, along the external iliac, it is better to select the side of the abdomen, approaching the artery from above, by making an incision from four to five inches in length, from about two inches above and

Fig. 324.—Arteries of the Pelvis.
to the left of the umbilicus, carried outwards in a curved direction towards the lumbar region, and terminating a little below the anterior superior iliac spine. The abdominal muscles (in either case) having been cautiously divided in succession, the transversalis fascia must be carefully cut through, and the peritoneum, together with the ureter, separated from the artery, and pushed aside; the sacro-iliac articulation must then be felt for, and upon it the vessel will be felt pulsating, and may be fully exposed in close connection with its accompanying vein. On the right side, both common iliac veins, as well as the inferior vena cava, are in close connection with the artery, and must be carefully avoided. On the left side, the vein usually lies on the inner side, and behind the artery; but it occasionally happens that the two common iliac veins are joined on the left instead of the right side, which would add much to the difficulty of an operation in such a case. The common iliac artery may be so short that danger may be apprehended from secondary hemorrhage if a ligature is applied to it. It would be preferable, in such a case, to tie both the external and internal iliacs near their origin.

Collateral Circulation. The principal agents in carrying on the collateral circulation after the application of a ligature to the common iliac, are, the anastomoses of the hemorrhoidal branches of the internal iliac, with the superior hemorrhoidal from the inferior mesenteric; the anastomoses of the uterine and ovarian arteries, and of the vesical arteries of opposite sides; of the lateral sacral, with the middle sacral artery; of the epigastric, with the internal mammary, inferior intercostal and lumbar arteries; of the iliolumbar, with the last lumbar artery; of the obturator artery, by means of its pubic branch, with the vessel of the opposite side, and with the internal epigastric; and of the gluteal with the posterior branches of the sacral arteries.

INTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY. (Fig. 324.)

The Internal Iliac Artery supplies the walls and viscera of the pelvis, the generative organs, and inner side of the thigh. It is a short, thick vessel, smaller than the external iliac, and about an inch and a half in length, which arises at the point of bifurcation of the common iliac; and, passing downwards to the upper margin of the great sacro-sciatic foramen, divides into two large trunks, an anterior and posterior; a partially obliterated cord, the hypogastric artery, extending from the extremity of the vessel forwards to the bladder.

Relations. In front, with the ureter, which separates it from the peritoneum. Behind, with the internal iliac vein, the lumbo-sacral nerve, and Pterygoiliac muscle. By its outer side, near its origin with the Psoas muscle.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE INTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY.

In front.
Peritoneum.
Ureter.

Outer side.
Psoas magnus.

Internal iliac.

Behind.
Internal iliac vein.
Lumbo-sacral nerve.
Pterygoiliac muscle.

In the fatus, the internal iliac artery (hypogastric) is twice as large as the external iliac, and appears to be the continuation of the common iliac. Passing forwards to the bladder, it ascends along the sides of that viscus to its summit, to which it gives branches; it then passes upwards along the back part of the anterior wall of the abdomen to the umbilicus, converging towards its fellow of the opposite side. Having passed through the umbilical opening, the two arteries twine round the umbilical vein, forming with it the umbilical cord; and, ultimately, ramifying in the placenta. The portion of the vessel within the abdomen is called the hypogastric artery; and that external to that cavity, the umbilical artery.

At birth, when the placental circulation ceases, the upper portion of the hypogastric artery, extending from the summit of the bladder upwards to the umbilici-
cus, contracts, and ultimately dwindles to a solid fibrous cord; but the lower portion, extending from its origin (in what is now the internal iliac artery) for about an inch and a half to the wall of the bladder, and thence to the summit of that organ, is not totally impervious, though it becomes considerably reduced in size; and serves to convey blood to the bladder, under the name of the superior vesical artery.

**Peculiarities as regards length.** In two-thirds of a large number of cases, the length of the internal iliac varied between an inch and an inch and a half; in the remaining third, it was more frequently longer than shorter, the maximum length being three inches, the minimum half an inch.

The lengths of the common and internal iliac arteries bear an inverse proportion to each other; the internal iliac artery being long when the common iliac is short, and vice versa.

**As regards its place of division.** The place of division of the internal iliac varies between the upper margin of the sacrum, and the upper border of the sacro-sciatic foramen.

The arteries of the two sides in a series of cases often differed in length, but neither seemed constantly to exceed the other.

**Surgical Anatomy.** The application of a ligature to the internal iliac artery may be required in cases of aneurism or hemorrhage affecting one of its branches. The vessel may be secured by making an incision through the abdominal parietes in the iliac region, in a direction and to an extent similar to that for securing the common iliac; the transversalis fascia having been cautiously divided, and the peritoneum pushed inwards from the iliac fossa towards the pelvis, the finger may feel the pulsation of the external iliac at the bottom of the wound; and, by tracing this vessel upwards, the internal iliac is arrived at, opposite the sacro-iliac articulation. It should be remembered, that the vein lies behind, and on the right side, a little external to the artery, and in close contact with it; the ureter and peritoneum, which lie in front, must also be avoided. The degree of facility in applying a ligature to this vessel will mainly depend upon its length. It has been seen that, in the great majority of the cases examined, the artery was short, varying from an inch to an inch and a half; in these cases, the artery is deeply seated in the pelvis; when, on the contrary, the vessel is longer, it is found partly above that cavity. If the artery is very short, as occasionally happens, it would be preferable to apply a ligature to the common iliac, or upon the external and internal iliacs at their origin.

**Collateral Circulation.** In Prof. Owen's dissection of a case in which the internal iliac artery had been tied by Stevens ten years before death, for aneurism of the sciatic artery, the internal iliac was found impervious for about an inch above the point where the ligature had been applied; but the obliteration did not extend to the origin of the external iliac, as the ilio-lumbar artery arose just above this point. Below the point of obliteration, the artery resumed its natural diameter, and continued so for half an inch; the obturator, lateral sacral, and gluteal, arising in succession from the lateral portion. The obturator artery was entirely obliterated. The lateral sacral artery was as large as a crow's quill, and had a very free anastomosis with the artery of the opposite side, and with the middle sacral artery. The sciatic artery was entirely obliterated as far as its point of connection with the aneurismal tumor; but, on the distal side of the sac, it was continued down along the back of the thigh nearly as large in size as the femoral, being pervious about an inch below the sac by receiving an anastomosing vessel from the profundus. The circulation was carried on by the anastomoses of the uterine and ovarian arteries; of the opposite vesical arteries; of the hemorrhoidal branches of the internal iliac with those from the inferior mesenteric; of the obturator artery, by means of its pubic branch, with the vessel of the opposite side, and with the epigastric and internal circumflex; of the circumflex and perforating branches of the femoral, with the sciatic; of the gluteal, with the posterior branches of the sacral arteries; of the ilio-lumbar, with the last lumbar; of the lateral sacral, with the middle sacral; and of the circumflex iliac, with the ilio-lumbar and gluteal.

**Branches of the Internal Iliac.**

**From the Anterior Trunk.**

- Superior vesical.
- Middle vesical.
- Inferior vesical.
- Obturator.
- Internal pudic.
- Sciatic.

**In female.**

- Uterine.
- Vaginal.

The *superior vesicle* is that part of the fossal hypogastric artery which remains

---

1 *Medico-Chirurgical Trans.*, vol. xvi.
pervious after birth. It extends to the side of the bladder, distributing numerous branches to the body and fundus of the organ. From one of these a slender vessel is derived, which accompanies the vas deferens in its course to the testis, where it anastomoses with the spermatic artery. This is the artery of the vas deferens. Other branches supply the ureter.

The middle vesicle, usually a branch of the superior, is distributed to the base of the bladder, and under-surface of the vesiculae seminales.

The inferior vesical arises from the anterior division of the internal ilia, in common with the middle hemorrhoidal, and is distributed to the base of the bladder, the prostate gland, and vesiculae seminales. The branches distributed to the prostate communicate with the corresponding vessel of the opposite side.

The middle hemorrhoidal artery usually arises together with the preceding vessel. It supplies the rectum, anastomosing with the other hemorrhoidal arteries.

The uterine artery passes downwards from the anterior trunk of the internal iliac to the neck of the uterus. Ascending, in a tortuous course on the side of this viscus, between the layers of the broad ligament, it distributes branches to its substance, anastomosing, near its termination, with a branch from the ovarian artery. Branches from this vessel are also distributed to the bladder and ureter.

The vaginal artery is analogous to the inferior vesical in the male; it descends upon the vagina, supplying its mucous membrane, and sending branches to the neck of the bladder and contiguous part of the rectum.

The Obturator Artery usually arises from the anterior trunk of the internal iliac, frequently from the posterior. It passes forwards below the brim of the pelvis, to the canal in the upper border of the obturator foramen, and escaping from the pelvic cavity through this aperture, divides into an internal and an external branch. In the pelvic cavity this vessel lies upon the pelvic fascia, beneath the peritoneum, and a little below the obturator nerve; and whilst passing through the obturator foramen, is contained in an oblique canal, formed by the horizontal branch of the pubes, above, and the arched border of the obturator membrane, below.

Branches. Within the pelvis, the obturator artery gives off an iliac branch to the iliac fossa, which supplies the bone, and the Iliacus muscle, and anastomoses with the ilio-lumbar artery; a vesical branch, which runs backwards to supply the bladder; and a pubic branch, which is given off from the vessel just before it leaves the pelvic cavity. This branch ascends upon the back of the pubes, communicating with offsets from the epigastric artery, and with the corresponding vessel of the opposite side. This branch is placed on the inner side of the femoral ring. External to the pelvis, the obturator artery divides into an external and an internal branch, which are deeply situated beneath the Obturator externus muscle; skirting the circumference of the obturator foramen, they anastomose at the lower part of this aperture with each other, and with branches of the internal circumflex artery.

The internal branch curves inwards along the inner margin of the obturator foramen, distributing branches to the Obturator muscles, Pectineus, Adductors, and Gracilis, and anastomoses with the external branch, and with the internal circumflex artery.

The external branch curves round the outer margin of the foramen, to the space between the Gemellus inferior and Quadratus femoris, where it anastomoses with the sciatic artery. It supplies the Obturator muscles, anastomoses, as it passes backwards, with the internal circumflex, and sends a branch to the hip-joint through the cotyloid notch, which ramifications on the round ligament as far as the head of the femur.

Peculiarities. In two out of every three cases the obturator artery arises from the internal iliac; in one case in ⅓ from the epigastric; and in about one case in seventy-two by two roots from both vessels. It arises in about the same proportion from the external iliac artery. The origin of the obturator from the epigastric is not commonly found on both sides of the same body.
When the obturator artery arises at the front of the pelvis from the epigastric, it descends almost vertically to the upper part of the obturator foramen. The artery in this course usually lies in contact with the external iliac vein, and on the outer side of the femoral ring (Fig. 325.1); in such cases it would not be endangered in the operations for femoral hernia. Occasionally, however, it curves inwards along the free margin of Gimbernat's ligament (Fig. 325.2), and under such circumstances would almost completely encircle the neck of a hernial sac (supposing a hernia to exist in such a case), and would be in great danger of being wounded if an operation was performed.

Fig. 325.—Variations in Origin and Course of Obturator Artery.

1. 2.

The Internal Pudic is the smaller of the two terminal branches of the anterior trunk of the internal iliac, and supplies the external organs of generation. It passes downwards and outwards to the lower border of the great sacro-sciatic foramen, and emerges from the pelvis between the Pyriformis and Coccygeus muscles; it then crosses the spine of the ischium, and re-enters the pelvis through the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen. The artery now crosses the Obturator internus muscle, to the ramus of the ischium, being covered by the obturator fascia, and situated about an inch and a half from the margin of the tuberosity; it then ascends forwards and upwards along the ramus of the ischium, pierces the posterior layer of the deep perineal fascia, and runs forwards along the inner margin of the ramus of the pubes; finally, it perforates the anterior layer of the deep perineal fascia, and divides into its two terminal branches, the dorsal artery of the penis, and the artery of the corpus cavernosum.

Relations. In the first part of its course, within the pelvis, it lies in front of the Pyriformis muscle and sacral plexus of nerves, and on the outer side of the rectum (on the left side). As it crosses the spine of the ischium, it is covered by the Gluteus maximus, and great sacro-sciatic ligament. In the pelvis, it lies on the outer side of the ischio-rectal fossa, upon the surface of the Obturator internus muscle, contained in a fibrous canal formed by the obturator fascia and the falciform process of the great sacro-sciatic ligament. It is accompanied by the pudic veins, and the internal pudic nerve.

Peculiarities. The internal pudic is sometimes smaller than usual, or fails to give off one or two of its usual branches; in such cases, the deficiency is supplied by branches derived from an additional vessel, the accessory pudic, which generally arises from the pudic artery before its exit from the great sacro-sciatic foramen, and passes forwards near the base of the bladder, on the upper part of the prostate gland, to the perineum, where it gives off the branches, usually derived from the pudic artery. The deficiency most frequently met with is that in which the internal pudic ends as the artery of the bulb; the artery of the corpus cavernosum and arteria dorsalis penis being derived from the accessory pudic. Or the pudic may terminate as the superficial perineal, the artery of the bulb being derived, with the other two branches, from the accessory vessel.

The relation of the accessory pudic to the prostate gland and urethra, is of the greatest interest in a surgical point of view, as this vessel is in danger of being wounded in the lateral operation of lithotomy.

Branches. Within the pelvis, the internal pudic gives off several small branches which supply the muscles, sacral nerves, and pelvic viscera. In the perineum the following branches are given off:

- Inferior or external hemorrhoidal. Artery of the bulb.
- Superficial perineal. Artery of the corpus cavernosum.
- Transverse perineal. Dorsal artery of the penis.
The external hemorrhoidal are two or three small arteries which arise from the internal pudic as it passes above the tuberosity of the ischium. Crossing the ischio-rectal fossa, they are distributed to the muscles and integument of the anal region.

Fig. 326.—The Internal Pudic Artery and its Branches.

The superficial perineal artery supplies the scrotum and muscles and integument of the perineum. It arises from the internal pudic, in front of the preceding branches, and piercing the lower border of the deep perineal fascia, runs across the Transversus perinei, and through the triangular space between the Accelerator urinæ and Erector penis, both of which it supplies, and is finally distributed to the skin of the scrotum and dartos. In its passage through the perineum it lies beneath the superficial perineal fascia.

The transverse perineal is a small branch which arises either from the internal pudic, or from the superficial perineal artery as it crosses the Transversus perinei muscle. Piercing the lower border of the deep perineal fascia, it runs transversely inwards along the cutaneous surface of the Transversus perinei muscle, which it supplies, as well as the structures between the anus and bulb of the urethra.

The artery of the bulb is a large but very short vessel which arises from the internal pudic between the two layers of the deep perineal fascia, and passing nearly transversely inwards, pierces the bulb of the urethra, in which it ramifies. It gives off a small branch which descends to supply Cowper's gland. This artery is of considerable importance in a surgical point of view, as it is in danger of being wounded in the lateral operation of lithotomy, an accident usually attended
in the adult with alarming hemorrhage. The vessel is sometimes very small, occasionally wanting, or even double. It sometimes arises from the internal pudic earlier than usual, and crosses the perineum to reach the back part of the bulb. In such a case the vessel could hardly fail to be wounded in the performance of the lateral operation for lithotomy. If, on the contrary, it should arise from an accessory pudic, it lies more forward than usual, and is out of danger in the operation.

The artery of the corpus cavernosum, one of the terminal branches of the internal pudic, arises from that vessel while it is situated between the crus penis and the ramus of the pubes; piercing the crus penis obliquely, it runs forwards in the corpus cavernosum by the side of the septum pectiniforme, to which its branches are distributed.

The dorsal artery of the penis ascends between the crus and pubic symphysis, and piercing the suspensory ligament, runs forwards on the dorsum of the penis to the glans, where it divides into two branches, which supply the glans and prepuce. On the dorsum of the penis, it lies immediately beneath the integument, parallel with the dorsal vein, and the corresponding artery of the opposite side. It supplies the integument and fibrous sheath of the corpus cavernosum.

The internal pudic artery in the female is smaller than in the male. Its origin and course are similar, and there is considerable analogy in the distribution of its branches. The superficial artery supplies the labia pudenda; the artery of the bulb supplies the erectile tissue of the bulb of the vagina, whilst the two terminal branches supply the clitoris: the artery of the corpus cavernosum, the cavernous body of the clitoris; and the arteria dorsalis clitoridis, the dorsum of that organ.

The Sciatic Artery (Fig. 327), the larger of the two terminal branches of the anterior trunk of the internal iliac, is distributed to the muscles on the back of the pelvis. It passes down to the lower part of the great sacro-Sciatic foramen, behind the internal pudic, resting on the sacral plexus of nerves and Pyriformis
muscle, and escapes from the pelvis between the Pyriformis and Coccygeus. It then descends in the interval between the trochanter major and tuberosity of the ischium, accompanied by the sciatic nerves, and covered by the Gluteus maximus, and divides into branches, which supply the deep muscles at the back of the hip.

Within the pelvis it distributes branches to the Pyriformis, Coccygeus, and Levator ani muscles; some hemorrhoidal branches, which supply the rectum, and occasionally take the place of the middle hemorrhoidal artery; and vesical branches to the base and neck of the bladder, vesicule seminales, and prostate gland. External to the pelvis, it gives off the coccygeal, inferior gluteal, comes nervi ischiadici, muscular, and articular branches.

The coccygeal branch runs inwards, pierces the great sacro-sciatic ligament, and supplies the Gluteus maximus, the integument, and other structures on the back of the coccyx.

The inferior gluteal branches, three or four in number, supply the Gluteus maximus muscle.

The comes nervi ischiadici is a long slender vessel, which accompanies the great sciatic nerve for a short distance; it then penetrates it, and runs in its substance to the lower part of the thigh.

The muscular branches supply the muscles on the back part of the hip, anastomosing with the gluteal, internal and external circumflex, and superior perforating arteries.

Some articular branches are distributed to the capsule of the hip-joint.

The Ilio-Lumbar Artery ascends beneath the Psoas muscle and external iliac vessels, to the upper part of the iliac fossa, where it divides into a lumbar and an iliac branch.

The lumbar branch supplies the Psoas and Quadratus lumborum muscles, anastomosing with the last lumbar artery, and sends a small spinal branch through the intervertebral foramen, between the last lumbar vertebra and the sacrum, into the spinal canal, to supply the spinal cord and its membranes.

The iliac branch descends to supply the Iliacus internus, some offsets running between the muscle and the bone, one of which enters an oblique canal to supply the diploë, whilst others run along the crest of the ilium, distributing branches to the Gluteal and Abdominal muscles, and anastomosing in their course with the gluteal, circumflex iliac, external circumflex, and epigastric arteries.

The LateralSacral Arteries (Fig. 324) are usually two in number on each side, superior and inferior.

The superior, which is of large size, passes inwards, and, after anastomosing with branches from the middle sacral, enters the first or second sacral foramen, is distributed to the contents of the sacral canal, and escaping by the corresponding posterior sacral foramen, supplies the skin and muscles on the dorsum of the sacrum.

The inferior passes obliquely across the front of the Pyriformis muscle and sacral nerves to the inner side of the anterior sacral foramina, descends on the front of the sacrum, and anastomoses over the coccyx with the sacra media and opposite lateral sacral arteries. In its course, it gives off branches, which enter the anterior sacral foramina; these, after supplying the bones and membranes of the interior of the spinal canal, escape by the posterior sacral foramina, and are distributed to the muscles and skin on the dorsal surface of the sacrum.

The Gluteal Artery is the largest branch of the internal iliac, and appears to be the continuation of the posterior division of that vessel. It is a short, thick trunk, which passes out of the pelvis above the upper border of the Pyriformis muscle, and immediately divides into a superficial and deep branch. Within the pelvis, it gives off a few muscular branches to the Iliacus, Pyriformis, and Obturator internus, and just previous to quitting that cavity a nutrient artery, which enters the ilium.
The superficial branch passes beneath the Gluteus maximus, and divides into numerous branches, some of which supply that muscle, whilst others perforate its tendinous origin, and supply the integument covering the posterior surface of the sacrum, anastomosing with the posterior branches of the sacral arteries.

The deep branch runs between the Gluteus medius and minimus, and subdivides into two. Of these, the superior division, continuing the original course of the vessel, passes along the upper border of the Gluteus minimus to the anterior superior spine of the ilium, anastomosing with the circumflex iliac and ascending branches of the external circumflex artery. The inferior division crosses the Gluteus minimus obliquely to the trochanter major, distributing branches to the Glutei muscles, and inosculates with the external circumflex artery. Some branches pierce the Gluteus minimus to supply the hip-joint.

**EXTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY.** (Fig. 324.)

The External Iliac Artery is the chief vessel which supplies the lower limb. It is larger in the adult than the internal iliac, and passes obliquely downwards and outwards along the inner border of the Psoas muscle, from the bifurcation of the common iliac to the femoral arch, where it enters the thigh, and becomes the femoral artery. The course of this vessel would be indicated by a line drawn from the left side of the umbilicus to a point midway between the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium and the symphysis pubis.

**Relations.** In front, with the peritoneum, subperitoneal areolar tissue, the intestines, and a thin layer of fascia, derived from the iliac fascia, which surrounds the artery and vein. At its origin it is occasionally crossed by the ureter. The spermatic vessels descend for some distance upon it near its termination, and it is crossed in this situation by a branch of the genito-urethral nerve and the circumflex iliac vein; the vas deferens curves down along its inner side. Behind, it is in relation with the external iliac vein, which, at the femoral arch, lies at its inner side; on the left side the vein is altogether internal to the artery. Externally, it rests against the Psoas muscle, from which it is separated by the iliac fascia. The artery rests upon this muscle, near Poupart's ligament. Numerous lymphatic vessels and glands are found lying on the front and inner side of the vessel.

**PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE EXTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY.**

In front.

- Peritoneum, intestines, and iliac fascia.
- Spermatic vessels.
- Genito-urethral nerve (genital branch).  
- Circumflex iliac vein.
- Lymphatic vessels and glands.

Outer side.
- Psoas magnus
- Iliac fascia.

Inner side.
- External iliac vein and vas deferens at femoral arch.

Behind.
- External iliac vein.
- Psoas magnus.

**Surgical Anatomy.** The application of a ligature to the external iliac may be required in cases of aneurism of the femoral artery, or in cases of secondary hemorrhage, after the latter vessel has been tied for popliteal aneurism. This vessel may be secured in any part of its course, excepting near its upper end, which is to be avoided on account of the proximity of the great stream of blood in the internal iliac, and near its lower end, which should also be avoided, on account of the proximity of the epigastric and circumflex iliac vessels. One of the chief points in the performance of the operation is to secure the vessel without injury to the peritoneum.
The patient having been placed in the recumbent position, an incision should be made, commencing below at a point about three-quarters of an inch above Poupart's ligament, and a little external to its middle, and running upwards and outwards, parallel to Poupart's ligament, to a point above the anterior superior spine of the ilium. When the artery is deeply seated, more room will be required, and may be obtained by curving the incision from the point last named inwards towards the umbilicus for a short distance; or, if the lower part of the artery is to be reached, the surgeon may commence the incision nearer the inner end of Poupart's ligament, taking care to avoid the epigastric artery. Abernethy, who first tied this artery, made his incision in the course of the vessel. The precise line of incision selected is of less moment, provided an easy access to the deeper parts is secured. The abdominal muscles and transversalis fascia having been cautiously divided, the peritoneum should be separated from the iliac fossa and pushed towards the pelvis; and on introducing the finger to the bottom of the wound the artery may be felt pulsating along the inner border of the Psoas muscle. The external iliac vein is generally found on the inner side of the artery, and must be cautiously separated from it by the finger-nail, or handle of the knife, and the aneurism needle should be introduced on the inner side, between the artery and vein.

**Collateral Circulation.** The principal anastomoses in carrying on the collateral circulation, after the application of a ligature to the external iliac, are—the ilio-lumbar with the circumflex iliac; the gluteal with the external circumflex; the obturator with the internal circumflex; the sciatic with the superior perforating and circumflex branches of the profunda artery; the internal pudic with the external pudic, and with the internal circumflex. When the obturator arises from the epigastric, it is supplied with blood by branches, either from the internal iliac, the lateral sacral, or the internal pudic. The epigastric receives its supply from the internal mammary and inferior intercostal arteries, and from the internal iliac, by the anastomoses of its branches with the obturator.

In the dissection of a limb, eighteen years after the successful ligature of the external iliac artery, by Sir A. Cooper, which is to be found in Guy's Hospital Reports, vol. i. p. 50, the anastomosing branches are described in three sets. *An anterior set.* 1. A very large branch from the ilio-lumbar artery to the circumflex iliac; 2. Another branch from the ilio-lumbar, joined by one from the obturator, and breaking up into numerous tortuous branches to anastomose with the external circumflex; 3. Two other branches from the obturator, which passed over the brim of the pelvis, communicated with the epigastric, and then broke up into a plexus to anastomose with the internal circumflex. *An internal set.* Branches given off from the obturator, after quitting the pelvis, which ramified among the adductor muscles on the inner side of the hip-joint, and joined most freely with branches of the internal circumflex. *A posterior set.* 1. Three large branches from the gluteal to the external circumflex; 2. Several branches from the sciatic around the great sciatic notch to the internal and external circumflex, and the perforating branches of the profunda.

**Branches.** Besides several small branches to the Psoas muscles and the neighboring lymphatic glands, the external iliac gives off two branches of considerable size, the

**Epigastric and Circumflex iliac.**

The *Epigastric artery* arises from the external iliac, a few lines above Poupart's ligament. It at first descends to reach this ligament, and then ascends obliquely inwards between the peritoneum and transversalis fascia, to the margin of the sheath of the Rectus muscle. Having perforated the sheath near its lower third, it runs vertically upwards behind the Rectus, to which it is distributed, dividing into numerous branches, which anastomose above the umbilicus with the terminal branches of the internal mammary and inferior intercostal arteries. It is accompanied by two veins, which usually unite into a single trunk before their termination in the external iliac vein. As this artery ascends from Poupart's ligament to the Rectus, it lies behind the inguinal canal, to the inner side of the internal abdominal ring, and immediately above the femoral ring. The vas deferens in the male, and the round ligament in the female, cross behind the artery in descending into the pelvis.

**Branches.** The branches of this vessel are the following: the *cremasteric,* which accompanies the spermatic cord, and supplies the Cremaster muscle, anastomosing with the spermatic artery; a *pubic branch,* which runs across Poupart's ligament, and then descends behind the pubes to the inner side of the femoral ring, and anastomoses with offsets from the obturator artery; *muscular branches,* some of which are distributed to the abdominal muscles and peritoneum,
anastomosing with the lumbar and circumflex iliac arteries: others perforate the tendon of the External oblique and supply the integument, anastomosing with branches of the external epigastric.

_Peculiarities._ The origin of the epigastric may take place from any part of the external iliac between Poupart's ligament and two inches and a half above it; or it may arise below this ligament, from the femoral, or from the deep femoral.

_Union with Branches._ It frequently arises from the external iliac, by a common trunk with the obturator. Sometimes the epigastric arises from the obturator, the latter vessel being furnished by the internal iliac, or the epigastric may be formed of two branches, one derived from the external iliac, the other from the internal iliac.

The _circumflex iliac artery_ arises from the outer side of the external iliac nearly opposite the epigastric artery. It ascends obliquely outwards behind Poupart's ligament, and runs along the inner surface of the crest of the ilium to about its middle, where it pierces the Transversalis, and runs backwards between that muscle and the Internal oblique, to anastomose with the ilio-lumbar and gluteal arteries. Opposite the anterior superior spine of the ilium, it gives off a large branch, which ascends between the internal oblique and Transversalis muscles, supplying them and anastomosing with the lumbar and epigastric arteries. The circumflex iliac artery is accompanied by two veins. These unite into a single trunk which crosses the external iliac artery just above Poupart's ligament, and enters the external iliac vein.

**FEMORAL ARTERY. (Fig. 328.)**

The Femoral Artery is the continuation of the external iliac. It commences immediately behind Poupart's ligament, midway between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the symphysis pubis, and passing down the fore part and inner side of the thigh, terminates at the opening in the Adductor magnus, at the junction of the middle with the lower third of the thigh, where it becomes the popliteal artery. A line drawn from a point midway between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the symphysis pubis to the inner side of the inner condyle of the femur, will be nearly parallel with the course of the artery. This vessel, at the upper part of the thigh, lies a little internal to the head of the femur; in the lower part of its course, on the inner side of the shaft of the bone, and between these two parts, the vessel is far away from the bone.

_In the upper third of the thigh_ the femoral artery is very superficial, being covered by the integument, inguinal glands, and the superficial and deep fascia, and is contained in a triangular space, called "Scarpa's triangle."

_Scarpa's triangle._ Scarpa's triangle corresponds to the depression seen immediately below the fold of the groin. It is a triangular space, the apex of which is directed downwards, and the sides of which are formed externally by the Sartorius, internally by the Adductor longus, and above by Poupart's ligament. The floor of this space is formed from without inwards by the Iliacus, Psoas, Pectineus, Adductor longus, and a small part of the Adductor brevis muscles; and it is divided into two nearly equal parts by the femoral vessels, which extend from the middle of its base to its apex; the artery giving off in this situation its cutaneous and profunda branches, the vein receiving the deep femoral and internal saphenous veins. In this space the femoral artery rests on the inner margin of the psoas muscle, which separates it from the caepausal ligament of the hip-joint. The artery in this situation has in front of it filaments from the crural branch of the genito-crural nerve, and branches from the anterior crural, one of which is usually of considerable size; behind the artery is the branch to the Pectineus from the anterior crural. The femoral vein lies at its inner side, between the margins of the Pectineus and Psoas muscles. The anterior crural nerve lies about half an inch to the outer side of the femoral artery, deeply imbedded between the Iliacus and Psoas muscles. The femoral artery
and vein are inclosed in a strong fibrous sheath formed by fibrous and cellular tissue, and by a process of fascia sent inwards, from the fascia lata; the vessels are separated, however, from one another by thin fibrous partitions.

In the middle third of the thigh, the femoral artery is more deeply seated, being covered by the integument, the superficial and deep fascia, and the Sartorius, and is contained in an aponeurotic canal (Hunter’s canal), formed by a dense fibrous band, which extends transversely from the Vastus internus to the tendons of the Adductor longus and magnus muscles. In this part of its course it lies in a depression, bounded externally by the Vastus internus, internally by the Adductor longus and Adductor magnus. The femoral vein lies on the outer side of the artery, in close apposition with it, and, still more externally, is the internal (long) saphenous nerve.

Relations. From above downwards, the femoral artery rests upon the Psosas muscle, which separates it from the margin of the pelvis and capsular ligament of the hip; it is next separated from the Pectineus by the profunda vessels and femoral veins; it then lies upon the Adductor longus; and lastly, upon the tendon of the Adductor magnus, the femoral vein being interposed. To its inner side, it is in relation above, with the femoral vein, and lower down, with the Adductor longus, and Sartorius. To its outer side, the Vastus internus separates it from the femur, in the lower part of its course.

The femoral vein, at Pousart’s ligament, lies close to the inner side of the artery, separated from it by a thin fibrous partition, but, as it descends, gets behind it, and then to its outer side.

The Internal saphenous nerve is situated on the outer side of the artery, in the middle third of the thigh, beneath the aponeurotic covering, but not usually within the sheath of the vessels. Small cutaneous nerves cross the front of the sheath.
**ARTERIES.**

**PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE FEMORAL ARTERY.**

*In front.*
- Fascia lata.
- Branch of anterior crural nerve.
- Sartorius.
- Long saphenous nerve.
- Aponoeuratic covering of Hunter’s canal.

*Inner side.*
- Femoral vein (at upper part).
- Adductor longus.
- Sartorius.

*Outer side.*
- Vastus internus.
- Femoral vein (at lower part).

*Behind.*
- Psoas muscle.
- Profunda vein.
- Pectineus muscle.
- Adductor longus.
- Femoral vein.
- Adductor magnus.

**Peculiarities. Double femoral reunited.** Four cases are at present recorded, in which the femoral artery divided into two trunks below the origin of the profunda, and became reunited near the opening in the Adductor magnus, so as to form a single popliteal artery. One of them occurred in a patient operated upon for popliteal aneurism.

**Change of Position.** A similar number of cases have been recorded, in which the femoral artery was situated at the back of the thigh, the vessel being continuous above with the internal iliac, escaping from the pelvis through the great sacro-sciatic foramen, and accompanying the great sciatic nerve to the popliteal space, where its division occurred in the usual manner.

**Position of the Vein.** The femoral vein is occasionally placed along the inner side of the artery, throughout the entire extent of Scarp’s triangle; or it may be slit, so that a large vein is placed on each side of the artery for a greater or less extent.

**Origin of the Profunda.** This vessel occasionally arises from the inner side, and more rarely, from the back of the common trunk; but the more important peculiarity, in a surgical point of view, is that which relates to the height at which the vessel arises from the femoral. In three-fourths of a large number of cases, it arose between one and two inches below Poupart’s ligament; in a few cases, the distance was less than an inch; more rarely, opposite the ligament; and in one case, above Poupart’s ligament, from the external iliac. Occasionally, the distance between the origin of the vessel and Poupart’s ligament exceeds two inches, and in one case it was found to be as much as four inches.

**Surgical Anatomy.** Compression of the femoral artery, which is constantly requisite in amputations and other operations on the lower limb, is most effectually made immediately below Poupart’s ligament. In this situation the artery is very superficial, and is merely separated from the margin of the acetabulum and front of the head of the femur, by the Psoas muscle; so that the surgeon, by means of his thumb, or a compressor, may effectually control the circulation through it. This vessel may also be compressed in the middle third of the thigh, by placing a compress over the artery, beneath the tourniquet, and directing the pressure from within outwards so as to compress the vessel against the inner side of the shaft of the femur.

The application of a ligature to the femoral artery may be required in cases of wound or aneurism of the arteries of the leg, of the popliteal or femoral; and the vessel may be exposed and tied in any part of its course. The great depth of this vessel at its lower part, its close connection with important structures, and the density of its sheath, render the operation in this situation one of much greater difficulty than the application of a ligature at its upper part, where it is more superficial.

Ligation of the femoral artery, within two inches of its origin, is usually considered unsafe, on account of the connection of large branches with it, the epigastric and circumflex iliac arising just above its origin; the profunda, from one to two inches below; occasionally, also, one of the circumflex arteries arises from the vessel in the interspace between these. The profunda sometimes arises higher than the point above mentioned, and rarely between two and three inches (in one case four) below Poupart’s ligament. It would appear, then, that the most favorable situation for the application of a ligature to the femoral, is between four and five inches from its point of origin. In order to expose the artery in this situation, an incision, between two and three inches long, should be made in the course of the vessel, the patient lying in the recumbent position, with the limb slightly flexed and abducted. A large vein is frequently met with, passing in the course of the artery to join the saphena; this must be avoided, and the fascia lata having been cautiously divided, and the Sartorius exposed, that muscle must be drawn outwards, in order to fully expose.
the sheath of the vessels. The finger being introduced into the wound, and the pulsation of the artery felt, the sheath should be divided over the artery to a sufficient extent to allow of the introduction of the ligature, but no further; otherwise the nutrition of the coats of the vessel may be interfered with, or muscular branches which arise from the vessel at irregular intervals may be divided. In this part of the operation, a small nerve which crosses the sheath should be avoided. The aneurism needle must be carefully introduced and kept close to the artery, to avoid the femoral vein, which lies behind the vessel in this part of its course.

To expose the artery in the middle of the thigh, an incision should be made through the integument, between three and four inches in length, over the inner margin of the Sartorius, taking care to avoid the internal saphenous vein, the situation of which may be previously known by compressing it higher up in the thigh. The fascia lata having been divided, and the Sartorius muscle exposed, it should be drawn outwards, when the strong fascia which is stretched across from the Adductors to the Vastus internus, will be exposed, and must be freely divided; the sheath of the vessels is now seen, and must be opened, and the artery secured by passing the aneurism needle between the vein and artery, in the direction from within outwards. The femoral vein in this situation lies on the outer side of the artery, the long saphenous nerve on its anterior and outer side.

It has been seen that the femoral artery occasionally divides into two trunks, below the origin of the profunda. If, in the operation for tying the femoral, two vessels are met with, the surgeon should alternately compress each, in order to ascertain which vessel is connected with the aneurismatic tumor, or with the bleeding from the wound, and that one only should be tied which controls the pulsation or hemorrhage. If, however, it is necessary to compress both vessels before the circulation in the tumor is controlled, both should be tied, as it would be probable that they became re-united, as in the four instances referred to above.

Collateral circulation. When the common femoral is tied, the main channels for carrying on the circulation are the anastomoses of the gluteal and circumflex iliac arteries above with the external circumflex below; of the obturator and sciatic above with the internal circumflex below; of the ilio-lumbar with the external circumflex, and of the common iliac with the arteries in the ham.

The principal agents in carrying on the collateral circulation after ligation of the superficial femoral artery are, according to Sir A. Cooper, as follows. The first artery sent off passed down close to the back of the thigh bone, and entered the two superior articular branches of the popliteal artery. The second new large vessel arising from the profunda at the same point with the former, passed down by the inner side of the Biceps muscle, to an artery of the popliteal which was distributed to the Gastrocnemius muscle; whilst a third artery dividing into several branches passed down with the sciatic nerve behind the knee-joint, and some of its branches united themselves with the inferior articular arteries of the popliteal, with some recurrent branches of those arteries, with arteries passing to the Gastrocnemius, and, lastly, with the origin of the anterior and posterior tibial arteries.

"It appears then that it is those branches of the profunda which accompany the sciatic nerve that are the principal supporters of the new circulation."

In Porta's work (Tab. xii. xiii.) is a good representation of the collateral circulation after the ligation of the femoral artery. The patient had survived the operation three years. The lower part of the artery is, at least, as large as the upper; about two inches of the vessel appear to have been obliterated. The external and internal circumflex arteries are seen anastomosing by a great number of branches with the lower branches of the femoral (muscular and anastomotica magna), and with the articular branches of the popliteal. The branches from the external circumflex are extremely large and numerous, one very distinct anastomosis can be traced between this artery on the outside, and the anastomotica magna on the inside, through the intervention of the superior external articular artery with which they both anastomose, and blood reaches even the anterior tibial recurrent from the external circumflex by means of an anastomosis with the same external articular artery. The perforating branches of the profunda are also seen bringing blood round the obliterated portion of the artery into long branches (muscular) which have been given off just below that portion. The termination of the profunda itself anastomoses most freely with the superior external articular. A long branch of anastomosis is also traced down from the internal iliac by means of the comes nervi ischiadici of the sciatic which anastomoses on the popliteal nerves with branches from the popliteal and posterior tibial arteries. In this case the anastomosis had been too free, since the pulsation and growth of the aneurism recurred, and the patient died after ligation of the external iliac.

There is an interesting preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons, of a limb on which John Hunter had tied the femoral artery fifty years before the patient's death. The whole of the superficial femoral and popliteal artery seems to have been obliterated. The anastomosis by means of the comes nervi ischiadici, which is shown in Porta's plate, is distinctly seen; the external circumflex, and the termination of the profunda artery, seem to have been the chief channels of anastomosis; but the injection has not been a very successful one.

Branches. The branches of the femoral artery are the

Superficial epigastric.
Superficial circumflex iliac.
Superficial external pudic.
Deep external pudic.

\( \text{Profunda.} \) \( \begin{align*}
\text{External circumflex.} \\
\text{Internal circumflex.} \\
\text{Three perforating.}
\end{align*} \)

Muscular.
Anastomotica magna.

The superficial epigastric arises from the femoral, about half an inch below Poupart's ligament, and, passing through the saphenous opening in the fascia lata, ascends on to the abdomen, in the superficial fascia covering the external oblique muscle, nearly as high as the umbilicus. It distributes branches to the inguinal glands, the superficial fascia and the integument, anastomosing with branches of the deep epigastric and internal mammary arteries.

The superficial circumflex iliac, the smallest of the cutaneous branches, arises close to the preceding, and, piercing the fascia lata, runs outwards, parallel with Poupart's ligament, as far as the crest of the ilium, dividing into branches which supply the integument of the groin, the superficial fascia, and inguinal glands, anastomosing with the circumflex iliac, and with the gluteal and external circumflex arteries.

The superficial external pudic (superior) arises from the inner side of the femoral artery, close to the preceding vessels, and, after piercing the fascia lata at the saphenous opening, passes inwards, across the spermatic cord, to be distributed to the integument on the lower part of the abdomen, the penis and scrotum in the male, and the labium in the female, anastomosing with branches of the internal pudic.

The deep external pudic (inferior), more deeply seated than the preceding, passes inwards on the Pectineus muscle, covered by the fascia lata, which it pierces opposite the ramus of the pubes, its branches being distributed, in the male, to the integument of the scrotum and perineum, and in the female, to the labium, anastomosing with branches of the superficial perineal artery.

The Profunda Femoris (deep femoral artery) nearly equals the size of the superficial femoral. It arises from the outer and back part of the femoral artery, from one to two inches below Poupart's ligament. It at first lies on the outer side of the superficial femoral, and then passes behind it and the femoral vein to the inner side of the femur, and terminates at the lower third of the thigh in a small branch, which pierces the Adductor magnus (and from this circumstance is sometimes called the fourth perforating artery), to be distributed to the flexor muscles on the back of the thigh, anastomosing with branches of the popliteal and inferior perforating arteries.

Relations. Behind, it lies first upon the iliacus, and then on the Adductor brevis and Adductor magnus muscles. In front, it is separated from the femoral artery, above by the femoral and profunda veins, and below by the Adductor longus. On its outer side, the origin of the Vastus internus separates it from the femur.
PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE PROFUNDA ARTERY.

In front.
Femoral and profunda veins.
Adductor longus.

Outer side.
Vastus internus.

Profunda.

Behind.
Iliacus.
Adductor brevis.
Adductor magnus.

The External Circumflex Artery supplies the muscles on the front of the thigh. It arises from the outer side of the profunda, passes horizontally outwards, between the divisions of the anterior crural nerve, and behind the Sartorius and Rectus muscles, and divides into three sets of branches, ascending, transverse, and descending.

The ascending branches pass upwards, beneath the Tensor vaginae femoris muscle, to the outer side of the hip, anastomosing with the terminal branches of the gluteal and circumflex iliac arteries.

The descending branches, three or four in number, pass downwards, behind the rectus, upon the Vasti muscles, to which they are distributed, one or two passing beneath the Vastus externus as far as the knee, anastomosing with the superior articular branches of the popliteal artery.

The transverse branches, the smallest and least numerous, pass outwards over the Crureus, pierce the Vastus externus, and wind round the femur to its back part, just below the great trochanter, anastomosing at the back of the thigh with the internal circumflex, sciatic, and superior perforating arteries.

The Internal Circumflex Artery, smaller than the external, arises from the inner and back part of the profunda, and winds round the inner side of the femur, between the Pectineus and Psoas muscles. On reaching the tendon of the Obturator externus, it gives off two branches, one of which passes inwards to be distributed to the Adductor muscles, the Gracilis, and Obturator externus, anastomosing with the obturator artery; the other descends, and passes beneath the Adductor brevis, to supply it and the great Adductor; while the continuation of the vessel passes backwards, between the Quadratus femoris and upper border of the Adductor magnus, anastomosing with the sciatic, external circumflex, and superior perforating arteries. Opposite the hip-joint, this branch gives off an articular vessel, which enters the joint beneath the transverse ligament; and after supplying the adipose tissue, passes along the round ligament to the head of the bone.

The Perforating Arteries (Fig. 827), usually three in number, are so called from their perforating the tendons of the Adductor brevis and magnus muscles to reach the back of the thigh. The first is given off above the Adductor brevis, the second in front of that muscle, and the third immediately below it.

The first or superior perforating artery passes backwards between the Pectineus and Adductor brevis (sometimes perforates the latter); it then pierces the Adductor magnus close to the linea aspera, and divides into branches which supply both Adductors, the Biceps, and Gluteus maximus muscle; anastomosing with the sciatic, internal circumflex, and middle perforating arteries.

The second or middle perforating artery, larger than the first, pierces the tendons of the Adductor brevis and Adductor magnus muscles, and divides into ascending and descending branches, which supply the flexor muscles of the
thigh, anastomosing with the superior and inferior perforating. The nutrient artery of the femur is usually given off from this branch.

The third or inferior perforating artery is given off below the Adductor brevis; it pierces the Adductor magnus, and divides into branches which supply the flexor muscles of the thigh; anastomosing with the perforating arteries above, and with the terminal branches of the profunda below.

Muscular Branches are given off from the superficial femoral throughout its entire course. They vary from two to seven in number, and supply chiefly the Sartorius and Vastus internus.

The Anastomotica Magna arises from the femoral artery just before it passes through the tendinous opening in the Adductor magnus muscles, and divides into a superficial and deep branch.

The superficial branch accompanies the long saphenous nerve, beneath the Sartorius, and, piercing the fascia lata, is distributed to the integument.

The deep branch descends in the substance of the Vastus internus, lying in front of the tendon of the Adductor magnus, to the inner side of the knee, where it anastomoses with the superior internal articular artery and recurrent branch of the anterior tibial. A branch from this vessel crosses outwards above the articular surface of the femur, forming an anastomotic arch with the superior external articular artery, and supplies branches to the knee-joint.

**Popliteal Artery.**

The Popliteal Artery commences at the termination of the femoral at the opening in the Adductor magnus, and, passing obliquely downwards and outwards behind the knee-joint to the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, divides into the anterior and posterior tibial arteries. Through the whole of this extent the artery lies in the popliteal space.

**The Popliteal Space.** (Fig. 329.)

Dissection. A vertical incision about eight inches in length should be made along the back part of the knee-joint, connected above and below by a transverse incision from the inner to the outer side of the limb. The flaps of integument included between these incisions should be reflected in the direction shown in fig. 286, p. 440.

On removing the integument, the superficial fascia is exposed, and ramifying in it along the middle line are found some filaments of the small sciatic nerve, and towards the inner part some offsets from the internal cutaneous nerve.

The superficial fascia having been removed, the fascia lata is brought into view. In this region it is strong and dense, being strengthened by transverse fibres, and firmly attached to the tendons on the inner and outer sides of the space. It is perforated below by the external saphenous vein. This fascia having been reflected back in the same direction as the integument, the small sciatic nerve and external saphenous vein are seen immediately beneath it, in the middle line. If the loose adipose tissue is now removed, the boundaries and contents of the space may be examined.

Boundaries. The popliteal space, or the ham, occupies the lower third of the thigh and the upper fifth of the leg; extending from the aperture in the Adductor magnus to the lower border of the Popliteus muscle. It is a lozenge-shaped space, being widest at the back part of the knee-joint, and deepest above the articular end of the femur. It is bounded, externally, above the joint, by the Biceps, and below the joint by the Plantaris and external head of the Gastrocnemius. Internally, above the joint, by the Semimembranosus, Semitendinosus, Gracilis, and Sartorius; below the joint, by the inner head of the Gastrocnemius.

Above, it is limited by the apposition of the inner and outer hamstring muscles; below, by the junction of the two heads of the Gastrocnemius. The floor is formed by the lower part of the posterior surface of the shaft of the
POPLITEAL.

femur, the posterior ligament of the knee-joint, the upper end of the tibia, and the fascia covering the Popliteus muscle, and the space is covered in by the fascia lata.

Contents. It contains the Popliteal vessels and their branches, together with the termination of the external saphenous vein, the internal and external popliteal nerves and their branches, the small sciatic nerve, the articular branch from the obturator nerve, a few small lymphatic glands, and a considerable quantity of loose adipose tissue.

Position of contained parts. The internal popliteal nerve descends in the middle line of the space, lying superficial and a little external to the vein and artery. The external popliteal nerve descends on the outer side of the space, lying close to the tendon of the Biceps muscle. More deeply at the bottom of the space are the popliteal vessels, the vein lying superficial and a little external to the artery, to which it is closely united by dense areolar tissue; sometimes the vein is placed on the inner instead of the outer side of the artery; or the vein may be double, the artery lying between the two venae comites, which are usually connected by short transverse branches. More deeply, and close to the surface of the bone, is the popliteal artery, and passing off from it at right angles are its articular branches. The articular branch from the obturator nerve descends upon the popliteal artery to supply the knee; and occasionally there is found deep in the space an articular filament from the great sciatic nerve. The popliteal lymphatic glands, four or five in number, are found surrounding the artery; one usually lies superficial to the vessel, another is situated between it and the bone, and the rest are placed on either side of it. The bursa usually found in this space are: 1. On the outer side, one beneath the outer head of the Gastrocnemius (which sometimes communicates with the joint) and one beneath the tendon of the Popliteus, which is almost always an extension of the synovial membrane. Sometimes also there is a bursa above the tendon of the Popliteus, between it and the external lateral ligament. 2. On the inner side of the joint there is a large bursa between the inner head of the Gastrocnemius and the femur, which sends a prolongation between the tendons of the Gastrocnemius and Semimembranosus, and lies in contact with the ligament of Winslow. This bursa often communicates with the joint. There is a second bursa between the tendon of the Semimembranosus and the head of the tibia; and sometimes a bursa between the tendons of the Semitendinosus and Semimembranosus.

The POPLITEAL ARTERY, in its course downwards from the aperture in the Adductor magnus to the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, rests first on the inner, and then on the posterior surface of the femur; in the middle of its course, on the posterior ligament of the knee-joint; and below, on the fascia covering the Popliteus muscle. Superfically, it is covered, above, by the Semimembranosus; in the middle of its course, by a quantity of fat, which separates it from the deep fascia and integument; and below, it is overlapped by the Gastrocnemius, Plantaris, and Soleus muscles, the popliteal vein, and the internal popliteal nerve. The popliteal vein, which is intimately attached to the artery, lies superficial and external to it, until near its termination, when it crosses it and lies to its inner side. The popliteal nerve is still more superficial and external, crossing, however, the artery below the joint, and lying on its inner side. Laterally, the artery is bounded by the muscles which form the boundaries of the popliteal space.

Peculiarities in point of division. Occasionally the popliteal artery divides prematurely into its terminal branches; this division occurs most frequently opposite the knee-joint.

Unusual branches. The artery sometimes divides into the anterior tibial and peroneal, the posterior tibial being wanting, or very small. In a single case, the popliteal was found to divide into three branches, the anterior and posterior tibial, and peroneal.

Surgical Anatomy. Ligature of the popliteal artery is required in cases of wound of that vessel, but for aneurism of the posterior tibial it is preferable to tie the superficial femoral. The popliteal may be tied in the upper or lower part of its course; but in the middle of the ham the
operation is attended with considerable difficulty, from the great depth of the artery, and from
the extreme degree of tension of the lateral boundaries of the space.

In order to expose the vessel in the upper part of its course, the patient should be placed in
the prone position, with the limb extended. An incision about three inches in length should then
be made through the integument, along the posterior margin of the Semimembranosus, and the
fascia lata having been divided, this muscle must be drawn inwards, when the pulsation of the
vessel will be detected with the finger; the nerve lies on the outer or fibular side of the artery,
the vein, superficial and also to its outer side; the vein having been cautiously separated from
the artery, the aneurism needle should be passed around the latter vessel from without inwards.

To expose the vessel in the lower part of its course, where the artery lies between the two
heads of the Gastrocnemius, the patient should be placed in the same position as in the preceding
operation. An incision should then be made through the integument in the middle line, com-
mencing opposite the bend of the knee-joint, care being taken to avoid the external saphenous vein
and nerve. After dividing the deep fascia, and separating some dense cellular membrane, the
artery, vein, and nerve will be exposed, descending between the two heads of the Gastrocnemius.
Some muscular branches of the popliteal should be avoided if possible, or if divided, tied imme-
diately. The leg being now flexed, in order the more effectively to separate the two heads of
the Gastrocnemius, the nerve should be drawn inwards and the vein outwards, and the aneurism
needle passed between the artery and vein from without inwards.

**PLAN OF RELATIONS OF POPLITEAL ARTERY.**

**In front.**

Femur.
Ligamentum posticum.
Popliteus.

**Inner side.**

Semimembranosus.

**Popliteal Artery.**

**Outer side.**

Biceps.

**Behind.**

Popliteal vein.
Internal popliteal nerve.
Fascia.

The branches of the popliteal artery are, the

Muscular  
  \{ Superior.

  \{ Inferior or Sural.

Cutaneous.

Superior external articular.
Superior internal articular.
Azygos articular.
Inferior external articular.
Inferior internal articular.

The superior muscular branches, two or three in number, arise from the upper
part of the popliteal artery, and are distributed to the Vastus externus and
flexor muscles of the thigh; anastomosing with the inferior perforating, and
terminal branches of the profunda.

The inferior muscular (Sural) are two large branches, which are distributed
to the two heads of the Gastrocnemius and to the Plantaris muscle. They arise
from the popliteal artery opposite the knee-joint.

Cutaneous branches descend on each side and in the middle of the limb, be-
tween the Gastrocnemius and integument; they arise separately from the
popliteal artery, or from some of its branches, and supply the integument of the
calf.

The superior articular arteries, two in number, arise one on either side of the
popliteal, and wind round the femur immediately above its condyles to the front
of the knee-joint. The internal branch passes beneath the tendon of the Adduc-
tor magnus, and divides into two, one of which supplies the Vastus internus,
inoseculating with the anastomotica magna and inferior internal articular; the other ramifies close to the surface of the femur, supplying it and the knee-joint, and anastomosing with the superior external articular artery. The external branch passes above the outer condyle, beneath the tendon of the Biceps, and divides into a superficial and deep branch: the superficial branch supplies the Vastus externus, and anastomoses with the descending branch of the external circumflex artery; the deep branch supplies the lower part of the femur and knee-joint, and forms an anastomotic arch across the bone with the anastomotica magna artery.

The axygos articular is a small branch, arising from the popliteal artery opposite the bend of the knee-joint. It pierces the posterior ligament, and supplies the ligaments and synovial membrane in the interior of the articulation.

The inferior articular arteries, two in number, arise from the popliteal beneath the Gastrocnemius, and wind round the head of the tibia, below the joint. The internal one passes below the inner tuberosity, beneath the internal lateral ligament, at the anterior border of which it ascends to the front and inner side of the joint, to supply the head of the tibia and the articulation of the knee. The external one passes upwards above the head of the fibula, to the front of the knee-joint, lying in its course beneath the outer head of the Gastrocnemius, the external lateral ligament, and the tendon of the Biceps muscle, and divides into branches, which anastomose with the inferior internal articular artery, the superior articular arteries, and the recurrent branch of the anterior tibial.

**Anterior Tibial Artery.** (Fig. 330.)

The Anterior Tibial Artery commences at the bifurcation of the popliteal, at the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, passes forwards between the two heads of the Tibialis posticus, and through the aperture left between the bones at the upper part of the interosseous membrane, to the deep part of the front of the leg; it then descends on the anterior surface of the interosseous membrane, and of the tibia, to the front of the ankle-joint, where it lies more superficially, and becomes the dorsalis pedis. A line drawn from the inner side of the head of the fibula to midway between the two malleoli will mark the course of the artery.

**Relations.** In the upper two-thirds of its extent, it rests upon the interosseous membrane, to which it is connected by delicate fibrous arches thrown across it. In the lower third, upon the front of the tibia, and the anterior ligament of the ankle-joint. In the upper third of its course, it lies between the Tibialis anticus and Extensor longus digitorum; in the middle third, between the Tibialis anticus and Extensor proprius pollicis. In the lower third, it is crossed by the tendon of the Extensor proprius pollicis, and lies between it and the innermost tendon of the Extensor longus digitorum. It is covered, in the upper two-thirds of its course, by the muscles which lie on either side of it, and by the deep fascia; in the lower third, by the integument, annular ligament, and fascia.

The anterior tibial artery is accompanied by two veins (venae comites), which lie one on either side of the artery; the anterior tibial nerve lies at first to its outer side, and about the middle of the leg is placed superficial to it; at the lower part of the artery the nerve is generally again on the outer side.
ARTERIES.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE ANTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY.

In front.
Integument, superficial and deep fascia.
Tibialis anterior (overlaps it in upper part of leg).
Extensor longus digitorum
Extensor proprius pollicis
Anterior tibial nerve.

Inner side.
Tibialis anterior.
Extensor proprius pollicis
(crosses it at its lower part).

Anterior Tibial.

Outer side.
Anterior tibial nerve.
Extensor longus digitorum.
Extensor proprius pollicis.

Behind.
Interosseous membrane.
Tibia.
Anterior ligament of ankle-joint.

Peculiarities in Size. This vessel may be diminished in size, may be deficient to a greater or less extent, or may be entirely wanting; its place being supplied by perforating branches from the posterior tibial, or by the anterior division of the peroneal artery.

Course. The artery occasionally deviates in its course towards the fibular side of the leg, regaining its usual position beneath the annular ligament at the front of the ankle. In two instances, the vessel has been found to approach the surface in the middle of the leg, being covered merely by the integument and fascia below that point.

Surgical Anatomy. The anterior tibial artery may be tied in the upper or lower part of the leg. In the upper part, the operation is attended with great difficulty, on account of the depth of the vessel from the surface. An incision, about four inches in length, should be made through the integument, midway between the spine of the tibia and the outer margin of the fibula, the fascia and intermuscular septum between the Tibialis anterior and Extensor longus digitorum being divided to the same extent. The foot must be flexed to relax these muscles, and they must be separated from each other by the finger. The artery is then exposed, deeply seated, lying upon the interosseous membrane, the nerve lying externally, and one of the veins comites on either side; these must be separated from the artery before the aneurism needle is passed round it.

To tie the vessel in the lower third of the leg above the ankle-joint, an incision about three inches in length should be made through the integument between the tendons of the Tibialis anterior and Extensor proprius pollicis muscles, the deep fascia being divided to the same extent; the tendon on either side should be held aside, when the vessel will be seen lying upon the tibia, with the nerve superficial to it, and one of the veins comites on either side.

In order to secure the artery over the instep, an incision should be made on the fibular side of the tendon of the Extensor proprius pollicis, between it and the innermost tendon of the long Extensor; the deep fascia having been divided, the artery will be exposed, the nerve lying either superficial to it, or to its outer side.

The branches of the anterior tibial artery are, the

Recurrent tibial.
Muscular.

The recurrent branch arises from the anterior tibial, as soon as that vessel has passed through the interosseous space; it ascends in the Tibialis anterior muscle, and ramifies on the front and sides of the knee-joint, anastomosing with the articular branches of the popliteal.

The muscular branches are numerous; they are distributed to the muscles which lie on either side of the vessel, some piercing the deep fascia to supply the integument, others passing through the interosseous membrane, and anastomosing with branches of the posterior tibial and peroneal arteries.

The malleolar arteries supply the ankle-joint. The internal arises about two inches above the articulation, and passes beneath the tendon of the Tibialis anterior to the inner ankle, upon which it ramifies, anastomosing with branches of the posterior tibial and internal planter arteries. The external passes beneath the tendons of the Extensor longus digitorum and Extensor proprius pollicis, and supplies the outer ankle, anastomosing with the anterior peroneal artery, and with ascending branches from the tarsal branch of the dorsalis pedis.
DORSALIS PEDIS ARTERY. (Fig. 330.)

The Dorsalis Pedis, the continuation of the anterior tibial, passes forwards from the bend of the ankle along the tibial side of the foot to the back part of the

Fig. 329.—The Popliteal, Posterior Tibial, and Peroneal Arteries.

Fig. 330.—Surgical Anatomy of the Anterior Tibial and Dorsalis Pedis Arteries.
PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE ANTERIOR Tibial

**In front.**
- Integument, superficial and deep
- Tibialis anticus (overlaps it in upper part)
- Extensor longus digitorum
- Extensor proprius pollicis
- Anterior tibial nerve

**Inner side.**
- Tibialis anticus
- Extensor proprius pollicis (crosses it at its lower part)

**Behind.**
- Interosseous membrane
- Tibia
- Anterior ligament of ankle joint

*Peculiarities in Size.* This vessel may be diminished to less extent, or may be entirely wanting, its place being taken by the posterior tibial, or by the anterior division of the peroneal artery. If the former is prolonged as far as the medial malleolus, it is termed the long posterior tibial artery. In the dissection of the leg, it occasionally deviates in its course. It is cut across in instances, the vessel has been found to approach the subcutaneous tissue merely by the integument and fascia below that point.

*Surgical Anatomy.* The anterior tibial artery may be ligated in that portion of the leg. In the upper part, the operation is attended with danger to the vessel from the surface. An incision, about half an inch in length, midway between the spine of the tibia and the intermuscular septum between the tendons of the tibia and the fibula, is made; the fascia and intermuscular septum between the tendons of the tibia and the fibula are then divided, and the vessel is exposed. The foot must be separated from the leg by a large incision, about half an inch in length, midway between the spine of the tibia and the intermuscular septum between the tendons of the tibia and the fibula, and the vessel is ligated to the subcutaneous tissue of the leg. If the vessel is ligated too high, it is necessary to divide the tibialis anterior muscle; the deep fascia having been divided, the muscle is pulled upon and tied to the subcutaneous tissue of the leg.

The branches of the anterior tibial artery are as follows:

**Recurrent tibial.**

**Muscular.**

The *recurring branch* arises from the anterior tibial artery and passes through the interosseous space; it then ramifies on the front and sides of the ankle, and supplies the articular branches of the popliteal space.

The *muscular branches* are numerous, which lie on either side of the vessel, some passing through the interosseous space, others passing through the muscles, and ramifying on the articular branches of the posterior tibial artery.

The *malleolar arteries* supply the ankle joint, and ramify on the articular branches of the popliteal space. It is therefore necessary to divide the tibialis anterior muscle in order to ligate the vessel. The vessel is then ligated to the subcutaneous tissue of the leg. If the vessel is ligated too high, it is necessary to divide the tibialis anterior muscle; the deep fascia having been divided, the muscle is pulled upon and tied to the subcutaneous tissue of the leg.

The *dorsalis hallucis arteries* supply the outer side of the great toe, and are not supplied by the anterior tibial artery. The vessel crosses the tarsal bones beneath the toes, and supplies the articular branches of the tendon of the extensor hallucis longus. When the vessel is ligated, it is necessary to divide the tibialis anterior muscle; the deep fascia having been divided, the muscle is pulled upon and tied to the subcutaneous tissue of the leg.

The *femoral arteries* supply the outer side of the thigh, and are not supplied by the anterior tibial artery. The vessel passes outwards to supply the bones of the leg beneath the tibialis anterior muscle. When the vessel is ligated, it is necessary to divide the tibialis anterior muscle; the deep fascia having been divided, the muscle is pulled upon and tied to the subcutaneous tissue of the leg.
Posterior Tibial Artery. (Fig. 329.)

Tibial is an artery of large size, which extends obliquely downward border of the Popliteus muscle, along the tibial side of the arch between the inner ankle and the heel, where it divides beneath the Abductor pollicis, into the internal and external plantar arteries. It lies opposite the interval between the tibia and fibula; as it approaches the inner side of the leg, lying behind the tibia, and, in part of its course, is situated midway between the inner malleolus and the os calcis.

It lies successively upon the Tibialis posticus, the Flexor longus to tibia and the back part of the ankle-joint. It is covered by the peritoneum, which separates it above from the Gastrocnemius and Soleus in the lower third, where it is more superficial, it is covered only by skin and fascia, and runs parallel with the inner border of the tendon, is accompanied by two veins, and by the posterior tibial nerve, first to the inner side of the artery, but soon crosses it, and is, in part of its course, on its outer side.

Plan of the Relations of the Posterior Tibial Artery.

* In front.
  - Tibialis posticus.
  - Flexor longus digitorum.
  - Tibia.
  - Ankle-joint.

* Inner side.
  - Ankle tibial nerve, upper third.

* Outer side.
  - Posterior Tibial.
  - Ankle tibial nerve, lower two-thirds.

* Behind.
  - Gastrocnemius.
  - Soleus.
  - Deep fascia and integument.

* At the Inner Ankle, the tendons and bloodvessels are arranged in the order, from within outwards: First, the tendons of the Tibialis posticus and longus digitorum, lying in the same groove, behind the inner malleolus, the former being the most internal. External to these is the posterior artery, having a vein on either side; and, still more externally, the posterior nerve. About half an inch nearer the heel is the tendon of the Flexor pollicis.

* Varieties in Size. The posterior tibial is not unfrequently smaller than usual, or absent, being supplied by a large peroneal artery, which passes inwards at the lower end of the leg either joins the small tibial artery, or continues alone to the sole of the foot.
first interosseous space, and communicating.

**Relations.** This vessels, scaphoid, and internal vessel being covered by the innermost tendon of the tendon of the Extensor tendons of the Extensor tibial nerve. It is a

**Plan of dissection.**

**Tibial**

**Extensor prop**

**Peculiarities**

for a deficient part, are derived from the anterior peroneal artery.

**Position.** At the middle of the ankle.

**Surgical Anatomy.** Between the two heads of the pollicis, the artery should be divided upon a director, when the *scaphoid,* digitorum, with one of its venous communications, with evert making an incision about three inches long. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step. The external saphenous vein, being divided upon a director, when the ankle, digitorum, with one of its venous communications, will be the first step.

**Branches.**

The anterior and posterior tibial arteries, and the posterior tibial artery, both of which are derived from the tibial artery, may be required in cases of aneurism from wound of the leg. But in aneurism of the posterior tibial artery, the aneurism should be made through the heel and inner ankle, or by having been divided, a strong ligament is continuous above and is intimately adherent to the sheath of the artery. The sheath of the artery is comites on each side. To the heel, towards the ankle, in order to be taken not to include the veins.

*are the Nutrient. Communicating. Internal calcaneus.*

**Taking the back part of the fibular tibial artery, about an inch below the obliquely outwards to the fibula, it passes across the articulation side of the os calcis, supplying the ankle, and anastomosing with the external arteries.

The Tibialis posticus, and, in the Flexor longus pollicis, in a groove bone. It is covered in the upper fascia, below, by the Flexor longus.
PERONEAL.

Plan of the Relations of the Peroneal Artery.

In front.
Tibialis posticus.
Flexor longus pollicis.

Outer side.
Fibula.

Peroneal Artery.

Behind.
Soleus.
Deep fascia.
Flexor longus pollicis.

Peculiarities in Origin. The peroneal artery may arise three inches below the Popliteus, or from the posterior tibial high up, or even from the popliteal.

Its Size is more frequently increased than diminished; and then it either reinforces the posterior tibial by its junction with it, or altogether takes the place of the posterior tibial in the lower part of the leg and foot, the latter vessel only existing as a short muscular branch. In those rare cases where the peroneal artery is smaller than usual, a branch from the posterior tibial supplies its place; and a branch from the anterior tibial compensates for the diminished anterior peroneal artery. In one case, the peroneal artery has been found entirely wanting.

The anterior peroneal is sometimes enlarged, and takes the place of the dorsal artery of the foot.

The peroneal artery, in its course, gives off branches to the Soleus, Tibialis posticus, Flexor longus pollicis, and Peroneus muscles, and a nutrient branch to the fibula.

The Anterior Peroneal, the only named branch of the peroneal artery, pierces the interosseous membrane, about two inches above the outer malleolus, to reach the fore part of the leg, and passing down beneath the Peroneus tertius, to the outer ankle, ramifies on the front and outer side of the tarsus, anastomosing with the external malleolar and tarsal arteries.

The nutrient artery of the tibia arises from the posterior tibial near its origin, and, after supplying a few muscular branches, enters the nutrient canal of that bone, which it traverses obliquely from above downwards. This is the largest nutrient artery of bone in the body.

The muscular branches of the posterior tibial are distributed to the Soleus and deep muscles along the back of the leg.

The communicating branch to the peroneal runs transversely across the back of the tibia, about two inches above its lower end, passing beneath the Flexor longus pollicis.

The internal calcanean are several large arteries, which arise from the posterior tibial just before its division; they are distributed to the fat and integument behind the tendo Achilles and about the heel, and to the muscles on the inner side of the sole, anastomosing with the peroneal and internal malleolar arteries.

The Internal Plantar Artery (Figs. 331, 332), much smaller than the external, passes forwards along the inner side of the foot. It is at first situated above the Abductor pollicis, and then between it and the Flexor brevis digitorum, both of which it supplies. At the base of the first metatarsal bone, where it has become much diminished in size, it passes along the inner border of the great toe, inosculating with its digital branches.

The External Plantar Artery, much larger than the internal, passes obliquely outwards and forwards to the base of the fifth metatarsal bone. It then turns

1 This refers to the erect position of the body. In the ordinary dissection, the artery is deeper than the muscle.

36
first interosseous space, where it divides into two branches, the dorsalis hallucis and communicating.

_Relations._ This vessel, in its course forwards, rests upon the astragalus, scaphoid, and internal cuneiform bones and the ligaments connecting them, being covered by the integument and fascia, and crossed near its termination by the innermost tendon of the Extensor brevis digitorum. On its _tibial side_ is the tendon of the Extensor proprius pollicis; on its _fibular side_, the innermost tendon of the Extensor longus digitorum, and the termination of the anterior tibial nerve. It is accompanied by two veins.

**PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE DORSALIS PEDIS ARTERY.**

_In front._
Integument and fascia.
Innermost tendon of Extensor brevis digitorum.

_Tibial side._
Extensor proprius pollicis.

_Dorsalis Pedis._

_Fibular side._
Extensor longus digitorum.
Anterior tibial nerve.

_Behind._
Astragalus.
Scaphoid.
Internal cuneiform.
and their ligaments.

_Peculiarities in Size._ The dorsal artery of the foot may be larger than usual, to compensate for a deficient plantar artery; or it may be deficient in its terminal branches to the toes, which are then derived from the internal plantar; or its place may be supplied altogether by a large anterior peroneal artery.

_Position._ This artery frequently curves outwards, lying external to the line between the middle of the ankle and the back part of the first interosseous space.

_Surgical Anatomy._ This artery may be tied, by making an incision through the integument, between two and three inches in length, on the fibular side of the tendon of the Extensor proprius pollicis, in the interval between it and the inner border of the short Extensor muscle. The incision should not extend further forwards than the back part of the first interosseous space, as the artery divides in that situation. The deep fascia being divided to the same extent, the artery will be exposed, the nerve lying upon its outer side.

_Branches._ The branches of the dorsalis pedis are the

_Tarsal._ Dorsalis pollicis, or hallucis.
Metatarsal. Communicating.

_Interosseous._

The _tarsal artery_ arises from the dorsalis pedis, as that vessel crosses the scaphoid bone; it passes in an arched direction outwards, lying upon the tarsal bones, and covered by the Extensor brevis digitorum; it supplies that muscle and the articulations of the tarsus, and anastomoses with branches from the metatarsal, external malleolar, peroneal, and external plantar arteries.

The _metatarsal_ arises a little anterior to the preceding; it passes outwards to the outer part of the foot, over the bases of the metatarsal bones, beneath the tendons of the short Extensor, its direction being influenced by its point of origin; and it anastomoses with the tarsal and external plantar arteries. This vessel gives off three branches, the interosseous, which pass forwards upon the three outer Dorsal interossei muscles, and, in the clefts between the toes, divide into two dorsal collateral branches for the adjoining toes. At the back part of each interosseous space these vessels receive the posterior perforating branches from the plantar arch; and at the fore part of each interosseous space, they are joined by the anterior perforating branches, from the digital arteries. The outermost interosseous artery gives off a branch which supplies the outer side of the little toe.
POSTERIOR Tibial.

The *dorsalis hallucis* runs forwards along the outer border of the first metatarsal bone, and, at the cleft between the first and second toes, divides into two branches, one of which passes inwards, beneath the tendon of the Extensor proprius pollicis, and is distributed to the inner border of the great toe; the other branch bifurcating to supply the adjoining sides of the great and second toes.

The *communicating artery* dips down into the sole of the foot, between the two heads of the first Dorsal interosseous muscle, and inosulates with the termination of the external plantar artery, to complete the plantar arch. It here gives off two digital branches; one runs along the inner side of the great toe, on its plantar surface; the other passes forwards along the first metatarsal space, and bifurcates for the supply of the adjacent sides of the great and second toes.

**Posterior Tibial Artery.** (Fig. 329.)

The Posterior Tibial is an artery of large size, which extends obliquely downwards from the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, along the tibial side of the leg, to the fossa between the inner ankle and the heel, where it divides beneath the origin of the Abductor pollicis, into the internal and external plantar arteries. At its origin it lies opposite the interval between the tibia and fibula; as it descends, it approaches the inner side of the leg, lying behind the tibia, and, in the lower part of its course, is situated midway between the inner malleolus and the tuberosity of the os calcis.

**Relations.** It lies successively upon the Tibialis posticus, the Flexor longus digitorum, the tibia and the back part of the ankle-joint. It is covered by the intermuscular fascia, which separates it above from the Gastrocnemius and Soleus muscles. In the lower third, where it is more superficial, it is covered only by the integument and fascia, and runs parallel with the inner border of the tendon Achilles. It is accompanied by two veins, and by the posterior tibial nerve, which lies at first to the inner side of the artery, but soon crosses it, and is, in the greater part of its course, on its outer side.

**Plan of the Relations of the Posterior Tibial Artery.**

*In front.*
- Tibialis posticus.
- Flexor longus digitorum.
- Tibia.
- Ankle-joint.

*Inner side.*
- Posterior tibial nerve, upper third.

*Posterior Tibial.*

*Outer side.*
- Posterior tibial nerve, lower two-thirds.

*Behind.*
- Gastrocnemius.
- Soleus.
- Deep fascia and integument.

**Behind the Inner Ankle**, the tendons and bloodvessels are arranged in the following order, from within outwards: First, the tendons of the Tibialis posticus and Flexor longus digitorum, lying in the same groove, behind the inner malleolus, the former being the most internal. External to these is the posterior tibial artery, having a vein on either side; and, still more externally, the posterior tibial nerve. About half an inch nearer the heel is the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis.

**Peculiarities in Size.** The posterior tibial is not unfrequently smaller than usual, or absent, its place being supplied by a large peroneal artery, which passes inwards at the lower end of the tibia, and either joins the small tibial artery, or continues alone to the sole of the foot.
Surgical Anatomy. The application of a ligature to the posterior tibial may be required in cases of wound of the sole of the foot, attended with great hemorrhage, when the vessel should be tied at the inner ankle. In cases of wound of the posterior tibial, it will be necessary to enlarge the wound so as to expose the vessel at the wounded point, excepting where the vessel is injured by a punctured wound from the front of the leg. In cases of aneurism from wound of the artery low down, the vessel should be tied in the middle of the leg. But in aneurism of the posterior tibial high up, it would be better to tie the femoral artery.

To tie the posterior tibial artery at the ankle, a semilunar incision should be made through the integument, about two inches and a half in length, midway between the heel and inner ankle, or a little nearer to the latter. The subcutaneous cellular membrane having been divided, a strong and dense fascia, the internal annular ligament, is exposed. This ligament is continuous above with the deep fascia of the leg, covers the vessels and nerves, and is intimately adherent to the sheaths of the tendons. This having been cautiously divided upon a director, the sheath of the vessels is exposed, and being opened, the artery is seen with one of the venous comites on each side. The aneurism needle should be passed round the vessel from the heel towards the ankle, in order to avoid the posterior tibial nerve, care being at the same time taken not to include the venous comites.

The vessel may also be tied in the lower third of the leg by making an incision about three inches in length, parallel with the inner margin of the tendo Achillis. The internal saphenous vein being carefully avoided, the two layers of fascia must be divided upon a director, when the artery is exposed along the outer margin of the Flexor longus digitorum, with one of its venous comites on either side, and the nerve lying external to it.

To tie the posterior tibial in the middle of the leg is a very difficult operation, on account of the great depth of the vessel from the surface, and its being covered by the Gastrocnemius and Soleus muscles. The patient being placed in the recumbent position, the injured limb should rest on its outer side, the knee being partially bent, and the foot extended, so as to relax the muscles of the calf. An incision about four inches in length should then be made through the integument, a finger's breadth behind the inner margin of the tibia, taking care to avoid the internal saphenous vein. The deep fascia having been divided, the margin of the Gastrocnemius is exposed, and must be drawn aside, and the tibial attachment of the Soleus divided, a director being previously passed beneath it. The artery may now be felt pulsating beneath the deep fascia, about an inch from the margin of the tibia. The fascia having been divided, and the limb placed in such a position as to relax the muscles of the calf as much as possible, the veins should be separated from the artery, and the aneurism needle passed round the vessel from without inwards, so as to avoid wounding the posterior tibial nerve.


The Peroneal Artery lies, deeply seated, along the back part of the fibular side of the leg. It arises from the posterior tibial, about an inch below the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, passes obliquely outwards to the fibula, and then descends along the inner border of that bone to the lower third of the leg, where it gives off the anterior peroneal. It then passes across the articulation between the tibia and fibula, to the outer side of the os calcis, supplying the neighboring muscles and back of the ankle, and anastomosing with the external malleolar, tarsal, and external plantar arteries.

Relations. This vessel rests at first upon the Tibialis posticus, and, in the greater part of its course, in the fibres of the Flexor longus pollicis, in a groove between the interosseous membrane and the bone. It is covered in the upper part of its course by the Soleus and deep fascia; below, by the Flexor longus pollicis.
PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE PERONEAL ARTERY.

In front.
Tibialis posticus.
Flexor longus pollicis.

Outer side.
Fibula.

Peroneal Artery.

Behind.
Soleus.
Deep fascia.
Flexor longus pollicis.

Peculiarities in Origin. The peroneal artery may arise three inches below the Popliteus, or from the posterior tibial high up, or even from the popliteal.

Its Size is more frequently increased than diminished; and then it either reinforces the posterior tibial by its junction with it, or altogether takes the place of the posterior tibial in the lower part of the leg and foot, the latter vessel only existing as a short muscular branch. In those rare cases where the peroneal artery is smaller than usual, a branch from the posterior tibial supplies its place; and a branch from the anterior tibial compensates for the diminished anterior peroneal artery. In one case, the peroneal artery has been found entirely wanting.

The anterior peroneal is sometimes enlarged, and takes the place of the dorsal artery of the foot.

The peroneal artery, in its course, gives off branches to the Soleus, Tibialis posticus, Flexor longus pollicis, and Peronei muscles, and a nutrient branch to the fibula.

The Anterior Peroneal, the only named branch of the peroneal artery, pierces the interosseous membrane, about two inches above the outer malleolus, to reach the fore part of the leg, and passing down beneath the Peroneus tertius, to the outer ankle, ramifies on the front and outer side of the tarsus, anastomosing with the external malleolar and tarsal arteries.

The nutrient artery of the tibia arises from the posterior tibial near its origin, and, after supplying a few muscular branches, enters the nutrient canal of that bone, which it traverses obliquely from above downwards. This is the largest nutrient artery of bone in the body.

The muscular branches of the posterior tibial are distributed to the Soleus and deep muscles along the back of the leg.

The communicating branch to the peroneal runs transversely across the back of the tibia, about two inches above its lower end, passing beneath the Flexor longus pollicis.

The internal calcanean are several large arteries, which arise from the posterior tibial just before its division; they are distributed to the fat and integument behind the tendo Achillis and about the heel, and to the muscles on the inner side of the sole, anastomosing with the peroneal and internal malleolar arteries.

The Internal Plantar Artery (Figs. 331, 332), much smaller than the external, passes forwards along the inner side of the foot. It is at first situated above the Adductor pollicis, and then between it and the Flexor brevis digitorum, both of which it supplies. At the base of the first metatarsal bone, where it has become much diminished in size, it passes along the inner border of the great toe, inosculating with its digital branches.

The External Plantar Artery, much larger than the internal, passes obliquely outwards and forwards to the base of the fifth metatarsal bone. It then turns

1 This refers to the erect position of the body. In the ordinary dissection, the artery is deeper than the muscle.
obliquely inwards to the interval between the bases of the first and second metatarsal bones, where it anastomoses with the communicating branch from the dorsalis pedis artery, thus completing the plantar arch. As this artery passes outwards, it is at first placed between the os calcis and Abductor pollicis, and then between the Flexor brevis digitorum and Flexor accessorius; and as it passes forwards to the base of the little toe, it lies more superficially between the Flexor brevis digitorum, and Abductor minimi digiti, covered by the deep fascia and integument. The remaining portion of the vessel is deeply situated; it extends from the base of the metatarsal bone of the little toe to the back part of the first interosseous space, and forms the plantar arch; it is convex forwards, lies upon the Interossei muscles, opposite the tarsal ends of the metatarsal bones, and is covered by the Adductor pollicis, the flexor tendons of the toes, and the Lumbricales.

Branches. The plantar arch, besides distributing numerous branches to the muscles, integument, and fasciae in the sole, gives off the following branches:—

Posterior perforating.

Digital—Anterior perforating.

The Posterior Perforating are three small branches, which ascend through the back part of the three outer interosseous spaces, between the heads of the Dorsal interossei muscles, and anastomose with the interosseous branches from the metatarsal artery.

The Digital Branches are four in number, and supply the three outer toes and half the second toe. The first passes outwards from the outer side of the plantar arch, and is distributed to the outer side of the little toe, passing in its course beneath the Abductor and short Flexor muscles. The second, third, and fourth run forwards along the metatarsal spaces, and on arriving at the clefts between the toes divide into collateral branches, which supply the subjacent sides of the three outer toes and the outer side of the second. At the bifurcation of the
toes, each digital artery sends upwards, through the forepart of the corresponding metatarsal space, a small branch, which inosculates with the interosseous branches of the metatarsal artery. These are the anterior perforating branches.

From the arrangement already described of the distribution of the vessels to the toes, it will be seen that both sides of the three outer toes, and the outer side of the second toe, are supplied by branches from the plantar arch; both sides of the great toe, and the inner side of the second, being supplied by the dorsalis hallucis.

**Pulmonary Artery.**

The Pulmonary Artery conveys the venous blood from the right side of the heart to the lungs. It is a short wide vessel, about two inches in length, arising from the left side of the base of the right ventricle, in front of the aorta. It ascends obliquely upwards, backwards, and to the left side, as far as the under surface of the arch of the aorta, where it divides into two branches of nearly equal size, the right and left pulmonary arteries.

*Relations.* The greater part of this vessel is contained, together with the ascending part of the arch of the aorta, in the pericardium, being inclosed with it in a tube of serous membrane, continued upwards from the base of the heart, and has attached to it, above, the fibrous layer of the membrane. Behind, it rests at first upon the ascending aorta, and higher up lies in front of the left auricle. On either side of its origin is the appendix of the corresponding auricle, and a coronary artery; and higher up it passes to the left side of the ascending aorta.

A little to the left of its point of bifurcation, it is connected to the under surface of the arch of the aorta by a short fibrous cord, the remains of a vessel peculiar to foetal life, the ductus arteriosus.

The right pulmonary artery, longer and larger than the left, runs horizontally outwards, behind the ascending aorta and superior vena cava, to the root of the right lung, where it divides into two branches, of which the lower, which is the larger, supplies the lower lobe; the upper giving a branch to the middle lobe.

The left pulmonary artery, shorter but somewhat smaller than the right, passes horizontally in front of the descending aorta and left bronchus to the root of the left lung, where it divides into two branches for the two lobes.

The terminal branches of the pulmonary artery will be described with the anatomy of the lung.

Of the Veins.

The Veins are the vessels which serve to return the blood from the capillaries of the different parts of the body to the heart. They consist of two distinct sets of vessels, the pulmonary and systemic.

The Pulmonary Veins, unlike other vessels of this kind, contain arterial blood, which they return from the lungs to the left auricle of the heart.

The Systemic Veins return the venous blood from the body generally to the right auricle of the heart.

The Portal Vein, an appendage to the systemic venous system, is confined to the abdominal cavity, returning the venous blood from the viscera of digestion, and carrying it to the liver by a single trunk of large size, the vena portae. From this organ, the same blood is conveyed to the inferior vena cava by means of the hepatic veins.

The veins, like the arteries, are found in nearly every tissue of the body. They commence by minute plexuses which communicate with the capillaries. The branches which have their commencement in these plexuses unite together into trunks, and these, in their passage towards the heart, constantly increase in size as they receive branches, and join other veins similar in size to themselves. The veins are larger and altogether more numerous than the arteries; hence, the entire capacity of the venous system is much greater than that of the arterial; the pulmonary veins excepted, which do no exceed in capacity the pulmonary arteries. From the combined area of the smaller venous branches being greater than the main trunks, it results, that the venous system represents a cone, the summit of which corresponds to the heart: its base to the circumference of the body. In form, the veins are not perfectly cylindrical like the arteries, their walls being collapsed when empty, and the uniformity of their surface being interrupted at intervals by slight contractions, which indicate the existence of valves in their interior. They usually retain, however, the same calibre as long as they receive no branches.

The veins communicate very freely with one another, especially in certain regions of the body; and this communication exists between the larger trunks as well as between the smaller branches. Thus, in the cavity of the cranium, and between the veins of the neck, where obstruction would be attended with imminent danger to the cerebral venous system, we find that the sinuses and larger veins have large and very frequent anastomoses. The same free communication exists between the veins throughout the whole extent of the spinal canal, and between the veins composing the various venous plexuses in the abdomen and pelvis, as the spermatic, uterine, vesical, prostatic, etc.

The veins are subdivided into three sets: superficial, deep, and sinuses.

The Superficial or Cutaneous Veins are found between the layers of superficial fascia, immediately beneath the integument; they return the blood from these structures, and communicate with the deep veins by perforating the deep fascia.

The Deep Veins accompany the arteries, and are usually inclosed in the same sheath with those vessels. In the smaller arteries, as the radial, ulnar, brachial, tibial, peroneal, they exist generally in pairs, one lying on each side of the vessel, and are called venae comites. The larger arteries, as the axillary, subclavian, popliteal, and femoral, have usually only one accompanying vein. In certain organs of the body, however, the deep veins do not accompany the arteries; for instance, the veins in the skull and spinal canal, the hepatic veins in the liver, and the larger veins returning blood from the osseous tissue.

(561)
OF THE HEAD AND NECK.

Sinuses are venous channels, which, in their structure and mode of distribution, differ altogether from the veins. They are found only in the interior of the skull, and are formed by a separation of the layers of the dura mater; their outer coat consisting of fibrous tissue, their inner of a serous membrane continuous with the serous membrane of the veins.

Veins have thinner walls than arteries, the difference in thickness being due to the small amount of elastic and muscular tissues which the veins contain. The superficial veins usually have thicker coats than the deep veins, and the veins of the lower limb are thicker than those of the upper.

The minute structure of these vessels is described in the Introduction.

The veins may be arranged into three groups: 1. Those of the head and neck, upper extremity, and thorax, which terminate in the superior vena cava. 2. Those of the lower limb, pelvis, and abdomen, which terminate in the inferior vena cava. 3. The cardiac veins, which open directly into the right auricle of the heart.

Veins of the Head and Neck.

The Veins of the Head and Neck may be subdivided into three groups: 1. The veins of the exterior of the head. 2. The veins of the neck. 3. The veins of the diploe and interior of the cranium.

The veins of the exterior of the head are, the

Facial. Temporo-maxillary.
Temporal. Posterior auricular.
Internal maxillary. Occipital.

The Facial Vein passes obliquely across the side of the face, extending from the inner angle of the orbit, downwards and outwards, to the anterior margin of the Masseter muscle. It lies to the outer side of the facial artery, and is not so tortuous as that vessel. It commences in the frontal region, where it is called the frontal vein; at the inner angle of the eye it has received the name of the angular vein; and from this point to its termination is called the facial vein.

The frontal vein commences on the anterior part of the skull, by a venous plexus, which communicates with the anterior branches of the temporal vein; the veins converge to form a single trunk, which runs downwards near the middle line of the forehead parallel with the vein of the opposite side, and unites with it at the root of the nose, by a transverse trunk, called the nasal arch. Occasionally, the frontal veins join to form a single trunk, which bifurcates at the root of the nose into the two angular veins. At the nasal arch the branches diverge, and run along the side of the root of the nose. The frontal vein as it descends upon the forehead receives the supraorbital vein; the dorsal veins of the nose terminate in the nasal arch; and the angular vein receives the veins of the ala nasi on its inner side, and the superior palpebral veins on its outer side; it moreover communicates with the ophthalmic vein, which establishes an important anastomosis between this vessel and the cavernous sinus.

The facial vein commences at the inner angle of the orbit, being a continuation of the angular vein. It passes obliquely downwards and outwards, beneath the Zygomaticus major muscle, descends along the anterior border of the Masseter, crosses over the body of the lower jaw, with the facial artery, and, passing obliquely outwards and backwards, beneath the Platysma and cervical fascia, unites with a branch of communication from the temporomaxillary vein, to form a trunk of large size which enters the internal jugular.

Branches. The facial vein receives, near the angle of the mouth, communicating branches from the pterygoid plexus. It is also joined by the inferior palpebral, the superior and inferior labial veins, the buccal veins from the cheek, and the masseteric veins. Below the jaw it receives the submental, the inferior palatine, which returns the blood from the plexus around the tonsil and
soft palate; the submaxillary vein, which commences in the submaxillary gland; and lastly, the ranine vein.

Fig. 333.—Veins of the Head and Neck.

The Temporal Vein commences by a minute plexus on the side and vertex of the skull, which communicates with the frontal vein in front, the corresponding vein of the opposite side, and the posterior auricular and occipital veins behind. From this network, anterior and posterior branches are formed which unite above the zygoma, forming the trunk of the vein. This trunk is joined in this situation by a large vein, the middle temporal, which receives the blood from the substance of the Temporal muscle and pierces the fascia at the upper border of the zygoma. The temporal vein then descends between the external auditory meatus and the condyle of the jaw, enters the substance of the parotid gland, and unites with the internal maxillary vein, to form the temporo-maxillary.

Branches. The temporal vein receives in its course some parotid veins, an articular branch from the articulation of the jaw, anterior auricular veins from the external ear, and a vein of large size, the transverse facial, from the side of the face.
OF THE NECK.

The Internal Maxillary Vein is a vessel of considerable size, receiving branches which correspond with those of the internal maxillary artery. Thus it receives the middle meningeal veins, the deep temporal, the pterygoid, masseteric, and buccal, some palatine veins, and the inferior dental. These branches form a large plexus, the pterygoid, which is placed between the Temporal and External pterygoid, and partly between the Pterygoid muscles. This plexus communicates very freely with the facial vein, and with the cavernous sinus, by branches through the base of the skull. The trunk of the vein then passes backwards, behind the neck of the lower jaw, and unites with the temporal vein, forming the temporomaxillary.

The Temporo-maxillary Vein, formed by the union of the temporal and internal maxillary vein, descends in the substance of the parotid gland, between the ramus of the jaw and the Stero-mastoid muscle, and divides into two branches, one of which passes inwards to join the facial vein, the other is continuous with the external jugular. It receives near its termination the posterior auricular vein.

The Posterior Auricular Vein commences upon the side of the head, by a plexus which communicates with the branches of the temporal and occipital veins. The vein descends behind the external ear and joins the temporomaxillary, just before that vessel terminates in the external jugular. This vessel receives the stylo-mastoid vein, and some branches from the back part of the external ear.

The Occipital Vein commences at the back part of the vertex of the skull, by a plexus in a similar manner with the other veins. It follows the course of the occipital artery, passing deeply beneath the muscles of the back part of the neck, and terminates in the internal jugular, occasionally in the external jugular. As this vein passes opposite the mastoid process, it receives the mastoid vein, which establishes a communication with the lateral sinus.

VEINS OF THE NECK.

The Veins of the Neck, which return the blood from the head and face, are the

- External jugular.
- Posterior external jugular.
- Anterior jugular.
- Internal jugular.
- Vertebral.

The External Jugular Vein receives the greater part of the blood from the exterior of the cranium and deep parts of the face, being a continuation of the temporo-maxillary and posterior auricular veins. It commences in the substance of the parotid gland, on a level with the angle of the lower jaw, and runs perpendicularly down the neck, in the direction of a line drawn from the angle of the jaw to the middle of the clavicle. In its course it crosses the Sternomastoid muscle, and runs parallel with its posterior border as far as its attachment to the clavicle, where it perforates the deep fascia, and terminates in the subclavian vein, on the outer side of the internal jugular. In the neck it is separated from the Sterno-mastoid by the anterior layer of the deep cervical fascia, and is covered by the Platysma, the superficial fascia, and the integument. This vein is crossed about its middle by the superficial cervical nerve, and its upper half is accompanied by the auricularis magnus nerve. The external jugular vein varies in size, bearing an inverse proportion to that of the other veins of the neck; it is occasionally double. It is provided with two pairs of valves, the lower pair being placed at its entrance into the subclavian vein, the upper pair in most cases about an inch and a half above the clavicle. These valves do not prevent the regurgitation of the blood, or the passage of injection from below upwards.¹

¹ The student may refer to an interesting paper by Dr. Struthers, "On Jugular Venesection in Asphyxia. Anatomically and Experimentally Considered, including the Demonstration of Valves in the Veins of the Neck," in the Edinburgh Medical Journal, for November, 1856.
Branches. This vein receives the occipital occasionally, the posterior external jugular, and, near its termination, the suprascapular and transverse cervical veins. It communicates with the anterior jugular, and, in the substance of the parotid, receives a large branch of communication from the internal jugular.

The Posterior External Jugular Vein returns the blood from the integument and superficial muscles in the upper and back part of the neck, lying between the Splenius and Trapezius muscles. It runs down the back part of the neck, and opens into the external jugular just below the middle of its course.

The Anterior Jugular Vein collects the blood from the integument and muscles in the middle of the anterior region of the neck. It passes down between the median line and the anterior border of the sterno-mastoid, and, at the lower part of the neck, passes beneath that muscle to open into the termination of the external jugular, or into the subclavian vein (Fig. 338). This vein varies considerably in size, bearing almost always an inverse proportion to the external jugular. Most frequently there are two anterior jugulars, a right and left; but occasionally only one. This vein receives some laryngeal branches, and occasionally an inferior thyroid vein. Just above the sternum, the two anterior jugular veins communicate by a transverse trunk, which receives branches from the inferior thyroid veins. It also communicates with the external and with the internal jugular. There are no valves in this vein.

The Internal Jugular Vein collects the blood from the interior of the cranium, from the superficial parts of the face, and from the neck. It commences at the jugular foramen, in the base of the skull, being formed by the coalescence of the lateral and inferior petrosal sinuses. At its origin it is somewhat dilated, and this dilatation is called the sinus, or gulf, of the internal jugular vein. It runs down the side of the neck in a vertical direction, lying at first on the outer side of the internal carotid, and then on the outer side of the common carotid, and at the root of the neck unites with the subclavian vein, to form the vena innominate. The internal jugular vein, at its commencement, lies upon the Rectus lateralis, behind, and at the outer side of the internal carotid, and the eighth and ninth pairs of nerves; lower down, the vein and artery lie upon the same plane, the glosso-pharyngeal and hypoglossal nerves passing forwards between them; the pneumogastric descends between and behind them, in the same sheath; and the spinal accessory passes obliquely outwards, behind the vein. At the root of the neck the vein of the right side is placed at a little distance from the artery; on the left side, it usually crosses it at its lower part. The right internal jugular vein crosses the first part of the subclavian artery. This vein is of considerable size, but varies in different individuals, the left one being usually the smaller. It is provided with a pair of valves, which are placed at its point of termination, or from half to three-quarters of an inch above it.

Branches. This vein receives in its course the facial, lingual, pharyngeal, superior and middle thyroid veins, and sometimes the occipital. At its point of junction with the branch common to the temporal and facial veins, it becomes greatly increased in size.

The lingual veins commence on the dorsum, sides, and under surface of the tongue, and passing backwards, following the course of the lingual artery and its branches, terminate in the internal jugular.

The pharyngeal vein commences in a minute plexus, the pharyngeal, at the back part and sides of the pharynx, and after receiving meningeal branches, and the Vidian and sphenopalatine veins, terminates in the internal jugular. It occasionally opens into the facial, lingual, or superior thyroid vein.

The superior thyroid vein commences in the substance and on the surface of the thyroid gland, by branches corresponding with those of the superior thyroid artery, and terminates in the upper part of the internal jugular vein.

The middle thyroid vein collects the blood from the lower part of the lateral lobe of the thyroid gland, and being joined by some branches from the larynx and trachea, terminates in the lower part of the internal jugular vein.
OF THE DIPLOE.

The occipital vein has been described above.

The vertebral vein commences in the occipital region, by numerous small branches, from the deep muscles at the upper and back part of the neck, passes outwards, and enters the foramen in the transverse process of the atlas, and descends by the side of the vertebral artery, in the canal formed by the transverse processes of the cervical vertebrae. Emerging from the foramen in the transverse process of the sixth cervical, it terminates at the root of the neck in the back part of the innominate vein near its origin, its mouth being guarded by a pair of valves. On the right side, it crosses the first part of the subclavian artery. This vein, in the lower part of its course, occasionally divides into two branches, one of which emerges with the artery at the sixth cervical vertebra; the other escapes through the foramen in the seventh cervical.

Branches. The vertebral vein receives in its course the posterior condylar vein, muscular branches from the muscles in the prevertebral region; dorsi-spinal veins, from the back part of the cervical portion of the spine; meningo-rachidian veins, from the interior of the spinal canal; and lastly, the ascending and deep cervical veins.

VEINS OF THE DIPLOE.

The diploe of the cranial bones is channelled in the adult by a number of tortuous canals, which are lined by a more or less complete layer of compact tissue. The veins they contain are large and capacious, their walls being thin, and formed only of epithelium, resting upon a layer of elastic tissue, and they present, at irregular intervals, punch-like dilatations, or culs-de-sac, which serve as reservoirs for the blood. These are the veins of the diploe: they can only be displayed by removing the outer table of the skull.

In adult life, as long as the cranial bones are distinct and separable, these veins are confined to the particular bones; but in old age, when the sutures are united, they communicate with each other, and increase in size. These vessels communicate, in the interior of the cranium, with the meningeal veins, and with the sinuses of the dura mater; and on the exterior of the skull, with the veins of the pericranium. They are divided into the frontal, which opens into the supraorbital vein, by an aperture at the supraorbital notch; the anterior tempo-
ral, which is confined chiefly to the frontal bone, and opens into one of the deep temporal veins, after escaping by an aperture in the great wing of the sphenoid; the posterior temporal, which is confined to the parietal bone, and terminates in the lateral sinus by an aperture at the posterior inferior angle of the parietal bone; and the occipital, which is confined to the occipital bone and opens either into the occipital vein, or the occipital sinus.

Cerebral Veins.

The Cerebral Veins are remarkable for the extreme thinness of their coats, in consequence of the muscular tissue in them being wanting, and for the absence of valves. They may be divided into two sets, the superficial, which are placed on the surface, and the deep veins, which occupy the interior of the organ.

The Superficial Cerebral Veins ramify upon the surface of the brain, being lodged in the sulci, between the convolutions, a few running across the convolutions. They receive branches from the substance of the brain, and terminate in the sinuses. They are named, from the position they occupy, superior, inferior, internal, and external.

The Superior Cerebral Veins, seven or eight in number on each side, pass forwards and inwards towards the great longitudinal fissure, where they receive the internal cerebral veins, which return the blood from the convolutions of the flat surface of the corresponding hemisphere; near their termination, they become invested with a tubular sheath of the arachnoid membrane, and open into the superior longitudinal sinus, in the opposite direction to the course of the blood. The external cerebral veins also open chiefly into these veins.

The Inferior Anterior Cerebral Veins commence on the under surface of the anterior lobes of the brain, and terminate in the cavernous sinuses.

The Inferior Lateral Cerebral Veins commence on the lateral parts of the hemispheres, and at the base of the brain: they unite to form from three to five veins, which open into the lateral sinus from before backwards. One of these sometimes opens into the superior petrosal sinus.

The Inferior Median Cerebral Veins, which are very large, commence at the fore part of the under surface of the cerebrum, and from the convolutions of the posterior lobe, and terminate in the straight sinus behind the venæ Galeni.

The Deep Cerebral, or Ventricular Veins (venæ Galeni), are two in number, one from the right, the other from the left, ventricle. They are each formed by two veins, the vena corporis striati, and the choroid vein. They run backwards, parallel with one another, inclosed within the velum interpositum, and pass out of the brain at the great transverse fissure, between the under surface of the corpus callosum and the tubercula quadrigemina, to enter the straight sinus.

The vena corporis striati commences in the groove between the corpus striatum and thalamus opticus, receives numerous veins from both of these parts, and unites behind the anterior pillar of the fornix with the choroid vein, to form one of the venæ Galeni.

The choroid vein runs along the whole length of the outer border of the choroid plexus, receiving veins from the hippocampus major, the fornix and corpus callosum, and unites, at the anterior extremity of the choroid plexus, with the vein of the corpus striatum.

The Cerebellar Veins occupy the surface of the cerebellum, and are disposed in three sets, superior, inferior, and lateral. The superior pass forwards and inwards, across the superior vermis, and terminate in the straight sinus: some open into the venæ Galeni. The inferior cerebellar veins, of large size, run transversely outwards, and terminate by two or three trunks in the lateral sinuses. The lateral anterior cerebellar veins terminate in the superior petrosal sinuses.
OF THE DURA MATER.

Sinuses of the Dura Mater.

The Sinuses of the Dura Mater are venous channels, analogous to the veins, their outer coat being formed by the dura mater; their inner, by a continuation of the serous membrane of the veins. They are fifteen in number, and are divided into two sets: 1. Those situated at the upper and back part of the skull; 2. Those at the base of the skull. The former are the

Superior longitudinal.              Straight sinus.
Inferior longitudinal.             Lateral sinuses.
Occipital sinuses.

The Superior Longitudinal Sinus occupies the attached margin of the falx cerebri. Commencing at the crista galli, it runs from before backwards, groov-

Fig. 335.—Vertical Section of the Skull, showing the Sinuses of the Dura Mater.

ing the inner surface of the frontal, the adjacent margins of the two parietal, and the superior division of the crucial ridge of the occipital bone, and terminates by dividing into the two lateral sinuses. This sinus is triangular in form, narrow in front, and gradually increasing in size as it passes backwards. On examining its inner surface, it presents the internal openings of the cerebral veins, which run, for the most part, from behind forwards, and open chiefly at the back part of the sinus, their orifices being concealed by fibrous areoles; numerous fibrous bands (chordae Willisii) are also seen, which extend transversely across the inferior angle of the sinus; and lastly, some small, white, projecting bodies, the glandulae Pacchioni. This sinus receives the superior cerebral veins, numerous veins from the diploë and dura mater, and, at the posterior extremity of the sagittal and parietal suture, veins from the pericranium.

The point where the superior longitudinal and lateral sinuses are continuous is called the confluence of the sinuses, or the torcular Herophili. It presents a considerable dilatation, of very irregular form, and is the point of meeting of six sinuses, the superior longitudinal, the two lateral, the two occipital, and the straight.

The Inferior Longitudinal Sinus, more correctly described as the inferior longitudinal vein, is contained in the posterior part of the free margin of the falx cerebri. It is of a circular form, increases in size as it passes backwards, and terminates in the straight sinus. It receives several veins from the falx cerebri, and occasionally a few from the flat surface of the hemispheres.
The *Straight Sinus* is situated at the line of junction of the *falx cerebri* with the tentorium. It is triangular in form, increases in size as it proceeds backwards, and runs obliquely downwards and backwards from the termination of the inferior longitudinal sinus to the torcular Herophili. Besides the inferior longitudinal sinus, it receives the *veae Galeni*, the inferior median cerebral veins, and the superior cerebellar. A few transverse bands cross its interior.

The *Lateral Sinuses* are of large size, and are situated in the attached margin of the tentorium cerebelli. They commence at the torcular Herophili, and passing horizontally outwards to the base of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, curve downwards and inwards on each side to reach the jugular foramen, where they terminate in the internal jugular vein. Each sinus rests in its course, upon the inner surface of the occipital, the posterior inferior angle of the parietal, the mastoid portion of the temporal, and on the occipital again just before its termination. These sinuses are frequently of unequal size, and they increase in size as they proceed from behind forwards. The horizontal portion is of a triangular form, the curved portion semi-cylindrical; their inner surface is smooth, and not crossed by the fibrous bands found in the other sinuses. These sinuses receive blood from the superior longitudinal, the straight, and the occipital sinuses; and in front they communicate with the superior and inferior petrosal. They communicate with the veins of the perciamen by means of the mastoid and posterior condyloid veins, and they receive the inferior cerebral and inferior cerebellar veins, and some veins from the diploe.

The *Occipital* are the smallest of the cranial sinuses. They are usually two in number, and situated in the attached margin of the *falx cerebri*. They commence by several small veins around the posterior margin of the foramen magnum, which communicate with the posterior spinal veins, and terminate by separate openings (sometimes by a single aperture) in the torcular Herophili.

The sinuses at the base of the skull are the

Cavernous. Inferior petrosal.
Circular. Superior petrosal.
Transverse.

The *Cavernous Sinuses* are named from their presenting a reticulated structure. They are two in number, of large size, and placed one on each side of the sella Turcica, extending from the sphenoidal fissure to the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone; they receive anteriorly the ophthalmic vein through the sphenoidal fissure, and communicate behind with the petrosal sinuses, and with each other by the circular and transverse sinuses. On the inner wall of each sinus is found the internal carotid artery, accompanied by filaments of the carotid plexus and by the sixth nerve; and on its outer wall, the third, fourth, and ophthalmic nerves. These parts are separated from the blood flowing along the sinus by the lining membrane, which is continuous with the outer coat of the veins. The cavity of the sinus, which is larger behind than in front, is intersected by filaments of fibrous tissue and small vessels. The cavernous sinuses receive the inferior anterior cerebral veins; they communicate with the lateral sinuses by means of the superior and inferior petrosal, and with the facial vein through the ophthalmic.

The *ophthalmic* is a large vein, which connects the frontal vein at the inner angle of the orbit with the cavernous sinus; it pursues the same course as the ophthalmic artery, and receives branches corresponding to those derived from that vessel. Forming a short single trunk, it passes through the inner extremity of the sphenoidal fissure, and terminates in the cavernous sinus.

The *Circular Sinus* completely surrounds the pituitary body, and communicates on each side with the cavernous sinus. Its posterior half is larger than the anterior; and in old age it is more capacious than at an early period of life. It receives veins from the pituitary body, and from the adjacent bone and dura mater.
OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The Inferior Petrosal Sinus is situated in the groove formed by the junction of the inferior border of the petrous portion of the temporal with the basilar process of the occipital. It commences in front at the termination of the cavernous sinus, and opens behind into the jugular foramen, forming with the lateral sinus the commencement of the internal jugular vein. These sinuses are semi-cylindrical in form.

Fig. 336.—The Sinuses at the Base of the Skull.

The Transverse Sinus is placed transversely across the fore part of the basilar process of the occipital bone serving to connect the two inferior petrosal and cavernous sinuses. A second is occasionally found opposite the foramen magnum.

The Superior Petrosal Sinus is situated along the upper border of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, in the front part of the attached margin of the tentorium. It is small and narrow, and connects together the cavernous and lateral sinuses at each side. It receives a cerebral vein (anterior lateral cerebellar) from the anterior border of the cerebellum, a vein from the internal ear, and sometimes a cerebral vein (inferior lateral cerebral) from the under part of the middle lobe.

VEINS OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The Veins of the Upper Extremity are divided into two sets, superficial and deep.

The Superficial Veins are placed immediately beneath the integument between the two layers of superficial fascia; they commence in the hand chiefly on its dorsal aspect, where they form a more or less complete arch.

The Deep Veins accompany the arteries and constitute the venae comitantes of those vessels.

Both sets of vessels are provided with valves which are more numerous in the deep than in the superficial.
VEINS.

The superficial veins of the upper extremity are the

Anterior ulnar. Cephalic.
Posterior ulnar. Median.
Basilic. Median basilic.
Radial. Median cephalic.

The Anterior Ulnar Vein commences on the anterior surface of the ulnar side of the hand and wrist, and ascends along the inner side of the forearm to the bend of the elbow, where it joins with the posterior ulnar vein to form the basilic. It communicates with branches of the median vein in front, and with the posterior ulnar behind.

The Posterior Ulnar Vein commences on the posterior surface of the ulnar side of the hand, and from the vein of the little finger (vena salutella), situated over the fourth metacarpal space. It runs on the posterior surface of the ulnar side of the forearm, and just below the elbow unites with the anterior ulnar vein to form the basilic.

The Basilic is a vein of considerable size, formed by the coalescence of the anterior and posterior ulnar veins. It is situated along the inner side of the elbow, receives the median basilic vein, and passing upwards along the inner side of the arm pierces the deep fascia, and ascends in the course of the brachial artery, terminating either in one of the veins comites of that vessel, or in the axillary vein.

The Radial Vein commences from the dorsal surface of the thumb, index finger, and radial side of the hand, by branches communicating with the vena salutella, and forming by their union a large vessel, which ascends along the radial side of the forearm, and receives numerous branches from both its surfaces. At the bend of the elbow it receives the median cephalic, when it becomes the cephalic vein.

The Cephalic Vein courses along the outer border of the Biceps muscle, to the upper third of the arm; it then passes in the interval between the Pectoralis major and Deltoid muscles, accompanied by the descending branch of the thoraco-acromialis artery and the upper external cutaneous branch of the musculo-spiral nerve, and terminates in the axillary vein just below the clavicle. This vein is occasionally connected with the external jugular or subclavian, by a branch which passes from it upwards in front of the clavicle.

The Median Vein collects the blood from the superficial structures on the palmar
surface of the hand and middle line of the forearm, communicating with the anterior ulnar and radial veins. At the bend of the elbow, it receives a branch of communication from the deep veins, accompanying the brachial artery and divides into two branches, the median cephalic and median basilic, which diverge from each other as they ascend.

The Median Cephalic, usually the smaller of the two, passes outwards in the groove between the Supinator longus and Biceps muscles, and joins with the cephalic vein. The branches of the external cutaneous nerve pass behind this vessel.

The Median Basilic vein passes obliquely inwards, in the groove between the Biceps and Pronator radii teres, and joins with the basilic. This vein passes in front of the brachial artery, from which it is separated by a fibrous expansion (the bicipital fascia) which is given off from the tendon of the Biceps to the fascia covering the Flexor muscles of the forearm. Filaments of the internal cutaneous nerve pass in front as well as behind this vessel.¹

The Deep Veins of the upper extremity follow the course of the arteries, forming their vena comites. They are generally two in number, one lying on each side of the corresponding artery, and they are connected at intervals by short transverse branches. There are two digital veins, accompanying each artery along the sides of the fingers; these, uniting at their base, pass along the interosseous spaces in the palm, and terminate in the two superficial palmar veins. Branches from these vessels on the radial side of the hand accompany the superficialis vole, and on the ulnar side terminate in the deep ulnar veins. The deep ulnar veins, as they pass in front of the wrist, communicate with the interosseous and superficial veins, and unite, at the elbow, with the deep radial veins, to form the vena comites of the brachial artery.

The Interosseous Veins accompany the anterior and posterior interosseous arteries. The anterior interosseous veins commence in front of the wrist, where they communicat with the deep radial and ulnar veins; at the upper part of the forearm they receive the posterior interosseous veins, and terminate in the vena comites of the ulnar artery.

The Deep Palmar Veins accompany the deep palmar arch, being formed by branches which accompany the ramifications of that vessel. They communicate with the superficial palmar veins at the inner side of the hand; and on the outer side terminate in the vena comites of the radial artery. At the wrist, they receive a dorsal and a palmar branch from the thumb, and unite with the deep radial veins. Accompanying the radial artery, these vessels terminate in the vena comites of the brachial artery.

The brachial veins are placed one on each side of the brachial artery, receiving branches corresponding with those given off from that vessel; at the lower margin of the axilla they unite with the basilic to form the axillary vein.

The deep veins have numerous anastomoses, not only with each other, but also with the superficial veins.

The Axillary Vein is of large size and formed by the continuation upwards of the basilic vein. It commences at the lower part of the axillary space, increases in size as it ascends, by receiving branches corresponding with those of the axillary artery, and terminates immediately beneath the clavicle at the outer margin of the first rib, where it becomes the subclavian vein. This vessel is covered in front by the Pectoral muscles and costo-coracoïd membrane, and lies on the thoracic side of the axillary artery. Opposite the subscapularis,

¹ Cruveilhier says: "Numerous varieties are observed in the disposition of the veins of the elbow; sometimes the common median vein is wanting; but in those cases, its two branches of bifurcation are furnished by the radial vein, and the cephalic is almost always in a rudimentary condition. In other cases, only two veins are found at the bend of the elbow, the radial and ulnar, which are continuous, without any demarcation, with the cephalic and basilic."
it is joined by a large vein, formed by the junction of the veins comites of the brachial; and near its termination it receives the cephalic vein. This vein is provided with a pair of valves, opposite the lower border of the subscapularis muscle; valves are also found at the termination of the cephalic and subscapular veins.

The **Subclavian Vein**, the continuation of the axillary, extends from the outer margin of the first rib to the inner end of the sterno-clavicular articulation, where it unites with the internal jugular, to form the vena innominata. It is in relation in front, with the clavicle and Subclavius muscle; behind, with the subclavian artery, from which it is separated internally by the Scaenus anticus and phrenic nerve. Below, it rests in a depression on the first rib and upon the pleura. Above, it is covered by the cervical fascia and integument.

The subclavian vein occasionally rises in the neck to a level with the third part of the subclavian artery, and in two instances has been seen passing with this vessel behind the scalenus anticus. This vessel is provided with valves about an inch from its termination in the innominate, just external to the entrance of the external jugular vein.

**Branches.** It receives the external and anterior jugular veins and a small branch from the cephalic, outside the Scaenus; and on the inner side of that muscle, the internal jugular vein.

The **Vena Innominata** (Fig. 338) are two large trunks, placed one on each side of the root of the neck, and formed by the union of the internal jugular and subclavian veins of the corresponding side.

The **Right Vena Innominata** is a short vessel, about an inch and a half in length, which commences at the inner end of the clavicle, and, passing almost vertically downwards, joins with the left vena innominata just below the cartilage of the first rib, to form the superior vena cava. It lies superficial and external to the arteria innominata; on its right side the pleura is interposed between it and the apex of the lung. This vein, at its angle of junction with the subclavian, receives the right vertebral vein, and right lymphatic duct; and, lower down, the right internal mammary, right inferior thyroid, and right superior intercostal veins.

The **Left Vena Innominata**, about three inches in length, and larger than the right, passes obliquely from left to right across the upper and front part of the chest, to unite with its fellow of the opposite side, forming the superior vena cava. It is in relation, in front, with the sternal end of the clavicle, the sterno-clavicular articulation, and the first piece of the sternum, from which it is separated by the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the thymus gland or its remains, and some loose areolar tissue. Behind, it lies across the roots of the three large arteries arising from the arch of the aorta. This vessel is joined by the left vertebral, left inferior thyroid, left internal mammary, and the left superior intercostal veins, and occasionally some thymic and pericardiac veins. There are no valves in the vena innominatae.

**Peculiarities.** Sometimes the innominate veins open separately into the right auricle; in such cases the right vein takes the ordinary course of the superior vena cava, but the left vein, after communicating by a small branch with the right one, passes in front of the root of the left lung, and turning to the back of the heart, receives the cardiac veins, and terminates in the back of the right auricle. This occasional condition of the veins in the adult, is a regular one in the foetus at an early period, and the two vessels are persistent in birds and some mammals. The subsequent changes which take place in these vessels are the following: The communicating branch between the two trunks enlarges and forms the future left innominate vein; the remaining part of the left trunk is obliterated as far as the heart, where it remains pervious, and forms the coronary sinus; a remnant of the obliterated vessel is seen in adult life as a fibrous band passing along the back of the left auricle and in front of the root of the left lung, called by Mr. Marshall the vestigial folds of the pericardium.

The **internal mammary veins**, two in number to each artery, follow the course of that vessel, and receive branches corresponding with those derived from it.
The two veins of each side unite into a single trunk, which terminates in the innominate vein.

The inferior thyroid veins, two, frequently three or four in number, arise in the venous plexus on the thyroid body, communicating with the middle and superior thyroid veins. The left one descends in front of the trachea, behind the Stero-thyroid muscles, communicating with its fellow by transverse branches, and terminates in the left vena innominata. The right one, which is placed a little to the right of the median line, opens into the right vena innominata, just at its junction with the superior cava. These veins receive tracheal and inferior laryngeal branches, and are provided with valves at their termination in the innominate veins.

The Superior Intercostal Veins return the blood from the upper intercostal spaces.

The right superior intercostal, much smaller than the left, closely corresponds with the superior intercostal artery, receiving the blood from the first, or first and second intercostal spaces, and terminates in the right vena innominata. Sometimes it passes down, and opens into the vena azygos major.

The left superior intercostal is always larger than the right, but varies in size in different subjects, being small when the upper azygos vein is large, and vice versa. It is usually formed by branches from the two or three upper intercostal spaces, and, passing across the arch of the aorta, terminates in the left vena innominata. The left bronchial vein opens into it.

The Superior Vena Cava receives the blood which is conveyed to the heart from the whole of the upper half of the body. It is a short trunk, varying from two inches and a half to three inches in length, formed by the junction of the
two veins innominate. It commences immediately below the cartilage of the first rib on the right side, and descending vertically, enters the pericardium about an inch and a half above the heart, and terminates in the upper part of the right auricle. In its course, it describes a slight curve, the convexity of which is turned to the right side.

Relations. In front, with the thoracic fascia, which separates it from the thymus gland, and from the sternum; behind, with the root of the right lung. On its right side, with the phrenic nerve and right pleura; on its left side, with the ascending part of the aorta. The portion contained within the pericardium is covered by the serous layer of that membrane, in its anterior three-fourths. It receives the vena azygos major, just before it enters the pericardium, and several small veins from the pericardium and parts in the mediastinum. The superior vena cava has no valves.

The Azygos Veins connect together the superior and inferior vena cava, supplying the place of those vessels in the part of the chest which is occupied by the heart.

The larger, or right azygos vein, commences opposite the first or second lumbar vertebra, by a branch from the lumbar veins; sometimes by a branch from the renal vein, or from the inferior vena cava. It enters the thorax through the aortic opening in the Diaphragm, and passes along the right side of the vertebral column to the third dorsal vertebra; where it arches forward over the root of the right lung, and terminates in the superior vena cava, just before that vessel enters the pericardium. Whilst passing through the aortic opening of the Diaphragm, it lies with the thoracic duct on the right side of the aorta; and in the thorax, it lies upon the intercostal arteries, on the right side of the aorta and thoracic duct, covered by the pleura.

Branches. It receives nine or ten lower intercostal veins of the right side, the vena azygos minor, several oesophageal, mediastinal, and vertebral veins; near its termination, the right bronchial vein; and is occasionally connected with the right superior intercostal vein. A few imperfect valves are found in this vein; but its branches are provided with complete valves.

The intercostal veins on the left side, below the two or three upper intercostal spaces, usually form two trunks, named the left lower, and the left upper, azygos veins.

The left lower, or smaller azygos vein, commences in the lumbar region, by a branch from one of the lumbar veins, or from the left renal. It passes into the thorax, through the left crus of the Diaphragm, and, ascending on the left side of the spine, as high as the sixth or seventh dorsal vertebra, passes across the column, behind the aorta and thoracic duct, to terminate in the right azygos vein. It receives the four or five lower intercostal veins of the left side, and some oesophageal and mediastinal veins.

The left upper azygos vein varies according to the size of the left superior intercostal. It receives veins from the intercostal spaces between the left superior intercostal vein, and highest branch of the left lower azygos. They are usually two or three in number, and join to form a trunk, which ends in the right azygos vein, or in the left lower azygos. When this vein is small, or altogether wanting, the left superior intercostal vein will extend as low as the fifth or sixth intercostal space.

The bronchial veins return the blood from the substance of the lungs; that of the right side opens into the vena azygos major, near its termination; that of the left side, into the left superior intercostal vein.

The Spinal Veins.

The numerous venous plexuses placed upon and within the spine may be arranged into four sets.

1. Those placed on the exterior of the spinal column (the dorsi-spinal veins).
2. Those situated in the interior of the spinal canal, between the vertebrae and the theca vertebralis (meningo-rachidian veins).

3. The veins of the bodies of the vertebrae.

4. The veins of the spinal cord (medulli-spinal).

1. The Dorsi-spinal Veins commence by small branches, which receive their blood from the integument of the back of the spine, and from the muscles in the vertebral grooves. They form a complicated network, which surrounds the spinous processes, the laminae, and the transverse and articular processes of all the vertebrae. At the basis of the transverse processes, they communicate, by means of ascending and descending branches, with the veins surrounding the contiguous vertebrae, and they join with the veins in the spinal canal by branches which perforate the ligamenta sublava; they terminate in the intervals between the arches of the vertebrae, by joining the vertebral veins in the neck, the intercostal veins in the thorax, and the lumbar and sacral veins in the loins and pelvis.

2. The principal veins contained in the spinal canal are situated between the theca vertebralis and the vertebrae. They consist of two longitudinal plexuses, one of which runs along the posterior surface of the bodies of the vertebrae throughout the entire length of the spinal canal (anterior longitudinal spinal veins), receiving the veins belonging to the bodies of the vertebrae (vena basis vertebrae). The other plexus (posterior longitudinal spinal veins) is placed on the inner, or anterior surface of the laminae of the vertebrae, and extends also along the entire length of the spinal canal.

The Anterior Longitudinal Spinal Veins consist of two large, tortuous, venous canals, which extend along the whole length of the vertebral column, from the foramen magnum to the base of the coccyx, being placed one on each side of the posterior surface of the bodies of the vertebrae, external to the posterior common ligament. These veins communicate together opposite each vertebra, by transverse trunks, which pass beneath the ligament, and receive the large vena basis vertebrae, from the interior of the body of each vertebra. The anterior longitudinal spinal veins are least developed in the cervical and sacral regions. They are not of uniform size throughout, being alternately enlarged and constricted. At the intervertebral foramina, they communicate with the dorsi-spinal veins, and with the vertebral veins in the neck, with the intercostal veins in the dorsal region, and with the lumbar and sacral veins in the corresponding regions.

The Posterior Longitudinal Spinal Veins, smaller than the anterior, are situated one on either side, between the inner surface of the laminae and the theca vertebralis. They communicate (like the anterior), opposite each vertebra, by transverse trunks; and with the anterior longitudinal veins, by lateral transverse branches, which pass from behind forwards. These veins, at the intervertebral foramina, join with the dorsi-spinal veins.

3. The Veins of the Bodies of the Vertebrae (vena basis vertebrae) emerge from the foramina on their posterior surface, and join the transverse trunk connecting the anterior longitudinal spinal veins. They are contained in large tortuous channels, in the substance of the bones, similar in every respect to those found in the diploe of the cranial bones. These channels lie parallel to the upper and lower surface of the bones, arise from the entire circumference of the vertebra, communicate with veins which enter through the foramina on the anterior surface of the bodies, and converge to the principal canal, which is sometimes double towards its posterior part. They become greatly developed in advanced age.

4. The Veins of the Spinal Cord (medulli-spinal) consist of a minute tortuous venous plexus which covers the entire surface of the cord, being situated between the pia mater and arachnoid. These vessels emerge chiefly from the posterior median furrow, and are largest in the lumbar region. Near the base of the
skull they unite, and form two or three small trunks, which communicate with the vertebral veins, and then terminate in the inferior cerebellar veins, or in the

Fig. 339.—Transverse Section of a Dorsal Vertebra, showing the Spinal Veins.

petrosal sinuses. Each of the spinal nerves is accompanied by a branch as far as the inter-vertebral foramina, where they join the other veins from the spinal canal.

There are no valves in the spinal veins.

VEINS OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The Veins of the Lower Extremity are subdivided, like those of the upper, into two sets, superficial and deep; the superficial veins being placed beneath the integument, between the two layers of superficial fascia; the deep veins accompanying the arteries, and forming the venæ comites of those vessels. Both sets of veins are provided with valves, which are more numerous in the deep than in the superficial set. These valves are also more numerous in the lower than in the upper limb.

The *Superficial Veins* of the lower extremity are the internal or long saphenous, and the external or short saphenous.
The *internal saphenous vein* (Fig. 341) commences from a minute plexus, which covers the dorsum and inner side of the foot; it ascends in front of the inner ankle, and along the inner side of the leg, behind the inner margin of the tibia, accompanied by the internal saphenous nerve. At the knee, it passes backwards behind the inner condyle of the femur, ascends along the inside of the thigh, and passing through the saphenous opening in the fascia lata, terminates in the femoral vein about an inch and a half below Poupart's ligament. This vein receives in its course cutaneous branches from the leg and thigh, and at the saphenous opening the superficial epigastric, superficial circumflex iliac, and external pudic veins.

The veins from the inner and back part of the thigh frequently unite to form a large vessel, which enters the main trunk near the saphenous opening; and sometimes those on the outer side of the thigh join to form a large branch; so that occasionally three large veins are seen converging from different parts of the thigh towards the saphenous opening. The internal saphenous vein communicates in the foot with the internal plantar vein; in the leg, with the posterior tibial veins, by branches which perforate the tibial origin of the Soleus muscle, and also with the anterior tibial veins; at the knee, with the articular veins; in the thigh, with the femoral vein by one or more branches. The valves in this vein vary from two to six in number; they are more numerous in the thigh than in the leg.

The *external or short saphenous vein* (Fig. 342) is formed by branches which collect the blood from the dorsum and outer side of the foot; it ascends behind the outer ankle, and along the outer border of the tendo Achillis, across which it passes at an acute angle to reach the middle line of the posterior aspect of the leg. Passing directly upwards, it perforates the deep fascia in the lower part of the popliteal space, and terminates in the popliteal vein, between the heads of the Gastrocnemius muscle. It is accompanied by the external saphenous nerve. It receives numerous large branches from the back part of the leg, and communicates with the deep veins on the dorsum of the foot, and behind the outer malleolus. This vein has only two valves, one of which is always found near its termination in the popliteal vein.

The *Deep Veins* of the lower extremity accompany the arteries and their branches, and are called the *venae comites* of those vessels.

The external and internal plantar veins unite to form the posterior tibial. They accompany the posterior tibial artery, and are joined by the peroneal veins.

The *anterior tibial veins* are formed by a continuation upwards of the *venae comites* of the dorsalis pedis artery. They perforate the interosseous membrane at the upper part of the leg, and form, by their junction with the posterior tibial, the popliteal vein.
The valves in the deep veins are very numerous.

The Popliteal Vein is formed by the junction of the venæ comites of the anterior and posterior tibial vessels; it ascends through the popliteal space to the tendinous aperture in the Adductor magnus, where it becomes the femoral vein. In the lower part of its course, it is placed internal to the artery; between the heads of the Gastrocnemius, it is superficial to that vessel; but above the knee-joint, it is close to its outer side. It receives the sural veins from the Gastrocnemius muscle, the articular veins, and the external saphenous. The valves in this vein are usually four in number.

The Femoral Vein accompanies the femoral artery through the upper two-thirds of the thigh. In the lower part of its course, it lies external to the artery; higher up, it is behind it; and beneath Poupart's ligament, it lies to its inner side, and on the same plan. It receives numerous muscular branches; the profunda femoris joins it about an inch and a half below Poupart's ligament, and near its termination the internal saphenous vein. The valves in this vein are four or five in number.

The External Iliac Vein commences at the termination of the femoral, beneath the crural arch, and passing upwards along the brim of the pelvis, terminates opposite the sacro-iliac symphysis, by uniting with the internal iliac to form the common iliac vein. On the right side, it lies at first along the inner side of the external iliac artery; but as it passes upwards, gradually inclines behind it. On the left side, it lies altogether on the inner side of the artery. It receives, immediately above Poupart's ligament, the epi-gastric and circumflex iliac veins. It has no valves.

The Internal Iliac Vein is formed by the venæ comites of the branches of the internal iliac artery, the umbilical arteries excepted. It receives the blood from the exterior of the pelvis by the glutæal, sciatic, internal pudic, and obturator veins; and from the organs in the cavity of the pelvis by the hemorrhoidal and vesico-prostatic plexuses in the male, and the uterine and vaginal plexuses in the female. The vessels forming these plexuses are remarkable for their large size, their frequent anastomoses, and the number of valves which they contain. The internal iliac vein lies at first on the inner side and then behind the internal iliac artery, and terminates opposite the sacro-iliac articulation, by uniting with the external iliac, to form the common iliac vein. This vessel has no valves.

The hemorrhoidal plexus surrounds the lower end of the rectum, being formed by the superior hemorrhoidal veins (branches of the inferior mesenteric), and the middle and inferior hemorrhoidal, which terminate in the internal iliac. The portal and general venous systems have a free communication by means of the branches composing this plexus.

The vesico-prostatic plexus surrounds the neck and base of the bladder and prostate gland. It communicates with the hemorrhoidal plexus behind, and receives the dorsal vein of the penis, which enters the pelvis beneath the sub-pubic ligament. This plexus is supported upon the sides of the bladder by a reflection of the pelvic fascia. The veins composing it are very liable to become varicose, and often contain hard earthy concretions, called phleboliths.

The dorsal vein of the penis is a vessel of large size, which returns the blood from the body of that organ. At first it consists of two branches, which are contained in the groove on the dorsum of the penis, and it receives veins from
the glans, the corpus spongiosum, and numerous superficial veins; these unite near the root of the penis into a single trunk, which pierces the triangular ligament beneath the pubic arch, and divides into two branches, which enter the prostatic plexus.

The vaginal plexus surrounds the mucous membrane, being especially developed at the orifice of the vagina; it communicates with the vesical plexus in front, and with the hemorrhoidalplexus behind.

The uterine plexus is situated along the sides and superior angles of the uterus, receiving large venous canals (the uterine sinuses) from its substance. The veins composing this plexus anastomose frequently with each other and with the ovarian veins. They are not tortuous like the arteries.

The Common Iliac Veins are formed by the union of the external and internal iliac veins in front of the sacro-vertebral articulation; passing obliquely upwards towards the right side, they terminate upon the intervertebral substance between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae, where the veins of the two sides unite at an acute angle to form the inferior vena cava. The right common iliac is shorter than the left, nearly vertical in its direction, and ascends behind and then to the outer side of its corresponding artery. The left common iliac, longer and more oblique in its course, is at first situated on the inner side of the corresponding artery, and then behind the right common iliac. Each common iliac receives the iliolumbar and sometimes the lateral sacral veins. The left receives, in addition, the middle sacral vein. No valves are found in these veins.

The middle sacral vein accompanies its corresponding artery along the front of the sacrum, and terminates in the left common iliac vein; occasionally in the commencement of the inferior vena cava.

Peculiarities. The left common iliac vein, instead of joining with the right in its usual position, occasionally ascends on the left side of the aorta as high as the kidney, where, after receiving the left renal vein, it crosses over the aorta, and then joins with the right vein to form the vena cava. In these cases, the two common iliacs are connected by a small communicating branch at the spot where they are usually united.

The Inferior Vena Cava returns to the heart the blood from all the parts below the Diaphragm. It is formed by the junction of the two common iliac veins on the right side of the intervertebral substance between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae. It passes upwards along the front of the spine, on the right side of the aorta, and having reached the under surface of the liver, is contained in a groove in its posterior border. It then perforates the tendinous centre of the Diaphragm, enters the pericardium, where it is covered by its serous layer, and terminates in the lower and back part of the right auricle. At its termination in the auricle, it is provided with a valve, the Eustachian, which is of large size during fetal life.

Relations. In front, from below upwards, with the mesentery, transverse portion of the duodenum, the pancreas, portal vein, and the posterior border of the liver, which partly and occasionally completely surrounds it; behind, with the vertebral column, the right crus of the Diaphragm, the right renal and lumbar arteries; on the left side, with the aorta. It receives in its course the following branches:

- Lumbar.
- Right spermatic.
- Renal.
- Suprarenal.
- Phrenic.
- Hepatic.

Peculiarities. In Position. This vessel is sometimes placed on the left side of the aorta, as high as the left renal vein, after receiving which, it crosses over to its usual position on the right side; or it may be placed altogether on the left side of the aorta, as far upwards as its termination in the heart: in such cases, the abdominal and thoracic viscera, together with the great vessels, are all transposed.

Point of Termination. Occasionally, the inferior vena cava joins the right ayzygos vein, which is then of large size. In such cases, the superior cava receives the whole of the blood from the body before transmitting it to the right auricle, except the blood from the hepatic veins, which terminate directly in the right auricle.
The lumbar veins, three or four in number on each side, collect the blood by dorsal branches from the muscles and integument of the loins, and by abdominal branches from the walls of the abdomen, where they communicate with the epigastric veins. At the spine, they receive branches from the spinal plexuses, and then pass forwards round the sides of the bodies of the vertebrae beneath the Psoas magnus, and terminate at the back part of the inferior cava. The left lumbar veins are longer than the right, and pass behind the aorta. The lumbar veins communicate with each other by branches which pass in front of the transverse processes. Occasionally, two or more of these veins unite to form a single trunk, the ascending lumbar, which serves to connect the common iliac, ilio-lumbar, lumbar, and azygos veins of the corresponding side of the body.

The spermatic veins emerge from the back of the testis, and receive branches from the epididymis; they form a branched and convoluted plexus, called the spermatic plexus (plexus pampiniformis), below the abdominal ring: the vessels composing this plexus are very numerous, and ascend along the cord in front of the vas deferens; having entered the abdomen, they coalesce to form two branches, which ascend on the Psoas muscle, behind the peritoneum, lying one on each side of the spermatic artery, and unite to form a single vessel, which opens on the right side in the inferior vena cava, at an acute angle, on the left side in the left renal vein, at a right angle. The spermatic veins are provided with valves. The left spermatic vein passes behind the sigmoid flexure of the colon, a part of the intestine in which fecal accumulation is common; this circumstance, as well as the indirect communication of the vessel with the inferior vena cava, may serve to explain the more frequent occurrence of varicocele on the left side.

The ovarian veins are analogous to the spermatic in the male; they form a plexus near the ovary, and in the broad ligament and Fallopian tube, communicating with the uterine plexus. They terminate as in the male. Valves are occasionally found in these veins. These vessels, like the uterine veins, become much enlarged during pregnancy.

The renal veins are of large size, and placed in front of the renal arteries. The left is longer than the right, and passes in front of the aorta, just below the origin of the superior mesenteric artery. It receives the left spermatic and left inferior phrenic veins. It usually opens into the vena cava, a little higher than the right.

The suprarenal vein terminates, on the right side, in the vena cava; on the left side, in the left renal or phrenic vein.

The phrenic veins follow the course of the phrenic arteries. The two superior, of small size, accompany the phrenic nerve and comes nervi phrenici artery; the right terminating opposite the junction of the two vena innominata, the left in the left superior intercostal or left internal mammary. The two inferior phrenic veins follow the course of the phrenic arteries, and terminate, the right in the inferior vena cava, the left in the left renal vein.

The hepatic veins commence in the substance of the liver, in the capillary terminations of the vena portae; these branches, gradually uniting, form three large veins, which converge towards the posterior border of the liver, and open into the inferior vena cava, whilst that vessel is situated in the groove at the back part of this organ. Of these three veins, one from the right, and another from the left lobe, open obliquely into the vena cava; that from the middle of the organ and lobulus Spigelii having a straight course. The hepatic veins run singly, and are in direct contact with the hepatic tissue. They are destitute of valves.

1 The student may observe that all veins above the Diaphragm, which do not lie on the same plane as the arteries which they accompany, lie in front of them; and that all veins below the Diaphragm, which do not lie on the same plane as the arteries which they accompany, lie behind them, except the renal and profunda femoris vein.
PORTAL SYSTEM.

PORTAL SYSTEM OF VEINS.

The Portal Venous System is composed of four large veins, which collect the venous blood from the viscera of digestion. The trunk formed by their union (vena portae) enters the liver and ramifies throughout its substance; and its branches again emerging from that organ as the hepatic veins terminate in the inferior vena cava. The branches of this vein are in all cases single, and destitute of valves.

The veins forming the portal system are, the

- Inferior mesenteric.
- Superior mesenteric.
- Splenic.
- Gastric.

The inferior mesenteric vein returns the blood from the rectum, sigmoid flexure, and descending colon, corresponding with the ramifications of the branches of the inferior mesenteric artery. Ascending beneath the peritoneum in the lumbar region, it passes behind the transverse portion of the duodenum and pancreas, and terminates in the splenic vein. Its hemorrhoidal branches inosculate with those of the internal iliac, and thus establish a communication between the portal and the general venous system.¹

The superior mesenteric vein returns the blood from the small intestines, and from the cecum and ascending and transverse portions of the colon, corresponding with the distribution of the branches of the superior mesenteric artery. The large trunk formed by the union of these branches ascends along the right side and in front of the corresponding artery, passes in front of the transverse portion of the duodenum, and unites behind the upper border of the pancreas with the splenic vein to form the vena portae. It receives the right gastro-epiploic vein.

The splenic vein commences by five or six large branches, which return the blood from the substance of the spleen. These uniting form a single vessel, which passes from left to right behind the upper border of the pancreas, and terminates at its greater end by uniting at a right angle with the superior mesenteric to form the vena portae. The splenic vein is of large size, and not tortuous like the artery. It receives the vasa brevia from the left extremity of the stomach, the left gastro-epiploic vein, pancreatic branches from the pancreas, the pancreatico-duodenal vein, and the inferior mesenteric vein.

The gastric is a vein of small size, which accompanies the gastric artery from left to right along the lesser curvature of the stomach, and terminates in the vena portae.

The Portal Vein is formed by the junction of the superior mesenteric and splenic veins, their union taking place in front of the vena cava, and behind the upper border of the great end of the pancreas. Passing upwards through the right border of the lesser omentum to the under surface of the liver, it enters the transverse fissure, where it is somewhat enlarged, forming the sinus of the portal vein, and divides into two branches, which accompany the ramifications of the hepatic artery and hepatic duct throughout the substance of the liver. Of these two branches the right is the larger but the shorter of the two. The portal vein is about four inches in length, and, whilst contained in the lesser omentum, lies behind and between the hepatic duct and artery, the former being to the right, the latter to the left. These structures are accompanied by filaments of the hepatic plexus of nerves, and numerous lymphatics, surrounded by a quantity of loose areolar tissue (capsule of Glisson), and placed between the

¹ Besides this anastomosis between the portal vein and the branches of the vena cava, other anastomoses between the portal and systemic veins are formed by the communication between the left renal vein and the veins of the intestines, especially of the colon and duodenum, and between superficial branches of the portal veins of the liver and the phrenic veins, as pointed out by Mr. Kiersan (Todd and Bowman).
layers of the lesser omentum. The vena portae receives the gastric and cystic veins; the latter vein sometimes terminates in the right branch of the vena portae. Within the liver the portal vein receives the blood from the branches of the hepatic artery.

**Cardiac Veins.**

The veins which return the blood from the substance of the heart are, the

- Great cardiac vein.
- Posterior cardiac vein.

Anterior cardiac veins.

Vene Thebesii.

The *Great Cardiac Vein* is a vessel of considerable size, which commences at the apex of the heart, and ascends along the anterior interventricular groove to the base of the ventricles. It then curves to the left side, around the auriculo-ventricular groove, between the left auricle and ventricle, to the back part of the heart, and opens into the coronary sinus, its aperture being guarded by two
valves. It receives the posterior cardiac vein, and the left cardiac veins from
the left auricle and ventricle, one of which, ascending along the left margin of
the ventricle, is of large size. The branches joining it are provided with
valves.

The Posterior Cardiac Vein commences, by small branches, at the apex of the
heart, communicating with those of the preceding. It ascends along the poste-
rior interventricular groove to the base of the heart, and terminates in the coro-
nary sinus, its orifice being guarded by a valve. It receives the veins from the
posterior surface of both ventricles.

The Anterior Cardiac Veins are three or four small branches, which collect
the blood from the anterior surface of the right ventricle. One of these (the
 vein of Galen), larger than the rest, runs along the right border of the heart.
They open separately into the lower part of the right auricle.

The Vena Thebesii are numerous minute veins, which return the blood
directly from the muscular substance, without entering the venous current.
They open by minute orifices (foramina Thebesii), on the inner surface of the
right auricle.

The Coronary Sinus is that portion of the great cardiac vein which is situated
in the posterior part of the left auriculo-ventricular groove. It is about an inch
in length, presents a considerable dilatation, and is covered by the muscular fibres
of the left auricle. It receives the great cardiac vein, the posterior cardiac vein,
and an oblique vein from the back part of the left auricle, the remnant of the
obliterated left innominate trunk of the fustus, described by Mr. Marshall. The
coronary sinus terminates in the right auricle, between the inferior vena cava
and the auriculo-ventricular aperture, its orifice being guarded by a semilunar
fold of the lining membrane of the heart, the coronary valve. All the branches
joining this vessel, excepting the oblique vein above mentioned, are provided
with valves.

The Pulmonary Veins.

The Pulmonary Veins return the arterial blood from the lungs to the left
auricle of the heart. They are four in number, two for each lung. The
pulmonary differ from other veins in several respects: 1. They carry arterial
instead of venous blood. 2. They are destitute of valves. 3. They are only
slightly larger than the arteries they accompany. 4. They accompany those
vessels singly. They commence in a capillary network, upon the parietes of the
bronchial cells, where they are continuous with the ramifications of the pul-
onary artery, and, uniting together, form a single trunk for each lobe. These
branches, uniting successively, form a single trunk for each lobe, three for the
right, and two for the left lung. The vein from the middle lobe of the right
lung unites with that from the upper lobe, in most cases, forming two trunks
on each side, which open separately into the left auricle. Occasionally, they
remain separate; there are then three veins on the right side. Not unfrequently,
the two left pulmonary veins terminate by a common opening.

Within the lung, the branches of the pulmonary artery are in front, the veins
behind, and the bronchi between the two.

At the root of the lung, the veins are in front, the artery in the middle, and the
bronchus behind.

Within the pericardium, their anterior surface is invested by the serous layer
of this membrane. The right pulmonary veins pass behind the right auricle
and ascending aorta; the left pass in front of the thoracic aorta, with the left
pulmonary artery.
Of the Lymphatics.

The Lymphatics have derived their name from the appearance of the fluid contained in their interior (lympha, water). They are also called absorbents, from the property they possess of absorbing certain materials from the tissues, and conveying them into the circulation.

The lymphatic system includes not only the lymphatic vessels and the glands through which they pass, but also the lacteal, or chyliferous vessels. The lacteals are the lymphatic vessels of the small intestine, and differ in no respect from the lymphatics generally, excepting that they contain a milk-white fluid, the chyle, during the process of digestion, and convey it into the blood through the thoracic duct.

The lymphatics are exceedingly delicate vessels, the coats of which are so transparent, that the fluid they contain is readily seen through them. They retain a nearly uniform size, being interrupted at intervals by constrictions which give them a knotted or beaded appearance. These constrictions are due to the presence of valves in their interior. Lymphatics have been found in nearly every texture and organ of the body, with the exception of the substance of the brain and spinal cord, the eyeball, cartilage, tendon, the membranes of the ovum, the placenta, and umbilical cord, the nails, cuticle, and hair. Their existence in the substance of bone is doubtful.

The lymphatics are arranged into a superficial and deep set. The superficial lymphatics, on the surface of the body, are placed immediately beneath the integument, accompanying the superficial veins; they join the deep lymphatics in certain situations by perforating the deep fascia. In the interior of the body, they lie in the submucous areolar tissue, throughout the whole length of the gastro-pulmonary and genito-urinary tracts; and in the subserous areolar tissue in the cranial, thoracic, and abdominal cavities. The method of their origin is described along with the other details of their minute anatomy in the introduction. Here it will be sufficient to say that a plexiform network of minute lymphatics may be found interspersed among the proper elements and blood-vessels of the several tissues; the vessels composing which, as well as the meshes between them, are much larger than those of the capillary plexus. From these networks small vessels emerge, which pass, either to a neighboring gland, or to join some larger lymphatic trunk. The deep lymphatics, fewer in number, and larger than the superficial, accompany the deep blood-vessels. Their mode of origin is not known; it is, however, probably, similar to that of the superficial vessels. The lymphatics of any part or organ exceed the veins in number; but in size they are much smaller. Their anastomoses also, especially those of the large trunks, are more frequent, and are effected by vessels equal in diameter to those which they connect, the continuous trunks retaining the same diameter.

The lymphatic or absorbent glands, named also conglobate glands, are small solid glandular bodies, situated in the course of the lymphatic and lacteal vessels. They are found in the neck and on the external parts of the head; in the upper extremity, in the axilla and in front of the elbow; in the lower extremity, in the groin and popliteal space. In the abdomen, they are found in large numbers in the mesentery, and along the side of the aorta, vena cava, and iliac vessels; and in the thorax, in the anterior and posterior mediastina. They are somewhat flattened, and of a round or oval form. In size, they vary from a hemp-seed to an almond, and their color, on section, is of a pinkish-gray

(588)
tint, excepting the bronchial glands, which in the adult are mottled with black. Each gland has a layer, or capsule of cellular tissue investing it, from which prolongations dip into its substance forming partitions. The lymphatic and lacteal vessels pass through these bodies in their passage to the thoracic and lymphatic ducts. A lymphatic or lacteal vessel, previous to entering a gland, divides into several small branches which are named afferent vessels. As they enter, their external coat becomes continuous with the capsule of the gland, and the vessels, much thinned, and consisting only of their internal coat and epithelium, pass into the gland, where they subdivide and pursue a tortuous course; and they finally anastomose, so as to form a plexus. The vessels composing this plexus unite to form two or more efferent vessels, which, on emerging from the gland, are again invested with their external coat. Further details on the minute anatomy of the lymphatic vessels and glands will be found in the Introduction.

**Fig. 344.—The Thoracic and Right Lymphatic Duct.**

**THORACIC DUCT.**

The Thoracic Duct (Fig. 344) conveys the great mass of the lymph and chyle into the blood. It is the common trunk of all the lymphatic vessels of the body, excepting those of the right side of the head, neck, and thorax, and right upper extremity, the right lung, right side of the heart, and the convex surface of the liver. It varies from eighteen to twenty inches in length in the adult, and extends from the second lumbar vertebra to the root of the neck. It commences in the abdomen by a triangular dilatation, the receptaculum chyli (reservoir or cistern of Pecquet), which is situated upon the front of the body of the second lumbar vertebra, to the right side and behind the aorta, by the side of the right crus of the Diaphragm. It ascends into the thorax through the aortic opening in the Diaphragm, and is placed in the posterior mediastinum in front of the vertebral column, lying between the aorta and vena azygos. Opposite the fourth dorsal vertebra, it inclines towards the left side and ascends behind the arch of the aorta, on the left side of the oesophagus, and behind the first portion of the left
subclavian artery to the upper orifice of the thorax. Opposite the upper border of the seventh cervical vertebra, it curves downwards above the subclavian artery, and in front of the Scalenus anticus muscle, so as to form an arch; and terminates near the angle of junction of the left internal jugular and subclavian veins. The thoracic duct, at its commencement, is about equal in size to the diameter of a goose-quill, diminishes considerably in its calibre in the middle of the thorax, and is again dilated just before its termination. It is generally flexuous in its course, and constricted at intervals, so as to present a varicosic appearance. The thoracic duct not infrequently divides in the middle of its course into two branches of unequal size, which soon reunite, or into several branches which form a plexiform interlacement. It occasionally bifurcates, at its upper part, into two branches, of which the one on the left side terminates in the usual manner, while that on the right opens into the right subclavian vein in connection with the right lymphatic duct. The thoracic duct has numerous valves throughout its whole course, but they are more numerous in the upper than in the lower part; at its termination it is provided with a pair of valves, the free borders of which are turned towards the vein, so as to prevent the regurgitation of venous blood into the duct.

Branches. The thoracic duct, at its commencement, receives four or five large trunks from the abdominal lymphatic glands, and also the trunk of the lacteal vessels. Within the thorax, it is joined by the lymphatic vessels from the left half of the wall of the thoracic cavity, the lymphatics from the sternal and intercostal glands, those of the left lung, left side of the heart, trachea, and oesophagus; and just before its termination, receives the lymphatics of the left side of the head and neck, and left upper extremity.

Structure. The thoracic duct is composed of three coats, which differ in some respects from those of the lymphatic vessels. The internal coat consists of a layer of epithelium, resting upon some striped lamellas, and an elastic fibrous coat, the fibres of which run in a longitudinal direction. The middle coat consists of a layer of connective tissue, beneath which are several laminae of muscular tissue, the fibres of which are disposed transversely, and intermixed with the elastic fibres. The external coat is composed of areolar tissue, with elastic fibres and isolated fasciculi of muscular fibres.

The Right Lymphatic Duct is a short trunk, about an inch in length, and a line or a line and a half in diameter, which receives the lymph from the right side of the head and neck, the right upper extremity, the right side of the thorax, the right lung and right side of the heart, and from the convex surface of the liver, and terminates at the angle of union of the right subclavian and right internal jugular veins. Its orifice is guarded by two semilunar valves, which prevent the entrance of blood from the veins.

LYMPHATICS OF THE HEAD, FACE, AND NECK.

The Superficial Lymphatic Glands of the Head (Fig. 345) are of small size, few in number, and confined to its posterior region. They are the occipital, placed at the back of the head along the attachment of the occipito-frontalis; and the posterior auricular, near the upper end of theSterno-mastoid. These glands are affected in cutaneous eruptions and other diseases of the scalp. In the face, the superficial lymphatic glands are more numerous: they are the parotid, some of which are superficial and others deeply placed in the substance of the parotid gland; the zygomatic, situated under the zygoma; the buccal, on the surface of the Buccinator muscle; and the submaxillary, the largest, beneath the body of the lower jaw.

The superficial lymphatics of the head are divided into an anterior and a posterior set, which follow the course of the temporal and occipital vessels. The temporal set accompany the temporal artery in front of the ear, to the parotid lymphatic glands, from which they proceed to the lymphatic glands of
the neck. The occipital set follow the course of the occipital artery, descend to the occipital and posterior auricular lymphatic glands, and from thence join the cervical glands.

The superficial lymphatics of the face are more numerous than those of the head, and commence over its entire surface. Those from the frontal region accompany the frontal vessels; they then pass obliquely across the face, running with the facial vein, pass through the buccal glands on the surface of the Buccinator muscle, and join the submaxillary lymphatic glands. The latter receive the lymphatic vessels from the lips, and are often found enlarged in cases of malignant disease of those parts.

The deep lymphatics of the face are derived from the pituitary membrane of the nose, the mucous membrane of the mouth and pharynx, and the contents of the temporal and orbital fossae; they accompany the branches of the internal maxillary artery, and terminate in the deep parotid, and cervical lymphatic glands.

The deep lymphatics of the cranium consist of two sets, the meningeal and cerebral. The meningeal lymphatics accompany the meningeal vessels, escape

Fig. 345.—The Superficial Lymphatics and Glands of the Head, Face, and Neck.

through foramina at the base of the skull, and join the deep cervical lymphatic glands. The cerebral lymphatics are described by Eshmann as being situated between the arachnoid and pia mater, as well as in the choroid plexuses of the lateral ventricles; they accompany the trunks of the carotid and vertebral
arteries, and probably pass through foramina at the base of the skull, to terminate in the deep cervical glands. They have not at present been demonstrated in the dura mater, or in the substance of the brain.

The *Lymphatic Glands of the Neck* are divided into two sets, superficial and deep.

The *superficial cervical glands* are placed in the course of the external jugular vein, between the Platysma and sterno-mastoid. They are most numerous at the root of the neck, in the triangular interval between the clavicle, the sterno-mastoid, and the Trapezius, where they are continuous with the axillary glands. A few small glands are also found on the front and sides of the larynx.

The *deep cervical glands* (Fig. 346) are numerous and of large size; they form an uninterrupted chain along the sheath of the carotid artery and internal jugular vein, lying by the side of the pharynx, oesophagus, and trachea, and extending from the base of the skull to the thorax, where they communicate with the lymphatic glands in that cavity.

**Fig. 346.—The Deep Lymphatics and Glands of the Neck and Thorax.**

The *superficial and deep cervical lymphatics* are a continuation of those already described on the cranium and face. After traversing the glands in those regions, they pass through the chain of glands which lie along the sheath of the carotid vessels, being joined by the lymphatics from the pharynx, oesophagus, larynx, trachea, and thyroid gland. At the lower part of the neck, after receiving
some lymphatics from the thorax, they unite into a single trunk, which terminates on the left side, in the thoracic duct; on the right side, in the right lymphatic duct.

LYMPHATICS OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The Lymphatic Glands of the upper extremity (Fig. 347) may be subdivided into two sets, superficial and deep.

The superficial lymphatic glands are few and of small size. There are occasionally two or three in front of the elbow, and one or two above the internal condyle of the humerus, near the basilic vein.

Fig. 347.—The Superficial Lymphatics and Glands of the Upper Extremity.

The deep lymphatic glands are also few in number. In the forearm a few small ones are occasionally found in the course of the radial and ulnar vessels; and in the arm, there is a chain of small glands along the inner side of the brachial artery.
LYMPHATICS.

The *axillary glands* are of large size, and usually ten or twelve in number. A chain of these glands surrounds the axillary vessels imbedded in a quantity of loose areolar tissue; they receive the lymphatic vessels from the arm; others are dispersed in the areolar tissue of the axilla: the remainder are arranged in two series, a small chain running along the lower border of the Pectoralis major as far as the mammary gland, receiving the lymphatics from the front of the chest and mamma; and others are placed along the lower margin of the posterior wall of the axilla, which receive the lymphatics from the integument of the back. Two or three subclavian lymphatic glands are placed immediately beneath the clavicle; it is through these that the axillary and deep cervical glands communicate with each other. One is figured by Mascagni near the umbilicus. In malignant diseases, tumors, or other affections implicating the upper part of the back and shoulder, the front of the chest and mamma, the upper part of the front and side of the abdomen, or the hand, forearm, and arm, the axillary glands are liable to be found enlarged.

The *superficial lymphatics* of the upper extremity arise from the skin of the hand, and run along the sides of the fingers chiefly on the dorsal surface of the hand; they then pass up the forearm, and subdivide into two sets, which take the course of the subcutaneous veins. Those from the inner border of the hand accompany the ulnar veins along the inner side of the forearm to the bend of the elbow, where they join with some lymphatics from the outer side of the forearm; they then follow the course of the basilic vein, communicate with the glands immediately above the elbow, and terminate in the axillary glands, joining with the deep lymphatics. The superficial lymphatics from the outer and back part of the hand accompany the radial veins to the bend of the elbow. They are less numerous than the preceding. At the bend of the elbow, the greater number join the basilic group; the rest ascend with the cephalic vein on the outer side of the arm, some crossing the upper part of the Biceps obliquely, to terminate in the axillary glands, whilst one or two accompany the cephalic vein in the cellular interval between the Pectoralis major and Deltoid, and enter the subclavian lymphatic glands.

The *deep lymphatics* of the upper extremity accompany the deep bloodvessels. In the forearm, they consist of three sets, corresponding with the radial, ulnar, and interosseous arteries; they pass through the glands occasionally found in the course of those vessels, and communicate at intervals with the superficial lymphatics. In their course upwards, some of them pass through the glands which lie upon the brachial artery; they then enter the axillary and subclavian glands, and at the root of the neck terminate, on the left side, in the thoracic duct, and on the right side in the right lymphatic duct.

LYMPHATICS OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The *Lymphatic Glands* of the lower extremity may be subdivided into two sets, superficial and deep; the former are confined to the inguinal region.

The *superficial inguinal glands*, placed immediately beneath the integument, are of large size, and vary from eight to ten in number. They are divisible into two groups: an upper, disposed irregularly along Poupart’s ligament, which receive the lymphatic vessels from the integument of the scrotum, penis, parietes of the abdomen, perineal and gluteal regions; and an inferior group, which surround the saphenous opening in the fascia lata, a few being sometimes continued along the saphenous vein to a variable extent. The latter receive the superficial lymphatic vessels from the lower extremity. These glands frequently become enlarged in diseases implicating the parts from which their lymphatics originate. Thus in malignant or syphilitic affections of the prepuce and penis, or of the labia majora in the female, in cancer scroti, in abscess in the perineum, or in any other disease affecting the integument and superficial structures in those parts, or the sub-umbilical part of the abdomen or gluteal region, the
upper chain of glands is almost invariably enlarged, the lower chain being implicated in diseases affecting the lower limb.

The deep lymphatic glands are, the anterior tibial, popliteal, deep inguinal, glutal, and ischiatic.

The anterior tibial gland is not constant in its existence. It is generally found by the side of the anterior tibial artery, upon the interosseous membrane at the upper part of the leg. Occasionally, two glands are found in this situation.

The deep popliteal glands, four or five in number, are of small size; they surround the popliteal vessels, imbedded in the cellular tissue and fat of the popliteal space.

The deep inguinal glands are placed beneath the deep fascia around the femoral artery and vein. They are of small size, and communicate with the superficial inguinal glands through the saphenous opening.

The glutal and ischiatic glands are placed, the former above, the latter below the Pyriformis muscle, resting on their corresponding vessels as they pass through the great sacro-sciatic foramen.

The Lymphatics of the lower extremity, like the veins, may be divided into two sets, superficial and deep.

The superficial lymphatics are placed between the integument and superficial fascia, and are divisible into two groups: an internal group, which follow the course of the internal saphenous vein; and an external group, which accompany the external saphenous. The internal group, the larger, commences on the inner side and dorsum of the foot; they pass, some in front, and some behind the inner ankle, run up the leg with the internal saphenous vein, pass with it behind the inner condyle of the femur, and accompany it to the groin, where they terminate in the group of inguinal glands which surround the saphenous opening. Some of the efferent vessels from these glands pierce the cribriform fascia and sheath of the femoral vessels, and terminate in a lymphatic gland contained in the femoral canal, thus establishing a communication between the lymphatics of the lower extremity and those of the trunk; others pierce the fascia lata, and
join the deep inguinal glands. The external group arise from the outer side of the foot, ascend in front of the leg, and, just below the knee, cross the tibia from without inwards, to join the lymphatics on the inner side of the thigh. Others commence on the outer side of the foot, pass behind the outer malleolus, and accompany the external saphenous vein along the back of the leg, where they enter the popliteal glands.

The deep lymphatics of the lower extremity are few in number, and accompany the deep bloodvessels. In the leg, they consist of three sets, the anterior tibial, peroneal, and posterior tibial, which accompany the corresponding bloodvessels, two or three to each artery; they ascend with the bloodvessels, and enter the lymphatic glands in the popliteal space; the efferent vessels from these glands accompany the femoral vein, and join the deep inguinal glands; from these, the vessels pass beneath Poupart’s ligament, and communicate with the chain of glands surrounding the external iliac vessels.

The deep lymphatics of the gluteal and ischiatic regions follow the course of the bloodvessels, and join the gluteal and ischiatic glands at the great sacrosciatic foramen.

**LYMPHATICS OF THE PELVIS AND ABDOMEN.**

The deep lymphatic glands in the pelvis are, the external iliac, the internal iliac, and the sacral. Those of the abdomen are the lumbar glands.

The external iliac glands form an uninterrupted chain round the external iliac vessels, three being placed round the commencement of the vessels just behind the crural arch. They communicate below with the femoral lymphatics, and above with the lumbar glands.

The internal iliac glands surround the internal iliac vessels; they receive the lymphatics corresponding to the branches of the internal iliac artery, and communicate with the lumbar glands.

The sacral glands occupy the sides of the anterior surface of the sacrum, some being situated in the meso-rectal fold. These and the internal iliac glands are affected in malignant disease of the bladder, rectum, or uterus.

The lumbar glands are very numerous; they are situated on the front of the lumbar vertebrae, surrounding the common iliac vessels, the aorta and vena cava; they receive the lymphatic vessels from the lower extremities and pelvis, as well as from the testes and some of the abdominal viscera; the efferent vessels from these glands unite into a few large trunks which, with the lacteals, form the commencement of the thoracic duct. In some cases of malignant disease, these glands become enormously enlarged, completely surrounding the aorta and vena cava, and occasionally greatly contracting the calibre of those vessels. In all cases of malignant disease of the testis, and in malignant disease of the lower limb, before any operation is attempted, careful examination of the abdomen should be made, in order to ascertain if any enlargement exists; and if any should be detected, all operative measures should be avoided, as fruitless.

The lymphatics of the pelvis and abdomen may be divided into two sets, superficial and deep.

The superficial lymphatics of the walls of the abdomen and pelvis follow the course of the superficial bloodvessels. Those derived from the integument of the lower part of the abdomen below the umbilicus, follow the course of the superficial epigastric vessels, and converge to the superior group of the superficial inguinal glands; the deep set accompany the deep epigastric vessels, and communicate with the external iliac glands. The superficial lymphatics from the sides of the lumbar part of the abdominal wall wind round the crest of the ilium, accompanying the superficial circumflex iliac vessels, to join the superior group of the superficial inguinal glands; the greater number, however, run
backwards along with the ilio-lumbar and lumbar vessels, to join the lumbar glands.

The superficial lymphatics of the gluteal region turn horizontally round the outer side of the nates, and join the superficial inguinal glands.

The superficial lymphatics of the scrotum and perineum follow the course of the external pudic vessels, and terminate in the superficial inguinal glands.

Fig. 349.—The Deep Lymphatic Vessels and Glands of the Abdomen and Pelvis.

The superficial lymphatics of the penis occupy the sides and dorsum of the organ, the latter receiving the lymphatics from the skin covering the glans penis; they all converge to the upper chain of the superficial inguinal glands. The deep lymphatic vessels of the penis follow the course of the internal pudic vessels, and join the internal iliac glands.
In the female, the lymphatic vessels of the mucous membrane of the labia, 
nympheae, and clitoris, terminate in the upper chain of the inguinal glands.

The deep lymphatics of the pelvis and abdomen take the course of the principal 
bloodvessels. Those of the parietes of the pelvis, which accompany the gluteal, 
ischiatic, and obturator vessels, follow the course of the internal iliac artery, and 
ultimately join the lumbar lymphatics.

The efferent vessels from the inguinal glands enter the pelvis beneath Pou- 
part's ligament, where they lie in close relation with the femoral vein; they 
then pass through the chain of glands surrounding the external iliac vessels, and 
finally terminate in the lumbar glands. They receive the deep epigastric, 
circumflex iliac, and ilio-lumbar lymphatics.

The lymphatics of the bladder arise from the entire surface of the organ; the 
greater number run beneath the peritoneum on its posterior surface, and, after 
passing through the lymphatic glands in that situation, join with the lymphatics 
from the prostate and vesiculae seminales, and enter the internal iliac glands.

The lymphatics of the rectum are of large size; after passing through some 
small glands that lie upon its outer wall and in the meso-rectum, they pass to 
the sacral or lumbar glands.

The lymphatics of the uterus consist of two sets, superficial and deep; the 
former being placed beneath the peritoneum, the latter in the substance of the 
organ. The lymphatics of the cervix uteri, together with those from the vagina, 
enter the internal iliac and sacral glands; those from the body and fundus of the 
uterus pass outwards in the broad ligaments, and, being joined by the lympha- 
tics from the ovaries, broad ligaments, and Fallopian tubes, ascend with the 
oviducts to open into the lumbar glands. In the unimpregnated uterus, they are 
small; but during gestation, they become very greatly enlarged.

The lymphatics of the testicle consist of two sets, superficial and deep; the 
former commence on the surface of the tunica vaginalis, the latter in the epididymis 
and body of the testis. They form several large trunks, which ascend 
with the spermatic cord, and accompanying the spermatic vessels into the abdo- 
men, open into the lumbar glands; hence the enlargement of these glands in 
malignant disease of the testis.

The lymphatics of the kidney arise on the surface, and also in the interior of 
the organ; they join at the hilum, and, after receiving the lymphatic vessels 
from the ureter and suprarenal capsules, open into the lumbar glands.

The lymphatics of the liver are divisible into two sets, superficial and deep. 
The former arise in the sub-peritoneal arcolar tissue over the entire surface of 
the organ. Those on the convex surface may be divided into four groups: 1. 
Those which pass from behind forwards, consisting of three or four branches, 
which ascend in the longitudinal ligament, and unite to form a single trunk, 
which passes up between the fibres of the Diaphragm, behind the ensiform 
cartilage to enter the anterior mediastinal glands, and finally ascends to the root 
of the neck, to terminate in the right lymphatic duct. 2. Another group, which 
also incline from behind forwards, are reflected over the anterior margin of the 
liver to its under surface, and from thence pass along the longitudinal fissure to 
the glands in the gastro-hepatic omentum. 3. A third group incline outwards to 
the right lateral ligament, and uniting into one or two large trunks, pierce 
the Diaphragm, and run along its upper surface to enter the anterior mediastinal 
glands; or, instead of entering the thorax, turn inwards across the crus of the 
Diaphragm, and open into the commencement of the thoracic duct. 4. The 
fourth group incline outwards from the surface of the left lobe of the liver to 
the left lateral ligament, pierce the Diaphragm, and passing forwards, terminate 
in the glands in the anterior mediastinum.

The superficial lymphatics on the under surface of the liver are divided into 
three sets: 1. Those on the right side of the gall-bladder enter the lumbar 
glands. 2. Those surrounding the gall bladder form a remarkable plexus: they 
accompany the hepatic vessels, and open into the glands in the gastro-hepatic
OF THE INTESTINES.

3. Those on the left of the gall-bladder pass to the cesophageal glands, and to the glands which are situated along the lesser curvature of the stomach.

The deep lymphatics accompany the branches of the portal vein and the hepatic artery and duct through the substance of the liver; passing out at the transverse fissure, they enter the lymphatic glands along the lesser curvature of the stomach and behind the pancreas, or join with one of the lacteal vessels previous to its termination in the thoracic duct.

The lymphatic glands of the stomach are of small size; they are placed along the lesser and greater curvatures, some within the gastro-splenic omentum, whilst others surround the cardiac and pyloric orifices.

The lymphatics of the stomach consist of two sets, superficial and deep; the former originating in the subserous, and the latter in the submucous coat. They follow the course of the bloodvessels, and may, consequently, be arranged into three groups. The first group accompany the coronary vessels along the lesser curvature, receiving branches from both surfaces of the organ, and pass to the glands around the pylorus. The second group pass from the great end of the stomach, accompany the vasa brevia, and enter the splenic lymphatic glands. The third group run along the greater curvature with the right gastro-epiploic vessels, and terminate at the root of the mesentery in one of the principal lacteal vessels.

The lymphatic glands of the spleen occupy the hilum. Its lymphatic vessels consist of two sets, superficial and deep; the former are placed beneath its peritoneal covering, the latter in the substance of the organ: they accompany the bloodvessels, passing through a series of small glands, and after receiving the lymphatics from the pancreas, ultimately pass into the thoracic duct.

THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM OF THE INTESTINES.

The lymphatic glands of the small intestine are placed between the layers of the mesentery, occupying the meshes formed by the superior mesenteric vessels, and hence called mesenteric glands. They vary in number from a hundred to a hundred and fifty: and in size, from that of a pea to that of a small almond. These glands are most numerous, and largest, above near the duodenum, and below opposite the termination of the ileum in the colon. This latter group becomes enlarged and infiltrated with deposit in cases of fever accompanied with ulceration of the intestines.

The lymphatic glands of the large intestine are much less numerous than the mesenteric glands; they are situated along the vascular arches formed by the arteries previous to their distribution, and even sometimes upon the intestine itself. They are fewest in number along the transverse colon, where they form an interrupted chain with the mesenteric glands.

The lymphatics of the small intestine are called lacteals, from the milk-white fluid they usually contain: they consist of two sets, superficial and deep: the former lie beneath the peritoneal coat, taking a longitudinal course along the outer side of the intestine; the latter occupy the submucous tissue, and course transversely round the intestine, accompanied by the branches of the mesenteric vessels: they pass between the layers of the mesentery, enter the mesenteric glands, and finally unite to form two or three large trunks, which terminate in the thoracic duct.

The lymphatics of the large intestine consist of two sets: those of the cæcum, ascending and transverse colon, which, after passing through their proper glands, enter the mesenteric glands; and those of the descending colon and rectum, which pass to the lumbar glands.
LYMPHATICS.

THE LYMPHATICS OF THE THORAX.

The deep lymphatic glands of the thorax are the intercostal, internal mammary, anterior mediastinal, and posterior mediastinal.

The intercostal glands are small, irregular in number, and situated on each side of the spine, near the costo-vertebral articulations, some being placed between the two planes of intercostal muscles.

The internal mammary glands are placed at the anterior extremity of each intercostal space, by the side of the internal mammary vessels.

The anterior mediastinal glands are placed in the loose areolar tissue of the anterior mediastinum, some lying upon the Diaphragm in front of the pericardium, and others round the great vessels at the base of the heart.

The posterior mediastinal glands are situated in the areolar tissue in the posterior mediastinum, forming a continuous chain by the side of the aorta and esophagus; they communicate on each side with the intercostal, below with the lumbar glands, and above with the deep cervical.

The superficial lymphatics of the front of the thorax run across the great Pectoral muscle, and those on the back part of this cavity lie upon the Trapezius and Latissimus dorsi; they all converge to the axillary glands. The lymphatics from the mamma run along the lower border of the Pectoralis major, through a chain of small lymphatic glands, and communicate with the axillary glands.

The deep lymphatics of the thorax are the intercostal, internal mammary, and diaphragmatic.

The intercostal lymphatics follow the course of the intercostal vessels, receiving lymphatics from the intercostal muscles and pleura; they pass backwards to the spine, and unite with lymphatics from the back part of the thorax and spinal canal. After traversing the intercostal glands, they incline down the spine, and terminate in the thoracic duct.

The internal mammary lymphatics follow the course of the internal mammary vessels; they commence in the muscles of the abdomen above the umbilicus communicating with the epigastric lymphatics, ascend between the fibres of the Diaphragm at its attachment to the ensiform appendix, and in their course behind the costal cartilages are joined by the intercostal lymphatics, terminating on the right side in the right lymphatic duct, on the left side in the thoracic duct.

The lymphatics of the Diaphragm follow the course of their corresponding vessels, and terminate, some in front, in the anterior mediastinal and internal mammary glands, some behind in the intercostal and hepatic lymphatics.

The bronchial glands are situated round the bifurcation of the trachea and roots of the lungs. They are ten or twelve in number, the largest being placed opposite the bifurcation of the trachea, the smallest round the bronchi and their primary divisions for some little distance within the substance of the lungs. In infancy, they present the same appearance as lymphatic glands in other situations, in the adult they assume a brownish tinge, and in old age a deep black color. Occasionally, they become sufficiently enlarged to compress and narrow the canal of the bronchi; and they are often the seat of tubercle or deposits of phosphate of lime.

The lymphatics of the lung consist of two sets, superficial and deep: the former are placed beneath the pleura, forming a minute plexus, which covers the outer surface of the lung; the latter accompany the bloodvessels, and run along the bronchi: they both terminate at the root of the lungs in the bronchial glands. The efferent vessels from these glands, two or three in number, ascend upon the trachea to the root of the neck, traverse the tracheal and cesophageal glands, and terminate on the left side in the thoracic duct, and on the right side in the right lymphatic duct.

The cardiac lymphatics consist of two sets, superficial and deep; the former arise in the subserous areolar tissue of the surface, and the latter beneath the
OF THE THORAX.

internal lining membrane of the heart. They follow the course of the coronary vessels; those of the right side unite into a trunk at the root of the aorta, which, ascending across the arch of that vessel, passes backwards to the trachea, upon which it ascends, to terminate at the root of the neck in the right lymphatic duct. Those of the left side unite into a single vessel at the base of the heart, which, passing along the pulmonary artery, and traversing some glands at the root of the aorta, ascends on the trachea to terminate in the thoracic duct.

The thymic lymphatics arise from the spinal surface of the thymus gland, and terminate on each side in the internal jugular veins.

The thyroid lymphatics arise from either lateral lobe of this organ; they converge to form a short trunk, which terminates on the right side in the right lymphatic duct, on the left side in the thoracic duct.

The lymphatics of the oesophagus form a plexus round that tube, traverse the glands in the posterior mediastinum, and, after communicating with the pulmonary lymphatic vessels near the roots of the lungs, terminate in the thoracic duct.
Nervous System.

The Nervous System is composed: 1. of a series of connected central organs, called, collectively, the cerebro-spinal centre or axis; 2. of the ganglia; and 3. of the nerves.

The Cerebro-spinal Centre consists of two parts, the spinal cord and the encephalon: the latter may be subdivided into the cerebrum, the cerebellum, the pons Varolii, and the medulla oblongata.

The Spinal Cord and its Membranes.

Dissection. To dissect the cord and its membranes, it will be necessary to lay open the whole length of the spinal canal. For this purpose, the muscles must be separated from the vertebral grooves, so as to expose the spinous processes and laminae of the vertebrae; and the latter must be sawn through on each side, close to the roots of the transverse processes, from the third or fourth cervical vertebra, above, to the sacrum below. The vertebral arches having been displaced, by means of a chisel, and the separate fragments removed, the dura mater will be exposed, covered by a plexus of veins and a quantity of loose areolar tissue, often infiltrated with serous fluid. The arches of the upper vertebrae are best divided by means of a strong pair of cutting bone-forceps.

Membranes of the Cord.

The Membranes which envelop the spinal cord are three in number. The most external is the dura mater, a strong fibrous membrane, which forms a loose sheath around the cord. The most internal is the pia mater, a cellulo-vascular membrane, which closely invests the entire surface of the cord. Between the two is the arachnoid membrane, an intermediate serous sac, which envelopes the cord, and is then reflected on the inner surface of the dura mater.

The Dura Mater of the cord, continuous with that which invests the brain, is a loose sheath which surrounds the cord, and is separated from the bony walls of the spinal canal by a quantity of loose areolar adipose tissue, and a plexus of veins. It is attached to the circumference of the foramen magnum, and to the posterior common ligament, throughout the whole length of the spinal canal, by fibrous tissue; and extends, below, as far as the top of the sacrum; but beyond this point, it is impervious, being continued, in the form of a slender cord, to the back of the coccyx, where it blends with the periosteum. This sheath is much larger than is necessary for its contents, and its size is greater in the cervical and lumbar regions than in the dorsal. Its inner surface is smooth, covered by a layer of polygonal cells; and on each side may be seen the double openings which transmit the two roots of the corresponding spinal nerve, the fibrous layer of the dura mater being continued in the form of a tubular prolongation on them as they issue from these apertures. These prolongations of the dura mater are short in the upper part of the spine, but become gradually longer below, forming a number of tubes of fibrous membrane, which inclose the sacral nerves, and are contained in the spinal canal.

The chief peculiarities of the dura mater of the cord, as compared with that investing the brain, are the following:

The dura mater of the cord is not adherent to the bones of the spinal canal, which have an independent periosteum.

It does not send partitions into the fissures of the cord, as in the brain.

Its fibrous laminae do not separate, to form venous sinuses, as in the brain.

Structure. The dura mater consists of white fibrous tissue, arranged in bands (602)
which intersect one another. It is sparingly supplied with vessels; and no nerves have as yet been traced into it.

The Arachnoid is exposed by slit ting up the dura mater, and reflecting that membrane to either side (Fig. 350). It is a thin, delicate serous membrane, which invests the outer surface of the cord, and is then reflected upon the inner surface of the dura mater, to which it is intimately adherent. Above, it is continuous with the cerebral arachnoid; below, it is reflected on the various nerves, so that its parietal and visceral layers become continuous with each other. The visceral layer is the portion which surrounds the cord, and that which lines the inner surface of the dura mater is called the parietal layer; the interval between the two is called the cavity of the arachnoid. The visceral layer forms a loose sheath around the cord, so as to leave a considerable interval between the two, which is called the sub-arachnoideal space. This space is largest at the lower part of the spinal canal, and incloses the mass of nerves which form the cauda equina. It contains an abundant serous secretion, the cerebro-spinal fluid, and usually communicates with the general ventricular cavity of the brain, by means of an opening in the fibrous layer of the inferior boundary of the fourth ventricle. This secretion is sufficient in amount to expand the arachnoid membrane, so as to completely fill up the whole of the space included in the dura mater. The sub-arachnoideal space is crossed, at the back part of the cord, by numerous fibrous bands, which stretch from the arachnoid to the pia mater, especially in the cervical region, and is partially subdivided by a longitudinal membranous partition, which serves to connect the arachnoid with the pia mater, opposite the posterior median fissure. This partition is incomplete, and cribiform in structure, consisting of bundles of white fibrous tissue, interlacing with each other. The visceral layer of the arachnoid surrounds the spinal nerves where they arise from the cord, and incloses them in a tubular sheath as far as their point of exit from the dura mater, where it becomes continuous with the parietal layer.

The arachnoid is destitute of vessels. No nerves have as yet been traced into this membrane.

The Pia Mater of the cord is exposed on the removal of the arachnoid (Fig. 350). It is less vascular in structure than the pia mater of the brain, with which it is continuous, being thicker, more dense in structure, and composed of fibrous tissue, arranged in longitudinal bundles. It covers the entire surface of the cord, to which it is very intimately adherent, forming its neurilemma, and sends a process downwards into its anterior fissure, and another, extremely delicate, into the posterior fissure. It also forms a sheath for each of the filaments of the spinal nerves, and invests the nerves themselves. A longitudinal fibrous band extends along the middle line on its anterior surface, called by Haller the linea

---

1 Killikler denies that the inner surface of the dura mater is covered by an outer layer of the arachnoid, and states that nothing is found here except an epithelial layer, no trace of a special membrane existing.
Nervous System.

Splendens; and a somewhat similar band, the ligamentum denticulatum, is situated on each side. At the point where the cord terminates, the pia mater becomes contracted, and is continued down as a long, slender filament (filum terminale), which descends through the centre of the mass of nerves forming the cauda equina, and is blended with the impervious sheath of dura mater, on a level with the top of the sacral canal. It assists in maintaining the cord in its position during the movements of the trunk, and is, from this circumstance, called the central ligament of the spinal cord. It contains a little gray nervous substance, which may be traced for some distance into its upper part, and is accompanied by a small artery and vein.

Structure. The pia mater of the cord, though less vascular than that which invests the brain, contains a network of delicate vessels in its substance. It is also supplied with nerves, which are derived from the sympathetic, and from the posterior roots of the spinal nerves. At the upper part of the cord, the pia mater presents a grayish, mottled tint, which is owing to yellowish or brown pigment cells being scattered within its tissue.

The Ligamentum Denticulatum or Dentatum (Fig. 350) is a narrow fibrous band, situated on each side of the spinal cord, throughout its entire length, and separating the anterior from the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, having received its name from the serrated appearance which it presents. Its inner border is continuous with the pia mater, at the side of the cord. Its outer border presents a series of triangular, dentated serrations, the points of which are fixed, at intervals, to the dura mater, serving to unite together the two layers of the arachnoid membrane. These serrations are about twenty in number, on each side, the first being attached to the dura mater, opposite the margin of the foramen magnum, between the vertebral artery and the hypoglossal nerve; and the last near the lower end of the cord. Its use is to support the cord in the fluid by which it is surrounded.

The Spinal Cord.

The Spinal Cord (medulla spinalis) is the cylindrical elongated part of the cerebro-spinal axis, which is contained in the vertebral canal. Its length is usually about sixteen or seventeen inches, and its weight, when divested of its membranes and nerves, about one ounce and a half, its proportion to the encephalon being about 1 to 83. It does not nearly fill the canal in which it is contained, its investing membranes being separated from the surrounding walls by areolar tissue and a plexus of veins. It occupies, in the adult, the upper two-thirds of the vertebral canal, extending from the upper border of the atlas to the lower border of the body of the first lumbar vertebra, where it terminates in a slender filament of gray substance, which is continued for some distance into the filum terminale. In the fetus, before the third month, it extends to the bottom of the sacral canal; but, after this period, it gradually recedes from below, as the growth of the bones composing the canal is more rapid in proportion than that of the cord; so that, in the child at birth, the cord extends as far as the third lumbar vertebra. Its position varies also according to the degree of curvature of the spinal column, being raised somewhat in flexion of the spine. On examining its surface, it presents a difference in its diameter in different parts, being marked by two enlargements, an upper or cervical, and a lower or lumbar. The cervical enlargement, which is the larger, extends from the third cervical to the first dorsal vertebra; its greatest diameter is in the transverse direction, and it corresponds with the origin of the nerves which supply the upper extremities. The lower, or lumbar enlargement, is situated opposite the last dorsal vertebra, its greatest diameter being from before backwards. It corresponds with the origin of the nerves which supply the lower extremities. In form, the spinal cord is a flattened cylinder. It presents, on its anterior surface, along the middle line, a longitudinal fissure, the anterior median
fissure; and, on its posterior surface, another fissure, which also extends along the entire length of the cord, the posterior median fissure. These fissures serve to divide the cord into two symmetrical halves, which are united in the middle line, throughout their entire length, by a transverse band of nervous substance, the commissure.

The Anterior median fissure is wider, but of less depth than the posterior, extending into the cord for about one-third of its thickness, and is deepest at the lower part of the cord. It contains a prolongation from the pia mater; and its floor is formed by the anterior white commissure, which is perforated by numerous bloodvessels, passing to the centre of the cord.

The Posterior median fissure is much more delicate than the anterior, and most distinct at the upper and lower parts of the cord. It extends into the cord to about one-half of its depth. It contains a very slender process of the pia mater, and numerous bloodvessels, and its floor is formed by a thin layer of white substance, the posterior white commissure. Some anatomists state that the bottom of this fissure corresponds to the gray matter, except in the cervical region, and at a point corresponding to the enlargement in the lumbar region.¹

Lateral Fissures. On either side of the anterior median fissure, a linear series of foramina may be observed, indicating the points where the anterior roots of the spinal nerves emerge from the cord. This is called, by some anatomists, the antero-lateral fissure of the cord, although no actual fissure exists in this situation. And on either side of the posterior median fissure, along the line of attachment of the posterior roots of the nerves, a delicate fissure may be seen, leading down to the gray matter which approaches the surface in this situation; this is called the postero-lateral fissure of the spinal cord. On the posterior surface of the spinal cord, on either side of the posterior median fissure, is a slight longitudinal furrow, marking off two slender tracts, the posterior median columns. These are most distinct in the cervical region, but are stated by Foville to exist throughout the whole length of the cord.

Columns of the Cord. The fissures divide each half of the spinal cord into four columns, an anterior column, a lateral column, a posterior column, and a posterior median column.

The anterior column includes all the portion of the cord between the anterior median fissure and the antero-lateral fissure, from which the anterior roots of the nerves arise. It is continuous with the anterior pyramid of the medulla oblongata.

The lateral column, the largest segment of the cord, includes all the portion between the antero- and postero-lateral fissures. It is continuous with the lateral column of the medulla. By some anatomists, the anterior and lateral columns are included together, under the name of the antero-lateral column, which forms rather more than two-thirds of the entire circumference of the cord.

The posterior column is situated between the posterior median and postero-lateral fissures. It is continuous with the restiform body of the medulla.

The posterior median column is that narrow segment of the cord which is seen on each side of the posterior median fissure, usually included with the preceding, as the posterior column.

Structure of the Cord. If a transverse section of the spinal cord be made, it

¹ This was the teaching of Vieu d'Azrr, who is followed by Sappey and most of the best modern anatomists. On the other hand, Meckel strongly affirms the existence of a distinct posterior white commissure.
will be seen to consist of white and gray nervous substance. The white matter is situated externally, and constitutes the greater part. The gray substance occupies the centre, and is so arranged as to present on the surface of the section two crescentic masses placed one in each lateral half of the cord, united together by a transverse band of gray matter, the gray commissure. Each crescentic mass has an anterior and posterior horn. The posterior horn is long and narrow, and approaches the surface of the posterolateral fissure, near which it presents a slight enlargement. The anterior horn is short and thick, and does not quite reach the surface, but extends towards the point of attachment of the anterior roots of the nerves. Its margin presents a dentate or stellate appearance. Owing to the projections towards the surface of the anterior and posterior horns of the gray matter, each half of the cord is divided, more or less completely, into three columns, anterior, middle, and posterior; the anterior and middle being joined to form the antero-lateral column, as the anterior horn does not quite reach the surface.

The gray commissure, which connects the two crescentic masses of gray matter, is separated from the bottom of the anterior median fissure by the anterior white commissure; and from the bottom of the posterior fissure by the posterior white commissure. The gray commissure consists of a transverse band of gray matter and of white fibres, derived from the opposite half of the cord and the posterior roots of the nerves. The anterior commissure is formed of fibres, partly from the anterior column, and partly from the fibrils of the anterior roots of the spinal nerves, which decussate as they pass across from one to the other side.

The mode of arrangement of the gray matter, and its amount in proportion to the white, vary in different parts of the cord. Thus, the posterior horns are long and narrow, in the cervical region; short and narrower, in the dorsal; short, but wider, in the lumbar region. In the cervical region, the crescentic portions are small, and the white matter more abundant than in any other region of the cord. In the dorsal region, the gray matter is least developed, the white matter being also small in quantity. In the lumbar region, the gray matter is more abundant than in any other region of the cord. Towards the lower end of the cord, the white matter gradually ceases. The crescentic portions of the gray matter soon blend into a single mass, which forms the only constituent of the extreme point of the cord.

The minute anatomy of the cord was described in the Introduction.

**The Brain and its Membranes.**

**Dissection.** To examine the brain with its membranes, the skull-cup must be removed. In order to effect this, saw through the external table, the section commencing, in front, about an inch above the margin of the orbit, and extending, behind, to a level with the occipital protuberance. Then break the internal table with the chisel and hammer, to avoid injuring the investing membranes or brain; loosen, and forcibly detach the skull, when the dura mater will be exposed. The adhesion between the bone and the dura mater is very intimate, and much more so in the young subject than in the adult.

The Membranes of the Brain are, the dura mater, arachnoid membrane, and pia mater.

**Dura Mater.**

The Dura Mater is a thick and dense inelastic fibrous membrane, which lines the interior of the skull. Its outer surface is rough and fibrillated, and adheres
closely to the inner surface of the bones, forming their internal periosteum, this
adhesion being more intimate opposite the sutures and at the base of the skull;
at the margin of the foramen magnum, it becomes continuous with the dura
mater lining the spinal canal. Its inner surface is smooth and epitheliated,
being lined by the parietal layer of the arachnoid. The dura mater is, therefore,
a fibro-serous membrane, composed of an external fibrous lamella and an internal
serous layer. It sends numerous processes inwards, into the cavity of the skull,
for the support and protection of the different parts of the brain; and is pro-
longed to the outer surface of the skull, through the various foramina which
exist at the base, and thus becomes continuous with the pericranium; its fibrous
layer forms sheaths for the nerves which pass through these apertures. At
the base of the skull, it sends a fibrous prolongation into the foramen caecum;
it lines the olfactory groove, and sends a series of tubular prolongations round
the filaments of the olfactory nerves as they pass through the cribiform plate;
a prolongation is also continued through the sphenoidal fissure into the orbit,
and another is continued into the same cavity through the optic foramen, forming
a sheath for the optic nerve, which is continued as far as the eyeball. In certain
situations in the skull already mentioned, the fibrous layers of this membrane
are separate, to form sinuses for the passage of venous blood. Upon the upper
surface of the dura mater, in the situation of the longitudinal sinus, may be
seen numerous small whitish bodies, the glandulae Pacchioni.

Structure. The dura mater consists of white fibrous and elastic tissues,
arranged in flattened laminae, which intersect one another in every direction.

Its arteries are very numerous, but are chiefly distributed to the bones. Those
found in the anterior fossa are the anterior meningeal branches of the anterior
and posterior ethmoidal, and internal carotid. In the middle fossa are the
middle and small meningeal, branches of the internal maxillary, and a third
branch from the ascending pharyngeal, which enters the skull through the
foramen lacerum basis cranii. In the posterior fossa, are the meningeal branch
of the occipital, which enters the skull through the jugular foramen; the pos-
terior meningeal, from the vertebral; and occasionally meningeal branches from
the ascending pharyngeal, which enter the skull, one at the jugular foramen,
the other at the anterior condyloid foramen.

The veins, which return the blood from the dura mater, and partly from the
bones, Anastomose with the diploic veins. These vessels terminate in the
various sinuses, with the exception of two which accompany the middle menin-
geal artery, and pass out of the skull at the foramen spinosum.

The nerves of the dura mater are, the recurrent branch of the fourth, and
filaments from the Casserian ganglion, from the ophthalmic nerve, and from
the sympathetic.

The so-called glandulae Pacchioni are numerous small whitish granulations,
usually collected into clusters of variable size, which are found in the following
situations: 1. Upon the outer surface of the dura mater, in the vicinity of the
superior longitudinal sinus, being received into little depressions on the inner
surface of the calvarium. 2. On the inner surface of the dura mater. 3. In
the superior longitudinal sinus. 4. On the pia mater, near the margin of the
hemispheres.

These bodies are not glandular in structure, but consist of a fibro-cellular
matrix originally developed from the pia mater: by their growth they produce
absorption or separation of the fibres of the dura mater; in a similar manner
they make their way into the superior longitudinal sinus, where they are
covered by the lining membrane. The cerebral layer of the arachnoid in the
situation of these growths is usually thickened and opaque, and adherent to the
parietal portion.

These bodies are not found in infancy, and very rarely until the third year.
They are usually found after the seventh year; and from this period they in-
crease in number as age advances. Occasionally they are wanting.
Processes of the Dura Mater. The processes of the dura mater, sent inwards into the cavity of the skull, are three in number, the falx cerebri, the tentorium cerebelli, and the falx cerebelli.

The falx cerebri, so named from its sickle-like form, is a strong arched process of the dura mater, which descends vertically in the longitudinal fissure between the two hemispheres of the brain. It is narrow in front, where it is attached to the crista galli process of the ethmoid bone; and broad behind, where it is connected with the upper surface of the tentorium. Its upper margin is convex, and attached to the inner surface of the skull as far back as the internal occipital protuberance. In this situation it is broad, and contains the superior longitudinal sinus. Its lower margin is free, concave, and presents a sharp curved edge, which contains the inferior longitudinal sinus.

The tentorium cerebelli is an arched lamina of dura mater, elevated in the middle, and inclining downwards towards the circumference. It covers the upper surface of the cerebellum, supporting the posterior lobes of the brain, and preventing their pressure upon it. It is attached, behind, by its convex border, to the transverse ridges upon the inner surface of the occipital bone, and there incloses the lateral sinuses; in front, to the superior margin of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, inclosing the superior petrosal sinuses, and from the apex of this bone, on each side, is continued to the anterior and posterior clinoid processes. Along the middle line of its upper surface, the posterior border of the falx cerebri is attached, the straight sinus being placed on their point of junction. Its anterior border is free and concave, and presents a large oval opening for the transmission of the crura cerebri.

The falx cerebelli is a small triangular process of dura mater, received into the indentation between the two lateral lobes of the cerebellum behind. Its base is attached, above, to the under and back part of the tentorium; its posterior margin, to the lower division of the vertical crest on the under surface of the occipital bone. As it descends, it sometimes divides into two smaller folds, which are lost on the sides of the foramen magnum.

Arachnoid Membrane.

The Arachnoid (ἄραχνη, sl̄b̄s, like a spider's web), so named from its extreme thinness, is the serous membrane which envelops the brain, and is then reflected on the inner surface of the dura mater. Like other serous membranes, it is a shut sac, and consists of a parietal and a visceral layer.

The parietal layer covers the inner surface of the dura mater, and gives that membrane its smooth and polished surface; it is also reflected over those surfaces which separate the hemispheres of the brain and cerebellum.

The visceral layer invests the brain more loosely, being separated from direct contact with the cerebral substance by the pia mater, and a quantity of loose areolar tissue, the subarachnoidean. On the upper surface of the cerebrum, the arachnoid is thin and transparent, and may be easily demonstrated by injecting a stream of air beneath it by means of a blowpipe; it passes over the convolutions without dipping down into the sulci between them. At the base of the brain the arachnoid is thicker, and slightly opaque towards the central part; it covers the anterior lobes, and is extended across between the two middle lobes, so as to leave a considerable interval between it and the brain, the anterior subarachnoidean space; it is closely adherent to the pons and under surface of the cerebellum; but between the hemispheres of the cerebellum and the medulla oblongata another considerable interval is left between it and the brain, called the posterior subarachnoidean space. These two spaces communicate

1 Kölliker denies this; and states, that the inner surface of the dura mater is covered with pavement epithelium, but has no other investment which can be regarded as a parietal layer of the arachnoid.
together across the crura cerebri. The arachnoid membrane surrounds the nerves which arise from the brain, and incloses them in loose sheaths as far as their point of exit from the skull, where it becomes continuous with the parietal layer.

The subarachnoid space is the interval between the arachnoid and pia mater: this space is narrow on the surface of the hemispheres; but at the base of the brain a wide interval is left between the two middle lobes, and behind, between the hemispheres of the cerebellum and the medulla oblongata. This space is the seat of an abundant serous secretion, the cerebro-spinal fluid, which fills up the interval between the arachnoid and pia mater. The subarachnoid space usually communicates with the general ventricular cavity of the brain by means of an opening in the inferior boundary of the fourth ventricle.

The sac of the arachnoid also contains serous fluid; this is, however, small in quantity compared with the cerebro-spinal fluid.

Structure. The arachnoid consists of bundles of white fibrous and elastic tissues intimately blended together. Its outer surface is covered with a layer of scaly epithelium. It is destitute of vessels, and the existence of nerves in it has not been satisfactorily demonstrated.

The cerebro-spinal fluid fills up the subarachnoid space, keeping the opposed surfaces of the arachnoid membrane in contact. It is a clear, limpid fluid, having a saltish taste, and a slightly alkaline reaction. According to Lassaigne, it consists of 99.5 parts of water, the remaining 1.5 per cent. being solid matters, animal and saline. It varies in quantity, being most abundant in old persons, and is quickly reproduced. Its chief use is probably to afford mechanical protection to the nervous centres, and to prevent the effects of concussions communicated from without.

**Pia Mater.**

The Pia Mater is a vascular membrane, and derives its blood from the internal carotid and vertebral arteries. It consists of a minute plexus of blood vessels, held together by an extremely fine areolar tissue. It invests the entire surface of the brain, dipping down between the convolutions and laminae, and is prolonged into the interior, forming the velum interpositum and choroid plexuses of the fourth ventricle. Upon the surfaces of the hemispheres, where it covers the gray matter of the convolutions, it is very vascular, and gives off from its inner surface a multitude of minute vessels, which extend perpendicularly for some distance into the cerebral substance. At the base of the brain, in the situation of the substantia perforata and loci contestae, a number of long straight vessels are given off, which pass through the white matter to reach the gray substance in the interior. On the cerebellum the membrane is more delicate, and the vessels from its inner surface are shorter. Upon the crura cerebri and pons Varolii its characters are altogether changed; it here presents a dense fibrous structure, marked only by slight traces of vascularity.

According to Fohmann and Arnold, this membrane contains numerous lymphatic vessels. Its nerves are derived from the sympathetic, and also from the third, sixth, seventh, eighth, and spinal accessory. They accompany the branches of the arteries.

**The Brain.**

The Brain (encephalon) is that portion of the cerebro-spinal axis that is contained in the cranial cavity. It is divided into four principal parts; viz., the cerebrum, the cerebellum, the pons Varolii, and the medulla oblongata. The cerebrum forms the largest portion of the encephalon, and occupies a considerable part of the cavity of the cranium, resting in the anterior and middle fosse of the base of the skull, and separated posteriorly from the cerebellum by the tentorium cerebelli. About the middle of its under surface is a narrow con-
stricted portion, part of which, the crura cerebri, is continued onwards into the pons Varolii below, and through it to the medulla oblongata and spinal cord; whilst another portion, the crura cerebelli, passes down into the cerebellum.

The cerebellum (little brain or after brain) is situated in the inferior occipital fosse, being separated from the under surface of the posterior lobes of the cerebrum by the tentorium cerebelli. It is connected to the rest of the encephalon by means of connecting bands, called crura: of these, two ascend to the cerebrum, two descend to the medulla oblongata, and two blend together in front, forming the pons Varolii.

The pons Varolii is that portion of the encephalon which rests upon the upper part of the basilar process and body of the sphenoid bone. It constitutes the bond of union of the various segments above named, receiving, above, the crura from the cerebrum; at the sides, the crura from the cerebellum; and below, the medulla oblongata.

The medulla oblongata extends from the lower border of the pons Varolii to the upper part of the spinal cord. It lies beneath the cerebellum, resting on the lower part of the basilar groove of the occipital bone.

Weight of the encephalon. The average weight of the brain, in the adult male, is 49½ oz., or a little more than 3 lb. avoirdupois; that of the female, 44 oz.; the average difference between the two being from 5 to 6 oz. The prevailing weight of the brain, in the male, ranges between 46 oz. and 53 oz.; and in the female, between 41 oz. and 47 oz. In the male, the maximum weight out of 278 cases was 65 oz., and the minimum weight 34 oz. The maximum weight of the adult female brain, out of 191 cases, was 56 oz., and the minimum weight 31 oz. It appears that the weight of the brain increases rapidly up to the seventh year, more slowly to between sixteen and twenty, and still more slowly to between thirty and forty, when it reaches its maximum. Beyond this period, as age advances and the mental faculties decline, the brain diminishes slowly in weight, about an ounce for each subsequent decennial period. These results apply alike to both sexes.

The size of the brain appears to bear a general relation to the intellectual capacity of the individual. Cuvier's brain weighed rather more than 64 oz., that of the late Dr. Abercrombie 68 oz., and that of Dupuytren 62½ oz. On the other hand, the brain of an idiot seldom weighs more than 23 oz.

The human brain is heavier than that of all the lower animals, excepting the elephant and whale. The brain of the former weighs from 8 lb. to 10 lb.; and that of a whale, in a specimen seventy-five feet long, weighed rather more than 5 lb.

MEDULLA OBLONGATA.

The Medulla Oblongata is the upper enlarged part of the spinal cord, and extends from the upper border of the atlas to the lower border of the pons Varolii. It is directed obliquely downwards and backwards; its anterior surface rests on the basilar groove of the occipital bone, its posterior surface is received into the fossa between the hemispheres of the cerebellum, forming the floor of the fourth ventricle. It is pyramidal in form, its broad extremity directed upwards, its lower end being narrow at its point of connection with the cord. It measures an inch and a quarter in length, three-quarters of an inch in breadth at its widest part, and half an inch in thickness. Its surface is marked, in the median line, in front and behind, by an anterior and posterior median fissure, which are continuous with those of the spinal cord. The anterior fissure contains a fold of pia mater, and terminates just below the pons in a cul-de-sac, the foramen cecum. The posterior is a deep but narrow fissure, continued upwards along the floor of the fourth ventricle, where it is finally lost. These two fissures divide the medulla into two symmetrical halves, each lateral half being subdivided by minor grooves into four columns, which, from before backwards,
are named the anterior pyramid, lateral tract and olivary body, the restiform body, the posterior pyramid.

The anterior pyramids, or corpora pyramidalia, are two pyramidal bundles of white matter, placed one on either side of the anterior median fissure, and separated from the olivary body, which is external to them, by a slight depression. At the lower border of the pons they are somewhat constricted; they then become enlarged, and taper slightly as they descend, being continuous below with the anterior columns of the cord. On separating the pyramids below, it will be observed that their innermost fibres form from four to five bundles on each side, which decussate with one another; this decussation, however, is not formed entirely of fibres from the pyramids, but mainly from the deep portion of the lateral columns of the cord which pass forwards to the surface between the diverging anterior columns. The outermost fibres do not decussate; they are derived from the anterior columns of the cord, and are continued directly upwards through the pons Varolii.

Lateral tract and olivary body. The lateral tract is continuous with the lateral column of the cord. Below, it is broad, and includes that part of the medulla between the anterior pyramid and restiform body; but above, it is pushed a little backwards, and narrowed by the projection forwards of the olivary body.

The olivary bodies are two prominent oval masses, situated behind the anterior pyramids, from which they are separated by slight grooves. They equal, in breadth, the anterior pyramids, are a little broader above than below, and are about half an inch in length, being separated above from the pons Varolii by a slight depression. Numerous white fibres (fibres arciformes) are seen winding round the lower end of each body, sometimes crossing their surface.

The restiform bodies (Fig. 355) are the largest columns of the medulla, and continuous, below, with the posterior columns of the cord. They are two rounded, cord-like eminences, placed between the lateral tracts, in front, and the posterior pyramids, behind; from both of which they are separated by slight grooves. As they ascend they diverge from each other, assist in forming the lateral boundaries of the fourth ventricle, and then enter the corresponding hemisphere of the cerebellum, forming its inferior peduncle, while other fibres are continued from the restiform bodies into the cerebrum.

The posterior pyramids (fasciculi graciles) are two narrow white cords placed one on each side of the posterior median fissure, and separated from the restiform bodies by a narrow groove. They consist entirely of white fibres, and are continuous with the posterior median columns of the spinal cord. These bodies lie, at first, in close contact. Opposite the apex of the fourth ventricle they form an enlargement (process clavatus), and then, diverging, are lost in the corre-
NERVOUS SYSTEM.

An adaptation to the more extended range of function the spinal axis possesses.

PONS VAROLII.

Pons Varolii (Chaussier) is the bond of union of the various structures connecting the cerebrum above, the medulla oblongata behind. It is situated above the medulla oblongata cerebelli, and between the hemispheres of the cerebellum. This surface presents considerably a broad transverse band of white fibres, which across the upper part of the medulla, extending between cerebellum. This surface projects considerably as the parts, is of quadrangular form, rests upon the sphenoid depressed bone, and is limited before and behind by the occipital bone, and presents along the middle line a longitudinal groove behind, which lodges the basilar artery; numerous vessels are also observed on each side, which indicate the course of its fibres part of the floor of the fourth ventricle, and at each end恶ised into a thick rounded cord, the crus cerebri, which extends of the cerebellum, constituting its middle peduncle.

The pons Varolii consists of alternate layers of transverse and gray matter (Fig. 357).

These connect together the two lateral hemispheres of the cerebellum by its great transverse commissure. They consist of a fixed layer. The superficial layer passes uninterruptedly from the floor of the pons, forming a uniform layer, which consists of fibres from crus cerebelli on each side, meeting in the median line. The transverse fibres decussate with the longitudinal fibres continued and contains much more gray matter between its fibres.

Transverse fibres are continued up through the pons. 1. From the anterior pyramid ascend through the pons, embedded transverse fibres, being subdivided in their course into the upper border of the pons they enter the crus cerebri, and the medullary portion.

The nervi vestibulares divide in the pons into two bundles, one of which passes through the cerebri, the other is continued to the cerebellum from the lateral and posterior columns of the cord with a few fibres from each of the longitudinal tracts of the medulla oblongata and are continuous with the transverse fibres of the

The pons is subdivided into two lateral halves by a median septum which extends through its posterior half. The septum consists of antero-posterior and transverse fibres. The former are derived from the floor of the fourth ventricle and from the transverse fibres of the pons, which bend backwards and forwards across to the opposite side. The latter are derived from the base of the fourth ventricle; they pierce the longitudinal fibres, and are then continued across from one side to the other side of the medulla, piercing the antero-
MEDULLA OBLONGATA.

Septum of the medulla oblongata. Above the decussation of the anterior pyramids, numerous white fibres extend, from behind forwards, in the median line, forming a septum, which subdivides the medulla into two lateral halves. Some of these fibres emerge at the anterior median fissure, and form a band which curves round the lower border of the olivary body, or passes transversely across it, and round the sides of the medulla, forming the arciform fibres of Rolando. Others appear in the floor of the fourth ventricle, issuing from the posterior median fissure, and form the white striae in that situation.

Fig. 357.—The Columns of the Medulla Oblongata, and their connection with the Cerebrum and Cerebellum.

Gray matter of the medulla oblongata. The gray matter of the medulla is a continuation of that in the interior of the spinal cord, besides a series of special deposits or nuclei.

In the lower part of the medulla, the gray matter is arranged as in the cord, but at the upper part it becomes more abundant, and is disposed with less apparent regularity, becoming blended with all the white fibres, except the anterior pyramids. The part corresponding to the transverse gray commissure of the cord is exposed to view in the floor of the fourth ventricle, by the divergence of the restiform bodies, and posterior pyramids, becoming blended with the ascending fibres of the lateral column, and thus forming the fasciculi teretes. The lateral crescentic portions, but especially the posterior horns, become enlarged, blend with the fibres of the restiform bodies, and form the tubercolo cinerea of Rolando.

Special deposits of gray matter are found both in the anterior and posterior parts of the medulla, forming, in the former situation, the corpus dentatum within the olivary body, and in the latter, a series of special masses, or nuclei, connected with the roots of origin of the spinal accessory, vagus, glosso-pharyngeal, and hypoglossal nerves. It thus appears that the closest analogy in structure, and also probably in general endowments, exists between the medulla oblongata and the spinal cord. The larger size and peculiar form of the medulla depend on the enlargement, divergence, and decussation of the various columns; and also on the addition of special deposits of gray matter in the olivary bodies.
and other parts, evidently in adaptation to the more extended range of function which this part of the cerebro-spinal axis possesses.

Pons Varolii.

The Pons Varolii (mésocéphale, Chaussier) is the bond of union of the various segments of the encephalon, connecting the cerebrum above, the medulla oblongata below, and the cerebellum behind. It is situated above the medulla oblongata, below the crura cerebri, and between the hemispheres of the cerebellum.

Its under surface presents a broad transverse band of white fibres, which arches like a bridge across the upper part of the medulla, extending between the two hemispheres of the cerebellum. This surface projects considerably beyond the level of these parts, is of quadrangular form, rests upon the sphenoid and basilar groove of the occipital bone, and is limited before and behind by very prominent margins. It presents along the middle line a longitudinal groove, wider in front than behind, which lodges the basilar artery; numerous transverse striæ are also observed on each side, which indicate the course of its superficial fibres.

Its upper surface forms part of the floor of the fourth ventricle, and at each side it becomes contracted into a thick rounded cord, the crus cerebri, which enters the substance of the cerebellum, constituting its middle peduncle.

Structure. The pons Varolii consists of alternate layers of transverse and longitudinal fibres intermixed with gray matter (Fig. 357).

The transverse fibres connect together the two lateral hemispheres of the cerebellum, and constitute its great transverse commissure. They consist of a superficial and a deep layer. The superficial layer passes uninterruptedly across the surface of the pons, forming a uniform layer, which consists of fibres derived from the crus cerebri on each side, meeting in the median line. The deep layer of transverse fibres decussates with the longitudinal fibres continued up from the medulla, and contains much more gray matter between its fibres.

The longitudinal fibres are continued up through the pons. 1. From the anterior pyramid. 2. From the olivary body. 3. From the lateral and posterior columns of the cord, receiving special fibres from the gray matter of the pons itself.

1. The fibres from the anterior pyramid ascend through the pons, embedded between two layers of transverse fibres, being subdivided in their course into smaller bundles; at the upper border of the pons they enter the crus cerebri, forming its fasciculated portion.

2. The olivary fasciculus divides in the pons into two bundles, one of which ascends to the corpora quadrigemina; the other is continued to the cerebrum with the fibres of the lateral column.

3. The fibres from the lateral and posterior columns of the cord, with a bundle from the olivary fasciculus, are intermixed with much gray matter, and appear in the floor of the fourth ventricle as the fasciculi teretes; they ascend to the deep or cerebral part of the crus cerebri.

Foville believes that a few fibres from each of the longitudinal tracts of the medulla turn forwards, and are continuous with the transverse fibres of the pons.

Septum. The pons is subdivided into two lateral halves by a median septum which extends through its posterior half. The septum consists of antero-posterior and transverse fibres. The former are derived from the floor of the fourth ventricle and from the transverse fibres of the pons, which bend backwards before passing across to the opposite side. The latter are derived from the floor of the fourth ventricle; they pierce the longitudinal fibres, and are then continued across from one to the other side of the medulla, piercing the antero-
posterior fibres. The two halves of the pons, in front, are connected together by transverse commissural fibres.

CEREBRUM. UPPER SURFACE. (Fig. 358.)

The Cerebrum, in man, constitutes the largest portion of the encephalon. Its upper surface is of an ovoidal form, broader behind than in front, convex in its general outline, and divided into two lateral halves or hemispheres, right and left, by the great longitudinal fissure, which extends throughout the entire length of the cerebrum in the middle line, reaching down to the base of the brain in front and behind, but interrupted in the middle by a broad transverse commissure of white matter, the corpus callosum, which connects the two hemispheres together. This fissure lodges the falx cerebri, and indicates the original development of the brain by two lateral halves.

Each hemisphere presents an outer surface, which is convex, to correspond with the vault of the cranium; an inner surface, flattened, and in contact with the opposite hemisphere (the two inner surfaces forming the sides of the longitudinal fissure); and an under surface or base, of more irregular form, which rests, in front, on the anterior and middle fossae at the base of the skull, and behind, upon the tentorium.

Convolutions. If the pia mater is removed with the forceps, the entire surface of each hemisphere will be seen to present a number of convoluted eminences, the convolutions, separated from each other by depressions (sulci) of various depths. The outer surface of each convolution, as well as the sides and bottom of the sulci between them, are composed of gray matter, which is here called the cortical substance. The interior of each convolution is composed of white matter; and white fibres also blend with the gray matter at the sides and bottom of the sulci. By this arrangement the convolutions are adapted to increase the amount of gray matter without occupying much additional space, while they also afford a greater extent of surface for the termination of the white fibres in gray matter. On closer examination, however, the cortical substance is found subdivided into four layers, two of which are composed of gray and two of white matter. The most external is an outer white stratum, not equally thick over all parts of the brain, being most marked on the convolutions in the longitudinal fissure and on the under part of the brain, especially on the middle lobe, near the descending horn of the lateral ventricle. Beneath this is a thick reddish-gray lamina, and then another thin white stratum; lastly, a thin stratum of gray matter, which lies in close contact with the white fibres of the hemispheres: consequently white and gray laminae alternate with one another in the convolutions. In certain convolutions, however, the cortical substance consists of no less than six layers, three gray and three white, an additional white stratum dividing the most superficial gray one into two; this is especially marked in those convolutions which are situated near the corpus callosum.

There is no accurate resemblance between the convolutions in different brains, nor are they symmetrical on the two sides of the same brain. Occasionally the free borders or the sides of a deep convolution present a fissured or notched appearance.

The sulci are generally an inch in depth; they also vary in different brains, and in different parts of the same brain; they are usually deepest on the outer convex surface of the hemispheres; the deepest is situated on the inner surface of the hemisphere, on a level with the corpus callosum, and corresponds to the projection in the posterior horn of the lateral ventricle, the hippocampus minor.

The number and extent of the convolutions, as well as their depth, appear to bear a close relation to the intellectual power of the individual, as is shown in their increasing complexity of arrangement as we ascend from the lowest mammalia up to man. Thus they are absent in some of the lower order of mam-
malia, and they increase in number and extent through the higher orders. In man they present the most complex arrangement. Again, in the child at birth before the intellectual faculties are exercised, the convolutions have a very simple arrangement, presenting few undulations; and the sulci between them are less deep than in the adult. In old age, when the mental faculties have diminished in activity, the convolutions become much less prominently marked.

The convolutions on the outer convex surface of the hemisphere, the general direction of which is more or less oblique, are the largest and most complicated convolutions of the brain, frequently becoming branched like the letter Y in their course upwards and backwards towards the longitudinal fissure; these convolutions attain their greatest development in man, and are especially characteristic of the human brain. They are seldom symmetrical on the two sides.

Each hemisphere of the brain is divided into five lobes, the division being made by the main fissures, and by imaginary lines drawn to connect them. This division, however, is only traceable on the external surface of the hemispheres.

In this description of the divisions of the brain, the first point to be remembered is the external termination of the fissure of Sylvius. That fissure bifurcates, one branch running forwards into the anterior lobe, the other, the longer one, running nearly horizontally backwards. An imaginary line, continuing this branch backwards to the posterior lobe, separates from the middle lobe a few convolutions which fill up the hollow of the middle fossa of the skull, and these are called the temporo-sphenoidal lobe (Fig. 360). This, added to the old anterior, middle, and posterior lobes (now renamed frontal, parietal, and occipital), and to the island of Reil, now described as a separate lobe, raises the number of lobes from three to five. The subdivision is made by fissures which are tolerably distinct. Thus the separation between the anterior, or frontal, and the parietal lobe at the base, by the fissure of Sylvius, is obvious, and the large vertical fissure (fissure of Rolando, Fig. 368) which separates the frontal from the parietal lobe at the vertex is usually very plainly marked, and runs down nearly to the posterior bifurcation of the Sylvian fissure. The parietal lobe is separated from the occipital above by the parieto-occipital fissure (Fig. 358), which becomes indistinct below; and the separation is completed by an imaginary line which meets another imaginary line, by which the posterior bifurcation of the fissure of Sylvius is continued backwards, and by the junction of these two lines the lowest or temporo-sphenoidal lobe is bounded off from the upper parts of the parietal and occipital lobes.

The chief convolutions which bound these several fissures are pretty constant, but the secondary convolutions, or those which form the bulk of the several lobes, vary greatly in their number and arrangement.

The convolution of the corpus callosum (gyrus fornicatus, Fig. 359) is always well marked. It lies parallel with the upper surface of the corpus callosum, commencing, in front, on the under surface of the brain in front of the anterior perforated space; it winds round the curved border of the corpus callosum, and passes along its upper surface as far as its posterior extremity, where it is connected with the convolutions of the posterior lobe; it then curves downwards and forwards, embracing the cerebral peduncle, passes into the middle lobe, forming the hippocampus major, and terminates just behind the point from whence it arose.

The supraorbital convolution on the under surface of the anterior lobe is well marked.

The convolution of the longitudinal fissure (Fig. 358) bounds the margin of the fissure on the upper surface of the hemisphere. It commences on the under surface of the brain, at the anterior perforated spot, passes forwards along the inner margin of the anterior lobe, being here divided by a deep sulcus, in which the olfactory nerve is received; it then curves over the anterior and upper surface of the hemisphere, along the margin of the longitudinal fissure, to its posterior
CONVOLUTIONS OF THE BRAIN.

extremity, where it curves forwards along the under surface of the hemisphere as far as the middle lobe.

The convolutions seen on the outer side of the frontal lobe are described as an ascending or transverse frontal convolution, which lies parallel to and in front of the fissure of Rolando, and three more or less horizontal convolutions, the superior, middle, and inferior frontal (Fig. 358).

Fig. 358.—Upper Surface of the Brain, the Pia Mater having been removed.

Great Longitudinal Fissure

Inf. Frontal Conv.

Asc. Frontal Conv.

Fissure of Rolando

Asc. Parietal Conv.

Int. Parietal Fissure

Supramarginal Conv.

Angular Conv.

Parieto-Ocipital Fissure

Middle Oc. Conv.

Inf. Oc. Conv.

The external surface of the parietal lobe is formed in front by a convolution lying parallel to and behind the fissure of Rolando, named the ascending parietal, which usually joins the ascending frontal either above or below. Its central and lower part is bounded behind by the inter-parietal fissure, a fissure which commences below in or near the fissure of Sylvius, and runs upwards to the vertex, where it terminates in or near the parieto-occipital fissure. The group of convolutions connected with the upper part of the ascending parietal, and lying in front of the interparietal fissure, is called the superior parietal lobule. Lower down, and lying behind the inter-parietal fissure, is the lower parietal lobule, divided into the supra-marginal and the angular convolution, which run into each other above and below. The angular convolution is continuous with the convolutions of the temporo-sphenoidal and occipital lobes.

1 In the specimen from which this figure was drawn, the parieto-occipital fissure has been bridged over, or obliterated, by one of the annecant convolutions of the occipital lobe, but its continuation can be traced on the internal aspect of the hemisphere. (See Fig. 359.)
The occipital lobe is chiefly formed by three somewhat parallel convolutions, the superior, middle, and inferior, separated by two fissures, the superior and inferior occipital. The occipital convolutions are connected with the superior parietal lobule, with the angular convolution, and with the temporo-sphenoidal lobe, by various convolutions termed annectant, described as four in number.

The convolutions of the temporo-sphenoidal lobe are three: a superior, lying behind or internal to the posterior branch of the Sylvian fissure; a middle, continuous with the angular and middle occipital convolution; and an inferior, continuous with the inferior occipital.

Fig. 359.—Vertical Median Section of the Encephalon, showing the parts in the middle line.

At the point where the Sylvian fissure bifurcates is found the commencement of the island of Reil, the fifth lobe of the brain, a triangular-shaped prominent cluster of about six convolutions, the gyri operci, so called from being covered in by the sides of the fissure. They are continuous with those of the frontal, parietal, and temporo-sphenoidal lobes. By the removal of these convolutions the extraventricular part of the corpus striatum would be reached.

On the inner, or median, surface of the hemispheres there is no division into lobes, and the arrangement of the convolutions is less complex (Fig. 359). The termination of the parieto-occipital fissure will be seen at the posterior part, and joining this near the posterior extremity of the corpus callosum is another
fissure, the *calcarine*, which commences usually by two branches at the back of the hemisphere, and runs horizontally to join the parieto-occipital fissure. Between it and the latter fissure a wedge-shaped mass of convolutions (the *cuneate lobule*) is seen. Another fissure, the *calloso-marginal* fissure, is seen in front, commencing near the anterior extremity of the corpus callosum, and bounding the gyrus fimbriatus above. This runs upwards and backwards to fall into the extremity of the fissure of Rolando. Between it and the parieto-occipital fissure is a somewhat square-shaped assemblage of convolutions—the *lobulus quadratus or precuneus*. The space between the gyrus fimbriatus and the convolution of the longitudinal fissure on this aspect of the brain is occupied by various secondary convolutions, which need not be particularly described.

Besides the great primary convolutions above named and described, and which can be recognized in almost any well-developed brain, there are a great number of these secondary convolutions which pass from one to another of the primary, and often somewhat obscure their arrangement; of these, the *accessory* convolutions of the occipital lobe, above mentioned, may be taken as examples.

**Cerebrum. Under Surface of Base.** (Fig. 360.)

The under surface of each hemisphere presents a subdivision, as already mentioned, into three lobes, named from their position, anterior, middle, and posterior.

The *anterior* or *frontal* lobe, of a triangular form, with its apex backwards, is somewhat concave, and rests upon the convex surface of the roof of the orbit, being separated from the middle lobe by the fissure of Sylvius. The *middle lobe*, which is more prominent, is received into the middle fossa of the base of the skull, and comprises the parietal and temporo-sphenoidal lobes. The *posterior* or *occipital lobe* rests upon the tentorium, its extent forwards being limited by the anterior margin of the cerebellum.

The various objects exposed to view on the under surface of the cerebrum, in and near the middle line, are here arranged in the order in which they are met with from before backwards.

- Longitudinal fissure.
- Corpus callosum and its peduncles.
- Lamina cinerea.
- Olfactory nerve.
- Fissure of Sylvius.
- Anterior perforated space.
- Optic commissure.
- Tuber cinereum.
- Infundibulum.
- Pituitary body.
- Corpora albicantia.
- Posterior perforated space.
- Crura cerebri.

The *longitudinal fissure* partially separates the two hemispheres from one another: it divides the two anterior lobes in front; and on raising the cerebellum and pons, it will be seen completely separating the two posterior lobes, the intermediate portion of the fissure being filled up by the great transverse band of white matter, the corpus callosum. Of these two portions of the longitudinal fissure, that which separates the posterior lobes is the longest. In the fissure between the two anterior lobes the anterior cerebral arteries may be seen ascending to the corpus callosum; and at the back part of this portion of the fissure, the anterior curved portion of the corpus callosum descends to the base of the brain.

The *corpus callosum* terminates at the base of the brain by a concave margin, which is connected with the tuber cinereum through the intervention of a thin layer of gray substance, the lamina cinerea. This may be exposed by gently raising and drawing back the optic commissure. A broad white band may be observed on each side, passing from the under surface of the corpus callosum backwards and outwards, to the commencement of the fissure of Sylvius; these
bands are called the peduncles of the corpus callosum. Laterally, the corpus callosum extends into the anterior lobe.

The lamina cinerea is a thin layer of gray substance, extending backwards above the optic commissure from the termination of the corpus callosum to the tuber cinereum; it is continuous on either side with the gray matter of the anterior perforated space, and forms the anterior part of the inferior boundary of the third ventricle. It connects the genu, or reflected portion, of the corpus callosum with the optic commissure, and is on this account described by Sappey as the gray root of the optic nerves.

The olfactory nerve, with its bulb, is seen on either side of the longitudinal fissure, upon the under surface of each anterior lobe.

The fissure of Sylvius separates the anterior and middle lobes, and lodges the middle cerebral artery. At its commencement is seen a point of medullary substance, corresponding to a subjacent band of white fibres, connecting the anterior and middle lobes, and called the fasciculus unciformis; on following this fissure outwards, it divides into two branches, which inclose the triangular-shaped prominent cluster of isolated convolutions (gyri operti) called the island of Reil.

Fig. 360.—Base of the Brain.

The anterior perforated space is situated at the inner side of the fissure of Sylvius. It is of a triangular shape, bounded in front by the convolutions of the anterior lobe and the roots of the olfactory nerve; behind, by the optic tract;
externally, by the middle lobe and commencement of the fissure of Sylvius; internally, it is continuous with the lamina cinerea, and crossed by the peduncle of the corpus callosum. It is of a grayish color, and corresponds to the under surface of the corpus striatum, a large mass of gray matter, situated in the interior of the brain; it has received its name from being perforated by numerous minute apertures for the transmission of small straight vessels into the substance of the corpus striatum.

The optic commissure is situated in the middle line, immediately behind the lamina cinerea. It is the point of junction between the two optic nerves.

Immediately behind the diverging optic tracts, and between them and the peduncles of the cerebrum (crura cerebri), is a lozenge-shaped interval, the interpeduncular space, in which are found the following parts, arranged in the following order from before backwards: the tuber cinereum, infundibulum, pituitary body, corpora albicantia, and the posterior perforated space.

The tuber cinereum is an eminence of gray matter, situated between the optic tract and the corpora albicantia: it is connected with the surrounding parts of the cerebrum, forms part of the floor of the third ventricle, and is continuous with the gray substance in that cavity. From the middle of its under surface a conical tubular process of gray matter, about two lines in length, is continuous downwards and forwards to be attached to the posterior lobe of the pituitary body; this is the infundibulum. Its canal, which is funnel-shaped, communicates with the third ventricle.

The pituitary body is a small reddish-gray vascular mass, weighing from five to ten grains, and of an oval form, situated in the sella Turcica, in connection with which it is retained by the dura mater forming the inner wall of the cavernous sinus. It is very vascular, and consists of two lobes, separated from one another by a fibrous lamina. Of these, the anterior is the larger, of an oblong form, and somewhat concave behind, where it receives the posterior lobe, which is round. The anterior lobe consists externally of a firm yellowish-gray substance, and internally of a soft pulpy substance of a yellowish-white color. The posterior lobe is darker than the anterior. In the fetus it is larger proportionally than in the adult, and contains a cavity which communicates through the infundibulum with the third ventricle. In the adult it is firmer and more solid, and seldom contains any cavity. Its structure, especially the anterior lobe, is similar to that of the ductless glands.

The corpora albicantia are two small round white masses, each about the size of a pea, placed side by side immediately behind the tuber cinereum. They are formed by the anterior crura of the fornix, hence called the bulbs of the fornix, which, after descending to the base of the brain, are folded upon themselves, before passing upwards to the thalami optici. They are composed externally of white substance, and internally of gray matter; the gray matter of the two being connected by a transverse commissure of the same material. At an early period of fetal life they are blended together into one large mass, but become separated about the seventh month.

The posterior perforated space (pons Tarini) corresponds to a whitish-gray substance, placed between the corpora albicantia in front, the pons Varolii behind, and the crura cerebri on either side. It forms the back part of the third ventricle, and is perforated by numerous small orifices for the passage of blood vessels to the thalami optici.

The crura cerebri (peduncles of the cerebrum) are two thick cylindrical bundles of white matter, which emerge from the anterior border of the pons, and diverge as they pass forwards and outwards to enter the under part of either hemisphere. Each crus is about three-quarters of an inch in length, and somewhat broader in front than behind. They are marked upon their surface with longitudinal striae, and each is crossed, just before entering the hemisphere, by a flattened white band, the optic tract, which is adherent by its upper border to the peduncle. In the interior of the crura is contained a mass of dark gray matter,
NERVOUS SYSTEM.

called locus niger. The third nerves may be seen emerging from the inner side of either crus, and the fourth nerve winding round its outer side from above.

Each crus consists of a superficial and deep layer of longitudinal white fibres, continued upwards from the pons: these layers are separated from each other by the locus niger.

The superficial longitudinal fibres are continued upwards, from the anterior pyramids to the cerebrum. They consist of coarse fasciculi, which form the free part of the crus, and have received the name of the fasciculated portion or crusta of the peduncle.

The deep longitudinal fibres are continued upwards, in two layers, one from the lateral and posterior columns of the medulla and one from the olivary fasciculus, these fibres consisting of some derived from the same, and others from the opposite lateral tract of the medulla. More deeply, are finer fibres, mixed with gray matter, derived from the cerebellum, blended with the former. The cerebral surface of the crus cerebri is formed of these fibres, and is named the tegmentum.

The locus niger is a mass of gray matter, situated between the superficial and deep layers of fibres above described. It is placed nearer the inner than the outer side of the crus.

The posterior lobes of the cerebrum are concealed from view by the upper surface of the cerebellum, and pons Varolii. When these parts are removed, the two hemispheres are seen to be separated by the great longitudinal fissure, this fissure being interrupted, in front, by the posterior rounded border of the corpus callosum.

GENERAL ARRANGEMENT OF THE PARTS COMPOSING THE CEREBRUM.

As the peduncles of the cerebrum enter the hemispheres, they diverge from one another, so as to leave an interval between them, the interpeduncular space. As they ascend, the component fibres of each pass through two large masses of gray matter, the ganglia of the brain, called the thalamus opticus and corpus striatum, which project as rounded prominences from the upper and inner side of each peduncle. The hemispheres are connected together, above these masses, by the great transverse commissure, the corpus callosum, and the interval left between its under surface, the upper surface of the ganglia, and the parts closing the interpeduncular space, forms the general ventricular cavity. The upper part of this cavity is subdivided into two by a vertical septum, the septum lucidum; and thus the two lateral ventricles are formed. The lower part of the cavity forms the third ventricle, which communicates with the lateral ventricles above, and with the fourth ventricle behind. The fifth ventricle is the interval left between the two layers composing the septum lucidum.

INTERIOR OF THE CEREBRUM.

If the upper part of either hemisphere is removed with a scalpel, about half an inch above the level of the corpus callosum, its internal white matter will be exposed. It is an oval-shaped centre, of white substance, surrounded on all sides by a narrow convoluted margin of gray matter which presents an equal thickness in nearly every part. This white central mass has been called the centrum ovale minus. Its surface is studded with numerous minute red dots (puncta vasculosa), produced by the escape of blood from divided bloodvessels. In inflammation or great congestion of the brain, these are very numerous, and of a dark color. If the remaining portion of one hemisphere is slightly separated from the other, a broad band of white substance will be observed connecting them, at the bottom of the longitudinal fissure; this is the corpus callosum. The margins of the hemispheres, which overlap this portion of the brain, are called the tabia cerebri. Each labium is part of the convolution of the corpus
callosum (*gyrus fornicatus*), already described; and the space between it and the upper surface of the corpus callosum has been termed the *ventricle of the corpus callosum*.

The hemispheres should now be sliced off, to a level with the corpus callosum, when the white substance of that structure will be seen connecting together both hemispheres. The large expanse of medullary matter now exposed, surrounded by the convoluted margin of gray substance, is called the *centrum ovale majus* of Vieussens.

The *corpus callosum* is a thick stratum of transverse fibres, exposed at the bottom of the longitudinal fissure. It connects the two hemispheres of the brain, forming their great transverse commissure; and forms the roof of a space in the interior of each hemisphere, the lateral ventricle. It is about four inches in length, extending to within an inch and a half of the anterior, and to within two inches and a half of the posterior, part of the brain. It is somewhat broader behind than in front, and is thicker at either end than in its central part, being

---

*Fig. 361.—Section of the Brain. Made on a level with the Corpus Callosum.*

thickest behind. It presents a somewhat arched form, from before backwards, terminating anteriorly in a rounded border, which curves downwards and backwards, between the anterior lobes to the base of the brain. In its course, it forms a distinct bend, named the *knee* or *genu*, and the reflected portion, named the *beak* (*rostrum*), becoming gradually narrower, is attached to the anterior cerebral lobe, and is connected through the lamina cinerea with the optic commissure. The reflected portion of the corpus callosum gives off, near its termination, two bundles of white substance, which, diverging from one another, pass
backwards, across the anterior perforated space, to the entrance of the fissure of Sylvius. They are called the peduncles of the corpus callosum. Posteriorly, the corpus callosum forms a thick rounded fold, which is free for a little distance, as it curves forwards, and is then continuous with the fornix. On its upper surface, its fibrous structure is very apparent to the naked eye, being collected into coarse transverse bundles. Along the middle line is a linear depression, the raphé, bounded laterally by two or more slightly elevated longitudinal bands, called the striae Longitudinales, or nerves of Lancisi; and, still more externally, other longitudinal striae are seen, beneath the convolutions which rest on the corpus callosum. These are the striae longitudinales laterales. The under surface of the corpus callosum is continuous behind with the fornix, being separated from it in front by the septum lucidum, which forms a vertical partition between the two ventricles. On either side, the fibres of the corpus callosum penetrate into the substance of the hemispheres, and connect together the anterior, middle, and part of the posterior lobes. It is the large number of fibres derived from the anterior and posterior lobes which explains the great thickness of the two extremities of this commissure.

An incision should now be made through the corpus callosum, on either side of the raphé, when two large irregular-shaped cavities will be exposed, which extend through a great part of the length of each hemisphere. These are the lateral ventricles.

Fig. 362.—The Lateral Ventricles of the Brain.

The lateral ventricles are serous cavities, formed by the upper part of the general ventricular space in the interior of the brain. They are lined by a thin diaphanous lining membrane, covered with ciliated epithelium, and moistened by a serous fluid, which is sometimes, even in health, secreted in considerable
LATERAL VENTRICLES.

quantity. These cavities are two in number, one in each hemisphere, and they are separated from each other by a vertical septum, the septum lucidum.

Each lateral ventricle consists of a central cavity, or body, and three smaller cavities or cornua, which extend from it in different directions. The anterior cornu curves forwards and outwards into the substance of the anterior lobe. The posterior cornu, called the digital cavity, curves backwards into the posterior lobe. The middle cornu descends into the middle lobe.

The central cavity, or body of the lateral ventricle, is triangular in form. It is bounded, above, by the under surface of the corpus callosum, which forms the roof of the cavity. Internally, is a vertical partition, the septum lucidum, which separates it from the opposite ventricle, and connects the under surface of the corpus callosum with the fornix. Its floor is formed by the following parts, enumerated in their order of position, from before backwards: the corpus striatum, tenia semicircularis, thalamus opticus, choroid plexus, corpus fimbriatum, and fornix.

The anterior cornu is triangular in form, passing outwards into the anterior lobe, and curving round the anterior extremity of the corpus striatum. It is bounded above and in front, by the corpus callosum; behind, by the corpus striatum.

The posterior cornu, or digital cavity, curves backwards into the substance of the posterior lobe, its direction being backwards and outwards, and then inwards. On its floor is seen a longitudinal eminence, which corresponds with a deep sulcus, between two convolutions: this is called the hippocampus minor. Between the middle and posterior horns a smooth eminence is observed, which varies considerably in size in different subjects. It is called the eminentia collateralis.

The corpus striatum has received its name from the striped appearance which its section presents, in consequence of diverging white fibres being mixed with the gray matter which forms the greater part of its substance. The intraventricular portion is a large pear-shaped mass, of a gray color externally: its broad extremity is directed forwards, into the fore part of the body, and anterior cornu of the lateral ventricle; its narrow end is directed outwards and backwards, being separated from its fellow by the thalami optici: it is covered by the serous lining of the cavity, and crossed by some veins of considerable size. The extraventricular portion is imbedded in the white substance of the hemisphere.

The tenia semicircularis is a narrow, whitish, semi-transparent band of medullary substance, situated in the depression between the corpus striatum and thalamus opticus. Anteriorly, it descends in connection with the anterior pillar of the fornix; behind, it is continued into the descending horn of the ventricle, where it becomes lost. Its surface, especially at its fore-part, is transparent, and dense in structure, and this was called by Tarinus the horny band. It consists of longitudinal white fibres, the deepest of which run between the corpus striatum and thalamus opticus. Beneath it is a large vein (vena corporis striati), which receives numerous small veins from the surface of the corpus striatum and thalamus opticus, and joins the vena Galeni.

The choroid plexus is a highly vascular, fringe-like membrane, occupying the margin of the fold of pia mater (velum interpositum), in the interior of the brain. It extends, in a curved direction, across the floor of the lateral ventricle. In front, where it is small and tapering, it communicates with the choroid plexus of the opposite side, through a large oval aperture, the foramen of Monro. Posteriorly, it descends into the middle horn of the lateral ventricle, where it joins with the pia mater through the transverse fissure. In structure, it consists of minute and highly vascular villous processes, the villi being covered by a single layer of epithelium, composed of large round corpuscles, containing, besides a central nucleus, a bright yellow spot. The arteries of the choroid plexus enter the ventricle at the descending cornu, and, after ramifying through
its substance, send branches into the substance of the brain. The veins of the choroid plexus terminate in the venae Galeni.

The corpus fimbriatum (tenia hippocampi) is a narrow, white, tape-like band, situated immediately behind the choroid plexus. It is the lateral edge of the posterior pillar of the fornix, and is attached along the inner border of the hippocampus major as it descends into the middle horn of the lateral ventricle. It may be traced as far as the pes hippocampi.

The thalami optici and fornix will be described when more completely exposed, in a later stage of the dissection of the brain.

The middle cornu should now be exposed, throughout its entire extent, by introducing the little finger gently into it, and cutting outwards along the finger through the substance of the hemisphere, which should be removed, to an extent sufficient to expose the entire cavity.

The middle, or descending cornu, the largest of the three, traverses the middle lobe of the brain, forming in its course a remarkable curve round the back of the optic thalamus. It passes, at first, backwards, outwards, and downwards, and then curves round the crus cerebri, forwards and inwards, nearly to the point of the middle lobe, close to the fissure of Sylvius. Its upper boundary is formed by the medullary substance of the middle lobe, and the under surface of the thalamus opticus. Its lower boundary, or floor, presents for examination the following parts: the hippocampus major, pes hippocampi, pes accessorius, corpus fimbriatum, choroid plexus, fascia dentata, transverse fissure.
The hippocampus major, or cornu Ammonis, so called from its resemblance to a ram's horn, is a white eminence, of a curved elongate form, extending along the entire length of the floor of the middle horn of the lateral ventricle. At its lower extremity it becomes enlarged, and presents a number of rounded elevations with intervening depressions, which, from presenting some resemblance to the paw of an animal, is called the pes hippocampi. If a transverse section is made through the hippocampus major, it will be seen that this eminence is the inner surface of the convolution of the corpus callosum, doubled upon itself like a horn, the white convex portion projecting into the cavity of the ventricle; the gray portion being on the surface of the cerebrum, the edge of which, slightly indented, forms the fascia dentata. The white matter of the hippocampus major is continuous, through the corpus fimbriatum, with the fornix and corpus callosum.

The pes accessorius, or eminentia collateralis, has already been mentioned, as a white eminence, varying in size, placed between the hippocampus major and hippocampus minor, at the junction of the posterior with the descending cornu. Like the hippocampi, it is formed of white matter corresponding to one of the sulci, between two convolutions protruding into the cavity of the ventricle.

The corpus fimbriatum is a continuation of the posterior pillar of the fornix, prolonged, as already mentioned, from the central cavity of the lateral ventricle.

Fascia dentata. On separating the inner border of the corpus fimbriatum from the choroid plexus, and raising the edge of the former, a serrated band of gray substance, the edge of the gray substance of the middle lobe, will be seen beneath it; this is the fascia dentata. Correctly speaking, it is placed external to the cavity of the descending cornu.

The transverse fissure is seen on separating the corpus fimbriatum from the thalamus opticus. It is situated beneath the fornix, extending from the middle line behind, downwards on either side, to the end of the descending cornu, being bounded on one side by the fornix and the hemisphere, and on the other by the thalamus opticus. Through this fissure the pia mater passes from the exterior of the brain into the ventricles, to form the choroid plexuses. Where the pia mater projects into the lateral ventricle, beneath the edge of the fornix, it is covered by a prolongation of the lining membrane, which excludes it from the cavity.

The septum lucidum (Fig. 362) forms the internal boundary of the lateral ventricle. It is a thin, semi-transparent septum, attached, above, to the under surface of the corpus callosum; below, to the anterior part of the fornix; and, in front of this, to the prolonged portion of the corpus callosum. It is triangular in form, broad in front, and narrow behind, its surfaces looking towards the cavities of the ventricles. The septum consists of two lamina, separated by a narrow interval, the fifth ventricle.

Fifth Ventricle. Each lamina of the septum lucidum consists of an internal layer of white substance, covered by the lining membrane of the fifth ventricle; and an outer layer of gray matter, covered by the lining membrane of the lateral ventricle. The cavity of the fifth ventricle is lined by a serous membrane, covered with the epithelium, and contains fluid. In the fetus, and in some animals, this cavity communicates, below, with the third ventricle; but in the adult, it forms a separate cavity. In cases of serous effusion into the ventricles, the septum is often found softened and partially broken down.

The fifth ventricle may be exposed by cutting through the septum, and attached portion of the corpus callosum, with scissors; after examining which, the corpus callosum should be cut across, towards its anterior part, and the two portions carefully dissected, the one forwards, the other backwards, when the fornix will be exposed.

The fornix (Figs. 362, 363) is a longitudinal lamella of white fibrous matter, situated beneath the corpus callosum, with which it is continuous behind, but separated from it in front by the septum lucidum. It may be described as consisting of two symmetrical halves, one for either hemisphere. These two
portions are joined together in the middle line, where they form the body, but are separated from one another in front and behind; forming the anterior and posterior crura.

The body of the fornix is triangular; narrow in front, broad behind. Its upper surface is connected, in the median line, to the septum lucidum in front, and the corpus callosum behind. Its under surface rests upon the velum interpositum, which separates it from the third ventricle, and the inner portion of the optic thalami. Its lateral edges form, on each side, part of the floor of the lateral ventricles, and are in contact with the choroid plexuses.

The anterior crura arch downwards towards the base of the brain, separated from each other by a narrow interval. They are composed of white fibres, which descend through a quantity of gray matter in the lateral walls of the third ventricle, and are placed immediately behind the anterior commissure. At the base of the brain, the white fibres of each crus form a sudden curve upon themselves, spread out and form the outer part of the corresponding corpus albinens, from which point they may be traced upwards into the substance of the corresponding thalamus opticus (Fig. 359). The anterior crura of the fornix are connected in their course with the optic commissure, the white fibres covering the optic thalamus, the peduncle of the pineal gland, and the superficial fibres of the tectum semicircularis.

The posterior crura, at their commencement, are intimately connected by their upper surfaces with the corpus callosum; diverging from one another, they pass downwards into the descending horn of the lateral ventricle, being continuous with the concave border of the hippocampus major. The lateral thin edges of the posterior crura have received the name corpus fimbriatum, already described. On the under surface of the fornix, towards its posterior part, between the diverging posterior crura, may be seen some transverse lines, and others longitudinal or oblique. This appearance has been termed the lyra, from the fancied resemblance it bears to the strings of a harp.

Between the anterior pillars of the fornix and the anterior extremities of the thalami optici, an oval aperture is seen on each side, the foramen of Monro. The two openings descend towards the middle line, and joining together, lead into the upper part of the third ventricle. These openings communicate with the lateral ventricles on each side, and below with the third ventricle.

Divide the fornix across anteriorly, and reflect the two portions, the one forwards, the other backwards, when the velum interpositum will be exposed.

The velum interpositum (Fig. 363) is a vascular membrane, reflected from the pia mater into the interior of the brain through the transverse fissure, passing beneath the posterior rounded border of the corpus callosum and fornix, and above the corpora quadrigemina, pineal gland, and optic thalami. It is of a triangular form, and separates the under surface of the body of the fornix from the cavity of the third ventricle. Its posterior border forms an almost complete investment for the pineal gland. Its anterior extremity, or apex, is bifid; each bifurcation being continued into the corresponding lateral ventricle, behind the anterior crura of the fornix, forming the anterior extremity of the choroid plexus. On its under surface are two vascular fringes, which diverge from each other behind, and project into the cavity of the third ventricle. These are the choroid plexuses of the third ventricle. To its lateral margins are connected the choroid plexuses of the lateral ventricles. The arteries of the velum interpositum enter from behind, beneath the corpus callosum. Its veins, the vena Galeni, two in number, run along its under surface; they are formed by the vena corporis striatii and the veins of the choroid plexuses: the vena Galeni unite posteriorly into a single trunk, which terminates in the straight sinus.

The velum interpositum should now be removed. This must be effected carefully, especially at its posterior part, where it invests the pineal gland; the thalami optici will then be exposed with the cavity of the third ventricle between them (Fig. 364).
The thalami optici are two large oblong masses, placed between the diverging portions of the corpora striata; they are of a white color superficially; internally they are composed of white fibres intermixed with gray matter. Each thalamus rests upon its corresponding crus cerebri, which it embraces. Externally, it is bounded by the corpus striatum, and tenia semicircularis; and is continuous with the hemisphere. Internally, it forms the lateral boundary of the third ventricle; and running along its upper border is seen the peduncle of the pineal gland. Its upper surface is free, being partly seen in the lateral ventricle; it is partly covered by the fornix, and marked in front by an eminence, the anterior tuberole. Its under surface forms the roof of the descending cornu of the lateral ventricle; into it the crus cerebri passes. Its posterior and inferior part, which projects into the descending horn of the lateral ventricle, presents two small rounded eminences, the internal and external geniculate bodies. Its anterior extremity, which is narrow, forms the posterior boundary of the foramen of Monro.

Fig. 364.—The Third and Fourth Ventricles.

The third ventricle is the narrow oblong fissure placed between the thalami optici, and extending to the base of the brain. It is bounded, above, by the under surface of the velum interpositum, from which are suspended the choroid plexuses of the third ventricle; and, laterally, by two white tracts, one on either side, the peduncles of the pineal gland. Its floor, somewhat oblique in its direction, is formed, from before backwards, by the parts which close the interpeduncular space, viz., the lamina cinerea, the tuber cinereum and infundibulum, the
NERVOUS SYSTEM.

corpora albicantia and the locus perforatus posticus; its sides, by the optic thalami; it is bounded, in front, by the anterior crura of the fornix, and part of the anterior commissure; behind, by the posterior commissure, and the iter a tertio ad quartum ventriculum.

The cavity of the third ventricle is crossed by three commissures, named, from their position, anterior, middle, and posterior.

The anterior commissure is a rounded cord of white fibres, placed in front of the anterior crura of the fornix. It perforates the corpus striatum on either side, and spreads out into the substance of the hemispheres, over the roof of the descending horn of each lateral ventricle.

The middle or soft commissure consists almost entirely of gray matter. It connects together the thalami optici, and is continuous with the gray matter lining the anterior part of the third ventricle. It is frequently broken in examining the brain, and might then be supposed to have been wanting.

The posterior commissure, smaller than the anterior, is a flattened white band of fibres, connecting together the two thalami optici posteriorly. It bounds the third ventricle posteriorly, and is placed in front of and beneath the pineal gland, above the opening leading to the fourth ventricle.

The third ventricle has four openings connected with it. In front are the two oval apertures of the foramen of Monro, one on either side, through which the third communicates with the lateral ventricles. Behind is a third opening leading into the fourth ventricle by a canal, the aqueduct of Sylvius, or iter a tertio ad quartum ventriculum. The fourth, situated in the anterior part of the floor of the ventricle, is a deep pit, which leads downwards to the funnel-shaped cavity of the infundibulum (iter ad infundibulum).

The lining membrane of the lateral ventricles is continued through the foramen of Monro into the third ventricle, and extends along the iter a tertio into the fourth ventricle; at the bottom of the iter ad infundibulum, it ends in a cul-de-sac.

Gray matter of the third ventricle. A layer of gray matter covers the greater part of the surface of the third ventricle. In the floor of this cavity it exists in great abundance, and is prolonged upwards on the sides of the thalami, extending across the cavity as the soft commissure; below, it enters into the corpora albicantia, and surrounds in part the anterior pillars of the fornix.

Behind the third ventricle, and in front of the cerebellum, are the corpora quadrigemina; and resting upon these, the pineal gland.

The pineal gland (conarium), so named from its peculiar shape (pinas, a fir-cone), is a small reddish-gray body, conical in form, placed immediately behind the posterior commissure, and between the nates, upon which it rests. It is retained in its position by a duplicature of pia mater, derived from the under surface of the velum interpositum, which almost completely invests it. The pineal gland is about four lines in length, and from two to three in width, at its base, and is said to be larger in the child than in the adult, and in the female than in the male. Its base is connected with the cerebrum by some transverse commissural fibres, derived from the posterior commissure; and by four slender peduncles, formed of medullary fibres. Of these, the two superior pass forwards upon the upper and inner margin of the optic thalami to the anterior crura of the fornix, with which they become blended. The inferior peduncles pass vertically downwards from the base of the pineal gland, along the back part of the inner surface of the thalami, and are only seen on a vertical section through the gland. The pineal gland is very vascular, and consists chiefly of gray matter, with a few medullary fibres. In its base is a small cavity, said by some to communicate with that of the third ventricle. It contains a transparent viscid fluid, and occasionally a quantity of sabulous matter, named acervulus cerebri, composed of phosphate and carbonate of lime, phosphate of magnesia and ammonia, with a little animal matter. These concretions are almost constant in
their existence, and are found at all periods of life. When this body is solid, the sabulous matter is found upon its surface, and occasionally upon its peduncles.

On the removal of the pineal gland and adjacent portion of pia mater, the corpora quadrigemina are exposed.

The corpora or tubercula quadrigemina (optic lobes) are four rounded eminences placed in pairs, two in front, and two behind, and separated from one another by a crucial depression. They are situated immediately behind the third ventricle and posterior commissure, beneath the posterior border of the corpus callosum, and above the iter a tertio ad quartum ventriculum. The anterior pair, the nates, are the larger, oblong from before backwards, and of a gray color. The posterior pair, the testes, are hemispherical in form, and lighter in color than the preceding. They are connected on each side with the thalamus opticus, and commencement of the optic tracts, by means of two white prominent bands termed brachia. Those connecting the nates with the thalamus (brachia anteriora) are the larger, and pass obliquely outwards. Those connecting the testes with the thalamus, are called the brachia posteriora. Both pairs, in the adult, are quite solid, being composed of white matter externally, and gray matter within. These bodies are larger in the lower animals than in man. In fishes, reptiles, and birds, they are only two in number, are called the optic lobes, from their connection with the optic nerves, and are hollow in their anterior; but in mammalia, they are four in number, as in man, and quite solid. In the human fetus, they are developed at a very early period, and form a large proportion of the cerebral mass; at first, they are only two in number, as in the lower mammalia, and hollow in their interior.

These bodies receive, from below, white fibres from the olivary fasciculus or fillet; they are also connected with the cerebellum, by means of a large white cord on each side, the processus ad testes, or superior peduncles of the cerebellum, which pass up to the thalami from the tubercula quadrigemina.

The valve of Vieuxsens is a thin translucent lamina of medullary substance, stretched between the two processus e cerebello ad testes; it covers in the canal leading from the third to the fourth ventricle, forming part of the roof of the latter cavity. It is narrow in front, where it is connected with the testes; and broader behind, at its connection with the veriform process of the cerebellum. A slight elevated ridge, the frenulum, descends upon the upper part of the valve from the corpora quadrigemina, and on either side of it may be seen the fibres of origin of the fourth nerve. Its lower half is covered by a thin transversely-grooved lobule of gray matter prolonged from the anterior border of the cerebellum; this is called by the Italian anatomists the linguetta laminosa.

The corpora geniculata are two small flattened, oblong masses, placed on the outer side of the corpora quadrigemina, and on the under and back part of each optic thalamus, and named, from their position, corpus geniculatum externum and internum. They are placed one on the outer and one on the inner side of each optic tract. In this situation, the optic tract may be seen dividing into two bands, one of which is connected with the external geniculate body and nates, the other being connected with the internal geniculate body and testes.

Structure of the cerebrum. The white matter of each hemisphere consists of three kinds of fibres: 1. Diverging or peduncular fibres, which connect the hemisphere with the cord and medulla oblongata. 2. Transverse commissural fibres, which connect together the two hemispheres. 3. Longitudinal commissural fibres, which connect distant parts of the same hemisphere.

The diverging or peduncular fibres consist of a main body, and of certain accessory fibres. The main body originate in the columns of the cord and medulla oblongata, and enter the cerebrum through the crus cerebri, where they are arranged into two bundles, separated by the locus niger. Those fibres which form the inferior or fasciculated portion of the crus, are derived from the anterior pyramid, and, ascending, pass mainly through the centre of the
striated body; those on the opposite surface of the crus, which form the tegumentum, are derived from the posterior pyramid and fasciculi teretes; as they ascend, they pass, some through the under part of the thalamus, and others through both thalamus and corpus striatum, decussating in these bodies with each other, and with the fibres of the corpus callosum. The optic thalami also receive accessory fibres from the processus ad testes, the olivary fasciculus, the corpora quadrigemina, and corpora geniculata. Some of the diverging fibres end in the cerebral ganglia, whilst others pass through and receive additional fibres from them, and, as they emerge, radiate into the anterior, middle, and posterior lobes of the hemisphere, decussating again with the fibres of the corpus callosum, before passing to the convolutions. These fibres have received the name of corona radiata.

The transverse commissural fibres connect together the two hemispheres across the middle line. They are formed by the corpus callosum, and the anterior and posterior commissures.

The longitudinal commissural fibres connect together distant parts of the same hemisphere, the fibres being disposed in a longitudinal direction. They form the fornix, the tenia semicircularis, and peduncles of the pineal gland, the striæ longitudinales, the fibres of the gyrus forniciatus, and the fasciculus unciniformis.

The Cerebellum.

The Cerebellum, or little brain, is that portion of the encephalon which is contained in the inferior occipital fossae. It is situated beneath the posterior lobes of the cerebrum, from which it is separated by the tentorium. Its average weight in the male is 6 oza. 4 drs. It attains its maximum weight between the twenty-fifth and fortieth year; its increase in weight after the fourteenth year being relatively greater in the female than in the male. The proportion between the cerebellum and cerebrum is, in the male, as 1 to 8 4/; and in the female, as 1 to 8 1/2. In the infant, the cerebellum is proportionally much smaller than in the adult, the relation between it and the cerebrum being, according to Chaussier, between 1 to 13, and 1 to 20; by Cruveilhier the proportion was found to be 1 to 20. In form, the cerebellum is oblong, and flattened from above downwards, its greater diameter being from side to side. It measures from three and a half to four inches transversely, and from two to two and a half inches from before backwards, being about two inches thick in the centre, and about six lines at the circumference, which is the thinnest part. It consists of gray and white matter: the former, darker than that of the cerebrum, occupies the surface; the latter, the interior. The surface of the cerebellum is not convoluted like the cerebrum, but traversed by numerous curved furrows or sulci, which vary in depth at different parts, and separate the laminae of which its exterior is composed.

Its upper surface (Fig. 365) is somewhat elevated in the median line, and depressed towards its circumference; it consists of two lateral hemispheres, connected together by an elevated median portion or lobe, the superior vermiciform process. The median lobe is the fundamental part, and in some animals, as fishes and reptiles, the only part which exists; the hemispheres being additions, and attaining their maximum size in man. The hemispheres are separated, in front, by a deep notch, the incisura cerebelli anterior, which encircles the corpora quadrigemina behind; they are also separated by a similar notch behind, the incisura cerebelli posterior, in which is received the upper part of the falx cerebelli. The superior vermiciform process (upper part of the median lobe of the cerebellum) extends from the notch on the anterior to that on the posterior border. It is divided into three lobes: the lobulus centralis, a small lobe, situated in the incisura anterior; the lobulus cerebelli, the central projecting part of the process; and the commissura simplex, a small lobe near the incisura posterior.
The _under surface_ of the cerebellum (Fig. 366) is subdivided into two lateral hemispheres by a depression, the valley, which extends from before backwards in the middle line. The lateral hemispheres are lodged in the inferior occipital fosse; the median depression, or valley, receives the back part of the medulla oblongata, is broader in the centre than at either extremity, and has, projecting from its floor, part of the median lobe of the cerebellum, called the _inferior vermis form process_. The parts entering into the composition of this body are, from behind forwards, the _commissura brevis_, situated in the incisura posterior;

in front of this, a laminated conical projection, the _pyramid_; more anteriorly, a larger eminence, the _uvula_, which is placed between the two rounded lobes which occupy the sides of the valley, the _amygdalae or tonsils_, and is connected with them by a commissure of gray matter, indented on the surface, called the _furrowed band_. In front of the uvula is the _nodule_; it is the anterior pointed termination of the inferior vermis form process, and projects into the cavity of the fourth ventricle; it has been named by Malacarne the _laminated tubercle_. On each side of the nodule is a thin layer, of white substance, attached externally to the flocculus, and internally to the nodule; these form together the _posterior medullary velum_, or commissure of the flocculus. It is usually covered in and concealed by the amygdalæ, and cannot be seen until they are drawn aside. This band is of a semilunar form on each side, its anterior margin being
free and concave, its posterior attached just in front of the furrowed band. Between it and the nodulus and uvula behind, is a deep fossa, called the swallow's nest (nidus hirundinis).

Lobes of the cerebellum. Each hemisphere is divided into an upper and a lower portion by the great horizontal fissure, which commences in front at thepons, and passes horizontally round the free margin of either hemisphere, backwards to the middle line. From this primary fissure numerous secondary fissures proceed, which separate the cerebellum into lobes.

Upon the upper surface of either hemisphere there are two lobes, separated from each other by a fissure. These are the anterior or square lobe, which extends as far back as the posterior edge of the vermis process, and the posterior or semilunar lobe, which passes from the termination of the preceding to the great horizontal fissure.

Upon the under surface of either hemisphere there are five lobes, separated by sulci; these are from before backwards. The flocculus or sub peduncular lobe, a prominent tuft, situated behind and below the middle peduncle of the cerebellum; its surface is composed of gray matter, subdivided into a few small laminae; it is sometimes called the pneumogastric lobule, from being situated behind the pneumogastric nerve. The amygdalae or tonsil is situated on either side of the great median fissure or valley, and projects into the fourth ventricle. The digastric lobe is situated on the outside of the tonsil, being connected in part with the pyramid. Behind the digastric is the slender lobe, which is connected with the back part of the pyramid and the commissura brevis; and more posteriorly is the inferior posterior lobe, which also joins the commissura brevis in the valley.

Structure. If a vertical section is made through either hemisphere of the cerebellum, midway between its centre and the superior vermis process, the interior will be found to consist of a central stem of white matter, which contains in its interior a dentate body. From the surface of this central stem a series of plates of medullary matter are detached, which, covered with gray matter, form the laminae; and from the anterior part of each hemisphere arise three large processes or peduncles, superior, middle, and inferior, by which the cerebellum is connected with the rest of the encephalon.

The laminae are about ten or twelve in number, including those on both surfaces of the cerebellum, those in front being detached at a right angle, and those behind at an acute angle; as each lamina proceeds outwards, other secondary laminae are detached from it, and from these, tertiary laminae. The arrangement thus described gives to the cut surface of the organ a foliated appearance, to which the name arbor vitae has been given. Each lamina consists of white matter, covered externally by a layer of gray substance. The white matter of each lamina is derived partly from the central stem: in addition to which white fibres pass from one lamina to another. The gray matter resembles somewhat the cortical substance of the convolutions. It consists of two layers: the external one, soft and of a grayish color; the internal one, firmer and of a rust color.
The corpus dentatum, or ganglion of the cerebellum, is situated a little to the inner side of the centre of the stem of white matter. It consists of an open bag or capsule of gray matter, the section of which presents a gray dentated outline, open at its anterior part. It is surrounded by white fibres; white fibres are also contained in its interior, which issue from it to join the superior peduncles.

The peduncles of the cerebellum, superior, middle, and inferior, serve to connect it with the rest of the encephalon.

The superior peduncles (processus e cerebello ad testes) connect the cerebellum with the cerebrum; they pass forwards and upwards to the testes, beneath which they ascend to the crura cerebri and optic thalami, forming part of the diverging cerebral fibres; each peduncle forms part of the lateral boundary of the fourth ventricle, and is connected with its fellow of the opposite side by the valve of Vieuussens. The peduncles are continuous behind with the folia of the inferior vermilliform process, and with the white fibres in the interior of the corpus dentatum. Beneath the corpora quadrigemina, the innermost fibres of each peduncle decussate with each other, so that some fibres from the right half of the cerebellum are continued to the left half of the cerebrum.

The inferior peduncles (processus ad medullam) connect the cerebellum with the medulla oblongata. They pass downwards, to the back part of the medulla, and form part of the restiform bodies. Above, the fibres of each process are connected chiefly with the laminae, on the upper surface of the cerebellum; and below, they are connected with all three tracts of one half of the medulla; and, through these, with the corresponding half of the cord, excepting the posterior median columns.

The middle peduncles (processus ad pontem), the largest of the three, connect together the two hemispheres of the cerebellum, forming their great transverse commissure. They consist of a mass of curved fibres, which arise in the lateral parts of the cerebellum, and pass across to the same points on the opposite side. They form the transverse fibres of the pons Varolii.

Fourth Ventricle. (Fig. 364.)

The Fourth Ventricle, or ventricle of the cerebellum, is the space between the posterior surface of the medulla oblongata and pons in front, and the cerebellum behind. It is lozenge-shaped, being contracted above and below, and broadest across its central part. It is bounded laterally by the processus e cerebello ad testes above, and by the diverging posterior pyramids and restiform bodies below.

The roof is arched; it is formed by the valve of Vieuussens and the under surface of the cerebellum, which presents, in this situation, four smalleminences or lobules, the nodulus, uvula, and amygdale.

The anterior boundary, or floor, is formed by the posterior surface of the medulla oblongata and pons. In the median line is seen the posterior median fissure, which becomes gradually obliterated above, and terminates below in the point of the calamus scriptorius, formed by the convergence of the posterior pyramids. At this point is the orifice of a short canal terminating in a cul-de-sac, the remains of the canal which extends in foetal life through the centre of the cord. On each side of the median fissure are two slightly convex longitudinal eminences, the fasciculi teretes: they extend the entire length of the floor, being indistinct below and of a grayish color, but well marked and whitish above. Each eminence consists of fibres derived from the lateral tract and restiform body, which ascend to the cerebrum. Opposite the crus cerebelli, on the outer side of the fasciculi teretes, is a small eminence of dark gray substance, which presents a bluish tint through the thin stratum covering it; this is called the locus ceruleus; and a thin streak of the same color continued up from this on either side of the fasciculi teretes, as far as the top of the ventricle, is called the tecta violacea. The lower part of the floor of the ventricle is crossed by
several white transverse lines, *lineae transverse*; they emerge from the posterior median fissure; some enter the crus cerebelli, others enter the roots of origin of the auditory nerve, whilst some pass upwards and outwards on the floor of the ventricle.

The *lining membrane* of the fourth ventricle is continuous with that of the third, through the aqueduct of Sylvius, and its cavity communicates below with the sub-arachnoid space of the brain and cord through an aperture in the layer of pia mater extending between the cerebellum and medulla oblongata. Laterally, this membrane is reflected outwards a short distance between the cerebellum and medulla.

The *choroid plexuses* of the fourth ventricle are two in number; they are delicate vascular fringes, which project into the ventricle on each side, passing from the point of the inferior vermiiform process to the outer margin of the restiform bodies.

The *gray matter* in the floor of the ventricle consists of a tolerably thick stratum, continuous below with the gray commissure of the cord, and extending up as high as the aqueduct of Sylvius, besides some special deposits connected with the roots of origin of certain nerves. In the upper half of the ventricle is a projection situated over the nucleus, from which the sixth and facial nerves take a common origin. In the lower half are three eminences on each side for the roots of origin of the eighth and ninth nerves.

Cranial Nerves.

The Cranial Nerves, nine in number on each side, arise from some part of the cerebro-spinal centre, and are transmitted through foramina in the base of the cranium. They have been named numerically, according to the order in which they pass out of the base of the brain. Other names are also given to them derived from the parts to which they are distributed, or from their functions. Taken in their order, from before backwards, they are as follows:—

4th. Pathetic. 9th. Spinal accessory.
6th. Abducentes.

If, however, the 7th pair be considered as two, and the 8th pair as three distinct nerves, then their number will be increased to twelve, which is the arrangement adopted by Sömmering.

The cranial nerves may be subdivided into four groups, according to the peculiar function possessed by each, viz., nerves of special sense; nerves of common sensation; nerves of motion; and mixed nerves. These groups may be thus arranged:—

Nerves of Special Sense.

Optic. Pathetic. 8th. Auditory (Portio mollis).
Auditory. Part of glosso-pharyngeal. 8th. Pneumogastric (Par vagum).
Part of glosso-pharyngeal. 9th. Spinal accessory.
Lingual or gustatory branch of fifth. Facial.


Fifth (greater portion). Part of third division of fifth. Pneumogastric.
Part of glosso-pharyngeal. Spinal accessory.

All the cranial nerves are connected to some part of the surface of the brain. This is termed their superficial or apparent origin. But their fibres may, in all cases, be traced deeply into the substance of the organ. This part is called their deep or real origin.

Olfactory Nerve. (Fig. 360.)

The First, or Olfactory Nerve, the special nerve of the sense of smell, may be regarded as a lobe, or portion of the cerebral substance pushed forward in direct relation with the organ to which it is distributed. It arises by three roots.

The external, or long root, is a narrow, white, medullary band, which passes outwards across the fissure of Sylvius, into the substance of the middle lobe of the cerebrum. Its deep origin has been traced to the corpus striatum,¹ the superficial fibres of the optic thalamus,² the anterior commissure,³ and the convolutions of the island of Reil.

¹ Vicq-d'Anthès, Winslow, Monro, Mayo. ² Valentin. ³ Cruveilhier.

(687)
The *middle*, or *gray root*, arises from a papilla of gray matter (caruncula mammillaris), imbedded in the anterior lobe. This root is prolonged into the nerve from the adjacent part of the brain, and contains white fibres in its interior, which are connected with the corpus striatum.

The *internal*, or *short root*, is composed of white fibres, which arise from the inner and back part of the anterior lobe, being connected, according to Foville, with the longitudinal fibres of the gyrus fimbriatus.

These three roots unite, and form a flat band, narrower in the middle than at either extremity, and of a somewhat prismatic form on section. It is soft in texture, and contains a considerable amount of gray matter in its substance. As it passes forwards, it is contained in a deep sulcus, between two convolutions, lying on the under surface of the anterior lobe, on either side of the longitudinal fissure, and is retained in position by the arachnoid membrane which covers it. On reaching the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone, it expands into an oblong mass of grayish-white substance, the *olfactory bulb*. From the under part of this bulb are given off numerous filaments, about twenty in number, which pass through the cribriform foramina, and are distributed to the mucous membrane of the nose. Each filament is surrounded by a tubular prolongation from the dura mater and pia mater; the former being lost on the peritoneum lining the nose; the latter, in the neurilemma of the nerve. The filaments, as they enter the nares, are divisible into three groups: an inner group, larger than those on the outer wall, spread out over the upper third of the septum; a middle set, confined to the roof of the nose; and an outer set, which are distributed over the superior and middle turbinated bones, and the surface of the ethmoid in front of them. As the filaments descend, they unite in a plexiform network, and become gradually lost in the lining membrane. Their mode of termination is unknown.

The olfactory differs in structure from other nerves, in containing gray matter in its interior, and being soft and pulpy in consistence. Its filaments are deficient in the white substance of Schwann, are not divisible into fibrille, and resemble the gelatinous fibres, in being nucleated, and of a finely-granular texture.

**Optic Nerve.**

The *second*, or *optic nerve*, the special nerve of the sense of sight, is distributed exclusively to the eyeball. The nerves of opposite sides are connected together at the commissure; and from the back of the commissure, they may be traced to the brain, under the name of the optic tracts.

The optic tract, at its connection with the brain, is divided into two bands which arise from the optic thalamus, the corpora geniculata, and the corpora quadrigemina. The fibres of origin from the thalamus may be traced partly from its surface, and partly from its interior. From this origin, the tract winds obliquely across the under surface of the crus cerebri, in the form of a flattened band, destined to neurilemma, and is attached to the crus by its anterior margin. It now assumes a cylindrical form, and, as it passes forwards, is connected with the tuber cinereum, and lamina cinerea, from both of which it receives fibres. According to Foville, it is also connected with the tectum semicircularis, and the
ANTERIOR TERMINATION OF THE GYRUS FORNICALATUS. It finally joins with the nerve of the opposite side, to form the optic commissure.

The commissure or chiasma, somewhat quadrilateral in form, rests upon the optic groove of the sphenoid bone, being bounded, in front, by the lamina cinerea; behind, by the tuber cinereum; on either side by the anterior perforated space. Within the commissure, the optic nerves of the two sides undergo a partial decussation. The fibres which form the inner margin of each tract are continued across from one to the other side of the brain, and have no connection with the optic nerves. These may be regarded as comissural fibres (inter-cerebral) between the thalami of opposite sides. Some fibres are continued across the anterior border of the chiasma, and connect the optic nerves of the two sides, having no relation with the optic tracts. They may be regarded as commissural fibres between the two retinæ (inter-retinal fibres). The outer fibres of each tract are continued into the optic nerve of the same side. The central fibres of each tract are continued into the optic nerve of the opposite side, decussating in the commissure with similar fibres of the opposite tract.1

The optic nerves arise from the fore-part of the commissure, and, diverging from one another, become rounded in form and firm in texture, and are inclosed in a sheath derived from the arachnoid. As each nerve passes through the corresponding optic foramen, it receives a sheath from the dura mater; and as it enters the orbit, this sheath subdivides into layers, one of which becomes continuous with the periosteum of the orbit; the other forms a sheath for the nerve, and surrounds it as far as the sclerotic. The nerve passes through the cavity of the orbit, pierces the sclerotic and choroid coats at the back part of the eyeball, a little to the nasal side of its centre, and expands into the retina. A small artery, the arteria centralis retinae, perforates the optic nerve a little behind the globe, and runs along its interior in a tubular canal of fibrous tissue. It supplies the inner surface of the retina, and is accompanied by corresponding veins.

AUDITORY NERVE. 

The AUDITORY NERVE (portio mollis of the seventh pair) is the special nerve of the sense of hearing, being distributed exclusively to the internal ear. The portio dura of the seventh pair, or facial nerve, is the motor nerve of the muscles of the face. It will be described with the cranial motor nerves. The auditory nerve arises by numerous white striæ, the linear transverse, which emerge from the posterior median fissure in the anterior wall, or floor, of the fourth ventricle. It is also connected with the gray matter of the medulla, corresponding to the locus ceruleus. According to Foville, the roots of this nerve are connected, on the under surface of the middle peduncle, with the gray substance of the cerebellum, with the flocculus, and with the gray matter at the borders of the calamus scriptorius. The nerve winds round the restiform body, from which it receives fibres, and passes forwards across the posterior border of the crus cerebelli, in company with the facial nerve, from which it is partially separated by a small artery. It then enters the meatus auditorius, in company with the facial nerve, and, at the bottom of the meatus, divides into two branches, cochlear and vestibular, which are distributed, the former to the cochlea, the latter to the vestibule and semicircular canals. The auditory nerve is very soft in texture (hence the name, portio mollis), destitute of neurilemma, and, within the meatus, receives one or two filaments from the facial.

1 A specimen of congenital absence of the optic commissure is to be found in the Museum of the Westminster Hospital.
The other nerves of special sense must be described with the glosso-pharyngeal and fifth nerves, of which they are parts.

**Third Nerve.** (Figs. 370, 371.)

The **Third Nerve** (*motor oculi*) supplies all the muscles of the orbit, except the Superior oblique and External rectus; it also sends motor filaments to the iris. It is a rather large nerve, of rounded form and firm texture, having its apparent origin from the inner surface of the crus cerebri, immediately in front of the pons Varolii.

The *deep origin* may be traced into the substance of the crus, where some of its fibres are connected with the locus niger; others run downwards, among the longitudinal fibres of the pons; whilst others ascend, to be connected with the tubercula quadrigemina, and valve of Vieuxens. According to Stilling, the fibres of the nerve pierce the peduncle and locus niger, and arise from a gray nucleus in the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius. On emerging from the brain, the nerve is invested with a sheath of pia mater, and inclosed in a prolongation from the arachnoid. It then pierces the dura mater on the outer side of the anterior clinoid process, where its serous covering is reflected from it, and it passes along the outer wall of the cavernous sinus, above the other orbital nerves, receiving in its course one or two filaments from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic. It then divides into two branches, which enter the orbit through the sphenoidal fissure, between the two heads of the External rectus muscle. On passing through the fissure, the nerve is placed below the fourth, and the frontal and lacrimal branches of the ophthalmic nerve.

The *superior division*, the smaller, passes inwards across the optic nerve, and supplies the Superior rectus and Levator palpebræ.

The *inferior division*, the larger, divides into three branches. One passes beneath the optic nerve to the Internal rectus; another to the Inferior rectus; and the third, the largest of the three, passes forwards between the Inferior and External recti, to the Inferior oblique. From the latter, a short thick branch is given off to the lower part of the lenticular ganglion, forming its inferior root, as well as two filaments to the inferior rectus. All these branches enter the muscles on their ocular surface.
FOURTH—SIXTH.

FOURTH NERVE. (Fig. 370.)

The Fourth Nerve (trochlear), the smallest of the cranial nerves, supplies the Superior oblique muscle. It arises from the upper part of the valve of Vieuussen, immediately behind the testis, and divides beneath the corpora quadrigemina, into two fasciculi; the anterior one arising from a nucleus of gray matter, close to the middle line of the floor of the Sylvian aqueduct; the posterior one from a gray nucleus, at the upper part of the floor of the fourth ventricle, close to the origin of the fifth nerve. The two nerves are connected together at their origin, by a transverse band of white fibres, which crosses the surface of the valve of Vieuussen. The nerve winds round the outer side of the crura cerebri, immediately above the pons Varolii, pierces the dura mater in the free border of the tentorium cerebelli, near the posterior clinoid process, above the oval opening for the fifth nerve, and passes forwards through the outer wall of the cavernous sinus, below the third; but, as it enters the orbit, through the sphenoidal fissure, it becomes the highest of all the nerves. In the orbit, it passes inwards, above the origin of the Levator palpebrae, and finally enters the orbital surface of the Superior oblique muscle.

Fig. 371.—Nerves of the Orbit and Ophthalmic Ganglion. Side View.

In the outer wall of the cavernous sinus, this nerve receives some filaments from the carotid plexus of the sympathetic. It is not unfrequently blended with the ophthalmic division of the fifth; and occasionally gives off a branch to assist in the formation of the lachrymal nerve. It also gives off a recurrent branch, which passes backwards between the layers of the tentorium, dividing into two or three filaments, which may be traced as far back as the wall of the lateral sinus.

SIXTH NERVE.

The Sixth Nerve (abducenti), supplies the External rectus muscle. Its apparent origin is by several filaments from the constricted part of the corpus pyramidale, close to the pons, or from the lower border of the pons itself.

The deep origin of this nerve has been traced, by Mayo, between the fasciculi of the corpus pyramidale, to the posterior part of the medulla, where Stilling has shown its connection with a gray nucleus in the floor of the fourth ventricle.
The nerve pierces the dura mater, immediately below the posterior clinoid process, lying in a groove by the side of the body of the sphenoid bone. It passes forwards through the cavernous sinus, lying on the outer side of the internal carotid artery, where it is joined by several filaments from the carotid plexus, by one from Meckel's ganglion (Böck), and another from the ophthalmic nerve. It enters the orbit through the sphenoidal fissure, and lies above the ophthalmic vein, from which it is separated by a lamina of dura mater. It then passes between the two heads of the External rectus, and is distributed to that muscle on its ocular surface.

The above-mentioned nerves, as well as the ophthalmic division of the fifth as they pass to the orbit, bear a certain relation to each other in the cavernous sinus, at the sphenoidal fissure, and in the cavity of the orbit, which will be now described.

In the cavernous sinus, the third, fourth, and ophthalmic division of the fifth, are placed in the dura mater of the outer wall of the sinus, in their numerical order, both from above downwards, and from within outwards. The sixth nerve lies at the outer side of the internal carotid artery. As these nerves pass forwards to the sphenoidal fissure, the third and fifth nerves become divided into branches, and the sixth approaches the rest; so that their relative position becomes considerably changed.

In the sphenoidal fissure, the fourth, and the frontal and lachrymal divisions of the ophthalmic, lie upon the same plane, the former being most internal, the latter external; and they enter the cavity of the orbit above the muscles. The remaining nerves enter the orbit between the two heads of the External rectus. The superior division of the third is the highest of these; beneath this lies the nasal branch of the fifth; then the inferior division of the third; and the sixth lowest of all.

In the orbit, the fourth, and the frontal and lachrymal divisions of the ophthalmic, lie on the same plane immediately beneath the peristeum, the fourth nerve being internal and resting on the Superior oblique, the frontal resting on the Levator palpebrae, and the lachrymal on the external rectus. Next in order comes the superior division of the third nerve lying immediately beneath the Superior rectus, and then the nasal division of the fifth crossing the optic nerve from the outer to the inner side of the orbit. Beneath these lies found the optic nerve, surrounded in front by the ciliary nerves, and having the lenticular ganglion on its outer side, between it and the External rectus. Below the optic is the inferior division of the third, and the sixth, which lies on the outer side of the orbit.

**Facial Nerve.**

The Facial Nerve (portio dura of the seventh pair) is the motor nerve of all the muscles of expression in the face, and of the Platysma and Buccinator. It supplies also two of the muscles of the external ear, the posterior belly of the Digastric, and the Stylo-hyoid. Through the chorda tympani it supplies the Lingualis; by its tympanic branch, the Stapedius and Laxator tympani; through the otic ganglion, the Tensor tympani; and through the connection of its trunk with the Vidian nerve, by the petrosal nerve, it probably supplies the Levator palati and Azygos uvulae. It arises from the lateral tract of the medulla oblongata, in the groove between the olivary and restiform bodies.
Its deep origin may be traced to the floor of the fourth ventricle, where it is connected with the same nucleus as the sixth nerve. This nerve is situated a little nearer to the middle line than the porio mollis, close to the lower border of the pons Varolii, from which some of its fibres are derived.

Connected with this nerve, and lying between it and the porio mollis, is a small fasciculus (*porio inter duram et mollem* of Wrisberg, or *porio intermedia*). This accessory portion arises from the lateral column of the cord.

The nerve passes forwards and outwards upon the crus cerebelli, and enters the internal auditory meatus with the auditory nerve. Within the meatus, the facial nerve lies first to the inner side of the auditory, and then in a groove upon that nerve, and is connected to it by one or two filaments.

At the bottom of the meatus, it enters the aqueductus Falopi, and follows the serpentine course of that canal through the petrous portion of the temporal bone, from its commencement at the internal meatus to its termination at the stylo-mastoid foramen. It is at first directed outwards towards the hiatus Falopi, where it forms a reddish gangliform swelling (*intumescentia gangliiformis*), and is joined by several nerves; then bending suddenly backwards, it runs in the internal wall of the tympanum, above the fenestra ovalis, and at the back of that cavity passes vertically downwards to the stylo-mastoid foramen.

On emerging from this aperture, it runs forwards in the substance of the parotid gland, crosses the external carotid artery, and divides behind the ramus of the lower jaw into two primary branches, temporo-facial and cervico-facial, from which numerous offsets are distributed over the side of the head, face, and upper part of the neck, supplying the superficial muscles in these regions. As the primary branches and their offsets diverge from each other, they present somewhat the appearance of a bird’s claws; hence the name of *pes anserinus* is given to the divisions of the facial nerve in and near the parotid gland.

The communications of the facial nerve may be thus arranged:

- In the internal auditory meatus
  - With the auditory nerve.
  - With Meckel’s ganglion by the large petrosal nerve.
  - With the otic ganglion by the small petrosal nerve.
  - With the sympathetic on the middle meningeal by the external petrosal nerve.
  - With the pneumogastric.
    - glossopharyngeal.
    - carotid plexus.
    - auricularis magnus.
    - auriculo-temporal.

- At its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen
  - With the three divisions of the fifth.

- On the face
  - With the three divisions of the fifth.

In the internal auditory meatus, some minute filaments pass between the facial and auditory nerves.

Opposite the hiatus Falopi, the ganglioniform enlargement on the facial nerve communicates by means of the large petrosal nerve, with Meckel’s ganglion, forming its motor root; by a filament from the small petrosal, with the otic ganglion; and by the external petrosal, with the sympathetic filaments accompanying the middle meningeal artery (Bidder). From the ganglioniform enlargement, according to Arnold, a twig is sent back to the auditory nerve.

At its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen, it sends a twig to the pneumogastric, another to the glossopharyngeal nerve, and communicates with the carotid plexus of the sympathetic, with the great auricular branch of the cervical plexus, with the auriculo-temporal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve in the parotid gland, and on the face with the terminal branches of the three divisions of the fifth.
CRANIAL NERVES.

Branches of Distribution.

Within aqueductus Fallopii
- Tympanic.
- Chorda tympani.
- Posterior auricular.
- Digastric.
- Stylo-hyoid.

At exit from stylo-mastoid foramen
-Temporal.
- Malar.
- Infraorbital.
- Buccal.

On the face
- Temporo-facial
- Cervico-facial
- Supramaxillary.
- Infra-maxillary.

The Tympanic branch arises from the nerve opposite the pyramid; it is a small filament, which supplies the Stapedius and Laxator tympani muscles.

Fig. 373.—The Nerves of the Scalp, Face, and side of the Neck.

The Chorda tympani is given off from the facial as it passes vertically downwards at the back of the tympanum, about a quarter of an inch before its exit.
BRANCHES OF DISTRIBUTION.

from the stylo-mastoid foramen. It ascends from below upwards in a distinct canal, parallel with the aqueductus Fallopii, and enters the cavity of the tympanum through an opening (iter chordae posterius) between the base of the pyramid and the attachment of the membrana tympani, and becomes invested with mucous membrane. It passes forwards through the cavity of the tympanum, between the handle of the malleus and vertical ramus of the incus, to its anterior inferior angle, and emerges from that cavity through a foramen at the inner side of the Glaserian fissure which is called the iter chordae anterius, or canal of Hugier. It then descends between the two Pterygoid muscles, and meets the gustatory nerve at an acute angle, after communicating with which, it accompanies it to the submaxillary gland; it then joins the submaxillary ganglion, from whence it has been traced by some anatomists into the proper muscular fibres of the tongue—the Lingualis muscle.

The Posterior auricular nerve arises close to the stylo-mastoid foramen, and passes upwards in front of the mastoid process, where it is joined by a filament from the auricular branch of the pneumogastric, and communicates with the deep branch of the auricular magnus; as it ascends between the meatus and mastoid process it divides into two branches. The auricular branch supplies the Retrahens aurem. The occipital branch, the larger, passes backwards along the superior curved line of the occipital bone, and supplies the occipital portion of the Occipito-frontalis.

The Stylo-hyoid is a long slender branch, which passes inwards, entering the Stylo-hyoid muscle about its middle; it communicates with the sympathetic filaments on the external carotid artery.

The Digastric branch usually arises by a common trunk with the preceding; it divides into several filaments, which supply the posterior belly of the Digastric; one of these perforates that muscle to join the glosso-pharyngeal nerve.

The Temporo-facial, the larger of the two terminal branches, passes upwards and forwards through the parotid gland, crosses the neck of the condyle of the jaw, being connected in this situation with the auriculo-temporal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve, and divides into branches, which are distributed over the temple and upper part of the face; these are divided into three sets, temporal, malar, and infraorbital.

The temporal branches cross the zygoma to the temporal region, supplying the Attrahens aurem muscle, and join with the temporal branch of the superior maxillary, and with the auriculo-temporal branch of the inferior maxillary. The more anterior branches supply the frontal portion of the Occipito-frontalis, and the Orbicularis palpebrarum muscle, joining with the supraorbital branch of the ophthalamic.

The malar branches pass across the malar bone to the outer angle of the orbit, where they supply the Orbicularis and Corrugator supercilii muscles, joining with filaments from the lachrymal and supraorbital nerves: others supply the lower eyelid, joining with filaments of the malar branches of the superior maxillary nerve.

The infraorbital, of larger size than the rest, pass horizontally forwards to be distributed between the lower margin of the orbit and the mouth. The superficial branches run beneath the skin and above the superficial muscles of the face, which they supply; some supply the lower eyelid and Pyramidalis nasi, joining at the inner angle of the orbit with the infraorbicular and nasal branches of the ophthalmic. The deep branches pass beneath the Levator labii superiors, supply it and the Levator anguli oris, and form a plexus (infraorbital) by joining with the infraorbital branch of the superior maxillary nerve.

The Cervico-facial division of the facial nerve passes obliquely downwards and forwards through the parotid gland, where it is joined by branches from the great auricular nerve; opposite the angle of the lower jaw it divides into branches which are distributed on the lower half of the face and upper part of
the neck. These may be divided into three sets: buccal, supramaxillary, and inframaxillary.

The buccal branches cross the Masseter muscle. They supply the Buccinator and Orbicularis oris, and join with the infraorbital branches of the temporo-facial division of the nerve, and with filaments of the buccal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve.

The supramaxillary branches pass forwards beneath the Platysma and Depressor anguli oris, supplying the muscles of the lip and chin, and anastomosing with the mental branch of the inferior dental nerve.

The inframaxillary branches run forward beneath the Platysma, and form a series of arches across the side of the neck over the supra-hyoid region. One of these branches descends vertically to join with the superficial cervical nerve from the cervical plexus; others supply the Platysma.

**Ninth, or Hypoglossal Nerve.**

The Ninth Nerve (hypoglossal) is the motor nerve of the tongue. It arises by several filaments, from ten to fifteen in number, from the groove between the

Fig. 374.—Hypoglossal Nerve, Cervical Plexus, and their branches.

pyramidal and olivary bodies, in a continuous line with the anterior roots of the spinal nerves. According to Stilling, these roots may be traced to a gray nucleus in the floor of the medulla oblongata, between the posterior median furrow and the nuclei of the glosso-pharyngeal and vagus nerves. The filaments
of this nerve are collected into two bundles, which perforate the dura mater separately, opposite the anterior condylöid foramen, and unite together after their passage through it. In those cases in which the anterior condylöid foramen in the occipital bone is double, these two portions of the nerve are separated by a small piece of bone, which divides the foramen. The nerve descends almost vertically to a point corresponding with the angle of the jaw. It is at first deeply seated beneath the internal carotid and internal jugular vein, and intimately connected with the pneumogastric nerve; it then passes forwards between the vein and artery, and at a lower part of the neck becomes superficial below the Digastric muscle. The nerve then loops round the occipital artery, and crosses the external carotid below the tendon of the Digastric muscle. It passes beneath the Mylo-hyoid muscle, lying between it and the Hyo-glossus, and is connected at the anterior border of the latter muscle with the gustatory nerve; it is then continued forwards into the Genio-hyo-glossus muscle as far as the tip of the tongue, distributing branches to its substance.

Branches of this nerve communicate with the

Pneumogastric. First and second cervical nerves.
Sympathetic. Gustatory.

The communication with the pneumogastric takes place close to the exit of the nerve from the skull, numerous filaments passing between the hypoglossal and second ganglion of the pneumogastric, or both being united so as to form one mass.

The communication with the sympathetic takes place opposite the atlas, by branches derived from the superior cervical ganglion, and in the same situation the ninth is joined by a filament derived from the loop connecting the first two cervical nerves.

The communication with the gustatory takes place near the anterior border of the Hyo-glossus muscle by numerous filaments which ascend upon it.

The branches of distribution are the

Descendens noni. Thyro-hyoid.
Muscular.

The descendens noni is a long slender branch, which quits the hypoglossal where it turns round the occipital artery. It descends obliquely across the sheath of the carotid vessels, and joins just below the middle of the neck, to form a loop with the communicating branches from the second and third cervical nerves. From the convexity of this loop branches pass forwards to supply the Sterno-hyoid, Sterno-thyroid, and both bellies of the Omo-hyoid. According to Arnold, another filament descends in front of the vessels into the chest, which joins the cardiac and phrenic nerves. The descendens noni is occasionally contained in the sheath of the carotid vessels, being sometimes placed over and sometimes beneath the internal jugular vein.

The thyro-hyoid is a small branch, arising from the hypoglossal near the posterior border of the Hyo-glossus; it passes obliquely across the great cornu of the hyoid bone, and supplies the Thyro-hyoid muscle.

The muscular branches are distributed to the Stylo-glossus, Hyo-glossus, Genio-hyoid, and Genio-hyo-glossus muscles. At the under surface of the tongue, numerous slender branches pass upwards into the substance of the organ.

FIFTH NERVE.

The Fifth Nerve (trifacial, trigeminus) is the largest cranial nerve, and resembles a spinal nerve, in its origin by two roots, and in the existence of a ganglion on its posterior root. The functions of this nerve are various. It is a nerve of special sense, of common sensation, and of motion. It is the great sensitive nerve of the cranium and face, the motor nerve of the muscles of
mastication, and its lingual branch is one of the nerves of the special sense of taste. It arises by two roots, a posterior larger or sensory, and an anterior smaller or motor root. Its superficial origin is from the side of the pons Varoli, a little nearer to the upper than the lower border. The smaller root consists of three or four bundles; in the larger, the bundles are more numerous, varying in number, from seventy to a hundred: the two roots are separated from one another by a few of the transverse fibres of the pons. The deep origin of the larger or sensory root may be traced between the transverse fibres of the pons Varoli to the lateral tract of the medulla oblongata, immediately behind the olivary body. According to some anatomists, it is connected with the gray nucleus at the back part of the medulla, between the fasciculi teretis and restiform columns. By others, it is said to be continuous with the fasciculi teretis and lateral column of the cord; and, according to Foville, some of its fibres are connected with the transverse fibres of the pons; whilst others enter the cerebellum, spreading out on the surface of its middle peduncle. The motor root has been traced by Bell and Betzius to be connected with the pyramidal body.

The two roots of the nerve pass forwards through an oval opening in the dura mater, opposite the internal auditory meatus; here the fibres of the larger root enter a large semilunar ganglion (Casserian), while the smaller root passes beneath the ganglion without having any connection with it, and joins outside the cranium with one of the trunks derived from it.

The Casserian, or Semilunar Ganglion, is lodged in a depression near the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. It is of a somewhat crescentic form, with its convexity turned forwards. Its upper surface is intimately adherent to the dura mater. Besides the small or motor root, the large superficial petrosal nerve lies underneath the ganglion.

Branches. This ganglion receives, on its inner side, filaments from the carotid plexus of the sympathetic; and from it some minute branches are given off to the tentorium cerebelli, and the dura mater, in the middle fossa of the cranium. From its anterior border, which is directed forwards and outwards, three large branches proceed: the ophthalmic, superior maxillary, and inferior maxillary. The ophthalmic and superior maxillary consist exclusively of fibres derived from the larger root and ganglion, and are solely nerves of common sensation. The third division, or inferior maxillary, is composed of fibres from both roots. This, therefore, strictly speaking, is the only portion of the fifth nerve which can be said to resemble a spinal nerve.

Ophthalmic Nerve. (Fig. 370.)

The Ophthalmic, or first division of the fifth, is a sensory nerve. It supplies the eyeball, the lachrymal gland, the mucous lining of the eye and nose, and the integument and muscles of the eyebrow and forehead. It is the smallest of the three divisions of the fifth, arising from the upper part of the Casserian ganglion. It is a short, flattened band, about an inch in length, which passes forwards along the outer wall of the cavernous sinus, below the other nerves, and just before entering the orbit, through the sphenoidal fissure, divides into three branches, lachrymal, frontal, and nasal. The ophthalmic nerve is joined by filaments from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic, and gives off recurrent filaments which pass between the layers of the tentorium, with a branch from the fourth nerve.

Its branches are, the


The Lachrymal is the smallest of the three branches of the ophthalmic. Not unfrequently it arises by two filaments, one from the ophthalmic, the other from the fourth, and this Swan considers to be its usual condition. It passes forwards in a separate tube of dura mater, and enters the orbit through the narrowest
part of the sphenoidal fissure. In the orbit, it runs along the upper border of the External rectus muscle, with the lachrymal artery, and is connected with the orbital branch of the superior maxillary nerve. Within the lachrymal gland it gives off several filaments, which supply the gland and the conjunctiva. Finally, it pierces the palpebral ligaments, and terminates in the integument of the upper eyelid, joining with filaments of the facial nerve.

The *Frontal* is the largest division of the ophthalmic, and may be regarded, both from its size and direction, as the continuation of this nerve. It enters the orbit above the muscles, through the highest and broadest part of the sphenoidal fissure, and runs forwards along the middle line, between the Levator palpebrae and the periosteum. Midway between the apex and base of the orbit it divides into two branches, supratrochlear and supraorbital.

The *supratrochlear branch*, the smaller of the two, passes inwards, above the pulley of the Superior oblique muscle, and gives off a descending filament, which joins with the infratrochlear branch of the nasal nerve. It then escapes from the orbit between the pulley of the Superior oblique and the supraorbital foramen, curves up on to the forehead close to the bone, and ascends behind the Corrugator supercili and Occipito-frontalis muscles, to both of which it is distributed; finally, it is lost in the integument of the forehead.

The *supraorbital branch* passes forwards through the supraorbital foramen, and gives off, in this situation, palpebral filaments to the upper eyelid. It then ascends upon the forehead, and terminates in muscular, cutaneous, and pericranial branches. The *muscular branches* supply the Corrugator supercillii, Occipito-frontalis, and Orbicularis palpebrarum, furnishing these muscles with common sensation, and joining in the substance of the latter muscle with the facial nerve. The *cutaneous branches*, two in number, an inner and an outer, supply the integument of the cranium as far back as the occiput. They are at first situated beneath the Occipito-frontalis, the inner branch perforating the frontal portion of the muscle, the outer branch its tendinous aponeurosis. The *pericranial branches* are distributed to the pericranium over the frontal and parietal bones. They are derived from the cutaneous branches whilst beneath the muscle.

The *Nasal nerve* is intermediate in size between the frontal and lachrymal, and more deeply placed than the other branches of the ophthalmic. It enters the orbit between the two heads of the External rectus, and passes obliquely inwards across the optic nerve, beneath the Levator palpebrae and superior rectus muscles, to the inner wall of the orbit, where it enters the anterior ethmoidal foramen, immediately below the superior oblique. It then enters the cavity of the cranium, traverses a shallow groove on the front of the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone, and passes down, through the slit by the side of the crista galli, into the nose, where it divides into two branches, an internal and an external. The *internal branch* supplies the mucous membrane near the fore part of the septum of the nose. The *external branch* descends in a groove on the inner surface of the nasal bone, and supplies a few filaments to the mucous membrane covering the fore part of the outer wall of the nares as far as the inferior spongy bone; it then leaves the cavity of the nose, between the lower border of the nasal bone and the upper lateral cartilage of the nose, and, passing down beneath the compressor nasi, supplies the integument of the ala and the tip of the nose, joining with the facial nerve.

The branches of the nasal nerve are, the ganglionic, ciliary, and infratrochlear.

The *ganglionic* is a long, slender branch, about half an inch in length, which usually arises from the nasal, between the two heads of the external rectus. It passes forwards on the outer side of the optic nerve, and enters the superior and posterior angle of the ciliary ganglion, forming its superior, or long root. It is sometimes joined by a filament from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic, or from the superior division of the third nerve.

The *long ciliary nerves* two or three in number, are given off from the nasal
as it crosses the optic nerve. They join the short ciliary nerves from the ciliary ganglion, pierce the posterior part of the sclerotic, and, running forwards between it and the choroid, are distributed to the ciliary muscle and iris.

The infratrochlear branch is given off just as the nasal nerve passes through the anterior ethmoidal foramen. It runs forwards along the upper border of the Internal rectus, and is joined, beneath the pulley of the Superior oblique, by a filament from the supratrochlear nerve. It then passes to the inner angle of the eye, and supplies the Orbiocularis palpebrarum, the integument of the eyelids, and side of the nose, the conjunctiva, lachrymal sac, and caruncula lachrymalis.

Connected with the three divisions of the fifth nerve are four small ganglia, which form the whole of the cephalic portion of the sympathetic. With the first division is connected the ophthalmic ganglion; with the second division, the sphenopalatine, or Meckel's ganglion; and with the third, the otic and submaxillary ganglia. All the four receive sensitive filaments from the fifth, and motor and sympathetic filaments from various sources; these filaments are called the roots of the ganglia. The ganglia are also connected with each other, and with the cervical portion of the sympathetic.

**Ophthalmic Ganglion.** (Fig. 371.)

The Ophthalmic, Lenticular, or Ciliary Ganglion, is a small, quadrangular flattened ganglion, of a reddish-gray color, and about the size of a pin's head, situated at the back part of the orbit between the optic nerve and the External rectus muscle, lying generally on the outer side of the ophthalmic artery. It is inclosed in a quantity of loose fat, which makes its dissection somewhat difficult.

Its branches of communication, or roots, are three, all of which enter its posterior border. One, the long root, is derived from the nasal branch of the ophthalmic, and joins its superior angle. The second, the short thick nerve, occasionally divided into two parts, which is derived from the branch of the third nerve to the Inferior oblique muscle, and is connected with the inferior angle of the ganglion. The third, the sympathetic root, is a slender filament from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic. This is occasionally blended with the long root, and sometimes passes to the ganglion separately. According to Tiedemann, this ganglion receives a filament of communication from the sphenopalatine ganglion.

Its branches of distribution are the short ciliary nerves. These are delicate filaments from ten to twelve in number, which arise from the fore part of the ganglion in two bundles, connected with its superior and inferior angles; the upper bundle consisting of four filaments, and the lower of six or seven. They run forwards with the ciliary arteries in a wavy course, one set above and the other below the optic nerve, pierce the sclerotic at the back part of the globe, pass forwards in delicate grooves on its inner surface, and are distributed to the ciliary muscle and iris. A small filament is described by Tiedemann, penetrating the optic nerve with the arteria centralis retinae.

**Superior Maxillary Nerve.** (Fig. 375.)

The Superior Maxillary, or second division of the fifth, is a sensory nerve. It is intermediate, both in position and size, between the ophthalmic and inferior maxillary. It commences at the middle of the Casserian ganglion as a flattened plexiform band, and passes forwards through the foramen rotundum, where it becomes more cylindrical in form, and firmer in texture. It then crosses the sphenomaxillary fossa, traverses the infraorbital canal in the floor of the orbit, and appears upon the face at the infraorbital foramen. At its termination, the nerve lies beneath the Levator labii superioris muscle, and divides into a leash
of branches, which spread out upon the side of the nose, the lower eyelid, and upper lip, joining with filaments of the facial nerve.

The branches of this nerve may be divided into three groups: 1. Those given off in the sphenomaxillary fossa. 2. Those in the infraorbital canal. 3. Those on the face.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Sphenomaxillary fossa} & \quad \text{Orbital.} \\
& \quad \text{Sphenopalatine.} \\
& \quad \text{Posterior dental.} \\
\text{Infraorbital canal} & \quad \text{Anterior dental.} \\
& \quad \text{Pulpebral.} \\
\text{On the face} & \quad \text{Nasal.} \\
& \quad \text{Labial.}
\end{align*}
\]

The Orbital branch arises in the sphenomaxillary fossa, enters the orbit by the sphenomaxillary fissure, and divides at the back of that cavity into two branches, temporal and malar.

Fig. 375.—Distribution of the Second and Third Divisions of the Fifth Nerve and Submaxillary Ganglion.

The temporal branch runs in a groove along the outer wall of the orbit (in the malar bone), receives a branch of communication from the lachrymal, and, passing through a foramen in the malar bone, enters the temporal fossa. It ascends between the bone and substance of the Temporal muscle, pierces this muscle and the temporal fascia about an inch above the zygoma, and is distributed to the integument covering the temple and side of the forehead, communicating with the facial and auriculotemporal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve.

The malar branch passes along the external inferior angle of the orbit, emerges
upon the face through a foramen in the malar bone, and perforating the Orbicularis palpebrarum muscle on the prominence of the cheek, joins with the facial.

The sphenopalatine branches, two in number, descend to the sphenopalatine ganglion.

The posterior dental branches arise from the trunk of the nerve just as it is about to enter the infraorbital canal; they are two in number, posterior and anterior.

The posterior branch passes from behind forwards in the substance of the superior maxillary bone, and joins opposite the canine fossa with the anterior dental. Numerous filamentes are given off from the lower border of this nerve, which form a minute plexus in the outer wall of the superior maxillary bone, immediately above the alveoli. From this plexus filamentes are distributed to the pulps of the molar and second bicuspid teeth, the lining membrane of the antrum, and corresponding portion of the gums.

The anterior branch is distributed to the gums and Buccinator muscle.

The anterior dental, of large size, is given off from the superior maxillary nerve just before its exit from the infraorbital foramen; it enters a special canal in the anterior wall of the antrum, and anastomoses with the posterior dental. From this nerve some filamentes are distributed to the incisor, canine, and first bicuspid teeth; others are lost upon the lining membrane covering the fore part of the inferior meatus. In this situation it forms a communication with a nasal branch from Meckel's ganglion called the ganglion of Bochdalek.

The palpebral branches pass upwards beneath the Orbicularia palpebrarum. They supply this muscle, the integument, and conjunctiva of the lower eyelid with sensation, joining at the outer angle of the orbit with the facial nerve and maxilipal branch of the orbital.

The nasal branches pass inwards; they supply the muscles and integument of the side of the nose, and join with the nasal branch of the ophthalmic.

The labial branches, the largest and most numerous, descend beneath the Levator labii superioris, and are distributed to the integument and muscles of the upper lip, the mucous membrane of the mouth, and labial glands.

All these branches are joined, immediately beneath the orbit, by filamentes from the facial nerve, forming an intricate plexus, the infraorbital.

Spheno-palatine Ganglion. (Fig. 376.)

The Spheno-palatine Ganglion (Meckel's), the largest of the cranial ganglia, is deeply placed in the sphenomaxillary fossa, close to the sphenopalatine foramen. It is triangular or heart-shaped, of a reddish-gray color, and placed mainly behind the palatine branches of the superior maxillary nerve, at the point where the sympathetic root joins the ganglion. It consequently does not involve those nerves which pass to the palate and nose. Like the other ganglia of the fifth nerve, it possesses a motor, a sensory, and a sympathetic root. Its motor root is derived from the facial, through the Vidian; its sensory root from the fifth; and its sympathetic root from the carotid plexus, through the Vidian. Its branches are divisible into four groups: ascending, which pass to the orbit; descending to the palate; internal to the nose; and posterior branches, to the pharynx.

The ascending branches are two or three delicate filamentes, which enter the orbit by the sphenomaxillary fissure, and supply the periosteum. Arnold describes and delineates these branches as ascending to the optic nerve; one, to the sixth nerve (Böck); and one to the ophthalmic ganglion (Tiedemann).

The descending or palatine branches are distributed to the roof of the mouth, the soft palate, tonsil, and lining membrane of the nose. They are almost a direct continuation of the sphenopalatine branches of the superior maxillary nerve, and are three in number: anterior, middle, and posterior.

The anterior, or large palatine nerve, descends through the posterior palatine
canal, emerges upon the hard palate, at the posterior palatine foramen, and passes forwards through a groove in the hard palate, nearly as far as the incisor teeth. It supplies the gums, the mucous membrane and glands of the hard palate, and communicates in front with the termination of the naso-palatine nerve. While in the posterior palatine canal, it gives off inferior nasal branches, which enter the nose through openings in the palate bone, and ramify over the middle meatus, and the middle and inferior spongy bones; and at its exit from the canal, a palatine branch is distributed to both surfaces of the soft palate.

The middle, or external palatine nerve, descends in the same canal as the preceding, to the posterior palatine foramen, distributing branches to the uvula, tonsil, and soft palate. It is occasionally wanting.

The posterior, or small palatine nerve, descends with a small artery through the small posterior palatine canal, emerging by a separate opening behind the posterior palatine foramen. It supplies the Levator palati and Azygos uvulae muscles, the soft palate, tonsil, and uvula.

Fig. 376.—The Spheno-palatine Ganglion and its Branches.

The internal branches are distributed to the septum, and outer wall of the nasal fossae. They are the superior nasal (anterior), and the naso-palatine.

The superior nasal branches (anterior), four or five in number, enter the back part of the nasal fossa by the spheno-palatine foramen. They supply the mucous membrane covering the superior and middle spongy bones, and that lining the posterior ethmoidal cells, a few being prolonged to the upper and back part of the septum. One of these branches (the posterior) is continued on to the outer wall of the antrum, and there forms a communication with the anterior dental nerve. At the point of communication a swelling exists, denominated “the ganglion of Bochdalek,” the nature of which seems however uncertain.

The naso-palatine nerve (Cotunnius) enters the nasal fossa with the other nasal nerves, and passes inwards across the roof of the nose, below the orifice of the sphenoidal sinus, to reach the septum; it then runs obliquely downwards and forwards along the lower part of the septum, to the anterior palatine fora-
CRANIAL NERVES.

men, lying between the periosteum and mucous membrane. It descends to the roof of the mouth by a distinct canal, which opens below in the anterior pala-
tine fossa; the right nerve, also in a separate canal, being posterior to the left one. In the mouth, they become united, supply the mucous membrane behind the incisor teeth, and join with the anterior palatine nerve. The naso-palatine nerve occasionally furnishes a few small filaments to the mucous membrane of the septum.

The posterior branches are the Vidian and pharyngeal (pterygo-palatine).

The Vidian nerve, if traced from Meckel's ganglion, may be said to arise from the back part of the sphenopalatine ganglion, and then passes through the Vidian canal, enters the cartilage filling in the foramen lacerum basis cranii, and divides into two branches, the large petrosal and the carotid. In its course along the Vidian canal, it distributes a few filaments to the lining membrane at the back part of the roof of the nose and septum, and that covering the end of the Eustachian tube. These are upper posterior nasal branches.

The large petrosal branch (nervus petrosus superficialis major) enters the cranium through the foramen lacerum basis cranii, having pierced the cartilaginous substance which fills in this aperture. It runs beneath the Casserian ganglion and dura mater contained in a groove in the anterior surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, enters the hiatus Fallopii, and, being continued through it into the aquaeductus Fallopii, joins the gangliform enlargement on the facial nerve. Properly speaking, this nerve passes from the facial to the sphenopalatine ganglion, forming its motor root.

The carotid branch is shorter, but larger than the petrosal, of a reddish-gray color and soft in texture. It crosses the foramen lacerum surrounded by the cartilaginous substance which fills in that aperture, and enters the carotid canal on the outer side of the carotid artery, to join the carotid plexus.

This description of the Vidian nerve as a branch from the ganglion, is the more convenient anatomically, inasmuch as the nerve is generally dissected from the ganglion, as a single trunk dividing into two branches. But it is more correct, physiologically, to describe the Vidian as being formed by the union of the two branches (great petrosal and carotid) from the facial and the sympathetic, and as running into the ganglion. The filaments, which are described above as given off from the Vidian nerve, would then be regarded as branches from the ganglion which are merely inclosed in the same sheath as the Vidian.

The pharyngeal nerve (pterygo-palatine) is a small branch arising from the back part of the ganglion, occasionally together with the Vidian nerve. It passes through the pterygo-palatine canal with the pterygo-palatine artery, and is distributed to the lining membrane of the pharynx, behind the Eustachian tube.

INFERIOR MAXILLARY NERVE. (Fig. 375.)

The Inferior Maxillary Nerve distributes branches to the teeth and gums of the lower jaw, the integument of the temple and external ear, the lower part of the face and lower lip, and the muscles of mastication: it also supplies the tongue with one of its special nerves of the sense of taste. It is the largest of the three divisions of the fifth, and consists of two portions, the large or sensory root proceeding from the inferior angle of the Casserian ganglion; and the small or motor root, which passes beneath the ganglion, and unites with the inferior maxillary nerve, just after its exit through the foramen ovale. Immediately beneath the base of the skull, this nerve divides into two trunks, anterior and posterior.

The anterior and smaller division, which receives nearly the whole of the motor root, divides into branches, which supply the muscles of mastication. They are the masseteric, deep temporal, buccal, and two pterygoid.

1 It is doubtful whether the buccal branch conveys only sensory power to the buccinator, or motor influence likewise.
The **masseteric branch** passes outwards, above the External pterygoid muscle, in front of the temporo-maxillary articulation, and crosses the sigmoid notch, with the masseteric artery, to the Masseter muscle, in which it ramifies nearly as far as its anterior border. It occasionally gives a branch to the Temporal muscle, and a filament to the articulation of the jaw.

The **deep temporal branches**, two in number, anterior and posterior, supply the deep surface of the Temporal muscle. The **posterior branch**, of small size, is placed at the back of the temporal fossa. It is sometimes joined with the masseteric branch. The **anterior branch** is reflected upwards, at the pterygoid ridge of the sphenoid, to the front of the temporal fossa. It is occasionally joined with the buccal nerve.

The **buccal branch** pierces the External pterygoid, and passes downwards beneath the inner surface of the coronoid process of the lower jaw, or through the fibres of the Temporal muscle to reach the surface of the Buccinator, upon which it divides into a superior and an inferior branch. It gives a branch to the External pterygoid during its passage through that muscle, and a few ascending filaments to the Temporal muscle, one of which occasionally joins with the anterior branch of the deep temporal nerve. The **upper branch** supplies the integument and upper part of the Buccinator muscle, joining with the facial nerve round the facial vein. The **lower branch** passes forwards to the angle of the mouth; it supplies the integument and Buccinator muscle, as well as the mucous membrane lining the inner surface of that muscle, and joins the facial nerve.

The **pterygoid branches** are two in number, one for each pterygoid muscle. The **branch of the Internal pterygoid** is long and slender, and passes inwards to enter the deep surface of the muscle. This nerve is intimately connected at its origin with the otic ganglion. The **branch of the External pterygoid** is most frequently derived from the buccal, but it may be given off separately from the anterior trunk of the nerve.

The posterior and larger division of the inferior maxillary nerve also receives a few filaments from the motor root. It divides into three branches: auriculo-temporal, gustatory, and inferior dental.

The **Auriculo-temporal Nerve** generally arises by two roots, between which the middle meningeal artery passes. It runs backwards beneath the External pterygoid muscle to the inner side of the articulation of the lower jaw. It then turns upwards with the temporal artery, between the external ear and condyle of the jaw, under cover of the parotid gland, and escaping from beneath this structure, divides into two temporal branches. The **posterior temporal**, the smaller of the two, is distributed to the upper part of the pinna and the neighboring tissues. The **anterior temporal** accompanies the temporal artery to the vertex of the skull, and supplies the integument of the temporal region communicating with the facial nerve.

The auriculo-temporal nerve has **branches of communication** with the facial and otic ganglion. Those joining the facial nerve, usually two in number, pass forwards behind the neck of the condyle of the jaw, and join this nerve at the posterior border of the Masseter muscle. They form one of the principal branches of communication between the facial and the fifth nerve. The filaments of communication with the otic ganglion are derived from the commencement of the auriculo-temporal nerve.

The **auricular branches** are two in number, inferior and superior. The **inferior auricular** arises behind the articulation of the jaw, and is distributed to the ear below the external meatus; other filaments twine round the internal maxillary artery, and communicate with the sympathetic. The **superior auricular** arises in front of the external ear, and supplies the integument covering the tragus and pinna.

**Branches to the meatus auditorius**, two in number, arise from the point of com-
munication between the auriculo-temporal and facial nerves, and are distributed to the meatus.

The *branch to the temporo-maxillary articulation* is usually derived from the auriculo-temporal nerve.

The *parotid branches* supply the parotid gland.

The *Gustatory or Lingual Nerve*, one of the special nerves of the sense of taste, supplies the papillae and mucous membrane of the tongue. It is deeply placed throughout the whole of its course. It lies at first beneath the External pterygoid muscle, together with the inferior dental nerve, being placed to the inner side of the latter nerve, and is occasionally joined to it by a branch which crosses the internal maxillary artery. The chorda tympani also joins it at an acute angle in this situation. The nerve then passes between the Internal pterygoid muscle and the inner side of the ramus of the jaw, and crosses obliquely to the side of the tongue over the Superior constrictor muscle of the pharynx, and beneath the Stylo-glossus muscle and deep part of the submaxillary gland; the nerve lastly runs across Wharton's duct, and along the side of the tongue to its apex, being covered by the mucous membrane of the mouth.

Its *branches of communication* are with the submaxillary ganglion and hypoglossal nerve. The branches to the submaxillary ganglion are two or three in number; those connected with the hypoglossal nerve form a plexus at the anterior margin of the Hyo-glossus muscle.

Its *branches of distribution* are few in number. They supply the mucous membrane of the mouth, the gums, the sublingual gland, the conical and fungiform papillae and mucous membrane of the tongue, the terminal filaments anastomosing at the tip of the tongue with the hypoglossal nerve.

The *Inferior Dental* is the largest of the three branches of the inferior maxillary nerve. It passes downwards with the inferior dental artery, at first beneath the External pterygoid muscle, and then between the internal lateral ligament and the ramus of the jaw to the dental foramen. It then passes forwards in the dental canal of the inferior maxillary bone, lying beneath the teeth as far as the mental foramen, where it divides into two terminal branches, incisor and mental. The *incisor branch* is continued onwards within the bone to the middle line, and supplies the canine and incisor teeth. The *mental branch* emerges from the bone at the mental foramen, and divides beneath the Depressor anguli oris into an external branch, which supplies that muscle, the Orbicularis oris, and the integument, communicating with the facial nerve; and an inner branch, which ascends to the lower lip beneath the Quadratus menti; it supplies that muscle and the mucous membrane and integument of the lip, communicating with the facial nerve.*

The branches of the inferior dental are, the mylo-hyoid, and dental.

The *mylo-hyoid* is derived from the inferior dental just as that nerve is about to enter the dental foramen. It descends in a groove on the inner surface of the ramus of the jaw, in which it is retained by a process of fibrous membrane. It supplies the cutaneous surface of the Mylo-hyoid muscle, and the anterior belly of the Digastric, occasionally sending one or two filaments to the submaxillary gland.

The *dental branches* supply the molar and bicuspid teeth. They correspond in number to the fangs of those teeth: each nerve entering the orifice at the point of the fang, and supplying the pulp of the tooth.

Two small ganglia are connected with the inferior maxillary nerve: the otic, with the trunk of the nerve; and the submaxillary, with its lingual branch, the gustatory.

**Otic Ganglion.** (Fig. 377.)

The Otic Ganglion (Arnold's) is a small, oval-shaped, flattened ganglion of a reddish-gray color, situated immediately below the foramen ovale, on the inner surface of the inferior maxillary nerve, and round the origin of the internal
pterigoid nerve. It is in relation, externally, with the trunk of the inferior maxillary nerve, at the point where the motor root joins the sensory portion; internally, with the cartilaginous part of the Eustachian tube, and the origin of the Tensor palati muscle; behind it, is the middle meningeal artery.

Fig. 377.—The Otic Ganglion and its Branches.

Branches of communication. This ganglion is connected with the inferior maxillary nerve, and its internal pterygoid branch, by two or three short, delicate filaments, and also with the auriculo-temporal nerve; from the former it obtains its motor, from the latter, its sensory root; its communication with the sympathetic being effected by a filament from the plexus surrounding the middle meningeal artery. This ganglion also communicates with the glossopharyngeal and facial nerves, through the small petrosal nerve continued from the tympanic plexus.

Its branches of distribution are a filament to the Tensor tympani, and one to the Tensor palati. The former passes backwards, on the outer side of the Eustachian tube; the latter arises from the ganglion, near the origin of the internal pterygoid nerve, and passes forwards.

Submaxillary Ganglion. (Fig. 375.)

The Submaxillary Ganglion is of small size, circular in form, and situated above the deep portion of the submaxillary gland, near the posterior border of the Mylo-hyoid muscle, being connected by filaments with the lower border of the gustatory nerve.

Branches of communication. This ganglion is connected with the gustatory nerve by a few filaments which join it separately, at its fore and back part. It also receives a branch from the chorda tympani, by which it communicates with the facial; and communicates with the sympathetic by filaments from the nervi molles—the sympathetic plexus around the facial artery.

Branches of distribution. These are five or six in number; they arise from the lower part of the ganglion, and supply the mucous membrane of the mouth and Wharton’s duct, some being lost in the submaxillary gland. According to Meckel, a branch from this ganglion occasionally descends in front of the Hyoglossus muscle, and, after joining with one from the hypoglossal, passes to the Genio-hyo-glossus muscle.
Eighth Pair.

The Eighth Pair consists of three nerves, the glosso-pharyngeal, pneumogastric, and spinal accessory.

The GLOSSO-PHARYNGEAL NERVE is distributed, as its name implies, to the tongue and pharynx, being the nerve of sensation to the mucous membrane of the pharynx, fauces, and tonsil; of motion to the Pharyngeal muscles; and a special nerve of taste in all the parts of the tongue to which it is distributed. It is the smallest of the three divisions of the eighth pair, and arises by three or four filaments, closely connected together, from the upper part of the medulla oblongata, immediately behind the olivary body.

Its deep origin may be traced through the fasciculi of the lateral tract, to a nucleus of gray matter at the lower part of the floor of the fourth ventricle external to the fasciculi teretes. From its superficial origin, it passes outwards across the flocculus, and leaves the skull at the central part of the jugular foramen, in a separate sheath of the dura mater and arachnoid, in front of the pneumogastric and spinal accessory nerves. In its passage through the jugular foramen, it grooves the lower border of the petrous portion of the temporal bone; and, at its exit from the skull, passes forwards between the jugular vein and internal carotid artery, and descends in front of the latter vessel, and
beneath the styloid process and the muscles connected with it, to the lower border of the Stylo-pharyngeus. The nerve now curves inwards, forming an arch on the side of the neck, and lying upon the Stylo-pharyngeus and the Middle constrictor of the pharynx, above the superior laryngeal nerve. It then passes beneath the Hyo-glossus, and is finally distributed to the mucous membrane of the fauces, and base of the tongue, the mucous glands of the mouth and tonsil.

In passing through the jugular foramen, the nerve presents, in succession, two gangliform enlargements. The superior, the smaller, is called the jugular ganglion, the inferior and larger, the petrous ganglion, or the ganglion of Andersch.

The superior, or jugular gangion, is situated in the upper part of the groove in which the nerve is lodged during its passage through the jugular foramen. It is of very small size, and involves only the outer side of the trunk of the nerve, a small fasciculus passing beyond it, which is not connected directly with it.

The inferior, or petrous ganglion, is situated in a depression in the lower border of the petrous portion of the temporal bone; it is larger than the former, and involves the whole of the fibres of the nerve. From this ganglion arise those filaments which connect the glossopharyngeal with other nerves at the base of the skull.

Its branches of communication are with the pneumogastric, sympathetic, and facial, and the tympanic branch.

The branches to the pneumogastric are two filaments, one to its auricular branch, and one to the upper ganglion of the pneumogastric.

The branch to the sympathetic is connected with the superior cervical gangion.

The branch of communication with the facial perforates the posterior belly of the Digastric. It arises from the trunk of the nerve below the petrous ganglion, and joins the facial just after its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen.

The tympanic branch (Jacobson's nerve) arises from the petrous ganglion, and enters a small bony canal in the lower surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone; the lower opening of which is situated on the bony ridge which separates the carotid canal from the jugular fossa. Jacobson's nerve ascends to the tympanum, enters that cavity by an aperture in its floor close to the inner wall, and divides into three branches, which are contained in grooves upon the surface of the promontory.

Its branches of distribution are, one to the fenestra rotunda, one to the fenestra ovalis, and one to the lining membrane of the Eustachian tube and tympanum. Its branches of communication are three, and occupy separate grooves on the surface of the promontory. One of these arches forwards and downwards to the carotid canal to join the carotid plexus. A second runs vertically upwards to join the greater superficial petrosal nerve, as it lies in the hiatus Fallopian. The third branch, the lesser petrosal, runs upwards and forwards towards the anterior surface of the petrous bone, and passes through a small aperture in the sphenoid and temporal bones, or through the foramen ovale, to the exterior of the skull, where it joins the otic ganglion. This nerve, in its course through the temporal bone, passes by the ganglionic enlargement of the facial, and has a connecting filament with it.

The branches of the glossopharyngeal nerve are the carotid, pharyngeal, muscular, tonsillar, and lingual.

The carotid branches descend along the trunk of the internal carotid artery as far as its point of bifurcation, communicating with the pharyngeal branch of the pneumogastric, and with branches of the sympathetic.

The pharyngeal branches are three or four filaments which unite opposite the Middle constrictor of the pharynx with the pharyngeal branches of the pneumogastric, the external laryngeal, and sympathetic nerves, to form the pharyngeal
plexus, branches from which perforate the muscular coat of the pharynx to supply the mucous membrane.

The muscular branches are distributed to the Stylo-pharyngeus.

The tonsillar branches supply the tonsil, forming a plexus (circularis tonsillaris) around this body, from which branches are distributed to the soft palate and fauces, where they anastomose with the palatine nerves.

The lingual branches are two in number; one supplies the mucous membrane covering the surface of the base of the tongue, the other perforates its substance, and supplies the mucous membrane and papille of the side of the organ.

The Spinal Accessory Nerve consists of two parts: one, the accessory part to the vagus, and the other the spinal portion.

The accessory part, the smaller of the two, arises by four or five delicate filaments from the lateral tract of the cord below the roots of the vagus; these filaments may be traced to a nucleus of gray matter at the back of the medulla, below the origin of the vagus. It joins, in the jugular foramen, with the upper ganglion of the vagus by one or two filaments, and is continued into the vagus below the second ganglion. It gives branches to the pharyngeal and superior laryngeal branches of the vagus.

The spinal portion, firm in texture, arises by several filaments from the lateral tract of the cord, as low down as the sixth cervical nerve; the fibres pierce the tract, and are connected with the anterior horn of the gray matter of the cord. This portion of the nerve ascends between the ligamentum denticulatum and the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, enters the skull through the foramen magnum, and it is then directed outwards to the jugular foramen, through which it passes, lying in the same sheath as the pneumogastric, separated from it by a fold of the arachnoid, and is here connected with the accessory portion. At its exit from the jugular foramen, it passes backwards behind the internal jugular vein, and descends obliquely behind the Digastric and stylo-hyoid muscles to the upper part of the Sterno-mastoid. It pierces that muscle, and passes obliquely across the suboccipital triangle, to terminate in the deep surface of the Trapezius. This nerve gives several branches to the Sterno-mastoid during its passage through it, and joins in its substance with branches from the third cervical. In the suboccipital triangle it joins with the second and third cervical nerves, and assists in the formation of the cervical plexus, and occasionally of the great auricular nerve. On the front of the Trapezius, it is reinforced by branches from the third, fourth, and fifth cervical nerves, joins with the posterior branches of the spinal nerves; and is distributed to the Trapezius, some filaments ascending and others descending in the substance of the muscle as far as its inferior angle.

The Pneumogastric Nerve (nervus vagus or par vagum), one of the three divisions of the eighth pair, has a more extensive distribution than any of the other cranial nerves, passing through the neck and thorax to the upper part of the abdomen. It is composed of both motor and sensitive filaments. It supplies the organs of voice and respiration with motor and sensitive fibres; and the pharynx, oesophagus, stomach, and heart with motor influence. Its superficial origin is by eight or ten filaments from the lateral tract immediately behind the olivary body and below the glosso-pharyngeal; its fibres may, however, be traced deeply through the fasciculi of the medulla, to terminate in a gray nucleus near the lower part of the floor of the fourth ventricle. The filaments become united, and form a flat cord, which passes outwards across the flocculus to the jugular foramen, through which it emerges from the cranium. In passing through this opening, the pneumogastric accompanies the spinal accessory, being contained in the same sheath of dura mater with it, a membranous septum separating it from the glosso-pharyngeal, which lies in front. The nerve in this situation presents a well-marked ganglionic enlargement, which is called ganglion jugulare, or the ganglion of the root of the pneumogastric; to it the accessory part of the spinal accessory nerve is connected. After the exit
of the nerve from the jugular foramen, a second ganglioform swelling is formed upon it, called the ganglion inferior, or the ganglion of the trunk of the nerve; below which it is again joined by filaments from the accessory nerve. The nerve passes vertically down the neck within the sheath of the carotid vessels, lying between the internal carotid artery and internal jugular vein as far as the thyroid cartilage, and then between the same vein and the common carotid to the root of the neck. Here the course of the nerve becomes different on the two sides of the body.

On the right side, the nerve passes across the subclavian artery between it and the subclavian vein, and descends by the side of the trachea to the back part of the root of the lung, where it spreads out in a plexiform network (posterior pulmonary), from the lower part of which two cords descend upon the oesophagus, on which they divide, forming, with branches from the opposite nerve, the oesophageal plexus; below, these branches are collected into a single cord, which runs along the back part of the oesophagus, enters the abdomen, and is distributed to the posterior surface of the stomach, joining the left side of the coeliac plexus, and the splenic plexus.

On the left side, the pneumogastric nerve enters the chest between the left carotid and subclavian arteries, behind the left innominate vein. It crosses the arch of the aorta, and descends behind the root of the left lung and along the anterior surface of the oesophagus to the stomach, distributing branches over its anterior surface, some extending over the great cul-de-sac, and others along the lesser curvature. Filaments from these latter branches enter the gastro-hepatic omentum, and join the left hepatic plexus.

The ganglion of the root is of a grayish color, circular in form, about two lines in diameter, and resembles the ganglion on the large root of the fifth nerve.

Connecting branches. To this ganglion the accessory portion of the spinal accessory nerve is connected by several delicate filaments; it also has an anastomotic twig with the petrous ganglion of the glossopharyngeal, with the facial nerve by means of the auricular branch, and with the sympathetic by means of an ascending filament from the superior cervical ganglion.

The ganglion of the trunk (inferior) is a plexiform cord, cylindrical in form, of a reddish color, and about an inch in length; it involves the whole of the fibres of the nerve, except the portion of the nerve derived from the spinal accessory, which blends with the nerve beyond the ganglion.

Connecting branches. This ganglion is connected with the hypoglossal, the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, and the loop between the first and second cervical nerves.

The branches of the pneumogastric are—

- In the jugular fossa. . . . . Auricular.
  - Pharyngeal.
  - Superior laryngeal.
  - Recurrent laryngeal.
  - Cervical cardiac.
  - Thoracic cardiac.

- In the thorax. . . . . Anterior pulmonary.
  - Posterior pulmonary.
  - Oesophageal.
  - Gastric.

The auricular branch (Arnold's) arises from the ganglion of the root, and is joined soon after its origin by a filament from the glossopharyngeal: it crosses the jugular fossa to an opening near the root of the styloid process. Traversing the substance of the temporal bone, it crosses the aqueductus Fallopii about two lines above its termination at the stylo-mastoid foramen; it here gives off an ascending branch, which joins the facial, and a descending branch, which anastomoses with the posterior auricular branch of the same nerve: the con-
tinuation of the nerve reaches the surface between the mastoid process and the external auditory meatus, supplies the integument at the back part of the pinna, and communicates with the branches of the auricularis magnus.

The pharyngeal branch, the principal motor nerve of the pharynx and soft palate, arises from the upper part of the inferior ganglion of the pneumogastric, receiving a filament from the accessory portion of the spinal accessory; it passes across the internal carotid artery (in front or behind), to the upper border of the Middle constrictor, where it divides into numerous filaments, which anastomose with those from the glossopharyngeal, superior laryngeal, and sympathetic, to form the pharyngeal plexus, from which branches are distributed to the muscles and mucous membrane of the pharynx. As this nerve crosses the internal carotid, some filaments are distributed, together with those from the glossopharyngeal, upon the wall of this vessel.

The superior laryngeal is the nerve of sensation to the larynx. It is larger than the preceding, and arises from the middle of the inferior ganglion of the pneumogastric. It descends, by the side of the pharynx, behind the internal carotid, where it divides into two branches, the external and internal laryngeal.

The external laryngeal branch, the smaller, descends by the side of the larynx, beneath the Sterno-thyroid, to supply the Crico-thyroid muscle and the thyroid gland. It gives branches to the pharyngeal plexus, and the Inferior constrictor, and communicates with the superior cardiac nerve, behind the common carotid.

The internal laryngeal branch descends to the opening in the thyro-hyoid membrane, through which it passes with the superior laryngeal artery, and is distributed to the mucous membrane of the larynx, and the Arytenoid muscle, anastomosing with the recurrent laryngeal.

The branches to the mucous membrane are distributed, some in front to the epiglottis, the base of the tongue and the epiglottidean glands; while others pass backwards, in the aryteno-epiglottidean fold, to supply the mucous membrane surrounding the superior orifice of the larynx, as well as the membrane which lines the cavity of the larynx as low down as the vocal cord.

The filament to the Arytenoid muscle is distributed partly to it, and partly to the mucous lining of the larynx.

The filament which joins with the recurrent laryngeal descends beneath the mucous membrane on the posterior surface of the larynx, behind the lateral part of the thyroid cartilage, where the two nerves become united.

The inferior or recurrent laryngeal, so called from its reflected course, is the motor nerve of the larynx. It arises on the right side, in front of the subclavian artery; winds from before backwards round that vessel, and ascends obliquely to the side of the trachea, behind the common carotid and inferior thyroid arteries. On the left side, it arises in front of the arch of the aorta and winds from before backwards round the aorta at the point where the obliterated remains of the ductus arteriosus are connected with it, and then ascends to the side of the trachea. The nerves on both sides ascend in the groove between the trachea and oesophagus, and, passing under the lower border of the Inferior constrictor muscle, enter the larynx behind the articulation of the inferior cornu of the thyroid cartilage with the cricoid, being distributed to all the muscles of the larynx, excepting the Crico-thyroid, and joining with the superior laryngeal.

The recurrent laryngeal, as it winds round the subclavian artery and aorta, gives off several cardiac filaments, which unite with the cardiac branches from the pneumogastric and sympathetic. As it ascends in the neck, it gives off oesophageal branches, more numerous on the left than on the right side, which supply the mucous membrane and muscular coat of the oesophagus; tracheal branches to the mucous membrane and muscular fibres of the trachea; and some pharyngeal filaments to the Inferior constrictor of the pharynx.

The cervical cardiac branches, two or three in number, arise from the pneumogastric, at the upper and lower part of the neck.
The superior branches are small, and communicate with the cardiac branches of the sympathetic, and with the great cardiac plexus.

The inferior cardiac branches, one on each side, arise at the lower part of the neck, just above the first rib. On the right side, this branch passes in front of the arteria innominata, and anastomoses with the superior cardiac nerve. On the left side, it passes in front of the arch of the aorta, and anastomoses either with the superior cardiac nerve, or with the cardiac plexus.

The thoracic cardiac branches, on the right side, arise from the trunk of the pneumogastric, as it lies by the side of the trachea: passing inwards, they terminate in the deep cardiac plexus. On the left side they arise from the left recurrent laryngeal nerve.

The anterior pulmonary branches, two or three in number, and of small size, are distributed on the anterior aspect of the root of the lungs. They join with filaments from the sympathetic, and form the anterior pulmonary plexus.

The posterior pulmonary branches, more numerous and larger than the anterior, are distributed on the posterior aspect of the root of the lung: they are joined by filaments from the third and fourth thoracic ganglia of the sympathetic, and form the posterior pulmonary plexus. Branches from both plexuses accompany the ramifications of the air-tubes through the substance of the lungs.

The cesophageal branches are given off from the pneumogastric both above and below the pulmonary branches. The lower are more numerous and larger than the upper. They form, together with branches from the opposite nerve, the cesophageal plexus.

The gastric branches are the terminal filaments of the pneumogastric nerve. The nerve on the right side is distributed to the posterior surface of the stomach, and joins the left side of the celiac plexus and the splenic plexus. The nerve on the left side is distributed over the anterior surface of the stomach, some filaments passing across the great cul-de-sac, and others along the lesser curvature. They unite with branches of the right nerve and sympathetic, some filaments passing through the lesser omentum to the left hepatic plexus.

For the following brief account of the most recent views relating to the origin of the cranial nerves, the editor is indebted to his friend Dr. Lockhart Clarke.

The third cerebral nerve arises chiefly from two large masses of gray substance at the floor of the iter et tertio ad quartum ventriculum beneath the corpora quadrigemina.

The fourth arises from two nuclei at the floor of the iter et tertio ad quartum ventriculum, and from the valve of Vieuussens, where the opposite nerves decussate with each other.

The large root of the fifth or trigeminal arises chiefly from the gray tubercles of Rolando, or the upper expanded extremities of the posterior gray horns of the spinal cord; the small or motor root arises from two masses, of large multipo lar cells situated each on the inner side, and close to the gray tubercle, and intimately connected with it.

The sixth nerve arises in common with the facial from the gray substance of the fasciculus teres on the floor of the fourth ventricle.

The facial nerve has two origins: 1. From the gray substance of the fasciculus teres on the floor of the fourth ventricle. 2. From the nucleus of the motor root of the trigeminal; between these two origins it forms a loop along the floor of the ventricle.

The auditory nerve has three origins: 1. From the superior vermiform process of the cerebellum. 2 and 3. From the inner and outer auditory nuclei formed chiefly by the gray substance of the posterior pyramid and restiform body.

The vagus and glosso-pharyngeal nerves have each two origins: 1. From a special nucleus in the floor of the fourth ventricle. 2. From the anterior or motor part of the medulla.
The spinal accessory nerve has three origins: 1. The lower roots from the anterior gray horn of the spinal cord in common with the motor roots of the cervical nerves. 2. From the gray nucleus of the hypoglossal nerve. 3. From a special nucleus behind the central canal of the medulla oblongata.

For further information on the origin of these nerves, and on the connection between their several nuclei, see Dr. Lockhart Clarke's memoir "On the Intimate Structure of the Brain," 1st and 2d Ser. Phil. Trans., 1858 and 1868.

For fuller detail concerning the Cranial Nerves, the student may refer to F. Arnold's "Icones Nervorum Capitis," and to the other authors referred to on page 636.
The Spinal Nerves.

The Spinal Nerves are so called, because they take their origin from the spinal cord, and are transmitted through the intervertebral foramina on either side of the spinal column. There are thirty-one pairs of spinal nerves, which are arranged into the following groups, corresponding to the region of the spine through which they pass:

- Cervical: 8 pairs
- Dorsal: 12
- Lumbar: 5
- Sacral: 5
- Coccygeal: 1

It will be observed, that each group of nerves corresponds in number with the vertebrae in that region, except the cervical and coccygeal.

Each spinal nerve arises by two roots, an anterior, or motor root, and a posterior, or sensory root.

Roots of the Spinal Nerves.

The anterior roots arise somewhat irregularly from a linear series of foramina, on the antero-lateral column of the spinal cord, gradually approaching towards the anterior median fissure as they descend.

The fibres of the anterior roots, according to the researches of Dr. Lockhart Clarke, are attached to the anterior part of the antero-lateral column; and, after penetrating horizontally through the longitudinal fibres of this tract, enter the gray substance, where their fibrils cross each other and diverge in all directions, like the expanded hairs of a brush, some of them running more or less longitudinally upwards and downwards, and others decussating with those of the opposite side through the anterior commissure in front of the central canal. Kölliker states that many fibres of the anterior root enter the lateral column of the same side, where, turning upwards, they pursue their course as longitudinal fibres. In other respects, the description of the origin of the anterior roots by these observers is very similar.

The posterior roots are all attached immediately to the posterior white columns only; but some of them pass through the gray substance into both the lateral and anterior white columns. Within the gray substance, they run, longitudinally, upwards and downwards, transversely, through the posterior commissure to the opposite side, and into the anterior column of their own side.

The posterior roots of the nerves are larger, but the individual filaments are finer and more delicate than those of the anterior. As their component fibrils pass outwards, towards the aperture in the dura mater, they coalesce into two bundles, receive a tubular sheath from that membrane, and enter the ganglion which is developed upon each root.

The posterior root of the first cervical nerve forms an exception to these characters. It is smaller than the anterior, has frequently no ganglion developed upon it, and, when the ganglion exists, it is often situated within the dura mater.

The anterior roots are the smaller of the two, devoid of any ganglionic enlargement, and their component fibrils are collected into two bundles, near the intervertebral foramina.
Ganglia of the Spinal Nerves.

A ganglion is developed upon the posterior root of each of the spinal nerves. These ganglia are of an oval form, and of a reddish color; they bear a proportion in size to the nerves upon which they are formed, and are placed in the intervertebral foramina, external to the point where the nerves perforate the dura mater. Each ganglion is bifid internally, where it is joined by the two bundles of the posterior root, the two portions being united into a single mass externally. The ganglia upon the first and second cervical nerves form an exception to these characters, being placed on the arches of the vertebrae over which the nerves pass. The ganglia, also, of the sacral nerves are placed within the spinal canal; and that on the coccygeal nerve, also in the canal about the middle of its posterior root. Immediately beyond the ganglion, the two roots coalesce, their fibres intermingle, and the trunk thus formed passes out of the intervertebral foramen, and divides into an anterior branch, for the supply of the anterior part of the body; and a posterior branch for the posterior part, each branch containing fibres from both roots.

Anterior Branches of the Spinal Nerves.

The anterior branches of the spinal nerves supply the parts of the body in front of the spine, including the limbs. They are for the most part larger than the posterior branches; this increase of size being proportioned to the larger extent of structures they are required to supply. Each branch is connected by slender filaments with the sympathetic. In the dorsal region, the anterior branches of the spinal nerves are completely separate from each other, and are uniform in their distribution; but in the cervical, lumbar, and sacral regions, they form intricate plexuses previous to their distribution.

Posterior Branches of the Spinal Nerves.

The posterior branches of the spinal nerves are generally smaller than the anterior: they arise from the trunk resulting from the union of the roots, in the intervertebral foramina; and, passing backwards, divide into external and internal branches, which are distributed to the muscles and integument behind the spine. The first cervical and lower sacral nerves are exceptions to these characters.

Cervical Nerves.

The roots of the cervical nerves increase in size from the first to the fifth, and then maintain the same size to the eighth. The posterior roots bear a proportion to the anterior as 3 to 1, which is much greater than in any other region, the individual filaments being also much larger than those of the anterior roots. In direction, the roots of the cervical are less oblique than those of the other spinal nerves. The first cervical nerve is directed a little upwards and outwards; the second is horizontal; the others are directed obliquely downwards and outwards, the lowest being the most oblique, and consequently longer than the upper, the distance between their place of origin and their point of exit from the spinal canal never exceeding the depth of one vertebra.

The trunk of the first cervical nerve (suboccipital) leaves the spinal canal, between the occipital bone and the posterior arch of the atlas; the second, between the posterior arch of the atlas and the lamina of the axis; and the eighth (the last), between the last cervical and first dorsal vertebra.

Each nerve, at its exit from the intervertebral foramen, divides into an anterior and a posterior branch. The anterior branches of the four upper cervical nerves form the cervical plexus. The anterior branches of the four lower cervical nerves, together with the first dorsal, form the brachial plexus.
ANANTERIAL BRANCHES OF THE CERVICAL NERVES.

The anterior branch of the first, or suboccipital nerve, is of small size. It escapes from the spinal canal, through a groove upon the posterior arch of the atlas. In this groove it lies beneath the vertebral artery, to the inner side of the Rectus capitis lateralis. As it crosses the foramen in the transverse process of the atlas, it receives a filament from the sympathetic. It then descends, in front of this process, to communicate with an ascending branch from the second cervical nerve.

Communicating filaments from this nerve join the pneumogastric, the hypoglossal and sympathetic, and some branches are distributed to the Rectus lateralis, and the two Anterior recti. According to Valentin, the anterior branch of the suboccipital also distributes filaments to the occipito-atloid articulation, and mastoid process of the temporal bone.

The anterior branch of the second cervical nerve escapes from the spinal canal, between the posterior arch of the atlas and the lamina of the axis, and, passing forwards on the outer side of the vertebral artery, divides in front of the Intertransverse muscle, into an ascending branch, which joins the first cervical; and two descending branches which join the third.

The anterior branch of the third cervical nerve is double the size of the preceding. At its exit from the intervertebral foramen, it passes downwards and outwards beneath the Stermo-mastoid, and divides into two branches. The ascending branch joins the anterior division of the second cervical, communicates with the sympathetic and spinal accessory nerves, and subdivides into the superficial cervical and great auricular nerves. The descending branch passes down in front of the Scalenus anticus, anastomoses with the fourth cervical nerve, and becomes continuous with the clavicular nerves.

The anterior branch of the fourth cervical is of the same size as the preceding. It receives a branch from the third, sends a communicating branch to the fifth cervical, and passing downwards and outwards, divides into numerous filaments, which cross the posterior triangle of the neck, towards the clavicle and acromion. It usually gives a branch to the phrenic nerve, whilst it is contained in the intertransverse space.

The anterior branches of the fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth cervical nerves are remarkable for their large size. They are much larger than the preceding nerves, and are all of equal size. They assist in the formation of the brachial plexus.

CERVICAL PLEXUS.

The Cervical Plexus (Fig. 374) is formed by the anterior branches of the four upper cervical nerves. It is situated opposite the four upper vertebrae, resting upon the Levator anguli scapulae, and Scalenus medius muscles, and covered in by the Stermo-mastoid.

Its branches may be divided into two groups, superficial and deep, which may be thus arranged:

- **Superficial**
  - Ascending
    - Superficialis colli
    - Auricularis magnus
    - Occipitalis minor
  - Descending
    - Supraclavicular
      - Sternal
      - Clavicular
      - Acromial

- **Deep**
  - Internal
    - Communicating
    - Muscular
    - Communicans noni
    - Phrenic
  - External
    - Communicating
    - Muscular
SPINAL NERVES.

SUPERFICIAL BRANCHES OF THE CERVICAL PLEXUS.

The Superficialis Colli arises from the second and third cervical nerves, turns round the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid about its middle, and passing obliquely forwards beneath the external jugular vein to the anterior border of that muscle, perforates the deep cervical fascia, and divides beneath the Platysma into two branches, which are distributed to the anterior and lateral parts of the neck.

The ascending branch gives off a filament, which accompanies the external jugular vein; it then passes upwards to the submaxillary region, and divides into branches, some of which form a plexus with the cervical branches of the facial nerve beneath the Platysma: others pierce that muscle, supply it, and are distributed to the integument of the upper half of the neck, at its fore part, as high as the chin.

The descending branch pierces the Platysma, and is distributed to the integument of the side and front of the neck, as low as the sternum.

This nerve is occasionally represented by two or more filaments.

The Auricularis Magnus is the largest of the ascending branches. It arises from the second and third cervical nerves, winds round the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, and after perforating the deep fascia, ascends upon that muscle beneath the Platysma to the parotid gland, where it divides into numerous branches.

The facial branches pass across the parotid, and are distributed to the integument of the face: others penetrate the substance of the gland, and communicate with the facial nerve. The posterior or auricular branches ascend vertically to supply the integument of the back part of the pinna, communicating with the auricular branches of the facial and pneumogastric nerves.

The mastoid branch joins the posterior auricular branch of the facial, and crossing the mastoid process, is distributed to the integument behind the ear.

The Occipitalis Minor arises from the second cervical nerve; it curves round the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid above the preceding, and ascends vertically along the posterior border of that muscle to the back part of the side of the head. Near the cranium it perforates the deep fascia, and is continued upwards along the side of the head behind the ear, supplying the integument and Occipito-frontalis muscle, and communicating with the occipitalis major, auricularis magnus, and posterior auricular branch of the facial.

This nerve gives off an auricular branch, which supplies the Attollens areum and the integument of the upper and back part of the auricle. This branch is occasionally derived from the great occipital nerve. The occipitalis minor varies in size; it is occasionally double.

The Descending or supracleavicular branches arise from the third and fourth cervical nerves; emerging beneath the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, they descend in the interval between that muscle and the Trapezius, and divide into branches, which are arranged, according to their position, into three groups. The inner or sternal branch crosses obliquely over the clavicular and sternal attachments of the Sterno-mastoid, and supplies the integument as far as the median line.

The middle or clavicular branch crosses the clavicle, and supplies the integument over the Pectoral and Deltoid muscles, communicating with the cutaneous branches of the upper intercostal nerves. Not unfrequently, the clavicular branch passes through a foramen in the clavicle, at the junction of the outer with the middle third of the bone.

The external or acromial branch passes obliquely across the outer surface of the Trapezius and the acromion, and supplies the integument of the upper and back part of the shoulder.
CERVICAL PLEXUS.

DEEP BRANCHES OF THE CERVICAL PLEXUS. INTERNAL SERIES.

The communicating branches consist of several filaments, which pass from the loop between the first and second cervical nerves in front of the atlas to the pneumogastric, hypoglossal, sympathetic, and fifth cervical.

Muscular branches supply the Anterior recti and Rectus lateralis muscles; they proceed from the first cervical nerve, and from the loop formed between it and the second.

The Communicans Nomi (Fig. 874) consists usually of two filaments, one being derived from the second, and the other from the third cervical. These filaments pass vertically downwards on the outer side of the internal jugular vein, cross in front of the vein a little below the middle of the neck, and form a loop with the descendens noni in front of the sheath of the carotid vessels. Occasionally the junction of these nerves takes place within the sheath.

The Phrenic Nerve (internal respiratory of Bell) arises from the third and fourth cervical nerves, and receives a communicating branch from the fifth. It descends to the root of the neck, lying obliquely across the front of the Scalenus anticus, passes over the first part of the subclavian artery, between it and the subclavian vein, and, as it enters the chest, crosses the internal mammary artery near its root. Within the chest, it descends nearly vertically in front of the root of the lung, and by the side of the pericardium, between it and the mediastinal portion of the pleura, to the Diaphragm, where it divides into branches, which separately pierce that muscle, and are distributed to its under surface.

The two phrenic nerves differ in their length, and also in their relations at the upper part of the thorax.

The right nerve is situated more deeply, and is shorter and more vertical in direction than the left; it lies on the outer side of the right vena innominata and superior vena cava.

The left nerve is rather longer than the right, from the inclination of the heart to the left side, and from the Diaphragm being lower on this than on the opposite side. At the upper part of the thorax, it crosses in front of the arch of the aorta to the root of the lung.

Each nerve supplies filaments to the pericardium and pleura, and near the chest is joined by a filament from the sympathetic, by another derived by the fifth and sixth cervical nerves, and occasionally, by one from the union of the descendens noni with the spinal nerves; this filament is found, according to Swan, only on the left side. It is also usually connected by a filament with the nerve to the subclavious muscle.

From the right nerve, one or two filaments pass to join in a small ganglion with the phrenic branches of the solar plexus; and branches from this ganglion are distributed to the hepatic plexus, the suprarenal capsule, and inferior vena cava. From the left nerve, filaments pass to join the phrenic plexus, but without any ganglionic enlargement.

DEEP BRANCHES OF THE CERVICAL PLEXUS. EXTERNAL SERIES.

Communicating branches. The cervical plexus communicates with the spinal accessory nerve, in the substance of the Stero-mastoid muscle, in the occipital triangle, and beneath the Trapezius.

Muscular branches are distributed to the Stero-mastoid, Levator anguli scapulae and Trapezius.

The branch for the Stero-mastoid is derived from the second cervical, the Levator anguli scapulae receiving branches from the third, and the Trapezius branches from the third and fourth.
SPINAL NERVES.

Posterior Branches of the Cervical Nerves.

The posterior branches of the cervical nerves, with the exception of those of the first two, pass backwards, and divide, behind the posterior Intertransverse muscles, into external and internal branches.

The external branches supply the muscles at the side of the neck, viz., the Cervicalis ascendens, Transversalis colli, and Tracheo-mastoid.

The external branch of the second cervical nerve is the largest; it is often joined with the third, and supplies the Complexus, Splenius, and Tracheo-mastoid muscles.

The internal branches, the larger, are distributed differently in the upper and lower part of the neck. Those derived from the third, fourth, and fifth nerves pass between the Semispinalis and Complexus muscles, and having reached the spinous processes, perforate the aponeurosis of the Splenius and Trapezius, and are continued outwards to the integument over the Trapezius; whilst those derived from the three lowest cervical nerves are the smallest, and are placed beneath the Semispinalis, which they supply, and do not furnish any cutaneous filaments. These internal branches supply the Complexus, Semispinalis colli, Interspinales, and Multifidus spine.

The posterior branches of the first three cervical nerves require a separate description.

The posterior branch of the first cervical nerve (suboccipital) is larger than the anterior, and escapes from the spinal canal between the occipital bone and the posterior arch of the atlas, lying behind the vertebral artery. It enters the triangular space formed by the Rectus posticus major, the Obliquus superior, and Obliquus inferior, and supplies the Recti and Obliqui muscles, and the Complexus. From the branch which supplies the Inferior oblique a filament is given off, which joins the second cervical nerve. This nerve also occasionally gives off a cutaneous filament, which accompanies the occipital artery, and communicates with the occipitalis major and minor nerves.

The posterior division of the first cervical has no branch analogous to the external branch of the posterior cervical nerves.

The posterior branch of the second cervical nerve is three or four times greater than the anterior branch, and the largest of all the posterior cervical nerves. It emerges from the spinal canal between the posterior arch of the atlas and lamina of the axis, below the Inferior oblique. It supplies this muscle, and receives a communicating filament from the first cervical. It then divides into an external and an internal branch.

The internal branch, called, from its size and distribution, the occipitalis major, ascends obliquely inwards between the Obliquus inferior and Complexus, and pierces the latter muscle and the Trapezius near their attachments to the cranium. It is now joined by a filament from the third cervical nerve, and ascending on the back part of the head with the occipital artery, divides into two branches, which supply the integument of the scalp as far forwards as the vertex, communicating with the occipitalis minor. It gives off an auricular branch to the back part of the ear, and muscular branches to the Complexus.

The posterior branch of the third cervical is smaller than the preceding, but larger than the fourth; it differs from the posterior branches of the other cervical nerves in its supplying an additional filament to the integument of the occiput. This occipital branch arises from the internal or cutaneous branch beneath the Trapezius; it pierces that muscle, and supplies the skin on the lower and back part of the head. It lies to the inner side of the occipitalis major, with which it is connected.

The internal branches of the posterior divisions of the first three cervical nerves are occasionally joined beneath the Complexus by communicating branches. This communication is described by Cruveilhier as the posterior cervical plexus.
The Brachial Plexus. (Fig. 380.)

The Brachial Plexus is formed by the union of the anterior branches of the four lower cervical and first dorsal nerves. It extends from the lower part of the side of the neck to the axilla. It is very broad and presents little of a plexiform arrangement at its commencement, is narrow opposite the clavicle, becomes broad, and forms a more dense interlacement in the axilla, and divides opposite the coracoid process into numerous branches for the supply of the upper limb. The nerves which form the plexus are all similar in size, and their mode of communication is the following. The fifth and sixth nerves unite near their exit from the spine into a common trunk; the seventh nerve joins this trunk near the outer border of the Middle scalenus; and the three nerves thus form one large single cord. The eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves unite behind the Anterior scalenus into a common trunk. Thus two large trunks are formed, the upper one by the union of the fifth, sixth, and seventh cervical; and the lower one by the eighth cervical and first dorsal. These two trunks accompany the subclavian artery to the axilla, lying upon its outer side, the trunk formed by the union of the last cervical and first dorsal being nearest to the vessel. Opposite the clavicle, and sometimes in the axilla, each of these cords gives off a fasciculus, by the union of which a third trunk is formed, so that in the middle of the axilla three cords are found, one lying on the outer side of the axillary artery, one on its inner side, and one behind. The brachial plexus communicates with the cervical plexus by a branch from the fourth to the fifth nerve, and with the phrenic nerve by a branch from the fifth cervical, which joins that nerve on the Anterior scalenus muscle: the cervical and first dorsal nerves are also joined by filaments from the middle and inferior cervical ganglia of the sympathetic, close to their exit from the intervertebral foramina.

1 This is the usual mode of formation of the plexus; but it is also very common for the third, or posterior, cord to be formed by the seventh cervical nerve, running undivided, and receiving a branch from each of the other cords, or the seventh nerve may bifurcate, one branch of bifurcation joining each of the other cords. From these two cords the third trunk is formed, as described in the text. Mr. R. C. Lucas describes an arrangement differing slightly from that last mentioned, and which he regards as the common one, having met with it in 27 out of 30 dissections. The seventh nerve bifurcates, and so does the united cord of the fifth and sixth nerves. One of the branches of bifurcation of the seventh nerve, along with that of the united fifth and sixth nerves, forms the external cord of the plexus. The other branch of bifurcation of the united fifth and sixth along with that of the seventh nerve forms a large cord, which receives a small branch from the united eighth cervical and first dorsal to form the posterior cord. The rest of the united eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves is continued as the internal cord. (See Mr. Lucas’s paper and drawing in the Guy’s Hospital Reports, 1875.) Henle’s description is substantially the same.
**SPINAL NERVES.**

*Relations.* In the neck, the brachial plexus lies at first between the Anterior and Middle scaleni muscles, and then above and to the outer side of the subclavian artery; it then passes behind the clavicle and Subclavius muscle, lying upon the first serration of the Serratus magnus, and the Subscapularis muscles. In the axilla, it is placed on the outer side of the first portion of the axillary artery; it surrounds the artery in the second part of its course, one cord lying upon the outer side of that vessel, one on the inner side, and one behind it; and at the lower part of the axillary space gives off its terminal branches to the upper extremity.

*Branches.* The branches of the brachial plexus are arranged into two groups viz., those given off above the clavicle, and those below that bone.

### Branches above the Clavicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Communicating</th>
<th>Posterior thoracic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Muscular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Suprascapular</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The *communicating branch* with the phrenic is derived from the fifth cervical nerve; it joins the phrenic on the Anterior scalenus muscle.

The *muscular branches* supply the Longus colli, Scaleni, Rhomboidei, and Subclavius muscles. Those for the Scaleni and Longus colli arise from the lower cervical nerves at their exit from the intervertebral foramina. The rhomboid branch arises from the fifth cervical, pierces the Scaleneus medius, and passes beneath the Levator anguli scapulae, which it occasionally supplies, to the Rhomboid muscles. The nerve to the Subclavius is a small filament, which arises from the trunk formed by the junction of the fifth and sixth cervical nerves; it descends in front of the subclavian artery to the Subclavius muscle, and is usually connected by a filament with the phrenic nerve.

The *posterior thoracic nerve* (long thoracic, external respiratory of Bell) (Fig. 383) supplies the Serratus magnus, and is remarkable for the length of its course. It arises by two roots, from the fifth and sixth cervical nerves, immediately after their exit from the intervertebral foramina. These unite in the substance of the Middle scalenus muscle, and, after emerging from it, the nerve passes down behind the brachial plexus and the axillary vessels, resting on the outer surface of the Serratus magnus. It extends along the side of the chest to the lower border of that muscle, and supplies it with numerous filaments.

The *suprascapular nerve* (Fig. 384) arises from the cord formed by the fifth, sixth, and seventh cervical nerves; passing obliquely outwards beneath the Trapezius, it enters the supraspinous fossa, through the notch in the upper border of the scapula; and, passing beneath the Supraspinatus muscle, curves in front of the spine of the scapula to the infraspinous fossa. In the supraspinous fossa, it gives off two branches to the Supraspinatus muscle, and an articular filament to the shoulder-joint; and in the infraspinous fossa, it gives off two branches to the Infraspinatus muscle, besides some filaments to the shoulder-joint and scapula.

### Branches below the Clavicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To chest</th>
<th>Anterior thoracic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To shoulder</td>
<td>Subscapular.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Circumflex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Musculo-cutaneous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Internal cutaneous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lesser internal cutaneous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To arm, fore-arm, and hand</td>
<td>Median.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ulnar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Musculo-spiral.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Brachial Plexus. (Fig. 380.)

The Brachial Plexus is formed by the union of the anterior branches of the four lower cervical and first dorsal nerves. It extends from the lower part of the side of the neck to the axilla. It is very broad and presents little of a plexiform arrangement at its commencement, is narrow opposite the clavicle, becomes broad, and forms a more dense interlacement in the axilla, and divides opposite the coracoid process into numerous branches for the supply of the upper limb. The nerves which form the plexus are all similar in size, and their mode of communication is the following. The fifth and sixth nerves unite near their exit from the spine into a common trunk; the seventh nerve joins this trunk near the outer border of the Middle scalenus; and the three nerves thus form one large single cord. The eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves unite behind the Anterior scalenus into a common trunk. Thus two large trunks are formed, the upper one by the union of the fifth, sixth, and seventh cervical; and the lower one by the eighth cervical and first dorsal. These two trunks accompany the subclavian artery to the axilla, lying upon its outer side, the trunk formed by the union of the last cervical and first dorsal being nearest to the vessel. Opposite the clavicle, and sometimes in the axilla, each of these cords gives off a fasciculus, by the union of which a third trunk is formed, so that in the middle of the axilla three cords are found, one lying on the outer side of the axillary artery, one on its inner side, and one behind. The brachial plexus communicates with the cervical plexus by a branch from the fourth to the fifth nerve, and with the phrenic nerve by a branch from the fifth cervical, which joins that nerve on the Anterior scalenus muscle: the cervical and first dorsal nerves are also joined by filaments from the middle and inferior cervical ganglia of the sympathetic, close to their exit from the intervertebral foramina.

1 This is the usual mode of formation of the plexus; but it is also very common for the third, or posterior, cord to be formed by the seventh cervical nerve, running undivided, and receiving a branch from each of the other cords, or the seventh nerve may bifurcate, one branch of bifurcation joining each of the other cords. From these two cords the third trunk is formed, as described in the text. Mr. R. C. Lucas describes an arrangement differing slightly from that last mentioned, and which he regards as the common one, having met with it in 27 out of 30 dissections. The seventh nerve bifurcates, and so does the united cord of the fifth and sixth nerves. One of the branches of bifurcation of the seventh nerve, along with that of the united fifth and sixth nerves, forms the external cord of the plexus. The other branch of bifurcation of the united fifth and sixth along with that of the seventh nerve forms a large cord, which receives a small branch from the united eighth cervical and first dorsal to form the posterior cord. The rest of the united eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves is continued as the internal cord. (See Mr. Lucas’s paper and drawing in the Guy’s Hospital Reports, 1875.) Henle’s description is substantially the same.
thirds of the posterior surface of the Deltoid, as well as that covering the long head of the Triceps.

The circumflex nerve, before its division, gives off an articular filament, which enters the shoulder-joint below the Subscapularis.

The Musculo-cutaneous Nerve (Fig. 383) (external cutaneous, perforans Casserii) supplies some of the muscles of the arm, and the integument of the forearm. It arises from the outer cord of the brachial plexus opposite the lower border of the Pectoralis minor. It then perforates the Coracobrachialis muscle, and passes obliquely between the Biceps and Brachialis anticus, to the outer side of the arm, a little above the elbow, where it perforates the deep fascia and becomes cutaneous. This nerve, in its course through the arm, supplies the Coraco-brachialis, Biceps, and Brachialis anticus muscles, besides sending some filaments to the elbow-joint and humerus.

The cutaneous portion of the nerve passes behind the median cephalic vein, and divides opposite the elbow-joint, into an anterior and a posterior branch.

The anterior branch descends along the radial border of the forearm to the wrist. It is placed in front of the radial artery, and, piercing the deep fascia, accompanies that vessel to the back of the wrist. It communicates with a branch from the radial nerve, and the palmar cutaneous branch of the median, and distributes filaments to the integument of the ball of the thumb.

The posterior branch is given off about the middle of the forearm, and passes downwards, along the back part of its radial side to the wrist. It supplies the integument of the lower third of the forearm, communicating with the radial nerve, and the external cutaneous branch of the musculo-spiral.

The Internal Cutaneous Nerve (Fig. 383) is one of the smallest branches of the brachial plexus. It arises from the inner cord, in common with the ulnar and internal head of the median, and, at its commencement, is placed on the inner side of the brachial artery. It passes down the inner side of the arm, pierces the deep fascia with the basilic vein, about the middle of the limb, and, becoming cutaneous, divides into two branches.

This nerve gives off, near the axilla, a cutaneous filament, which pierces the fascia, and supplies the integument covering the Biceps muscle, nearly as far as the elbow. This filament lies a little external to the common trunk, from which it arises.

The anterior branch, the larger of the two, passes usually in front of, but occasionally behind, the median basilic vein. It then descends on the anterior surface of the ulnar side of the forearm, distributing filaments to the integument as far as the wrist, and communicating with a cutaneous branch of the ulnar nerve.
The posterior branch passes obliquely downwards on the inner side of the basilic vein, winds over the internal condyle of the humerus to the back of the forearm, and descends, on the posterior surface of its ulnar side, to a little below the middle, distributing filaments to the integument. It anastomoses above the elbow, with the lesser internal cutaneous, and above the wrist, with the dorsal branch of the ulnar nerve (Swan).

The lesser internal cutaneous nerve (nerve of Wrisberg) (Fig. 388) is distributed to the integument on the inner side of the arm. It is the smallest of the branches of the brachial plexus, and usually arises from the inner cord, with the internal cutaneous and ulnar nerves. It passes through the axillary space, at first lying behind, and then on the inner side of the axillary vein, and communicates with the intercosto-humeral nerve. It then descends along the inner side of the brachial artery, to the middle of the arm, where it pierces the deep fascia, and is distributed to the integument of the back part of the lower third of the arm, extending as far as the elbow, where some filaments are lost in the integuments in front of the inner condyle, and others over the olecranon. It communicates with the inner branch of the internal cutaneous nerve.

In some cases the nerve of Wrisberg and intercosto-humeral are connected by two or three filaments, which form a plexus at the back part of the axilla. In other cases, the intercosto-humeral is of large size, and takes the place of the nerve of Wrisberg, receiving merely a filament of communication from the brachial plexus, which represents the latter nerve. In other cases, this filament is wanting, the place of the nerve of Wrisberg being supplied entirely from the intercosto-humeral.

The median nerve (Fig. 383) has received its name from the course it takes along the middle of the arm and forearm to the hand, lying between the ulnar and the musculo-spiral and radial nerves. It arises by two roots, one from the outer, and one from the inner cord of the brachial plexus; these embrace the lower part of the axillary artery, uniting either in front or on the outer side of that vessel. As it descends through the arm, it lies at first on the outer side of the brachial artery, crosses that vessel in the middle of its course, usually in front, but occasionally behind it, and lies on its inner side to the bend of the elbow, where it is placed beneath the bicipital fascia, and is separated from the elbow-joint by the Brachialis anticus. In the forearm, it passes between the two heads of the Pronator radii teres, and descends beneath the Flexor sublimis, to within two inches above the annular ligament, where it becomes more superficial, lying between the Flexor sublimis and Flexor carpi radialis, beneath, or rather to the ulnar side of the tendon of the Palmaris longus, covered by the integument and fascia. It then passes beneath the annular ligament into the hand.

Branches. No branches are given off from the median nerve in the arm. In the forearm its branches are, muscular, anterior interosseous, and palmar cutaneous.

The muscular branches supply all the superficial muscles on the front of the forearm, except the Flexor carpi ulnaris. These branches are derived from the nerve near the elbow. The branch furnished to the Pronator radii teres often arises above the joint.

The anterior interosseous supplies the deep muscles on the front of the forearm, except the Flexor carpi ulnaris and inner half of the Flexor profundus digitorum. It accompanies the anterior interosseous artery along the interosseous membrane, in the interval between the Flexor longus pollicis and Flexor profundus digitorum muscles, both of which it supplies, and terminates below in the Pronator quadratus.

The palmar cutaneous branch arises from the median nerve at the lower part of the forearm. It pierces the fascia above the annular ligament, and divides into two branches: of which the outer supplies the skin over the ball of the thumb, and communicates with the external cutaneous nerve; and the inner supplies the integument of the palm of the hand, anastomosing with the cuta-
SPINAL NERVES.

Fig. 383.—Nerves of the Left Upper Extremity.
neous branch of the ulnar. Both nerves cross the annular ligament previous to their distribution.

In the palm of the hand, the median nerve is covered by the integument and palmar fascia, and rests upon the tendons of the Flexor muscles. In this situation it becomes enlarged, somewhat flattened, of reddish color, and divides into two branches. Of these, the external supplies a muscular branch to some of the muscles of the thumb, and digital branches to the thumb and index finger; the internal branch supplying digital branches to the contiguous sides of the index and middle, and of the middle and ring fingers.

The branch to the muscles of the thumb is a short nerve, which subdivides to supply the Abductor, Opponens, and outer head of the Flexor brevis pollicis muscles; remaining muscles of this group being supplied by the ulnar nerve.

The digital branches are five in number. The first and second pass along the borders of the thumb, the external branch communicating with branches of the radial nerve. The third passes along the radial side of the index finger, and supplies the first Lumbricalis muscle. The fourth subdivides to supply the adjacent sides of the index and middle fingers, and sends a branch to the second Lumbricalis muscle. The fifth supplies the adjacent sides of the middle and ring fingers, and communicates with a branch from the ulnar nerve.

Each digital nerve, opposite the base of the first phalanx, gives off a dorsal branch, which joins the dorsal digital nerve, and runs along the side of the dorsum of the finger, ending in the integument over the last phalanx. At the end of the finger, the digital nerve divides into a palmar and a dorsal branch; the former of which supplies the extremity of the finger, and the latter ramiﬁes round and beneath the nail. The digital nerves, as they run along the fingers, are placed superﬁcial to the digital arteries.

The Ulnar Nerve (Fig. 383) is placed along the inner or ulnar side of the upper limb, and is distributed to the muscles and integument of the fore-arm and hand. It is smaller than the median, behind which it is placed, diverging from it in its course down the arm. It arises from the inner cord of the brachial plexus, in common with the inner head of the median and the internal cutaneous nerve. At its commencement, it lies at the inner side of the axillary artery, and holds the same relation with the brachial artery to the middle of the arm. From this point it runs obliquely across the internal head of the Triceps, pierces the internal intermuscular septum, and descends to the groove between the internal condyle and olecranon, accompanied by the inferior profunda artery. At the elbow, it rests upon the back of the inner condyle, and passes into the fore-arm between the two heads of the Flexor carpi ulnaris. In the fore-arm, it descends in a perfectly straight course along its ulnar side, lying upon the Flexor profundus digitorum, its upper half being covered by the Flexor carpi ulnaris, its lower half lying on the outer side of the muscle, covered by the integument and fascia. The ulnar artery, in the upper third of its course, is separated from the ulnar nerve by a considerable interval; but in the rest of its extent, the nerve lies to its inner side. At the wrist, the ulnar nerve crosses the annular ligament on the outer side of the pisiform bone, a little behind the ulnar artery, and immediately beyond this bone divides into two branches, superficial and deep palmar.

The branches of the ulnar nerve are:

In fore-arm

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Articular (elbow).} \\
\text{Muscular.} \\
\text{Cutaneous.} \\
\text{Dorsal cutaneous.} \\
\text{Articular (wrist).}
\end{align*}
\]

In hand

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Superficial palmar.} \\
\text{Deep palmar.}
\end{align*}
\]

The articular branches distributed to the elbow-joint consist of several small filaments. They arise from the nerve as it lies in the groove between the inner condyle and olecranon.
SPINAL NERVES.

SUPERFICIAL BRANCHES OF THE CERVICAL PLEXUS.

The Superficialis Colli arises from the second and third cervical nerves, turns round the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid about its middle, and passing obliquely forwards beneath the external jugular vein to the anterior border of that muscle, perforates the deep cervical fascia, and divides beneath the Platysma into two branches, which are distributed to the anterior and lateral parts of the neck.

The ascending branch gives off a filament, which accompanies the external jugular vein; it then passes upwards to the submaxillary region, and divides into branches, some of which form a plexus with the cervical branches of the facial nerve beneath the Platysma: others pierce that muscle, supply it, and are distributed to the integument of the upper half of the neck, at its fore part, as high as the chin.

The descending branch pierces the Platysma, and is distributed to the integument of the side and front of the neck, as low as the sternum.

This nerve is occasionally represented by two or more filaments.

The Auricularis Magnus is the largest of the ascending branches. It arises from the second and third cervical nerves, winds round the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, and after perforating the deep fascia, ascends upon that muscle beneath the Platysma to the parotid gland, where it divides into numerous branches.

The facial branches pass across the parotid, and are distributed to the integument of the face: others penetrate the substance of the gland, and communicate with the facial nerve.

The posterior or auricular branches ascend vertically to supply the integument of the back part of the pinna, communicating with the auricular branches of the facial and pneumogastric nerves.

The mastoid branch joins the posterior auricular branch of the facial, and crossing the mastoid process, is distributed to the integument behind the ear.

The Occipitalis Minor arises from the second cervical nerve; it curves round the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid above the preceding, and ascends vertically along the posterior border of that muscle to the back part of the side of the head. Near the cranium it perforates the deep fascia, and is continued upwards along the side of the head behind the ear, supplying the integument and Occipito-frontalis muscle, and communicating with the occipitalis major, auricularis magnus, and posterior auricular branch of the facial.

This nerve gives off an auricular branch, which supplies the Attollens aurem and the integument of the upper and back part of the auricle. This branch is occasionally derived from the great occipital nerve. The occipitalis minor varies in size; it is occasionally double.

The Descending or supraclavicular branches arise from the third and fourth cervical nerves; emerging beneath the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, they descend in the interval between that muscle and the Trapezius, and divide into branches, which are arranged, according to their position, into three groups.

The inner or sternal branch crosses obliquely over the clavicular and sternal attachments of the Sterno-mastoid, and supplies the integument as far as the median line.

The middle or clavicular branch crosses the clavicle, and supplies the integument over the Pectoral and Deltoid muscles, communicating with the cutaneous branches of the upper intercostal nerves. Not unfrequently, the clavicular branch passes through a foramen in the clavicle, at the junction of the outer with the middle third of the bone.

The external or acromial branch passes obliquely across the outer surface of the Trapezius and the acromion, and supplies the integument of the upper and back part of the shoulder.
interosseous space, one for the Dorsal and one for the Palmar interosseous muscle, the branches to the second and third Palmar interossei supplying filaments to the two inner Lumbricales muscles. At its termination between the thumb and index finger, it supplies the Adductor pollicis and the inner head of the Flexor brevis pollicis.

The Musculo-Spiral Nerve (Fig. 384), the largest branch of the brachial plexus, supplies the muscles of the back part of the arm and fore-arm, and the integument of the same parts, as well as that of the hand. It arises from the posterior cord of the brachial plexus by a common trunk with the circumflex nerve. At its commencement it is placed behind the axillary and upper part of the brachial arteries, passing down in front of the tendons of the Latissimus dorsi and Teres major. It winds round the humerus in the spiral groove with the superior profunda artery, passing from the inner to the outer side of the bone, beneath the Triceps muscle. At the outer side of the arm, it descends between the Brachialis anticus and Supinator longus to the front of the external condyle, where it divides into the radial and posterior interosseous nerves.

The branches of the musculo-spiral nerve are:

Muscular, Cutaenous.
Radial, Posterior interosseous.

The muscular branches are divided into internal, posterior, and external; they supply the Triceps, Anconeus, Supinator longus, Extensor carpi radialis longior, and brachialis anticus. These branches are derived from the nerve, at the inner side, back part, and outer side of the arm.

The internal muscular branches supply the inner and middle heads of the Triceps muscle. That to the inner head of the Triceps is a long, slender filament, which lies close to the ulnar nerve, as far as the lower third of the arm.

The posterior muscular branch, of large size, arises from the nerve in the groove between the Triceps and the humerus. It divides into branches which supply the outer head of the Triceps and Aconeus muscles. The branch for the latter muscle is a long, slender filament, which descends in the substance of the Triceps to the Aconeus in the same course with the posterior articular branch from the superior profunda artery.

The external muscular branches supply the Supinator longus, Extensor carpi radialis longior, and, usually, the Brachialis anticus.

The cutaneous branches are three in number, one internal and two external.

The internal cutaneous branch arises in the axillary space, with the inner muscular branch. It is of small size, and passes through the axilla to the inner side of the arm, supplying the integument on its posterior aspect nearly as far as the olecranon.

The two external cutaneous branches perforate the outer head of the Triceps, at its attachment to the humerus. The upper and smaller one follows the course of the cephalic vein to the front of the elbow, supplying the integument of the lower half of the upper arm on its anterior aspect. The lower branch pierces the deep fascia below the insertion of the Deltoid, and passes down along the outer side of the arm and elbow, and along the back part of the radial side of the fore-arm to the wrist, supplying the integument in its course, and joining, near its termination, with a branch of the external cutaneous nerve.

The radial nerve passes along the front of the radial side of the forearm, to the commencement of its lower third. It lies at first a little to the outer side of the radial artery, concealed beneath the Supinator longus. In the middle third of the fore-arm, it lies beneath the same muscle, in close relation with the outer side of the artery. It quits the artery about three inches above the wrist, passes beneath the tendon of the Supinator longus, and, piercing the deep fascia at the outer border of the fore-arm, divides into two branches.

The external branch, the smaller of the two, supplies the integument of the
Posterior Branches of the Cervical Nerves.

The posterior branches of the cervical nerves, with the exception of those of the first two, pass backwards, and divide, behind the posterior Intertransverse muscles, into external and internal branches.

The external branches supply the muscles at the side of the neck, viz., the Cervicalis ascendens, Transversalis colli, and Tracheo-mastoid.

The external branch of the second cervical nerve is the largest; it is often joined with the third, and supplies the Complexus, Splenius, and Tracheo-mastoid muscles.

The internal branches, the larger, are distributed differently in the upper and lower part of the neck. Those derived from the third, fourth, and fifth nerves pass between the Semispinalis and Complexus muscles, and having reached the spinous processes, perforate the aponeurosis of the Splenius and Trapezius, and are continued outwards to the integument over the Trapezius; whilst those derived from the three lowest cervical nerves are the smallest, and are placed beneath the Semispinalis, which they supply, and do not furnish any cutaneous filaments. These internal branches supply the Complexus, Semispinalis colli, Interspinales, and Multifidus spine.

The posterior branches of the first three cervical nerves require a separate description.

The posterior branch of the first cervical nerve (suboccipital) is larger than the anterior, and escapes from the spinal canal between the occipital bone and the posterior arch of the atlas, lying behind the vertebral artery. It enters the triangular space formed by the Rectus posticus major, the Obliquus superior, and Obliquus inferior, and supplies the Recto and Obliqui muscles, and the Complexus. From the branch which supplies the Inferior oblique a filament is given off, which joins the second cervical nerve. This nerve also occasionally gives off a cutaneous filament, which accompanies the occipital artery, and communicates with the occipitalis major and minor nerves.

The posterior division of the first cervical has no branch analogous to the external branch of the posterior cervical nerves.

The posterior branch of the second cervical nerve is three or four times greater than the anterior branch, and the largest of all the posterior cervical nerves. It emerges from the spinal canal between the posterior arch of the atlas and lamina of the axis, below the Inferior oblique. It supplies this muscle, and receives a communicating filament from the first cervical. It then divides into an external and an internal branch.

The internal branch, called, from its size and distribution, the occipitalis major, ascends obliquely inwards between the Obliquus inferior and Complexus, and pierces the latter muscle and the Trapezius near their attachments to the cranium. It is now joined by a filament from the third cervical nerve, and ascending on the back part of the head with the occipital artery, divides into two branches, which supply the integument of the scalp as far forwards as the vertex, communicating with the occipitalis minor. It gives off an auricular branch to the back part of the ear, and muscular branches to the Complexus.

The posterior branch of the third cervical is smaller than the preceding, but larger than the fourth; it differs from the posterior branches of the other cervical nerves in its supplying an additional filament to the integument of the occiput. This occipital branch arises from the internal or cutaneous branch beneath the Trapezius; it pierces that muscle, and supplies the skin on the lower and back part of the head. It lies to the inner side of the occipitalis major, with which it is connected.

The internal branches of the posterior divisions of the first three cervical nerves are occasionally joined beneath the Complexus by communicating branches. This communication is described by Cruveilhier as the posterior cervical plexus.
The Brachial Plexus. (Fig. 380.)

The Brachial Plexus is formed by the union of the anterior branches of the four lower cervical and first dorsal nerves. It extends from the lower part of the side of the neck to the axilla. It is very broad and presents little of a plexiform arrangement at its commencement, is narrow opposite the clavicle, becomes broad, and forms a more dense interlacement in the axilla, and divides opposite the coracoid process into numerous branches for the supply of the upper limb. The nerves which form the plexus are all similar in size, and their mode of communication is the following. The fifth and sixth nerves unite near their exit from the spine into a common trunk; the seventh nerve joins this trunk near the outer border of the Middle scalenus; and the three nerves thus form one large single cord. The eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves unite behind the Anterior scalenus into a common trunk. Thus two large trunks are formed, the upper one by the union of the fifth, sixth, and seventh cervical; and the lower one by the eighth cervical and first dorsal. These two trunks accompany the subclavian artery to the axilla, lying upon its outer side, the trunk formed by the union of the last cervical and first dorsal being nearest to the vessel. Opposite the clavicle, and sometimes in the axilla, each of these cords gives off a fasciculus, by the union of which a third trunk is formed, so that in the middle of the axilla three cords are found, one lying on the outer side of the axillary artery, one on its inner side, and one behind. The brachial plexus communicates with the cervical plexus by a branch from the fourth to the fifth nerve, and with the phrenic nerve by a branch from the fifth cervical, which joins that nerve on the Anterior scalenus muscle: the cervical and first dorsal nerves are also joined by filaments from the middle and inferior cervical ganglia of the sympathetic, close to their exit from the intervertebral foramina.

1 This is the usual mode of formation of the plexus; but it is also very common for the third, or posterior, cord to be formed by the seventh cervical nerve, running undivided, and receiving a branch from each of the other cords, or the seventh nerve may bifurcate, one branch of bifurcation joining each of the other cords. From these two cords the third trunk is formed, as described in the text. Mr. R. C. Lucas describes an arrangement differing slightly from that last mentioned, and which he regards as the common one, having met with it in 27 out of 30 dissections. The seventh nerve bifurcates, and so does the united cord of the fifth and sixth nerves. One of the branches of bifurcation of the seventh nerve, along with that of the united fifth and sixth nerves, forms the external cord of the plexus. The other branch of bifurcation of the united fifth and sixth along with that of the seventh nerve forms a large cord, which receives a small branch from the united eighth cervical and first dorsal to form the posterior cord. The rest of the united eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves is continued as the internal cord. (See Mr. Lucas's paper and drawing in the Guy's Hospital Reports, 1875.) Henle's description is substantially the same.
The branches given off below the clavicle, are derived from the three cords of the brachial plexus, in the following manner:—

From the outer cord, arises the external of the two anterior thoracic nerves, the musculo-cutaneous nerve, and the outer head of the median.

From the inner cord, arises the internal of the two anterior thoracic nerves, the internal cutaneous, the lesser internal cutaneous (nerve of Wrisberg), the ulnar and inner head of the median.

From the posterior cord, arise the three subscapular nerves; and the cord then divides into the musculo-spiral and circumflex nerves.

The Anterior Thoracic Nerves (Fig. 383), two in number, supply the Pectoral muscles.

The external, or superficial branch, the larger of the two, arises from the outer cord of the brachial plexus, passes inwards, across the axillary artery and vein, and is distributed to the under surface of the Pectoralis major. It sends down a communicating filament to join the internal branch.

The internal, or deep branch, arises from the inner cord, and passes upwards between the axillary artery and vein (sometimes perforates the vein), and joins with the filament from the superficial branch. From the loop thus formed, branches are distributed to the under surface of the Pectoralis minor and major muscles.

The Subscapular Nerves, three in number, supply the Subscapularis, Teres major, and Latissimus dorsi muscles.

The upper subscapular nerve, the smallest, enters the upper part of the Subscapularis muscle.

The lower subscapular nerve enters the axillary border of the Subscapularis, and terminates in the Teres major. The latter muscle is sometimes supplied by a separate branch.

The long subscapular, the largest of the three, descends along the lower border of the subscapularis to the Latissimus dorsi, through which it may be traced as far as its lower border.

The Circumflex Nerve (Fig. 384) supplies some of the muscles, and the integument of the shoulder, and the shoulder-joint. It arises from the posterior cord of the brachial plexus, in common with the musculo-spiral nerve. It passes down behind the axillary artery, and in front of the Subscapularis; and, at the lower border of that muscle, passes backwards, and divides into two branches.

The upper branch winds round the neck of the humerus, beneath the Deltoid, with the posterior circumflex vessels, as far as the anterior border of that muscle, supplying it, and giving off cutaneous branches, which pierce it to ramify in the integument covering its lower part.

The lower branch, at its origin, distributes filaments to the Teres minor and back part of the Deltoid muscles. Upon the filament to the former muscle a ganglionform enlargement usually exists. The nerve then pierces the deep fascia, and supplies the integument over the lower two-
thirds of the posterior surface of the Deltoid, as well as that covering the long head of the Triceps.

The circumflex nerve, before its division, gives off an articular filament, which enters the shoulder-joint below the Subscapularis.

The **Musculo-cutaneous Nerve** (Fig. 388) (external cutaneous, *perforans Casserii*) supplies some of the muscles of the arm, and the integument of the forearm. It arises from the outer cord of the brachial plexus opposite the lower border of the Pectoralis minor. It then perforates the Coraco-brachialis muscle, and passes obliquely between the Biceps and Brachialis anticus, to the outer side of the arm, a little above the elbow, where it perforates the deep fascia and becomes cutaneous. This nerve, in its course through the arm, supplies the Coraco-brachialis, Biceps, and Brachialis anticus muscles, besides sending some filaments to the elbow-joint and humerus.

The cutaneous portion of the nerve passes behind the median cephalic vein, and divides opposite the elbow-joint, into an anterior and a posterior branch.

The **anterior branch** descends along the radial border of the forearm to the wrist. It is placed in front of the radial artery, and, piercing the deep fascia, accompanies that vessel to the back of the wrist. It communicates with a branch from the radial nerve, and the palmar cutaneous branch of the median, and distributes filaments to the integument of the ball of the thumb.

The **posterior branch** is given off about the middle of the forearm, and passes downwards, along the back part of its radial side to the wrist. It supplies the integument of the lower third of the forearm, communicating with the radial nerve, and the external cutaneous branch of the musculo-spiral.

The **Internal Cutaneous Nerve** (Fig. 383) is one of the smallest branches of the brachial plexus. It arises from the inner cord, in common with the ulnar and internal head of the median, and, at its commencement, is placed on the inner side of the brachial artery. It passes down the inner side of the arm, pierces the deep fascia with the basilic vein, about the middle of the limb, and, becoming cutaneous, divides into two branches.

This nerve gives off, near the **axilla**, a cutaneous filament, which pierces the fascia, and supplies the integument covering the Biceps muscle, nearly as far as the elbow. This filament lies a little external to the common trunk, from which it arises.

The **anterior branch**, the larger of the two, passes usually in front of, but occasionally behind, the median basilic vein. It then descends on the anterior surface of the ulnar side of the forearm, distributing filaments to the integument as far as the wrist, and communicating with a cutaneous branch of the ulnar nerve.
The posterior branch passes obliquely downwards on the inner side of the basilic vein, winds over the internal condyle of the humerus to the back of the forearm, and descends, on the posterior surface of its ulnar side, to a little below the middle, distributing filaments to the integument. It anastomoses above the elbow, with the lesser internal cutaneous, and above the wrist, with the dorsal branch of the ulnar nerve (Swan).

The Lesser Internal Cutaneous Nerve (nerve of Wrisberg) (Fig. 383) is distributed to the integument on the inner side of the arm. It is the smallest of the branches of the brachial plexus, and usually arises from the inner cord, with the internal cutaneous and ulnar nerves. It passes through the axillary space, at first lying behind, and then on the inner side of the axillary cord, and communicates with the intercosto-humeral nerve. It then descends along the inner side of the brachial artery, to the middle of the arm, where it pierces the deep fascia, and is distributed to the integument of the back part of the lower third of the arm, extending as far as the elbow, where some filaments are lost in the integuments in front of the inner condyle, and others over the olecranon. It communicates with the inner branch of the internal cutaneous nerve.

In some cases the nerve of Wrisberg and intercosto-humeral are connected by two or three filaments, which form a plexus at the back part of the axilla. In other cases, the intercosto-humeral is of large size, and takes the place of the nerve of Wrisberg, receiving merely a filament of communication from the brachial plexus, which represents the latter nerve. In other cases, this filament is wanting, the place of the nerve of Wrisberg being supplied entirely from the intercosto-humeral.

The Median Nerve (Fig. 383) has received its name from the course it takes along the middle of the arm and forearm to the hand, lying between the ulnar and the musculo-spiral and radial nerves. It arises by two roots, one from the outer, and one from the inner cord of the brachial plexus; these embrace the lower part of the axillary artery, uniting either in front or on the outer side of that vessel. As it descends through the arm, it lies at first on the outer side of the brachial artery, crosses that vessel in the middle of its course, usually in front, but occasionally behind it, and lies on its inner side to the bend of the elbow, where it is placed beneath the bicipital fascia, and is separated from the elbow-joint by the Brachialis anticus. In the forearm, it passes between the two heads of the Pronator radii teres, and descends beneath the Flexor sublimis, to within two inches above the annular ligament, where it becomes more superficial, lying between the Flexor sublimis and Flexor carpi radialis, beneath, or rather to the ulnar side of the tendon of the Palmaris longus, covered by the integument and fascia. It then passes beneath the annular ligament into the hand.

Branches. No branches are given off from the median nerve in the arm. In the forearm its branches are, muscular, anterior interosseous, and palmar cutaneous.

The muscular branches supply all the superficial muscles on the front of the forearm, except the Flexor carpi ulnaris. These branches are derived from the nerve near the elbow. The branch furnished to the Pronator radii teres often arises above the joint.

The anterior interosseous supplies the deep muscles on the front of the forearm, except the Flexor carpi ulnaris and inner half of the Flexor profundus digitorum. It accompanies the anterior interosseous artery along the interosseous membrane, in the interval between the Flexor longus pollicis and Flexor profundus digitorum muscles, both of which it supplies, and terminates below in the Pronator quadratus.

The palmar cutaneous branch arises from the median nerve at the lower part of the forearm. It pierces the fascia above the annular ligament, and divides into two branches: of which the outer supplies the skin over the ball of the thumb, and communicates with the external cutaneous nerve; and the inner supplies the integument of the palm of the hand, anastomosing with the cuta-
Fig. 383.—Nerves of the Left Upper Extremity.
neous branch of the ulnar. Both nerves cross the annular ligament previous

to their distribution.

In the palm of the hand, the median nerve is covered by the integument and
palmar fascia, and rests upon the tendons of the Flexor muscles. In this situa-
tion it becomes enlarged, somewhat flattened, of reddish color, and divides into
two branches. Of these, the external supplies a muscular branch to some of the
muscles of the thumb, and digital branches to the thumb and index finger; the
internal branch supplying digital branches to the contiguous sides of the index
and middle, and of the middle and ring fingers.

The branch to the muscles of the thumb is a short nerve, which subdivides to
supply the Abductor, Opponens, and outer head of the Flexor brevis pollicis
muscles; remaining muscles of this group being supplied by the ulnar nerve.

The digital branches are five in number. The first and second pass along the
borders of the thumb, the external branch communicating with branches of the
radial nerve. The third passes along the radial side of the index finger, and
supplies the first Lumbricalis muscle. The fourth subdivides to supply the
adjacent sides of the index and middle fingers, and sends a branch to the second
Lumbricalis muscle. The fifth supplies the adjacent sides of the middle and
ring fingers, and communicates with a branch from the ulnar nerve.

Each digital nerve, opposite the base of the first phalanx, gives off a dorsal
branch, which joins the dorsal digital nerve, and runs along the side of the
dorsum of the finger, ending in the integument over the last phalanx. At the
end of the finger, the digital nerve divides into a palmar and a dorsal branch;
the former of which supplies the extremity of the finger, and the latter ramifies
round and beneath the nail. The digital nerves, as they run along the fingers,
are placed superficial to the digital arteries.

The Ulnar Nerve (Fig. 383) is placed along the inner or ulnar side of the
upper limb, and is distributed to the muscles and integument of the fore-arm
and hand. It is smaller than the median, behind which it is placed, diverging
from it in its course down the arm. It arises from the inner cord of the brachial
plexus, in common with the inner head of the median and the internal cutaneous
nerve. At its commencement, it lies at the inner side of the axillary artery,
and holds the same relation with the brachial artery to the middle of the arm.
From this point it runs obliquely across the internal head of the Triceps, pierces
the internal intermuscular septum, and descends to the groove between the
internal condyle and olecranon, accompanied by the inferior profunda artery.
At the elbow, it rests upon the back of the inner condyle, and passes into the
fore-arm between the two heads of the Flexor carpi ulnaris. In the fore-arm,
it descends in a perfectly straight course along its ulnar side, lying upon the
Flexor profundus digitorum, its upper half being covered by the Flexor carpi
ulnaris, its lower half lying on the outer side of the muscle, covered by the
integument and fascia. The ulnar artery, in the upper third of its course, is
separated from the ulnar nerve by a considerable interval; but in the rest of its
extent, the nerve lies to its inner side. At the wrist, the ulnar nerve crosses
the annular ligament on the outer side of the pisiform bone, a little behind the
ulnar artery, and immediately beyond this bone divides into two branches,
superficial and deep palmar.

The branches of the ulnar nerve are:

- Articular (elbow).
- Muscular.
- Cutaneous.
- Dorsal cutaneous.

In hand:

- Superficial palmar.
- Deep palmar.
- Articular (wrist).

The articular branches distributed to the elbow joint consist of several small
filaments. They arise from the nerve as it lies in the groove between the inner
condyle and olecranon.
The **muscular branches** are two in number, one supplying the Flexor carpi ulnaris, the other, the inner half of the Flexor profundus digitorum. They arise from the trunk of the nerve near the elbow.

The **cutaneous branch** arises from the ulnar nerve about the middle of the fore-arm, and divides into a superficial and deep branch.

The superficial branch (frequently absent) pierces the deep fascia near the wrist, and is distributed to the integument, communicating with a branch of the internal cutaneous nerve.

The deep branch lies on the ulnar artery, which it accompanies to the hand, some filaments entwining round the vessel, which end in the integument of the palm, communicating with branches of the median nerve.

The **dorsal cutaneous branch** arises about two inches above the wrist; it passes backwards beneath the Flexor carpi ulnaris, perforates the deep fascia, and running along the ulnar side of the wrist and hand, supplies the inner side of the little finger, and the adjoining sides of the little and ring fingers; it also sends a communicating filament to that branch of the radial nerve which supplies the adjoining sides of the middle and ring fingers.

The **articular filaments to the wrist** are also supplied by the ulnar nerve.

The **superficial palmar branch** supplies the Palmaris brevis, and the integument on the inner side of the hand, and terminates in two digital branches, which are distributed, one to the ulnar side of the little finger, the other to the adjoining sides of the little and ring fingers, the latter communicating with a branch from the median.

The **deep palmar branch** passes between the Abductor and Flexor brevis minimi digiti muscles, and follows the course of the deep palmar arch beneath the flexor tendons. At its origin, it supplies the muscles of the little finger. As it crosses the deep part of the hand, it sends two branches to each
MUSCULO-SPIRAL.

interosseous space, one for the Dorsal and one for the Palmar interosseous muscle, the branches to the second and third Palmar interossei supplying filaments to the two inner Lumbricales muscles. At its termination between the thumb and index finger, it supplies the Adductor pollicis and the inner head of the Flexor brevis pollicis.

The Musculo-Spiral Nerve (Fig. 384), the largest branch of the brachial plexus, supplies the muscles of the back part of the arm and fore-arm, and the integument of the same parts, as well as that of the hand. It arises from the posterior cord of the brachial plexus by a common trunk with the circumflex nerve. At its commencement it is placed behind the axillary and upper part of the brachial arteries, passing down in front of the tendons of the Latissimus dorsi and Teres major. It winds round the humerus in the spiral groove with the superior profunda artery, passing from the inner to the outer side of the bone, beneath the Triceps muscle. At the outer side of the arm, it descends between the Brachialis anticus and Supinator longus to the front of the external condyle, where it divides into the radial and posterior interosseous nerves.

The branches of the musculo-spiral nerve are:


The muscular branches are divided into internal, posterior, and external; they supply the Triceps, Anconeus, Supinator longus, Extensor carpi radialis longior, and brachialis anticus. These branches are derived from the nerve, at the inner side, back part, and outer side of the arm.

The internal muscular branches supply the inner and middle heads of the Triceps muscle. That to the inner head of the Triceps is a long, slender filament, which lies close to the ulnar nerve, as far as the lower third of the arm.

The posterior muscular branch, of large size, arises from the nerve in the groove between the Triceps and the humerus. It divides into branches which supply the outer head of the Triceps and Anconeus muscles. The branch for the latter muscle is a long, slender filament, which descends in the substance of the Triceps to the Anconeus in the same course with the posterior articular branch from the superior profunda artery.

The external muscular branches supply the Supinator longus, Extensor carpi radialis longior, and, usually, the Brachialis anticus.

The cutaneous branches are three in number, one internal and two external.

The internal cutaneous branch arises in the axillary space, with the inner muscular branch. It is of small size, and passes through the axilla to the inner side of the arm, supplying the integument on its posterior aspect nearly as far as the olecranon.

The two external cutaneous branches perforate the outer head of the Triceps, at its attachment to the humerus. The upper and smaller one follows the course of the cephalic vein to the front of the elbow, supplying the integument of the lower half of the upper arm on its anterior aspect. The lower branch pierces the deep fascia below the insertion of the Deltoïd, and passes down along the outer side of the arm and elbow, and along the back part of the radial side of the fore-arm to the wrist, supplying the integument in its course, and joining, near its termination, with a branch of the external cutaneous nerve.

The radial nerve passes along the front of the radial side of the forearm, to the commencement of its lower third. It lies at first a little to the outer side of the radial artery, concealed beneath the Supinator longus. In the middle third of the fore-arm, it lies beneath the same muscle, in close relation with the outer side of the artery. It quits the artery about three inches above the wrist, passes beneath the tendon of the Supinator longus, and, piercing the deep fascia at the outer border of the fore-arm, divides into two branches.

The external branch, the smaller of the two, supplies the integument of the
SPINAL NERVES.

radial side and ball of the thumb, joining with the posterior branch of the external cutaneous nerve.

The internal branch communicates, above the wrist, with a branch from the external cutaneous, and, on the back of the hand, forms an arch with the dorsal branch of the ulnar nerve. It then divides into four digital nerves, which are distributed as follows: the first supplies the ulnar side of the thumb; the second, the radial side of the index finger; the third, the adjoining sides of the index and middle fingers; and the fourth, the adjacent borders of the middle and ring fingers. The latter nerve communicates with a filament from the dorsal branch of the ulnar nerve.

The posterior interosseous nerve pierces the Supinator brevis, winds to the back of the fore-arm, in the substance of that muscle, and, emerging from its lower border, passes down between the superficial and deep layer of muscles, to the middle of the fore-arm. Considerably diminished in size, it descends on the interosseous membrane, beneath the Extensor secundi internodii pollicis, to the back of the carpus, where it presents a gangliform enlargement from which filaments are distributed to the ligaments and articulations of the carpus. It supplies all the muscles of the radial and posterior brachial regions, excepting the Anconeus, Supinator longus, and Extensor carpi radialis longior.

DORSAL NERVES.

The Dorsal Nerves are twelve in number on each side. The first appears between the first and second dorsal vertebrae, and the last between the last dorsal and first lumbar.

The roots of origin of the dorsal nerves are few in number, of small size, and vary but slightly from the second to the last. Both roots are very slender; the posterior roots only slightly exceeding the anterior in thickness. These roots gradually increase in length from above downwards, and remain in contact with the spinal cord for a distance equal to the height of, at least, two vertebrae, in the lower part of the dorsal region. They then join in the intervertebral foramen, and, at their exit, divide into two branches, a posterior (dorsal), and an anterior (intercostal), branch.

The first and last dorsal nerves are peculiar in several respects (see page 682.

The posterior branches of the dorsal nerves, which are smaller than the intercostal, pass backwards between the transverse processes, and divide into external and internal branches.

The external branches increase in size from above downwards. They pass through the Longissimus dorsi, corresponding to the cellular interval between it and the Sacro-lumbalis, and supply those muscles, as well as their continuations upwards to the head, and the Levatores costarum; the five or six lower nerves also give off cutaneous filaments.

The internal branches of the six upper nerves pass inwards to the interval between the Multifidus spinae, and Semispinalis dorsi muscles, which they supply; and then, piercing the origin of the Rhomboidei and Trapezius, become cutaneous by the side of the spinous processes. The internal branches of the six lower nerves are distributed to the Multifidus spinae, without giving off any cutaneous filaments.

The cutaneous branches of the dorsal nerves are twelve in number, the six upper being derived from the internal branches, and the six lower from the external branches. The former pierce the Rhomboid and Trapezius muscles, close to the spinous processes, and ramify in the integument. They are frequently furnished with gangliform enlargements. The six lower cutaneous branches pierce the Serratus posticus inferior, and Latissimus dorsi, in a line with the angles of the ribs.
INTERCOSTAL.

INTERCOSTAL NERVES.

The Intercostal Nerves (anterior branches of the dorsal nerves) are twelve in number on each side. They are distributed to the parietes of the thorax and abdomen, separately from each other, without being joined in a plexus; in which respect they differ from the other spinal nerves. Each nerve is connected with the adjoining ganglia of the sympathetic by one or two filaments. The intercostal nerves may be divided into two sets, from the difference they present in their distribution. The six upper, with the exception of the first, are limited in their distribution to the parietes of the chest. The six lower supply the parietes of the chest and abdomen.

The Upper Intercostal Nerves pass forwards in the intercostal spaces with the intercostal vessels, being situated below them. At the back of the chest they lie between the pleura and the External intercostal muscle, but are soon placed between the two planes of intercostal muscles as far as the costal cartilages, where they lie between the pleura and the Internal intercostal muscles. Near the sternum, they cross the internal mammary artery, and Triangularis sterni, pierce the Internal intercostal and Pectoralis major muscles, and supply the integument of the mamma and front of the chest, forming the anterior cutaneous nerves of the thorax; the branch from the second nerve becoming joined with the clavicular nerve.

Branches. Numerous slender muscular filaments supply the Intercostal and Triangularis sterni muscles. Some of these branches, at the front of the chest, cross the costal cartilages from one to another intercostal space.

Lateral cutaneous nerves. These are derived from the intercostal nerves, midway between the vertebrae and sternum; they pierce the External intercostal and Serratus magnus muscles, and divide into two branches, anterior and posterior.

The anterior branches are reflected forwards to the side and the fore part of the chest, supplying the integument of the chest and mamma, and the upper digitations of the External oblique.

The posterior branches are reflected backwards, to supply the integment over the scapula and over the Latissimus dorsi.

The first intercostal nerve has no lateral cutaneous branch. The lateral cutaneous branch of the second intercostal nerve is of large size, and named, from its origin and distribution, the intercosto-humeral nerve (Fig. 383). It pierces the External intercostal muscle, crosses the axilla to the inner side of the arm, and joins with a filament from the nerve of Wrisberg. It then pierces the fascia, and supplies the skin of the upper half of the inner and back part of the arm, communicating with the internal cutaneous branch of the musculo-spiral nerve. The size of this nerve is in inverse proportion to the size of the other cutaneous nerves, especially the nerve of Wrisberg. A second intercosto-humeral nerve is frequently given off from the third intercostal. It supplies filaments to the arm-pit and inner side of the arm.

The Lower Intercostal Nerves (excepting the last) have the same arrangement as the upper ones as far as the anterior extremities of the intercostal spaces, where they pass behind the costal cartilages, and between the Internal oblique and Transversalis muscles, to the sheath of the Rectus, which they perforate. They supply the Rectus muscle, and terminate in branches which become subcutaneous near the linea alba. These branches, which are named the anterior cutaneous nerves of the abdomen, supply the integment of the front of the belly: they are directed outwards as far as the lateral cutaneous nerves. The lower intercostal nerves supply the Intercostal and Abdominal muscles, and, about the middle of their course, give off lateral cutaneous branches, which pierce the External intercostal and External oblique muscles, and are distributed to the integument of the abdomen, the anterior branches passing nearly as far for-
wards as the margin of the Rectus; the posterior branches passing to supply the skin over the Latissimus dorsi, where they join the dorsal cutaneous nerves.

**Peculiar Dorsal Nerves.**

*First dorsal nerve.* Its roots of origin are similar to those of a cervical nerve. Its posterior or dorsal branch resembles, in its mode of distribution, the dorsal branches of the cervical nerves. Its anterior branch enters almost wholly into the formation of the brachial plexus, giving off, before it leaves the thorax, a small intercostal branch, which runs along the first intercostal space, and terminates on the front of the chest, by forming the first anterior cutaneous nerve of the thorax. The first intercostal nerve gives off no lateral cutaneous branch.

The last dorsal is larger than the other dorsal nerves. Its anterior branch runs along the lower border of the last rib in front of the Quadratus lumborum, perforates the aponeurosis of the Transversalis, and passes forwards between it and the Internal oblique, to be distributed in the same manner as the preceding nerves. It communicates with the ilio-hypogastric branch of the lumbar plexus, and is occasionally connected with the first lumbar nerve by a slender branch, the dorsi-lumbar nerve, which descends in the substance of the Quadratus lumborum.

The lateral cutaneous branch of the last dorsal is remarkable for its large size; it perforates the Internal and External oblique muscles, passes downwards over the crest of the ilium, and is distributed to the integument of the front of the hip, some of its filaments extending as low down as the trochanter major.

**Lumbar Nerves.**

The Lumbar Nerves are five in number on each side; the first appears between the first and second lumbar vertebrae, and the last between the last lumbar and the base of the sacrum.

The roots of the lumbar nerves are the largest, and their filaments the most numerous, of all the spinal nerves, and they are closely aggregated together upon the lower end of the cord. The anterior roots are the smaller; but there is not the same disproportion between them and the posterior roots as in the cervical nerves. The roots of these nerves have a vertical direction, and are of considerable length, more especially the lower ones, since the spinal cord does not extend beyond the first lumbar vertebra. The roots become joined in the intervertebral foramina; and the nerves, so formed, divide at their exit into two branches, anterior and posterior.

The posterior branches of the lumbar nerves diminish in size from above downwards; they pass backwards between the transverse processes, and divide into external and internal branches.

The External branches supply the Erector spinae and Intertransverse muscles. From the three upper branches, cutaneous nerves are derived, which pierce the Sacro-lumbalis and Latissimus dorsi muscles, and descend over the back part of the crest of the ilium, to be distributed to the integument of the gluteal region, some of the filaments passing as far as the trochanter major.

The internal branches, the smaller, pass inwards close to the articular processes of the vertebrae, and supply the Multifidus spinae and Interspinales muscles.

The anterior branches of the lumbar nerves increase in size from above downwards. At their origin, they communicate with the lumbar ganglia of the sympathetic by long slender filaments, which accompany the lumbar arteries round the sides of the bodies of the vertebrae, beneath the Psoas muscle. The nerves pass obliquely outwards behind the Psoas magnus, or between its fasciculi, distributing filaments to it and the Quadratus lumborum. The anterior branches of the four upper nerves are connected together in this situation by anastomotic
loops, and form the lumbar plexus. The anterior branch of the fifth lumbar, joined with a branch from the fourth, descends across the base of the sacrum to join the anterior branch of the first sacral nerve, and assist in the formation of the sacral plexus. The cord resulting from the union of these two nerves is called the lumbo-sacral nerve.

Lumbar Plexus.

The Lumbar Plexus is formed by the loops of communication between the anterior branches of the four upper lumbar nerves. The plexus is narrow above, and occasionally connected with the last dorsal by a slender branch, the dorsi-lumbar nerve; it is broad below, where it is joined to the sacral plexus by the lumbo-sacral cord. It is situated in the substance of the Psoas muscle near its posterior part, in front of the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae.

Fig. 385.—The Lumbar Plexus and its Branches.

The mode in which the plexus is formed is the following: The first lumbar nerve gives off the ilio-hypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves, and a communicating branch to the second lumbar nerve. The second gives off the external cutaneous and genito-crural, and a communicating branch to the third nerve. The third nerve gives a descending filament to the fourth, and divides into two branches which assist in forming the anterior crural and obturator nerves; sometimes, also, it furnishes a part of the accessory obturator. The fourth nerve completes the formation of the anterior crural, and the obturator, and
gives off a communicating branch to the fifth lumbar; sometimes it also furnishes part of the accessory obturator.

The branches of the lumbar plexus are the

- Ilio-hypogastric
- Ilio-inguinal
- Genito-crural
- External cutaneous

These branches may be divided into two groups, according to their mode of distribution. One group, including the ilio-hypogastric, ilio-inguinal, and part of the genito-crural nerves, supplies the lower part of the parietes of the abdomen; the other group, which includes the remaining nerves, supplies the forepart of the thigh and inner side of the leg.

The **ilio-hypogastric nerve** (superior musculo-cutaneous) arises from the first lumbar nerve. It pierces the outer border of the Psoas muscle at its upper part, and crosses obliquely in front of the Quadratus lumborum to the crest of the ilium. It then perforates the Transversalis muscle at its back part, and divides between it and the Internal oblique into two branches, iliac and hypogastric.

The iliac branch pierces the Internal and External oblique muscles immediately above the crest of the ilium, and is distributed to the integument of the gluteal region, behind the lateral cutaneous branch of the last dorsal nerve (Fig. 388). The size of this nerve bears an inverse proportion to that of the cutaneous branch of the last dorsal nerve.

The **hypogastric branch** (Fig. 386) continues onwards between the Internal oblique and Transversalis muscles. It first pierces the Internal oblique, and near the middle line perforates the External oblique above the external abdominal ring, and is distributed to the integument covering the hypogastric region.

The **ilio-inguinal nerve** (inferior musculo-cutaneous), smaller than the preceding, arises with it from the first lumbar nerve. It pierces the outer border of the Psoas just below the ilio-hypogastric, and, passing obliquely across the Quadratus lumborum and Iliacus muscles, perforates the transversalis, near the fore part of the crest of the ilium, and communicates with the ilio-hypogastric nerve between that muscle and the Internal oblique. The nerve then pierces the Internal oblique, distributing filaments to it, and, accompanying the spermatic cord, escapes at the external abdominal ring, and is distributed to the integument of the scrotum and upper and inner part of the thigh in the male, and to the labium in the female. The size of this nerve is in inverse proportion to that of the ilio-hypogastric. Occasionally it is very small, and ends by joining the ilio-hypogastric; in such cases, a branch from the ilio-hypogastric takes the place of the ilio-inguinal, or the latter nerve may be altogether absent.

The **genito-crural nerve** arises from the second lumbar, and by a few fibres from the cord of communication between it and the first. It passes obliquely from the substance of the Psoas, descends on its surface near Pouchart's ligament, and divides into a genital and a crural branch.

The genital branch descends on the external iliac artery, sending a few filaments round that vessel; it then pierces the fascia transversalis, and, passing through the internal abdominal ring, descends along the back part of the spermatic cord to the scrotum, and supplies, in the male, the Cremaster muscle. In the female, it accompanies the round ligament, and is lost upon it.

The crural branch passes along the inner margin of the Psoas muscle, beneath Pouchart's ligament, into the thigh, where it pierces the fascia lata, and is distributed to the integument of the upper and anterior aspect of the thigh, communicating with the middle cutaneous nerve.

A few filaments from this nerve may be traced on to the femoral artery; they are derived from the nerve as it passes beneath Pouchart's ligament.
The **External Cutaneous Nerve** arises from the second lumbar, or from the loop between it and the third. It perforates the outer border of the Psoas muscle about its middle, and crosses the Iliacus muscle obliquely, to the notch immediately beneath the anterior superior spine of the ilium, where it passes beneath Poupart’s ligament into the thigh, and divides into two branches of nearly equal size.

The **anterior branch** descends in an aponeurotic canal formed in the fascia lata, becomes superficial about four inches below Poupart’s ligament, and divides into branches, which are distributed to the integument along the anterior and outer part of the thigh, as far down as the knee. This nerve occasionally communicates with the long saphenous nerve.

The **posterior branch** pierces the fascia lata, and subdivides into branches which pass across the outer and posterior surface of the thigh, supplying the integument as far as the middle of the thigh.

The **Obturator Nerve** supplies the Obturator externus and Adductor muscles of the thigh, the articulations of the hip and knee, and occasionally the integument of the thigh and leg. It arises by two branches; one from the third, the other from the fourth lumbar nerve. It descends through the inner fibres of the Psoas muscle, and emerges from its inner border near the brim of the pelvis; it then runs along the lateral wall of the pelvis, above the obturator vessels, to the upper part of the obturator foramen, where it enters the thigh, and divides into an anterior and a posterior branch separated by the Adductor brevis muscle.

The **anterior branch** (Fig. 387) passes down in front of the Adductor brevis, being covered by the Pectineus and Adductor longus; and at the lower border of the latter muscle, communicates with the internal cutaneous and internal saphenous nerves, forming a kind of plexus. It then descends upon the femoral artery, upon which it is finally distributed.

This nerve, near the obturator foramen, gives off an articular branch to the hip-joint. Behind the Pectineus, it distributes muscular branches to the Adductor longus and Gracilis, and occasionally to the Adductor brevis and Pectineus, and receives a communicating branch from the accessory obturator nerve.

Occasionally this communicating branch is continued down, as a cutaneous branch, to the thigh and leg. This occasional cutaneous branch emerges from the lower border of the Adductor longus, descends along the posterior margin of the Sartorius to the inner side of the knee, where it pierces the deep fascia, communicates with the long saphenous nerve, and is distributed to the integument of the inner side of the leg, as low down as its middle. When the branch is small, its place is supplied by the internal cutaneous nerve.

The **posterior branch** of the obturator nerve pierces the Obturator externus, and passes behind the Adductor brevis to the front of the Adductor magnus, where it divides into numerous muscular branches, which supply the Obturator externus, the Adductor magnus, and occasionally the Adductor brevis.

The **articular branch** for the knee-joint perforates the lower part of the Adductor magnus, and enters the popliteal space; it then descends upon the popliteal artery, as far as the back part of the knee-joint, where it perforates the posterior ligament, and is distributed to the synovial membrane. It gives filaments to the artery in its course.

The **Accessory Obturator Nerve** (Fig. 385) is of small size, and arises either from the obturator nerve near its origin, or by separate filaments from the third and fourth lumbar nerves. It descends along the inner border of the Psoas muscle, crosses the body of the pubes, and passes beneath the Pectineus muscle, where it divides into numerous branches. One of these supplies the Pectineus, penetrating its under surface; another is distributed to the hip-joint; while a third communicates with the anterior branch of the obturator nerve. This branch, when of large size, is prolonged (as already mentioned), as a cutaneous branch, to the leg. The accessory obturator nerve is not constantly
found; when absent, the hip-joint receives branches from the obturator nerve. Occasionally it is very small, and becomes lost in the capsule of the hip-joint.

The Anterior Crural Nerve (Figs. 385, 387) is the largest branch of the lumbar plexus. It supplies muscular branches to the Iliacus, Pectineus, and all the muscles on the front of the thigh, excepting the Tensor vaginalis femoris; cutaneous filaments to the front and inner side of the thigh, and to the leg and foot; and articular branches to the knee. It arises from the third and fourth lumbar nerves, receiving also a fasciculus from the second. It descends through the fibres of the Psoas muscle, emerging from it at the lower part of its outer border; and passes down between it and the Iliacus, and beneath Poupart's ligament, into the thigh, where it becomes somewhat flattened, and divides into an anterior or cutaneous, and a posterior or muscular part. Beneath Poupart's ligament, it is separated from the femoral artery by the Psoas muscle, and lies beneath the iliac fascia.

Within the pelvis, the anterior crural nerve gives off from its outer side some small branches to the Iliacus, and a branch to the femoral artery, which is distributed upon the upper part of that vessel. The origin of this branch varies; it occasionally arises higher than usual, or it may arise lower down in the thigh.

External to the pelvis, the following branches are given off:

**From the Anterior Division.**
- Middle cutaneous.
- Internal cutaneous.
- Long saphenous.

**From the Posterior Division.**
- Muscular.
- Articular.

The middle cutaneous nerve (Fig. 386) pierces the fascia lata (occasionally the Sartorius also) about three inches below Poupart's ligament, and divides into two branches, which descend in immediate proximity along the fore part of the thigh, distributing numerous branches to the integument as low as the front of the knee, where the middle cutaneous communicates with a branch of the internal saphenous nerve. Its outer branch communicates, above, with the crural branch of the genito-crural nerve; and the inner branch with the internal cutaneous nerve below. The Sartorius muscle is supplied by this or the following nerve.

The internal cutaneous nerve passes obliquely across the upper part of the sheath of the femoral artery, and divides in front, or at the inner side of that vessel, into two branches, anterior and internal.

The anterior branch perforates the fascia lata at the lower third of the thigh, and divides into two branches, one of which supplies the integument as low down as the inner side of the knee; the other crosses the patella to the outer side of the joint, communicating in its course with the long saphenous nerve. A cutaneous filament is occasionally given off from this nerve, which accompanies the long saphenous vein; and it sometimes communicates with the internal branch of the nerve.

The inner branch descends along the posterior border of the Sartorius muscle to the knee, where it pierces the fascia lata, communicates with the long saphenous nerve, and gives off several cutaneous branches. The nerve then passes down the inner side of the leg, to the integument of which it is distributed. This nerve, beneath the fascia lata, joins in a plexiform network, by uniting with branches of the long saphenous and obturator nerves (Fig. 387). When the communicating branch from the latter nerve is large, and continued to the integument of the leg, the inner branch of the internal cutaneous is small, and terminates at the plexus, occasionally giving off a few cutaneous filaments.

This nerve, before subdividing, gives off a few filaments, which pierce the fascia lata, to supply the integument of the inner side of the thigh, accompanying the long saphenous vein. One of these filaments passes through the saphenous opening; a second becomes subcutaneous about the middle of the thigh; and a third pierces the fascia at its lower third.
The External Cutaneous Nerve arises from the second lumbar, or from the loop between it and the third. It perforates the outer border of the Psoas muscle about its middle, and crosses the Iliacus muscle obliquely, to the notch immediately beneath the anterior superior spine of the ilium, where it passes beneath Poupart's ligament into the thigh, and divides into two branches of nearly equal size.

The anterior branch descends in an aponeurotic canal formed in the fascia lata, becomes superficial about four inches below Poupart's ligament, and divides into branches, which are distributed to the integument along the anterior and outer part of the thigh, as far down as the knee. This nerve occasionally communicates with the long saphenous nerve.

The posterior branch pierces the fascia lata, and subdivides into branches which pass across the outer and posterior surface of the thigh, supplying the integument as far as the middle of the thigh.

The Obturator Nerve supplies the Obturator externus and Adductor muscles of the thigh, the articulations of the hip and knee, and occasionally the integument of the thigh and leg. It arises by two branches; one from the third, the other from the fourth lumbar nerve. It descends through the inner fibres of the Psoas muscle, and emerges from its inner border near the brim of the pelvis; it then runs along the lateral wall of the pelvis, above the obturator vessels, to the upper part of the obturator foramen, where it enters the thigh, and divides into an anterior and a posterior branch separated by the Adductor brevis muscle.

The anterior branch (Fig. 387) passes down in front of the Adductor brevis, being covered by the Pectineus and Adductor longus; and at the lower border of the latter muscle, communicates with the internal cutaneous and internal saphenous nerves, forming a kind of plexus. It then descends upon the femoral artery, upon which it is finally distributed.

This nerve, near the obturator foramen, gives off an articular branch to the hip-joint. Behind the Pectineus, it distributes muscular branches to the Adductor longus and Gracilis, and occasionally to the Adductor brevis and Pectineus, and receives a communicating branch from the accessory obturator nerve.

Occasionally this communicating branch is continued down, as a cutaneous branch, to the thigh and leg. This occasional cutaneous branch emerges from the lower border of the Adductor longus, descends along the posterior margin of the Sartorius to the inner side of the knee, where it pierces the deep fascia, communicates with the long saphenous nerve, and is distributed to the integument of the inner side of the leg, as low down as its middle. When the branch is small, its place is supplied by the internal cutaneous nerve.

The posterior branch of the obturator nerve pierces the Obturator externus, and passes behind the Adductor brevis to the front of the Adductor magnus, where it divides into numerous muscular branches, which supply the Obturator externus, the Adductor magnus, and occasionally the Adductor brevis.

The articular branch for the knee-joint perforates the lower part of the Adductor magnus, and enters the popliteal space; it then descends upon the popliteal artery, as far as the back part of the knee-joint, where it perforates the posterior ligament, and is distributed to the synovial membrane. It gives filaments to the artery in its course.

The Accessory Obturator Nerve (Fig. 385) is of small size, and arises either from the obturator nerve near its origin, or by separate filaments from the third and fourth lumbar nerves. It descends along the inner border of the Psoas muscle, crosses the body of the pubes, and passes beneath the Pectineus muscle, where it divides into numerous branches. One of these supplies the Pectineus, penetrating its under surface; another is distributed to the hip-joint; while a third communicates with the anterior branch of the obturator nerve. This branch, when of large size, is prolonged (as already mentioned), as a cutaneous branch, to the leg. The accessory obturator nerve is not constantly
found; when absent, the hip-joint receives branches from the obturator nerve. Occasionally it is very small, and becomes lost in the capsule of the hip-joint.

The Anterior Crural Nerve (Figs. 385, 387) is the largest branch of the lumbar plexus. It supplies muscular branches to the Iliacus, Pectineus, and all the muscles on the front of the thigh, excepting the Tensor vaginae femoris; cutaneous filaments to the front and inner side of the thigh, and to the leg and foot; and articular branches to the knee. It arises from the third and fourth lumbar nerves, receiving also a fasciculus from the second. It descends through the fibres of the Psoas muscle, emerging from it at the lower part of its outer border; and passes down between it and the Iliacus, and beneath Poupart's ligament, into the thigh, where it becomes somewhat flattened, and divides into an anterior or cutaneous, and a posterior or muscular part. Beneath Poupart's ligament, it is separated from the femoral artery by the Psoas muscle, and lies beneath the ilioc costalis.

Within the pelvis, the anterior crural nerve gives off from its outer side some small branches to the Iliacus, and a branch to the femoral artery, which is distributed upon the upper part of that vessel. The origin of this branch varies; it occasionally arises higher than usual, or it may arise lower down in the thigh.

External to the pelvis, the following branches are given off:—

From the Anterior Division. From the Posterior Division.
Middle cutaneous. Muscular.
Internal cutaneous. Articular.
Long saphenous.

The middle cutaneous nerve (Fig. 386) pierces the fascia lata (occasionally the Sartorius also) about three inches below Poupart's ligament, and divides into two branches, which descend in immediate proximity along the fore part of the thigh, distributing numerous branches to the integument as low as the front of the knee, where the middle cutaneous communicates with a branch of the internal saphenous nerve. Its outer branch communicates, above, with the crural branch of the genito-crural nerve; and the inner branch with the internal cutaneous nerve below. The Sartorius muscle is supplied by this or the following nerve.

The internal cutaneous nerve passes obliquely across the upper part of the sheath of the femoral artery, and divides in front, or at the inner side of that vessel, into two branches, anterior and internal.

The anterior branch perforates the fascia lata at the lower third of the thigh, and divides into two branches, one of which supplies the integument as low down as the inner side of the knee; the other crosses the patella to the outer side of the joint, communicating in its course with the long saphenous nerve. A cutaneous filament is occasionally given off from this nerve, which accompanies the long saphenous vein; and it sometimes communicates with the internal branch of the nerve.

The inner branch descends along the posterior border of the Sartorius muscle to the knee, where it pierces the fascia lata, communicates with the long saphenous nerve, and gives off several cutaneous branches. The nerve then passes down the inner side of the leg, to the integument of which it is distributed. This nerve, beneath the fascia lata, joins in a plexiform network, by uniting with branches of the long saphenous and obturator nerves (Fig. 387). When the communicating branch from the latter nerve is large, and continued to the integument of the leg, the inner branch of the internal cutaneous is small, and terminates at the plexus, occasionally giving off a few cutaneous filaments.

This nerve, before subdividing, gives off a few filaments, which pierce the fascia lata, to supply the integument of the inner side of the thigh, accompanying the long saphenous vein. One of these filaments passes through the saphenous opening; a second becomes subcutaneous about the middle of the thigh; and a third pierces the fascia at its lower third.
The long, or internal saphenous nerve, is the largest of the cutaneous branches of the anterior crural. It approaches the femoral artery where this vessel passes beneath the Sartorius, and lies on its outer side, beneath the aponeurotic covering, as far as the opening in the lower part of the Adductor magnus. It then quits the artery, and descends vertically along the inner side of the knee, beneath the Sartorius, pierces the deep fascia between the tendons of the Sartorius and Gracilis, and becomes subcutaneous. The nerve then passes along the inner side of the leg, accompanied by the internal saphenous vein, descends behind the internal border of the tibia, and, at the lower third of the leg, divides into two branches: one continues its course along the margin of the tibia, terminating at the inner ankle; the other passes in front of the ankle, and is distributed to the integument along the inner side of the foot, as far as the great toe.

Branches. The long saphenous nerve, about the middle of the thigh, gives off a communicating branch, which joins the plexus formed by the obturator and internal cutaneous nerves.

At the inner side of the knee, it gives off a large branch (n. cutaneus patellae), which pierces the Sartorius and fascia lata, and is distributed to the integument in front of the patella. This nerve communicates above the knee with the anterior branch of the internal cutaneous; below the knee, with other branches of the long saphenous; and, on the outer side of the joint, with branches of the middle and external cutaneous nerves, forming a plexiform network, the plexus patellae. The cutaneous nerve of the patella is occasionally small, and terminates by joining the internal cutaneous, which supplies its place in front of the knee.

Below the knee, the branches of the long saphenous nerve are distributed to the integument of the front and inner side of the leg, communicating with the cutaneous branches from the internal cutaneous, or obturator nerve.

The deep group of branches of the anterior crural nerve are muscular and articular.

The muscular branches supply the Pectineus and all the muscles on the front of the thigh except the Tensor vaginae femoris, which is supplied from the superior gluteal nerve, and the Sartorius, which is supplied by filaments from the middle or internal cutaneous nerves.

The branches to the Pectineus, usually two in number, pass inwards behind the femoral vessels, and enter the muscle on its anterior surface.

The branch to the Rectus muscle enters its under surface high up.

The branch to the Vastus externus, of large size, follows the course of the descending branch of the external circumflex artery, to the lower part of the muscle. It gives off an articular filament.

The branches to the Vastus internus and Crureus enter the middle of those muscles.

The articular branches, two in number, supply the knee-joint. One, a long slender filament, is derived from the nerve to the Vastus externus. It penetrates the capsular ligament of the joint on its anterior aspect. The other is derived from the nerve to the Vastus internus. It descends along the internal intermuscular septum, accompanying the deep branch of the anastomotica magna artery, pierces the capsular ligament of the joint on its inner side, and supplies the synovial membrane.

The Sacral and Coccygeal Nerves.

The sacral nerves are five in number on each side. The four upper ones pass from the sacral canal, through the sacral foramina; the fifth through the foramen between the sacrum and coccyx.

The roots of origin of the upper sacral (and lumbar) nerves are the largest of all the spinal nerves; whilst those of the lowest sacral and coccygeal nerves are the smallest.
The roots of these nerves are of very considerable length, being longer than those of any of the other spinal nerves; on account of the spinal cord not extending beyond the first lumbar vertebra. From their great length, and the appearance they present in connection with the spinal canal, the roots of origin of these nerves are called collectively the cauda equina. Each sacral and coccygeal nerve divides into two branches, anterior and posterior.

The posterior sacral nerves are small, diminish in size from above downwards, and emerge, except the last, from the sacral canal by the posterior sacral foramina.

The three upper ones are covered, at their exit from the sacral canal, by the Multifidus spine, and divide into external and internal branches.

The internal branches are small, and supply the Multifidus spine.

The external branches communicate with one another, and with the last lumbar and fourth sacral nerves, by means of anastomosing loops. These branches pass outwards, to the outer surface of the great sacro-sciatic ligament, where they form a second series of loops beneath the Gluteus maximus. Cutaneous branches from this second series of loops, usually three in number, pierce the Gluteus maximus: one near the posterior inferior spine of the ilium; another opposite the end of the sacrum; and the third, midway between the other two. They supply the integument over the posterior part of the gluteal region.

The two lower posterior sacral nerves are situated below the Multifidus spine. They are of small size, and join with each other, and with the coccygeal nerve, so as to form loops on the back of the sacrum, filaments from which supply the integument over the coccyx.

The coccygeal nerve divides into its anterior and posterior branch in the spinal canal. The posterior branch is the smaller. It receives, as already mentioned, a communicating branch from the last sacral, and is lost in the fibrous structure on the back of the coccyx.

The anterior sacral nerves diminish in size from above downwards. The four upper ones emerge from the anterior sacral foramina: the anterior branch of the fifth, together with the coccygeal nerve between the sacrum and the coccyx. All the anterior sacral nerves communicate with the sacral ganglia of the sympathetic, at their exit from the sacral foramina. The first nerve, of large size, unites with the lumbo-sacral nerve. The second equals in size the preceding, with which it joins. The third, about one-fourth the size of the second, unites with the preceding nerves, to form the sacral plexus.

The fourth anterior sacral nerve sends a branch to join the sacral plexus. The remaining portion of the nerve divides into visceral and muscular branches: and a communicating filament descends to join the fifth sacral nerve. The visceral branches are distributed to the viscera of the pelvis, communicating with the sympathetic nerve. These branches ascend upon the rectum and bladder: in the female, upon the vagina and bladder, communicating with branches of the sympathetic to form the hypogastric plexus. The muscular branches are distributed to the Levator ani, Coccygeus, and Sphincter ani. Cutaneous filaments arise from the latter branch, which supply the integument between the anus and coccyx.

The fifth anterior sacral nerve, after passing from the lower end of the sacral canal, pierces the Coccygeus muscle, and descends upon its anterior surface to the tip of the coccyx, where it perforates that muscle, to be distributed to the integument over the back part and sides of the coccyx. This nerve communicates above with the fourth sacral, and below with the coccygeal nerve, and supplies the Coccygeus muscle.

The anterior branch of the coccygeal nerve is a delicate filament which escapes at the termination of the sacral canal. It pierces the sacro-sciatic ligament and Coccygeus muscle, is joined by a branch from the fifth anterior sacral, and becomes lost in the integument at the back part and side of the coccyx.
SPINAL NERVES.

SACRAL PLEXUS.

The Sacral Plexus is formed by the lumbo-sacral, the anterior branches of the three upper sacral nerves, and part of that of the fourth. These nerves proceed in different directions; the upper ones obliquely downwards and outwards, the lower one nearly horizontally, and they all unite into a single, broad, flat cord. The sacral plexus is triangular in form, its base corresponding with the exit of the nerves from the sacrum, its apex with the lower part of the great sacro-sciatic foramen. It rests upon the anterior surface of the Pyriformis, and is covered in front by the pelvic fascia, which separates it from the sciatic and pudic branches of the internal iliac artery, and from the viscera of the pelvis.

The branches of the sacral plexus are:

- Muscular.
- Superior gluteal.
- Pudic.
- Small sciatic.
- Great sciatic.

The muscular branches supply the Pyriformis, Obturator internus, the two Gemelli, and the Quadratus femoris. The branch to the Pyriformis arises either from the plexus, or from the upper sacral nerves: the branch to the Obturator internus arises at the junction of the lumbo-sacral and first sacral nerves; it crosses behind the spine of the ischium, and passes through the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen to the inner surface of the Obturator internus; the branch to the Gemellus superior arises from the lower part of the plexus, near the pudic nerve; the small branch to the Gemellus inferior and Quadratus femoris also arises from the lower part of the plexus: it passes beneath the Gemelli and tendon of the Obturator internus, and supplies an articular branch to the hip-joint. This branch is occasionally derived from the upper part of the great sciatic nerve.

The Superior Gluteal Nerve (Fig. 389) arises from the back part of the lumbo-sacral; it passes from the pelvis through the great sacro-sciatic foramen above the Pyriformis muscle, accompanied by the gluteal vessels, and divides into a superior and an inferior branch.

The superior branch follows the line of origin of the Gluteus minimus, and supplies it and the Gluteus medius.

The inferior branch crosses obliquely between the Gluteus minimus and medius, distributing filaments to both these muscles, and terminates in the Tensor vaginae femoris, extending nearly to its lower end.

The Pudic Nerve arises from the lower part of the sacral plexus, and leaves the pelvis, through the great sacro-sciatic foramen, below the Pyriformis. It then crosses the spine of the ischium, and re-enters the pelvis through the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen. It accompanies the pudic vessels upwards and forwards along the outer wall of the ischio-rectal fossa, being covered by the obturator fascia, and divides into two terminal branches, the perineal nerve and the dorsal nerve of the penis. Near its origin, it gives off the inferior hemorrhoidal nerve.

The inferior hemorrhoidal nerve is occasionally derived from the sacral plexus. It passes across the ischio-rectal fossa, with its accompanying vessels, towards the lower end of the rectum, and is distributed to the External sphincter and the integument round the anus. Branches of this nerve communicate with the inferior pudendal and superficial perineal nerves on the inner margin of the thigh.

The perineal nerve, the inferior and larger of the two terminal branches of the pudic, is situated below the pudic artery. It accompanies the superficial perineal artery in the perineum, dividing into cutaneous and muscular branches.

The cutaneous branches (superficial perineal) are two in number, posterior and anterior. The posterior branch passes to the back part of the ischio-rectal fossa, distributing filaments to the Sphincter ani and integument in front of the anus, which communicate with the inferior hemorrhoidal nerve; it then passes
Fig. 388.—Cutaneous Nerves of Lower Extremity. Posterior View.

Fig. 389.—Nerves of the Lower Extremity. Posterior View.
SPINAL NERVES.

forwards, with the anterior branch, to the back of the scrotum, communicating with the anterior branch and with the inferior pudendal. The anterior branch passes to the fore part of the ischio-rectal fossa, in front of the preceding, and accompanies it to the scrotum and under part of the penis. This branch gives one or two filaments to the Levator ani.

The muscular branches are distributed to the Transversus perinei, Accelerator urinae, Erector penis, and Compressor urethrae. The nerve of the bulb supplies the corpus spongiosum; some of its filaments run for some distance on the surface before penetrating to the interior.

The dorsal nerve of the penis is the superior division of the pudic nerve; it accompanies the pudic artery along the ramus of the ischium, and between the two layers of the deep perineal fascia; it then pierces the suspensory ligament of the penis, and accompanies the arteria dorsalis penis to the glans, to which it is distributed. On the penis, this nerve gives off a cutaneous branch, which runs along the side of the organ; it is joined with branches of the sympathetic, and supplies the integument of the upper surface and sides of the penis and prepuce, giving a large branch to the corpus cavernosum.

In the female, the pudic nerve is distributed to the parts analogous to those in the male; its superior division terminating in the clitoris, its inferior in the external labia and perineum.

The Small Sciatic Nerve (Fig. 389) supplies the integument of the perineum and back part of the thigh and leg, and one muscle, the Gluteus maximus. It is usually formed by the union of two branches, which arise from the lower part of the sacral plexus. It issues from the pelvis below the Pyriformis muscle, descends beneath the Gluteus maximus with the sciatic artery, and at the lower border of that muscle passes along the back part of the thigh, beneath the fascia lata, to the lower part of the popliteal region, where it pierces the fascia and becomes cutaneous. It then accompanies the external saphenous vein below the middle of the leg, its terminal filaments communicating with the external saphenous nerve.

The branches of the small sciatic nerve are muscular (inferior gluteal) and cutaneous.

The inferior gluteal consist of several large branches given off to the under surface of the Gluteus maximus, near its lower part.

The cutaneous branches consist of two groups, internal and ascending.

The internal cutaneous branches are distributed to the skin at the upper and inner side of the thigh, on its posterior aspect. One branch, longer than the rest, the inferior pudendal, curves forward below the tuber ischii, pierces the fascia lata on the outer side of the ramus of the ischium, and is distributed to the integument of the scrotum, communicating with the superficial perineal nerve.

The ascending cutaneous branches consist of two or three filaments, which turn upwards round the lower border of the Gluteus maximus, to supply the integument covering its surface. One or two filaments occasionally descend along the outer side of the thigh, supplying the integument as far as the middle of that region.

Two or three branches are given off from the lesser sciatic nerve as it descends beneath the fascia of the thigh; they supply the integument of the back part of the thigh, popliteal region, and upper part of the leg.

The Great Sciatic Nerve (Fig. 389) supplies nearly the whole of the integument of the leg, the muscles of the back of the thigh, and those of the leg and foot. It is the largest nervous cord in the body, measuring three-quarters of an inch in breadth, and is the continuation of the lower part of the sacral plexus. It passes out of the pelvis through the great sacro-sciatic foramen, below the Pyriformis muscle. It descends between the trochanter major and tuberosity of the ischium along the back part of the thigh to about its lower third, where it divides into two large branches, the internal and external popliteal nerves.
GREAT SCIATIC.

This division may take place at any point between the sacral plexus and the lower third of the thigh. When the division occurs at the plexus, the two nerves descend together, side by side; or they may be separated, at their commencement, by the interposition of part or the whole of the Pyriformis muscle. As the nerve descends along the back of the thigh, it rests at first upon the External rotator muscles, together with the small sciatic nerve and artery, being covered by the Gluteus maximus; lower down, it lies upon the Adductor magnus, and is covered by the long head of the Biceps.

The branches of the nerve, before its division, are articular and muscular.

The articular branches arise from the upper part of the nerve; they supply the hip-joint, perforating its fibrous capsule posteriorly. These branches are sometimes derived from the sacral plexus.

The muscular branches are distributed to the Flexors of the leg: viz., the Biceps, Semitendinosus, and Semimembranosus, and a branch to the Adductor magnus. These branches are given off beneath the Biceps muscle.

The Internal Popliteal Nerve, the larger of the two terminal branches of the great sciatic, descends along the back part of the thigh, through the middle of the popliteal space, to the lower part of the Popliteus muscle, where it passes with the artery beneath the arch of the Soleus, and becomes the posterior tibial. It lies at first very superficial, and at the outer side of the popliteal vessels; opposite the knee-joint, it is in close relation with the vessels, and crosses the artery to its inner side.

The branches of this nerve are articular, muscular, and a cutaneous branch, the external or short saphenous nerve.

The articular branches, usually three in number, supply the knee-joint: two of these branches accompany the superior and inferior internal articular arteries; and a third, the azygos.

The muscular branches, four or five in number, arise from the nerve as it lies between the two heads of the Gastrocnemius muscle; they supply that muscle, the Plantaris, Soleus, and Popliteus. The nerves which supply the Popliteus turn round its lower border and are distributed to its deep surface.

The external or short saphenous nerve (Fig. 388) descends between the two heads of the Gastrocnemius muscle, and, about the middle of the back of the leg, pierces the deep fascia, and receives a communicating branch (communicans peronei) from the external popliteal nerve. The nerve then continues its course down the leg near the outer margin of the tendon Achilles, in company with the external saphenous vein, winds round the outer malleolus, and is distributed to the integument along the outer side of the foot and little toe, communicating on the dorsum of the foot with the musculo-cutaneous nerve.

The posterior tibial nerve (Fig. 389) commences at the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, and passes along the back part of the leg with the posterior tibial vessels to the interval between the inner malleolus and the heel, where it divides into the external and internal plantar nerves. It lies upon the deep muscles of the leg, and is covered by the deep fascia, the superficial muscles, and integument. In the upper part of its course, it lies to the inner side of the posterior tibial artery; but it soon crosses that vessel, and lies to its outer side as far as the ankle. In the lower third of the leg, it is placed parallel with the inner margin of the tendon Achilles.

The branches of the posterior tibial nerve are muscular and plantar-cutaneous.

The muscular branches arise either separately or by a common trunk from the upper part of the nerve. They supply the Tibialis posterior, Flexor longus digitorum, and Flexor longus politis muscles; the branch to the latter muscle accompanying the peroneal artery.

The plantar cutaneous branch perforates the internal annular ligament, and supplies the integument of the heel and inner side of the sole of the foot.

The internal plantar nerve (Fig. 390), the larger of the two terminal branches of the posterior tibial, accompanies the internal plantar artery along the inner
side of the foot. From its origin at the inner ankle it passes forwards between the Abductor pollicis and Flexor brevis digitorum, divides opposite the bases of the metatarsal bones into four digital branches, and communicates with the external plantar nerve.

Fig. 390.—The Plantar Nerves.

Branches. In its course, the internal plantar nerve gives off cutaneous branches which pierce the plantar fascia, and supply the integument of the sole of the foot; muscular branches, which supply the Abductor pollicis and Flexor brevis digitorum; articular branches to the articulations of the tarsus and metatarsus; and four digital branches. These pierce the plantar fascia in the clefts between the toes, and are distributed in the following manner: The first supplies the inner border of the great toe, and sends a filament to the Flexor brevis pollicis muscle; the second bifurcates, to supply the adjacent sides of the great and second toes, sending a filament to the first Lumbricals muscle; the third digital branch supplies the adjacent sides of the second and third toes, and the second Lumbricals muscle; the fourth supplies the corresponding sides of the third and fourth toes, and receives a communicating branch from the external plantar nerve. It will be observed, that the distribution of these branches is precisely similar to that of the median nerve in the hand. Each digital nerve gives off cutaneous and articular filaments; and opposite the last phalanx sends a dorsal branch, which supplies the structure round the nail, the continuation of the nerve being distributed to the ball of the toe.

The external plantar nerve, the smaller of the two, completes the nervous supply to the structures of the foot, being distributed to the little toe and one-half of the fourth, as well as to most of the deep muscles, its distribution being similar to that of the ulnar in the hand. It passes obliquely forwards with the external plantar artery to the outer side of the foot, lying between the Flexor brevis digitorum and Flexor accessorius; and, in the interval between the former muscle and Abductor minimi digiti, divides into a superficial and a deep branch. Before its division, it supplies the Flexor accessorius and Abductor minimi digiti.

The superficial branch separates into two digital nerves: one, the smaller of the two, supplies the outer side of the little toe, the Flexor brevis minimi digiti, and the two interosseous muscles of the fourth metatarsal space; the other, and larger digital branch, supplies the adjoining sides of the fourth and fifth toes, and communicates with the internal plantar nerve.

The deep or muscular branch accompanies the external plantar artery into the deep part of the sole of the foot, beneath the tendons of the Flexor muscles and Adductor pollicis, and supplies all the interossei (except those in the fourth metatarsal space), the two outer Lumbricales, the Adductor pollicis, and the Transversus pedis.

The External Popliteal or Peroneal Nerve (Fig. 389), about one-half the size of the internal popliteal, descends obliquely along the outer side of the popliteal space to the fibula, close to the margin of the Biceps muscle. It is easily felt beneath the skin behind the head of the fibula, at the inner side of the tendon
of the Biceps. About an inch below the head of the fibula it pierces the origin of the Peroneus longus, and divides beneath that muscle into the anterior tibial and musculo-cutaneous nerves.

The branches of the peroneal nerve, previous to its division, are articular and cutaneous.

The articular branches, two in number, accompany the superior and inferior external articular arteries to the outer side of the knee. The upper one occasionally arises from the great sciatic nerve before its bifurcation. A third (recurrent) articular nerve is given off at the point of division of the peroneal nerve; it ascends with the tibial recurrent artery through the Tibialis anticus muscle to the front of the knee, which it supplies.

The cutaneous branches, two or three in number, supply the integument along the back part and outer side of the leg, as far as its middle or lower part; one of these, larger than the rest, the communicans peronei, arises near the head of the fibula, crosses the external head of the Gastrocnemius to the middle of the leg, and joins with the external saphenous. This nerve occasionally exists as a separate branch, which is continued down as far as the heel.

The Anterior Tibial Nerve (Fig. 387) commences at the bifurcation of the peroneal nerve, between the fibula and upper part of the Peroneus longus, passes obliquely forwards beneath the Extensor longus digitorum to the front part of the interosseous membrane, and reaches the outer side of the anterior tibial artery above the middle of the leg; it then descends with the artery to the front of the ankle-joint, where it divides into an external and an internal branch. This nerve lies at first on the outer side of the anterior tibial artery, then in front of it, and again at its outer side at the ankle-joint.

The branches of the anterior tibial nerve, in its course through the leg, are the muscular nerves to the Tibialis anticus, Extensor longus digitorum, Peroneus tertius, and Extensor proprius pollicis muscles.

The external or tarsal branch of the anterior tibial passes outwards across the tarsus, beneath the Extensor brevis digitorum, and having become ganglionic, like the posterior interosseous nerve at the wrist, supplies the Extensor brevis digitorum and the articulations of the tarsus and metatarsus.

The internal branch, the continuation of the nerve, accompanies the dorsalis pedis artery along the inner side of the dorsum of the foot, and, at the first interosseous space, divides into two branches, which supply the adjacent sides of the great and second toes, communicating with the internal division of the musculo-cutaneous nerve.

The Musculo-cutaneous Nerve (Fig. 387) supplies the muscles on the fibular side of the leg, and the integument of the dorsum of the foot. It passes forwards between the Peronei muscles and the Extensor longus digitorum, pierces the deep fascia at the lower third of the leg, on its front and outer side, and divides into two branches. This nerve, in its course between the muscles, gives off muscular branches to the Peroneus longus and brevis, and cutaneous filaments to the integument of the lower part of the leg.

The internal branch of the musculo-cutaneous nerve passes in front of the ankle-joint, and along the dorsum of the foot, supplying the inner side of the great toe, and the adjoining sides of the second and third toes. It also supplies the integument of the inner ankle and inner side of the foot, communicating with the internal saphenous nerve, and joins with the anterior tibial nerve, between the great and second toes.

The external branch, the larger, passes along the outer side of the dorsum of the foot, to be distributed to the adjoining sides of the third, fourth, and fifth toes. It also supplies the integument of the outer ankle and outer side of the foot, communicating with the short saphenous nerve.

The distribution of these branches of the musculo-cutaneous nerve will be found to vary; together, they supply all the toes excepting the outer side of the little toe, and the adjoining sides of the great and second toes.
The Sympathetic Nerve.

The Sympathetic Nerve is so called from the opinion entertained that through it is produced a sympathy between the affections of distant organs. It consists of a series of ganglia, connected together by intervening cords, extending on each side of the vertebral column from the base of the skull to the coccyx. It may, moreover, be traced up into the head, where the ganglia (which are all in connection with the fifth cranial nerve) occupy spaces between the cranial and facial bones. These two ganglionic cords lie parallel with one another as far as the sacrum, on which bone they converge, communicating together through a single ganglion (ganglion impar), placed in front of the coccyx. Some anatomists also state that the two cords are joined at their cephalic extremity, through a small ganglion (the ganglion of Ribes), situated upon the anterior communicating artery. Moreover, the chains of opposite sides communicate between these two extremities in several parts, by means of the nervous cords that arise from them.

The ganglia are somewhat less numerous than the vertebrae: thus there are only three in the cervical region, twelve in the dorsal, four in the lumbar, five in the sacral, and one in the coccygeal.

The sympathetic nerve, for convenience of description, may be divided into several parts, according to the position occupied by each; and the number of ganglia, of which each part is composed, may be thus arranged:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Portion</th>
<th>Number of Ganglia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cephalic</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsal</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumbar</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sacral</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coccygeal</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each ganglion may be regarded as a distinct centre, from or to which branches pass in various directions. These branches may be thus arranged: 1. Branches of communication between the ganglia. 2. Branches of communication with the cerebral or spinal nerves. 3. Primary branches passing to be distributed to the arteries in the vicinity of the ganglia, and to the viscera, or proceeding to other ganglia placed in the thorax, abdomen, or pelvis.

1. The branches of communication between the ganglia are composed of gray and white nerve-fibres, the latter being continuous with those fibres of the spinal nerves which pass to the ganglia.

2. The branches of communication between the ganglia and the cerebral or spinal nerves also consist of a white and a gray portion; the former proceeding from the spinal nerve to the ganglion, the latter passing from the ganglion to the spinal nerve.

3. The primary branches of distribution also consist of two kinds of nerve-fibres, the sympathetic and spinal. They have a remarkable tendency to form intricate plexuses, which encircle the bloodvessels, and are conducted by them to the viscera. The greater number, however, of these branches pass to a series of visceral ganglia; these are ganglionic masses, of variable size, situated in the large cavities of the trunk, the thorax, and abdomen; and are connected with the roots of the great arteries of the viscera. The visceral ganglia are single and unsymmetrical, and are called the cardiac and semilunar. From these
Fig. 391.—The Sympathetic Nerve.
visceral ganglia numerous plexuses of nerves are derived, which entwine round the bloodvessels and are conducted by them to the viscera.

The cephalic portion of the sympathetic consists of four ganglia: 1. The ophthalmic ganglion. 2. The sphenopalatine, or Meckel's ganglion. 3. The otic, or Arnold's ganglion. 4. The submaxillary ganglion.

These have already been described in connection with the three divisions of the fifth nerve.

CERVICAL PORTION OF THE SYMPATHETIC.

The cervical portion of the sympathetic consists of three ganglia on each side, which are distinguished according to their position, as the superior, middle, and inferior cervical.

The Superior Cervical Ganglion, the largest of the three, is placed opposite the second and third cervical vertebrae and sometimes as low as the fourth or fifth. It is of a reddish-gray color, and usually fusiform in shape; sometimes broad, and occasionally constricted at intervals, so as to give rise to the opinion that it consists of the coalescence of several smaller ganglia. It is in relation, in front, with the sheath of the internal carotid artery, and internal jugular vein; behind it lies on the Rectus capitis anterior major muscle.

Its branches may be divided into superior, inferior, external, internal, and anterior.

The superior branch appears to be a direct continuation of the ganglion. It is soft in texture, and of a reddish color. It ascends by the side of the internal carotid artery, and entering the carotid canal in the temporal bone, divides into two branches, which lie, one on the outer, and the other on the inner side of that vessel.

The outer branch, the larger of the two, distributes filaments to the internal carotid artery, and forms the carotid plexus.

The inner branch also distributes filaments to the internal carotid, and, continuing onwards, forms the cavernous plexus.

The Carotid Plexus is situated on the outer side of the internal carotid. Filaments from this plexus occasionally form a small gangliform swelling on the under surface of the artery, which is called the carotid ganglion. The carotid plexus communicates with the Casserian ganglion, with the sixth nerve, and sphenopalatine ganglion, and distributes filaments to the wall of the carotid artery, and to the dura mater (Valentine).

The communicating branches with the sixth nerve consist of one or two filaments which join that nerve as it lies upon the outer side of the internal carotid. Other filaments are also connected with the Casserian ganglion. The communication with the sphenopalatine ganglion is effected by the carotid portion of the Vidian nerve, which passes forwards, through the cartilaginous substance filling the foramen lacerum medium, along the pterygoid or Vidian canal, to the sphenopalatine ganglion. In this canal it joins the petrosal branch of the Vidian.

The Cavernous Plexus is situated below, and internal to that part of the internal carotid, which is placed by the side of the sella Turcica, in the cavernous sinus, and is formed chiefly by the internal division of the ascending branch from the superior cervical ganglion. It communicates with the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth nerves, and with the ophthalmic ganglion, and distributes filaments to the wall of the internal carotid. The branch of communication with the third nerve joins it at its point of division; the branch to the fourth nerve joins it as it lies on the outer wall of the cavernous sinus; other filaments are connected with the under surface of the trunk of the ophthalmic nerve; and a second filament of communication joins the sixth nerve.

The filament of connection with the ophthalmic ganglion arises from the anterior part of the cavernous plexus; it accompanies the nasal nerve, or continues forwards as a separate branch.
CERVICAL GANGLIA.

The terminal filaments from the carotid and cavernous plexuses are prolonged along the internal carotid, forming plexuses which entwine round the cerebral and ophthalmic arteries; along the former vessel they may be traced on to the pia mater; along the latter, into the orbit, where they accompany each of the subdivisions of the vessel, a separate plexus passing with the arteria centralis retinae into the interior of the eyeball.

The inferior or descending branch of the superior cervical ganglion communicates with the middle cervical ganglion.

The external branches are numerous, and communicate with the cranial nerves, and with the four upper spinal nerves. Sometimes, the branch to the fourth spinal nerve may come from the cord connecting the upper and middle cervical ganglia. The branches of communication with the cranial nerves consist of delicate filaments, which pass from the superior cervical ganglion to the ganglion of the trunk of the pneumogastric, and to the ninth nerve. A separate filament from the cervical ganglion subdivides and joins the petrosal ganglion of the glosso-pharyngeal, and the ganglion of the root of the pneumogastric in the jugular foramen.

The internal branches are three in number: pharyngeal, laryngeal, and the superior cardiac nerve. The pharyngeal branches pass inwards to the side of the pharynx, where they join with branches from the pneumogastric, glosso-pharyngeal, and external laryngeal nerves to form the pharyngeal plexus. The laryngeal branches unite with the superior laryngeal nerve and its branches.

The superior cardiac nerve will be described in connection with the other cardiac nerves.

The anterior branches ramify upon the external carotid artery and its branches, forming around each a delicate plexus, on the nerves composing which small ganglia are occasionally found. These ganglia have been named, according to their position, intercarotid (one placed at the angle of bifurcation of the common carotid), lingual, temporal, and pharyngeal. The plexuses accompanying some of these arteries have important communications with other nerves. That surrounding the external carotid, is connected with the digastric branch of the facial; that surrounding the facial, communicates with the submaxillary ganglion by one or two filaments; and that accompanying the middle meningeal artery, sends offsets which pass to the optic ganglion and to the intumescentia ganglioformis of the facial nerve (external petrosal).

The Middle Cervical Ganglion (thyroid ganglion) is the smallest of the three cervical ganglia, and is occasionally altogether wanting. It is placed opposite the fifth cervical vertebra, usually upon, or close to, the inferior thyroid artery; hence the name “thyroid ganglion,” assigned to it by Haller.

Its superior branches ascend to communicate with the superior cervical ganglion.

Its inferior branches descend to communicate with the inferior cervical ganglion.

Its external branches pass outwards to join the fifth and sixth spinal nerves. Those branches are not constantly found.

Its internal branches are the thyroid and the middle cardiac nerve.

The thyroid branches are small filaments, which accompany the inferior thyroid artery to the thyroid gland; they communicate, on the artery, with the superior cardiac nerve, and in the gland, with branches from the recurrent and external laryngeal nerves.

The middle cardiac nerve is described with the other cardiac nerves.

The Inferior Cervical Ganglion is situated between the base of the transverse process of the last cervical vertebra, and the neck of the first rib, on the inner side of the superior intercostal artery. Its form is irregular; it is larger in size than the preceding, and frequently joined with the first thoracic ganglion.

Its superior branches communicate with the middle cervical ganglion.

Its inferior branches descend, some in front of, others behind the subclavian
artery, to join the first thoracic ganglion. The most important of these branches constitutes the inferior cardiac nerve, to be presently described.

The external branches consist of several filaments, some of which communicate with the seventh and eighth spinal nerves; others accompany the vertebral artery along the vertebral canal, forming a plexus round the vessel, supplying it with filaments, and communicating with the cervical spinal nerves as high as the fourth.

Cardiac Nerves.

The Cardiac Nerves are three in number on each side: superior, middle, and inferior, one being derived from each of the cervical ganglia.

The superior cardiac nerve (nervus superficialis cordis) arises by two or more branches from the superior cervical ganglion, and occasionally receives a filament from the cord of communication between the first and second cervical ganglia. It runs down the neck behind the common carotid artery, lying upon the longus colli muscle; and crosses in front of the inferior thyroid artery, and the recurrent laryngeal nerve.

The right superior cardiac nerve, at the root of the neck, passes either in front of or behind the subclavian artery, and along the artery innominata, to the back part of the arch of the aorta, where it joins the deep cardiac plexus. This nerve, in its course, is connected with other branches of the sympathetic; about the middle of the neck it receives filaments from the external laryngeal nerve; lower down, one or two twigs from the pneumogastric; and as it enters the thorax, it joins with the recurrent laryngeal. Filaments from this nerve accompany the inferior thyroid artery to the thyroid gland.

The left superior cardiac nerve runs by the side of the left carotid artery, and in front of the arch of the aorta, to the superficial cardiac plexus; but occasionally it passes behind the aorta, and terminates in the deep cardiac plexus.

The middle cardiac nerve (nervus cardiacus magnus), the largest of the three, arises from the middle cervical ganglion, or from the cord between the middle and inferior ganglia. On the right side, it descends behind the common carotid artery; and at the root of the neck, passes either in front of, or behind the subclavian artery; it then descends on the trachea, receives a few filaments from the recurrent laryngeal nerve, and joins the deep cardiac plexus. In the neck, it communicates with the superior cardiac and recurrent laryngeal nerves. On the left side, the middle cardiac nerve enters the chest between the left carotid and subclavian arteries, and joins the left side of the deep cardiac plexus.

The inferior cardiac nerve (nervus cardiacus minor) arises from the inferior cervical or first thoracic ganglion. It passes down behind the subclavian artery and along the front of the trachea, to join the deep cardiac plexus. It communicates freely behind the subclavian artery with the recurrent laryngeal and middle cardiac nerves.

The great or deep cardiac plexus (plexus magnus profundus—Scarpa) is situated in front of the trachea at its bifurcation, above the point of division of the pulmonary artery, and behind the arch of the aorta. It is formed by the cardiac nerves derived from the cervical ganglia of the sympathetic, and the cardiac branches of the recurrent laryngeal and pneumogastric. The only cardiac nerves which do not enter into the formation of this plexus are the left superior cardiac nerve, and the left inferior cardiac branch from the pneumogastric. The branches derived from the great cardiac plexus form the posterior coronary plexus and part of the anterior coronary plexus; whilst a few filaments proceed to the pulmonary plexuses, and to the auricles of the heart.

The branches from the right side of this plexus pass, some in front of, and others behind the right pulmonary artery; the former, the more numerous, transmit a few filaments to the anterior pulmonary plexus, and are continued along the trunk of the pulmonary artery, to form part of the anterior coronary
plexus; those behind the pulmonary artery distribute a few filaments to the right auricle, and form part of the posterior coronary plexus.

The branches from the left side of the deep cardiac plexus distribute a few filaments to the left auricle of the heart and the anterior pulmonary plexus, and then pass on to form the greater part of the posterior coronary plexus, a few branches passing to the superficial cardiac plexus.

The superficial (anterior) cardiac plexus lies beneath the arch of the aorta, in front of the right pulmonary artery. It is formed by the left superior cardiac nerve, the left (and occasionally the right) inferior cardiac branches of the pneumogastric, and filaments from the deep cardiac plexus. A small ganglion (cardiac ganglion of Wrisberg) is occasionally found connected with these nerves at their point of junction. This ganglion, when present, is situated immediately beneath the arch of the aorta, on the right side of the ductus arteriosus. The superficial cardiac plexus forms the chief part of the anterior coronary plexus, and several filaments pass along the pulmonary artery to the left anterior pulmonary plexus.

The posterior coronary plexus is chiefly formed by filaments prolonged from the left side of the deep cardiac plexus, and by a few from the right side. It surrounds the branches of the coronary artery at the back of the heart, and its filaments are distributed with those vessels to the muscular substance of the ventricles.

The anterior coronary plexus is formed chiefly from the superficial cardiac plexus, but receives filaments from the deep cardiac plexus. Passing forwards between the aorta and pulmonary artery, it accompanies the right coronary artery on the anterior surface of the heart.

Valentine has described nervous filaments ramifying under the endocardium; and Remak has found, in several mammalia, numerous small ganglia on the cardiac nerves, both on the surface of the heart and in its muscular substance. The elaborate dissections of the late Dr. Robert Lee have demonstrated without any doubt the existence of a dense mesh of nerves distributed both to the surface and in the substance of the heart, having numerous ganglia developed upon them.

Thoracic Portion of the Sympathetic.

The thoracic portion of the sympathetic consists of a series of ganglia, which usually correspond in number to that of the vertebrae; but, from the occasional coalescence of two, their number is uncertain. These ganglia are placed on each side of the spine, resting against the heads of the ribs, and covered by the pleura costalis: the last two are, however, anterior to the rest, being placed on the side of the bodies of the vertebrae. The ganglia are small in size, and of a grayish color. The first, larger than the rest, is of an elongated form, and usually blended with the last cervical. They are connected together by cord-like prolongations from their substance.

The external branches from each ganglion, usually two in number, communicate with each of the dorsal spinal nerves.

The internal branches from the six upper ganglia are very small: they supply filaments to the thoracic aorta and its branches, besides small branches to the bodies of the vertebrae and their ligaments. Branches from the third and fourth ganglia form part of the posterior pulmonary plexus.

The internal branches from the six lower ganglia are large and white in color; they distribute filaments to the aorta, and unite to form the three splanchnic nerves. These are named, the great, the lesser, and the smallest or renal splanchnic.

The great splanchnic nerve is of a white color, firm in texture, and bears a marked contrast to the ganglionic nerves. It is formed by branches from the thoracic ganglia between the sixth and tenth, receiving filaments (according to
Dr. Beck) from all the thoracic ganglia above the sixth. These roots unite to form a large round cord of considerable size. It descends obliquely inwards in front of the bodies of the vertebrae along the posterior mediastinum, perforates the crus of the Diaphragm, and terminates in the semilunar ganglion, distributing filaments to the renal plexus and suprarenal capsule.

The lesser splanchnic nerve is formed by filaments from the tenth and eleventh ganglia, and from the cord between them. It pierces the Diaphragm with the preceding nerve, and joins the coeliac plexus. It communicates in the chest with the great splanchnic nerve, and occasionally sends filaments to the renal plexus.

The smallest or renal splanchnic nerve arises from the last ganglion, and piercing the Diaphragm, terminates in the renal plexus and lower part of the coeliac plexus. It occasionally communicates with the preceding nerve.

A striking analogy appears to exist between the splanchnic and the cardiac nerves. The cardiac nerves are three in number; they arise from the three cervical ganglia, and are distributed to a large and important organ in the thoracic cavity. The splanchnic nerves, also three in number, are connected probably with all the dorsal ganglia, and are distributed to important organs in the abdominal cavity.

The epigastric or solar plexus supplies all the viscera in the abdominal cavity. It consists of a great network of nerves and ganglia, situated behind the stomach and in front of the aorta and crura of the Diaphragm. It surrounds the coeliac axis and root of the superior mesenteric artery, extending downwards as low as the pancreas, and outwards to the suprarenal capsules. This plexus, and the ganglia connected with it, receive the great splanchnic nerve of both sides, part of the lesser splanchnic nerves, and the termination of the right pneumogastric. It distributes filaments, which accompany, under the name of plexuses, all the branches from the front of the abdominal aorta.

The semilunar ganglia of the solar plexus, two in number, one on each side, are the largest ganglia in the body. They are large irregular gangliform masses, formed by the aggregation of smaller ganglia, having interspaces between them. They are situated by the side of the coeliac axis and superior mesenteric artery, close to the suprarenal capsules: the one on the right side lies beneath the vena cava; the upper part of each ganglion is joined by the greater and lesser splanchnic nerves, and to the inner side of each the branches of the solar plexus are connected. From the solar plexus are derived the following:

- Phrenic or diaphragmatic plexus
- Coeliac plexus
- Gastric plexus
- Hepatic plexus
- Splenic plexus
- Suprarenal plexus
- Renal plexus
- Superior mesenteric plexus
- Spermatic plexus
- Inferior mesenteric plexus

The phrenic plexus accompanies the phrenic artery to the Diaphragm, which it supplies, some filaments passing to the suprarenal capsule. It arises from the upper part of the semilunar ganglion, and is larger on the right than on the left side. In connection with this plexus, on the right side, at its point of junction with the phrenic nerve, is a small ganglion (ganglion diaphragmaticum). This ganglion is placed on the under surface of the Diaphragm, near the suprarenal capsule. Its branches are distributed to the vena cava, suprarenal capsule, and the hepatic plexus. There is no ganglion on the left side.

The suprarenal plexus is formed by branches from the solar plexus, from the semilunar ganglion, and from the splanchnic and phrenic nerves; a ganglion being formed at the point of junction of the latter nerve. It supplies the suprarenal gland. The branches of this plexus are remarkable for their large size, in comparison with the size of the organ they supply.

The renal plexus is formed by filaments from the solar plexus, the outer part of the semilunar ganglion, and the aortic plexus. It is also joined by filaments
from the lesser and smallest splanchnic nerves. The nerves from these sources, fifteen or twenty in number, have numerous ganglia developed upon them. They accompany the branches of the renal artery into the kidney; some filaments on the right side being distributed to the vena cava, and others to the spermatic plexus, on both sides.

The **spermatic plexus** is derived from the renal plexus, receiving branches from the aortic plexus. It accompanies the spermatic vessels to the testes.

In the female, the **ovarian plexus** is distributed to the ovaries and fundus of the uterus.

The **coeliac plexus**, of large size, is a direct continuation from the solar plexus: it surrounds the coeliac axis, and subdivides into the gastric, hepatic, and splenic plexuses. It receives branches from one or more of the splanchnic nerves, and, on the left side, a filament from the pneumogastric.

The **gastric plexus** accompanies the gastric artery along the lesser curvature of the stomach, and joins with branches from the left pneumogastric nerve. It is distributed to the stomach.

The **hepatic plexus**, the largest offset from the coeliac plexus, receives filaments from the left pneumogastric and right phrenic nerves. It accompanies the hepatic artery, ramifying in the substance of the liver, upon its branches, and upon those of the vena porta.

Branches from this plexus accompany all the divisions of the hepatic artery. Thus there is a pyloric plexus accompanying the pyloric branch of the hepatic, which joins with the **gastric plexus**, and pneumogastric nerves. There is also a gastro-duodenal plexus, which subdivides into the pancreatico-duodenal plexus, which accompanies the pancreatico-duodenal artery, to supply the pancreas and duodenum, joining with branches from the mesenteric plexus; and a gastro-epiploic plexus, which accompanies the right gastro-epiploic artery along the greater curvature of the stomach, and anastomoses with branches from the splenic plexus. A cystic plexus, which supplies the gall-bladder, also arises from the hepatic plexus, near the liver.

The **splenic plexus** is formed by branches from the right and left semilunar ganglia, and from the right pneumogastric nerve. It accompanies the splenic artery and its branches to the substance of the spleen, giving off, in its course, filaments to the pancreas (pancreatic plexus), and the left gastro-epiploic plexus, which accompanies the gastro-epiploica sinistra artery along the convex border of the stomach.

The **superior mesenteric plexus** is a continuation of the lower part of the great solar plexus, receiving a branch from the junction of the right pneumogastric nerve with the coeliac plexus. It surrounds the superior mesenteric artery, which it accompanies into the mesentery, and divides into a number of secondary plexuses, which are distributed to all the parts supplied by the artery, viz., pancreatic branches to the pancreas; intestinal branches, which supply the whole of the small intestine; and ileo-colic, right colic, and middle colic branches, which supply the corresponding parts of the great intestine. The nerves composing this plexus are white in color, and firm in texture, and have numerous ganglia developed upon them near their origin.

The **aortic plexus** is formed by branches derived, on each side, from the semilunar ganglia and renal plexuses, receiving filaments from some of the lumbar ganglia. It is situated upon the sides and front of the aorta, between the origins of the superior and inferior mesenteric arteries. From this plexus arise the inferior mesenteric, part of the spermatic, and the hypogastric plexuses; and it distributes filaments to the inferior vena cava.

The **inferior mesenteric plexus** is derived chiefly from the left side of the aortic plexus. It surrounds the inferior mesenteric artery, and divides into a number of secondary plexuses, which are distributed to all the parts supplied by the artery, viz., the left colic and sigmoid plexuses, which supply the descending and sigmoid flexure of the colon; and the superior hemorrhoidal plexus, which
supplies the upper part of the rectum, and joins in the pelvis with branches from the left hypogastric plexus.

Lumbar Portion of the Sympathetic.

The lumbar portion of the sympathetic is situated in front of the vertebral column, along the inner margin of the Psoas muscle. It consists usually of four ganglia, connected together by interganglionic cords. The ganglia are of small size, of a grayish color, shaped like a barleycorn, and placed much nearer the median line than the thoracic ganglia.

The superior and inferior branches of the lumbar ganglia serve as communicating branches between the chain of ganglia in this region. They are usually single and of a white color.

The external branches communicate with the lumbar spinal nerves. From the situation of the lumbar ganglia, these branches are longer than in the other regions. They are usually two in number for each ganglion, and accompany the lumbar arteries around the sides of the bodies of the vertebrae, passing beneath the fibrous arches from which some of the fibres of the Psoas muscle arise.

The internal branches pass inwards, in front of the aorta, and form the lumbar aortic plexus, already described. Other branches descend in front of the common iliac arteries, and join, over the promontory of the sacrum, to form the hypogastric plexus. Numerous delicate filaments are also distributed to the bodies of the vertebrae, and the ligaments connecting them.

Pelvic Portion of the Sympathetic.

The pelvic portion of the sympathetic is situated in front of the sacrum, along the inner side of the anterior sacral foramina. It consists of four or five small ganglia on each side, connected together by interganglionic cords. Below, these cords converge and unite on the front of the coccyx, by means of a small ganglion (ganglion impar).

The superior and inferior branches are the cords of communication between the ganglia above and below.

The external branches, exceedingly short, communicate with the sacral nerves. They are two in number to each ganglion. The coccygeal nerve communicates either with the last sacral, or coccygeal ganglion.

The internal branches communicate, on the front of the sacrum, with the corresponding branches from the opposite side; some, from the first two ganglia, pass to join the pelvic plexus, and others form a plexus, which accompanies the middle sacral artery.

The hypogastric plexus supplies the viscera of the pelvic cavity. It is situated in front of the promontory of the sacrum, between the two common iliac arteries, and is formed by the union of numerous filaments, which descend on each side from the aortic plexus, from the lumbar ganglia, and from the first two sacral ganglia. This plexus contains no ganglia; and bifurcates, below, into two lateral portions, which form the inferior hypogastric, or pelvic plexuses.

Inferior Hypogastric, or Pelvic Plexus.

The Inferior Hypogastric, or Pelvic Plexus, is situated at the side of the rectum and bladder in the male, and at the side of the rectum, vagina, and bladder, in the female. It is formed by a continuation of the hypogastric plexus, by branches from the second, third, and fourth sacral nerves, and by a few filaments from the sacral ganglia. At the point of junction of these nerves, small ganglia are found. From this plexus numerous branches are distributed to all the viscer a of the pelvis. They accompany the branches of the internal iliac artery.
A. The fundus and body of the uterus, having the peritoneum dissected off from the left side. B. The vagina, covered with nerves proceeding from the inferior border of the left hypogastric ganglion. C. The rectum. D. The left ovary and Fallopian tube. E. The trunk of the left spermatic vein and artery surrounded by the left spermatic ganglion. F. The aorta divided a little above the origin of the right spermatic artery, and about three inches above the division into the two common iliac arteries. G. The vena cava. H. Trunk of the right spermatic vein entering the vena cava. I. Right ureter. K. The two cords of the great sympathetic nerve passing down along the front of the aorta. L. Trunk of the inferior mesenteric artery, passing off from the aorta, and crowded with a great plexus of nerves sent off from the left and right cords of the great sympathetic. M. M. The two cords of the great sympathetic passing down below the bifurcation of the aorta to the point where they separate into the right and left hypogastric nerves. N. The right hypogastric nerve with its artery injected, proceeding to the neck of the uterus, to terminate in the right hypogastric ganglion. O. The left hypogastric nerve where it enters the left hypogastric ganglion, and giving off branches to the left subperitoneal ganglion. P. Hemorrhoidal nerves accompanying the hemorrhoidal artery and proceeding from the great plexus which surrounds the inferior mesenteric artery. Q. The sacral nerves entering the whole outer surface of the hypogastric ganglion. R. The left hypogastric ganglion with its arteries injected. S. The nerves of the vagina. T. Nerves with an injected artery proceeding from the upper part of the left hypogastric ganglion along the body of the uterus, and terminating in the left hypogastric ganglion. U. Continuation of these nerves and the branches which they give off to the subperitoneal plexuses. V. The same nerves passing upward beneath the subperitoneal plexuses, and anastomosing freely with them. W. The left spermatic ganglion, in which the nerves and artery from the hypogastric ganglion, and the branches of the left subperitoneal plexuses terminate, and from which the nerves of the fundus uteri are supplied. X. The left subperitoneal plexuses covering the body of the uterus. Y. The left subperitoneal ganglion, with numerous branches of nerves extending between it and the left hypogastric nerve and ganglion. Z. The left common iliac artery cut across and turned aside, that the left hypogastric nerve and ganglion might be traced and exposed.
SYMPATHETIC NERVE.

The inferior hemorrhoidal plexus arises from the back part of the pelvic plexus. It supplies the rectum, joining with branches of the superior hemorrhoidal plexus.

The vesical plexus arises from the fore part of the pelvic plexus. The nerves composing it are numerous, and contain a large proportion of spinal nerve fibres. They accompany the vesical arteries, and are distributed at the side and base of the bladder. Numerous filaments also pass to the vesiculae seminales, and vas deferens: those accompanying the vas deferens join on the spermatic cord, with branches from the spermatic plexus.

The prostatic plexus is continued from the lower part of the pelvic plexus. The nerves composing it are of large size. They are distributed to the prostate gland, vesiculae seminales, and erectile structure of the penis. The nerves supplying the erectile structure of the penis consist of two sets, the small and large cavernous nerves. They are slender filaments, which arise from the fore part of the prostatic plexus; and after joining with branches from the internal pudic nerve, pass forwards beneath the pubic arch.

The small cavernous nerves perforate the fibrous covering of the penis, near its roots.

The large cavernous nerve passes forwards along the dorsum of the penis, joins with the dorsal branch of the pudic nerve, and is distributed to the corpus cavernosum and spongiosum.

The vaginal plexus arises from the lower part of the pelvic plexus. It is lost on the walls of the vagina, being distributed to the erectile tissue at its anterior part, and to the mucous membrane. The nerves composing this plexus contain, like the vesical, a large proportion of spinal nerve-fibres.

The uterine nerves arise from the lower part of the hypogastric plexus, above the point where the branches from the sacral nerves join the pelvic plexus. They accompany the uterine arteries to the side of the organ between the layers of the broad ligament, and are distributed to the cervix and lower part of the body of the uterus, penetrating its substance.

Other filaments pass separately to the body of the uterus and Fallopian tube. Branches from the hypogastric plexus accompany the uterine arteries into the substance of the uterus. Upon these filaments ganglionic enlargements are found.

For a detailed account of the supply of nerves to the uterus, and for a description of the changes which these nerves and their ganglia undergo during pregnancy, the reader is referred to the papers on "The Anatomy of the Nerves of the Uterus," published by Dr. Robert Lee.
Organs of Sense.

The Organs of the Senses are five in number, viz., those of touch, of taste, of smell, of hearing, and of sight. The skin, which is the principal seat of the sense of touch, has been described in the Introduction.

The Tongue.

The Tongue is the organ of the special sense of taste. It is situated in the floor of the mouth, in the interval between the two lateral portions of the body of the lower jaw. Its base, or root, is directed backwards, and connected with the os hyoides by numerous muscles, with the epiglottis by three folds of mucous

Fig. 393.—Upper Surface of the Tongue.

Fig. 394. The 3 kinds of PAPILLA magnified

Corti's organ

(707)
membrane, which form the glosso-epiglottic ligaments, and with the soft palate and pharynx by means of the anterior and posterior pillars of the fauces. Its apex or tip, thin and narrow, is directed forwards against the inner surface of the lower incisor teeth. The under surface of the tongue is connected with the lower jaw by the Genio-hyo-glossi muscles; from its sides, the mucous membrane is reflected to the inner surface of the gums; and, in front, a distinct fold of that membrane, the frenum linguae, is formed beneath its under surface.

The tip of the tongue, part of its under surface, its sides, and dorsum, are free.

The dorsum of the tongue is convex, marked along the middle line by a raphe, which divides it into two symmetrical halves; and this raphe terminates behind, about half an inch from the base of the organ, a little in front of a deep mucous follicle, the foramen cecum. The anterior two-thirds of this surface are rough and covered with papillae; the posterior third is more smooth, and covered by the projecting orifices of numerous muciparous glands.

The mucous membrane invests the entire extent of the free surface of the tongue. On the under surface of the organ it is thin and smooth, and may be traced on either side of the frenum, through the ducts of the submaxillary glands; and between the sides of the tongue and the lower jaw, through the ducts of the sublingual glands. As it passes over the borders of the organ, it gradually assumes its papillary character.

The mucous membrane of the tongue consists of structures analogous to those of the skin, namely, a cutis or corium, supporting numerous papillae, and covered, as well as the papillae, with epithelium.

The cutis is tough, but thinner and less dense than in most parts of the skin, and is composed of similar tissue. It contains the ramifications of the numerous vessels and nerves from which the papillae are supplied, and affords insertion to all the intrinsic muscular fibres of the organ.

The papillae of the tongue are thickly distributed over the whole of its upper surface, giving to it its characteristic roughness. They are more prominent than those of the skin, standing out from the surface like the villi of the intestine. The principal varieties are the papillae maxima (circumvallate), papillae mediae (fungiformes), and papillae minima (conice or filiformes).

The papillae maxima (circumvallate) are of large size, and vary from eight to ten in number. They are situated at the back part of the dorsum of the tongue, near its base, forming a row on each side, which running backwards and inwards, meet in the middle line, like the two lines of the letter V inverted. Each papilla consists of a central flattened projection of mucous membrane, circular in form, from \( \frac{1}{2} \) to \( \frac{1}{4} \) of an inch wide, attached to the bottom of a cup-shaped depression of the mucous membrane; the exposed part being studded with numerous small papillae, which, however, are covered by a smooth layer of the epithelium. The cup-shaped depression forms a kind of fossa round the papilla, having a circular margin of about the same elevation, covered with smaller papillae. The fissure corresponding to the papilla, which is situated at the junction of the two lines of the circumvallate papille, is so large and deep, that the name foramen cecum has been applied to it. In the smaller papilla, the fissure exists only on one side.

The papillae mediae (fungiformes), more numerous than the preceding, are scattered irregularly and sparingly over the dorsum of the tongue; but are found chiefly at its sides and apex. They are easily recognized, among the other papillae, by their large size, rounded eminences, and deep red color. They are narrow at their attachment to the tongue, but broad and rounded at their free extremities, and covered with secondary papillae. Their epithelial investment is very thin.

The papillae minima (conice—filiformes) cover the anterior two-thirds of the dorsum of the tongue. They are very minute, more or less conical or filiform in shape, and arranged in lines corresponding in direction with the two rows of
THE TONGUE.

the papillae circumvallate; excepting at the apex of the organ, where their direction is transverse. The filiform papillae are of a whitish tint, owing to the thickness and density of their epithelium; they are covered with numerous secondary papillae, are firmer and more elastic than the papillae of mucous membrane generally, and often inclose minute hairs.

Simple papillae, similar to those of the skin, are dispersed very unequally among the compound forms, and exist sparingly on the surface of the tongue behind the circumvallate variety, buried under a layer of epithelium.

Structure of the papillae. The papillae apparently resemble in structure those of the cutis, consisting of a cone-shaped projection of homogeneous tissue, covered with a thick layer of squamous epithelium, and contain one or more capillary loops, amongst which nerves are distributed in great abundance. If the epithelium is removed, it will be found that they are not simple processes like the papillae of the skin, for the surface of each is studded with minute conical processes of the mucous membrane, which form secondary papillae (Todd and Bowman). In the papillae circumvallate, the nerves are numerous and of large size; in the papillae fungiformes they are also numerous, and terminate in a plexiform network, from which brush-like branches proceed; in the papillae filiformae, their mode of termination is uncertain. Buried in the epidermis of the papillae circumvallate, and in some of the fungiformes, certain peculiar bodies called taste-corpuscles have been described. They are flask-like in shape, their broad base resting on the corium, and their neck opening by an orifice between the cells of the epithelium. They are formed by two kinds of cell: the exterior, which are arranged in several layers, being spindle-shaped; the internal, consisting of nuclei with processes on either side, of which the deep one is described as continuous with the terminal fibril of a nerve, while the superficial projects as an extremely fine hair through the orifice of the taste-corpuscle.1

Besides the papillae, the mucous membrane of the tongue is provided with numerous follicles and glands.

The follicles are found scattered over its entire surface, but are especially numerous between the papillae circumvallate and the epiglottis. Their walls contain much lymphoid tissue.

The mucous glands (lingual), similar in structure to the labial and buccal, are found chiefly beneath the mucous membrane of the posterior third of the dorsum of the tongue. There is a small group of these glands beneath the tip of the tongue, a few along the borders of the organ, and some in front of the circumvallate papillae projecting in the muscular substance. Their ducts open either upon the surface, or into the depressions round the large papillae.

The epithelium is of the scaly variety like that of the epidermis. It covers the free surface of the tongue, as may be easily demonstrated by maceration, or boiling, when it can be detached entire: it is much thinner than in the skin: the intervals between the large papillae are not filled up by it, but each papilla has a separate investment from root to summit. The deepest cells may sometimes be detached as a separate layer, corresponding to the rete mucosum, but they never contain coloring matter.

The tongue consists of two symmetrical halves, separated from each other, in the middle line, by a fibrous septum. Each half is composed of muscular fibres arranged in various directions, containing much interposed fat, and supplied by vessels and nerves: the entire organ is invested by mucous membrane, and a submucous fibrous stratum. The latter membrane invests the greater part of the surface of the tongue, and into it the muscular fibres are inserted that pass to the surface. It is thicker behind than in front, and is continuous with the sheaths of the muscles attached to it.

The fibrous septum consists of a vertical layer of fibrous tissue, extending throughout the entire length of the middle line of the tongue, from the base to

the apex. It is thicker behind than in front, and occasionally contains a small fibro-cartilage, about a quarter of an inch in length. It is well displayed by making a vertical section across the organ. Another strong fibrous lamina, termed the hyo-glossal membrane, connects the under surface of the base of the tongue to the body of the hyoid bone. This membrane receives, in front, some of the fibres of the Genio-hyo-glossi.

Each half of the tongue consists of extrinsic and intrinsic muscles. The former have been already described; they are the Hyo-glossus, Genio-hyo-glossus, Styloglossus, Palato-glossus, and part of the Superior constrictor. The intrinsic muscular fibres are described along with the Lingualis on p. 364.

The arteries of the tongue are derived from the lingual, the facial, and ascending pharyngeal.

The nerves of the tongue are three in number in each half: the gustatory branch of the fifth, which is distributed to the papillae at the fore part and sides of the tongue; the lingual branch of the glosso-pharyngeal, which is distributed to the mucous membrane at the base and side of the tongue, and to the papillae circumvallatae; and the hypoglossal nerve, which is distributed to the muscular substance of the tongue. The two former are nerves of common sensation and of taste; the latter is the motor nerve of the tongue.

**THE NOSE.**

The Nose is the special organ of the sense of smell: by means of the peculiar properties of its nerves, it protects the lungs from the inhalation of deleterious gases, and assists the organ of taste in discriminating the properties of food.

The organ of smell consists of two parts, one external, the nose; the other internal, the nasal fossa.

The nose is the more anterior and prominent part of the organ of smell. It is of a triangular form, directed vertically downwards, and projects from the centre of the face, immediately above the upper lip. Its summit, or root, is connected directly with the forehead. Its inferior part, the base of the nose, presents two elliptical orifices, the nostrils, separated from each other by an antero-posterior septum, the columna. The margins of these orifices are provided with a number of stiff hairs, or vibrissae, which arrest the passage of foreign substances carried with the current of air intended for respiration. The lateral surfaces of the nose
form, by their union, the dorsum, the direction of which varies considerably in different individuals. The dorsum terminates below in a rounded eminence, the lobe of the nose.

The nose is composed of a framework of bones and cartilages, the latter being slightly acted upon by certain muscles. It is covered externally by the integument, internally by mucous membrane, and supplied with vessels and nerves.

The bony framework occupies the upper part of the organ: it consists of the nasal bones, and the nasal processes of the superior maxillary.

The cartilaginous framework consists of five pieces, the two upper and the two lower lateral cartilages, and the cartilage of the septum.

The upper lateral cartilages are situated below the free margin of the nasal bones; each cartilage is flattened, and triangular in shape. Its anterior margin is thicker than the posterior, and connected with the fibro-cartilage of the septum. Its posterior margin is attached to the nasal process of the superior maxillary and nasal bones. Its inferior margin is connected by fibrous tissue with the lower lateral cartilage: one surface is turned outwards, the other inwards towards the nasal cavity.

The lower lateral cartilages are two thin, flexible plates situated immediately below the preceding, and curved in such a manner as to form the inner and outer walls of each orifice of the nostril. The portion which forms the inner wall, thicker than the rest, is loosely connected with the same part of the opposite cartilage, and forms a small part of the columna. Its outer extremity, free, rounded, and projecting, forms, with the thickened integument and subjacent tissue, the lobe of the nose. The part which forms the outer wall is curved to correspond with the ala of the nose: it is oval and flattened, narrow behind where it is connected with the nasal process of the superior maxilla by a tough fibrous membrane, in which are found three or four small cartilaginous plates (sesamoid cartilages), cartilagines minores. Above, it is connected to the upper lateral cartilage and front part of the cartilage of the septum; below, it is separated from the margin of the nostril by dense cellular tissue; and in front, it forms, with its fellow, the prominence of the tip of the nose.

The cartilage of the septum is somewhat triangular in form, thicker at its margins than at its centre, and completes the separation between the nasal fossae in front. Its anterior margin, thickest above, is connected from above downwards with the nasal bones, the front part of the two upper lateral cartilages, and the inner portion of the two lower lateral cartilages. Its posterior margin is connected with the perpendicular lamella of the ethmoid; its inferior margin with the vomer and the palate processes of the superior maxillary bones.

These various cartilages are connected to each other, and to the bones, by a tough fibrous membrane, the perichondrium, which allows the utmost facility of movement between them.

The muscles of the nose are situated immediately beneath the integument: they are (on each side) the Pyramidalis nasi, the Levator labii superioris alque nasi, the Dilator naris, anterior and posterior, the Compressor nasi, the Com-
pressor narium minor, and the Depressor alae nasi. These have already been described above (p. 340).

The integument covering the dorsum and sides of the nose is thin, and loosely connected with the subjacent parts; but where it forms the tip, or lobe, and the alae of the nose, it is thicker and more firmly adherent. It is furnished with a large number of sebaceous follicles, the orifices of which are usually very distinct.

The mucous membrane, lining the interior of the nose, is continuous with the skin externally, and with that which lines the nasal fossae within.

The arteries of the nose are the lateralis nasi, from the facial, and the nasal artery of the septum, from the superior coronary, which supplies the alae and septum; the sides and dorsum being supplied from the nasal branch of the ophthalmic and the infraorbital.

The veins of the nose terminate in the facial and ophthalmic.

The nerves of the nose are branches from the facial, infraorbital, and infra-trochlear, and a filament from the nasal branch of the ophthalmic.

Nasal Fossae.

The Nasal Fossae are two irregular cavities, situated in the middle of the face and extending from before backwards. They open in front by the two anterior nares, and terminate in the pharynx, behind, by the posterior nares. The boundaries of these cavities, and the openings which are connected with them, as they exist in the skeleton, have been already described (p. 203).

The mucous membrane lining the nasal fossae is called the pituitary, from the nature of its secretion; or Schneiderian, from Schneider, the first anatomist who showed that the secretion proceeded from the mucous membrane, and not, as was formerly imagined, from the brain. It is intimately adherent to the periosteum, or perichondrium, over which it lies. It is continuous externally with the skin through the anterior nares, and with the mucous membrane of the pharynx, through the posterior nares. From the nasal fossae its continuity may be traced with the conjunctiva, through the nasal duct and lacrimal canals: with the lining membrane of the tympanum and mastoid cells, through the Eustachian tube; and with the frontal, ethmoidal, and sphenoidal sinuses, and the antrum maxillare, through the several openings in the meatuses. The mucous membrane is thickest, and most vascular, over the turbinated bones. It is also thick over the septum; but, in the intervals between the spongy bones, and on the floor of the nasal fossae, it is very thin. Where it lines the various sinuses and the antrum maxillare, it is thin and pale.

The surface of the membrane is covered with a layer of tessellated epithelium, at the upper part of the nasal fossae, corresponding with the distribution of the olfactory nerve, but is ciliated throughout the rest of its extent, excepting near the aperture of the nares.

This membrane is also provided with a nearly continuous layer of branched mucous glands, the ducts of which open upon its surface. They are most numerous at the middle and back parts of the nasal fossae, and largest at the lower and back part of the septum.

Owing to the great thickness of this membrane, the nasal fossae are much narrower, and the turbinated bones, especially the lower ones, appear larger and more prominent than in the skeleton. From the same circumstance, also, the various apertures communicating with the meatuses are either narrowed or completely closed.

In the superior meatus, the aperture of communication with the posterior ethmoidal cells is considerably diminished in size, and the sphenopalatine foramen completely covered in.

In the middle meatus, the opening of the infundibulum is partially hidden by
a projecting fold of mucous membrane, and the orifice of the antrum is contracted to a small circular aperture, much narrower than in the skeleton.

In the inferior meatus, the orifice of the nasal duct is partially hidden by either a single or double valvular mucous fold, and the anterior palatine canal either completely closed in, or a tubular cul-de-sac of mucous membrane is continued a short distance into it.

In the roof, the opening leading to the sphenoidal sinus is narrowed, and the apertures in the cribiform plate of the ethmoid completely closed in.

The arteries of the nasal fossae are the anterior and posterior ethmoidal, from the ophthalmic, which supply the ethmoidal cells, frontal sinuses, and roof of the nose; the sphenopalatine, from the internal maxillary, which supplies the mucous membrane covering the spongy bones, the meatuses and septum; and the alveolar branch of the internal maxillary, which supplies the lining membrane of the antrum. The ramifications of these vessels form a close, plexiform network, beneath and in the substance of the mucous membrane.

The veins of the nasal fossae form a close network beneath the mucous membrane. They pass, with some of the veins accompanying the sphenopalatine artery, through the sphenopalatine foramen; and others, through the alveolar branch, join the facial vein; some accompany the ethmoidal arteries, and terminate in the ophthalmic vein; and, lastly, a few communicate with the veins in the interior of the skull, through the foramina in the cribiform plate of the ethmoid bone, and the foramen caecum.

The nerves are, the olfactory, the nasal branch of the ophthalmic, filaments from the anterior dental branch of the superior maxillary, the Vidian, naso-palatine, descending anterior palatine, and sphenopalatine branches of Meckel’s ganglion.

The olfactory, the special nerve of the sense of smell, is distributed over the upper third of the septum, and over the surface of the superior and middle spongy bones.

The nasal branch of the ophthalmic distributes filaments to the upper and anterior part of the septum, and outer wall of the nasal fossae.

Filaments from the anterior dental branch of the superior maxillary supply the inferior meatus and inferior turbinate bone.

The Vidian nerve supplies the upper and back part of the septum, and superior spongy bone; and the upper anterior nasal branches from the sphenopalatine ganglion, have a similar distribution.

The naso-palatine nerve supplies the middle of the septum.

The larger, or anterior palatine nerve, supplies the middle and lower spongy bones.

THE EYE.

The eyeball is contained in the cavity of the orbit. In this situation it is securely protected from injury, whilst its position is such as to insure the most extensive range of sight. It is acted upon by numerous muscles, by which it is capable of being directed to any part, supplied by vessels and nerves, and is additionally protected in front by several appendages, such as the eyebrow, eyelids, etc.
The eyeball is spherical in form, having the segment of a smaller and more prominent sphere engrafted upon its anterior part. It is from this circumstance that the antero-posterior diameter of the eyeball, which measures about an inch, exceeds the transverse diameter by about a line. The segment of the larger sphere, which forms about five-sixths of the globe, is opaque, and formed by the sclerotic, the tunic of protection to the eyeball; the smaller sphere, which forms the remaining sixth, is transparent, and formed by the cornea. The axes of the eyeballs are nearly parallel, and do not correspond to the axes of the orbits, which are directed outwards. The optic nerves follow the direction of the axes of the orbits, and enter the eyeball a little to their inner or nasal side. The eyeball is composed of several investing tunics, and of fluid and solid refracting media, called humors.

The tunics are three in number:—

1. Sclerotic and Cornea.
2. Choroid, Iris, and Ciliary Processes.
3. Retina.

The refracting media, or humors, are also three:—

Aqueous.      Crystalline (lens) and Capsule.      Vitreous.

The sclerotic and cornea form the external tunic of the eyeball; they are essentially fibrous in structure, the sclerotic being opaque, and forming the posterior five-sixths of the globe; the cornea, which forms the remaining sixth, being transparent.

The **Sclerotic**, (σκληρός, hard) (Fig. 399) has received its name from its extreme density and hardness; it is a firm, unyielding, fibrous membrane, serving to maintain the form of the globe. It is much thicker behind than in front. Its **external surface** is of a white color, quite smooth, except at the points where the Recti and Obliqui muscles are inserted into it, and covered, for part of its extent, by the conjunctival membrane; hence the whiteness and brilliancy of the front of the eyeball. Its **inner surface** is stained of a brown color, marked by grooves, in which are lodged the ciliary nerves, and connected by an exceedingly fine cellular tissue (lamina fusca) with the outer surface of the choroid. Behind,
it is pierced by the optic nerve a little to its inner or nasal side, and is continuous with the fibrous sheath of the nerve, which is derived from the dura mater. At the point where the optic nerve passes through the sclerotic, this membrane forms a thin cribiform lamina (the lamina cribrosa); the minute orifices in this layer serve for the transmission of the nervous filaments, and the fibrous septa dividing them from one another are continuous with the membranous processes which separate the bundles of nerve-fibres. One of these openings, larger than the rest, occupies the centre of the lamella; it is called the porus opticus, and transmits the arteria centralis retinae to the interior of the eyeball. Around the cribiform lamella are numerous small apertures for the transmission of the ciliary vessels and nerves. In front, the sclerotic is continuous with the cornea by direct continuity of tissue, but the opaque sclerotic overlaps the cornea rather more on its outer than upon its inner surface.

Structure. The sclerotic is formed of white fibrous tissue intermixed with fine elastic fibres, and fusiform nucleated cells. These are aggregated into bundles, which are arranged chiefly in a longitudinal direction. It yields gelatin on boiling. Its vessels are not numerous, the capillaries being of small size, uniting at long and wide intervals. The existence of nerves in it is doubtful.

The Cornea is the projecting transparent part of the external tunic of the eyeball, and forms the anterior sixth of the globe. It is not quite circular, being a little broader in the transverse than in the vertical direction, in consequence of the sclerotic overlapping the margin above and below. It is convex anteriorly, and projects forwards from the sclerotic in the same manner that a watch-glass does from its case. Its degree of curvature varies in different individuals, and in the same individual at different periods of life, it being more prominent in youth than in advanced life, when it becomes flattened. The cornea is dense and of uniform thickness throughout; its posterior surface is perfectly circular in outline, and exceeds the anterior surface slightly in extent, from the latter being overlapped by the sclerotic.

Structure. The cornea consists of five layers: namely, of a thick central fibrous structure, the cornea proper; in front of this is the anterior elastic lamina, covered by the conjunctiva; behind, the posterior elastic lamina, covered by the lining membrane of the anterior chamber of the eyeball. The name of membrane of Descemet is given to this posterior elastic lamina and its epithelial coating.

The proper substance of the cornea is fibrous, tough, unyielding, perfectly transparent, and continuous with the sclerotic, with which it is in structure identical. The anastomosing fusiform cells of which it is composed are arranged in superimposed flattened lamine, at least sixty in number, all of which have the same direction, the contiguous laminae becoming united at frequent intervals. If the relative position of the component parts of this tissue is in any way altered, either by pressure or by an increase of its natural tension, it immediately presents an opaque milky appearance. The interstices between the laminae are tubular, and usually contain a small amount of transparent fluid.

The anterior and posterior elastic laminae, which cover the proper structure of the cornea behind and in front, present an analogous structure. They consist of a hard, elastic, and perfectly transparent homogeneous membrane, of extreme thinness, which is not rendered opaque by either water, alcohol, or acids. This membrane is intimately connected by means of a fine cellular web to the proper substance of the cornea both in front and behind. Its most remarkable property is its extreme elasticity, and the tendency which it presents to curl up, or roll upon itself, with the attached surface innermost, when separated from the proper substance of the cornea. Its use appears to be (as suggested by Dr. Jacob), "to preserve the requisite permanent correct curvature of the flaccid cornea proper."

The conjunctival epithelium, which covers the front of the anterior elastic
lamina, consists of two or three layers of transparent nucleated cells, the deepest being of an oblong form and placed perpendicular to the surface, the superficial ones more flattened.

The epithelial lining of the aqueous chamber covers the posterior surface of the posterior elastic lamina. It consists of a single layer of polygonal transparent nucleated cells, similar to those found lining other serous cavities.

Arteries and Nerves. The cornea is a non-vascular structure, the capillary vessels terminating in loops at its circumference. Lymphatic vessels have not as yet been demonstrated in it. The nerves are numerous, twenty or thirty in number: they are derived from the ciliary nerves, and enter the laminated substances of the cornea. They ramify throughout its substance in a delicate network, and their terminal filaments have been traced by Cohnheim through the proper substance of the cornea into the deeper layers of the epithelium.

Dissection. In order to separate the sclerotic and cornea, so as to expose the second tunic, the eyeball should be immersed in a small vessel of water. A fold of the sclerotic near its anterior part having been pinched up, an operation not easily performed, from the extreme tension of the membrane, it should be divided with a pair of blunt-pointed scissors. As soon as the choroid is exposed, the end of a blowpipe should be introduced into the orifice, and a stream of air forced into it, so as to separate the slight cellular connection between the sclerotic and choroid. The sclerotic should now be divided around its entire circumference, and may be removed in separate portions. The front segment being then drawn forwards, the handle of the scalpel should be pressed gently against it at its connection with the iris, and these being separated, a quantity of perfectly transparent fluid will escape; this is the aqueous humor. In the course of the dissection, the ciliary nerves may be seen lying in the loose cellular tissue between the choroid and sclerotic, or contained in delicate grooves on the inner surface of the latter membrane.

Fig. 400.—The Choroid and Iris. (Enlarged.)

Second Tunic. This is formed by the choroid behind; the iris and ciliary processes in front; and by the ciliary ligament, and Ciliary muscle, at the point of junction of the sclerotic and cornea.

The choroid is the vascular and pigmentary tunic of the eyeball, investing the posterior five-sixths of the globe, and extending as far forwards as the cornea; the ciliary processes being appendages of the choroid developed from its inner surface in front. The iris is the circular muscular septum, which hangs vertically behind the cornea, presenting in its centre a large circular
aperture, the pupil. The ciliary ligament and Ciliary muscle form the white ring observed at the point where the choroid and iris join with each other, and with the sclerotic and cornea.

The **Choroid** is a thin, highly vascular membrane, of a dark brown or chocolate color, which invests the posterior five-sixths of the central part of the globe. It is pierced behind by the optic nerve, and terminates in front at the ciliary ligament, where it bends inwards, and forms on its inner surface a series of folds or plaitings, the ciliary processes. It is thicker behind than in front. Externally, it is connected by a fine cellular web (membrana fusca) with the inner surface of the sclerotic. Its inner surface is smooth, and lies in contact with the retina. The choroid is composed of three layers, external, middle, and internal.

![Fig. 401.—The Veins of the Choroid. (Enlarged.)](image)

The **external layer** consists, in part, of the larger branches of the short ciliary arteries, which run forwards between the veins before they bend downwards to terminate on the inner surface. This coat is formed, however, principally of veins, which are named, from their distribution, *venae vorticosae*. They converge to four or five equidistant trunks, which pierce the sclerotic midway between the margin of the cornea and the entrance of the optic nerve. Interspersed between the vessels are lodged dark star-shaped pigment-cells, the fibrous offsets from which, communicating with similar branchings from neighboring cells, form a delicate network, which, towards the inner surface of the choroid loses its pigmentary character.

The **middle layer** consists of an exceedingly fine capillary plexus, formed by the short ciliary vessels, and is known as the *tunica Ruychiana*. The network is close, and finer at the hinder part of the choroid than in front. About half an inch behind the cornea, its meshes become larger, and are continuous with those of the ciliary process.

The **internal or pigmentary layer** is a delicate membrane, consisting of a single layer of hexagonal nucleated cells, loaded with pigment-granules, and applied to each other, so as to resemble a tessellated pavement. Each cell contains a nucleus, and is filled with grains of pigment, which are in greater abundance at the circumference of the cell. In perfect albinos this epithelium contains no pigment, nor is any present in the star-shaped cells found in the other layers of the choroid.¹

¹ The pigmentary layer is now often described as a portion of the Retina in consequence of the method of its development, since it is derived from the same source as that membrane, viz., from the primary ocular vesicle, furnished by the epiblast, while the choroid is derived from the mesoblast.
The ciliary processes should now be examined. They may be exposed, either by detaching the iris from its connection with the ciliary ligament, or by making a transverse section of the globe, and examining them from behind.

The **ciliary processes** are formed by the plaiting and folding inwards of the middle and internal layers of the choroid, at its anterior margin, and are received between corresponding foldings of the suspensory ligament of the lens, thus establishing a communication between the choroid and inner tunic of the eye. They are arranged in a circle, behind the iris, round the margin of the lens. They vary between sixty and eighty in number, lie side by side, and may be divided into large and small; the latter, consisting of about one-third of the entire number, are situated in the spaces between the former, but without regular alternation. The larger processes are each about one-tenth of an inch in length, and hemispherical in shape, their periphery being attached to the ciliary ligament, and continuous with the middle and inner layers of the choroid: the opposite margin is free and rests upon the circumference of the lens. Their anterior surface is turned towards the back of the iris, with the circumference of which it is continuous. The posterior surface is closely connected with the suspensory ligament of the lens.

**Structure.** The ciliary processes are similar in structure to the choroid: the vessels are larger, having chiefly a longitudinal direction. Externally, they are covered with several layers of pigment-cells; the component cells are small, rounded, and full of pigment-granules.

The **Iris (iris, a rainbow)** has received its name from its various colors in different individuals. It is a thin, circular-shaped, contractile curtain, suspended in the aqueous humor behind the cornea, and in front of the lens, being perforated at the nasal side of its centre by a circular aperture, the pupil, for the transmission of light. By its circumference it is intimately connected with the choroid; externally to this is the ciliary ligament, by which it is connected to the sclerotic and cornea; its inner edge forms the margin of the pupil, its surfaces are flattened, and look forwards and backwards, the anterior surface towards the cornea, the posterior towards the ciliary processes and lens. The circumference of the iris is connected to the cornea by a reticular structure denominated the **ligamentum pectinatum iridis.** This is a modification of the membrane of Descemet, with which it is continuous. Its fibres cross the outer part of the anterior chamber, forming a kind of canal (the canal of Fontana) which is occupied by the reticulating fibres of the ligament. The anterior sur-
face of the iris is variously colored in different individuals, and marked by lines which converge towards the pupil. The posterior surface is of a deep purple tint, from being covered by dark pigment; it is hence named urea from its resemblance in color to a ripe grape.

Structure. The iris is composed of a fibrous stroma, muscular fibres, and pigment-cells.

The fibrous stroma consists of fine, delicate bundles of fibrous tissue, which have a circular direction at the circumference; but the chief mass radiate towards the pupil. They form, by their interlacement, a delicate mesh, in which the pigment-cells, vessels, and nerves are contained.

The muscular fibre is involuntary, and consists of circular and radiating fibres. The circular fibres (sphincter of the pupil) surround the margin of the pupil on the posterior surface of the iris, like a sphincter, forming a narrow band, about one-thirtieth of an inch in width; those near the free margin being closely aggregated; those more external somewhat separated, and forming less complete circles. The radiating fibres (dilator of the pupil) converge from the circumference towards the centre, and blend with the circular fibres near the margin of the pupil.

The pigment-cells are found in the stroma of the iris, and also as a distinct layer on its anterior and posterior surfaces. In the stroma, the cells are ramified, and contain yellow or brown pigment, according to the color of the eye. On the front of the iris, there is a single layer of oval or rounded cells, with branching offsets. On the back of the iris, there are several layers of small round cells, filled with dark pigment. This layer is continuous with the pigmentary covering of the ciliary processes.

The arteries of the iris are derived from the long and anterior ciliary, and from the vessels of the ciliary processes.

Membrana pupillaris. In the fetus, the pupil is closed by a delicate, transparent, vascular membrane, the membrana pupillaris, which divides the space in which the iris is suspended into two distinct chambers. This membrane contains numerous minute vessels continued from the margin of the iris to those on the front part of the capsule of the lens. These vessels have a looped arrangement, converging towards each other without anastomosing. During the seventh or eighth month the membrane begins to disappear, by its gradual absorption from the centre towards the circumference, and at birth only a few fragments remain. It is said sometimes to remain permanent, and produce blindness.

The Ciliary ligament is a narrow ring of circular fibres, about one-fourth of an inch thick, and of a whitish color: it serves to connect the external and middle tunics of the eye. It is placed around the circumference of the iris, at its point of connection with the external layer of the choroid, the cornea, and sclerotic. Its component fibres are delicate, and resemble those of elastic tissue. At its point of connection with the sclerotic a minute canal is situated between the two, called the sinus circularis iridis.

The Ciliary muscle (Bowman) consists of unstriped fibres: it forms a grayish, semitransparent, circular band, about one-eighth of an inch broad, on the outer surface of the fore part of the choroid. It is thickest in front, and gradually becomes thinner behind. Its fibres are soft, of a yellowish-white color, longitudinal in direction, and arise at the point of junction of the cornea and sclerotic. Passing backwards, they are attached to the choroid, in front of the retina, and correspond by their inner surface to the plicated part of the former membrane. Internal to the radiating fibres, and to some extent unconnected with them, are bands of circular fibres, sometimes called the “ring muscle” of Müller. The Ciliary muscle is admitted to be the chief agent in accommodation, i.e., in adjusting the eye to the vision of near objects. Mr. Bowman believed that this was effected by its compressing the vitreous body and so causing the lens to advance; but the view which now prevails is that the contraction of the muscle
by drawing on the ciliary processes compresses the lens, increasing the curvature of its anterior surface, and causing the iris to advance. The pupil is at the same time slightly contracted.¹

The Retina may be exposed by carefully removing the choroid from its external surface. It is a delicate nervous membrane, upon the surface of which the images of external objects are received. Its outer surface is in contact with the pigmentary layer of the choroid; its inner surface with the vitreous body. Behind, it is continuous with the optic nerve; it gradually diminishes in thickness from behind forwards; and, in front, extends nearly as far forwards as the ciliary ligament, where it terminates by a jagged margin, the ora serrata. It is soft, and semitransparent, in the fresh state; but soon becomes clouded, opaque, and of a pinkish tint. Exactly in the centre of the posterior part of the retina, and at a point corresponding to the axis of the eye, in which the sense of vision is most perfect, is a round, elevated, yellowish spot, called, after its discoverer, the yellow spot, or limbus luteus, of Sömmerring; having a central depression at its summit, the fovea centralis. The retina in the situation of the fovea centralis is exceedingly thin; so much so, that the dark color of the choroid is distinctly seen through it; so that it presents more the appearance of a foramen, and hence the name “foramen of Sömmerring” at first given to it. It exists only in man, the quadrupeds, and some saurian reptiles. Its use is unknown. About one-tenth of an inch to the inner side of the yellow spot, is the point of entrance of the optic nerve; the arteria centralis retinae piercing its centre. This is the only part of the surface of the retina from which the power of vision is absent.

Fig. 403.—The Arteria Centralia Retinae, Yellow Spot, etc., the anterior Half of the Eyeball being removed. (Enlarged.)

Structure. The retina is composed of three layers, together with bloodvessels:

External or columnar layer (Jacob’s membrane).
Middle or granular layer.
Internal or nervous layer.

The bloodvessels do not form a distinct layer; they ramify in the substance of the internal layer, extending, however, as far as the internal granular stratum of the middle layer.

The external, or Jacob’s membrane, is exceedingly thin, and can be detached from the external surface of the retina by the handle of the scalpel, in the form

¹ See explanation and diagram in Power’s “Illustrations of some of the Principal Diseases of the Eye,” p. 590.
of a flocculent film. It is thicker behind than in front, and consists of rod-like bodies of two kinds: 1. Columnar rods, solid, nearly of uniform size, and arranged perpendicularly to the surface. 2. Bulbous particles, or cones, which are interspersed at regular intervals among the former; these are conical or flask-shaped, their broad ends resting upon the membrana limitans externa, the narrow pointed extremity being turned towards the choroid; they are not solid, like the columnar rods, but consist of an external membrane with fluid contents. By their deep ends, both kinds are joined to the fibres of Müller. The layer of the rods and cones is separated from the granular layer of the retina by a transparent structureless cribiform membrane, the membrana limitans externa.

Fig. 404.

Vertical sections of the human retina. Fig. 404, half an inch from the entrance of the optic nerve. Fig. 405 close to the latter. 1. Layer of rods and cones (columnar layer), bounded underneath by the Membrana limitans externa. 2. External granular layer. 3. Intergranular layer. Internal granular layer. Molecular layer. 6. Layer of the ganglion-cells. 7. Expansion of optic fibres. 8. Sustentacular fibres of Müller. 9. Their attachment to the membrana limitans interna.

The middle or granular layer forms about one-third of the entire thickness of the retina. It consists of two laminae of rounded or oval nuclear particles, separated from each other by an intermediate (intergranular) lamina, which is transparent, finely fibrillated, and contains no bloodvessels. The outermost lamina is the thicker, and its constituent particles are globular. These particles are in connection with the bases of the rods and cones by fibres passing through the membrana limitans externa, and are therefore divided into "rod-granules" and "cone-granules." The innermost lamina is the thinner; its component particles are flattened, looking like pieces of money seen edgways; hence it has been called, by Bowman, the nummular layer. Examined more closely these cells are seen to be bipolar, i.e. each sends off a fine process outwards through the intergranular layer, and another inwards through the molecular layer to reach the expansion of the optic nerve.

The internal or nervous layer is a thin semitransparent membrane, consisting essentially of an expansion of the terminal fibres of the optic nerve and nerve-cells. This layer is subdivided into three. The most external is the molecular, or finely granular layer, presenting, as described by Frey, very much the appearance of the delicate molecular matter found in the gray substance of the brain and spinal cord. The fibres of the nervous layer pass below through this layer,
probably to be continuous with the nuclei of the rods and cones. Internal to the molecular layer is the layer of the ganglion-cells, or cellular layer. These are multipolar cells, similar to those of other nervous centres, and the processes from them pass on the one hand to the molecular layer, and on the other, to the fibrous layer, or expansion of the optic nerve. This ganglionic layer is deepest at the macula lutea. Finally, lying on the membrana limitans interna is the fibrous layer or proper expansion of the optic nerve. The nerve-fibres which form this layer differ from the fibres of the optic nerve in this respect: they lose their dark outline, and their tendency to become varicose; and consist only of the central part, or axis, of the nerve tubes. The mode of termination of the nerve-fibres is unknown. According to some observers, they terminate in loops; according to others, in free extremities. Recent observers have stated that some of the nerve-fibres are continuous with the caudate prolongations of the nerve-cells external to the fibrous layer.

An extremely thin and delicate structureless membrane lines the inner surface of the retina, and separates it from the vitreous body; it is called the membrana limitans interna.

The radiating fibres of the retina, described by Heinrich Müller, consist of extremely fine fibrillated threads, which are connected externally with each of the rods of the columnar layer, of which they appear to be direct continuations, and, passing through the entire substance of the retina, are united to the outer surface of the membrana limitans interna. In their course through the retina, they become connected with the nuclear particles of the granular layer, or (as described by Schultz) nuclei exist in the fibres in this situation, and they give off branching processes most easily demonstrated in the granular layer, by means of which they communicate with each other; as they approach the fibrous expansion of the optic nerve, they are collected into bundles, which pass through the areole between its fibres, and are finally attached to the inner surface of the membrana limitans interna, where each fibre terminates in a triangular enlargement.

The arteria centralis retinæ and its accompanying vein pierce the optic nerve, and enter the globe of the eye through the porus opticus. It immediately divides into four or five branches, which at first run between the hyaloid membrane and the nervous layer; but they soon enter the latter membrane, and form a close capillary network in its substance. At the ora serrata, they terminate in a single vessel which bounds the terminal margin of the retina.

The structure of the retina at the yellow spot presents some modifications. Jacob's membrane is thinner, and of its constituents only the cones are present; but they are small, and more closely aggregated than in any other part. The granular layer is absent over the scæa centralis. Of the two elements of the nervous layer, the nerve-fibres extend only to the circumference of the spot; but the nerve-cells cover its entire surface. The radiating fibres are found at the circumference, and here only extend to the inner strata of the granular layer. Of the capillary vessels, the larger branches pass round the spot; but the smaller capillaries meander through it. The color of the spot appears to imbue all the layers, except Jacob's membrane; it is of a rich yellow, deepest towards the centre, and does not appear to consist of pigment-cells, but resembles more a staining of the constituent parts.

Humors of the Eye.

The Aqueous Humor completely fills the anterior and posterior chambers of the eyeball. It is small in quantity (scarcely exceeding, according to Petit, four or five grains in weight), has an alkaline reaction, in composition is little more than water, less than one-fiftieth of its weight being solid matter, chiefly chloride of sodium.
THE LENS.

The anterior chamber is the space bounded in front by the cornea; behind, by the front of the iris and ciliary ligament.

The posterior chamber, smaller than the anterior, is bounded in front by the iris; behind, by the capsule of the lens and its suspensory ligament, and the ciliary processes.

In the adult, these two chambers communicate through the pupil; but in the foetus in the seventh month, when the pupil is closed by the membrana pupillaris, the two chambers are quite separate.

It has been generally supposed that the two chambers are lined by a distinct membrane, the secreting membrane of the aqueous humor, analogous in structure to that of a serous sac. An epithelial covering can, however, only be found on the posterior surface of the cornea. That the two chambers do, however, secrete this fluid separately, is shown by its being found in both spaces before the removal of the membrana pupillaris. It is probable that the parts concerned in the secretion of the fluid, are the posterior surface of the cornea, both surfaces of the iris, and the ciliary processes.

Vitreous Body.

The Vitreous Body forms about four-fifths of the entire globe. It fills the concavity of the retina, and is hollowed in front for the reception of the lens and its capsule. It is perfectly transparent, of the consistence of thin jelly, and consists of an albuminous fluid inclosed in a delicate transparent membrane, the hyaloid. This membrane invests the outer surface of the vitreous body; it is intimately connected in front with the suspensory ligament of the lens; and is continued into the back part of the capsule of the lens. It has been supposed, by Hannover, that from its inner surface numerous thin lamellae are prolonged inwards in a radiating manner, forming spaces in which the fluid is contained. In the adult, these lamellae cannot be detected even after careful microscopic examination; but in the foetus a peculiar fibrous texture pervades the mass, the fibres joining at numerous points, and presenting minute nuclear granules at their point of junction. The fluid from the vitreous body resembles nearly pure water; it contains, however, some salts, and a little albumen.

In the foetus, the centre of the vitreous humor presents a tubular canal through which a minute artery passes along the vitreous body to the capsule of the lens. In the adult, no vessels penetrate its substance; so that its nutrition must be carried on by the vessels of the retina and ciliary processes, situated upon its exterior.

Crystalline Lens and its Capsule.

The Crystalline Lens, inclosed in its capsule, is situated immediately behind the pupil, in front of the vitreous body, and surrounded by the ciliary processes, which slightly overlap its margin.

The capsule of the lens is a transparent, highly elastic, and brittle membrane, which closely surrounds the lens. It rests, behind, in a depression in the fore part of the vitreous body; in front, it forms part of the posterior chamber of the eye; and it is retained in its position chiefly by the suspensory ligament of the lens. The capsule is much thicker in front than behind, structureless in texture; and when ruptured, the edges roll up with the outer surface innermost, like the elastic laminae of the cornea. The lens is connected to the inner surface of the capsule by a single layer of transparent, polygonal, nucleated cells. These, after death, absorb moisture from the fluids of the eye; and, breaking down, form the liquor Morgagni.

In the foetus, a small branch from the arteria centralis retinae runs forwards, as already mentioned, through the vitreous humor to the posterior part of the capsule of the lens, where its branches radiate and form a plexiform network,
which covers its surface, and they are continuous round the margin of the capsule with the vessels of the pupillary membrane, and with those of the iris. In the adult no vessels enter its substance.

The lens is a transparent, double-convex body, the convexity being greater on the posterior than on the anterior surface. It measures about a third of an inch in the transverse diameter, and about one-fourth in the antero-posterior. It consists of concentric layers, of which the external n fresh state are soft and easily detached; those beneath are firmer, the central ones forming a hardened nucleus. These laminae are best demonstrated by boiling, or immersion in alcohol. The same reagents demonstrate that the lens consists of three triangular segments, the sharp edges of which are directed towards the centre, the bases towards the circumference. The laminae consist of minute parallel fibres, which are hexagonal prisms, the edges being dentated, and the dentations fitting accurately into each other; their breadth is about $\frac{1}{3}$ of an inch. They run from the pole on one side of the lens to the equator on the other, so that the fibres which are longest in front are shortest behind and vice versa. There are also other fibres, which are found chiefly in the equatorial region and at the surface of the lens, which present nuclei, and are of a flattened form. Their nuclei form a layer (nuclear layer) on the surface of the lens, most distinct towards its circumference. The meridians, or lines of junction of the three segments, are formed of an amorphous granular substance, which sometimes becomes opaque, when the lines are seen forming a distinct star on the lens.

The changes produced in the lens by age, are the following:—

In the fetus, its form is nearly spherical, its color of a slightly reddish tint, it is not perfectly transparent, and is so soft as to break down readily on the slightest pressure.

In the adult, the posterior surface is more convex than the anterior; it is colorless, transparent, and firm in texture.

In old age, it becomes flattened on both surfaces, slightly opaque, of an amber tint, and increases in density.

The suspensory ligament of the lens is a thin, transparent, membranous structure, placed between the vitreous body and the ciliary processes of the choroid; it connects the anterior margin of the retina with the anterior surface of the lens near its circumference. It assists in retaining the lens in its position. Its outer surface presents a number of folds or plaitings, in which the corresponding folds of the ciliary processes are received. These plaitings are arranged round the lens in a radiating form, and are stained by the pigment of the ciliary processes. The suspensory ligament consists of two layers, which commence behind at the ora serrata. The external, a tough, milky, granular membrane, covers the inner surface of the ciliary processes, and extends as far forwards as their anterior free extremities. The inner layer, an elastic, transparent, fibromembranous structure, extends as far forwards as the anterior surface of the capsule of the lens, near its circumference. That portion of this membrane which intervenes between the ciliary processes and the capsule of the lens, forms part of the boundary of the posterior chamber of the eye. The posterior surface of this layer is turned towards the hyaloid membrane, being separated from it at the circumference of the lens by a space called the canal of Petit.

The canal of Petit is above one-tenth of an inch wide. It is bounded in front by the suspensory ligament; behind, by the hyaloid membrane, its base being formed by the capsule of the lens. When inflated with air, it is sacculated at intervals, owing to the foldings on its anterior surface.
APPENDAGES OF THE EYE.

The Vessels of the globe of the eye are the short, long, and anterior ciliary arteries, and the arteria centralis retinae.

The short ciliary arteries pierce the back part of the sclerotic, round the entrance of the optic nerve, and divide into branches which run parallel with the axis of the eyeball: they are distributed to the middle layer of the choroid, and to the ciliary processes.

The long ciliary arteries, two in number, pierce the back part of the sclerotic, and run forward, between that membrane and the choroid, to the Giliary muscle, where they each divide into an upper and lower branch; these anastomose, and form a vascular circle round the outer circumference of the iris; from this circle branches are given off, which unite, near the margin of the pupil, in a smaller vascular circle. These branches, in their course, supply the muscular structure.

The anterior ciliary arteries, five or six in number, are branches of the muscular and lachrymal branches of the ophthalmic. They pierce the eyeball, at the anterior part of the sclerotic, immediately behind the margin of the cornea, and are distributed to the ciliary processes, some branches joining the greater vascular circle of the iris.

The arteria centralis retinae has been already described.

The veins, usually four in number, are formed mainly by branches from the surface of the choroid. They perforate the sclerotic, midway between the cornea and the optic nerve, and end in the ophthalmic vein.

The nerves of the eyeball, are the optic, the long ciliary nerves from the nasal branch of the ophthalmic, and the short ciliary nerves from the ciliary ganglion.

APPENDAGES OF THE EYE.

The Appendages of the Eye (tutamina oculi) include the eyebrows, the eyelids, the conjunctiva, and the lachrymal apparatus, viz., the lachrymal gland, the lachrymal sac, and the nasal duct.

The eyebrows (supercilia) are two arched eminences of integument, which surmount the upper circumference of the orbit on each side, and support numerous short, thick hairs, directed obliquely on the surface. In structure, the eyebrows consist of thickened integument, connected beneath with the Orbicularis palpebrarum, Corrugator supercilii, and Occipito-frontalis muscles. These muscles serve, by their action on this part, to control to a certain extent the amount of light admitted into the eye.

The eyelids (palpebrae) are two thin, movable folds, placed in front of the eye, protecting it from injury by their closure. The upper lid is the larger, and the more movable of the two, and is furnished with a separate elevator muscle, the Levator palpebræ superioris. When the eyelids are opened, an elliptical space (fissura palpebrarum) is left between their margins, the angles of which correspond to the junction of the upper and lower lids, and are called canthi.

The outer canthus is more acute than the inner, and the lids here lie in close contact with the globe; but the inner canthus is prolonged for a short distance inwards, towards the nose, and the two lids are separated by a triangular space, the locus lacrymalis. At the commencement of the lacus lacrymalis, on the margin of each eyelid, is a small conical elevation, the lachrymal papilla, or tubercle, the apex of which is pierced by a small orifice, the punctum lacrymale, the commencement of the lachrymal canal.

Structure of the eyelids. The eyelids are composed of the following structures, taken in their order from without inwards:—

Integument, areolar tissue, fibres of the Orbicularis muscle, tarsal cartilage, fibrous membrane, Meibomian glands, and conjunctiva. The upper lid has, in addition, the aponeurosis of the Levator palpebræ.
The integument is extremely thin, and continuous at the margin of the lids with the conjunctiva.

The subcutaneous areolar tissue is very lax and delicate, seldom contains any fat, and is extremely liable to serous infiltration.

The fibres of the Orbicularis muscle, where they cover the palpebrae, are thin, pale in color, and possess an involuntary action.

The tarsal cartilages are two thin elongated plates of fibro-cartilage, about an inch in length. They are placed one in each lid, contributing to their form and support.

The superior, the larger, is of a semilunar form, about one-third of an inch in breadth at the centre, and becoming gradually narrowed at each extremity. Into the upper border of this cartilage the aponeurosis of the Levator palpebrae is attached.

The inferior tarsal cartilage, the smaller, is thinner, and of an elliptical form.

The free, or ciliary margin of the cartilages is thick, and presents a perfectly straight edge. The attached, or orbital margin, is connected to the circumference of the orbit by the fibrous membrane of the lids. The outer angle of each cartilage is attached to the malar bone by the external palpebral or tarsal ligament. The inner angles of the two cartilages terminate at the commencement of the lacus lachrymalis, being fixed to the margins of the orbit by the tendo oculi.

The fibrous membrane of the lids, or tarsal ligament, is a layer of fibrous membrane, beneath the Orbicularis, attached, externally to the margin of the orbit, and internally to the orbital margin of the lids. It is thick and dense at the outer part of the orbit, but becomes thinner as it approaches the cartilages. This membrane serves to support the eyelids, and retains the tarsal cartilages in their position.

Fig. 407.—The Meibomian Glands, etc., seen from the Inner Surface of the Eyelids.

The Meibomian glands (Fig. 407) are situated upon the inner surface of the eyelids, between the tarsal cartilages and conjunctiva, and may be distinctly seen through the mucous membrane on evertting the eyelids, presenting the appearance of parallel strings of pearls. They are about thirty in number in the upper cartilage, and somewhat fewer in the lower. They are embedded in grooves in the inner surface of the cartilages, and correspond in length with the breadth of each cartilage; they are, consequently, longer in the upper than in the lower eyelid. Their ducts open on the free margin of the lids by minute foramina, which correspond in number to the follicles. These glands are a variety of the cutaneous sebaceous glands, each consisting of a single straight
LACHRYMAL APPARATUS.

tube or follicle, having a cecal termination, into which open a number of small secondary follicles. The tubes consist of basement membrane, covered by a layer of scaly epithelium; the cells are charged with sebaceous matter, which constitutes the secretion. The peculiar parallel arrangement of these glands side by side forms a smooth layer, adapted to the surface of the globe, over which they constantly glide. The use of their secretion is to prevent adhesion of the lids.

The eyelashes (cilia) are attached to the free edges of the eyelids; they are short, thick, curved hairs, arranged in a double or triple row at the margin of the lids: those of the upper lid, more numerous and longer than the lower, curve upwards; those of the lower lid curve downwards, so that they do not interlace in closing the lids.

The conjunctiva is the mucous membrane of the eye. It lines the inner surface of the eyelids, and is reflected over the fore part of the sclerotic and cornea. In each of these situations, its structure presents some peculiarities.

The palpebral portion of the conjunctiva is thick, opaque, highly vascular, and covered with numerous papilla, which, in the disease called granular lids, become greatly hypertrophied. At the margin of the lids, it becomes continuous with the lining membrane of the ducts of the Meibomian glands, and through the lachrymal canals, with the lining membrane of the lachrymal sac and nasal duct. At the outer angle of the upper lid, it may be traced along the lachrymal ducts into the lachrymal gland; and at the inner angle of the eye, it forms a semilunar fold, the plica semilunaris. The folds formed by the reflection of the conjunctiva from the lids on to the eye are called the superior and inferior palpebral folds, the former being the deeper of the two. Upon the sclerotic, the conjunctiva is loosely connected to the globe: it becomes thinner, loses its papillary structure, is transparent, and only slightly vascular in health. Upon the cornea, the conjunctiva is extremely thin and closely adherent, and no vessels can be traced into it in the adult in a healthy state. In the fetus, fine capillary loops extend, for some little distance forwards, into this membrane; but in the adult, they pass only to the circumference of the cornea. The deeper parts of the palpebral conjunctiva present, according to Henle, a considerable proportion of lymphoid tissue. Lymphatics arise in the conjunctiva in a delicate zone around the cornea, from which the vessels run to the ocular conjunctiva.

Mucous glands are described by Henle in the palpebral sinus, chiefly on the upper lid, and glands called “trachoma glands,” which are analogous to the lymphoid follicles, and have the same relation to the lymph-spaces already spoken of. A large patch of these, strongly resembling one of Peyer’s patches, is described by Frey as found in the under eyelid of the ox. Tactile corpuscles are found in the epithelium of the conjunctiva of the eyelids, and “beaker-cells” have been described there.

The caruncula lacrimalis is a small, reddish, conical-shaped body, situated at the inner canthus of the eye, and filling up the small triangular space in this situation, the lacus lacrimalis. It consists of a cluster of follicles similar in structure to the Meibomian, covered with mucous membrane, and is the source of the whitish secretion which constantly collects at the inner angle of the eye. A few slender hairs are attached to its surface. On the outer side of the caruncula is a slight semilunar fold of mucous membrane, the concavity of which is directed towards the cornea: it is called the plica semilunaris. Between its two layers is found a thin plate of cartilage. This structure is considered to be the rudiment of the third eyelid in birds, the membrana nictitans.

LACHRYMAL APPARATUS. (Fig. 408.)

The Lachrymal Apparatus consists of the lachrymal gland, which secretes the tears, and its excretory ducts, which convey the fluid to the surface of the
eye. This fluid is carried away by the lachrymal canals into the lachrymal sac, and along the nasal duct into the cavity of the nose.

The lachrymal gland is lodged in a depression at the outer angle of the orbit, on the inner side of the external angular process of the frontal bone. It is of an oval form, about the size and shape of an almond. Its upper convex surface is in contact with the periosteum of the orbit, to which it is connected by a few fibrous bands. Its under concave surface rests upon the convexity of the eyeball, and upon the Superior and External recti muscles. Its vessels and nerves enter its posterior border, whilst its anterior margin is closely adherent to the back part of the upper eyelid, and is covered, on its inner surface, by a reflection of the conjunctiva. This margin is separated from the rest of the gland by a single depression, hence it is sometimes described as a separate lobe, called the

Fig. 408.—The Lachrymal Apparatus. Right Side.

pulpebral portion of the gland. In structure and general appearance the lachrymal resembles the salivary glands. Its ducts, about seven in number, run obliquely beneath the mucous membrane for a short distance, and separating from each other, open by a series of minute orifices on the upper and outer half of the conjunctiva, near its reflection on to the globe. These orifices are arranged in a row, so as to disperse the secretion over the surface of the membrane.

The lachrymal canals commence at the minute orifices, puncta lacrymalis, seen on the margin of the lids, at the outer extremity of the lacus lacrymalis. They commence on the summit of a slightly elevated papilla, the papilla lacrymalis, and lead into minute canals, the canaliculi, which proceed inwards to terminate in the lachrymal sac. The superior canal, the smaller and longer of the two, at first ascends, and then bends at an acute angle, and passes inwards and downwards to the lachrymal sac. The inferior canal at first descends, and then, abruptly changing its course, passes almost horizontally inwards. They are dense and elastic in structure, and somewhat dilated at their angle.

The lachrymal sac is the upper dilated extremity of the nasal duct, and is lodged in a deep groove formed by the lachrymal bone and nasal process of the superior maxillary. It is oval in form, its upper extremity being closed in and rounded, whilst below it is continued into the nasal duct. It is covered by the Tensor tarsi muscle and by a fibrous expansion derived from the tendo oculi, which is attached to the ridge on the lachrymal bone. In structure it consists of a fibrous elastic coat, lined internally by mucous membrane; the latter being continuous through the canaliculi, with the mucous lining of the conjunctiva, and through the nasal duct with the pituitary membrane of the nose.
The *nasal duct* is a membranous canal, about three-quarters of an inch in length, which extends from the lower part of the lachrymal sac to the inferior meatus of the nose, where it terminates by a somewhat expanded orifice, provided with an imperfect valve formed by the mucous membrane. It is contained in an osseous canal, formed by the superior maxillary, the lachrymal, and the inferior turbinated bones, is narrower in the middle than at each extremity, and takes a direction downwards, backwards, and a little outwards. It is lined by mucous membrane, which is continuous below with the pituitary lining of the nose. In the canaliculi, this membrane is provided with scaly epithelium; but in the lachrymal sac and nasal duct, the epithelium is ciliated as in the nose.

**The Ear.**

The organ of hearing has three parts: the external ear, the middle ear or tympanum, and the internal ear or labyrinth.

**External Ear.**

The External Ear consists of an expanded portion named pinna, or auricle, and the auditory canal, or meatus. The former serves to collect the vibrations of the air by which sound is produced, and the latter conducts those vibrations to the tympanum.

The *pinna* or *auricle* (Fig. 409) is formed by a layer of cartilage, covered with integument, and connected to the commencement of the auditory canal: it is of an ovoid form, its surface uneven, with its larger end directed upwards. Its outer surface is irregularly concave, directed slightly forwards, and presents numerous eminences and depressions which result from the foldings of its fibro-cartilaginous element. To each of these names have been assigned. Thus, the external prominent rim of the auricle is called the *helix*. Another curved prominence parallel with, and in front of the helix, is called the *antihelix*: this bifurcates above, so as to inclose a triangular depression, the fossa of the antihelix. The narrow curved depression between the helix and antihelix is called the *fossa of the helix* (*fossa innominata, scaphoida*); the antihelix describes a curve round a deep, capacious cavity, the *concha*, which is partially divided into two parts by the commencement of the helix. In front of the concha, and projecting backwards over the meatus, is a small pointed eminence, the *tragus*; so called from its being generally covered, on its under surface, with a tuft of hair, resembling a goat's beard. Opposite the tragus, and separated from it by a deep notch (*incisura intertragica*), is a small tubercle, the *antitragus*. Below this is the *lobule*, composed of tough arcolar and adipose tissue, wanting the firmness and elasticity of the rest of the pinna.

*Structure of the pinna.* The pinna is composed of a thin plate of yellow cartilage, covered with integument, and connected to the surrounding parts by ligaments, and a few muscular fibres.

The *integument* is thin, closely adherent to the cartilage, and furnished with sebaceous glands, which are most numerous in the concha and scaphoid fossa.

The *cartilage of the pinna* consists of one single piece; it gives form to this
part of the ear, and upon its surface are found all the eminences and depressions above described. It does not enter into the construction of all parts of the auricle; thus it does not form a constituent part of the lobule; it is deficient, also, between the tragus and beginning of the helix, the notch between them being filled up by dense fibrous tissue. It presents several intervals or fissures in its substance, which partially separate the different parts. The fissure of the helix is a short vertical slit, situated at the fore part of the pinna, immediately behind a small conical projection of cartilage, opposite the first curve of the helix (process of the helix). Another fissure, the fissure of the tragus, is seen upon the anterior surface of the tragus. The antihelix is divided below, by a deep fissure, into two parts: one part terminates by a pointed, tail-like extremity (processus caudatus); the other is continuous with the antitragus. The cartilage of the pinna is very pliable, elastic, of a yellowish color, and similar in structure to the cartilages of the nose.

The ligaments of the pinna consist of two sets: 1. Those connecting it to the side of the head. 2. Those connecting the various parts of its cartilage together.

The former, the most important, are two in number, anterior and posterior. The anterior ligament extends from the process of the helix to the root of the zygoma. The posterior ligament passes from the posterior surface of the concha to the outer surface of the mastoid process of the temporal bone. A few fibres connect the tragus to the root of the zygoma.

The ligaments connecting the various parts of the cartilage together are also two in number. Of these, one is a strong fibrous band, stretching across from the tragus to the commencement of the helix, completing the meatus in front, and partly encircling the boundary of the concha; the other extends between the concha and the processus caudatus.

Fig. 410.—The Muscles of the Pinna.

The muscles of the pinna (Fig. 410), like the ligaments, consist of two sets: 1. Those which connect it with the side of the head, moving the pinna as a whole, viz., the Antitollens, Attrahens, and Retrahens aurem (p. 344); and 2. The
proper muscles of the pinna, which extend from one part of the auricle to another. These are, the

Helicis major.  Antitragicus.
Helicis minor.  Transversus auriculæ.
Tragicus.  Obliquis auris.

The *Helicis major* is a narrow vertical band of muscular fibres, situated upon the anterior margin of the helix. It arises, below, from the tubercle of the helix, and is inserted into the anterior border of the helix, just where it is about to curve backwards. It is pretty constant in its existence.

The *Helicis minor* is an oblique fasciculus, attached to that part of the helix which commences from the bottom of the concha.

The *Tragicus* is a short, flattened band of muscular fibres situated upon the outer surface of the tragus, the direction of its fibres being vertical.

The *Antitragicus* arises from the outer part of the antitragus; its fibres are inserted into the processus caudatus of the helix. This muscle is usually very distinct.

The *Transversus auriculæ* is placed on the cranial surface of the pinna. It consists of radiating fibres, partly tendinous and partly muscular, extending from the convexity of the concha to the prominence corresponding with the groove of the helix.

The *Obliquis auris* (Todd) consists of a few fibres extending from the upper and back part of the concha to the convexity immediately above it.

The *arteries of the pinna* are the posterior auricular, from the external carotid; the anterior auricular, from the temporal; and an auricular branch from the occipital artery.

The *veins* accompany the corresponding arteries.

The *nerves* are, the auricularis magnus, from the cervical plexus; the posterior auricular, from the facial; the auricular branch of the pneumogastric; and the auriculotemporal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve.

The *Auditory Canal* (*meatus auditiorius externus*) extends from the bottom of the concha to the membrana tympani (Fig. 411). It is about an inch and

Fig. 411.—A Front View of the Organ of Hearing. Right Side.

a quarter in length, its direction is obliquely forwards and inwards, and it is slightly curved upon itself, so as to be higher in the middle than at either extremity. It forms an oval cylindrical canal, narrowest at the middle, somewhat flattened from before backwards, the greatest diameter being in the vertical direction at the external orifice; but, in the transverse direction, at the tympanic
end. The membrana tympani, which occupies the termination of the meatus, is obliquely directed, in consequence of the floor of the canal being longer than the roof, and the anterior wall longer than the posterior. The auditory canal is formed partly by cartilage and membrane, and partly by bone.

The cartilaginous portion is about half an inch in length, being rather less than half the canal; it is formed by the cartilage of the concha and tragus; prolonged inwards, and firmly attached to the circumference of the auditory process. The cartilage is deficient at its upper and back part, its place being supplied by fibrous membrane. This part of the canal is rendered extremely movable by two or three deep fissures (incisurae Santorini), which extend through the cartilage in a vertical direction.

The osseous portion is about three-quarters of an inch in length, and narrower than the cartilaginous portion. It is directed inwards and a little forwards, forming a slight curve in its course, the convexity of which is upwards and backwards. Its inner end, which communicates with the cavity of the tympanum, is smaller than the outer, and sloped, the anterior wall projecting beyond the posterior about two lines; it is marked, except at its upper part, by a narrow groove for the insertion of the membrana tympani. Its outer end is dilated, and rough, in the greater part of its circumference, for the attachment of the cartilage of the pinna. Its vertical transverse section is oval, the greatest diameter being from above downwards. The front and lower parts of this canal are formed by a curved plate of bone, which, in the fœtus, exists as a separate ring (tympanic bone), incomplete at its upper part.

The skin lining the meatus is very thin, adheres closely to the cartilaginous and osseous portions of the tube, and covers the surface of the membrana tympani, forming its outer layer. After maceration, the thin pouch of epidermis, when withdrawn, preserves the form of the meatus. The skin near its orifice is furnished with hairs and sebaceous glands. In the thick subcutaneous tissue of the cartilaginous part of the meatus are numerous ceruminous glands, which secrete the ear-wax; their ducts open on the surface of the skin.

The arteries supplying the meatus are branches from the posterior auricular, internal maxillary, and temporal.

The nerves are chiefly derived from the auriculo-temporal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve.

**Middle Ear, or Tympanum.**

The Middle Ear, or Tympanum, is an irregular cavity, compressed from without inwards, and situated within the petrous bone. It is placed above the jugular fossa, the carotid canal lying in front, the mastoid cells behind, the meatus auditorius externally, and the labyrinth internally. It is filled with air, and communicates with the pharynx by the Eustachian tube. The tympanum is traversed by a chain of movable bones, which connect the membrana tympani with the labyrinth, and serve to convey the vibrations communicated to the membrana tympani across the cavity of the tympanum to the internal ear.

The cavity of the tympanum measures about five lines from before backwards, three lines in the vertical direction, and between two and three in the transverse, being a little broader behind and above that it is below and in front. It is bounded externally by the membrana tympani and meatus; internally, by the outer surface of the internal ear; and communicates, behind, with the mastoid cells; and, in front, with the Eustachian tube and canal for the Tensor tympani. Its roof and floor are formed by thin osseous laminae, which connect the squamous and petrous portions of the temporal bone.

The roof is broad, flattened, and formed of a thin plate of bone, which separates the cranial and tympanic cavities.

The floor is narrow, and corresponds to the jugular fossa, which lies beneath. The outer wall is formed by the membrana tympani, a small portion of bone
being seen above and below this membrane. It presents three small apertures: the iter chordae posterius, the Glaserian fissure, and the iter chordae anterius.

The *aperture of the iter chordae posterius* is behind the aperture for the membrana tympani, close to its margin, on a level with its centre; it leads into a minute canal, which descends in front of the aqueductus Fallopii, and terminates in that canal near the stylo-mastoid foramen. Through it the chorda tympani nerve enters the tympanum.

The *Glaserian fissure* opens just above and in front of the orifice of the membrana tympani; in this situation it is a mere slit, about a line in length. It gives passage to the long process of the malleus, the Laxator tympani muscle, and some tympanic vessels.

The *aperture of the iter chordae anterius* is seen just above the preceding fissure; it leads into a canal (canal of Hugier), which runs parallel with the Glaserian fissure. Through it the chorda tympani nerve leaves the tympanum.

Fig. 412 — View of Inner Wall of Tympanum. (Enlarged.)

The *internal wall of the tympanum* (Fig. 412) is vertical in direction, and looks directly outwards. It presents for examination the following parts:

- Fenestra ovalis.
- Fenestra rotunda.
- Promontory.

Ridge of the aqueductus Fallopii.
Pyramid.
Opening for the Stapedius.

The *fenestra ovalis* is a reniform opening, leading from the tympanum into the vestibule; its long diameter is directed horizontally, and its convex border is upwards. The opening in the recent state is closed by the lining membrane common to both cavities, and is occupied by the base of the stapes. This membrane is placed opposite the membrana tympani, and is connected with it by the ossicula auditus.

The *fenestra rotunda* is an oval aperture placed at the bottom of a funnel-shaped depression, leading into the cochlea. It is situated below and rather behind the fenestra ovalis, from which it is separated by a rounded elevation, the promontory; it is closed in the recent state by a membrane (*membrana tympani secundaria*, Scarpa). This membrane is concave towards the tympanum, convex towards the cochlea. It consists of three layers; the external, or mucous, derived from the mucous lining of the tympanum; the internal, or serous, from the lining membrane of the cochlea; and an intermediate, or fibrous layer.

The *promontory* is a rounded hollow prominence, formed by the projection outwards of the first turn of the cochlea; it is placed between the fenestrae, and is furrowed on its surface by three small grooves, which lodge branches of the tympanic plexus.
The rounded eminence of the aqueductus Fallopii, the prominence of the bony canal in which the portio dura is contained, traverses the inner wall of the tympanum above the fenestra ovalis, and behind that opening curves nearly vertically downwards along the posterior wall.

The pyramid is a conical eminence, situated immediately behind the fenestra ovalis, and in front of the vertical portion of the eminence above described; it is hollow in the interior, and contains the Stapedius muscle; its summit projects forwards towards the fenestra ovalis, and presents a small aperture, which transmits the tendon of the muscle. The cavity in the pyramid is prolonged into a minute canal, which communicates with the aqueductus Fallopii, and transmits the nerve which supplies the Stapedius.

The posterior wall of the tympanum is wider above than below, and presents for examination the

Openings of the Mastoid Cells.

These consist of one large irregular aperture, and several smaller openings, situated at the upper part of the posterior wall; they lead into canals, which communicate with large irregular cavities contained in the interior of the mastoid process. These cavities vary considerably in number, size, and form; they are lined by mucous membrane, continuous with that covering the cavity of the tympanum.

The anterior wall of the tympanum is wider above than below; it corresponds with the carotid canal, from which it is separated by a thin plate of bone; it presents for examination the

Canal for the Tensor tympani. Orifice of the Eustachian tube.

Processus cochleariformis.

The orifice of the canal for the Tensor tympani, and the orifice of the Eustachian tube, are situated at the upper part of the anterior wall, being separated from each other by a thin, delicate horizontal plate of bone, the processus cochleariformis. These canals run from the tympanum forward, inward, and a little downward, to the retiring angle between the squamous and petrous portion of the temporal bone.

The canal for the Tensor tympani is the superior and the smaller of the two; it is rounded, and lies beneath the upper surface of the petrous bone, close to the hiatus Fallopii. The tympanic end of this canal forms a conical eminence, which is prolonged backwards into the cavity of the tympanum, and is perforated at its summit by an aperture, which transmits the tendon of the muscle contained in it. This eminence is sometimes called the anterior pyramid. The canal contains the Tensor tympani muscle.

The Eustachian tube is the channel through which the tympanum communicates with the pharynx. Its length is from an inch and a half to two inches, and its direction downwards, forwards, and inwards. It is formed partly of bone, partly of cartilage and fibrous tissue.

The osseous portion is about half an inch in length. It commences in the lower part of the anterior wall of the tympanum, below the processus cochleariformis, and gradually narrowing, terminates in an oval dilated opening, at the angle of junction of the petrous and squamous portions, its extremity presenting a jagged margin, which serves for the attachment of the cartilaginous portion.

The cartilaginous portion, about an inch in length, is formed of a triangular plate of cartilage, curved upon itself, an interval being left below, between the margins of the cartilage, which is completed by fibrous tissue. Its canal is narrow behind, wide, expanded, and somewhat trumpet-shaped in front, terminating by an oval orifice, at the upper part and side of the pharynx, behind the back part of the inferior meatus. Through this canal the mucous membrane of the pharynx is continuous with that which lines the tympanum. The mucous membrane is covered with ciliated epithelium.
Ossicles of the Tymanum.

The *membrana tympani* separates the cavity of the tymanum from the bottom of the external meatus. It is a thin semitransparent membrane, nearly oval in form, somewhat broader above than below, and directed very obliquely downwards and inwards. Its circumference is contained in a groove at the inner end of the meatus, which skirts the circumference of this part, excepting above. The handle of the malleus descends vertically between the inner and middle layers of this membrane, as far down as its centre, where it is firmly attached, drawing the membrane inwards, so that its outer surface is concave, its inner convex.

Structure. This membrane is composed of three layers, an external (cuticular), a middle (fibrous), and an internal (mucous). The cuticular lining is derived from the integument lining the meatus. The fibrous layer consists of fibrous and elastic tissues; some of the fibres radiate from near the centre to the circumference; others are arranged, in the form of a dense circular ring, round the attached margin of the membrane. The mucous lining is derived from the mucous lining of the tymanum. The vessels pass to the membrana tympani along the handle of the malleus, and are distributed between its layers.

Ossicles of the Tymanum. (Fig. 413.)

The tymanum is traversed by a chain of movable bones, three in number, the malleus, incus, and stapes. The former is attached to the membrana tympani, the latter to the fenestra ovalis, the incus being placed between the two, to both of which it is connected by delicate articulations.

The Malleus, so named from its fancied resemblance to a hammer, consists of a head, neck, and three processes; the handle or manubrium, the processus gracilis, and the processus brevis.

The head is the large upper extremity of the bone; it is oval in shape, and articulates posteriorly with the incus, being free in the rest of its extent.

The neck is the narrow contracted part just beneath the head; and below this is a prominence, to which the various processes are attached.

The *manubrium* is a vertical process of bone, which is connected by its outer margin with the membrana tympani. It decreases in size towards its extremity, where it is curved slightly forwards, and flattened from within outwards.

The *processus gracilis* is a long and very delicate process, which passes from the eminence below the neck forwards and outwards to the Glaserian fissure, to which it is connected by bone and ligamentous fibres. It gives attachment to the Laxator tympani.

The *processus brevis* is a slight conical projection, which springs from the root of the manubrium, and lies in contact with the membrana tympani. Its summit gives attachment to the Tensor tympani.

The *Incus* has received its name from its supposed resemblance to an anvil, but it is more like a bicuspid tooth, with two roots, which differ in length, and are widely separated from each other. It consists of a body and two processes.

The body is somewhat quadrilateral, but compressed laterally. Its summit is deeply concave, and articulates with the malleus; in the fresh state, it is covered with cartilage and lined with synovial membrane.

The two processes diverge from one another nearly at right angles.

The *short process*, somewhat conical in shape, projects nearly horizontally backwards, and is attached to the margin of the opening leading into the mastoid cells, by ligamentous fibres.

The *long process*, longer and more slender than
the preceding, descends nearly vertically behind the handle of the malleus, and bending inwards, terminates in a rounded globular projection, the os orbiculare, or lenticular process, which is tipped with cartilage, and articulates with the head of the stapes. In the fetus the os orbiculare exists as a separate bone, but becomes united to the long process of the incus in the adult.

The Stapes, so called from its close resemblance to a stirrup, consists of a head, neck, two branches, and a base.

The head presents a depression, tipped with cartilage, which articulates with the os orbiculare.

The neck, the constricted part of the bone below the head, receives the insertion of the Stapedius muscle.

The two branches (crura) diverge from the neck, and are connected at their extremities by a flattened, oval-shaped plate (the base), which forms the foot of the stirrup, and is fixed to the margin of the fenestra ovalis by ligamentous fibres.

Ligaments of the Oscicula. These small bones are connected with each other, and with the walls of the tympanum, by ligaments, and moved by small muscles. The articular surfaces of the malleus and incus, the orbicular process of the incus and head of the stapes, are covered with cartilage, connected together by delicate capsular ligaments, and lined by synovial membrane. The ligaments connecting the ossicula with the walls of the tympanum are three in number, one for each bone.

The suspensory ligament of the malleus is a delicate, round bundle of fibres, which descends perpendicularly from the roof of the tympanum to the head of the malleus.

The posterior ligament of the incus is a short, thick, ligamentous band, which connects the extremity of the short process of the incus to the posterior wall of the tympanum, near the margin of the opening of the mastoid cells.

The annular ligament of the stapes connects the circumference of the base of this bone to the margin of the fenestra ovalis.

A suspensory ligament of the incus has been described by Arnold, descending from the roof of the tympanum to the upper part of the incus, near its articulation with the malleus.

The muscles of the tympanum are three:—

Tensor tympani. Laxator tympani. Stapedius.

The Tensor tympani, the largest, is contained in the bony canal, above the osseous portion of the Eustachian tube, from which it is separated by the processus cochleariformis. It arises from the under surface of the petrous bone, from the cartilaginous portion of the Eustachian tube, and from the osseous canal in which it is contained. Passing backwards, it terminates in a slender tendon which is reflected outwards over the processus cochleariformis, and is inserted into the handle of the malleus, near its root. It is supplied by a branch from the otic ganglion.

The Laxator tympani major (Sömmering) arises from the spinous process of the sphenoid bone, and from the cartilaginous portion of the Eustachian tube, and passing backwards through the Glaserian fissure, is inserted into the neck of the malleus, just above the processus gracilis. It is supplied by the tympanic branch of the facial.

The Laxator tympani minor (Sömmering) arises from the upper and back part of the external meatus, passes forwards and inwards between the middle and inner layers of the membrana tympani, and is inserted into the handle of the malleus and processus brevis.

The Laxator tympani major is now very generally believed to be ligamentous and not muscular, and there seems little doubt that the structure described under the name of Laxator tympani minor is a ligament.

The Stapedius arises from the sides of a conical cavity hollowed out of the
NERVES OF THE TYMPANUM.

interior of the pyramid: its tendon emerges from the orifice at the apex of the pyramid, and passing forwards, is inserted into the neck of the stapes. Its surface is aponeurotic, its interior fleshy; and its tendon occasionally contains a slender bony spine, which is constant in some mammalia. It is supplied by a filament from the facial nerve.

**Actions.** The Tensor tympani draws the membrana tympani inwards, and thus heightens its tension. The laxator tympani draws the malleus outwards, and thus the tympanic membrane, especially at its fore part, is relaxed. The Stapedius depresses the back part of the base of the stapes, and raises its fore part. It probably compresses the contents of the vestibule.

The mucous membrane of the tympanum is thin, vascular, and continuous with the mucous membrane of the pharynx, through the Eustachian tube. It invests the ossicula, and the muscles and nerves contained in the tympanic cavity; forms the internal layer of the membrana tympani; covers the foramen rotundum; and is reflected into the mastoid cells, which it lines throughout. In the tympanum and mastoid cells, this membrane is pale, thin, slightly vascular, and covered with ciliated epithelium. In the osseous portion of the Eustachian tube, the membrane is thin; but in the cartilaginous portion it is very thick, highly vascular, covered with laminar ciliated epithelium, and provided with numerous mucous glands.

The arteries supplying the tympanum are five in number. Two of them are larger than the rest, viz., the tympanic branch of the internal maxillary, which supplies the membrana tympani; and the stylo-mastoid branch of the posterior auricular, which supplies the back part of the tympanum and mastoid cells. The smaller branches are, the petrosal branch of the middle meningeal, and branches from the ascending pharyngeal and internal carotid.

The veins of the tympanum terminate in the middle meningeal and pharyngeal veins and, through these, in the internal jugular.

The nerves of the tympanum may be divided into: 1. Those supplying the muscles; 2. Those distributed to the lining membrane; 3. Branches communicating with other nerves.

**Nerves to muscles.** The Tensor tympani is supplied by a branch from the otic ganglion; the Laxator tympani, and the Stapedius, by a filament from the facial (Simmerring).

The nerves distributed to the lining membrane are derived from the tympanic plexus.

**Communications** between the following nerves take place in the tympanum: the tympanic branch from the petrous ganglion of the glosso-pharyngeal; a filament from the carotid plexus; a branch which joins the great superficial petrosal nerve from the Vidian; and a branch to the otic ganglion (small superficial petrosal nerve).

The tympanic branch of the glosso-pharyngeal (Jacobson's nerve) enters the tympanum by an aperture in its floor, close to the inner wall, and ascends on to the promontory. It distributes filaments to the lining membrane of the tympanum, and divides into three branches, which are contained in grooves on the promontory, and serve to connect this with other nerves. One branch runs in a groove, forwards and downwards, to an aperture situated at the junction of the anterior and inner walls, just above the floor, and enters the carotid canal, to communicate with the carotid plexus of the sympathetic. The second branch is contained in a groove which runs vertically upwards to an aperture on the inner wall of the tympanum, just beneath the anterior pyramid, and in front of the fenestra ovalis. The canal leading from this opens into the hiatus Fallopii, where the nerve contained in it joins the great petrosal nerve. The third branch (small superficial petrosal) ascends towards the anterior surface of the petrous bone; it then passes through a small aperture in the sphenoid and temporal bones to the exterior of the skull, and joins the otic ganglion. As
ORGANS OF SENSE.

this nerve passes by the gangliform enlargement of the facial, it has a connecting filament with it.

The *chorda tympani* quits the facial near the stylo-mastoid foramen, enters the tympanum at the base of the pyramid, and arches forwards across its cavity between the handle of the malleus and long process of the incus, to an opening internal to the fissura Glaseri. It is invested by a reflection of the lining membrane of the tympanum.

INTERNAL EAR, OR LABYRINTH.

The Internal Ear is the essential part of the organ, receiving the ultimate distribution of the auditory nerve. It is called the labyrinth, from the complexity of its shape, and consists of three parts: the vestibule, semicircular canals, and cochlea. It is formed by a series of cavities, channelled out of the substance of the petrous bone, communicating externally with the cavity of the tympanum, through the fenestra ovalis and rotunda; and internally, with the meatus auditorius internus, which contains the auditory nerve. Within the osseous labyrinth is contained the membranous labyrinth, upon which the ramifications of the auditory nerve are distributed.

The Vestibule (Fig. 414) is the common central cavity of communication between the parts of the internal ear. It is situated on the inner side of the tympanum, behind the cochlea, and in front of the semicircular canals. It is somewhat ovoidal in shape from before backwards, flattened from side to side, and measures about one-fifth of an inch from before backwards, as well as from above downwards, being narrower from without inwards. On its outer, or tympanic wall, is the fenestra ovalis, closed in the recent state, by the base of the stapes, and its annular ligament. On its inner wall, at the fore part, is a small circular depression, fossa hemispherica, which is perforated, at its anterior and inferior part, by several minute holes (*macula cribrosa*), for the passage of the filaments of the auditory nerve; and behind this depression is a vertical ridge, the pyramidal eminence. At the binder part of the inner wall is the orifice of the *aqueductus vestibuli*, which extends to the posterior surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. It transmits a small vein, and, according to
some, contains a tubular prolongation of the lining membrane of the vestibule, which ends in a cul-de-sac between the layers of the dura mater within the cranial cavity. On the upper wall or roof is a transversely-oval impression, fovea semi-elliptica, separated from the fovea hemispherica by the pyramidal eminence, already mentioned. Behind, the semicircular canals open into the vestibule by five orifices. In front is a large oval opening, which communicates with the scala vestibuli of the cochlea by a single orifice, apertura scala vestibuli cochleae.

The Semicircular Canals are three bony canals, situated above and behind the vestibule. They are of unequal length, compressed from side to side, and describe the greater part of a circle. They measure about one-twentieth of an inch in diameter, and each presents a dilatation at one end, called the ampulla, which measures more than twice the diameter of the tube. These canals open into the vestibule by five orifices, one of the apertures being common to two of the canals.

The superior semicircular canal is vertical in direction, and stretches across the petrous portion of the temporal bone, at right angles to its posterior surface; its arch forms a round projection on the anterior surface of the petrous bone. It describes about two-thirds of a circle. Its outer extremity, which is ampullated, commences by a distinct orifice in the upper part of the vestibule; the opposite end of the canal, which is not dilated, joins with the corresponding part of the posterior canal, and opens by a common orifice with it in the back part of the vestibule.

The posterior semicircular canal, also vertical in direction, is directed backwards, nearly parallel to the posterior surface of the petrous bone: it is the longest of the three, its ampullated end commencing at the lower and back part of the vestibule, its opposite end joining to form the common canal already mentioned.

The external or horizontal canal is the shortest of the three, its arch being directed outwards and backwards; thus each semicircular canal stands at right angles to the other two. Its ampullated end corresponds to the upper and outer angle of the vestibule, just above the fenestra ovalis; its opposite end opens by a distinct orifice at the upper and back part of the vestibule.

The Cochlea bears some resemblance to a common snail-shell: it forms the anterior part of the labyrinth, is conical in form, and placed almost horizontally in front of the vestibule; its apex is directed forwards and upwards towards the upper and front part of the inner wall of the tympanum; its base corresponds with the anterior depression at the bottom of the internal auditory meatus, and is perforated by numerous apertures, for the passage of the cochlear branch of the auditory nerve. It measures about a quarter of an inch in length, and its breadth towards the base is about the same. It consists of a conical-shaped central axis, the modiolus or columella; of a canal wound spirally round the axis for two turns and a half, from the base to the apex; and of a delicate lamina (lamina spiralis) contained within the canal, which follows its windings, and subdivides it into two.

The central axis, or modiolus, is conical in form, and extends from the base to the apex of the cochlea. Its base is broad, corresponds with the first turn of the cochlea, and is perforated by numerous orifices, which transmit filaments of the cochlear branch of the auditory nerve; the axis diminishes rapidly in size in the second coil, and terminates within the last half-coil, or cupula, in an expanded, delicate, bony lamella, which resembles the half of a funnel, divided longitudinally, and is called the infundibulum; the broad part of this funnel is directed towards the summit of the cochlea, and blends with the last half-turn of the spiral canal of the trochlea, the cupula. At this point the two larger scale of the cochlea, the scala tympani and scala vestibuli, communicate by an opening called the helicotrema. The outer surface of the modiolus is formed of the wall of the spiral canal, and is dense in structure; but its centre is channelled, as far
as the last half-coil, by numerous branching canals, which transmit nervous filaments in regular succession into the canal of the cochlea, or on to the surface of the lamina spiralis. One of these, larger than the rest, occupies the centre of the modiolus, and is named the tubulus centralis modiolii; it extends from the base to the extremity of the modiolus, and transmits a small nerve and artery (arteria centralis modiolii).

The spiral canal (Fig. 415) takes two turns and a half round the modiolus. It is about an inch and a half in length, measured along its outer wall; and diminishes gradually in size from the base to the summit, where it terminates in a cul-de-sac, the cupola, which forms the apex of the cochlea. The commencement of this canal is about the tenth of an inch in diameter: it diverges from the modiolus towards the tympanum and vestibule, and presents three openings. One, the fenestra rotunda, communicates with the tympanum: in the recent state, this aperture is closed by a membrane, the membrana tympani secundaria. An-

other aperture, of an oval form, enters the vestibule. The third is the aperture of the aqueductus cochleae leading to a minute funnel-shaped canal, which opens on the basilar surface of the petrous bone, and transmits a small vein.

The interior of the spiral canal (Fig. 416) is divided into three principal
canals or scala—viz., the Scala tympani, the Scala vestibuli, and, interposed between these, the Scala media. Projecting from the modiolus is a thin bony process, the lamina spiralis ossea, which consists of two thin lamellae of bone, between which are numerous canals for the passage of nervous filaments. Near the point where the osseous lamina is attached to the modiolus is a small canal, denominated by Rosenthal the canalis spiralis modioli, and occupied by a swelling of the cochlear nerve, in which ganglion-cells are found, the ganglion spirale, from which the nerves pass to the osseous lamina and organ of Corti.

The osseous lamina extends only part of the distance between the modiolus and the outer bony wall of the cochlea. Near its outer end the periosteum swells up into an elevation which is called the limbus laminae spiralis ("denticulate lamina" of Todd and Bowman), and this terminates in a grooved border, the sulcus spiralis (Fig. 417), the edges of the groove being called the labium tympanicum and labium vestibulare respectively. From the labium tympanicum a thin membrane extends over to the bony wall of the cochlea, completing the scala tympani. This membrane is called the membrana basilaris. At its outer attachment it swells out so as to form a thick triangular structure which was regarded as a muscle by Todd and Bowman (cochlearis), but is now recognized as ligamentous—the ligamentum spirale. Between the labium vestibulare and the attachment of the membrane of Reissner, presently to be described, a very delicate membrane extends over to the outer wall of the cochlea, running nearly parallel to the membrana basilaris. It was described by Corti, and covers over the organ which is called after his name, and is therefore called the membrana tectoria or membrane of Corti. Further inwards, near the commencement of the limbus laminae spiralis, another delicate membrane, the membrane of Reissner, is attached to the vestibular surface of the periosteum of the osseous lamina, and stretches across to the outer wall of the cochlea. The canal which lies below the osseous lamina and membrana basilaris is the scala tympani; that which is bounded by the osseous lamina and membrane of Reissner the scala vestibuli; while the space between the membrane of Reissner and membrana basilaris is generally described as the Scala media, Canalis membranaceae, or Canalis cochleae, and this is the nomenclature which will be used here. Others, however, apply the name Canalis cochleae only to the canal lying between the membrane of Reissner and the membrana tectoria, which contains no object for description, while the space lying between the membrana tectoria and membrana basilaris is described by itself as a fourth canal—the ductus cochlearis or ductus auditorius. The latter is the space in which the organ of Corti is contained. This organ (Fig. 417) is situated upon the membrana basilaris, and appears at first sight as a papilla, winding spirally with the turns of this membrane throughout the whole length of the cochlea, from which circumstance it has been designated the papilla spiralis. More accurately viewed, it is seen to be composed of a series of arches roofing over the zona arcuata, estimated at over 3000 in number. The base of these arches is said to be of uniform length in the whole of the canal. The inner limb of the arch is formed by a fibre (internal fibres or rods of Corti) somewhat swollen at either extremity. In connection with the lower extremity is a nuclear body. The space between the internal rod and the grooved margin of the sulcus spiralis is occupied by cylindrical epithelium, and some of these epithelial cells are provided with hair-like processes ("inner hair-cells"). The external limb of the arch is formed by a similar series of fibres (external fibres or rods of Corti) which are less numerous.

1 In reading the older descriptions of the organ of hearing, the student must bear in mind that the membranes bounding the ductus auditorius, together with the organ contained between them, were described together as the "lamina spiralis membranacea," while the membrane of Reissner was not recognized; the parts being, in fact, as shown in the second turn of the cochlea on the right hand of Fig. 416.

2 Corti's original paper is in the Zeitschrift f. Wissen. Zool. iii. 109.
than the internal, and the swollen upper extremities of the two rods are articulated together; the crown of the arch approaches, but does not touch, the membrana tectoria. The shape of the external and internal rods of Corti is peculiar. The internal rods terminate above in a process which exactly reproduces the shape of the head of the human ulna, with its sigmoid cavity, coronoid and olecranon processes, while the external represent the head and bill of a swan—the head fitting into the concavities of one or more of the internal rods (which are more numerous than the external) while the bill rests against the phalanges of the lamina reticularis. Lying against the external rods are epithelial cells of various forms. Those described by Corti, and called after him cells of Corti, are provided with hairs or cilia, "outer hair-cells." There are several rows of these, alternating with which are other epithelial cells terminating in a fine extremity above and below; these are called the cells of Deiters; and beyond these again are the ordinary epithelial cells of the part, gradually diminishing in size. The reticular lamina of Kölliker is formed by several rows of "minute fiddle-shaped cuticular structures" called phalanges, between which are holes for the projection of the outer hair-cells. The number of rows varies in different animals with that of the outer hair-cells, being four in man. The exact termination of the nerves in the organ of Corti is not as yet determined, but there seems no doubt that this organ is to be regarded as the "terminal apparatus of hearing," as Henle names it.

The scala media is closed above and below. The upper blind extremity is attached to the cupola at the upper part of the helicotrema, the lower end fits into the angle at the commencement of the osseous lamina on the floor of the vestibule. Near this blind extremity the scala media receives the canalis reuniens (Fig. 418), a very delicate canal, by which the ductus cochlearis is brought into continuity with the saccule.

The inner surface of the osseous labyrinth is lined by an exceedingly thin fibro-serous membrane, analogous to a periosteum, from its close adhesion to the inner surfaces of these cavities, and performing the office of a serous membrane by its free surface. It lines the vestibule, and from this cavity is continued into the semicircular canals and the scala vestibuli of the cochlea, and through the helicotrema into the scala tympani. Two delicate tubular processes are prolonged along the aqueducts of the vestibule and cochlea, to the inner surface of

---

1 Waldeyer reckons 6000 of the inner rods and 4500 of the outer in the human cochlea. Claudius says that there are three of the inner for every two of the outer.

2 For further details the reader is referred to Kölliker's Gewebelehre, 5th ed.; Henle's Systematische Anatomie, or Quaid's Anatomy, edited by Sharpey, Thomson, and Schäfer, 8th ed., 1876.
the dura mater. This membrane is continued across the fenestra ovalis and rotunda, and consequently has no communication with the lining membrane of the tympanicum. Its attached surface is rough and fibrous, and closely adherent to the bone; its free surface is smooth and pale, covered with a layer of epithelium, and secretes a thin, limpid fluid, the *aqua labyrinthi* (*perilymph* [Blainville], *liquor Cotunnii*).

**THE MEMBRANOUS LABYRINTH.**

The Membranous Labyrinth (Fig. 418) is a closed membranous sac, containing fluid. The ramifications of the auditory nerve are distributed upon the wall of the sac. It has the same general form as the vestibule and semicircular canals in which it is inclosed; but is considerably smaller, and separated from their lining membrane by the perilymph.

Fig. 418.—The Membranous Labyrinth. (Enlarged 4 diam.)

The *vestibular portion* consists of two sacs, the utricle and the saccule.

The *utricle* is the larger of the two, of an oblong form, compressed laterally and occupies the upper and back part of the vestibule, lying in contact with the fovea semi-elliptica. Numerous filaments of the auditory nerve are distributed on the wall of this sac, and its cavity communicates behind with the membranous semicircular canals by five orifices.

The *saccule* is the smaller of the two vestibular sacs; it is globular in form, lies in the fovea hemispherica, near the opening of the vestibular scala of the cochlea, and receives numerous nervous filaments, which enter from the bottom of the depression in which it is contained. Its cavity is apparently distinct from that of the utricle.

The *membranous semicircular canals* are about one-third the diameter of the osseous canals, but in number, shape, and general form they are precisely similar; they are hollow, and open by five orifices into the utricle, one opening being common to two canals. Their ampullae are thicker than the rest of the tubes, and nearly fill the cavities in which they are contained.

The membranous labyrinth is held in its position by the numerous nervous filaments distributed to the utricle, to the saccule, and to the ampulla of each canal. These nerves enter the vestibule through the minute apertures on its inner wall.

**Structure.** The wall of the membranous labyrinth is semi-transparent, and consists of three layers. The *outer layer* is a loose and flocculent tissue, containing bloodvessels and numerous pigment-cells analogous to those in the choroid. The *middle layer*, thicker and more transparent, bears some resemblance to the
hyaloid membrane, but it presents in parts marks of longitudinal fibrillation and elongated nuclei on the addition of acetic acid. The inner layer is formed of polygonal nucleated epithelial cells, which secrete the endolymph.

The endolymph (liquor Scarpa) is a limpid serous fluid, which fills the membranous labyrinth; in composition, it closely resembles the perilymph.

The otoliths are two small rounded bodies, consisting of a mass of minute crystalline grains of carbonate of lime, held together in a mesh of delicate fibrous tissue, and contained in the wall of the utricle and saccule, opposite the distribution of the nerves. A calcareous material is also, according to Bowman, sparingly scattered in the cells lining the ampulla of each semicircular canal.

The Arteries of the labyrinth are the internal auditory, from the basilar or superior cerebellar, the stylo-mastoid, from the posterior auricular, and, occasionally, branches from the occipital. The internal auditory divides at the bottom of the internal meatus into two branches, cochlear and vestibular.

The cochlear branch subdivides into from twelve to fourteen twigs, which traverse the canals in the modiolus, and are distributed, in the form of a capillary network, in the substance of the lamina spiralis.

The vestibular branches accompany the nerves, and are distributed, in the form of a minute capillary network, in the substance of the membranous labyrinth.

The Veins (auditory) of the vestibule and semicircular canals accompany the arteries, and, receiving those of the cochlea at the base of the modiolous, terminate in the superior petrosal sinus.

The Auditory nerve, the special nerve of the sense of hearing, divides, at the bottom of the internal auditory meatus, into two branches, the cochlear and vestibular. The trunk of the nerve, as well as the branches, contains numerous ganglion-cells with caudate prolongations.

The vestibular nerve, the posterior of the two, divides into three branches, superior, middle, and inferior.

The superior vestibular branch, the largest, divides into numerous filaments, which pass through minute openings at the upper and back part of the cul-de-sac at the bottom of the meatus, and entering the vestibule, are distributed to the utricle, and to the ampulla of the external and superior semicircular canals.

The middle vestibular branch consists of numerous filaments, which enter the vestibule by a smaller cluster of foramina, placed below those above mentioned, and which correspond to the bottom of the fovea hemispherica; they are distributed to the saccule.

The inferior and smallest branch passes backwards in a canal behind the foramina for the nerves of the saccule, and is distributed to the ampulla of the posterior semicircular canal.

The nervous filaments enter the ampullary enlargements at a deep depression seen on their external surface, and a corresponding elevation is seen within, the nerve-fibres ending in loops, and in free extremities. In the utricle and saccule, the nerve-fibres spread out, some blending with the calcareous matter, others radiating on the inner surface of the wall of each cavity, becoming blended with a layer of nucleated cells, and terminating in a thin fibrous film.

The cochlear nerve divides into numerous filaments at the base of the modiolus, which ascend along its canal, and then, bending outwards at right angles, pass between the plates of the bony lamina spiralis, close to its tympanic surface. Between the plates of the spiral lamina, the nerves form a plexus, which contains ganglion-cells; and from the margin of the osseous zone, branches of this plexus are distributed to the membranous part of the septum, where they are arranged in small, conical-shaped bundles, parallel with one another. The filaments which supply the apical portion of the lamina spiralis are conducted to this part through the tubulus centralis modioli.
Organs of Digestion.

The apparatus for the digestion of the food consists of the alimentary canal, and of certain accessory organs.

The Alimentary Canal is a musculo-membranous tube, about thirty feet in length, extending from the mouth to the anus, and lined throughout its entire extent by mucous membrane. It has received different names in the various parts of its course: at its commencement, the mouth, we find provision made for the mechanical division of the food (mastication), and for its admixture with a fluid secreted by the salivary glands (insalivation); beyond this are the organs of deglutition, the pharynx and the oesophagus, which convey the food into that part of the alimentary canal (the stomach) in which the principal chemical changes occur; in the stomach, the reduction and solution of the food takes place; in the small intestines, the nutritive principles of the food (the chyle) are separated, by its admixture with the bile and pancreatic fluid, from that portion which passes into the large intestine, most of which is expelled from the system.

**Alimentary Canal.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mouth.</th>
<th>Small intestine</th>
<th>{Duodenum.}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stomach.</td>
<td>Large intestine</td>
<td>Rectum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Accessory Organs.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Teeth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{Parotid.}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salivary glands.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Mouth (Fig. 419) is placed at the commencement of the alimentary canal; it is a nearly oval-shaped cavity, in which the mastication of the food takes place. It is bounded, in front, by the lips; laterally, by the cheeks and the alveolar processes of the upper and lower jaws; above, by the hard palate and teeth of the upper jaw; below, by the tongue, and by the mucous membrane stretched between the under surface of that organ and the inner surface of the jaws, and by the teeth of the lower jaw; behind, by the soft palate and faucae.

The mucous membrane lining the mouth is continuous with the integument at the free margin of the lips, and with the mucous lining of the faucae behind; it is of a rose-pink tinge during life, and very thick where it covers the hard parts bounding the cavity.

The LIPS are two fleshy folds, which surround the orifice of the mouth, formed externally of integument, and internally of mucous membrane, between which is found the Orbicularis oris muscle, the coronary vessels, some nerves, areolar tissue, and fat and numerous small labial glands. The inner surface of each lip is connected in the middle line to the gum of the corresponding jaw by a fold of mucous membrane, the frenum labii superioris and inferioris, the former being the larger of the two.

The labial glands are situated between the mucous membrane and the Orbicularis oris, round the orifice of the mouth. They are rounded in form, about the
size of small peas, their ducts opening by small orifices upon the mucous membrane. In structure, they resemble the other salivary glands.

The Cheeks form the sides of the face, and are continuous in front with the lips. They are composed, externally, of integument; internally, of mucous membrane, and, between the two, of a muscular stratum, besides a large quantity of fat, areolar tissue, vessels, nerves, and buccal glands.

The mucous membrane lining the cheek is reflected above and below upon the gums, and is continuous behind with the lining membrane of the soft palate. Opposite the second molar tooth of the upper jaw is a papilla, the summit of

which presents the aperture of the duct of the parotid gland. The principal muscle of the cheek is the Buccinator; but numerous other muscles enter into its formation, viz., the Zygomatici, Masseter, and Platysma myoides.

The buccal glands are placed between the mucous membrane and Buccinator muscle; they are similar in structure to the labial glands, but smaller. Two or three of larger size than the rest, are placed between the Masseter and Buccinator muscles, their ducts open into the mouth, opposite the last molar tooth. They are called molar glands.

The Gums are composed of a dense fibrous tissue, closely connected to the periosteum of the alveolar processes, and surrounding the necks of the teeth. They are covered by smooth and vascular mucous membrane, which is remarkable for its limited sensibility. Around the necks of the teeth, this membrane
THE TEETH.

presents numerous fine papillae; and from this point it is reflected into the alveolus, where it is continuous with the periosteal membrane lining that cavity.

The Teeth.

The human subject is provided with two sets of teeth, which make their appearance at different periods of life. The first set appear in childhood, and are called the temporary, deciduous, or milk teeth. The second set, which also appear at an early period, continue until old age, and are named permanent.

The temporary teeth are twenty in number; four incisors, two canine, and four molars, in each jaw.

The permanent teeth are thirty-two in number; four incisors (two central and two lateral), two canine, four bicuspids, and six molars, in each jaw.

General characters. Each tooth consists of three portions: the crown, or body,

![Image of teeth]

projecting above the gum; the root, or fang, entirely concealed within the alveolus; and the neck, the constricted portion between the other two.

The roots of the teeth are firmly implanted within the alveoli; these depressions are lined with periosteum, which is reflected on to the tooth at the point of the fang, and covers it as far as the neck. At the margin of the alveolus, the periosteum becomes continuous with the fibrous structure of the gums.

PERMANENT TEETH.

The Incisors, or cutting teeth, are so named from their presenting a sharp, cutting edge, adapted for cutting the food. They are eight in number, and form the four front teeth in each jaw.

The crown is directed vertically, is wedge-like in form, being bevelled at the expense of its posterior surface, so as to terminate in a sharp, horizontal cutting
edge, which, before being subject to attrition, presents three small prominent points. It is convex, smooth, and highly polished in front; slightly concave behind, where it is frequently marked by slight longitudinal furrows.

The neck is constricted.

The fang is long, single, conical, transversely flattened, thicker before than behind, and slightly grooved on each side in the longitudinal direction.

The incisors of the upper jaw are altogether larger and stronger than those of the lower jaw. They are directed obliquely downwards and forwards. The two central ones are larger than the two lateral, and their free edges are sharp and chisel-like, being bevelled at the expense of their posterior edge: the root is more rounded.

The incisors of the lower jaw are smaller than the upper: the two central ones are smaller than the two lateral, and are the smallest of all the incisor teeth.

The Canine Teeth (cuspidati) are four in number, two in the upper, and two in the lower jaw; one being placed behind each lateral incisor. They are larger and stronger than the incisors, especially the root, which sinks deeply into the jaw, and causes a well-marked prominence upon its surface.

The crown is large and conical, very convex in front, a little hollowed and uneven posteriorly, and tapering to a blunted point, or cusp, which rises above the level of the other teeth.

The root is single, but longer and thicker than that of the incisors, conical in form, compressed laterally, and marked by a slight groove on each side.

The upper canine teeth (vulgarly called eye-teeth) are larger and longer than the two lower, and situated a little behind them.

The lower canine teeth are placed in front of the upper, so that their summits correspond to the interval between the upper canine tooth and the neighboring incisors on each side.

The Bicuspid Teeth (small, or false molars) are eight in number, four in each jaw, two being placed immediately behind each of the canine teeth. They are smaller and shorter than the canine.

The crown is compressed from without inwards, and surmounted by two pyramidal eminences, or cusps, separated by a groove, hence their name bicuspidate. The outer of these cusps is larger and more prominent than the inner.

The neck is oval.

The root is generally single, compressed, and presents a deep groove on each side, which indicates a tendency in the root to become double. The apex is generally bifid.

The upper bicuspid teeth are larger, and present a greater tendency to the division of their roots than the lower; this is especially marked in the second upper bicuspid.

The Molar Teeth (multicuspidati, true, or large molars) are the largest of the permanent set, and are adapted, from the great breadth of their crowns, for grinding and pounding the food. They are twelve in number, six in each jaw, three being placed behind each of the posterior bicuspid.

The crown is nearly cubical in form, rounded on each of its lateral surfaces, flattened in front and behind; the upper surface being surmounted by four or five tubercles, or cusps (four in the upper, five in the lower molars), separated from each other by a crucial depression, hence their name, multicuspidati.

The neck is distinct, large, and rounded.

The root is subdivided into from two to five fangs, each of which presents an aperture at its summit.

The first molar tooth is the largest and broadest of all: its crown has usually five cusps, three outer and two inner. In the upper jaw, the root consists of three fangs, widely separated from one another, two being external, the other internal. The latter is the largest and the longest, slightly grooved, and sometimes bifid. In the lower jaw, the root consists of two fangs, one being placed
TEMPORARY TEETH.

in front, the other behind: they are both compressed from before backwards, and grooved on their contiguous faces, indicating a tendency to division.

The second molar is a little smaller than the first.
The crown has four cusps in the upper, and five in the lower jaw.
The root has three fangs in the upper jaw, and two in the lower, the characters of which are similar to the preceding tooth.
The third molar tooth is called the wisdom tooth (dens sapientis) from its late appearance through the gum. It is smaller than the others, and its axis is directed inwards.
The crown is small and rounded, and furnished with three tubercles.
The root is generally single, short, conical, slightly curved, and grooved so as to present traces of a subdivision into three fangs in the upper, and two in the lower jaw.

TEMPORARY TEETH.

The Temporary or Milk Teeth are smaller, but resemble in form those of the permanent set. The hinder of the two temporary molars is the largest of

Fig. 421.—The Temporary, or Milk Teeth. External View.

![Diagram of Temporary Teeth](image)

all the milk teeth, and is succeeded by the second permanent bicuspid. The first upper molar has only three cusps, two external, one internal: the second upper molar has four cusps. The first lower molar has four cusps; the second lower molar has five. The fangs of the temporary molar teeth are smaller, and more diverging than those of the permanent set; but, in other respects, bear a strong resemblance to them.

Structure. On making a vertical section of a tooth (Fig. 422), a hollow cavity will be found in the interior. This cavity is situated at the base of the crown, and is continuous with a canal which traverses the centre of each fang, and opens by a minute orifice at its extremity. The shape of the cavity corresponds somewhat with that of the tooth; it forms what is called the pulp cavity, and contains a soft, highly vascular, and sensitive substance, the dental pulp. The pulp is richly supplied with vessels and nerves, which enter the cavity through the small aperture at the point of each fang.
ORGANS OF DIGESTION.

The solid portion of the tooth consists of three distinct structures, viz., ivory (tooth-bone, or dentine), which forms the larger portion of the tooth; enamel, which covers the exposed part, or crown; and the cortical substance, or cement (crusta petrosa), which is disposed as a thin layer on the surface of the fang.

The Ivory, or dentine (Fig. 423), forms the principal mass of a tooth; in its central part is the cavity inclosing the pulp. It is a modification of the osseous tissue, from which it differs, however, in structure and chemical composition. On examination with the microscope, it is seen to consist of a number of minute wavy and branching tubes, having distinct parietes. They are called the dental tubuli, and are embedded in a dense homogeneous substance, the intertubular tissue.

The dental tubuli are placed parallel with one another, and open at their inner ends into the pulp cavity. They pursue a wavy and undulating course towards the periphery. The direction of these tubes varies; they are vertical in the upper portion of the crown, oblique in the neck and upper part of the root, and towards the lower part of the root they are inclined downwards. The tubuli, at their commencement, are about 1/8 of an inch in diameter; in their course they divide and subdivide dichotomously, so as to give to the cut surface of the dentine a striated appearance. From the sides of the tubes, especially in the fang, ramifications of extreme minuteness are given off, which join together in loops in the intertubular substance, or terminate in small dilatations, from which branches are given off. Near the periphery of the dentine, the finer ramifications of the tubuli terminate in a somewhat similar manner. In the fang these ramifications occasionally pass into the crusta petrosa. The dental tubuli have comparatively thick walls, and contain slender cylindrical prolongations of the pulp-tissue, first described by Mr. Tomes, and named Tomes's fibres, or dentinal fibres. These dentinal fibres are analogous to the soft contents of the canalliculi of bone. They commence in cells, the odontoblasts of Waldeyer, which will be more particularly described in the next section. Between Tomes's fibres and the ivory of the canals, there is an elastic homogeneous membrane which resists the action of acids, the dentinal sheath of Neumann.

The intertubular substance is translucent, finely granular, and contains the chief part of the earthy matter of the dentine. After the earthy matter has been removed, by steeping a tooth in weak acid, the animal basis remaining is described by Henle as consisting of bundles of pale, granular, flattened fibres, running parallel with the tubes; but by Mr. Nasmyth as consisting of a mass of brick-shaped cells surrounding the tubules. By Czermak and Mr. Salter it is supposed to consist of lamellae which run parallel with the pulp cavity, across the direction of the tubes. A section of dentine displays just below the cement a series of irregular cavities, "the interglobular spaces" of Czermak, or granular layer of Purkinje, the spaces of which are filled up by a transparent soft material. The section of the dentine is marked by a series of somewhat parallel lines—the "incremental lines" of Salter—produced by the curving of the dentinal tubuli during the growth of the tooth.

Chemical Composition. According to Berzelius and Bibra, dentine consists of 28 parts of animal, and 72 of earthy matter. The animal matter is resolvable
by boiling into gelatin. The earthy matter consists of phosphate of lime, carbonate of lime, a trace of fluoride of calcium, phosphate of magnesia, and other salts.

The **Enamel** is the hardest and most compact part of a tooth, and forms a thin crust over the exposed part of the crown, as far as the commencement of the fang. It is thickest on the grinding surface of the crown, until worn away by attrition, and becomes thinner towards the neck. It consists of a congeries of minute hexagonal rods. They lie parallel with one another, resting by one extremity upon the dentine, which presents a number of minute depressions for their reception; and forming the free surface of the crown by the other extremity. These fibres are directed vertically on the summit of the crown, horizontally at the sides; they are about the $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch in diameter, and pursue a more or less wavy course. The enamel is marked by a series of undulating lines which cross each other or "decussate;" these lines are doubtless formed by the variation in the course of the enamel-rods. Another series of lines, colored brown probably from the presence of pigment, and denominated the parallel striae of Retzius, are seen on a section of the enamel. Their exact significance is uncertain.

Numerous minute interstices intervene between the enamel fibres near their dentinal surface, a provision calculated to allow of the permeation of fluids from the dentinal tubuli into the substance of the enamel. The enamel-rods consist of solid hexagonal or four-sided prisms connected by their surfaces and ends, and filled with calcareous matter. If the latter is removed, by weak acid, from newly-formed or growing enamel, it will be found to present a network of delicate prismatic cells of animal matter. It is a disputed point whether the dentinal fibres penetrate a certain distance between the rods of the enamel or not. No nutritive canals exist in the enamel.

**Chemical Composition.** According to Bibra, enamel consists of 95.5 per cent. of earthy matter, and 3.5 per cent. of animal matter. The earthy matter consists of phosphate of lime, with traces of fluoride of calcium, carbonate of lime, phosphate of magnesia, and other salts.

The **Cortical Substance**, or cement (*crusta petrosa*), is disposed as a thin layer on the roots of the teeth, from the termination of the enamel, as far as the apex of the fang, where it is usually very thick. In structure and chemical composition, it resembles bone. It contains, sparingly, the lacunae and canaliculi which characterize true bone; the lacunae placed near the surface, have the canaliculi radiating from the side of the lacunæ towards the periodontal membrane; and those more deeply placed, join with the adjacent dental tubuli. In the thicker portions of the crusta petrosa, the lamellic and Haversian canals peculiar to bone are also found. As age advances, the cement increases in thickness, and gives rise to those bony growths, or exostoses, so common in the teeth of the aged; the pulp cavity becomes also partially filled up by a hard substance, intermediate in structure between dentine and bone (*osteodentine*, Owen; *secondary dentine*, Tomes). It appears to be formed by a slow conversion of the dental pulp, which shrinks, or even disappears.

**Development of the Teeth.** (Figs. 424 to 429.)

In describing the development of the teeth it has seemed better to give the more modern account first, and then that of Goodsr, which was till recently universally accepted.

According to the description now generally adopted (that of Waldeyer), the development of the teeth in the fetus begins at a very early period, about the seventh week. On the surface of the jaw there is found a depression or groove ("the dental groove"), the surface of which is formed of a collection of epithelial cells, the tissue below of gelatinous and cellular substance, which is taken to represent the corium and cellular tissue of the mucous membrane, and deeper
than which is the ossifying substance of the jaw (Fig. 424). The essential structures of the teeth are derived from these two elements, the enamel from epithelium which covers the surface of the dental groove, the dentine and crista petrosa from the deeper structures.

Fig. 424.

Vertical section of the inferior maxilla of an early human fetus. (Magnified 25 diam.) 1. Dental groove. 2. Remains of the enamel-germ. 3. Enamel organ, presenting externally epithelium, as also where it forms the enamel-germ of the papilla of the dental sacculus. 4. Secondary enamel germ; rudiment of the permanent tooth. 5. Dental germ. 6. Lower jaw. 7. Meckel's cartilage.

First as to the enamel. The epithelium becomes heaped up over the margins of the dental groove, and then passes down into it, and as the sides of the groove rise up, the epithelial mass (or "enamel organ") seems to pass deeper and deeper into the substance of the jaw, meeting with the papilla, presently to be described, from which the dentine or bulk of the tooth is developed, and assuming the form of a flask or cap united to the superficial layer of epithelium by a neck, bridge, or string of epithelium. This string is the gubernaculum or future enamel organ of the permanent tooth. As the dental papilla grows up from the bottom of the groove, the enamel organ folds itself over it in the form of a cap, or capsule, presenting an outer and inner surface, still epithelial (Fig. 425), and an intermediate portion undergoing development into the proper enamel tissue. The epithelial covering on the outer surface of the enamel long remains distinctly perceptible. After the tooth has emerged from the gum, this layer may be separated from the calcified mass below by the action of strong acids, in the form of a membrane (cuticula dentis, Nasmyth's membrane) marked by the hexagonal impressions of the enamel prisms, and when stained by nitrate of silver showing the characteristic appearance of epithelium. This membrane soon wears away from the surface of the tooth.

The bulk of the enamel is formed by the calcification of the epithelial cells, which are changed into hexagonal prisms, the communication of which with each other forms the hexagonal rods of the mature enamel; but the exact relation of the embryonic cells to the future rods, and the precise reason of the appearance of the transverse striae on the latter, have not yet been satisfactorily demonstrated. The calcification of the successive layers of epithelium is preceded by the production of a gelatinous mass (the "enamel jelly") between the investing epithelium and the calcifying tissue.

As the epithelium is undergoing this remarkable development a projection of the mucous tissue (blastema, or corium) of the infantile jaw springs up to meet it out of the bottom of the dental groove. This projection was described by
DEVELOPMENT OF THE TEETH.

Goodsir as a row of separate papillae. It is now described, after Duryce and Waldeyer, as a ridge, the intervening parts of which are atrophied, so as to leave papillae, which become coated all over by the enamel organ, and thus the saccular stage of the teeth is produced, the papillae which are to form the bulk of the teeth being coated with a vascular connective tissue, isolated by the enamel organ, and separated from each other by the growing tissue of the fetal jaw.

The next step is the formation of the odontoblasts, which have a relation to the development of the teeth similar to that of the osteoblasts to the formation of bone. These are large nucleated cells of elongated form and provided with numerous processes developed from the cells of the dental papilla, which at that early stage consist of a fine fibrous tissue containing a number of cells, likened

by Waldeyer to the structure of old atrophied umbilical cords, the elastic tissue only being absent. The odontoblasts send out processes, which, as they grow, become calcified externally, the calcified portion forming the ivory, the uncalcified part the dentinal fibres (Tomes's fibres), and the lateral processes the branches of anastomosis whereby the dentinal canals anastomose. The remains of the odontoblasts themselves form what is known as the "membrana eboris" of Kölliker, a cellular layer which forms the investment of the pulp lying between its nerves and vessels and the dentine.

The cement is ordinary bone, containing canaliculi and lacunae, and developed from the deeper tissues of the fetal jaw, exactly as bone is produced in other parts of the body by periosteal ossification. Haversian canals are found according to Salter, where the cement is thick.

The germs of the milk teeth make their appearance in the following order: at the seventh week, the germ of the first molar of the upper jaw appears; at the eighth week, that for the canine tooth is developed: the two incisor papillae appear about the ninth week (the central preceding the lateral); lastly, the second molar papilla is seen at the tenth week, behind the anterior molar.
teeth of the lower jaw appear rather later, the first molar papilla being only just visible at the seventh week; and the tenth papilla not being developed before the eleventh week. This completes the first or papillary stage of their development.

According to Goodsiir’s description the dental groove now becomes contracted, its margins thickened and prominent, and the groove is converted into follicles for the reception of the papillae, by the growth of membranous septa, which pass across the groove between its borders (Fig. 427). The follicles by this means become the alveoli, lined by periosteum, from the bottom of which the process of the mucous membrane of the gum rises, which is the germ of the future tooth. The follicle for the first molar is complete about the tenth week; the canine follows next, succeeded by the follicles for the incisors, which are completed about the eleventh or twelfth week; and, lastly, the follicle of the posterior molar is completed about the fourteenth week. These changes constitute the second or follicular stage.

About the thirteenth week, the papillae begin to grow rapidly, project from the follicles, and assume a form corresponding with that of the future teeth: the follicles soon become deeper, and from their margins small membranous processes, or opercula, are developed, which, meeting, unite and form a lid to the now closed cavity (Fig. 428). These processes correspond in shape to the form of the crown of the tooth, and in number to the tubercles on its surface. The follicles of the incisor teeth have two opercula, the canine three, and the molars four or five each. The follicles are thus converted into dental sacs, and the contained papillae become pulps. The lips of the dental groove gradually advance over the follicles from behind forwards, and, unifying, gradually obliterate it. This completes the third or saccular stage, which takes place about the end of the fifteenth week.

The deep portion of the primitive dental groove is now closed in; but the more superficial portion, near the surface of the gum, still remains open: it is called, by Mr. Goodsir, the secondary dental groove; from it are developed the ten anterior permanent teeth. About the fourteenth week, certain lunated depressions are formed, one behind each of the sacs of the rudimentary milk teeth. They are ten in number in each jaw, and are formed successively from before backwards; they are the rudimentary follicles of the four permanent incisors, the two canine, and the four bicuspids. As the secondary dental groove closes in, the follicles become closed cavities of reserve (Fig. 428). The cavities soon elongate and recede from the surface into the substance of the gum, behind the sacs of the deciduous teeth, and a papilla projects from the bottom of each, which is the germ of the permanent tooth; at the same time, one or more opercula are developed from the sides of the cavity; and these, uniting, divide it into two portions; the lower portion containing the papilla of the permanent tooth, the
upper narrower portion becoming gradually contracted in the same way that
the primitive dental groove was obliterated over the sacs of the deciduous teeth
(Fig. 429).

The six posterior permanent teeth in each jaw, three on each side, arise from
successive extensions backwards of the back part of the primitive dental groove.
During the fourth month, that portion of the dental groove which lies behind
the last temporary molar follicle remains open, and from it is developed the
papilla, the rudiment of the first permanent molar. The follicle in which it is
contained becomes closed by its operculum, and the upper part of the newly-
formed sac elongates backwards to form a cavity of reserve, in which the papilla
of the second permanent molar appears at the seventh month after birth. After
a considerable interval, during which the sacs of the first and second permanent
molars have considerably increased in size, the remainder of the cavity of reserve
presents for the last time a series of changes similar to the preceding, and gives
rise to the sac and papilla of the wisdom-teeth, which appear at the sixth year.

The chief difference, therefore, between Goodsi’s description and those of
later anatomists is that he did not recognize the epithelial origin of the enamel,
describing merely the “opercula,” which in the modern description would be
recognized only as part of the ordinary connective tissue in which the papilla is
imbibed (Fig. 425, a). The origin of the dentinal fibres from the odontoblasts
is another matter of primary importance which was not recognized in the older
descriptions.

Eruption. When the calcification of the different tissues of the tooth is suffi-
ciently advanced to enable it to bear the pressure to which it will be afterwards
subjected, its eruption takes place, the tooth making its way through the gum.
The gum is absorbed by the pressure of the crown of the tooth against it, which
is itself pressed up by the increasing size of the fang (Fig. 430). At the same
time, the septa between the dental sacs, at first fibrous in structure, ossify, and
constitute the alveoli; these firmly embrace the necks of the teeth, and afford
them a solid basis of support.

The eruption of the temporary teeth commences at the seventh month, and is
complete about the end of the second year, those of the lower jaw preceding the
upper.

The periods for the eruption of the temporary set are.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Teeth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7th month</td>
<td>central incisors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th to 10th month</td>
<td>lateral incisors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12th to 14th month</td>
<td>anterior molars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14th to 20th month</td>
<td>canine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18th to 36th month</td>
<td>posterior molars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Calcification of the permanent teeth commences a little before birth, and
proceeds in the following order in the upper jaw, in the lower jaw a little
earlier: First molar, five or sixth months; the central incisor, a little later;
lateral incisors and canine, about the eighth or ninth month; the bicuspids at the
second year; second molar, five or six years; wisdom tooth, about twelve years.

Previous to the permanent teeth penetrating the gum, the bony partitions
which separate their sacs from the deciduous teeth are absorbed, the fangs of
the temporary teeth disappear, and the permanent teeth become placed under
the loose crowns of the deciduous teeth; the latter finally become detached, and
the permanent teeth take their place in the mouth.

The eruption of the permanent teeth takes place at the following periods, the
teeth of the lower jaw preceding those of the upper by a short interval:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Teeth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6½ years</td>
<td>first molars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th year</td>
<td>two middle incisors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8th year</td>
<td>two lateral incisors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9th year</td>
<td>first bicuspid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10th year</td>
<td>second bicuspid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11th to 12th year</td>
<td>canine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12th to 18th year</td>
<td>second molars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17th to 21st year</td>
<td>wisdom-teeth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DIGESTION.

THE PALATE.

The palate is a thin plate; it consists of two portions, the hard and soft palate. It is covered by a mucous membrane, with many little papillae, chiefly on the sides by the alveolar arches. Along the middle line is a linear ridge in a small papilla, corresponding with the palate. This papilla receives filaments of palatine nerves. On either side in front is thick, pale in color, and corrugated; a deeper color; it is covered with squamous numerous glands (palatal glands), which lie on the surface of the bone.

The palate is a movable fold, suspended from the palate, and forming an incomplete septum. It consists of a fold of mucous membrane, the muscles, vessels, nerves, and mucous glands. When (i.e.), relaxed and pendent, its anterior with the roof of the mouth, and marked by a indicates its original separation into two lateral convex, and continuous with the mucous membrane of the posterior nares. Its upper border is attached to the hard palate, and its sides are blended with the bone. Its lower border is a small conical-shaped pendulous, as the base curved folds of mucous membrane, containing the pillars of the soft palate.

Towards, outwards, and forwards to the side of the side, by the projection of the Palato-glossus muscle, to each other and larger than the anterior; and backwards to the sides of the pharynx, of the Palato-pharyngei muscles, covered by the and posterior pillars are separated below by the tenial is lodged.

The surface of the palate on the two sides is called the below by the above by the free margin of the palate; each side by the pillars of the soft palate and tonsils.

The mucous of the soft palate is thin, and covered with squamous epithelium on the sides, growing near the orifice of the Eustachian tube, where it is columnar and ciliated. The palatine glands form a continuous layer on its posterior surface and above the uvula.

The submucous of the soft palate is a thin but firm fibrous layer, attached above to the hard palate, and becoming thinner towards the free margin of the palate. It is blended with the septal muscular tendon of the Tensor palatii muscle.

The muscles of the soft palate are five on each side: the Levator palatii, Tensor palato-glossus, Palato-pharynges, and Azzygos uvulae (see p. 389).

The tonsils (amygdalae) are two glandular organs, situated one on each side of the mouth, between the anterior and posterior pillars of the soft palate. They are of a rounded form, and vary considerably in size in different individuals. They are in relation with the inner surface of the Superior and inferiorty which are the internal carotid and ascending pharyngeal, and corresponds to the angle of the lower jaw. Its inner surface
THE SALIVARY GLANDS.  

757

presents from twelve to fifteen orifices, leading into small recesses, from which numerous follicles branch out into the substance of the gland. These follicles are lined by a continuation of the mucous membrane of the pharynx, covered with epithelium, their walls being formed by a layer of closed capsules imbedded in the submucous tissue. These capsules are analogous to those of Peyer's glands; they contain a thick grayish secretion.

The arteries supplying the tonsil are the dorsalis lingua from the lingual, the ascending palatine and tonsillar from the facial, the ascending pharyngeal from the external carotid, and the descending palatine branch of the internal maxillary.

The veins terminate in the tonsillar plexus, on the outer side of the tonsil.

The nerves are derived from the fifth, and from the glosso-pharyngeal.

THE SALIVARY GLANDS. (Fig. 431.)

The principal Salivary Glands communicating with the mouth, and pouring their secretion into its cavity, are the parotid, submaxillary, and sublingual.

The Parotid Gland, so called from being placed near the ear (par, near; otis, ear), is the largest of the three salivary glands, varying in weight from half an ounce to an ounce. It lies upon the side of the face, immediately below and in front of the external ear. It is limited above by the zygoma;

Fig. 431.—The Salivary Glands.

below, by the angle of the jaw, and by a horizontal line drawn between it and the mastoid process: anteriorly, it extends to a variable extent over the Masseter muscle; posteriorly, it is bounded by the external meatus, the mastoid process, and the Sterno-mastoid and Digastric muscles, slightly overlapping the former.

Its anterior surface is grooved to embrace the posterior margin of the ramus of the lower jaw, and advances forwards beneath the ramus, between the two
ORGANS OF DIGESTION.

THE PALATE.

The Palate forms the roof of the mouth; it consists of two portions, the hard palate in front, the soft palate behind.

The hard palate is bounded in front and at the sides by the alveolar arches and gums; behind, it is continuous with the soft palate. It is covered by a dense structure, formed by the periosseum and mucous membrane of the mouth, which are intimately adherent together. Along the middle line is a linear ridge or raphe, which terminates anteriorly in a small papilla, corresponding with the inferior opening of the anterior palatine fossa. This papilla receives filaments from the naso-palatine and anterior palatine nerves. On either side and in front of the raphe, the mucous membrane is thick, pale in color, and corrugated; behind, it is thin, smooth, and of a deeper color; it is covered with squamous epithelium, and furnished with numerous glands (palatal glands), which lie between the mucous membrane and the surface of the bone.

The soft palate (velum pendulum palati) is a movable fold, suspended from the posterior border of the hard palate, and forming an incomplete septum between the mouth and pharynx. It consists of a fold of mucous membrane, inclosing muscular fibres, an aponeurosis, vessels, nerves, and mucous glands. When occupying its usual position (i.e., relaxed and pendant), its anterior surface is concave, continuous with the roof of the mouth, and marked by a median ridge or raphe, which indicates its original separation into two lateral halves. Its posterior surface is convex, and continuous with the mucous membrane covering the floor of the posterior nares. Its upper border is attached to the posterior margin of the hard palate, and its sides are blended with the pharynx. Its lower border is free.

Hanging from the middle of its lower border is a small conical-shaped pendulous process, the uvula; and arching outwards and downwards from the base of the uvula on each side, are two curved folds of mucous membrane, containing muscular fibres, called the arches or pillars of the soft palate.

The anterior pillar runs downwards, outwards, and forwards to the side of the base of the tongue, and is formed by the projection of the Palato-glossus muscle, covered by mucous membrane.

The posterior pillars are nearer to each other and larger than the anterior; they run downwards, outwards, and backwards to the sides of the pharynx, and are formed by the projection of the Palato-pharyngei muscles, covered by mucous membrane. The anterior and posterior pillars are separated below by a triangular interval, in which the tonsil is lodged.

The space left between the arches of the palate on the two sides is called the isthmus of the fauces. It is bounded above by the free margin of the palate; below by the tongue; and on each side by the pillars of the soft palate and tonsils.

The mucous membrane of the soft palate is thin, and covered with squamous epithelium on both surfaces, excepting near the orifice of the Eustachian tube, where it is columnar and ciliated. The palatine glands form a continuous layer on its posterior surface and round the uvula.

The aponeurosis of the soft palate is a thin but firm fibrous layer, attached above to the hard palate, and becoming thinner towards the free margin of the velum. It is blended with the aponeurotic tendon of the Tensor palati muscle.

The muscles of the soft palate are five on each side: the Levator palati, Tensor palati, Palato-glossus, Palato-pharyngeus, and Azygus uvulae (see p. 369).

The tonsils (amygdalæ) are two glandular organs, situated one on each side of the fauces, between the anterior and posterior pillars of the soft palate. They are of a rounded form, and vary considerably in size in different individuals. Externally, the tonsil is in relation with the inner surface of the Superior constrictor (beyond which are the internal carotid and ascending pharyngeal arteries), and corresponds to the angle of the lower jaw. Its inner surface...
THE SALIVARY GLANDS.

presents from twelve to fifteen orifices, leading into small recesses, from which numerous follicles branch out into the substance of the gland. These follicles are lined by a continuation of the mucous membrane of the pharynx, covered with epithelium, their walls being formed by a layer of closed capsules imbedded in the submucous tissue. These capsules are analogous to those of Peyer's glands; they contain a thick grayish secretion.

The arteries supplying the tonsil are the dorsalis linguae from the lingual, the ascending palatine and tonsillar from the facial, the ascending pharyngeal from the external carotid, and the descending palatine branch of the internal maxillary.

The veins terminate in the tonsillar plexus, on the outer side of the tonsil.

The nerves are derived from the fifth, and from the glosso-pharyngeal.

THE SALIVARY GLANDS. (Fig. 431.)

The principal Salivary Glands communicating with the mouth, and pouring their secretion into its cavity, are the parotid, submaxillary, and sublingual.

The Parotid Gland, so called from being placed near the ear (νας, near; ἀυτός, the ear), is the largest of the three salivary glands, varying in weight from half an ounce to an ounce. It lies upon the side of the face, immediately below and in front of the external ear. It is limited above by the zygoma;

Fig. 431.—The Salivary Glands.

below, by the angle of the jaw, and by a horizontal line drawn between it and the mastoid process: anteriorly, it extends to a variable extent over the Masseter muscle; posteriorly, it is bounded by the external meatus, the mastoid process, and the Sterno-mastoid and Digastric muscles, slightly overlapping the former.

Its anterior surface is grooved to embrace the posterior margin of the ramus of the lower jaw, and advances forwards beneath the ramus, between the two
pterygoid muscles. Its outer surface, slightly lobulated, is covered by the integument and fascia, and has one or two lymphatic glands resting on it. Its inner surface extends deeply into the neck, by means of two large processes, one of which dips behind the styloid process, and projects beneath the mastoid process and the Sterno-mastoid muscle; the other is situated in front of the styloid process, and passes into the back part of the glenoid fossa, behind the articulation of the lower jaw. Embedded in its substance is the external carotid artery, which ascends behind the ramus of the jaw; the posterior auricular artery emerges from the gland behind; the temporal artery above; the transverse facial in front; and the internal maxillary winds through it inwards, behind the neck of the jaw. Superficial to the external carotid is the trunk formed by the union of the temporal and internal maxillary veins; a branch, connecting this trunk with the internal jugular, also traverses the gland. It is also traversed, from before backwards, by the facial nerve and its branches, which emerge at its anterior border; the great auricular nerve pierces the gland to join the facial, and the temporal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve lies above the upper part of the gland. The internal carotid artery and internal jugular vein lie close to its deep surface.

The duct of the parotid gland (Steno's) is about two inches and a half in length. It opens upon the inner surface of the cheek by a small orifice, opposite the second molar tooth of the upper jaw; and from this orifice it may be traced obliquely for a short distance beneath the mucous membrane, and thence through the substance of the Buccinator muscle, and across the Masseter to the anterior border of the gland, in the substance of which it commences by numerous branches. The direction of the duct corresponds to a line drawn across the face about a finger's breadth below the zygoma, from the lower part of the concha, to midway between the free margin of the upper lip and the ala of the nose. While crossing the Masseter, it receives the duct of a small detached portion of the gland, socia parotidis, which occasionally exists as a separate lobe, just beneath the zygomatic arch. The parotid duct is dense, of considerable thickness, and its canal about the size of a crow-quill; it consists of an external or fibrous coat, of considerable density, containing contractile fibres, and of an internal or mucous coat lined with columnar epithelium.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries supplying the parotid gland are derived from the external carotid, and from the branches given off by that vessel in or near its substance. The veins follow a similar course. The lymphatics terminate in the superficial and deep cervical glands, passing in their course through two or three lymphatic glands, placed on the surface and in the substance of the parotid. The nerves are derived from the carotid plexus of the sympathetic, the facial, and the superficial temporal branches of the auriculo-temporal, and great auricular nerves.

The Submaxillary Gland is situated below the jaw, in the anterior part of the submaxillary triangle of the neck. It is irregular in form, and weighs about two drachms. It is covered by the integument, Platysma, deep cervical fascia, and the body of the lower jaw, corresponding to a depression on the inner surface of that bone; and lies upon the Mylo-hyoid, Hyo-glossus, and Stylo-glossus muscles, a portion of the gland passing beneath the posterior border of the Mylo-hyoid. In front of it is the anterior belly of the Digastric; behind, it is separated from the parotid gland by the stylo-maxillary ligament, and from the sublingual gland in front by the Mylo-hyoid muscle. The facial artery lies imbedded in a groove in its posterior and upper border.

The duct of the submaxillary gland (Wharton's) is about two inches in length, and its walls are much thinner than those of the parotid duct. It opens by a narrow orifice on the summit of a small papilla, at the side of the frenum linguae. Traced from thence it is found to pass between the sublingual gland and the Genio-hyoglossus muscle, then backwards and outwards between the Mylo-hyoid, and the Hyo-glossus and Genio-hyo-glossus muscles, and above the
THE PHARYNX.

the deep portion of the gland, where it commences by numerous branches.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries supplying the submaxillary gland are branches of the facial and lingual. Its veins follow the course of the arteries. The nerves are derived from the submaxillary ganglion, from the mylo-hyoid branch of the inferior dental, and from the sympathetic.

The SUBLINGUAL GLAND is the smallest of the salivary glands. It is situated beneath the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth, at the side of the frenum linguæ, in contact with the inner surface of the lower jaw, close to the symphysis. It is narrow, flattened, in shape somewhat like an almond, and weighs about a drachm. It is in relation, above, with the mucous membrane; below, with the Mylo-hyoid muscle; in front, with the depression on the side of the symphysis of the lower jaw, and with its fellow of the opposite side; behind, with the deep part of the submaxillary gland; and internally, with the Genio-hyo-glossus, from which it is separated by the lingual nerve and Wharton's duct. Its excretory ducts (ductus Rivinius), from eight to twenty in number, open separately into the mouth, on the elevated crest of mucous membrane, caused by the projection of the gland, on either side of the frenum linguæ. One or more join to form a tube which enters into the Whartonian duct; this is called the duct of Bartholine.

Vessels and Nerves. The sublingual gland is supplied with blood from the sublingual and submental arteries. Its nerves are derived from the gustatory.

Structure. The salivary are conglomerate glands, consisting of numerous lobes, which are made up of smaller lobules, connected together by dense areolar tissue, vessels, and ducts. Each lobule consists of numerous closed vesicles, which open into a common duct; the wall of each vesicle is formed of a delicate basement membrane, lined by epithelium, and covered on its outer surface with a dense capillary network. In the submaxillary and sublingual glands, the lobes are larger and more loosely united than in the parotid.

THE PHARYNX.

The Pharynx is that part of the alimentary canal which is placed behind the nose, mouth, and larynx. It is a musculo-membranous sac, somewhat conical in form, with the base upwards, and the apex downwards, extending from the under surface of the skull to the cricoid cartilage in front, and the fifth cervical vertebra behind.

The pharynx is about four inches and a half in length, and broader in the transverse than in the antero-posterior diameter. Its greatest breadth is opposite the cornua of the hyoid bone; its narrowest point at its termination in the oesophagus. It is limited, above, by the basilar process of the occipital bone; below, it is continuous with the oesophagus; posteriorly, it is connected by loose areolar tissue with the cervical portion of the vertebral column, and the Longicollis and Recti capitis antici muscles; anteriorly, it is incomplete, and is attached in succession to the internal pterygoid plate, the pterygo-maxillary ligament, the lower jaw, the tongue, hyoid bone, and larynx; laterally, it is connected to the styloïd processes and their muscles, and is in contact with the common and internal carotid arteries, the internal jugular veins, and the eighth, ninth, and sympathetic nerves, and above, with a small part of the Internal pterygoid muscles.

It has seven openings communicating with it; the two posterior nares, the two Eustachian tubes, the mouth, larynx, and oesophagus.

The posterior nares are the two large apertures situated at the upper part of the anterior wall of the pharynx.

The two Eustachian tubes open one at each side of the upper part of the pharynx, at the back part of the inferior meatus. Below the nasal fosse are the
posterior surface of the soft palate and uvula, the large aperture of the mouth, the base of the tongue, the epiglottis, and the cordiform opening of the larynx.

The **oesophageal opening** is the lower contracted portion of the pharynx.

**Structure.** The pharynx is composed of three coats: mucous, fibrous, and muscular.

The *fibrous coat* is situated between the mucous and muscular layers, and is called the *pharyngeal aponeurosis*. It is thick above, where the muscular fibres are wanting, and is firmly connected to the basilar process of the occipital and petrous portion of the temporal bones. As it descends, it diminishes in thickness and is gradually lost.

The *mucous coat* is continuous with that lining the Eustachian tubes, the nares, the mouth, and the larynx. It is covered by columnar ciliated epithelium, as low down as on a level with the floor of the nares; below that point, the epithelium is of the squamous variety.

The *muscular coat* has been already described (p. 366).

The *pharyngeal glands* are of two kinds: the simple, or compound follicular, which are found in considerable numbers beneath the mucous membrane, throughout the entire pharynx; and the racemose, which are especially numerous at the upper part of the pharynx, and form a thick layer, across the back part of the fauces, between the two Eustachian tubes.

---

**The Oesophagus.**

The Oesophagus is a membranous canal, about nine inches in length, extending from the pharynx to the stomach. It commences at the lower border of the cricoid cartilage, opposite the fifth cervical vertebra, descends along the front of the spine, through the posterior mediastinum, passes through the diaphragm, and, entering the abdomen, terminates at the cardiac orifice of the stomach, opposite the ninth dorsal vertebra. The general direction of the oesophagus is vertical; but it presents two or three slight curvatures in its course. At its commencement, it is placed in the median line; but it inclines to the left side as far as the root of the neck, gradually passes to the middle line again, and finally again deviates to the left, as it passes forwards to the oesophageal opening of the Diaphragm. The oesophagus also presents an antero-posterior flexure, corresponding to the curvature of the cervical and thoracic portions of the spine. It is the narrowest part of the alimentary canal, being most contracted at its commencement, and at the point where it passes through the Diaphragm.

**Relations.** In the neck, the oesophagus is in relation, *in front*, with the trachea; and, at the lower part of the neck, where it projects to the left side, with the thyroid gland and thoracic duct; *behind*, it rests upon the vertebral column and Longus colli muscle; on each side it is in relation with the common carotid artery (especially the left, as it inclines to that side), and part of the lateral lobes of the thyroid gland; the recurrent laryngeal nerves ascend between it and the trachea.

In the thorax, it is at first situated a little to the left of the median line: it then passes across the left side of the transverse part of the aortic arch, and descends in the posterior mediastinum, along the right side of the aorta, nearly to the Diaphragm, where it passes in front and a little to the left of the artery, previous to entering the abdomen. It is in relation, *in front*, with the trachea, the arch of the aorta, left carotid, and left subclavian arteries, the left bronchus, and the posterior surface of the pericardium; *behind*, it rests upon the vertebral column, the Longus colli, and the intercostal vessels; and below, near the Diaphragm, upon the front of the aorta; *lateral* it is covered by the pleura: the vena cava major lies on the right, and the descending aorta on the left side. The pneumogastric nerves descend in close contact with it, the right nerve passing down behind, and the left nerve in front of it.
THE ABDOMEN.

Surgical Anatomy. The relations of the oesophagus are of considerable practical interest to the surgeon, as he is frequently required, in cases of stricture of this tube, to dilate the canal by a bougie, when it becomes of importance that the direction of the oesophagus, and its relations to surrounding parts, should be remembered. In cases of malignant disease of the oesophagus, where its tissues have become softened from infiltration of the morbid deposit, the greatest care is requisite in directing the bougie through the stricture part, as a false passage may easily be made, and the instrument may pass into the mediastinum, or into one or the other pleural cavity, or even into the pericardium.

The student should also remember that contraction of the oesophagus, and consequent symptoms of stricture, are occasionally produced by an aneurism of some part of the aorta pressing upon this tube. In such a case, the passage of a bougie could only hasten the fatal issue.

It occasionally happens that a foreign body becomes impacted in the oesophagus, which can neither be brought upwards nor moved downwards. When all ordinary means for its removal have failed, excision is the only resource. This, of course, can only be performed when it is not very low down. If the foreign body is allowed to remain, extensive inflammation and ulceration of the oesophagus may ensue. In one case with which I am acquainted, the foreign body ultimately penetrated the intervertebral substance, and destroyed life by inflammation of the membranes and substance of the cord.

The operation of oesophagotomy is thus performed. The patient being placed upon his back, with the head and shoulders slightly elevated, an incision, about four inches in length, should be made on the left side of the trachea, from the thyroid cartilage downwards, dividing the skin and Platysma. The edges of the wound being separated, the Omo-hyoid muscle, and the fibres of the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, must be drawn inwards; the sheath of the carotid vessels being exposed, should be drawn outwards, and retained in its position by retractors; the oesophagus will then be exposed, and should be divided over the foreign body, which should then be removed. Great care is necessary to avoid wounding the thyroid vessels, the thyroid gland, and the laryngeal nerves.

Structure. The oesophagus has three coats: an external, or muscular; a middle, or cellular; and an internal, or mucous coat.

The muscular coat is composed of two planes of fibres of considerable thickness, an external longitudinal, and an internal circular.

The longitudinal fibres are arranged at the commencement of the tube, in three fasciculi: one in front, which is attached to the vertical ridge on the posterior surface of the cricoid cartilage; and one at each side, which are continuous with the fibres of the Inferior constrictor; as they descend they blend together, and form a uniform layer, which covers the outer surface of the tube.

The circular fibres are continuous above with the Inferior constrictor; their direction is transverse at the upper and lower parts of the tube, but oblique in the central part.

The muscular fibres in the upper part of the oesophagus are of a red color, and consist chiefly of the striped variety; but below, they consist entirely of the involuntary muscular fibre.

The cellular coat connects loosely the mucous and muscular coats.

The mucous coat is thick, of a reddish color above, and pale below. It is disposed in longitudinal folds, which disappear on distension of the tube. Its surface is studded with minute papille, and it is covered throughout with a thick layer of squamous epithelium.

The oesophageal glands are numerous small compound glands, scattered throughout the tube; they are lodged in the submucous tissue, and open upon the surface by a long excretory duct. They are most numerous at the lower part of the tube, where they form a ring round the cardiac orifice.

The Abdomen.

The Abdomen is the largest cavity in the body, and is separated, below, from the pelvic cavity by the brim of the pelvis. It is of an oval form, the extremities of the oval being directed upwards and downwards; it is wider above than below, and measures more in the vertical than in the transverse diameter.

1 Accessory slips of muscular fibres are described by Dr. Cunningham as passing between the oesophagus and the pleura, where it covers the thoracic aorta (almost always), or the root of the left arch (usually), or the back of the pericardium, or corner of the mediastinum (less rare), as well as other still more rare accessory fibres.—(Journal of Anat. and Phys., vol. x. p. 320.)
ORGANS OF DIGESTION.

**Boundaries.** It is bounded, in *front* and at the *sides* by the lower ribs, the Transversalis muscle, and the venter lillii; *behind*, by the vertebral column, and the Psoas and Quadratus lumborum muscles; *above*, by the Diaphragm; *below*, by the brim of the pelvis. The muscles forming the boundaries of the cavities are lined upon their inner surface by a layer of fascia, differently arranged according to the part to which it is attached.

The abdomen contains the greater part of the alimentary canal; some of the accessory organs to digestion, viz., the liver, pancreas, and spleen; and the kidneys and suprarenal capsules. Most of these structures, as well as the wall of the cavity in which they are contained, are covered by an extensive and complicated serous membrane, the peritoneum.

The *apertures* found in the walls of the abdomen, for the transmission of structures to or from it, are the *umbilicus*, for the transmission (in the foetus) of the umbilical vessels; the *caval opening* in the Diaphragm, for the transmission of the inferior vena cava; the *aortic opening*, for the passage of the aorta, vena azygos, and thoracic duct; and the *oesophageal opening*, for the oesophagus and pneumogastric nerves. Below, there are two *apertures* on each side: one for the passage of the femoral vessels, and the other for the transmission of the spermatic cord in the male, and the round ligament in the female.

**Fig. 432—The Regions of the Abdomen and their Contents.**
(Edge of Costal Cartilages in dotted outline.)

**Regions.** For the convenience of description of the viscera, as well as of reference to the morbid condition of the contained parts, the abdomen is artificially divided into nine regions. Thus, if two circular lines are drawn round the body, the one parallel with the cartilages of the ninth ribs, and the other with the highest point of the crests of the ilia, the abdominal cavity is divided
PERITONEUM.

into three zones, an upper, a middle, and a lower. If two parallel lines are drawn from the cartilage of the eighth rib on each side, down to the centre of Poupart's ligament, each of these zones is subdivided into three parts, a middle and two lateral.

The middle region of the upper zone is called the epigastric (ἐπιγαστρικός, under; ἑπιστημόν, the stomach); and the two lateral regions, the right and left hypochondriac (ἴθυς, under; γαστρὶ, the cartilages). The central region of the middle zone is the umbilical; and the two lateral regions, the right and left lumbar. The middle region of the lower zone is the hypogastric or pūbic region; and the lateral regions are the right and left inguinal. The viscera contained in these different regions are the following (Fig. 432).

Right Hypochondriac.
The right lobe of the liver and the gall-bladder, the duodenum, pancreas, hepatic flexure of the colon, upper part of the right kidney, and the right suprarenal capsule.

Epigastric Region.
The middle and pyloric end of the stomach, left lobe of the liver, and lobulus Spigelii, and the pancreas.

Left Hypochondriac.
The splenic end of the stomach, the spleen and extremity of the pancreas, the splenic flexure of the colon, upper half of the left kidney, and the left suprarenal capsule.

Right Lumbar.
Ascending colon, lower part of the right kidney, and some convolutions of the small intestines.

Umbilical Region.
The transverse colon, part of the great omentum and mesentery, transverse part of the duodenum, and some convolutions of the jejunum and ileum.

Left Lumbar.
Descending colon, part of the omentum, lower part of the left kidney, and some convolutions of the small intestines.

Right Inguinal.
The cæcum, appendix cæci, and ureter.

Hypogastric Region.
Convolutions of the small intestines, the bladder in children, and in adults if distended, and the uterus during pregnancy.

Left Inguinal.
Sigmoid flexure of the colon, and ureter.

THE PERITONEUM.

The Peritoneum (περιτόνειον, to extend around) is a serous membrane; and, like all membranes of this class, a shut sac. In the female, however, it is not completely closed, the Fallopian tubes communicating with it by their free extremities; and thus the serous membrane is continuous with their mucous lining.

The peritoneum partially invests all the viscera contained in the abdominal and pelvic cavities, forming the visceral layer of the membrane; it is then reflected upon the internal surface of the parietes of those cavities, forming the parietal layer. The free surface of the peritoneum is smooth, moist, and covered by a thin squamous epithelium; its attached surface is rough, being connected to the viscera and inner surface of the parietes by means of areolar tissue, called the subperitoneal areolar tissue. The parietal portion is loosely connected with the fascia lining the abdomen and pelvis; but more closely to the under surface of the Diaphragm, and in the middle line of the abdomen.

In order to trace the reflections of this membrane (Fig. 433), the abdomen having been opened, the liver should be raised and supported in that position, and the stomach should be depressed, when a thin membranous layer is seen passing from the transverse fissure of the liver to the upper border of the stomach: this is the lesser or gastro-hepatic omentum. It consists of two delicate
layers of peritoneum, an anterior and a posterior, between which are continued the hepatic vessels and nerves. Of these two layers, the anterior should first be traced, and then the posterior.

The anterior layer descends to the lesser curvature of the stomach, and covers its anterior surface as far as the great curvature: it descends for some distance in front of the small intestines, and, returning upon itself to the transverse colon, forms the **external layer of the great omentum**; it then covers the under surface of the transverse colon, and, passing to the back part of the abdominal cavity, forms the **inferior layer of the transverse mesocolon**. It then descends in front of the duodenum, the aorta, and vena cava, as far as the superior mesenteric artery, along which it passes to invest the small intestines, and, returning to the vertebral column, forms the **mesentery**; whilst, on either side, it covers the ascending and descending colon, and is thus continuous with the peritoneum lining the walls of the abdomen. From the root of the mesentery, it descends along the front of the spine into the pelvis, and surrounds the upper part of the rectum, which it holds in its position by means of a distinct fold, the **mesorectum**. Its course in the male and female now differs.

In the **male**, it forms a fold between the rectum and bladder, the **recto-vesical fold**, and ascends over the posterior surface of the latter organ as far as its summit.

In the **female**, it descends into the pelvis in front of the rectum, covers a small part of the posterior wall of the vagina, and is then reflected on to the uterus, the fundus and body of which it covers. From the sides of the uterus, it is
reflected on each side to the wall of the pelvis, forming the broad ligaments; and from the anterior surface of the uterus it ascends upon the posterior wall of the bladder, as far as its summit. From this point it may be traced, as in the male, ascending upon the anterior parietes of the abdomen, to the under surface of the Diaphragm; from which it is reflected upon the liver, forming the upper layer of the coronary, and the lateral and longitudinal ligaments. It then covers the upper and under surfaces of the liver, and at the transverse fissure becomes continuous with the anterior layer of the lesser omentum, the point whence its reflection was originally traced.

The posterior layer of the lesser omentum descends to the lesser curvature of the stomach, and covers its posterior surface as far as the great curvature; it then descends some distance in front of the small intestines, and, returning upon itself to the transverse colon, forms the internal layer of the great omentum; it covers the upper surface of the transverse colon, and, passing backwards to the spine, forms the upper layer of the transverse mesocolon. Ascending in front of the pancreas and crura of the Diaphragm, it lines the back part of the under surface of that muscle, from which it is reflected on to the posterior border of the liver, forming the inferior layer of the coronary ligament. From the under surface of the liver it may be traced to the transverse fissure, where it is continuous with the posterior layer of the lesser omentum, the point whence its reflection was originally traced.

The space included in the reflections of this layer of the peritoneum is called the lesser cavity of the peritoneum or cavity of the great omentum. It is bounded, in front, by the lesser omentum, the stomach, and the descending part of the great omentum; behind, by the ascending part of the great omentum, the transverse colon, transverse mesocolon, and its ascending layer; above, by the liver; and below, by the folding of the great omentum. This space communicates with the general peritoneal cavity through the foramen of Winslow, which is situated behind the right, or free, border of the lesser omentum.

The foramen of Winslow is bounded in front by the lesser omentum, inclosing the vena portae and the hepatic artery and duct; behind, by the inferior vena cava; above, by the lobulus Spigelii; below, by the hepatic artery curving forwards from the celiac axis.

This foramen is nothing more than a constriction of the general peritoneal cavity at this point, caused by the hepatic and gastric arteries passing forwards from the celiac axis to reach their respective viscera.

The viscera thus shown to be almost entirely invested by peritoneum are the liver, stomach, spleen, first portion of the duodenum, the jejunum, and ileum, the transverse colon, sigmoid flexure, upper end of the rectum, the uterus, and ovaries.

The viscera only partially invested by peritoneum are the descending and transverse portions of the duodenum, the cecum, the ascending and descending colon, the middle portion of the rectum, and the upper part of the vagina and posterior wall of the bladder. The kidneys, suprarenal capsules, and pancreas are covered by the membrane without receiving any special investment from it.

The lower end of the rectum, the neck, base, and anterior surface of the bladder, the whole of the front, and the lower part of the posterior, wall of the vagina, have no peritoneal covering.

Numerous folds are formed by the peritoneum, extending between the various organs. These serve to hold them in position, and, at the same time, inclose the vessels and nerves proceeding to each part. Some of the folds are called ligaments, from their serving to support the organs in position. Others, which connect certain parts of the intestine with the abdominal wall, constitute the mesenteries; and lastly, those are called omenta, which proceed from the stomach to certain viscera in its neighborhood.

The ligaments, formed by folds of the peritoneum, include those of the liver,
spleen, bladder, and uterus. They will be found described with their respective organs.

The OMENTA are the lesser omentum, the great omentum, and the gastro-splenic omentum.

The lesser omentum (gastro-hepatic) is the duplicature which extends between the transverse fissure of the liver and the lesser curvature of the stomach. It is extremely thin, and consists, as before said, of two layers of peritoneum. At the left border its two layers pass on to the end of the oesophagus; but at the right border, where it is free, they are continuous, and form a free rounded margin, which contains between its layers the hepatic artery, the ductus communis choledochus, and portal vein, lymphatics and the hepatic plexus of nerves—all these structures being inclosed in loose areolar tissue, called Glisson’s capsule.

Between the layers where they are attached to the stomach lie the coronaria ventriculi artery and the pyloric branch of the hepatic anastomosing with it.

The great omentum (gastro-colic) is the largest peritoneal fold. It consists of four layers of peritoneum, two of which descend from the stomach, one from its anterior, the other from its posterior surface, and, uniting at its lower border, descend in front of the small intestines, as low down as the pelvis; they then turn upon themselves, and ascend again as far as the transverse colon, where they separate and inclose that part of the intestine. These separate layers may be easily demonstrated in the young subject; but, in the adult, they are more or less inseparably blended. The left border of the great omentum is continuous with the gastro-splenic omentum; its right border extends as far only as the duodenum. The great omentum is usually thin, presents a cribiform appearance, and always contains some adipose tissue, which, in fat subjects, accumulates in considerable quantity. Its use appears to be to protect the intestines from the cold, and to facilitate their movement upon each other during their vermicular action. Between its layers is the anastomosis between the right and left gastro-epiploica arteries.

The gastro-splenic omentum is the fold which connects the concave surface of the spleen to the cut-de-sac of the stomach, being continuous by its lower border with the great omentum. It contains the splenic vessels and vasa brevia.

The Mesenteries are, the mesentery proper, the mesoceleum, the ascending transverse, and descending mesocolon, the sigmoid mesocolon, and the meso-rectum.

The mesentery (μεσόν, lefíov), so called from being connected to the middle of the cylinder of the small intestine, is the broad fold of peritoneum which connects the convolutions of the jejunum and ileum with the posterior wall of the abdomen. Its root, the part connected with the vertebral column, is narrow, about six inches in length, and directed obliquely from the left side of the second lumbar vertebra to the right sacro-iliac symphysis. Its intestinal border is much longer; and here its two layers separate, so as to inclose the intestine, and form its peritoneal coat. Its breadth, between its vertebral and intestinal border, is about four inches. Its upper border is continuous with the under surface of the transverse mesocolon; its lower border, with the peritoneum covering the caecum and ascending colon. It serves to retain the small intestines in their position, and contains between its layers the mesenteric vessels and nerves, the lacteal vessels and mesenteric glands.

The mesoceleum, when it exists, serves to connect the back part of the caecum with the right iliac fossa; more frequently, the peritoneum passes merely in front of this portion of the large intestine.

The ascending mesocolon is the fold which connects the back part of the ascending colon with the posterior wall of the abdomen; and the descending mesocolon retains the descending colon in connection with the posterior abdominal wall; more frequently, the peritoneum merely covers the anterior surface and sides of these two portions of the intestine.
THE STOMACH.

The transverse mesocolon is a broad fold, which connects the transverse colon with the posterior wall of the abdomen. It is formed by the two ascending layers of the great omentum, which, after separating to surround the transverse colon, join behind it, and are continued backwards to the spine, where they diverge in front of the duodenum, as already mentioned. This fold contains between its layers the vessels which supply the transverse colon.

The sigmoid mesocolon is the fold of peritoneum which retains the sigmoid flexure in connection with the left iliac fossa.

The mesorectum is the narrow fold which connects the upper part of the rectum with the front of the sacrum. It contains the hemorrhoidal vessels.

The appendices epiploicae are small pouches of the peritoneum filled with fat, and situated along the colon and upper part of the rectum. They are chiefly appended to the transverse colon.

THE STOMACH.

The Stomach is the principal organ of digestion. It is the most dilated part of the alimentary canal, serving for the solution and reduction of the food, which constitutes the process of chymification. It is situated in the left hypochondriac, the epigastric, and part of the right hypochondriac regions. Its form is irregularly conical, curved upon itself, and presenting a rounded base, turned to the left side. It is placed immediately behind the anterior wall of the abdomen, above the transverse colon, below the liver and the Diaphragm. Its size varies considerably in different subjects, and also according to its state of distensions. When moderately full, its transverse diameter is about twelve inches, its vertical diameter about four. Its weight, according to Clendening, is about four ounces and a half. It presents for examination two extremities, two orifices, two borders, and two surfaces.

Its left extremity is called the greater, or splenic end. This is the largest part of the stomach, and extends two or three inches to the left of the point of entrance of the oesophagus. This expanded part is called the great cul-de-sac, or fundus. It lies behind the lower ribs, in contact with the spleen, to which it is connected by the gastro-splenic omentum.

The lesser or pyloric end is much smaller than the fundus, and situated on a plane anterior and inferior to it. It lies in contact with the wall of the abdomen, the under surface of the liver, and the neck of the gall-bladder.

The oesophageal or cardiac orifice communicates with the oesophagus; it is the highest part of the stomach, and somewhat funnel-shaped.

The pyloric orifice communicates with the duodenum, the aperture being guarded by a kind of valve—the pylorus.

The lesser curvature extends between the oesophageal and pyloric orifices, along the upper border of the organ, and is connected to the under surface of the liver by the lesser omentum.

The greater curvature extends between the same two points, along the lower border, and gives attachment to the great omentum. The surfaces of the organ are limited by these two curvatures.

The anterior surface is directed upwards and forwards, and is in relation with the Diaphragm, the under surface of the left lobe of the liver, and with the abdominal parietes, in the epigastric region.

The posterior surface is directed downwards and backwards, and is in relation with the pancreas and great vessels of the abdomen, the crura of the Diaphragm, and the solar plexus.

The stomach is held in position by the lesser omentum, which extends from the transverse fissure of the liver to its lesser curvature, and by a fold of peritoneum, which passes from the Diaphragm on to the oesophageal end of the stomach, the gastro-phrenic ligament: this constitutes the most fixed point of the stomach, whilst the pyloric end and greater curvature are the most movable.
parts; hence when the stomach becomes greatly distended, the greater curvature is directed forwards, whilst the anterior and posterior surfaces are directed, the former upwards, and the latter downwards.

**Alterations in Position.** There is no organ in the body the position and connections of which present such frequent alterations as the stomach. **During inspiration,** it is displaced downwards by the descent of the Diaphragm, and elevated by the pressure of the abdominal muscles during expiration. Its position in relation to the surrounding viscera is also changed, according to the empty or distended state of the organ. **When empty,** it occupies only a small part of the left hypochondriac region, the spleen lying behind it; the left lobe of the liver covers it in front, and the under surface of the heart rests upon it above, and in front; being separated from it by the left lobe of the liver, besides the diaphragm and pericardium. This close relation between the stomach and the heart explains the fact that, in gastralgia, the pain is generally referred to the heart, and is often accompanied by palpitation and intermission of the pulse. **When the stomach is distended** the Diaphragm is forced upwards, contracting the cavity of the chest; hence the dyspepsia complained of, from inspiration being impeded. The heart is also displaced upwards; hence the oppression in this region, and the palpitation experienced in extreme distension of the stomach. **Pressure from without,** as from tight lacing, pushes the stomach down towards the pelvis. In disease, also, the position and connections of the organs may be greatly changed, from the accumulation of fluid in the chest or abdomen, or from alteration in size of any of the surrounding viscera.

On looking into the pyloric end of the stomach, the mucous membrane is found projecting inwards in the form of a circular fold, the pylorus, leaving a narrow circular aperture, about half an inch in diameter, by which the stomach communicates with the duodenum.

Fig. 434.—The Mucous Membrane of the Stomach and Duodenum, with the Bile Ducts.

The pylorus is formed by a reduplication of the mucous membrane of the stomach, containing numerous muscular fibres, which are aggregated into a thick circular ring, the longitudinal fibres and serous membrane being continued over the fold without assisting in its formation. The aperture is occasionally
oval. Sometimes, the circular fold is replaced by two crescentic folds, placed, one above, and the other below, the pyloric orifice; and, more rarely, there is only one crescentic fold.

**Structure.** The stomach consists of four coats: a serous, a muscular, a cellular, and a mucous coat, together with vessels and nerves.

The serous coat is derived from the peritoneum, and covers the entire surface of the organ, excepting along the greater and lesser curvatures, at the points of attachment of the greater and lesser omenta; here the two layers of peritoneum leave a small triangular space, along which the nutrient vessels and nerves pass.

The muscular coat (Fig. 435) is situated immediately beneath the serous covering. It consists of three sets of fibres: longitudinal, circular, and oblique.

The longitudinal fibres are most superficial; they are continuous with the longitudinal fibres of the oesophagus, radiating in a stellate manner from the cardiac orifice. They are most distinct along the curvatures, especially the lesser; but are very thinly distributed over the surfaces. At the pyloric end, they are more thickly distributed, and continuous with the longitudinal fibres of the small intestine.

Fig. 435.—The Muscular Coat of the Stomach.

The circular fibres form a uniform layer over the whole extent of the stomach, beneath the longitudinal fibres. At the pylorus they are most abundant, and are aggregated into a circular ring, which projects into the cavity, and forms, with the fold of mucous membrane covering its surface, the pyloric valve.

The oblique fibres are limited chiefly to the cardiac end of the stomach, where they are disposed as a thick uniform layer, covering both surfaces, some passing obliquely from left to right, others from right to left, round the cardiac orifice.

The cellular coat consists of a loose, filamentous, areolar tissue, connecting the mucous and muscular layers. It is sometimes called the submucous coat. It supports the bloodvessels previous to their distribution to the mucous membrane; hence it is sometimes called the vascular coat.

The mucous membrane of the stomach is thick; its surface smooth, soft, and velvety. During infancy, and immediately after death, it is of a pinkish tinge, but in adult life and in old age, it becomes of a pale straw or ash-gray color. It is thin at the cardiac extremity, but thicker towards the pylorus. During the
contracted state of the organ, it is thrown into numerous plaits or rugæ, which, for the most part, have a longitudinal direction, and are most marked towards the lesser end of the stomach, and along the greater curvature (Fig. 434). These folds are entirely obliterated when the organ becomes distended.

**Structure of the mucous membrane** (Fig. 436). When examined with a lens, the inner surface of the mucous membrane presents a peculiar honeycomb appearance, from being covered with small shallow depressions or alveoli, of a polygonal or hexagonal form, which vary from \( \frac{1}{10} \) to \( \frac{1}{3} \) of an inch in diameter, and are separated by slightly elevated ridges. In the bottom of the alveoli are seen the orifices of minute tubes, the *gastric follicles*, which are situated perpendicularly side by side, in the entire substance of the mucous membrane. They are short, and simply tubular in character, towards the cardia; but at the pyloric end, they are longer, more thickly set, convoluted, and terminate in dilated saccular extremities, or are subdivided into from two to six tubular branches.

Dr. Watney has pointed out that these convoluted or coiled tubes form the transition from the simple tubular follicles to the convoluted glands of Brunner which lie immediately below the pylorus. The gastric follicles are composed of a homogeneous basement membrane, lined upon its free surface by a layer of cells, which differ in their character in different parts of the stomach. Towards the pylorus these tubes are lined throughout with columnar epithelium; they are termed the *mucous glands*, and are supposed to secrete the gastric mucus. In other parts of the organ, the deep part of each tube is filled with nuclei and a mass of granules; above these are a mass of nucleated cells, the upper fourth of the tube being lined by columnar epithelium. These are called the *peptic glands*, and are the supposed agents in the secretion of the gastric juice.

*Simple follicles* are found in greater or less number over the entire surface of the mucous membrane; they are most numerous near the pyloric end of the stomach, and are especially distinct in early life. The epithelium lining the mucous membrane of the stomach and its alveoli is of the columnar variety.

**Vessels and Nerves.** The arteries supplying the stomach are, the coronaria ventriculi, the pyloric and right gastro-epiploic branches of the hepatic, the left gastro-epiploic and vasa brevia from the splenic. They supply the muscular coat, ramify in the submucous coat, and are finally distributed to the mucous membrane. The arrangement of the vessels in the mucous membrane is somewhat peculiar. The arteries break up at the base of the gastric tubules into a plexus of fine capillaries which run upwards, betwen the tubules, anastomosing with each other, and ending in a plexus of larger capillaries, which surround the mouths of the tubes, and also form hexagonal meshes around the alveoli. From these latter the *veins* arise, which pursue a straight course back to the submucous tissue, between the tubules, to terminate in the splenic and portal veins. The *lymphatics* are numerous; they consist of a superficial and deep set, which pass through the lymphatic glands found along the two curvatures of the
organ. The nerves are the terminal branches of the right and left pneumogastric, the former being distributed upon the back, and the latter upon the front part of the organ. A great number of branches from the sympathetic also supply the organ.

**The Small Intestines.**

The Small Intestine is that part of the alimentary canal in which the chyme is mixed with the bile, the pancreatic juice, and the secretions of the various glands imbedded in the mucous membrane of the intestine, and where the separation of the nutritive principle of the food, the chyle, is effected: this constitutes chylification.

The small intestine is a convoluted tube, about twenty feet in length, which gradually diminishes in size from its commencement to its termination. It is contained in the central and lower parts of the abdominal and pelvic cavities, surrounded above and at the sides by the large intestine; in relation, in front, with the great omentum and abdominal parietes; and connected to the spine by a fold of peritoneum, the mesentery. The small intestine is divisible into three portions: the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum.

The duodenum has received its name from being about equal in length to the breadth of twelve fingers (eight or ten inches). It is the shortest, the widest, and the most fixed part of the small intestine; it has no mesentery, and is only partially covered by the peritoneum. Its course presents a remarkable curve, somewhat like a horseshoe in form; the convexity being directed towards the right, and the concavity to the left, embracing the head of the pancreas. Commencing at the pylorus, it ascends obliquely upwards and backwards to the under surface of the liver; it then descends in front of the right kidney, and passes nearly transversely across the front of the spine, terminating in the jejunum on the left side of the second lumbar vertebra. Hence the duodenum has been divided into three portions: ascending, descending, and transverse.

The first, or ascending portion (Fig. 437), about two inches in length, is free, movable, and nearly completely invested by the peritoneum, which forms the lesser omentum. It is in relation, above and in front, with the liver and neck of the gall-bladder; behind, with the vessels which run between the layers of the lesser omentum, viz., the hepatic artery and duct, and vena portae. This portion of the intestine is usually found, after death, stained with bile, especially on its anterior surface.

The second, or descending portion, about three inches in length, is firmly fixed by the peritoneum and pancreas. It passes from the neck of the gall-bladder vertically downwards, in front of the right kidney, as far as the third lumbar vertebra. It is covered by peritoneum only on its anterior surface. It is in relation, in front, with the right arch of the colon and the meso-colon; behind with the front of the right kidney; at its inner side is the head of the pancreas, and the ductus communis choledochus. The common bile duct and the pancreatic duct perforate the inner side of this portion of the intestine obliquely, a little below its middle.

The third, or transverse portion, the longest and narrowest part of the duodenum, passes across the front of the spine, ascending from the third to the second lumbar vertebra, and terminating in the jejunum on the left side of that bone. In front, though at some distance from it, is the descending layer of the transverse meso-colon, or the divergence of the two layers of that structure, and it is crossed by the superior mesenteric vessels; behind, it rests upon the aorta, the vena cava, and the crura of the Diaphragm; above it, is the lower border of the pancreas, the superior mesenteric vessels passing forwards between the two.

**Vessels and Nerves.** The arteries supplying the duodenum are the pyloric and pancreatico-duodenal branches of the hepatic, and inferior pancreatico-
duodenal branch of the superior mesenteric. The veins terminate in the gastro-duodenal and superior mesenteric. The nerves are derived from the solar plexus.

The jejunum (jejulus, empty), so called from being usually found empty after death, includes the upper two-fifths of the rest of the small intestine. It commences at the duodenum, on the left side of the second lumbar vertebra, and terminates in the ileum; its convolutions being chiefly confined to the umbilical and left iliac regions. The jejunum is wider, its coats thicker, more vascular, and of a deeper color than those of the ileum; but there is no characteristic mark to distinguish the termination of the one and the commencement of the other.

Fig. 437.—Relations of the Duodenum. (The Pancreas has been cut away, except its head.)

The ileum (siiaxis, to twist), so called from its numerous coils or convolutions, includes the remaining three-fifths of the small intestine. It occupies chiefly the umbilical, hypogastric, right iliac, and occasionally the pelvic regions, and terminates in the right iliac fossa by opening into the inner side of the commencement of the large intestine. The ileum is narrower, its coats thinner and less vascular than those of the jejunum; a given length of it weighing less than the same length of the jejunum.

Structure. The wall of the small intestine is composed of four coats: serous, muscular, cellular, and mucous.

The serous coat is derived from the peritoneum. The first, or ascending
portion of the duodenum, is almost completely surrounded by that membrane; the second, or descending portion, is covered by it only in front; and the third, or transverse, portion lies behind the descending layer of the transverse mesocolon, by which it is covered in front. The remaining portion of the small intestine is surrounded by the peritoneum, excepting along its attached or mesenteric border; here a space is left for the vessels and nerves to pass to the gut.

The muscular coat consists of two layers of fibres, an external or longitudinal, and an internal or circular layer. The longitudinal fibres are thinly scattered over the surface of the intestine, and are most distinct along its free border. The circular fibres form a thick, uniform layer; they surround the cylinder of the intestine in the greater part of its circumference, but do not form complete rings. The muscular coat is thicker at the upper than at the lower part of the small intestine.

The cellular, or submucous coat, connects together the mucous and muscular layers. It consists of a loose, filamentous, arcolar tissue, which forms a nidus for the subdivision of the nutrient vessels, previous to their distribution to the mucous surface.

The mucous membrane is thick and highly vascular at the upper part of the small intestine, but somewhat paler and thinner below. It presents for examination the following constituents:

- Epithelium.
- Valvulae conniventes.
- Villi.
- Glands.

- Simple follicles.
- Duodenal glands.
- Solitary glands.
- Agminate or Peyer's glands.

The epithelium, covering the mucous membrane of the small intestine, is of the columnar variety.

The valvulae conniventes (valves of Kerkring) are reduplications of foldings of the mucous membrane and submucous tissue, containing no muscular fibres. They extend transversely across the cylinder of the intestine for about three-fourths or five-sixths of its circumference. The larger folds are about two inches in length, and two-thirds of an inch in depth at their broadest part; but the greater number are of smaller size. The larger and smaller folds alternate with each other. They are not found at the commencement of the duodenum, but begin to appear about one or two inches beyond the pylorus. In the lower part of the descending portion, below the point where the common choledocho and pancreatic ducts enter the intestine, they are very large and closely approximated. In the transverse portion of the duodenum and upper half of the jejunum, they are large and numerous; and from this point, down to the middle of the ileum, they diminish considerably in size. In the lower part of the ileum, they almost entirely disappear; hence the comparative thinness of this portion of the intestine, as compared with the duodenum and jejunum. The valvulae conniventes retard the passage of the food along the intestines, and afford a more extensive surface for absorption.

The villi are minute, highly vascular processes, projecting from the mucous membrane of the small intestine throughout its whole extent, and giving to its surface a velvety appearance. In shape some are triangular and laminated, others conical or cylindrical, with clubbed or filiform extremities. They are largest and most numerous in the duodenum and jejunum, and become fewer and smaller in the ileum. Krause estimates their number in the upper part of the small intestine at from fifty to ninety in a square line; and in the lower part from forty to seventy; the total number for the whole length of the intestine being about four millions.

The structure of the villi has been studied recently by many eminent anatomists. We shall here follow the description of Dr. Watney, whose researches

1 Phil. Trans. vol. clxiv. pt. 2.
have a most important bearing on the physiology of that which is the peculiar function of this part of the intestine, the absorption of fat.

The essential parts of a villus are the lacteal vessel, the bloodvessels, the epithelium, the basement, membrane and muscular tissue of the mucosa, and the cells and reticular tissue which fill up the interspaces.

The lacteals are situated in the axis of the villi. They arise either by clubbed or dilated extremities, or else by loops. In some few cases they are double, and in animals multiple. They are composed of a single layer of epithelium. Forming a sheath or adventitia to this epithelium, penetrating between the epithelial cells, is (according to Dr. Watney) an abundant reticulum, along which he believes the fat-granules to travel. The pale muscular fibres which

Fig. 438.—Diagrammatic Section of a Villus.

.ep. Epithelium only partially shaded in. 1. Central chyle-vessel. The cells forming the vessel have been less shaded to distinguish them from the cells of the parenchyma of the villus. m. Muscle fibres running up by the side of the chyle-vessel. It will be noticed that each muscle fibre is surrounded by the reticulum, and by this reticulum the muscles are attached to the cells forming the membranes, as at a', or to the reticulum of the villus. l.e. Lymph corpuscles, marked by a spherical nucleus and a clear zone of protoplasm. v'. Upper limit of the chyle-vessel. e, e, e'. Cells forming the membranes propriis. It will be seen that there is hardly any difference between the cells of the parenchyma, the endothelium of the upper part of the chyle-vessel, and the cells of the membranes propriis. v. Blood vessels. s. Dark line at the base of the epithelium formed by the reticulum. It will be seen that the reticulum penetrates between all the other elements of the villus. The reticulum contains thickenings or "nodal points." The diagram shows that the cells of the upper part of the villus are larger and contain a larger zone of protoplasm than those of the lower part. The cells of the upper part of the chyle-vessel differ somewhat from those of the lower part, in that they more nearly resemble the cells of the parenchyma.

play so important a part in the anatomy and functions of the villus are derived from the muscularis mucosae, and they terminate in close relation with the cells of the villus (i.e. the cells which lie in the interstices of the capillary network outside the lacteal), where they appear to be continuous with the reticulum. The capillaries lie around the villus, and are also provided with a sheath of reticular tissue. The cells of the villus are large masses of protoplasm with an oval nucleus. Their size and the shape of their nucleus, as well as their behavior towards reagents, distinguish them, according to Dr. Watney, from
the lymph corpuscles which are also met with in smaller numbers, and which are much smaller and with a spherical nucleus. Transitional forms, however, of all kinds are met with between the lymph corpuscles and the cells of the villus. All these points are illustrated by the accompanying diagram by Dr. Watney (Fig. 438), for which I have to express my best thanks to him, and a comparison with Fig. 439 will show the chief points in which the new differs from the old description.

The simple follicles, or crypts of Lieberkühn, are found in considerable numbers over every part of the mucous membrane of the small intestine. They consist of minute tubular depressions of the mucous membrane, arranged perpendicularly to the surface, upon which they open by small circular apertures. They may be seen with the aid of a lens, their orifices appearing as minute dots, scattered between the villi. Their walls are thin, consisting of a layer of basement membrane, lined by cylindrical epithelium, and covered on their exterior by capillary vessels. Their contents vary, even in health, and the purpose served by their secretion is still very doubtful.

The duodenal, or Brunner's glands, are limited to the duodenum and commencement of the jejunum. They are small, flattened, granular bodies, embedded in the submucous areolar tissue, and open upon the surface of the mucous membrane by minute excretory ducts. They are most numerous and largest near the pylorus. They may be compared to the elementary lobules of a salivary gland spread out over a broad surface, instead of being collected in a mass. In structure they resemble the pancreas.

The solitary glands (glandulae solitariae) are found scattered throughout the mucous membrane of the small intestine, but are most numerous in the lower
part of the ileum. They are small, round, whitish bodies, from half a line to a line in diameter. Their free surface is covered with villi, and each gland is surrounded by openings of follicles of Lieberkühn. They are now recognized as lymphoid follicles, and consist of a dense interlacing retiform tissue permeated with an abundant capillary network (Fig. 440). The interspaces of the retiform tissue are continuous with larger lymph-spaces at the base of the follicle through which they communicate with the lacteal system, and they contain lymph-corpuscles in their interior. They are situated partly in the corium of the mucous membrane, partly penetrate its muscular layer, and project into the epithelial layer. The villi, which are situated on them, are generally absent from the very summit (or "cupola," as Frey calls it) of the follicle.

Fig. 442.—A portion of the same magnified.

Fig. 444.—Vertical Section of one of Peyer's Patches from Man, injected through its lymphatic canals.

Peyer's glands (Figs. 441-443) may be regarded as aggregations of solitary glands, forming circular or oval patches from twenty to thirty in number, and
LARGE INTESTINE.

Varying in length from half an inch to four inches. They are largest and most numerous in the ileum. In the lower part of the jejunum they are small, of a circular form and few in number. They are occasionally seen in the duodenum. They are placed lengthwise in the intestine, covering the portion of the tube most distant from the attachment of the mesentery. Each patch is formed of a group of the above described lymphoid follicles covered with mucous membrane. Each is surrounded by a zone, or wreath of simple follicles, and the interspaces between them are covered with villi. The mucous and submucous coats of the intestine are intimately adherent, and highly vascular, opposite the Peyerian glands. They are largest and most developed during the digestive process.

THE LARGE INTESTINE.

The Large Intestine extends from the termination of the ileum to the anus. It is about five feet in length, being one-fifth of the whole extent of the intestinal canal. It is largest at its commencement at the cæcum, and gradually diminishes as far as the rectum, where there is a dilatation of considerable size, just above the anus. It differs from the small intestine in its greater size, its more fixed position, and its sacculated form. The large intestine, in its course, describes an arch, which surrounds the convolutions of the small intestine. It commences in the right iliac fossa, in a dilated part, the cæcum. It ascends through the right lumbar and hypochondriac regions to the under surface of the liver; passes transversely across the abdomen, on the confines of the epigastric and umbilical regions, to the left hypochondriac region; descends through the left lumbar region to the left iliac fossa, where it becomes convoluted, and forms the sigmoid flexure; finally, it enters the pelvis, and descends along its posterior wall to the anus. The large intestine is divided into the cæcum, colon, and rectum.

The Cæcum (cæcus, blind) (Fig. 444) is the large blind pouch, or cul-de-sac, in which the large intestine commences. It is the most dilated part of the tube,

Fig. 444.—The Cæcum and Colon laid open to show the Ileo-Cæcal Valve.

Measuring about two and a half inches, both in its vertical and transverse diameters. It is situated in the right iliac fossa, immediately behind the anterior abdominal wall, being retained in its place by the peritoneum, which passes over its anterior surface and sides; its posterior surface being connected by loose
areolar tissue with the iliac fascia. Occasionally, it is almost completely surrounded by peritoneum, which forms a distinct fold, the mesocolon connecting its back part with the iliac fossa. When this fold exists, the cæcum obtains considerable freedom of movement. Attached to its lower and back part is the appendix vermiciformis, a long, narrow, worm-shaped tube, the rudiment of the lengthened cæcum found in all the mammals, except the orang-oung and wombat. The appendix varies from three to six inches in length, its average diameter being about equal to that of a goosequill. It is usually directed upwards and inwards behind the cæcum, coiled upon itself, and terminates in a blunt point, being retained in its position by a fold of peritoneum, which sometimes forms a mesentery for it. Its canal is small, and communicates with the cæcum by an orifice, which is sometimes guarded with an incomplete valve. Its coats are thick, and its mucous lining furnished with a large number of solitary glands.

Fig. 445.—Diagram of the relations of the Large Intestine and Kidney from behind. The parts uncovered by Peritoneum are shown unshaded.

Ileo-cæcal Valve. The lower end of the ileum terminates at the inner and back part of the large intestine, opposite the junction of the cæcum with the colon. At this point the mucous membrane forms two valvular folds, which project into the large intestine, and are separated from each other by a narrow elongated aperture. This is the ileo-cæcal valve (valvula Bauhinii). Each fold is semilunar in form. The upper one, nearly horizontal in direction, is attached by its convex border to the point of junction of the ileum with the colon; the lower segment, to the point of junction of the ileum with the cæcum. Their free concave margins project into the intestine, separated from one another by a narrow slit-like aperture, directed transversely. At each end of this aperture the two segments of the valve coalesce, and are continued as a narrow membranous ridge around the canal of the intestine for a short distance, forming
the frema, or retinaula of the valve. The left end of this aperture is rounded; the right end is narrow and pointed.

Each segment of the valve is formed by a reduplication of the mucous membrane and of the circular muscular fibres of the intestine, the longitudinal fibres and peritoneum being continued uninterruptedly across from one intestine to the other. When these are divided or removed, the ileum may be drawn outwards, and all traces of the valve will be lost, the ileum appearing to open into the large intestine by a funnel-shaped orifice of large size.

The surface of each segment of the valve directed towards the ileum is covered with villi, and presents the characteristic structure of the mucous membrane of the small intestine; whilst that turned towards the large intestine is destitute of villi, and marked with the orifices of the numerous tubuli peculiar to the membrane in the large intestine. These differences in structure continue as far as the free margin of the valve.

When the cecum is distended, the margins of the opening are approximated, so as to prevent any reflux into the ileum.

The colon is divided into four parts: the ascending, transverse, descending, and the sigmoid flexure.

The ascending colon is smaller than the cecum. It passes upwards from the right iliac fossa to the under surface of the liver, on the right of the gall-bladder, where it bends abruptly inwards to the left, forming the hepatic flexure. It is retained in contact with the posterior wall of the abdomen by the peritoneum, which covers its anterior surface and sides, its posterior surface being connected by loose areolar tissue with the Quadratus lumborum and right kidney (Figs. 445, 446); sometimes the peritoneum almost completely invests it, and forms a distinct but narrow mesocolon. It is in relation, in front, with the convolutions of the ileum and the abdominal parietes; behind, it lies on the Quadratus lumborum muscle and right kidney.

The transverse colon, the longest part of the large intestine, passes transversely from right to left across the abdomen, opposite the confines of the epigastric and umbilical zones, into the left hypochondriac region, where it curves downwards beneath the lower end of the spleen, forming the splenic flexure. In its course it describes an arch, the concavity of which is directed backwards towards the vertebral column, hence the name, transverse arch of the colon. This is the most movable part of the colon, being almost completely invested by peritoneum, and connected to the spine behind by a large and wide duplication of that membrane, the transverse mesocolon. It is in relation, by its upper surface, with the liver and gall-bladder, the great curvature of the stomach, and the lower end of the spleen; by its under surface, with the small intestines; by its anterior surface, with the anterior layers of the great omentum and the abdominal parietes; by its posterior surface, with the transverse mesocolon.

The descending colon passes almost vertically downwards through the left hypochondriac and lumbar regions to the upper part of the left iliac fossa, where it terminates in the sigmoid flexure. It is retained in position by the peritoneum, which covers its anterior surface and sides, its posterior surface being connected by areolar tissue with the left crus of the Diaphragm, the left kidney, and the Quadratus lumborum (Figs. 445, 446). It is smaller in calibre and more deeply placed than the ascending colon.

The sigmoid flexure is the narrowest part of the colon; it is situated in the left iliac fossa, commencing from the termination of the descending colon, at the margin of the crest of the ilium, and ending in the rectum, opposite the left sacro-iliaic symphysis. It curves in the first place upwards, and then descends vertically, and to one or the other side, like the letter S—hence its name. It is retained in its place by a loose fold of peritoneum, the sigmoid mesocolon. It is in relation, in front, with the small intestines and abdominal parietes; behind, with the iliac fossa.
The Rectum is the terminal part of the large intestine, and extends from the sigmoid flexure to the anus; it varies in length from six to eight inches, and has received its name from being less flexuous than any other part of the intestinal canal. It commences opposite the left sacro-iliac symphysis, passes obliquely downwards from left to right to the middle of the sacrum, forming a gentle curve to the right side; then, regaining the middle line, it descends in front of the lower part of the sacrum and coccyx, and, near the extremity of the latter bone, inclines backwards to terminate at the anus, being curved both in the lateral and antero-posterior directions. The rectum is, therefore, not straight, the upper part being directed obliquely from the left side to the median line, the middle portion being curved in the direction of the hollow of the sacrum and coccyx, and the lower portion presenting a short curve in the opposite direction. The rectum is cylindrical, not sacculated like the rest of the large intestine; it is narrower at its upper part than the sigmoid flexure, gradually increases in size as it descends, and immediately above the anus presents a considerable dilatation, capable of acquiring an enormous size. The rectum is divided into three portions: upper, middle, and lower.

The upper portion, which includes about half the length of the tube, extends obliquely from the left sacro-iliac symphysis to the middle of the third piece of the sacrum. It is almost completely surrounded by peritoneum, and connected to the sacrum behind by a duplicature of that membrane, the mesorectum. It is in relation behind with the Pyriformis muscle, the sacral plexus of nerves, and the branches of the internal iliac artery of the left side, which separate it
from the sacrum and sacro-iliac symphysis; in front it is separated, in the male, from the posterior surface of the bladder; in the female, from the posterior surface of the uterus, and its appendages, by some convolutions of the small intestine.

The middle portion of the rectum is about three inches in length, and extends as far as the tip of the coccyx. It is closely connected to the concavity of the sacrum, and covered by peritoneum only on the upper part of its anterior surface. It is in relation, in front, in the male, with the triangular portion of the base of the bladder, the vesiculae seminales, and vasa deferentia; more anteriorly, with the under surface of the prostate. In the female, it is adherent to the posterior wall of the vagina.

The lower portion is about an inch or an inch and a half in length; it curves backwards at the fore part of the prostate gland, and terminates at the anus. This portion of the intestine receives no peritoneal covering. It is invested by the Internal sphincter, supported by the Levatores ani muscles, and surrounded at its termination by the External sphincter. In the male, it is separated from the membranous portion and bulb of the urethra by a triangular space; and in the female, a similar space intervenes between it and the vagina. This space forms by its base the perineum.

Structure. The large intestine has four coats, serous, muscular, cellular, and mucous.

The serous coat is derived from the peritoneum, and invests the different portions of the large intestine to a variable extent. The cæcum is covered only on its anterior surface and sides; more rarely, it is almost completely invested, being held in its position by a duplicature, the meso-cæcum. The ascending and descending colon are usually covered only in front. The transverse colon is almost completely invested, the parts corresponding to the attachment of the great omentum and transverse mesocolon being alone excepted. The sigmoid flexure is nearly completely surrounded, the point corresponding to the attachment of the sigmoid mesocolon being excepted. The upper part of the rectum is almost completely invested by the peritoneum; the middle portion is covered only on its anterior surface; and the lower portion is entirely devoid of any serous covering. In the course of the colon, and upper part of the rectum, the peritoneal coat is thrown into a number of small pouches filled with fat, called appendices epiploicae. They are chiefly appended to the transverse colon.

The muscular coat consists of an external longitudinal and an internal circular layer of muscular fibres.

The longitudinal fibres are not found as a uniform layer over the whole surface of the large intestine. In the cæcum and colon, they are especially collected into three flat longitudinal bands, each being about half an inch in width. These bands commence at the attachment of the appendix vermiformis to the cæcum; one, the posterior, is placed along the attached border of the intestine; the anterior band, the largest, becomes inferior along the arch of the colon, where it corresponds to the attachment of the great omentum, but is in front in the ascending and descending colon and sigmoid flexure; the third, or lateral band, is found on the inner side of the ascending and descending colon, and on the under border of the transverse colon. These bands are nearly one-half shorter than the other parts of the intestine, and serve to produce the sacculi which are characteristic of the cæcum and colon; accordingly, when they are dissected off, the tube can be lengthened, and its sacculated character becomes lost. In the sigmoid flexure, the longitudinal fibres become more scattered, but upon its lower part, and round the rectum, they spread out, and form a thick uniform layer.

The circular fibres form a thin layer over the cæcum and colon, being especially accumulated in the intervals between the sacculi; in the rectum they form a thick layer, especially at its lower end, where they become numerous, and form the Internal sphincter.
The cellular coat connects the muscular and mucous layers closely together.

The mucous membrane, in the caecum and colon, is pale, and of a grayish or pale yellow color. It is quite smooth, destitute of villi, and raised into numerous crescentic folds, which correspond to the intervals between the sacculi. In the rectum it is thicker, of a darker color, more vascular, and connected loosely to the muscular coat as in the oesophagus. When the lower part of the rectum is contracted, its mucous membrane is thrown into a number of folds, some of which, near the anus, are longitudinal in direction, and are effaced by the distension of the gut. Besides these, there are certain permanent folds, of a semilunar shape, described by Mr. Houston.¹ They are usually three in number: sometimes a fourth is found, and, occasionally, only two are present. One is situated near the commencement of the rectum, on the right side; another extends inwards from the left side of the tube, opposite the middle of the sacrum; the largest and most constant one projects backwards from the fore part of the rectum, opposite the base of the bladder. When a fourth is present, it is situated about an inch above the anus on the back of the rectum. These folds are about half an inch in width, and contain some of the circular fibres of the gut. In the empty state of the intestine they overlap each other, as Mr. Houston remarks, so effectually as to require considerable manoeuvring to conduct a bougie or the finger along the canal of the intestine. Their use seems to be, “to support the weight of fecal matter, and prevent its urging towards the anus, where its presence always excites a sensation demanding its discharge.” The mucous membrane of the large intestine presents for examination epithelium, simple follicles, and solitary glands.

Fig. 447.—Minute Structure of Large Intestine.

The epithelium is of the columnar kind.

The simple follicles are minute tubular prolongations of the mucous membrane, arranged perpendicularly, side by side, over its entire surface; they are longer, more numerous, and placed in much closer apposition than those of the small intestine; and they open by minute rounded orifices upon the surface, giving it a cribiform appearance.

The solitary glands in the large intestine are most abundant in the caecum and appendix vermiformis; but are irregularly scattered also over the rest of the intestine. They are similar to those of the small intestine.

THE LIVER.

The Liver is a glandular organ of large size, intended mainly for the secretion of the bile, but effecting also important changes in certain constituents of the blood in their passage through the gland. It is situated in the right hypochondriac region, and extends across the epigastrium into the left hypochondrium. It is the largest gland in the body, weighing from three to four pounds (from fifty to sixty ounces avoirdupois). It measures, in its transverse diameter, from ten to twelve inches; from six to seven in its antero-posterior; and is about three inches thick at the back part of the right lobe, which is the thickest part.

Its upper surface is convex, directed upwards and forwards, smooth, covered by peritoneum. It is in relation with the under surface of the Diaphragm; and below, to a small extent, with the abdominal parietes. The surface is divided into two unequal lobes, the right and left, by a fold of peritoneum, the suspensory or broad ligament.

Its under surface is concave, directed downwards and backwards, and in relation with the stomach and duodenum, the hepatic flexure of the colon, and the right kidney and suprarenal capsule. The surface is divided by a longitudinal fissure into a right and left lobe.

The posterior border is rounded and broad, and connected to the Diaphragm by the coronary ligament; it is in relation with the aorta, the vena cava, and the crura of the Diaphragm.

The anterior border is thin and sharp, and marked, opposite the attachment of the broad ligament, by a deep notch. In adult males, this border usually corresponds with the margin of the ribs; but in women and children, it usually projects below the ribs.

The right extremity of the liver is thick and rounded; whilst the left is thin and flattened.

Changes of Position. The student should make himself acquainted with the different circumstances under which the liver changes its position, as they are of importance in determining the existence of enlargement or other disease of the organ.

Its position varies according to the posture of the body; in the upright and sitting posture, it usually recedes behind the ribs. Its position varies, also, with the ascent or descent of the Diaphragm. In a deep inspiration, the liver descends below the ribs; in expiration, it is raised to its ordinary level. Again, in emphysema, where the lungs are distended, and the Diaphragm descends very low, the liver is pushed down; in some other diseases, as phthisis, where the diaphragm is much arched, the liver rises very high up. Pressure from without, as in tight lacing, by compressing the lower part of the chest, displaces the liver considerably, its anterior edge often extending as low as the crest of the ilium; and its convex surface is often, at the same time, deeply indented from pressure of the ribs. Again, its position varies greatly, according to the greater or less distension of the stomach and intestines. When the intestines are empty, the liver descends in the abdomen; but when they are distended, it is pushed upwards. Its relations to surrounding organs may also be changed by the growth of tumors, or by collection of fluid in the thoracic or abdominal cavities.

Ligaments. The ligaments of the liver (Fig. 448) are five in number: four being formed of folds of peritoneum; the fifth, the ligamentum teres, is a round fibrous cord, resulting from the obliteration of the umbilical vein. The ligaments are the longitudinal, two lateral, coronary, and round.

The longitudinal ligament (broad, falciform, or suspensory ligament) is a broad and thin antero-posterior peritoneal fold, falciform in shape, its base being directed forwards, its apex backwards. It is attached by one margin to the under surface of the Diaphragm, and the posterior surface of the sheath of the right Rectus muscle as low down as the umbilicus; by its hepatic margin, it extends from the notch on the anterior margin of the liver, as far back as its posterior border. It consists of two layers of peritoneum closely united together. Its anterior free edge contains the round ligament between its layers.

The lateral ligaments, two in number, right and left, are triangular in shape. They are formed of two layers of peritoneum united, and extend from the sides
of the Diaphragm to the adjacent margins of the posterior border of the organ. The left is the longer of the two, and lies in front of the esophageal opening in the Diaphragm.

The **coronary ligament** connects the posterior border of the liver to the Diaphragm. It is formed by the reflection of the peritoneum with the Diaphragm on to the upper and lower margins of the posterior border of the organ. The coronary ligament consists of two layers, which are continuous on each side with the lateral ligaments; and in front, with the longitudinal ligament. Between the layers, a large oval interspace is left uncovered by peritoneum, and connected to the Diaphragm by a firm areolar tissue. This space is subdivided, near its left extremity, into two parts by a deep notch (sometimes a canal), which lodges the inferior vena cava, and into which open the hepatic veins.

The **round ligament** (Fig. 448) is a fibrous cord resulting from the obliteration of the umbilical vein. It ascends from the umbilicus, in the anterior free margin of the longitudinal ligament, to the notch in the anterior border of the liver, from which it may be traced along the longitudinal fissure on the under surface of the liver, as far back as the inferior vena cava.

**Fissures** (Fig. 449). Five fissures are seen upon the under surface of the liver, which serve to divide it into five lobes. They are the longitudinal fissure, the fissure of the ductus venosus, the transverse fissure, the fissure for the gallbladder, and the fissure for the vena cava.

The **longitudinal fissure** is a deep groove, which extends from the notch on the anterior margin of the liver to the posterior border of the organ. It separates the right and left lobes; the transverse fissure joins it, at right angles, about one-third from its posterior extremity, and divides it into two parts. The anterior half is called the **umbilical fissure**; it is deeper than the posterior part, and lodges the umbilical vein in the fetus, or its remains (the round ligament) in the adult. This fissure is often partially bridged over by a prolongation of the hepatic substance, the **pons hepatitis**.

The **fissure of the ductus venosus** is the back part of the longitudinal fissure; it is shorter and shallower than the anterior portion. It lodges in the fetus the ductus venosus, and in the adult a slender fibrous cord, the obliterated remains of that vessel.
THE LIVER.

The \textit{transverse} or \textit{portal fissure} is a short but deep fissure, about two inches in length, extending transversely across the under surface of the right lobe, nearer to its posterior than its anterior border. It joins, nearly at right angles, with the longitudinal fissure. By the older anatomists this fissure was considered the \textit{gateway} (\textit{porta}) of the liver; hence the large vein which enters at this point was called the \textit{portal vein}. Besides this vein, the fissure transmits the hepatic artery and nerves, and the hepatic duct and lymphatics. At their entrance into the fissure, the hepatic duct lies in front to the right, the hepatic artery to the left, and the portal vein behind and between (Fig 445).

Fig. 449.—The Liver. Under Surface.

The \textit{fissure for the gall-bladder (fossa cystis fellea)} is a shallow, oblong fossa, placed on the under surface of the right lobe, parallel with the longitudinal fissure. It extends from the anterior free margin of the liver, which is occasionally notched for its reception, to near the right extremity of the transverse fissure.

The \textit{fissure for the vena cava} is a short, deep fissure, occasionally a complete canal, which extends obliquely upwards from a little behind the right extremity of the transverse fissure to the posterior border of that organ, where it joins the fissure for the ductus venosus. On slitting open the inferior vena cava which is contained in it, a deep fossa is seen, at the bottom of which the hepatic veins communicate with this vessel. This fissure is separated from the transverse fissure by the lobus caudatus, and from the longitudinal fissure by the lobulus Spigelii.

\textbf{LOBES.} The lobes of the liver, like the ligaments and fissures, are five in number: the right lobe, the left lobe, the lobus quadratus, the lobulus Spigelii, and the lobus caudatus.

The \textit{right lobe} is much larger than the left; the proportion between them being as six to one. It occupies the right hypochondrium, and is separated from the left lobe, on its upper surface, by the longitudinal ligament; on its under surface, by the longitudinal fissure; and in front by a deep notch. It is of a quadrilateral form, its under surface being marked by three fissures: the transverse fissure, the fissure for the gall-bladder, and the fissure for the inferior vena cava; and by two shallow impressions, one in front \textit{(impressio colica)}, for the hepatic flexure of the colon; and one behind \textit{(impressio renalis)}, for the right kidney and suprarenal capsule.

The \textit{left lobe} is smaller and more flattened than the right. It is situated in the
epigastric and left hypochondriac regions, sometimes extending as far as the upper border of the spleen. Its upper surface is convex; its under concave surface rests upon the front of the stomach; and its posterior border is in relation with the cardiac orifice of the stomach.

The lobus quadratus, or square lobe, is situated on the under surface of the right lobe, bounded in front by the free surface of the liver; behind, by the transverse fissure; on the right, by the fissure for the gall-bladder; and, on the left, by the umbilical fissure.

The lobulus Spigelii projects from the back part of the under surface of the right lobe. It is bounded, in front, by the transverse fissure; on the right, by the fissure for the vena cava; and, on the left, by the fissure for the ductus venosus.

The lobus caudatus, or tailed lobe, is a small elevation of the hepatic substance, extending obliquely outwards, from the base of the lobulus Spigelii, to the under surface of the right lobe. It separates the right extremity of the transverse fissure from the commencement of the fissure for the inferior vena cava.

Vessels. The vessels connected with the liver are also five in number: they are the hepatic artery, the portal vein, the hepatic vein, the hepatic duct, and the lymphatics.

The hepatic artery, portal vein, and hepatic duct, accompanied by numerous lymphatics and nerves, ascend to the transverse fissure, between the layers of the gastro-hepatic omentum; the hepatic duct lying to the right, the hepatic artery to the left, and the portal vein behind the other two. They are enveloped in a loose areolar tissue, the capsule of Glisson, which accompanies the vessels in their course through the portal canals, in the anterior of the organ.

The hepatic veins convey the blood from the liver. They commence at the circumference of the organ, and proceed towards the deep fossa in its posterior border, where they terminate, by two large and several smaller branches, in the inferior vena cava.

The hepatic veins have no cellular investment; consequently, their parietes are adherent to the walls of the canals through which they run; so that, on a section of the organ, these veins remain widely open and solitary, and may be easily distinguished from the branches of the portal vein, which are more or less collapsed, and always accompanied by an artery and duct.

The lymphatics are large and numerous, consisting of a deep and superficial set. They have been already described.

Nerves. The nerves of the liver are derived from the hepatic plexus of the sympathetic, from the pneumogastric nerves, especially the left, and from the right phrenic.

Structure. The substance of the liver is composed of lobules, held together by an extremely fine areolar tissue, and of the ramifications of the portal vein, hepatic duct, hepatic artery, hepatic veins, lymphatics, and nerves; the whole being invested by a fibrous and a serous coat.

The serous coat is derived from the peritoneum, and invests the entire surface of the organ, excepting at the attachment of its various ligaments, and at the bottom of the different fissures, where it is deficient. It is intimately adherent to the fibrous coat.

The fibrous coat lies beneath the serous investment, and covers the entire surface of the organ. It is difficult of demonstration, excepting where the serous coat is deficient. At the transverse fissure, it is continuous with the capsule of Glisson; and, on the surface of the organ, with the areolar tissue separating the lobules.

The lobules form the chief mass of the hepatic substance; they may be seen either on the surface of the organ, or by making a section through the gland. They are small granular bodies, about the size of a millet-seed, measuring from one-twentieth to one-tenth of an inch in diameter. If divided longitudinally, they have a foliated, and, if transversely, a polygonal, outline. The bases of the
lobules are clustered round the smallest branches (sublobular) of the hepatic veins, to which each is connected by means of a small branch, which issues from the centre of the lobule (intralobular). The remaining part of the surface of each lobule is imperfectly isolated from the surrounding lobules, by a thin stratum of areolar tissue, and by the smaller vessels and ducts.

If one of the hepatic veins be laid open, the bases of the lobules may be seen through the thin wall of the vein, on which they rest, arranged in the form of a tesselated pavement, the centre of each polygonal space presenting a minute aperture, the mouth of a sublobular vein.

Each lobule is composed of a mass of cells; of a plexus of biliary ducts; of a venous plexus, formed by branches of the portal vein; of a radicle of an hepatic vein (intralobular); of minute arteries; and probably, of nerves and lymphatics.

The hepatic cells form the chief mass of the substance of a lobule, and lie in the interspaces of the capillary plexus, being probably contained in a tubular network, which according to some authors forms the origin of the biliary ducts.

The portal vein carries the blood to the liver, from which the bile is secreted; the hepatic vein carries the superfluous blood from the liver, and the bile duct carries the bile secreted by the hepatic cells.

The course of the circulation in the liver is best traced in the natural direction, viz., from the vena porta to the hepatic vein, which is a branch of the vena cava. The portal vein (Fig. 451) gives off small branches, which, as they ramify between the lobules of the liver, are called the interlobular veins, and form a plexus surrounding the lobules. Branches from this plexus enter the substance of the lobule, forming a capillary network inside it, the intralobular capillary plexus. These veins unite into one which issues from the lobule, the intralobular vein, forming as it were the stalk or axis of the lobule. The intralobular veins run into small branches—sublobular—around which therefore the lobules are clustered, and which are the radicles of the hepatic veins. These veins (as mentioned at p. 584) finally converge to form three large trunks which open into the vena cava, while that vessel is situated in the fissure appropriated to it at the back of the liver.

The hepatic cells are of a more or less spheroidal form; but may be rounded, flattened, or many-sided, from mutual compression. They vary in size from the 1/10 of an inch in diameter, and contain a distinct nucleus in the interior, or
sometimes two. In the nucleus is a highly refracting nucleolus, with granules. The cell-contents are viscid, and contain yellow particles, the coloring matter of the bile, and oil-globules. The cells adhere together by the surfaces, so as to form rows, which radiate from the centre towards the circumference of the lobule. These cells are the chief agents in the secretion of the bile.

Fig. 452.

Horizontal section of liver (dog). The vasa portae has been injected. a, Trunk of interlobular vein. b, Trunk of interlobular vein. A dense system of capillary vessels is between them.

Origin of the biliary ducts. Three views have prevailed in recent times as to the origin of the biliary ducts. 1. That they commence external to the lobules in an interlobular plexus, the bile being secreted by the hepatic cells within the lobule, and passing into the radicles of the ducts by osmosis from those cells. This was Kiernan’s view. 2. The other two views coincide in the belief that the radicles of the biliary ducts commence within the lobules by a plexus of intralobular channels, but they differ as to the relation between these channels and the hepatic cells: the one, which we will call Beale’s view, teaches that the hepatic cells are contained within the intralobular biliary channels; 3. The other view, which we may call Hering’s, teaches that the intralobular biliary channels lie between the hepatic cells. This anatomist has given what appears the most intelligible description of the minute anatomy of the liver, and one which really coincides in many essential points with the original description of Kiernan, as well as with that of Beale. Hering describes the liver cells as lying packed together in the channels which are formed between the meshes of the capillary bloodvessels, but separated from the wall of the capillary by a clear space. In the centre of the line which forms the base of a pair of cells (or more rarely in the human subject in the angle formed by the meeting of several cells) a minute channel is formed, which is the radicle of the bile duct, the intralobular biliary channel, much smaller than the capillary or the hepatic cells. Kiernan’s view would confine the name of biliary ducts to the bile passages external to the lobule (intralobular), while Beale’s view would regard the whole intercapillary channel, bile cells and all, as an intralobular biliary passage. Hering’s view is in most respects the same as Ohrzonszczewsky’s, who first succeeded in demonstrating these intralobular (or intercellular) biliary passages by a kind of auto-injection in living animals—i.e., by injecting coloring

---

1 Kiernan, however, admitted that possibly the biliary channels might be traced some short distance into the lobules, whilst others (Henle, etc.) believed that they originate entirely external to the lobules.
matter into the blood of the living animal, when the coloring matter may be
found in the bile-ducts. The ducts form a plexus (interlobular) between the
lobules, and the interlobular branches unite and form vaginal branches, which lie in the
portal canals, with branches of the portal vein and hepatic duct. The ducts finally form
two large trunks, which leave the liver at the transverse fissure, and the union of these
is the hepatic duct.

The Portal vein, on entering the liver at the transverse fissure, divides into primary
branches, which are contained in the portal canals, together with branches of the hepatic
artery and duct, and the nerves and lymphatics. In the larger portal canals, the
vessels are separated from the paries, and joined to each other, by a loose cellular web,
the capsule of Glisson. The veins, as they lie in the portal canals, give off vaginal
branches, which form a plexus (vaginal plexus) in Glisson’s capsule. From this
plexus, and from the portal vein itself, the interlobular veins are given off.

The Hepatic artery appears destined chiefly for the nutrition of the coats of the large
vessels, the ducts, and the investing membranes of the liver. It enters the liver at the
transverse fissure, with the portal vein and hepatic duct, and ramifies with these
vessels through the portal canals. It gives off vaginal branches, which ramify in the
capsule of Glisson; and other branches, which are distributed to the coats of the vena portae
and hepatic duct. From the vaginal plexus, interlobular branches are given off, which
ramify through the interlobular fissures, a few branches being distributed to the lobules.
Kiernan supposes that the branches of the hepatic artery terminate in a capillary plexus,
which communicates with the branches of the vena portae.

The Hepatic veins commence in the interior of each lobule by a plexus, the branches of
which converge to form the intralobular vein.

The Intralobular vein passes through the centre of the lobule, and leaves it at its base
to terminate in a sublobular vein.

The sublobular veins unite with neighboring branches to form larger veins; and these
join to form the large hepatic trunks, which terminate in the vena cava.

GALL-BLADDER.

The Gall-bladder is the reservoir for the bile; it is a conical or pear-shaped
membranous sac, lodged in a fossa on the under surface of the right lobe of the
liver, and extending from near the right extremity of the transverse fissure to
the anterior free margin of the organ. It is about four inches in length, one inch in breadth at its widest part, and holds from eight to ten drachms. It is divided into a fundus, body, and neck. The fundus, or broad extremity, is directed downwards, forwards, and to the right, and occasionally projects from the anterior border of the liver; the body and neck are directed upwards and backwards to the left. The gall-bladder is held in its position by the peritoneum, which, in the majority of cases, passes over its under surface, but the serous membrane occasionally invests the gall-bladder, which then is connected to the liver by a kind of mesentery.

**Relations.** The body of the gall-bladder is in relation, by its upper surface, with the liver, to which it is connected by areolar tissue and vessels; by its under surface, with the first portion of the duodenum, occasionally the pyloric end of the stomach, and the hepatic flexure of the colon. The fundus is completely invested by peritoneum; it is in relation, in front, with the abdominal parietes, immediately below the tenth costal cartilage; behind, with the transverse arch of the colon. The neck is narrow, and curves upon itself like the italic letter $f$; at its point of connection with the body and with the cystic duct, it presents a well-marked constriction.

When the gall-bladder is distended with bile or calculi, the fundus may be felt through the abdominal parietes, especially in an emaciated subject: the relations of this sac will also serve to explain the occasional occurrence of abdominal biliary fistula, through which biliary calculi may pass out, and of the passage of calculi from the gall-bladder into the stomach, duodenum, or colon, which occasionally happens.

**Structure.** The gall-bladder consists of three coats: serous, fibrous and muscular, and mucous.

The external or serous coat is derived from the peritoneum; it completely invests the fundus, but covers the body and neck only on their under surface.

The middle or fibrous coat is a thin but strong fibrous layer, which forms the framework of the sac, consisting of dense fibres which interlace in all directions. Plain muscular fibres are also found in this coat, disposed chiefly in a longitudinal direction, a few running transversely.

The internal or mucous coat is loosely connected with the fibrous layer. It is generally tinged with a yellowish-brown color, and is everywhere elevated into minute ruffles, by the union of which numerous meshes are formed; the depressed intervening spaces having a polygonal outline. The meshes are smaller at the fundus and neck, being most developed about the centre of the sac. Opposite the neck of the gall-bladder, the mucous membrane projects inwards so as to form a large valvular fold.

The mucous membrane is covered with columnar epithelium, and secretes an abundance of thick viscid mucus; it is continuous through the hepatic duct with the mucous membrane lining the ducts of the liver, and through the ductus communis choledochus with the mucous membrane of the alimentary canal.

The Biliary Ducts are, the hepatic, the cystic, and the ductus communis choledochus.

The hepatic duct is formed of two trunks of nearly equal size, which issue from the liver at the transverse fissure, one from the right, the other from the left lobe; these unite, and pass downwards and to the right for about an inch and a half, to join at an acute angle with the cystic duct, and so form the ductus communis choledochus.

The cystic duct, the smallest of the three biliary ducts, is about an inch in length. It passes obliquely downwards and to the left from the neck of the gall-bladder, and joins the hepatic duct to form the common duct. It lies in the gastro-hepatic omentum, in front of the vena cava, the cystic artery lying to its left side. The mucous membrane lining its interior is thrown into a series of crescentic folds, from five to twelve in number, which project into the duct in regular succession, and are directed obliquely round the tube, presenting much the appearance of a continuous spiral valve. They exist only in the human
subject. When the duct has been distended, the interspaces between the folds are dilated, so as to give to its exterior a sacculated appearance.

The *ductus communis choledochus*, the largest of the three, is the common excretory duct of the liver and gall-bladder. It is about three inches in length, of the diameter of a goose-quill, and formed by the junction of the cystic and hepatic ducts. It descends along the right border of the lesser omentum, behind

![Diagram](image)

the first portion of the duodenum, in front of the vena porta, and to the right of the hepatic artery; it then passes between the pancreas and descending portion of the duodenum, and, running for a short distance along the right side of the pancreatic duct, near its termination, passes with it obliquely between the mucous and muscular coats, the two opening by the common orifice upon the summit of a papilla, situated at the inner side of the descending portion of the duodenum, a little below its middle.

*Structure.* The coats of the biliary ducts are, an external or fibrous, and an internal or mucous. The fibrous coat is composed of a strong areolar fibrous tissue. The mucous coat is continuous with the lining membrane of the hepatic ducts and gall-bladder, and also with that of the duodenum. It is provided with numerous glands, the orifices of which are scattered irregularly in the larger ducts, but in the smaller hepatic ducts are disposed in two longitudinal rows, one on each side of the vessel. These glands are of two kinds. Some are ramified tubes, which occasionally anastomose, and from the sides of which saccular dilatations are given off; others are small clustered cellular glands, which open either separately into the hepatic duct, or into the ducts of the tubular glands.

**The Pancreas.**

*Dissection.* The pancreas may be exposed for dissection in three different ways: 1. By raising the liver, drawing down the stomach, and tearing through the gastro-hepatic omentum and the ascending layer of the transverse meso-colon. 2. By raising the stomach, the arch of the colon, and great omentum, and then dividing the inferior layer of the transverse meso-colon. 3. By dividing the two layers of peritoneum, which descend from the great curvature of the stomach to form the great omentum; turning the stomach upwards, and then cutting through the ascending layer of the transverse meso-colon. (See Fig. 433, p. 764).
The Pancreas (πάσης, all flesh) is a conglomerate gland, analogous in its structure to the salivary glands. In shape it is transversely oblong, flattened from before backwards, and bears some resemblance to a dog's tongue, its right extremity being broad, and presenting a sort of angular bend from above downwards, called the head, whilst its left extremity gradually tapers to form the tail, the intermediate portion being called the body. It is situated transversely across the posterior wall of the abdomen, at the back of the epigastric and both hypochondriac regions. Its length varies from six to eight inches, its breadth is an inch and a half, and its thickness from half an inch to an inch, being greater at its right extremity and along its upper border. Its weight varies from two to three and a half ounces, but it may reach six ounces.

The right extremity or head of the pancreas (Fig. 456) is curved upon itself from above downwards, and is embraced by the concavity of the duodenum.

The common bile-duct descends behind, between the duodenum and pancreas; and the pancreatico-duodenal artery descends in front between the same parts. On the posterior aspect of the pancreas is a lobular fold of the gland, which passes transversely to the left, behind the superior mesenteric vessels, forming the back part of the canal in which they are contained. It is sometimes detached from the rest of the gland, and is called the lesser pancreas.

The lesser end or tail of the pancreas is narrow; it extends to the left as far as the spleen, and is placed over the left kidney and suprarenal capsule.

The body of the pancreas is convex in front, and covered by the ascending layer of the transverse meso-colon and the posterior surface of the stomach.

The posterior surface is concave, and has the following structures interposed between it and the first lumbar vertebra: the superior mesenteric artery and vein, the commencement of the vena portae, the vena cava, the aorta, the left kidney, the suprarenal capsule, and the corresponding renal vessels.

The upper border is thick, and has resting upon it, near its centre, the cælic axis; the splenic artery and vein are lodged in a deep groove or canal in this border; and to the right, the first part of the duodenum and the hepatic artery are in relation with it.

The lower border, thinner than the upper, is separated from the transverse
portion of the duodenum by the superior mesenteric artery and vein: to the
left of these the inferior mesenteric vein ascends behind the pancreas to join the
splenic vein.

The pancreatic duct, called the canal of Wirsung from its discoverer, extends
transversely from left to right through the substance of the pancreas, nearer to
its lower than its upper border, and lying nearer its anterior than its posterior
surface. In order to expose it, the superficial portion of the gland must be
removed. Traced backwards, it is found to commence by an orifice common to
it and the ductus communis choledochus, upon the summit of an elevated papilla,
situated at the inner side of the descending portion of the duodenum, a little
below its middle: from this papilla it passes very obliquely through the mucous
and muscular coats, separates itself from the ductus communis choledochus, and,
ascending slightly, runs from right to left through the middle of the gland,
giving off numerous branches, which commence in its lobules.

Sometimes the pancreatic duct and ductus communis choledochus open separa-
ately into the duodenum. The excretory duct of the lesser pancreas is called
the ductus pancreaticus minor; it opens into the main duct near the duodenum,
and sometimes separately into that intestine, at a distance of an inch or more
from the termination of the principal duct.

The pancreatic duct, near the duodenum, is about the size of an ordinary
quill; its walls are thin, consisting of two coats, an external fibrous and an in-
ternal mucous; the latter is thin, smooth, and furnished, near its termination,
with a few scattered follicles.

Sometimes the pancreatic duct is double, up to its point of entrance into the
duodenum.

In structure, the pancreas closely resembles the salivary glands; but it is
looser and softer in its texture. The fluid secreted by it is almost identical with
saliva.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries of the pancreas are derived from the splenic,
the pancreato-duodenal branch of the hepatic, and the superior mesenteric.
Its veins open into the splenic and superior mesenteric veins. Its lymphatics
terminate in the lumbar glands. Its nerves are filaments from the splenic
plexus.

THE SPLEEN.

The Spleen is usually classified, together with the thyroid, thymus, and
suprarenal capsules, as one of the ductless, or blood glands. It possesses no
excretory duct. It is of an oblong flattened form, soft, of very brittle consist-
ence, highly vascular, of a dark bluish-red color; and situated in the left hypo-
chondriac region, embracing the cardiac end of the stomach. It is invested by
peritoneum, and connected with the stomach by the gastro-splenic omentum.

Relation. The external surface is convex, smooth, and in relation with the
under surface of the Diaphragm, which separates it from the ninth, tenth, and
eleventh ribs of the left side. The internal surface is slightly concave, and
divided by a vertical fissure, the hilum, into an anterior or larger, and a poste-
rior or smaller portion. The hilum is pierced by several irregular apertures,
for the entrance and exit of vessels and nerves. At the margins of the hilum,
the two layers of peritoneum are reflected from the surface of the spleen on to
the cardiac end of the stomach, forming the gastro-splenic omentum, which con-
tains between its layers the splenic vessels and nerves, and the vasa brevia.
The internal surface is in relation, in front, with the great end of the stomach;
below, with the tail of the pancreas; and behind, with the left crus of the Dia-
phragm, and corresponding suprarenal capsule. The upper end, thick and
rounded, is in relation with the Diaphragm, to which it is connected by a fold
of peritoneum, the suspensory ligament. The lower end is pointed; it is in
relation with the left extremity of the transverse arch of the colon. The
anterior margin is free, rounded, and often notched, especially below. The posterior margin is rounded, and lies in relation with the left kidney, to which it is connected by loose areolar tissue.

The spleen is held in its position by two folds of peritoneum: one, the gastro-splenic omentum, connects it with the stomach; and the other, the suspensory ligament, with the under surface of the Diaphragm.

Fig. 457.—Transverse Section of the Spleen, showing the Trabecular Tissue and the Splenic Vein and its Branches.

The size and weight of the spleen are liable to very extreme variations at different periods of life, in different individuals, and in the same individual under different conditions. In the adult, in whom it attains its greatest size, it is usually above five inches in length, three or four inches in breadth, and an inch or an inch and a half in thickness, and weighs about seven ounces. At birth, its weight, in proportion to the entire body, is almost equal to what is observed in the adult, being as 1 to 850; whilst in the adult it varies from 1 to 320 and 400. In old age, the organ not only decreases in weight, but decreases considerably in proportion to the entire body, being as 1 to 700. The size of the spleen is increased during and after digestion, and varies considerably according to the state of nutrition of the body, being large in highly-fed, and small in starved animals. In intermittent and other fevers it becomes much enlarged, weighing occasionally from 18 to 20 pounds.

Structure. The spleen is invested by two coats: an external serous, and an internal fibrous elastic coat.

The external, or serous coat, is derived from the peritoneum; it is thin, smooth, and in the human subject intimately adherent to the fibrous elastic coat. It invests almost the entire organ; being reflected from it, at the hilum, on to the great end of the stomach, and at the upper end of the organ on to the Diaphragm.

The fibrous elastic coat forms the framework of the spleen. It invests the exterior of the organ, and at the hilum is reflected inwards upon the vessels in the form of vaginae or sheaths. From these sheaths, as well as from the inner surface of the fibro-elastic coat, numerous small fibrous bands, trabeculae (Fig. 457), are given off in all directions; these uniting, constitute the areolar framework of the spleen. The proper coat, the sheaths of the vessels and the trabeculae, consist of a dense mesh of white and yellow elastic fibrous tissues, the
STRUCTURE OF THE SPLEEN.

latter considerably predominating. It is owing to the presence of this tissue, that the spleen possesses a considerable amount of elasticity, to allow of the very considerable variations in size that it presents under certain circumstances. In some of the mammalia, in addition to the usual constituents of this tunic, there are found numerous pale, flattened, spindle-shaped, nucleated fibres, like unstriped muscular fibres. It is probably owing to this structure, that the spleen possesses, when acted upon by the galvanic current, faint traces of contractility.

The proper substance of the spleen or spleen pulp is inclosed in the meshes of a fine areolar tissue, composed of branching corpuscles similar to those of the common connective tissue. The spaces formed by the processes of these cells inclose the proper elements of the pulp, which are now to be described, and the radicles of the veins are continuous with those spaces, their walls being prolonged into the processes of the cells. The pulp is a soft mass of a dark reddish-brown color, consisting of colorless and colored elements.

**Fig. 458.—The Malpighian Corpuscles, and their Relation with the Splenic Artery and its Branches.**

The colorless elements consist of granular matter; nuclei, about the size of the red blood-disks, homogeneous or granular in structure; and nucleated vesicles in small numbers. These elements form, probably, one-half or two-thirds of the whole substance of the pulp, filling up the interspaces formed by the partitions of the spleen, and lying in close contact with the walls of the capillary vessels, so as to be readily acted upon by the nutrient fluid which permeates them. Thus in well-nourished animals, they form a large part of the entire bulk of the spleen, whilst they diminish in number, and occasionally are wanting, in starved animals. The application of chemical tests shows that they are essentially a proteine compound.

The colored elements of the pulp consist of red blood-globules and of colored corpuscles, either free, or included in cells. Sometimes, unchanged blood-disks are seen included in a cell; but more frequently the included blood-disks are altered both in form and color. Besides these, numerous deep-red, or reddish-yellow, or black corpuscles and crystals, either single or aggregated in masses,
are seen diffused throughout the pulp-substance: these, in chemical composition, are closely allied to the haematin of the blood.

**Malpighian Corpuscles.** On examining the cut surface of a healthy spleen, a number of small semi-opaque bodies, of gelatinous consistence, are seen disseminated throughout its substance; these are the splenic or Malpighian corpuscles (Fig. 458). They may be seen at all periods of life; but they are more distinct in early than in adult life or old age; and they are much smaller in man than in most mammals. They are of a spherical or ovoid form, vary considerably in size and number, and are of a semi-opaque whitish color. They are appended to the sheaths of the smaller arteries and their branches, presenting a resemblance to the buds of the moss rose. Each consists of a membranous capsule,

Fig. 459.—One of the Splenic Corpuscles, showing its Relations with the Bloodvessels.

composed of fine pale fibres, which interlace in all directions. In man, the capsule is homogeneous in structure, and formed by a prolongation from the sheaths of the small arteries to which the corpuscles are attached. The blood-vessels ramifying on the surface of the corpuscles, consist of the larger ramifications of the arteries to which the sacculus is connected; and also of a delicate capillary plexus, similar to that surrounding the vesicles of other glands. These vesicles have also a close relation with the veins (Fig. 459). The latter vessels, which are of considerable size even at their origin, commence on the surface of each vesicle throughout the whole of its circumference, forming a dense mesh of veins, in which the Malpighian corpuscle is inclosed. It is probable, that from the blood contained in the capillary network, the material is separated which is occasionally stored up in the cavity of the corpuscle; the veins being so placed as to carry off, under certain conditions, those contents to be discharged again into the circulation. Each capsule contains a soft, white, semi-fluid substance, consisting of granular matter, nuclei similar to those found in the pulp, and a few nucleated cells, the composition of which is apparently albuminous. These bodies are very large after digestion is completed, in well-fed animals, and especially in those fed upon albuminous diet. In starved animals, they disappear altogether.
The minute arteries and veins are inclosed in a sheath derived from the capsule of the spleen, and containing, according to some anatomists, unstriped muscular fibres. The layers of this sheath (consisting of white fibrous and elastic tissue) are permeated by lymphoid corpuscles. This lymphoid tissue gives rise to the Malpighian bodies, which are indeed mere localized expansions of the lymphoid sheaths of the arteries in places where the meshes of the network are wider. The sheaths of the veins are derived from the capsule, which forms an elastic tube (containing muscular fibres, according to some authors) around the proper walls of the vessels. W. Müller describes processes from the trabeculae which pass into the sheaths of the veins, and serve to keep them open somewhat as the cerebral sinuses are kept patent by the dura mater.

The splenic artery is remarkable for its large size, in proportion to the size of the organ; and also for its tortuous course. It divides into from four to six branches, which enter the hilum of the organ and ramify throughout its substance (Fig. 460), receiving sheaths from an involution of the external fibrous tunic, the same sheaths also investing the nerves and veins. Each branch runs in the transverse axis of the organ, from within outwards, diminishing in size during its transit, and giving off, in its passage, smaller branches, some of which pass to the anterior, others to the posterior part; these ultimately terminate in the proper substance of the spleen, in small tufts or pencils of capillary vessels, which lie in direct contact with the pulp. Each of the larger branches of the arteries supplies chiefly that region of the organ in which the branch ramifies, having no anastomosis with the majority of the other branches.

The capillaries, supported by the minute trabeculae, traverse the pulp in all directions, and terminate either directly in the veins, or open into lacunar spaces, from which the veins originate.

The veins are of large size, as compared with the size of the organ; and their distribution is limited, like that of the arteries, to the supply of a particular part of the gland; they are much larger and more numerous than the arteries. They originate, 1st, as continuations of the capillaries of the arteries; 2d, by intercellular spaces communicating with each other in the pulp; 3d, by distinct cæcal pouches. By their junction they form four to six branches, which emerge from

---

1 “The parenchyma of the Malpighian bodies is formed of cells and a retiform intermediate substance; the cells agree in their characters with the lymph-corpuscles of the several animals, and they are constantly found in various stages of development.”—W. Müller, in Stricker's "Handbook."
the hilum; and these uniting, form the splenic vein, the largest branch of the vena portae.

The veins are remarkable for their numerous anastomoses, while the arteries hardly anastomose at all.

The lymphatics originate in two ways, i.e., from the sheaths of the arteries and in the trabecula. The former accompany the bloodvessels, the latter pass to the superficial lymphatic plexus which may be seen on the surface of the organ. The two sets communicate in the interior of the organ. They pass through the lymphatic glands at the hilum, and terminate in the thoracic duct.

The nerves are derived from branches of the right and left semilunar ganglia, and right pneumogastric nerve.
The Thorax.

The Thorax is a conical framework, formed partly of bones, and partly of the soft tissues by which they are connected together. It is supported and its back part is formed by the middle, or dorsal, region of the spine. It is narrow above, broad below, flattened before and behind, and somewhat cordiform on a transverse section.

Boundaries. The thorax is bounded in front by the sternum, the six upper costal cartilages, the ribs, and intercostal muscles; at the sides, by the ribs and intercostal muscles; and behind, by the same structures and the dorsal portion of the vertebral column.

The superior opening of the thorax is bounded on each side by the first rib; in front, by the upper border of the sternum; and behind, by the first dorsal vertebra. It is broader from side to side than from before backwards; and its direction is backwards and upwards.

The lower opening, or base, is bounded in front by the ensiform cartilage; behind, by the last dorsal vertebra; and on each side by the last rib, the Diaphragm filling in the intervening space. Its direction is obliquely downwards and backwards; so that the cavity of the thorax is much deeper on the posterior than on the anterior wall. It is wider transversely than from before backwards. Its outer surface is convex; but it is more flattened at the centre than at the sides. Its floor is higher on the right than on the left side, corresponding in the dead body to the upper border of the fifth costal cartilage on the right side; and to the corresponding part of the sixth cartilage on the left side.

The parts which pass through the upper opening of the thorax are, from before backwards, the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the remains of the thymus gland, the trachea, oesophagus, thoracic duct, and the longus colli muscles of each side; on the sides, the arteria innominata, the left common carotid and left subclavian arteries, the internal mammary and superior intercostal arteries, the right and left vena innominata, and the inferior thyroid veins, the pneumatic, sympathetic, phrenic, and cardiac nerves, the anterior branch of the first dorsal nerve, and the recurrent laryngeal nerve of the left side. The apex of each lung, covered by the pleura, also projects through this aperture, a little above the margin of the first rib.

The viscera contained in the thorax are, the heart, inclosed in its membranous bag, the pericardium; and the lungs, invested by the pleurae.

The Pericardium.

The Pericardium is a conical membranous sac, in which the heart and the commencement of the great vessels are contained. It is placed behind the sternum, and the cartilages of the third, fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh ribs of the left side, in the interval between the pleurae.

Its apex is directed upwards, and surrounds the great vessels about two inches above their origin from the base of the heart. Its base is attached to the central tendon of the Diaphragm, extending a little further to the left than the right side. In front it is separated from the sternum by the remains of the thymus gland above, and a little loose areolar tissue below; and is covered by the margins of the lungs, especially the left. Behind, it rests upon the bronchi, the oesophagus, and the descending aorta. Laterally, it is covered by the pleura;
THE THORAX.

the phrenic vessels and nerve descending between the two membranes on either side.

The pericardium is a fibro-serous membrane, and consists, therefore, of two layers: an external fibrous, and an internal serous.

The fibrous layer is a strong, dense membrane. Above, it surrounds the great vessels arising from the base of the heart, on which it is continued in the form of tubular prolongations, which are gradually lost upon their external coat; the strongest being that which incloses the aorta. The pericardium may be traced, over these vessels, to become continuous with the deep layer of the cervical fascia. Below, it is attached to the central tendon of the Diaphragm; and, on the left side, to its muscular fibres.

The vessels receiving fibrous prolongations from this membrane are the aorta, the superior vena cava, and the pulmonary arteries and veins. As the inferior

Fig. 461.—Front View of the Thorax. The Ribs and Sternum are represented in Relation to the Lungs, Heart, and other Internal Organs.

vena cava enters the pericardium, through the central tendon of the Diaphragm, it receives no covering from the fibrous layer.

The serous layer invests the heart, and is then reflected on the inner surface of the pericardium. It consists, therefore, of a visceral and a parietal portion. The former invests the surface of the heart, and the commencement of the great vessels, to the extent of two inches from their origin; from these, it is reflected upon the inner surface of the fibrous layer, lining, below, the upper surface of
THE HEART.

the central tendon of the Diaphragm. The serous membrane incloses the aorta and pulmonary artery in a single tube; but it only partially covers the superior and inferior vena cava and the four pulmonary veins. Its inner surface is smooth and glistening, and secretes a thin fluid, which serves to facilitate the movements of the heart.

The arteries of the pericardium are derived from the internal mammary, the bronchial, the oesophageal, and the phrenic.

THE HEART.

The Heart is a hollow muscular organ of a conical form, placed between the lungs, and inclosed in the cavity of the pericardium.

Position. The heart is placed obliquely in the chest: the broad attached end, or base, is directed upwards and backwards to the right, and corresponds to the interval between the fifth and eighth dorsal vertebrae: the apex is directed forwards and to the left, and corresponds to the interspace between the cartilage of the fifth and sixth ribs, one inch to the inner side, and two inches below the left nipple. The heart is placed behind the lower two-thirds of the sternum, and projects further into the left than into the right cavity of the chest, extending from the median line about three inches in the former direction, and only one and a half in the latter. Its upper border would correspond to a line drawn across the sternum, on a level with the upper border of the third costal cartilages; and its lower border, to a line drawn across the lower end of the gladiolus, from the costo-xiphoid articulation of the right side, to the point above mentioned, as the situation of the apex. The lungs cover a part of the heart, and during inspiration, when their borders nearly meet behind the sternum, a thin layer of lung covers the roots of all the large vessels. Hence the custom of making a patient hold his breath whilst examining the sounds of the heart. But a considerable portion of the heart is always uncovered by the lungs where they recede from each other below. This "area of the heart's dulness," as it is commonly called, is said by Mr. Holden¹ to be indicated, roughly, but sufficiently for practical purposes, by a circle one inch in radius, the centre of which is midway between the nipple and the end of the sternum. The anterior surface of the heart is rounded and convex, directed upwards and forwards, and formed chiefly by the right ventricle and part of the left. Its posterior surface is flattened, and rests upon the Diaphragm, and is formed chiefly by the left ventricle. The right border is long, thin, and sharp; the left border short, but thick and round.

Size. The heart, in the adult, measures five inches in length, three inches and a half in breadth in the broadest part, and two inches and a half in thickness. The prevalent weight, in the male, varies from ten to twelve ounces; in the female from eight to ten: its proportions to the body being as 1 to 160 in males; 1 to 149 in females. The heart continues increasing in weight, and also in length, breadth, and thickness, up to an advanced period of life; this increase is more marked in men than in women.

Component parts. The heart is subdivided by a longitudinal muscular septum into two lateral halves, which are named respectively, from their position, right and left; and a transverse constriction divides each half of the organ into two cavities, the upper cavity on each side being called the auricle, the lower the ventricle. The right is the venous side of the heart, receiving into its auricle the dark venous blood from the entire body, by the superior and inferior vena cava, and coronary sinus. From the auricle, the blood passes into the right ventricle, and from the right ventricle, through the pulmonary artery, into the lungs. The blood, arterialized by its passage through the lungs, is returned to the left side of the heart by the pulmonary veins, which open into the left auricle; from the left auricle the blood passes into the left ventricle, and from the left

¹ St. Barth. Hosp. Reports, ii. 208.
ventricle is distributed, by the aorta and its subdivisions, through the entire body. This constitutes the circulation of the blood in the adult.

This division of the heart into four cavities is indicated by grooves upon its surface. The great transverse groove separating the auricles from the ventricles is called the auriculo-ventricular groove. It is deficient, in front, from being crossed by the root of the pulmonary artery, and contains the trunk of the nutrient vessels of the heart. The auricular portion occupies the base of the heart, and is subdivided into two cavities by a medium septum. The two ventricles are also separated into a right and left, by two longitudinal furrows, the interventricular grooves, which are situated one on the anterior, the other on the posterior surface: these extend from the base to the apex of the organ; the former being situated nearer to the left border of the heart, and the latter to the right. It follows, therefore, that the right ventricle forms the greater portion of the anterior surface of the heart, and the left ventricle more of its posterior surface.

Each of these cavities should now be separately examined.

The Right Auricle is a little larger than the left, its walls somewhat thinner, measuring about one line; and its cavity is capable of containing about two ounces. It consists of two parts, a principal cavity, or sinus, and an appendix auriculæ.

Fig. 462.—The Right Auricle and Ventricle laid open, the Anterior Walls of both being removed.

The sinus is the large quadrangular cavity, placed between the two venæ cavae; its walls are extremely thin; it is connected below with the right ventricle, and internally with the left auricle, being free in the rest of its extent.

The appendix auriculæ, so called from its fancied resemblance to a dog's ear, is a small conical muscular pouch, the margins of which present a dentated edge. It projects from the sinus forwards and to the left side, overlapping the root of the pulmonary artery.
HEART—VALVES.

To examine the interior of the auricle, a transverse incision should be made along its ventricular margin, from its right border to the appendix; and from the middle of this, a second incision should be carried upwards along the inner side of the two vena cavae.

The following parts present themselves for examination:

\[
\text{Openings.} \begin{cases} 
\text{Superior cava.} \\
\text{Inferior cava.} \\
\text{Coronary sinus.} \\
\text{Foramina Thebesii.} \\
\text{Auriculo-ventricular.} \\
\text{Relics of fetus.} \\
\text{Musculi pectinati.} \\
\end{cases} 
\text{Valves.} \begin{cases} 
\text{Eustachian.} \\
\text{Coronary.} \\
\text{Annulus ovalis.} \\
\text{Fossa ovalis.} \\
\end{cases}
\]

\text{OPENINGS.} The superior vena cava returns the blood from the upper half of the body, and opens into the upper and front part of the auricle, the direction of its orifice being downwards and forwards.

The inferior vena cava, larger than the superior, returns the blood from the lower half of the body, and opens into the lowest part of the auricle, near the septum, the direction of its orifice being upwards and inwards. The direction of a current of blood through the superior vena cava would consequently be towards the auriculo-ventricular orifice; whilst the direction of the blood through the inferior cava would be towards the auricular septum. This is the normal direction of the two currents in fetal life.

The tuberculum Loweri is a small projection on the right wall of the auricle, between the two cavae. This is most distinct in the hearts of quadrupeds; in man, it is scarcely visible. It was supposed by Lower to direct the blood from the superior cava towards the auriculo-ventricular opening.

The coronary sinus opens into the auricle, between the inferior vena cava and the auriculo-ventricular opening. It returns the blood from the substance of the heart, and is protected by a semicircular fold of the lining membrane of the auricle, the coronary valve. The sinus, before entering the auricle, is considerably dilated—nearly to the size of the end of the little finger. Its wall is partly muscular, and, at its junction with the great coronary vein, is somewhat constricted, and furnished with a valve, consisting of two unequal segments.

The foramina Thebesii are numerous minute apertures, the mouths of small veins (venae cordis minime), which open on various parts of the inner surface of the auricle. They return the blood directly from the muscular substance of the heart. Some of these foramina are minute depressions in the walls of the heart, presenting a closed extremity.

The auriculo-ventricular opening is the large oval aperture of communication between the auricle and the ventricle, to be presently described.

\text{VALVES.} The Eustachian valve is situated between the anterior margin of the inferior vena cava and the auriculo-ventricular orifice. It is semilunar in form, its convex margin being attached to the wall of the vein; its concave margin, which is free, terminating in two cornua, of which the left is attached to the anterior edge of the annulus ovalis; the right being lost on the wall of the auricle. The valve is formed by a duplication of the lining membrane of the auricle, containing a few muscular fibres.

In the fetus, this valve is of large size, and serves to direct the blood from the inferior vena cava, through the foramen ovale, into the left auricle.

In the adult, it is occasionally persistent, and may assist in preventing the reflux of blood into the inferior vena cava; more commonly, it is small, and its free margin presents a cribiform or filamentous appearance; occasionally, it is altogether wanting.

The coronary valve is a semicircular fold of the lining membrane of the auricle, protecting the orifice of the coronary sinus. It prevents the regurgitation of
blood into the sinus during the contraction of the auricle. This valve is occasionally double.

The *fossa ovalis* is an oval depression, corresponding to the situation of the foramen ovale in the fœtus. It is situated at the lower part of the septum auricularum, above the orifice of the inferior vena cava.

The *annulus ovalis* is the prominent oval margin of the foramen ovale. It is most distinct above, and at the sides; below it is deficient. A small slit-like valvular opening is occasionally found, at the upper margin of the fossa ovalis, which leads upwards, beneath the annulus, into the left auricle, and is the remains of the aperture between the two auricles in the fœtus.

The *musculi pectinati* are small, prominent muscular columns, which run across the inner surface of the appendix auricule, and adjoining portion of the wall of the sinus. They have received the name, *pectinati*, from the fancied resemblance they bear to the teeth of a comb.

The Right Ventricle is triangular in form, and extends from the right auricle to near the apex of the heart. Its anterior or upper surface is rounded and convex, and forms the larger part of the front of the heart. Its posterior or under surface is flattened, reposes upon the Diaphragm, and forms only a small part of the back of the heart. Its inner wall is formed by the partition between the two ventricles, the *septum ventriculorum*, the surface of which is convex, and bulges into the cavity of the right ventricle. Superiorly, the ventricle forms a conical prolongation, the *infundibulum*, or conus arteriosus, from which the pulmonary artery arises. The walls of the right ventricle are thinner than those of the left, the proportion between them being as 1 to 3 or 4. The wall is thickest at the base, and gradually becomes thinner towards the apex. The cavity, which equals that of the left ventricle, is capable of containing about two fluidounces.

To examine the interior, an incision should be made a little to the right of the anterior ventricular groove from the pulmonary artery to the apex of the heart, and should be carried up thence along the right border of the ventricle, as far as the auriculo-ventricular opening.

The following parts present themselves for examination:—

- **Openings**
  - Auriculo-ventricular.
  - Opening of the pulmonary artery.

- **Valves**
  - Tricuspid.
  - Semilunar.

And a muscular and tendinous apparatus connected with the tricuspid valve:—

- **Columnae carnea**.
  - Chordæ tendineæ.

The *auriculo-ventricular orifice* is the large oval aperture of communication between the auricle and ventricle. It is situated at the base of the ventricle, near the right border of the heart, and corresponds to the centre of the sternum between the third costal cartilages. The opening is about an inch in diameter, oval from side to side, surrounded by a fibrous ring, covered by the lining membrane of the heart, and rather larger than the corresponding aperture on the left side, being sufficiently large to admit the ends of three fingers. It is guarded by the tricuspid valve.

The *opening of the pulmonary artery* is circular in form, and situated at the summit of the conus arteriosus, close to the septum ventriculorum. It is placed on the left side of the auriculo-ventricular opening, upon the anterior aspect of

---

1 In the *Pathological Transactions*, vol. vi. p. 119, Dr. Peacock has given some careful researches upon the weight and dimensions of the heart in health and disease. He states, as the result of his investigations, that, in the healthy adult heart, the right auriculo-ventricular aperture has a mean circumference of 54.4 lines, or \( \frac{4}{5} \) inches; the left auriculo-ventricular aperture a mean circumference of 44.3 lines, or \( \frac{3}{4} \) lines; the pulmonary orifice of 40 lines, or \( \frac{3}{8} \) inches; and the aortic orifice of 35.5 lines, or \( \frac{3}{4} \) inches; but the dimensions of the orifices varied greatly in different cases, the right auriculo-ventricular aperture having a range of from 45 to 60 lines, and the others in the same proportion.
the heart, and corresponds to the upper border of the third costal cartilage of the left side, close to the sternum. Its orifice is guarded by the pulmonary semilunar valves.

The tricuspid valve consists of three segments of a triangular or trapezoidal shape, formed by a duplication of the lining membrane of the heart, strengthened by a layer of fibrous tissue, and containing, according to Kürschner and Senae, muscular fibres. These segments are connected by their bases to the auriculo-ventricular orifice, and by their sides with one another, so as to form a continuous annular membrane, which is attached round the margin of the auriculo-ventricular opening, their free margins and ventricular surfaces affording attachment to a number of delicate tendinous cords, the chordae tendineae. The largest and most movable segment is placed towards the left side of the auriculo-ventricular opening; interposed between that opening and the pulmonary artery. Another segment corresponds to the front of the ventricle; and a third to its posterior wall. The central part of each segment is thick and strong; the lateral margins are thin and indented. The chordae tendineae are connected with the adjacent margins of the principal segments of the valve, and are further attached to each segment in the following manner: 1. Three or four reach the attached margin of each segment, where they are continuous with the auriculo-ventricular tendinous ring. 2. Others, four to six in number, are attached to the central thickened part of each segment. 3. The most numerous and finest are connected with the marginal portion of each segment.

The columns carnea are the rounded muscular columns which project from nearly the whole of the inner surface of the ventricle, excepting near the opening of the pulmonary artery. They may be classified, according to their mode of connection with the ventricle, into three sets. The first set merely form prominent ridges on the inner surface of the ventricle, being attached by their entire length on one side, as well as by their extremities. The second set are attached by their two extremities, but are free in the rest of their extent; whilst the third set (musculi papillares), three or four in number, are attached by one extremity to the wall of the heart, the opposite extremity giving attachment to the chordae tendineae. The tricuspid valve is situated behind the middle of the sternum, about the level of the fourth costal cartilage.

The semilunar valves, three in number,1 guard the orifice of the pulmonary artery. They consist of three semicircular folds, formed by a duplication of the lining membrane, strengthened by fibrous tissue. They are attached, by their convex margins, to the wall of the artery, at its junction with the ventricle, the straight border being free, and directed upwards in the course of the vessel, against the sides of which the valve-flaps are pressed during the passage of the blood along the artery. The free margin of each is somewhat thicker than the rest of the valve, is strengthened by a bundle of tendinous fibres, and presents, at its middle, a small projecting fibro-cartilaginous nodule, called corpus Arantii. From this nodule, tendinous fibres radiate through the valve to its attached margin, and these fibres form a constituent part of its substance throughout its whole extent, excepting two narrow lunated portions, placed on either side of the nodule, immediately behind the free margin; here, the valve is thin, and formed merely by the lining membrane. During the passage of the blood along the pulmonary artery, these valves are pressed against the sides of the cylinder, and the course of the blood along the tube is uninterrupted; but during the ventricular diastole, when the current of blood along the pulmonary artery is checked, and partly thrown back by its elastic walls, these valves become immediately expanded, and effectually close the entrance of the tube. When the valves are closed, the lunated portions of each are brought into contact with

---

1 The pulmonary semilunar valves have been found to be two in number instead of three (Dr. Hand, of St. Paul, Minn., in the "North-Western Med. and Surg. Journ.," July, 1873), and the same variety is more frequently noticed in the aortic semilunar valves.
one another by their opposed surfaces, the three fibro-cartilaginous nodules filling up the small triangular space that would be otherwise left by the approximation of the three semilunar folds.

Between the semilunar valves and the commencement of the pulmonary artery are three pouches or dilatations, one behind each valve. These are the pulmonary sinuses (*sinuses of Valsalva*). Similar sinuses exist between the semilunar valves and the commencement of the aorta; they are larger than the pulmonary sinuses. The blood, in its regurgitation towards the heart, finds its way into these sinuses, and so shuts down the valve-flaps. The pulmonary valves are situated behind the junction of the left third rib with the sternum.

The **LEFT AURICLE** is rather smaller but thicker than the right, measuring about one line and a half; it consists, like the right, of two parts, a principal cavity or sinus, and an appendix auriculae.

The *sinus* is cuboidal in form, and concealed in front by the pulmonary artery and aorta; internally, it is separated from the right auricle by the septum auriculorum; behind, it receives on each side the pulmonary veins, being free in the rest of its extent.

**Fig. 463.—The Left Auricle and Ventricle laid open, the anterior Walls of both being removed.**

The *appendix auriculae* is somewhat constricted at its junction with the auricle; it is longer, narrower, and more curved than that of the right side, and its margins more deeply indented, presenting a kind of foliated appearance. Its direction is forwards and towards the right side, overlapping the root of the pulmonary artery.

In order to examine its interior, a horizontal incision should be made along the attached border of the auricle to the ventricle; and from the middle of this, a second incision should be carried upwards.

The following parts then present themselves for examination:—

The openings of the four pulmonary veins.

Auriculo-ventricular opening.

Musculi pectinati.
The pulmonary veins, four in number, open, two into the right, and two into the left side of the auricle. The two left veins frequently terminate by a common opening. They are not provided with valves.

The auriculo-ventricular opening is the large oval aperture of communication between the auricle and ventricle. It is rather smaller than the corresponding opening on the opposite side (see note, p. 804).

The musculi pectinati are fewer in number and smaller than on the right side; they are confined to the inner surface of the appendix.

On the inner surface of the septum auricularum may be seen a lunated impression, bounded below by a crescentic ridge, the concavity of which is turned upwards. The depression is just above the fossa ovalis in the right auricle.

The Left Ventricle is longer and more conical in shape than the right ventricle. It forms a small part of the left side of the anterior surface of the heart, and a considerable part of its posterior surface. It also forms the apex of the heart by its projection beyond the right ventricle. Its walls are much thicker than those of the right ventricle, the proportion being about 3 to 1. They are also thickest in the broadest part of the ventricle, becoming gradually thinner towards the base, and also towards the apex, which is the thinnest part.

Its cavity should be opened, by making an incision through its anterior wall along the left side of the ventricular septum, and carrying it round the apex and along its posterior surface to the auriculo-ventricular opening.

The following parts present themselves for examination:


The auriculo-ventricular opening is placed to the left of the aortic orifice, beneath the right auriculo-ventricular opening, opposite the centre of the sternum. It is a little smaller than the corresponding aperture of the opposite side; and, like it, is broader in the transverse than in the antero-posterior diameter. It is surrounded by a dense fibrous ring, covered by the lining membrane of the heart, and guarded by the mitral valve.

The aortic opening is a small circular aperture, in front and to the right side of the auriculo-ventricular, from which it is separated by one of the segments of the mitral valve. Its orifice is guarded by the semilunar valves. Its position corresponds to the sternum, on a line with the lower border of the third costal cartilage.

The mitral valve is attached to the circumference of the auriculo-ventricular orifice in the same way that the tricuspid valve is on the opposite side. It is formed by a duplicate of the lining membrane, strengthened by fibrous tissue, and contains a few muscular fibres. It is larger in size, thicker, and altogether stronger than the tricuspid, and consists of two segments of unequal size. The larger segment is placed in front, between the auriculo-ventricular and aortic orifices, and is said to prevent the filling of the aorta during the distension of the ventricle. Two smaller segments are usually found at the angle of junction of the larger. The mitral valve-flaps are furnished with chordae tendineae, the mode of attachment of which is precisely similar to those on the right side; but they are thicker, stronger, and less numerous. The mitral valve lies in the third intercostal space, about an inch from the left border of the sternum.

The semilunar valves surround the orifice of the aorta; they are similar in structure, and in their mode of attachment, to those of the pulmonary artery. They are, however, larger, thicker, and stronger than those of the right side; the lunule is more distinct, and the corpora Arantii larger and more prominent. Between each valve and the cylinder of the aorta is a deep depression, the sinus aortici (sinuses of Valsalva); they are larger than those at the root of the pulmonary artery. The aortic valves lie close behind the left border of the sternum, in the third intercostal space.
The columnæ carnes admit of a subdivision into three sets, like those upon the right side; but they are smaller, more numerous, and present a dense interlacement, especially at the apex, and upon the posterior wall. Those attached by one extremity only, the musculi papillares, are two in number, being connected one to the anterior, the other to the posterior wall; they are of large size, and terminate by free rounded extremities, from which the chordæ tendineæ arise.

The Endocardium is the serous membrane which lines the internal surface of the heart; it assists in forming the valves by its reduplications, and is continuous with the lining membrane of the great bloodvessels. It is a thin, smooth, transparent membrane, giving to the inner surface of the heart its glistening appearance. It is more opaque on the left than on the right side of the heart, thicker in the auricles than in the ventricles, and thickest in the left auricle. It is thin on the musculi pectinati, and on the columnæ carnes; but thicker on the smooth part of the auricular and ventricular walls, and on the tips of the musculi papillares.

Structure. The heart consists of muscular fibres, and of fibrous rings which serve for their attachment.

The fibrous rings surround the auriculo-ventricular and arterial orifices: they are stronger upon the left than on the right side of the heart. The auriculo-ventricular rings serve for the attachment of the muscular fibres of the auricles and ventricles, and also for the mitral and tricuspid valves; the ring on the left side is closely connected, by its right margin, with the aortic arterial ring. Between these and the right auriculo-ventricular ring, is a fibro-cartilaginous mass; and in some of the larger animals, as the ox and elephant, a portion of bone.

The fibrous rings surrounding the arterial orifices serve for the attachment of the great vessels and semilunar valves. Each ring receives, by its ventricular margin, the attachment of the muscular fibres of the ventricles; its opposite margin presents three deep semicircular notches, within which the middle coat of the artery (which presents three convex semicircular segments) is firmly fixed; the attachment of the artery to its fibrous ring being strengthened by the thin cellular coat and serous membrane externally, and by the endocardium within. It is opposite the margins of these semicircular notches, in the arterial rings, that the endocardium, by its reduplication, forms the semilunar valves, the fibrous structure of the ring being continued into each of the segments of the valve at this part. The middle coat of the artery in this situation is thin, and the sides of the vessel are dilated to form the sinuses of Valsalva.

The muscular structure of the heart consists of bands of fibres, which present an exceedingly intricate interlacement. They are of a deep red color, and marked with transverse striae (p. 58).

The muscular fibres of the heart admit of a subdivision into two kinds: those of the auricles, and those of the ventricles; which are quite independent of one another.

Fibres of the auricles. These are disposed in two layers: a superficial layer common to both cavities, and a deep layer proper to each. The superficial fibres are most distinct on the anterior surface of the auricles, across the bases of which they run in a transverse direction, forming a thin, but incomplete, layer. Some of these fibres pass into the septum auriculare. The internal or deep fibres proper to each auricle consist of two sets, looped and annular fibres. The looped fibres pass upwards over each auricle, being attached by two extremities to the corresponding auriculo-ventricular rings, in front and behind. The annular fibres surround the whole extent of the appendices auriculæ, and are continued upon the walls of the venæ cææ and coronary sinus on the right side, and upon the pulmonary veins on the left side, at their connection with the heart. In the appendices, they interlace with the longitudinal fibres.
The fibres of the ventricles are arranged in numerous layers, of which Pettigrew\(^1\) describes seven. Other anatomists have regarded them differently, and indeed there must be some uncertainty on the subject, for the layers are not independent of each other, but their fibres are interlaced to a considerable extent. And it has been observed that as Pettigrew's observations were made chiefly on the hearts of the lower animals, they may not apply exactly to man. Yet as this description has been received by some of the best anatomists, and is supported by a large series of preparations, it seems best to adopt it.

The general result of these investigations may be very briefly stated as follows. In the left ventricle the fibres of the first or most external layer are continuous with those of the seventh or most internal, those of the second with the sixth, and those of the third with the fifth, while the fourth or central layer appears to be single. The general direction of the fibres of the external layer is nearly vertical, but inclining somewhat from left to right as they run downwards; the direction of the fibres of the internal layer is just the reverse, nearly vertical but running upwards from left to right; those of the second layer run more obliquely downwards, from left to right, and those of the sixth with a corresponding obliquity in the reversed directions. The obliquity of the fibres of the third layer is greater; in fact, they approach the horizontal, as do those of the fifth in the reversed direction, while the fibres of the fourth layer run pretty nearly horizontal. The thickness of the layers increases from without inwards, so that the fourth layer, which is the middle in order of sequence, lies nearer the outer than the inner surface of the ventricular wall. The fibres of the external or superficial layer arise, as a rule, from the auriculo-ventricular rings and from the fibrous ring surrounding the aorta, but a few of them are continued beneath the rings into the columnae carneae.\(^2\) They curve round at the apex in a spiral, which forms the whorl or vortex, those from the anterior surface of the heart curving round to enter the apex posteriorly, and vice versa.

From the apex they are traced up into the seventh layer, which is much thicker, and from which the musculi papillares and columnae carneae are chiefly formed. The apex of the heart is formed exclusively of the fibres of this first layer (or first and seventh), so that, when it is removed, the ventricle is opened. And the successive layers terminate further and further from the apex, an arrangement which has led to their fibres being described as shorter, which Pettigrew doubts, attributing the shortness of the layers to the different direction of the fibres, not to any difference in length in the individual fibres. Since the deeper layers do not descend to the apex, this is the thinnest part of the ventricle, measuring only \(\frac{1}{16}\)th of an inch in thickness even in the heart of an ox.

The fibres of the deeper layers are not connected with the auriculo-ventricular rings, but pass below them, each layer terminating a little below the more superficial layer which wraps round it, though the difference in this respect is not so great as in their depth towards the apex.

The fibres of the first layer pass across the septum from one ventricle to the other, an arrangement particularly well seen at the back of the heart, where there is a set of transverse fibres described by Pettigrew as the "hingelike fibres" of the back of the heart, and the three subjacent layers also take part in the formation of both ventricles; but when the fourth layer is removed, the two ventricles are entirely severed from each other posteriorly. The septum is formed of the fibres of both ventricles applied to each other.

The general arrangement of the fibres of the right ventricle is the same as that of the left, but the external fibres do not pass in to be continuous with the internal at a single point—the apex—but all along the anterior coronary groove. Its fibres are more delicate than those of the left, and it is regarded by Pettigrew

---

1 Phil. Trans. 1864.

2 "It is a great mistake to imagine that all the fibres of the ventricles arise from the auriculo-ventricular tendinous rings, the fact being that, with the exception of the fibres of the first and seventh layers, they are continuous beneath them."—Pettigrew, op. cit. p. 456, note.
as formed out of the left ventricle by a kind of reflection inwards of the wall of the single cavity of which the ventricles consist at one period of the foetal life (see Introduction). He points out that the heart at that period may be supposed to be represented by an open tube formed of spiral fibres. If, now a portion of this tube or cylinder were pushed down to meet the opposite wall, to which the fibres of the reflected portion adhere, and with which they coalesce, there would be formed an offset from the common ventricular cavity, formed partly of common and partly of special fibres, as is the case in the heart. At this early period the outer layers are not formed and the apex is still unclosed. Their formation closes in the apex and completes the walls of the ventricles. If this is the case the septum must be formed of two elements or sets of fibres, one proper to the original single ventricle, and therefore in after life proper to the left ventricle, the other set formed from the reflected or reduplicated fibres which now form the right ventricle. To these of course the fibres which cross over from one ventricle to the other may be added. Pettigrew regards the portion of the septum which belongs to the left ventricle as twice that which belongs to the right. For many interesting particulars with regard to the arrangement of the fibres and the shape of the cavities the reader must be referred to the original paper.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries supplying the heart are the left or anterior and right or posterior coronary (p. 469). The veins accompany the arteries, and terminate in the right auricle. They are the great cardiac vein, the small or anterior cardiac veins, and the vena cordis minimæ (venæ Thèbesii) (p. 587). The lymphatics terminate in the thoracic and right lymphatic ducts.

The nerves are derived from the cardiac plexuses, which are formed partly from the cranial nerves, and partly from the sympathetic. They are freely distributed both on the surface, and in the substance of the heart; the separate filaments being furnished with small ganglia.

PECULIARITIES IN THE VASCULAR SYSTEM OF THE FETUS.

The chief peculiarities in the heart of the foetus are the direct communication between the two auricles through the foramen ovale, and the large size of the Eustachian valve. There are also several minor peculiarities. Thus, the position of the heart is vertical until the fourth month, when it commences to assume an oblique direction. Its size is also very considerable, as compared with the body, the proportion at the second month being as 1 to 50; at birth it is as 1 to 120; whilst in the adult, the average is about 1 to 160. At an early period of foetal life, the auricular portion of the heart is larger than the ventricular, the right auricle being more capacious than the left; but towards birth, the ventricular portion becomes the larger. The thickness of both ventricles is, at first, about equal; but, towards birth, the left becomes much the thicker of the two.

The foramen ovale is situated at the lower and back part of the septum auricularum, forming a communication between the auricles. It attains its greatest size at the sixth month.

The Eustachian valve is developed from the anterior border of the inferior

1 If the general idea of this is not at once obvious, it will become so by taking a roll of paper, calling one side of it the posterior and the other the anterior, and bending it at the right side of its middle till the anterior touches the posterior surface. The larger part to the left of the middle line represents the left ventricle, the smaller the right, and the double fold in the middle the septum; then, if the reflected part where they touch are gummed to each other, this will represent the coalescence of the septum with the outer wall, whereby the right ventricle becomes a separate tube from the left. The lower openings of these two tubes are closed in by the growth of the external layers.

2 For full and accurate descriptions of the nerves and ganglia of the heart, the student is referred to Dr. R. Lee's papers on the subject.
vena cava at its entrance into the auricle. It is directed upwards on the left side of the opening of this vein, and serves to direct the blood from the inferior vena cava through the foramen ovale into the left auricle.

The peculiarities in the arterial system of the foetus are the communication between the pulmonary artery and descending part of the arch of the aorta, by means of the ductus arteriosus, and the communication between the internal iliac arteries and the placenta, by means of the umbilical arteries.

Fig. 464.—Plan of the Foetal Circulation.

In this plan the figured arrows represent the kind of blood, as well as the direction which it takes in the vessels. Thus—arterial blood is figured ⬀; venous blood, ⬀; mixed (arterial and venous) blood, ⬀.
THE THORAX.

The ductus arteriosus is a short tube, about half an inch in length at birth, and of the diameter of a goose-quill. In the early condition, it forms the continuation of the pulmonary artery, and opens into the arch of the aorta, just below the origin of the left subclavian artery; and so conducts the chief part of the blood from the right ventricle into the descending aorta. When the branches of the pulmonary artery have become larger relatively to the ductus arteriosus, the latter is chiefly connected to the left pulmonary artery; and the fibrous cord, which is all that remains of the ductus arteriosus in later life, will be found to be attached to the root of that vessel.

The umbilical, or hypogastric arteries, arise from the internal ilia, in addition to the branches given off from those vessels in the adult. Ascending along the sides of the bladder to its fundus, they pass out of the abdomen at the umbilicus, and are continued along the umbilical cord to the placenta, coiling round the umbilical vein. They return to the placenta the blood which has circulated in the system of the foetus.

The peculiarity in the venous system of the foetus is the communication established between the placenta and the liver and portal vein through the umbilical vein, and with the inferior vena cava by the ductus venosus.

FETAL CIRCULATION.

The arterial blood destined for the nutrition of the foetus is carried from the placenta to the foetus, along the umbilical cord, by the umbilical vein. The umbilical vein enters the abdomen at the umbilicus, and passes upwards along the free margin of the suspensory ligament of the liver to the under surface of that organ, where it gives off two or three branches to the left lobe, one of which is of large size; and others to the lobus quadratus and lobulus Spigelii. At the transverse fissure it divides into two branches; of these, the larger is joined by the portal vein, and enters the right lobe; the smaller branch continues onwards under the name of the ductus venosus, and joins the left hepatic vein at the point of junction of that vessel with the inferior vena cava. The blood, therefore, which traverses the umbilical vein, reaches the inferior cava in three different ways. The greater quantity circulates through the liver with the portal venous blood, before entering the vena cava by the hepatic veins; some enters the liver directly, and is also returned to the inferior cava by the hepatic veins: the smaller quantity passes directly into the vena cava, by the junction of the ductus venosus with the left hepatic vein.

In the inferior cava, the blood carried by the ductus venosus and hepatic veins becomes mixed with that returning from the lower extremities and viscera of the abdomen. It enters the right auricle, and, guided by the Eustachian valve, passes through the foramen ovale into the left auricle, where it becomes mixed with a small quantity of blood returned from the lungs by the pulmonary veins. From the left auricle it passes into the left ventricle; and, from the left ventricle, into the aorta, from whence it is distributed almost entirely to the head and upper extremities, a small quantity being probably carried into the descending aorta. From the head and upper extremities the blood is returned by the branches of the superior vena cava to the right auricle, where it becomes mixed with a small portion of the blood from the inferior cava. From the right auricle it descends over the Eustachian valve into the right ventricle; and, from the right ventricle, passes into the pulmonary artery. The lungs of the foetus being solid, and almost impervious, only a small quantity of the blood of the pulmonary artery is distributed to them, by the right and left pulmonary arteries, which is returned by the pulmonary veins to the left auricle: the greater part passes through the ductus arteriosus into the commencement of the descending aorta, where it becomes mixed with a small quantity of blood transmitted by the left ventricle into the aorta. Along this vessel it descends to
supply the lower extremities and viscera of the abdomen and pelvis, the chief portion being, however, conveyed by the umbilical arteries to the placenta.

From the preceding account of the circulation of the blood in the foetus, it will be seen:—

1. That the placenta serves the double purpose of a respiratory and nutritive organ, receiving the venous blood from the foetus, and returning it again reoxygenated, and charged with additional nutritive material.

2. That nearly the whole of the blood of the umbilical vein traverses the liver before entering the inferior cava; hence the large size of this organ, especially at an early period of fetal life.

3. That the right auricle is the point of meeting of a double current, the blood in the inferior cava being guided by the Eustachian valve into the left auricle, whilst that in the superior cava descends into the right ventricle. At an early period of fetal life, it is highly probable that the two streams are quite distinct: for the inferior cava opens almost directly into the left auricle, and the Eustachian valve would exclude the current along the vein from entering the right ventricle. At a later period, as the separation between the two auricles becomes more distinct, it seems probable that some mixture of the two streams must take place.

4. The blood carried from the placenta to the foetus by the umbilical vein, mixed with the blood from the inferior cava, passes almost directly to the arch of the aorta, and is distributed by the branches of that vessel to the head and upper extremities: hence the large size and perfect development of those parts at birth.

5. The blood contained in the descending aorta, chiefly derived from that which has already circulated through the head and limbs, together with a small quantity from the left ventricle, is distributed to the lower extremities: hence the small size and imperfect development of these parts at birth.

Changes in the Vascular System at Birth.

At birth, when respiration is established, an increased amount of blood from the pulmonary artery passes through the lungs, which now perform their office as respiratory organs, and, at the same time, the placental circulation is cut off. The foramen ovale becomes gradually closed in by about the tenth day after birth; a valvular fold rises up on the left side of its margin, and ultimately above its upper part; this valve becomes adherent to the margins of the foramen for the greater part of its circumference, but above a valvular opening is left between the two auricles, which sometimes remains persistent.

The ductus arteriosus begins to contract immediately after respiration is established, becomes completely closed from the fourth to the tenth day, and ultimately degenerates into an impervious cord, which serves to connect the left pulmonary artery to the concavity of the arch of the aorta.

Of the umbilical or hypogastric arteries, the portion continued on to the bladder from the trunk of the corresponding internal iliac remains pervious, as the superior vesical artery; and the part between the fundus of the bladder and the umbilicus becomes obliterated between the second and fifth days after birth, and forms the anterior true ligament of the bladder.

The umbilical veins and ductus venosus become completely obliterated between the second and fifth days after birth, and ultimately dwindle to fibrous cords; the former becoming the round ligament of the liver, the latter, the fibrous cord, which, in the adult, may be traced along the fissure of the ductus venosus.
Organs of Voice and Respiration.

The Larynx.

The Larynx is the organ of voice, placed at the upper part of the air-passage. It is situated between the trachea and base of the tongue, at the upper and fore part of the neck, where it forms a considerable projection in the middle line. On either side of it lie the great vessels of the neck; behind, it forms part of the boundary of the pharynx, and is covered by the mucous membrane lining that cavity.

The Larynx is narrow and cylindrical below, but broad above, where it presents the form of a triangular box, flattened behind and at the sides, whilst in front it is bounded by a prominent vertical ridge. It is composed of cartilages, which are connected together by ligaments and moved by numerous muscles: the interior is lined by mucous membrane, and supplied with vessels and nerves.

The Cartilages of the larynx are nine in number, three single, and three pairs:—

- Thyroid.
- Cricoid.
- Epiglottis.
- Two Arytenoid.
- Two Cornicula Laryngis.
- Two Cuneiform.

The Thyroid (ᾱίνων, a shield) is the largest cartilage of the larynx. It consists of two lateral lamelle or alae, united at an acute angle in front, forming a vertical projection in the middle line which is prominent above, and called the pomum Adami. This projection is subcutaneous, more distinct in the male than in the female, and occasionally separated from the integument by a bursa mucosa.

Each lamella is quadrilateral in form. Its outer surface presents an oblique ridge, which passes downwards and forwards from a tubercle, situated near the root of the superior cornu. This ridge gives attachment to the Sterno-thyroid and Thyro-hyoid muscles; the portion of cartilage included between it and the posterior border, to part of the Inferior constrictor muscle.

The inner surface of each ala is smooth, concave, and covered by mucous membrane above and behind; but in front, in the receding angle formed by their junction, are attached the epiglottis, the true and false chordae vocales, the Thyro-arytenoid, and Thyro-epiglottidean muscles.

The upper border of the thyroid cartilage is deeply notched in the middle line, immediately above the pomum Adami, whilst on either side it is slightly concave. This border gives attachment throughout its whole extent to the thyrohyoid membrane.

The lower border is connected to the cricoid cartilage, in the median line, by the crico-thyroid membrane; and, on each side, by the Crico-thyroid muscle.

The posterior borders, thick and rounded, terminate, above, in the superior

(814)
CARTILAGES OF LARYNX.

815
cornua; and, below, in the inferior cornua. The two superior cornua are long
and narrow, directed backwards, upwards, and inwards; and terminate in a
conical extremity, which gives attachment to the thyro-hyoid ligament. The
two inferior cornua are short and thick; they pass forwards and inwards, and
present, on their inner surfaces, a
small, oval, articular facet for articu-
lation with the side of the cricoid
cartilage. The posterior border re-
ceives the insertion of the Stylo-
pharyngeus and Palato-pharyngeus
muscles on each side.

The Cricoid Cartilage is so called
from its resemblance to a signet
ring (σημοσ, a ring). It is smaller
but thicker and stronger than the
thyroid cartilage, and forms the
lower and back part of the cavity
of the larynx.

Its anterior half is narrow, con-
 vex, affording attachment in front
and at the sides to the Crico-thyroid
muscles, and, behind those, to part
of the Inferior constrictor.

Its posterior half is very broad,
both from side to side and from
above downwards; it presents in
the middle line a vertical ridge for
the attachment of the longitudinal
fibres of the cesophagus; and on
either side a broad depression for
the Crico-arytenoideus posticus
muscle.

At the point of junction of the
two halves of the cartilage on either
side is a small round elevation, for
articulation with the inferior cornu
of the thyroid cartilage.

The lower border of the cricoid
cartilage is horizontal, and con-
 nected to the upper ring of the tra-
chea by fibrous membrane.

Its upper border is directed ob-
liquely upwards and backwards,
owing to the great depth of its
posterior surface. It gives attach-
ment, in front, to the crico-thyroid
membrane; at the sides, to part of the same membrane and to the lateral Crico-
 arytenoideus muscle; behind, the highest point of the upper border is surmounted
on each side by a smooth oval surface, for articulation with the arytenoid car-
tilage. Between the articular surfaces is a slight notch, for the attachment of
part of the Arytenoideus muscle.

The inner surface of the cricoid cartilage is smooth, and lined by mucous
membrane.

The Arytenoid Cartilages are so called from the resemblance they bear, when
approximated, to the mouth of a pitcher (ἀφίραυν, a pitcher). They are two in
number, and situated at the upper border of the cricoid cartilage, at the back of

Fig. 466.—The Cartilages of the Larynx.
Posterior View.

EPICLITTIS

THYROID

ARYTENOID

ARTICULAR SURF.

ARTICULAR SURF.

ARTICULAR SURF.

ARTICULAR SURF.

ARTICULAR SURF.

ARTICULAR SURF.

ARTICULAR SURF.
the larynx. Each cartilage is pyramidal in form, and presents for examination three surfaces, a base, and an apex.

The posterior surface is triangular, smooth, concave, and lodges part of the Arytenoid muscle.

The anterior surface, somewhat convex and rough, gives attachment to the Thyro-arytenoid muscle, and to the false vocal cord.

The internal surface is narrow, smooth, and flattened, covered by mucous membrane, and lies almost in apposition with the cartilage of the opposite side.

The base of each cartilage is broad, and presents a concave smooth surface, for articulation with the cricoid cartilage. Of its three angles, the external is short, rounded, and prominent, receiving the insertion of the posterior and lateral Crico-arytenoid muscles. The anterior angle, also prominent, but more pointed, gives attachment to the true vocal cord.

The apex of each cartilage is pointed, curved backwards and inwards, and surmounted by a small conical-shaped, cartilaginous nodule, corniculum laryngis (cartilage of Santorini). This cartilage is sometimes united to the arytenoid, and serves to prolong it backwards and inwards. To it is attached the aryteno-epiglottidial fold.

The cuneiform cartilages (cartilages of Wrisberg) are two small, elongated, cartilaginous bodies, placed one on each side, in the fold of mucous membrane which extends from the apex of the arytenoid cartilage to the side of the epiglottis (aryteno-epiglottidean fold); they give rise to small whitish elevations on the inner surface of the mucous membrane, just in front of the arytenoid cartilages.

The epiglottis is a thin lamella of fibro-cartilage, of a yellowish color, shaped like a leaf, and placed behind the tongue in front of the superior opening of the larynx. During respiration, its direction is vertically upwards, its free extremity curving forwards towards the base of the tongue; but when the larynx is drawn up beneath the base of the tongue during deglutition it is carried downwards and backwards, so as to completely close the opening of the larynx. Its free extremity is broad and rounded; its attached end is long and narrow, and connected to the receding angle between the two alae of the thyroid cartilage, just below the median notch, by a long, narrow, ligamentous band, the thyro-epiglottic ligament. It is also connected to the posterior surface of the body of the hyoid bone by an elastic ligamentous band, the hyo-epiglottic ligament.

Its anterior or lingual surface is curved forwards towards the tongue, and covered by mucous membrane, which is reflected on to the sides and base of the organ, forming a median and two lateral folds, the glosso-epiglottidean ligaments.

Its posterior or laryngeal surface is smooth, concave from side to side, convex from above downwards, and covered by mucous membrane; when this is removed, the surface of the cartilage is seen to be studded with a number of small mucous glands, which are lodged in little pits upon its surface. To its sides the aryteno-epiglottidean folds are attached.

Structure. The epiglottis, cuneiform cartilages, and cornicula laryngis are composed of yellow cartilage, which shows little tendency to ossification; but the other cartilages resemble in structure the costal cartilages, becoming more or less ossified in old age.

Ligaments. The ligaments of the larynx are extrinsic, i.e., those connecting the thyroid cartilage with the os hyoides; and intrinsic, those which connect the several cartilaginous segments to each other.

The ligaments connecting the thyroid cartilage with the os hyoides are three in number: the thyro-hyoid membrane, and the two lateral thyro-hyoid ligaments.

The thyro-hyoid membrane is a broad, fibro-elastic, membranous layer, attached below to the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, and above to the upper border of the inner surface of the hyoid bone: being separated from the poste-
rior surface of the hyoid bone by a synovial bursa. It is thicker in the middle line than at either side, in which situation it is pierced by the superior laryngeal vessels and nerve.

The two lateral thyro-hyoid ligaments are rounded, elastic cords, which pass between the superior cornua of the thyroid cartilage and the extremities of the greater cornua of the hyoid bone. A small cartilaginous nodule (cartilago triticea), sometimes bony, is found in each.

The ligaments connecting the thyroid cartilage to the cricoid are also three in number: the crico-thyroid membrane, and the capsular ligaments and synovial membrane.

The crico-thyroid membrane is composed mainly of yellow elastic tissue. It is of triangular shape; thick in front, where it connects together the contiguous margins of the thyroid and cricoid cartilages; thinner at each side, where it extends from the superior border of the cricoid cartilage to the inferior margin of the true vocal cords, with which it is closely united in front.

The anterior portion of the crico-thyroid membrane is convex, concealed on each side by the Crico-thyroid muscle, subcutaneous in the middle line, and crossed horizontally by a small anastomotic arterial arch, formed by the junction of the two crico-thyroid arteries.

The lateral portions are lined internally by mucous membrane, and covered by the lateral Crico-arytenoid and Thyro-arytenoid muscles.

A capsular ligament incloses the articulation of the inferior cornua of the thyroid with the cricoid cartilage on each side. The articulation is lined by synovial membrane.

The ligaments connecting the arytenoid cartilages to the cricoid are two thin and loose capsular ligaments connecting together the articulating surfaces, lined internally by synovial membrane, and strengthened behind by a strong posterior crico-arytenoid ligament, which extends from the cricoid to the inner and back part of the base of the arytenoid cartilage.

The ligaments of the epiglottis are the hyo-epiglottic, the thyro-epiglottic, and the three glosso-epiglottic folds of mucous membrane which connect the epiglottis to the sides and base of the tongue. The latter have been already described.

The hyo-epiglottic ligament is an elastic fibrous band, which extends from the anterior surface of the epiglottis, near its apex, to the posterior surface of the body of the hyoid bone.

The thyro-epiglottic ligament is a long, slender, elastic cord, which connects the apex of the epiglottis with the receding angle of the thyroid cartilage, immediately beneath the median notch, above the attachment of the vocal cords.

Interior of the Larynx. The superior aperture of the larynx (Fig. 467) is a triangular or cordiform opening, wide in front, narrow behind, and sloping obliquely downwards and backwards. It is bounded in front by the epiglottis; behind, by the apices of the arytenoid cartilages, and the cornicula laryngis; and laterally, by a fold of mucous membrane, inclosing ligamentous and muscular fibres, stretched between the sides of the epiglottis and the apex.
of the arytenoid cartilages: these are the aryteno-epiglottidean folds, on the margins of which the cuneiform cartilages form a more or less distinct whitish prominence.

The cavity of the larynx extends from the aperture behind the epiglottis to the lower border of the cricoid cartilage. It is divided into two parts by the projection inwards of the vocal cords and the Thyro-arytenoid muscles; between the two cords is a long and narrow triangular fissure or chink, the glottis or rima glottidis. The portion of the cavity of the larynx above the glottis is broad and triangular in shape above, and corresponds to the interval between the alae of the thyroid cartilage; the portion below the glottis is at first of an elliptical, and lower down of a circular form.

The glottis (rima glottidis) is the interval between the inferior or true vocal cords. The two superior or false vocal cords are placed above the latter, and are formed almost entirely by a folding inwards of the mucous membrane; whilst the two inferior or true vocal cords are thick, strong, and formed partly by mucous membrane, and partly by ligamentous fibres. Between the true and false vocal cords, on each side, is an oval depression, the sinus, or ventricle of the larynx, which leads upwards on the outer side of the superior vocal cord, into a cecal pouch of variable size, the sacculus laryngis.

The rima glottidis is a narrow fissure or chink between the inferior or true vocal cords. It is the narrowest part of the cavity of the larynx, and corresponds to the lower level of the arytenoid cartilages. Its length, in the male, measures rather less than an inch, its breadth, when dilated, varying at its widest part from a third to half an inch. In the female, these measurements are less by two or three lines. The form of the glottis varies. In its half closed condition it is a narrow fissure, a little enlarged and rounded behind. In quiet breathing it is widely open, somewhat triangular, the base of the triangle directed backwards, and corresponding to the space between the separated arytenoid cartilages. In forcible expiration it is smaller than during inspiration. When sound is produced, it is more narrowed, the margins of the arytenoid cartilages being brought into contact, and the edges of the vocal cords approximated and made parallel, the degree of approximation and tension corresponding to the height of the note produced.¹

The superior or false vocal cords, so called because they are not directly concerned in the production of the voice, are two folds of mucous membrane, inclosing a delicate narrow fibrous band, the superior thyro-arytenoid ligament. This ligament consists of a thin band of elastic tissue, attached in front to the angle of the thyroid cartilage below the epiglottis, and behind to the anterior surface of the arytenoid cartilage. The lower border of this ligament, inclosed in mucous membrane, forms a free crescentic margin, which constitutes the upper boundary of the ventricle of the larynx.

¹ On the shape of the glottis, in the various conditions of breathing and speaking, see "Czermak on the Laryngoscope," translated for the New Sydenham Society.
The inferior or true vocal cords, so called from their being concerned in the production of sound, are two strong fibrous bands (inferior thyro-arytenoid ligaments), covered on their surface by a thin layer of mucous membrane. Each ligament consists of a band of yellow elastic tissue, attached in front to the depression between the two ales of the thyroid cartilage, and behind to the anterior angle of the base of the arytenoid. Its lower border is continuous with the thin lateral part of the crico-thyroid membrane. Its upper border forms the lower boundary of the ventricle of the larynx. Externally, the Thyro-arytenoideus muscle lies parallel with it. It is covered internally by mucous membrane, which is extremely thin, and closely adherent to its surface.

The ventricle of the larynx is an oblong fossa, situated between the superior and inferior vocal cords on each side, and extending nearly their entire length. This fossa is bounded above by the free crescentic edge of the superior vocal cord; below by the straight margin of the true vocal cord; externally, by the corresponding Thyro-arytenoideus muscle. The anterior part of the ventricle leads up by a narrow opening into a cæcal pouch of mucous membrane of variable size, called the laryngeal pouch.

The sacculus laryngis, or laryngeal pouch, is a membranous sac placed between the superior vocal cord and the inner surface of the thyroid cartilage, occasionally extending as far as its upper border; it is conical in form, and curved slightly backwards, like a Phrygian cap. On the surface of its mucous membrane are the openings of sixty or seventy small follicular glands, which are lodged in the submucous areolar tissue. This sac is inclosed in a fibrous capsule continuous below with the superior thyro-arytenoid ligament; its laryngeal surface is covered by the Arytæno-epiglottideus inferior muscle (Compressor sacculi laryngis, Hilton); whilst its exterior is covered by the Thyro-epiglottideus muscle. These muscles compress the sacculus laryngis, and discharge the secretion it contains upon the chordæ vocales, the surface of which it is intended to lubricate.

Muscles. The intrinsic muscles of the larynx are eight in number; five of which are the muscles of the chordæ vocales and rima glottidis; three are connected with the epiglottis.

The five muscles of the chordæ vocales and rima glottidis are the

- Crico-thyroid.
- Crico-arytenoideus posticus.
- Crico-arytenoideus lateralis.

The Crico-thyroid is triangular in form, and situated at the fore part and side of the cricoid cartilage. It arises from the front and lateral part of the cricoid cartilage; its fibres diverge, passing obliquely upwards and outwards, to be inserted into the lower and inner borders of the thyroid cartilage, from near the median line in front, as far back as the inferior cornu.

The inner borders of these two muscles are separated in the middle line by a triangular interval, occupied by the crico-thyroid membrane.

The Crico-arytænoideus posticus arises from the broad depression occupying each lateral half of the posterior surface of the cricoid cartilage; its fibres pass upwards and outwards, converging to be inserted into the outer angle of the base of the arytenoid cartilage. The upper fibres are nearly horizontal, the middle oblique, and the lower almost vertical.\(^1\)

\(^1\) Dr. Merkel of Liepsic has described a muscular slip which occasionally extends between the outer border of the posterior surface of the cricoid cartilage and the posterior margin of the inferior cornu of the thyroid; this he calls the "Musculus kerato-cricoideus." It is not found in every larynx, and when present exists usually only on one side, but is occasionally found on both sides. Mr. Turner (Edinburgh Medical Journal, Feb. 1860) states that it is found in about one case in five. Its action is to fix the lower horn of the thyroid cartilage backwards and downwards, opposing in some measure the part of the Crico-thyroid muscle which is connected to the anterior margin of the horn.
The Crico-arytenoideus lateralis is smaller than the preceding, and of an oblong form. It arises from the upper border of the side of the cricoid cartilage, and, passing obliquely upwards and backwards, is inserted into the outer angle of the base of the arytenoid cartilage, in front of the preceding muscle.

The Thyro-arytenoideus is a broad, flat muscle, which lies parallel with the outer side of the true vocal cord. It arises in front from the lower half of the receding angle of the thyroid cartilage, and from the crico-thyroid membrane. Its fibres pass horizontally backwards and outwards, to be inserted into the base and anterior surface of the arytenoid cartilage. This muscle consists of two fasciculi. The inferior, the thicker, is inserted into the anterior angle of the base of the arytenoid cartilage, and into the adjacent portion of its anterior surface; it lies parallel with the true vocal cord, to which it is occasionally adherent. The superior fasciculus, the thinner, is inserted into the anterior surface and outer border of the arytenoid cartilage above the preceding fibres; it lies on the outer side of the sacculus laryngis, immediately beneath its mucous lining.

The Arytenoideus is a single muscle, filling up the posterior concave surface of the arytenoid cartilages. It arises from the posterior surface and outer border of one arytenoid cartilage, and is inserted into the corresponding parts of the opposite cartilage. It consists of three planes of fibres: two oblique and one transverse. The oblique fibres, the most superficial, form two fasciculi, which pass from the base of one cartilage to the apex of the opposite one. The transverse fibres, the deepest and most numerous, pass transversely across between the two cartilages; hence the Arytenoideus was formerly considered as several muscles, under the name of transversi and obliqui. A few of the oblique fibres are occasionally continued round the outer margin of the cartilage, and blend with the Thyro-arytenoid or the Arytæno-epiglottideus muscle.

The muscles of the epiglottis are, the

Thyro-epiglottideus.
Arytæno-epiglottideus superior.
Arytæno-epiglottideus inferior.
MUSCLES OF LARYNX.

The *Thyro-epiglottideus* is a delicate fasciculus, which arises from the inner surface of the thyroid cartilage, just external to the origin of the Thyro-arytenoid muscle, and spreading out upon the outer surface of the sacculus laryngis, some of its fibres are lost in the aryteno-epiglottidean fold, whilst others are continued forwards to the margin of the epiglottis (*Depressor epiglottidis*).

The *Aryteno-epiglottideus superior* consists of a few delicate muscular fasciculi, which arise from the apex of the arytenoid cartilage, and become lost in the fold of mucous membrane extending between the arytenoid cartilage and side of the epiglottis (*aryteno-glottidean folds*).

The *Aryteno-epiglottideus inferior* (Compressor sacculi laryngis, Hilton) arises from the arytenoid cartilage, just above the attachment of the superior vocal cord; passing forwards and upwards, it spreads out upon the inner and upper part of the sacculus laryngis, and is inserted, by a broad attachment, into the margin of the epiglottis. This muscle is separated from the preceding by an indistinct areolar interval.¹

Actions. In considering the action of the muscles of the larynx, they may be conveniently divided into two groups, viz.: 1. Those which open and close the glottis. 2. Those which regulate the degree of tension of the vocal cords.

1. The muscles which open the glottis are the Crico-arytenoidei postici; and those which close it are the Arytenoideus and the Crico-arytenoidei laterales.

2. The muscles which regulate the tension of the vocal cords are, the Crico-thyroidei, which tense and elongate them; and the Thyro-arytenoidei, which relax and shorten them. The Thyro-epiglottideus is a depressor of the epiglottis, and the Aryteno-epiglottidei constrict the superior aperture of the larynx, compress the sacculi laryngis, and empty them of their contents.

The *Crico-arytenoidei postici* separate the chordae vocales, and, consequently, open the glottis, by rotating the base of the arytenoid cartilages outwards and backwards; so that their anterior angles and the ligaments attached to them become widely separated, the vocal cords, at the same time, being made tense.

The *Crico-arytenoidei laterales* close the glottis, by rotating the base of the arytenoid cartilages inwards, so as to approximate their anterior angles.

The *Arytenoideus muscle* approximates the arytenoid cartilages, and thus closes the opening of the glottis, especially at its back part.

The *Crico-thyroid muscles* produce tension and elongation of the vocal cords, by drawing down the thyroid cartilage over the cricoid.

The *Thyro-arytenoidei muscles* draw the arytenoid cartilages, together with the part of the cricoid to which they are connected, forwards towards the thyroid, and thus shorten and relax the vocal cords.

The *Thyro-epiglottidei* depress the epiglottis, and assist in compressing the sacculi laryngis. The *Aryteno-epiglottideus superior* constricts the superior aperture of the larynx, when it is drawn upwards, during deglutition, and the opening closed by the epiglottis. The *Aryteno-epiglottideus inferior*, together with some fibres of the Thyro-arytenoidei, compress the sacculi laryngis.

The *Mucous Membrane* of the larynx is continuous above with that lining the mouth and pharynx, and is prolonged through the trachea and bronchi into the lungs. It lines both surfaces of the epiglottis, to which it is closely adherent, and forms the aryteno-epiglottidean folds which encircle the superior aperture of the larynx. It lines the whole of the cavity of the larynx; forms, by its reduplication, the chief part of the superior, or false, vocal cord; and, from the ventricle, is continued into the sacculus laryngis. It is then reflected over the true vocal cords, where it is thin, and very intimately adherent; covers the inner surface of the crico-thyroid membrane and cricoid cartilage; and is ultimately continuous with the lining membrane of the trachea. It is covered with columnar ciliated epithelium, below the superior vocal cord; but above this

¹ *Musculi triticeo-glossae*. Bochdalek junr. (Prager Vierteljahrschrift, 2d Part, 1866) describes a muscle hitherto entirely overlooked, except a brief statement in Henle's "Anatomy," which arises from the node of cartilage (corpus triticeum) in the posterior thyro-hyoid ligament; and passes forwards and upwards to enter the tongue along with the Kerato-glossus muscle. He met with this muscle eight times in twenty-two subjects. It occurred in both sexes, sometimes on both sides, at others on one only.
point, the cilia are found only in front, as high as the middle of the epiglottis. In the rest of its extent, the epithelium is of the squamous variety.

Glands. The mucous membrane of the larynx is furnished with numerous muciparous glands, the orifices of which are found in nearly every part; they are very numerous upon the epiglottis, being lodged in little pits in its substance; they are also found in large numbers along the posterior margin of the aryteno-epiglottidean fold, in front of the arytenoid cartilages, where they are termed the arytenoid glands. They exist also in large numbers upon the inner surface of the sacculus laryngis. None are found on the vocal cords.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries of the larynx are the laryngeal branches derived from the superior and inferior thyroid. The veins empty themselves into the superior middle and inferior thyroid veins. The lymphatics terminate in the deep cervical glands. The nerves are the superior laryngeal, and the inferior or recurrent laryngeal branches of the pneumogastric nerves, joined by filaments from the sympathetic. The superior laryngeal nerves supply the mucous membrane of the larynx and the Crico-thyroid muscles. The inferior
laryngeal nerves supply the remaining muscles. The Arytenoid muscle is supplied by both nerves.

THE TRACHEA. (Fig. 471.)

The Trachea, or air-tube, is a cartilaginous and membranous cylindrical tube flattened posteriorly, which extends from the lower part of the larynx, on a level with the fifth cervical vertebra, to opposite the third dorsal, where it divides into the two bronchi, one for each lung. The trachea measures about four inches and a half in length; its diameter, from side to side, is from three-quarters of an inch to an inch, being always greater in the male than in the female.

Relations. The anterior surface of the trachea is convex, and covered in the neck, from above downwards, by the isthmus of the thyroid gland, the inferior thyroid veins, the arteria thyroidea ima (when that vessel exists), the Sternohyoid and Stermo-thyroid muscles, the cervical fascia (in the interval between those muscles), and, more superficially, by the anastomosing branches between the anterior jugular veins; in the thorax, it is covered from before backwards by the first piece of the sternum, the remains of the thymus gland, the arch of the aorta, the innominate and left carotid arteries, and the deep cardiac plexus. It lies upon the oesophagus, which is directed to the left near the arch of the aorta; laterally, in the neck, it is in relation with the common carotid arteries, the lateral lobes of the thyroid gland, the inferior thyroid arteries, and recurrent laryngeal nerves; and, in the thorax, it lies in the interspace between the pleura, having the pneumogastric nerve on each side of it.

The Right Bronchus, wider, shorter, and more horizontal in direction than the left, is about an inch in length, and enters the right lung, opposite the fourth dorsal vertebra. The vena azygos arches over it, from behind; and the right pulmonary artery lies below, and then in front of it.

The Left Bronchus is smaller, more oblique, and longer than the right, being nearly two inches in length. It enters the root of the left lung, opposite the fifth dorsal vertebra, about an inch lower than the right bronchus. It crosses, in front of the oesophagus, the thoracic duct, and the descending aorta; passes beneath the arch of the aorta, and has the left pulmonary artery lying at first above, and then in front of it. If a transverse section is made across the trachea, a short distance above its point of bifurcation, and a bird’s eye view taken of its interior (Fig. 472), the septum placed at the bottom of the trachea and separating the two bronchi will be seen to occupy the left of the median line, as was first shown by Mr. Goodall, of Dublin, so that any solid body dropping into the trachea would naturally be directed towards the right bronchus, and this tendency is undoubtedly aided by the larger size of this tube, as compared with its fellow. This fact serves to explain why a foreign substance in the trachea generally falls into the right bronchus.

The trachea is composed of imperfect cartilaginous rings, fibrous membrane, muscular fibres, longitudinal yellow elastic fibres, mucous membrane, and glands.

The Cartilages vary from sixteen to twenty in number: each forms an imperfect ring, which surrounds about two-thirds of the cylinder of the trachea, being imperfect behind, where the tube is completed by fibrous membrane. The cartilages are placed horizontally above each other, separated by narrow membranous intervals. They measure about two lines in depth, and half a line in
thickness. Their outer surfaces are flattened, but, internally, they are convex, from being thicker in the middle than at the margins. The cartilages are connected together, at their margins, by an elastic fibrous membrane, which covers both their surfaces; and in the space between their extremities, behind, forms a distinct layer. The peculiar cartilages are the first and the last.

The first cartilage is broader than the rest, and sometimes divided at one end; it is connected by fibrous membrane with the lower border of the cricoid cartilage, with which, or with the succeeding cartilage, it is sometimes blended.

The last cartilage is thick and broad in the middle, in consequence of its lower border being prolonged downwards, and, at the same time, curved backwards, at the point of bifurcation of the trachea. It terminates on each side in an imperfect ring, which incloses the commencement of the bronchi. The cartilage above the last is somewhat broader than the rest at its centre. Two or more of the cartilages often unite, partially or completely, and are sometimes bifurcated at their extremities. They are highly elastic, and seldom ossify, even in advanced life. In the right bronchus the cartilages vary in number from six to eight; in the left, from nine to twelve. They are shorter and narrower than those of the trachea.

The Muscular Fibres are disposed in two layers, longitudinal and transverse. The longitudinal fibres are the most external, and arise by minute tendons from the termination of the tracheal cartilages, and from the fibrous membrane.

The Transverse Fibres (Trachealis muscle, Todd and Bowman), the most internal, form a thin layer, which extends transversely between the ends of the cartilages at the posterior part of the trachea. The muscular fibres are of the unstriped variety.

The Elastic Fibres are situated beneath the mucous membrane, inclosing the entire cylinder of the trachea; they are most abundant at its posterior part, where they are collected into longitudinal bundles.

The Mucous Membrane lining the tube is covered with columnar ciliated epithelium. It is continuous above with that of the larynx, and below with that of the lungs.

The Tracheal Glands are found in great abundance at the posterior part of the trachea. They are small, flattened, ovoid bodies, placed between the fibrous and muscular coats, each furnished with an excretory duct, which opens on the surface of the mucous membrane. Some glands of smaller size are also found at the sides of the trachea, between the layers of fibrous tissue connecting the rings, and others immediately beneath the mucous coat. The secretion from these glands serves to lubricate the inner surface of the trachea.

Vessels and Nerves. The trachea is supplied with blood by the inferior thyroid arteries. The veins terminate in the thyroid venous plexus. The nerves are derived from the pneumogastric and its recurrent branches, and from the sympathetic.

Surgical Anatomy. The air-passages may be opened in three different situations: through the crico-thyroid membrane (laryngotomy), through the cricoid cartilages and upper ring of the trachea (laryngo-tracheotomy), or through the trachea below the isthmus of the thyroid gland (tracheotomy). The student should, therefore, carefully consider the relative anatomy of the air-tube in each of these situations.

Beneath the integument of the laryngo-tracheal region, on either side of the median line, are the two anterior jugular veins. Their size and position vary; there is nearly always one, and frequently two; at the lower part of the neck they diverge, passing beneath the Sterno-mastoid muscles, and are frequently connected by a transverse communicating branch. These veins should, if possible, always be avoided in any operation on the larynx or trachea. If cut through, considerable hemorrhage occurs.

Beneath the cervical fascia are the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the contiguous edges of the former being near the median line; and beneath these muscles the following parts are met with, from above downwards: the thyroid cartilage, the crico-thyroid membrane, the cricoid cartilage, the trachea, and the isthmus of the thyroid gland.

The crico-thyroid space is very superficial, and may be easily felt beneath the skin as a depression about an inch below the pommum Adami; it is crossed transversely by a small artery, the crico-thyroid, the division of which is seldom accompanied by any troublesome hemorrhage.
SURGICAL ANATOMY OF LARYNX AND TRACHEA. 825

The isthmus of the thyroid gland usually crosses the second and third rings of the trachea; above it is found a large transverse communicating branch between the superior thyroid veins, and the isthmus is covered by a venous plexus, formed between the thyroid veins of opposite sides. On the sides of the thyroid gland, and below it, the veins converge to a single median vessel, or to two trunks which descend along the median line of the front of the trachea, to open into the innominate veins by valved orifices. In the infant, the thymus gland ascends a variable distance along the front of the trachea; and the innominate artery crosses the tube obliquely at the root of the neck, from left to right. The arteria thyroidea ima, when that vessel exists, passes from below upwards along the front of the trachea. The upper part of the trachea lies comparatively superficial; but the lower part passes obliquely downwards and backwards, so as to be deeply placed between the converging Sterno-mastoid muscles. In the child, the trachea is smaller, more deeply placed, and more movable than in the adult. In fat or short-necked people, or in those in whom the muscles of the neck are prominently developed, the trachea is more deeply placed than in the opposite conditions.

Fig. 473.—Surgical Anatomy of Laryngotracheal Region.
In the Infant.

From these observations, it must be evident that laryngotomy is anatomically the most simple operation, can most readily be performed, and should always be preferred, when particular circumstances do not render the operation of tracheotomy absolutely necessary. The operation is performed thus: The head being thrown back and steadied by an assistant, the finger is passed over the front of the neck, and the crico-thyroid depression felt for. A vertical incision is then made through the skin, in the middle line over this spot, and the crico-thyroid membrane is divided to a sufficient extent to allow of the introduction of a large curved tube. The crico thyroid artery is the only vessel of importance crossing this space. If it should be of large size, its division might produce troublesome hemorrhage.

Laryngotracheotomy, anatomically considered, is more dangerous than tracheotomy, on account of the small interspace between the cricoid cartilage and the isthmus of the thyroid gland; the communicating branches between the superior thyroid veins, which cover this spot, can hardly fail to be divided; and the greatest care will not, in some cases, prevent the division of part of the thyroid isthmus. If either of these structures is divided, the hemorrhage may be considerable.

Tracheotomy below the isthmus of the thyroid gland is performed thus: The head being thrown back and steadied by an assistant, an incision, an inch and a half or two inches in length, is made through the skin in the median line of the neck, from a little below the cricoid cartilage to the top of the sternum. The anterior jugular veins should be avoided, by keeping exactly in the median line; the deep fascia should then be divided, and the contiguous borders of the Sternohyoid muscles separated from each other. A quantity of loose areolar tissue, containing the inferior thyroid veins, must then be separated from the front of the trachea, with the handle of the scalpel; and when the trachea is well exposed, it should be opened by inserting the knife into it, dividing two or three of its rings from below upwards. It is a matter of the greatest importance to restrain, if possible, all hemorrhage before the tube is opened; otherwise, blood may pass into the trachea, and suffocate the patient.
THE PLEURA.

Each lung is invested, upon its external surface, by an exceedingly delicate serous membrane, the Pleura, which incloses the organ as far as its root, and is then reflected upon the inner surface of the thorax. The portion of the serous membrane investing the surface of the lung is called the *pleura pulmonalis* (visceral layer of pleura), while that which lines the inner surface of the chest is called the *pleura costalis* (parietal layer of pleura). The interspace or cavity between these two layers is called the *cavity of the pleura*. Each pleura is therefore a shut sac, one occupying the right, the other the left half of the thorax; and they are perfectly separate, not communicating with each other. The two pleura do not meet in the middle line of the chest, excepting at one point in front; an interspace being left between them, which contains all the viscera of the thorax, excepting the lungs: this is the *mediastinum*.

*Reflections of the pleura* (Fig. 474). Commencing at the sternum, the pleura passes outwards, covers the costal cartilages, the inner surface of the ribs and intercostal muscles, and at the back part of the thorax passes over the thoracic ganglia and their branches, and is reflected upon the sides of the bodies of the vertebrae, where it is separated by a narrow interspace the *posterior mediastinum* from the opposite pleura. From the vertebral column the pleura passes to the side of the pericardium, which it covers to a slight extent; it then covers the back part of the root of the lung, from the lower border of which a triangular fold descends vertically by the side of the posterior mediastinum to the Diaphragm. This fold is the broad ligament of the lung, the *ligamentum latum pulmonis*, and serves to retain the lower part of that organ in position. From the root, the pleura may be traced over the convex surface of the lung, the summit and base, and also over the sides of the fissures between the lobes. It covers its anterior surface, and the front part of its root, and is reflected upon
the side of the pericardium to the inner surface of the sternum. Below, it covers the under surface of the diaphragm. Above, its apex projects, in the form of a cul-de-sac, through the superior opening of the thorax into the neck, extending about an inch above the margin of the first rib, and receives the summit of the corresponding lung; this sac is strengthened, according to Dr. Sibson, by a dome-like expansion of fascia, derived from the lower part of the scaleni muscles.

A little above the middle of the sternum, the contiguous surfaces of the two pleurae are sometimes in contact for a slight extent; but above and below this point, the interval left between them forms the anterior mediastinum.

The inner surface of the pleura is smooth, polished, and moistened by a serous fluid; its outer surface is intimately adherent to the surface of the lung, and to the pulmonary vessels as they emerge from the pericardium; it is also adherent to the upper surface of the diaphragm: throughout the rest of its extent it is somewhat thicker, and may be separated from the adjacent parts with extreme facility.

The right pleural sac is shorter, wider, and reaches higher in the neck than the left.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries of the pleura are derived from the intercostal, the internal mammary, the phrenic, inferior thyroid, thymic, pericardiac, and bronchial. The veins correspond to the arteries. The lymphatics are very numerous. The nerves are derived from the phrenic and sympathetic (Luschka). Kölliker states that nerves accompany the ramifications of the bronchial arteries in the pleura pulmonalis.

**Mediastinum.**

The Mediastinum is the space left in the median line of the chest by the non-approximation of the two pleurae. It extends from the sternum in front to the spine behind, and contains all the viscera in the thorax, excepting the lungs. The mediastinum is subdivided, for convenience of description, into the anterior, middle, and posterior.

The anterior mediastinum is bounded in front by the sternum, on each side by the pleura, and behind by the pericardium. Owing to the oblique position of the heart towards the left side, this space is not parallel with the sternum, but directed obliquely from above downwards, and to the left of the median line; it is broad below, narrow above, very narrow opposite the second piece of the sternum, the contiguous surfaces of the two pleurae being occasionally united over a small space. The anterior mediastinum contains the origins of the Sternohyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the Triangularis sterni, the internal mammary vessels of the left side, the remains of the thymus gland, and a quantity of loose areolar tissue, in which some lymphatic vessels are found ascending from the convex surface of the liver.

The middle mediastinum is the broadest part of the interpleural space. It contains the heart inclosed in the pericardium, the ascending aorta, the superior vena cava, the bifurcation of the trachea, the pulmonary arteries and veins, and the phrenic nerves.

The posterior mediastinum is an irregular triangular space, running parallel with the vertebral column; it is bounded in front by the pericardium and roots of the lungs, behind by the vertebral column, and on either side by the pleura. It contains the descending aorta, the greater and lesser azygos veins and left superior intercostal vein, the pneumogastric and splanchnic nerves, the oesophagus, thoracic duct, and some lymphatic glands.

**The Lungs.**

The Lungs are the essential organs of respiration; they are two in number, placed one in each of the lateral cavities of the chest, separated from each other
by the heart and other contents of the mediastinum. Each lung is conical in shape, and presents for examination an apex, a base, two borders, and two surfaces (see Fig. 477).

Fig. 475.—The Posterior Mediastinum. Anterior View.

The apex forms a tapering cone, which extends into the root of the neck, about an inch to an inch and a half above the level of the first rib.

The base is broad, concave, and rests upon the convex surface of the Dia-
The external or thoracic surface is smooth, convex, of considerable extent, and corresponds to the form of the cavity of the chest, being deeper behind than in front.

The inner surface is concave. It presents, in front, a depression corresponding to the convex surface of the pericardium, and behind, a deep fissure (the hilum pulmonis) which gives attachment to the root of the lung.

The posterior border is rounded and broad, and is received in the deep con-
cavity on either side of the spinal column. It is much longer than the anterior border, and projects below between the ribs and the Diaphragm.

The anterior border is thin and sharp, and overlaps the front of the pericardium.

The anterior border of the right lung corresponds to the median line of the sternum, and is in contact with its fellow, the pleura being interposed, as low as the fourth costal cartilage; below this, the contiguous borders are separated by an irregularly shaped interval, formed at the expense of the anterior border of the left lung, and in which the pericardium is exposed.

Each lung is divided into two lobes, an upper and lower, by a long and deep fissure, which extends from the upper part of the posterior border of the organ,

![Fig. 477.—Front View of the Heart and Lungs.](image)

about three inches from its apex, downwards and forwards to the lower part of its anterior border. This fissure penetrates nearly to the root. In the right lung the upper lobe is partially divided by a second and shorter fissure, which extends from the middle of the preceding, forwards and upwards, to the anterior margin of the organ, marking off a small triangular portion, the middle lobe.

The right lung is the larger; it is broader than the left, owing to the inclination of the heart to the left side; it is also shorter by an inch, in consequence of the Diaphragm rising higher on the right side to accommodate the liver. The right lung has three lobes.

The left lung is smaller, narrower, and longer than the right, and has only two lobes.

A little above the middle of the inner surface of each lung, and nearer its posterior than its anterior border, is its root, by which the lung is connected to the heart and the trachea. The root is formed by the bronchial tube, the pul-
monary artery, the pulmonary veins, the bronchial arteries and veins, the pulmonary plexus of nerves, lymphatics, bronchial glands, and areolar tissue, all of which are inclosed by a reflection of the pleura. The root of the right lung lies behind the superior vena cava and upper part of the right auricle, and below the vena azygos. That of the left lung passes beneath the arch of the aorta, and in front of the descending aorta; the phrenic nerve and the anterior pulmonary plexus lie in front of each, and the pneumogastric and posterior pulmonary plexus behind each.

The chief structures composing the root of each lung are arranged in a similar manner from before backwards on both sides, viz.: the pulmonary veins most anterior; the pulmonary artery in the middle; and the bronchus, together with the bronchial vessels, behind. From above downwards, on the two sides, their arrangement differs, thus:—

On the right side, their position is, bronchus, pulmonary artery, pulmonary veins; but on the left side their position is, pulmonary artery, bronchus, pulmonary veins; which is accounted for by the bronchus being placed on a lower level on the left than on the right side.

The weight of both lungs together is about forty-two ounces, the right lung being two ounces heavier than the left; but much variation is met with according to the amount of blood or serous fluid they may contain. The lungs are heavier in the male than in the female, their proportion to the body being, in the former, as 1 to 37, in the latter as 1 to 48. The specific gravity of the lung-tissue varies from 345 to 748, water being 1000.

The color of the lungs at birth is a pinkish-white; in adult life, a dark slate-color, mottled in patches; and as age advances, this mottling assumes a black color. The coloring matter consists of granules of a carbonaceous substance deposited in the areolar tissue near the surface of the organ. It increases in quantity as age advances, and is more abundant in males than in females. The posterior border of the lung is usually darker than the anterior. The surface of the lung is smooth, shining, and marked out into numerous polyhedral spaces, indicating the lobules of the organ: the area of each of these spaces is crossed by numerous lighter lines.

The substance of the lung is of a light, porous, spongy texture; it floats in water, and crepitates when handled, owing to the presence of air in the tissue; it is also highly elastic; hence the collapsed state of these organs when they are removed from the closed cavity of the thorax.

Structure. The lungs are composed of an external serous coat, a subserous areolar tissue, and the pulmonary substance or parenchyma.

The serous coat is derived from the pleura; it is thin, transparent, and invests the entire organ as far as the root.

The subserous areolar tissue contains a large proportion of elastic fibres; it invests the entire surface of the lung, and extends inwards between the lobules.

The parenchyma is composed of lobules, which, although closely connected together by an interlobular areolar tissue, are quite distinct from one another, and are easily separable in the fetus. The lobules vary in size; those on the surface are large, of a pyramidal form, the base turned towards the surface; those in the interior smaller, and of various forms. Each lobule is composed of one of the ramifications of the bronchial tube and its terminal air-cells, and of the ramifications of the pulmonary and bronchial vessels, lymphatics, and nerves: all of these structures being connected together by areolar fibrous tissue.

The bronchus, upon entering the substance of the lung, divides and subdivides dichotomously throughout the entire organ. Sometimes three branches arise together, and occasionally small lateral branches are given off from the sides of a main trunk. Each of the smaller subdivisions of the bronchi enters a pulmonary lobule (lobular bronchial tube), and, again subdividing, ultimately terminates in the intercellular passages and air-cells of which the lobule is composed.
Within the lungs the bronchial tubes are circular, not flattened, and their constituent elements present the following peculiarities of structure.

Fig. 478.—The Roots of the Lungs and Posterior Pulmonary Plexus, seen from Behind.

The cartilages are not imperfect rings, but consist of thin laminae, of varied form and size, scattered irregularly along the sides of the tube, being most distinct at the points of division of the bronchi. They may be traced into tubes, the diameter of which is only one-fourth of a line. Beyond this point, the tubes are wholly membranous. The fibrous coat and the longitudinal elastic fibres are continued into the smallest ramifications of the bronchi. The muscular coat is disposed in the form of a continuous layer of annular fibres, which may be traced upon the smallest bronchial tubes: they consist of the unstriped variety of muscular fibre. The mucous membrane lines the bronchi and its ramifications throughout, and is covered with columnar ciliated epithelium.
According to the observations of Mr. Rainey, the lobular bronchial tubes, on entering the substance of the lobules, divide and subdivide from four to nine times, according to the size of the lobule, continuing to diminish in size until they attain a diameter of \( \frac{1}{450} \) to \( \frac{1}{400} \) of an inch. They then become changed in structure, losing their cylindrical form, and are continued onwards as irregular passages (intercellular passages, Rainey—air-sacs, Waters), through the substance of the lobule, their sides and extremities being closely covered by numerous sacular dilatations, the air-cells. This arrangement resembles most closely the naked-eye appearances observed in the reticulated structure of the lung of the tortoise, and other reptilia. Opinions have differed as to the existence of communications or anastomoses between the intercellular passages, or air-sacs. According to Dr. Waters, these air-sacs, as he terms them, are arranged in groups, or "lobulettes," of five or six, which spring from the terminal dilatation of a single bronchial tube, but have no other communication with each other, or with neighboring lobulettes, than that which is afforded by their common connection with the bronchial tubes.

The air-cells, or alveoli (Waters), are small, polyhedral, alveolar recesses, separated from each other by thin septa, and communicating freely with the intercellular passages or air-sacs. They are well seen on the surface of the lung, and vary from \( \frac{1}{160} \)th to \( \frac{1}{60} \)th of an inch in diameter; being largest on the surface, at the thin borders, and at the apex; and smallest in the interior.

At the termination of the bronchial tubes, in the intercellular passages, their constituent elements become changed: their walls are formed by an interlacing of the longitudinal elastic bundles withfibrous tissue; the muscular fibres disappear, and the mucous membrane becomes thin and delicate, and lined with a layer of squamous epithelium. The latter membrane lines the air-cells, and forms by its reduplications the septa intervening between them.

The Pulmonary Artery conveys the venous blood to the lungs: it divides into branches which accompany the bronchial tubes, and terminates in a dense capillary network, upon the walls of the intercellular passages and air-cells. From this network, the radicles of the pulmonary veins arise; coalescing into large branches, they accompany the arteries, and return the blood, purified by its passage through the capillaries, to the left auricle of the heart. In the lung, the branches of the pulmonary artery are usually above and in front of a bronchial tube, the vein below.

The Pulmonary Capillaries form plexuses which lie immediately beneath the mucous membrane, on the walls and septa of the air-cells, and upon the walls of the intercellular passages. In the septa between the cells, the capillary network forms a single layer. The capillaries form a very minute network, the meshes of which are smaller than the vessels themselves; their walls are also exceedingly thin. The vessels of neighboring lobules are distinct from each other, and do not anastomose; and, according to Dr. Waters, those of the separate groups of intercellular passages, or air-sacs (which groups he denominates lobulettes), are also independent; so that in the septa between two adjoining lobulettes, there would be a double layer of capillaries, one layer belonging to each of the adjacent air-sacs, or intercellular passages. If this is really the arrangement of the vessels, it would follow that, in the septa between the air-cells (or alveoli), the blood in the capillaries would be exposed on all sides to the action of the air, since it is circulating in a single layer of vessels, which is in contact with the membrane of the air-passages on both sides: but that, in the septa between the intercellular passages (or air-sacs) the blood in the double layer of capillaries will be in contact with the air on one side only.

---

1 *Medico-Chirurgical Transactions*, vol. xxviii., 1845.
3 The meshes are only 0.002" to 0.008" in width, while the vessels are 0.003" to 0.005".

Kolliker, *Human Microscopic Anatomy*. 65
The *Bronchial Arteries* supply blood for the nutrition of the lung: they are derived from the thoracic aorta, and accompanying the bronchial tubes, are distributed to the bronchial glands, and upon the walls of the larger bronchial tubes and pulmonary vessels, and terminate in the deep bronchial veins. Others are distributed in the interlobular areolar tissue, and terminate partly in the deep, partly in the superficial, bronchial veins. Lastly, some ramify upon the walls of the smallest bronchial tubes, and terminate in the pulmonary veins.

The *Superficial and Deep Bronchial Veins* unite at the root of the lung, and terminate on the right side in the vena azygos; on the left side, in the superior intercostal vein.

According to Dr. Waters, the bronchial veins do not exist within the proper substance of the lung, but commence at or near the root of the lung, by branches which lie on the large bronchial tubes. He also denies that the bronchial arteries contribute to the formation of the pulmonary plexus, believing that the communication between the bronchial and pulmonary system of vessels takes place in the pulmonary veins. If this view be correct, almost the whole of the blood carried by the bronchial arteries must be returned to the heart by the pulmonary veins, and thus the great mass of pure, or arterial, blood which is carried by the pulmonary veins would be adulterated by a small quantity of carbonized or venous blood which has passed through the bronchial circulation.

The *Lymphatics* consist of a superficial and deep set: they terminate at the root of the lung, in the bronchial glands.

**Nerves.** The lungs are supplied from the anterior and posterior pulmonary plexuses, formed chiefly by branches from the sympathetic and pneumogastric. The filaments from these plexuses accompany the bronchial tubes, upon which they are lost. Small ganglia are found upon these nerves.

**Thyroid Gland.**

The Thyroid Gland bears much resemblance in structure to other glandular organs, and is usually classified together with the thymus, supra-renal capsules, and spleen, under the head of *ductless glands*, since it has no excretory duct. Its function is unknown, but, from its situation in connection with the trachea and larynx, the thyroid body is usually described with those organs, although it takes no part in the function of respiration. It is situated at the upper part of the trachea, and consists of two lateral lobes, placed one on each side of that tube, and connected together by a narrow transverse portion, the isthmus.

Its *anterior surface* is convex, and covered by the Sterno-hyoid, Sterno-thyroid, and Omohyoid muscles.

Its *lateral surfaces*, also convex, lie in contact with the sheath of the common carotid artery.

Its *posterior surface* is concave, and embraces the trachea and larynx. The posterior borders of the gland extend as far back as the lower part of the pharynx.

The thyroid is of a brownish-red color. Its weight varies from one to two ounces. It is larger in females than in males, and becomes slightly increased in size during menstruation. It occasionally becomes enormously hypertrophied, constituting the disease called bronchocele, or goitre. Each lobe is somewhat conical in shape, about two inches in length, and three-quarters of an inch in breadth, the right lobe being the larger of the two.

The *isthmus* connects the lower third of the two lateral lobes; it measures about half an inch in breadth, and the same in depth, and usually covers the second and third rings of the trachea. Its situation presents, however, many variations, a point of importance in the operation of tracheotomy. Sometimes the isthmus is altogether wanting.

A third lobe, of conical shape, called the *pyramid*, occasionally arises from the left side of the upper part of the isthmus, or from the left lobe, and ascends
as high as the hyoid bone. It is occasionally quite detached, or divided into two parts, or altogether wanting.

A few muscular bands are occasionally found attached, above, to the body of the hyoid bone, and below, to the isthmus of the gland, or its pyramidal process. These form a muscle, which was named by Sömmering the Levator glandulae thyroideae.

**Structure.** The thyroid consists of numerous minute closed vesicles, composed of a homogeneous membrane, inclosed in a dense capillary plexus, and connected together into imperfect lobules, by areolar tissue. These vesicles are spherical or oblong, perfectly distinct, and contain a yellowish fluid, in which are found floating numerous “dotted corpuscles” and cells. The fluid coagulates by heat or alcohol, but preserves its transparency. In the fetus, and in young subjects, the corpuscles lie in a single layer, in contact with the inner surface of these cavities, and become detached during the process of growth. The individual vesicles are inclosed in a vascular connective tissue by means of which they are packed together into lobules, the aggregation of which forms the lobes of the gland. In the fetal state, these vesicles are lined by a layer of small cylindrical epithelial cells, the cavity being filled with a finely granular substance. Early in life commences, according to Frey, a colloid transformation by which the cells of the epithelium are separated from the lining of the vesicle, their nuclei become free and their contents are converted into a colloid, or gluey matter. It is the excessive increase of this colloid matter which, according to this author, constitutes the essential phenomenon in the disease above alluded to as bronchocele or goitre, but its occurrence to some extent he regards as normal. The epithelial cells of the vesicles are supported on a basement membrane, and in the cellular tissue external to this are found the terminations of the small vessels, and the commencement of the lymphatic channels.

**Vessels and Nerves.** The arteries supplying the thyroid are the superior and inferior thyroid, and sometimes an additional branch (thyroidea media, t. ima) from the arteria innominata, or the arch of the aorta, which ascends upon the front of the trachea. The arteries are remarkable for their large size and frequent anastomoses. The veins form a plexus on the surface of the gland, and on the front of the trachea, from which arise the superior, middle, and inferior thyroid veins; the two former terminating in the internal jugular, the latter in the vena innominata. The lymphatics are numerous, of large size, and terminate in the thoracic and right lymphatic ducts. They are thus described by Frey: “The whole envelope of the organ is covered by knotted trunks, which take their origin from a network of very complicated canals, situated in a deeper layer of the former. This latter network is formed around the secondary lobules of the gland by the reticular intercommunications of these canals (Fig. 479, f). From the peripheral network formed of canals burrowing through the connective tissue of the capsule, lateral ramifications are given off which penetrate into the interior, and gradually inclose the primary lobes in complete rings, or more or less perfect arches (d, d). From these a few fine terminal passages with blind ends (e) are seen sinking in between the different vesicles.” The nerves are...
derived from the pneumogastrie, and from the middle and inferior cervical ganglia of the sympathetic.

Chemical Composition. The thyroid gland consists of albumen, traces of gelatine, stearine, oleine, extractive matter, alkaline and earthy salts, and water. The salts are chloride of sodium, alkaline sulphates, phosphate of potash, lime, magnesia, and a trace of oxide of iron.

Thymus Gland.

The Thymus Gland presents much resemblance in structure to other glandular organs, and is another of the organs denominated ductless glands.

The thymus gland is a temporary organ, attaining its full size at the end of the second year, when it ceases to grow, and gradually dwindles, until, at puberty, it has almost disappeared. If examined, when its growth is most active, it will be found to consist of two lateral lobes, placed in close contact along the middle line, situated partly in the anterior mediastinum, partly in the neck, and extending from the fourth costal cartilage upwards, as high as the lower border of the thyroid gland. It is covered by the sternum, and by the origins of the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles. In the mediastinum, it rests upon the pericardium, being separated from the arch of the aorta and great vessels by the thoracic fascia. In the neck, it lies on the front and sides of the trachea, behind the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles. The two lobes generally differ in size; they are occasionally united, so as to form a single mass; and sometimes separated by an intermediate lobe. The thymus is of a pinkish-gray color, soft and lobulated on its surfaces. It is about two inches in length, one and a half in breadth, below, and about three or four lines in thickness. At birth it weighs about half an ounce.

Structure. Each lateral lobe is composed of numerous lobules, held together by delicate arcolar tissue; the entire gland being inclosed in an investing capsule of a similar, but denser structure. The primary lobules vary in size from a pin’s head to a small pea. Each lobule contains, in its interior, a small cavity, which is surrounded with smaller or secondary lobules also hollow. The cavities of the secondary and primary lobules communicate; those of the latter opening into the great central cavity, or reservoir of the thymus, which extends through the entire length of each lateral half of the gland. The central cavity is lined by a vascular membrane, which is prolonged into all the subordinate cavities, and contains a milk-white fluid resembling chyle.

If the investing capsule and vessels, as well as the arcolar tissue connecting the lobules, are removed from the surface of either lateral lobe, it will be seen that the central cavity is folded upon itself, and admits of being drawn out into a lengthened tubular cord, around which the primary lobules are attached in a spiral manner, like knots upon a rope. Such is the condition of the organ at an early period of its development; for Mr. Simon has shown, that the primitive form of the thymus is a linear tube, from which as its development proceeds, lateral diverticula lead outwards, the tube ultimately becoming obscure, from its surface being covered with numerous lobules.

According to Oesterlen and Mr. Simon, the cavities in the secondary lobules are surrounded by rounded saccular dilatations or vesicles, which open into it. These vesicles are formed by a homogeneous membrane, inclosed in a dense capillary plexus.

The primary lobules are made up of numerous small polyhedral granules, or acini, which bear a considerable resemblance to the lymphoid follicles of the tonsils, intestine, and other parts, except that they are usually described as containing a central cavity, which is, in fact, a diverticulum from the general cavity of the gland. By many observers, however, both the cavity of the acini and the general cavity are regarded as the effect of post-mortem changes. Ex-

1 Frey denies that the vagus supplies any of these nerves, deriving them entirely from the sympathetic.
ternal to this central cavity with its chylelike contents lie the capillary vessels of the acinus, embedded in a large quantity of lymphoid tissue. The elements which are found in the acini are chiefly granular free nuclei (a), lymphoid cells (b), larger cells, some of them many-nucleated, and often undergoing fatty degeneration (d, e, f), and peculiar encapsulated bodies, some of them merely the foregoing cells surrounded by concentric layers (g), others consisting of an assemblage of the former inclosed in a kind of nest, like the "bird-nest cells" found in epithelioma.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries supplying the thymus are derived from the internal mammary, and from the superior and inferior thyroid. The veins terminate in the left vena innominata, and in the thyroid veins. The lymphatics are of large size, arise in the substance of the gland, and are said to terminate in the internal jugular vein. Sir A. Cooper believed that these vessels carried into the blood the secretion formed in the substance of the thymus. The nerves are exceedingly minute; they are derived from the pneumogastric and sympathetic. Branches from the descendens noni and phrenic reach the investing capsule, but do not penetrate into the substance of the gland.

Chemical Composition. The solid animal constituents of the thymus are albumen and fibrine in large quantities, gelatine and other animal matters. The salts are alkaline and earthy phosphates, with chloride of potassium. It contains about 80 per cent. of water.
The Urinary Organs.

THE KIDNEYS.¹

Definition and General Description. The kidneys are the two largest tubular glands of the body, and are intended for the secretion of urine. They are found at the back part of the abdomen, behind the peritoneum, situated in the lumbar regions; each kidney extending from the eleventh rib nearly to the crest of the ilium, but the right a little lower than the left, in consequence of the large space occupied by the liver. They are usually embedded in a considerable quantity of fat, which principally holds them in position, though they are also to some extent sustained by the large bloodvessels with which they are connected.

Each kidney is about four inches in length, two in breadth, and one in thickness, the left being somewhat larger, though thinner, than the right. The weight of the kidney in the adult male varies from $4\frac{1}{2}$ oz. to 6 oz., in the adult female from 4 oz. to $5\frac{1}{2}$ oz., the left being nearly always heavier than the right by about two drachms. The combined weight of the two kidneys in proportion to the body is about 1 to 240. The renal substance is of a dark red color, and dense in texture; but it is easily lacerable under mechanical force.

Relations. Each kidney presents for examination two surfaces, two borders, an upper and a lower extremity.

The anterior surface is convex and entirely covered by peritoneum. It is in relation, on the right side of the body, with the back part of the right lobe of the liver, the descending portion of the duodenum, and the ascending colon; and on the left, with the great end of the stomach, the lower end of the spleen, the tail of the pancreas, and the descending colon.

The posterior surface, flatter than the anterior, rests upon the corresponding crus of the diaphragm in front of the eleventh and twelfth ribs, the anterior lamella of the aponeurosis of the transversalis abdominis which separates it from the quadratus lumborum, and on the psoas magnus.

The external border is convex, and directed outwards and slightly forwards, towards the parietes of the abdomen.

The internal border, concave, is interrupted at its central portion by a notch or fissure of about an inch in length, called the hilum of the kidney. This fissure opens into a hollow cavity called the sinus, and through it pass the vessels, duct (ureter), nerves, and lymphatics of the kidney enveloped in fat and cellular tissue. Let the vessels, nerves, duct, and fat be removed so as to leave only the

¹ The description is from the pen of my friend Mr. E. J. Spitta, late Demonstrator of Anatomy at St. George’s Hospital.
kidney proper; the hilum will be seen opening into the sinus just as, in osteology, a fissure opens into a fossa. The relation of the hilum to the sinus will be understood by comparing Fig. 481, 482. In the former the hilum and sinus are seen in section, the hilum occupied by the commencement of the ureter proper, the sinus filled by the pelvis. In the latter figure, the pelvis has been separated from the greater part of the sinus of the kidney, and partially lifted out of it. The relative position of the vessels and ureter to each other is usually, although not always, as follows: from above downwards; artery, vein, ureter: from before backwards; vein, artery, ureter.

Fig. 482.—Diagram of the Hilum, Sinus, and Pelvis of the Kidney.

\[ \text{Outline of Kidney.} \]

a. The hilum cut open, leading into (b) the sinus.  c. The pelvis of the ureter partly separated from the walls of the sinus, and lifted out; the ureter is seen continuous with it, and emerging from the hilum below.  d, e. The renal artery and vein passing through the sinus.

The superior extremity, directed slightly inwards as well as upwards, is thick and rounded, and embraced by the suprarenal capsule. It corresponds on the left side with the upper, and on the right with the lower border of the eleventh rib.

The inferior extremity, directed a little outwards as well as downwards, is smaller than the superior and more flattened; it extends nearly as low as the crest of the ilium.

General Structure of the Kidney. The structure of the kidney, as seen by the naked eye on making a section from its convex to its concave border, will be found to consist of two parts; the glandular portion, or kidney proper, and its excretory duct or ureter, which latter will be described separately.

The kidney proper presents two distinct parts: the outer or cortical portion, surrounded by the capsule, and the inner or medullary, which latter is arranged in large conical masses called the pyramids of Malpighi.

1 In this section the two first portions of the duct are alone seen. These are usually called the calices and pelvis of the kidney; but inasmuch as they are really part of the ureter, they will be described under that head.
URINARY ORGANS.

The capsule is a fibrous coat formed of dense areolar tissue. It is thin and smooth and easily removed from the cortical structure, to which it is connected only by small bloodvessels and by numerous fine fibrous processes continuous with the connective tissue of the kidney. At the hilum it is reflected inwards so as to line the sides of the sinus; and at the floor of that cavity becomes continuous with the fibrous sheaths of the vessels and nerves, and with the cup-like commencements of the ureter above mentioned, called the calices.

The cortical structure is of a reddish-brown color, soft, granular, and easily lacerable. It is found everywhere immediately beneath the capsule, and is seen to extend itself in an arched form over each medullary pyramid. The part separating the sides of any two pyramids, through which the arteries and nerves enter and the veins and lymphatics emerge from the kidney, is called a cortical column, or column of Bertini (A, A', Fig. 481); whilst that portion which stretches from one cortical column to the next, and intervenes between the base of the pyramid and the capsule, which is marked by the dotted line, extending from A to A' (Fig. 481), is called a cortical arch, the depth of which varies from a third to half an inch. The cortical structure is composed of convoluted and straight tubes called tubuli uriniferi; of bloodvessels, nerves, and lymphatics; and also of numerous little red masses disseminated throughout its substance known as the Malpighian bodies. These bodies, with the interstitial tissue connecting them, will be described under the head of the "Minute Structure of the Kidney."

The medullary structure, as before said, is seen to consist of palish-red colored striated conical masses, the pyramids of Malpighi; the number of which, varying from eight to eighteen, corresponds to the number of lobes of which the organ in the fetal state is composed. The base of each pyramid is surrounded by a cortical arch and directed towards the circumference of the kidney; the sides are contiguous with the cortical columns; whilst the apex, known as the papilla or mamilla of the kidney, is covered by mucous membrane and is seen projecting into one of the calices of the ureter.

In addition to the arteries and veins and the "looped tubes of Henle," hereafter to be described, each pyramid is composed of a large number of straight uriniferous tubes passing from base to apex, and which, by repeated inosu-
tions at very acute angles, are reduced to a comparatively small number, and terminate in open mouths on the mucous surface of the mamilla.

**Minute Structure of the Kidney.** Under this head the Malpighian bodies will be first described; then the course and structure of the tubuli uriniferi; and lastly, the bloodvessels, nerves, lymphatics, and connective tissue or intertubular stroma.

The **Malpighian bodies** are small rounded masses averaging \( \frac{3}{4} \) th of an inch in diameter, of a deep red color, found only in the cortical structure of the kidney; being scattered throughout the columns of Bertini, but regularly disposed in double rows in the cortical arches. Each of these little bodies is composed of two parts: a central glomerulus of vessels called a **Malpighian tuft**, and a membranous envelope, the **Malpighian capsule**, which latter is a small pouch-like commencement of a uriniferous tubule.¹

The **Malpighian tuft**, or vascular glomerulus, consists of the ramifications of certain small vessels termed afferent and efferent renals, the latter being usually smaller than the former. Each **renal afferent** in the cortical arches is derived from an interlobular artery (Fig. 454), but in the cortical columns it springs from one of the arteriae proprie renales (Fig. 491). Having pierced the capsule, usually at a point opposite to the commencing tubule (Figs. 483, 484), it divides in a radiating or tuft-like manner into several terminal branches, which ultimately inosculate so as to form a network of capillaries, from which the efferent arises (qf, Fig. 484). This latter vessel makes its egress from the capsule near to the point where the afferent enters; and then, anastomosing with other efferents from other tufts, contributes to form a dense *venous plexus* around the urinary tubes adjacent (shown at \( m \) in Fig. 484).

The **Malpighian capsule**, which surrounds the glomerulus, is formed of homogeneous membrane, thicker here than at any other part of the tube. It is pierced at a point usually opposite the centre of the tube, with which it is continuous, by the afferent and efferent renals, and is lined upon its inner surface by a delicate layer of either cubical or squamous epithelium; but as regards this layer, whether it is prolonged over the tuft either in whole or in part, there is a diversity of opinion among many of the most eminent observers. According to Henle, Ecker, and Bowman, it is not reflected upon the tuft at all, so that

![Fig. 485](image)

the latter hangs free and uncovered in the interior of the capsule (Fig. 485 A); on the other hand, Gerlach, Isaachs, Moleschott, and Chrzoniszewsky assert that it can be traced upon the whole of the tuft, and that the cells are even larger and better marked than those upon the internal surface of the capsule.

¹ In former editions of this work, the Malpighian capsule was said to be found at the side as well as the commencement of a tubule (Gerlach); only the latter position, however, is now recognized in the human subject.

(Fig. 485 b); whilst yet a third arrangement has been described by Kölliker, who says that the tuft has no epithelial lining on the greater part of its extent, but upon that portion which looks towards the commencing tubule a special layer of cubical cells can always be seen (Fig. 485 c). In the frog, the cells lining the interior of the capsule, near its junction with the tube, are provided with cilia; but in the human subject their presence has not been satisfactorily demonstrated.

Course of the Tubuli Uriniferi. The tubuli uriniferi commence as Malpighian capsules, and soon after their origin have an average diameter of \( \frac{1}{100} \) th of an inch. Thus arising, they pass in so convoluted a manner throughout the cortical substance as to merit the name of tubuli contorti. Many of them, according to Henle, soon after their commencement, suddenly become smaller and straighter, and, dipping down to a variable depth in the medullary structure, and returning from thence somewhat larger, re-enter the cortical. The portion of the tube between the loop and the straight tube is sometimes called the intercalated convoluted tube (b', Fig. 473). The tubes taking the course above described form a kind of loop, and are known as the looped or recurrent tubes of Henle, the descending and ascending limbs of which have the diameter of \( \frac{1}{500} \) th and \( \frac{1}{1000} \) th of an inch respectively. The ascending limbs, having arrived at the cortical structure, become again convoluted, and, together with those of the tubuli contorti which have not entered into the loops, end in the straight tubes, or tubuli recti, next to be described.

Each straight, otherwise called a collecting or receiving tube, commences at about one line from the
THE KIDNEYS.

surface of the kidney by the coalescence of two or more of the convoluted tubes above mentioned. Passing towards the medullary substance, it continues to receive on either side more convoluted tubes, until at length it enters a pyramid of Malpighi, where it joins at very acute angles with receiving tubes similarly formed, and finally terminates by an opening at the mamillary apex, emptying its contents into the calyx adjacent. According to Huschke there are about a thousand straight tubes opening upon the apex of each pyramid, but their number is estimated by Kölliker at about five hundred.

It will be seen from the above description, that each of the straight tubes whilst in the cortical structure is surrounded by numerous tubuli contorti; and hence, that a kind of pyramid is formed; the apex of which consists of the tubulus rectus as it enters the Malpighian pyramid, whilst the base, composed of the commencing straight tube with the tubuli contorti from which it originates, looks towards the circumference of the kidney. Pyramids so formed are called the pyramids of Ferrein. They have also been named "lobules of the kidney," and the vessels which run between them "interlobular." The student must not confound these with the lobes mentioned on p. 840, of which the fetal kidney is composed. The pyramids of Ferrein are found in the cortical arches only, and were considered by Ferrein as quite distinct; but although they are for the most part separated by interlobular vessels and two rows of Malpighian bodies, yet it is now generally admitted that certain tubes of adjacent lobules intercommunicate. In the columns of Bertini no definite lobular arrangement is said to exist, on account of the absence of straight tubes; the tubuli contorti of those parts meeting the tubuli recti at the base of the Malpighian pyramids, and not at the sides adjacent.

Fig. 488.1—Transverse Section of Pyramidal Substance of Kidney of Pig, the bloodvessels of which are injected.

\[ \text{Diagram:} \]

\[ a. \text{ Large collecting tube, cut across, lined with cylindrical epithelium.} \quad b. \text{ Branch of collecting tube, cut across, lined with epithelium with shorter cylinders.} \quad c \text{ and } d. \text{ Henle's loops cut across.} \quad e. \text{ Bloodvessels cut across.} \quad d. \text{ Connective tissue ground-substance.} \]

Structure of the Tubuli Uriniferi. The tubuli uriniferi consist of basement membrane lined with epithelium. In the tubuli contorti it is more or less spheroidal; in the straight tubes and the ascending or larger limb of Henle's loop large and cloudy, being of the cubical variety; whilst in the descending limb it is smaller and transparent, closely resembling the endothelium of blood-vessels. Hence, although the two limbs of Henle's loops differ much in size, their bore is almost similar, owing to the different thickness of their epithelial lining.

The Renal Bloodvessels; their origin, course, and distribution. The kidney is plentifully supplied with blood by the renal artery, a large offset of the abdomi-

1 From the "Handbook for the Physiological Laboratory."
nal aorta, which enters the sinus through the hilum, dividing in its passage through the latter into four or five branches. These, whilst in the sinus, give off a few twigs for the nutrition of the surrounding tissues, and terminate in the anterius propria renales, which enter the kidney proper in the columns of Bertini. Two of these pass to each pyramid of Malpighi and run along its sides for its entire length, giving off as they advance the afferent vessels of the Malpighian columns. Having arrived at the bases of the pyramids, they make a bend in their course, so as to lie between the bases of the pyramids and the

---

1 From the "Handbook for the Physiological Laboratory."
cortical arches, where they break up into two distinct sets of branches devoted to the supply of the remaining portions of the kidney.

The first set, the interlobular arteries (Figs. 491, 492, b), are given off at right angles from the side of the arteriae proprie renales looking towards the cortical substance, and passing directly outwards between the pyramids of Ferrein, supply the capsule, terminating in the stellate plexus of veins beneath that structure. In their outward course they support the Malpighian bodies by supplying them with afferent vessels, which, having pierced the capsule, end in the Malpighian tufts. From each tuft the corresponding renal efferent arises, which, having made its egress from the capsule near to the point where the afferent entered, anastomoses with other efferents from other tufts, and contributes to form a dense venous plexus around the urinary tubes adjacent.

The second set from the arteriae proprie renales are for the supply of the medullary pyramids, which they enter at their bases; and passing through their substance straight to their apices, terminate in the venousplexuses found in that situation. They are called the arteriole rectae (Figs. 491, 492, f).

The Renal Veins arise from three sources: the veins beneath the capsule, the plexuses around the tubuli contorti in the cortical arches, and the plexus situated at the apices of the pyramids of Malpighi. The veins beneath the capsule are stellate in arrangement, being found around the bases of the pyramids of Ferrein, and are derived from the terminations of the interlobular arteries. These join to form the venae interlobulares, which pass inwards between the pyramids of Ferrein, receive branches from the plexuses around the tubuli contorti, and, having arrived at the bases of the Malpighian pyramids, join with the venæ rectae, next to be described (Figs. 491, 492, b).

The venæ rectae are branches from the plexuses at the apices of the medullary pyramids, formed by the terminations of the arteriole rectae. They pass outwards in a straight course between the tubes of the medullary structure, and joining, as above stated, the venæ interlobulares, form the proper renal veins (Figs. 490, 491, f).

These vessels, venæ proprie renales, accompany the arteries of the same name, running along the entire length of the sides of the pyramids; and, having received in their course the efferents from the Malpighian bodies in the cortical structure adjacent, quit the kidney proper to enter the sinus. In this cavity they inosculate with the corresponding veins from the other pyramids to form

The Renal Vein, which, passing through the hilum, opens into the vena cava inferior; the left being longer than the right, from having to cross in front of the abdominal aorta.

Nerves of the Kidney. The nerves of the kidney, although small, are about fifteen in number. They have small ganglia developed upon them, and are derived from the solar plexus, the lower and outer part of the semilunar ganglion, and from the lesser and smallest splanchnic nerves. They communicate with the spermatic plexus, a circumstance which may explain the sympathy that exists between the kidney and testicle. So far as they have been traced, they seem to accompany the renal artery and its branches, but their exact mode of termination is not known.

The lymphatics consist of a superficial and deep set which terminate in the lumbar glands.

Connective tissue, or intertubular stroma. Although the tubules and vessels are closely packed, a certain small amount of connective tissue, continuous with the capsule, binds them firmly together. This tissue was first described by Good sir and subsequently by Bowman. Ludwig and Zawarykin have observed distinct fibres passing around the Malpighian bodies; and Henle has seen them between the straight tubes composing the medullary structure.
nal aorta, which enters the sinus through the hilum, dividing in its passage through the latter into four or five branches. These, whilst in the sinus, give off a few twigs for the nutrition of the surrounding tissues, and terminate in the arteriae proprie renales, which enter the kidney proper in the columns of Bertini. Two of these pass to each pyramid of Malpighi and run along its sides for its entire length, giving off as they advance the afferent vessels of the Malpighian bodies in the columns. Having arrived at the bases of the pyramids, they make a bend in their course, so as to lie between the bases of the pyramids and the

1 From the "Handbook for the Physiological Laboratory."
THE KIDNEYS.

845

cortical arches, where they break up into two distinct sets of branches devoted to the supply of the remaining portions of the kidney.

The first set, the interlobular arteries (Figs. 491, 492, a), are given off at right angles from the side of the arteriae propriae renales looking towards the cortical substance, and passing directly outwards between the pyramids of Ferrein, supply the capsule, terminating in the stellate plexus of veins beneath that structure. In their outward course they support the Malpighian bodies by supplying them with afferent vessels, which, having pierced the capsule, end in the Malpighian tufts. From each tuft the corresponding renal efferent arises, which, having made its egress from the capsule near to the point where the afferent entered, Anastomoses with other efferents from other tufts, and contributes to form a dense venous plexus around the urinary tubes adjacent.

The second set from the arteriae propriae renales are for the supply of the medullary pyramids, which they enter at their bases; and passing through their substance straight to their apices, terminate in the venous plexuses found in that situation. They are called the arteriolae rectae (Figs. 491, 492, f).

The Renal Veins arise from three sources: the veins beneath the capsule, the plexuses around the tubuli contorti in the cortical arches, and the plexus situated at the apices of the pyramids of Malpighi. The veins beneath the capsule are stellate in arrangement, being found around the bases of the pyramids of Ferrein, and are derived from the terminations of the interlobular arteries. These join to form the venae interlobulares, which pass inwards between the pyramids of Ferrein, receive branches from the plexuses around the tubuli contorti, and, having arrived at the bases of the Malpighian pyramids, join with the venae rectae, next to be described (Figs. 491, 492, b).

The Venae rectae are branches from the plexuses at the apices of the medullary pyramids, formed by the terminations of the arteriolae rectae. They pass outwards in a straight course between the tubes of the medullary structure, and joining, as above stated, the venae interlobulares, form the proper renal veins (Figs. 490, 491, f).

These vessels, venae propriae renales, accompany the arteries of the same name, running along the entire length of the sides of the pyramids; and, having received in their course the efferents from the Malpighian bodies in the cortical structure adjacent, quit the kidney proper to enter the sinus. In this cavity they inosculate with the corresponding veins from the other pyramids to form.

The Renal Vein, which, passing through the hilum, opens into the vena cava inferior; the left being longer than the right, from having to cross in front of the abdominal aorta.

Nerves of the Kidney. The nerves of the kidney, although small, are about fifteen in number. They have small ganglia developed upon them, and are derived from the solar plexus, the lower and outer part of the semilunar ganglion, and from the lesser and smallest splanchnic nerves. They communicate with the spermatic plexus, a circumstance which may explain the sympathy that exists between the kidney and testicle. So far as they have been traced, they seem to accompany the renal artery and its branches, but their exact mode of termination is not known.

The lymphatics consist of a superficial and deep set which terminate in the lumbar glands.

Connective tissue, or intertubular stroma. Although the tubules and vessels are closely packed, a certain small amount of connective tissue, continuous with the capsule, binds them firmly together. This tissue was first described by Good Sir and subsequently by Bowman. Ludwig and Zawarykin have observed distinct fibres passing around the Malpighian bodies; and Henle has seen them between the straight tubes composing the medullary structure.
URINARY ORGANS.

THE URETERS.

The term Ureter is generally restricted to that portion of the renal duct which is between the pelvis of the kidney and the bladder, but in this description the calices and pelvis of the kidney will be included in its composition. So that the ureter, or excretory duct, of the kidney will be said to consist of three portions; its cuplike commencements, the calices, including the infundibula; its dilated portion, the pelvis; and its tubular portion, the ureter proper.

The calices are cup-like tubes encircling the apices of the Malpighian pyramids; but inasmuch as one calyx may include two or even more papille, their number is generally less than the pyramids themselves, the former being from seven to thirteen, whilst the latter vary from eight to eighteen. These calices converge into the three infundibula, an upper, middle, and lower, which by their junction form the pelvis, or dilated portion of the ureter; which latter, gradually narrowing, becomes continuous with the ureter proper. The portion last mentioned, where the pelvis merges into the ureter proper, is found opposite the transverse process of the third lumbar vertebra on the left, and the fourth on the right side; at either of which situations it is accessible behind the peritoneum.

The ureter proper is a cylindrical membranous tube, from sixteen to eighteen inches in length, and of the diameter of a goose-quill, extending from the pelvis of the kidney to the bladder. Its course is obliquely downwards and inwards through the lumbar region into the cavity of the pelvis, where it passes downwards, forwards, and inwards across that cavity to the base of the bladder, into which it then opens by a constricted orifice, after having passed obliquely for nearly an inch between its muscular and mucous coats.

Relations of the ureter proper. In its course it rests upon the psoas muscle, being covered by the peritoneum, and crossed obliquely, from within outwards, by the spemmatic vessels; the right ureter lying close to the outer side of the inferior vena cava. Opposite the first piece of the sacrum it crosses the common iliac artery, lying behind the ileum on the right side and the sigmoid flexure of the colon on the left. In the pelvis it enters the posterior false ligament of the bladder, below the obliterated hypogastric artery, the vas deferens in the male passing between it and the bladder. In the female the ureter passes along the sides and cervix uteri and upper part of the vagina. At the base of the bladder, it is situated about two inches from its fellow; lying, in the male, about an inch and a half behind the base of the prostate, at the posterior angle of the trigone.

Structure. The ureter is composed of three coats, a fibrous, muscular, and mucous.

The fibrous coat is the same throughout the entire length of the duct, being continuous at one end with the capsule of the kidney at the floor of the sinus; whilst at the other it is lost in the fibrous structure of the bladder.

The muscular coat consists of two layers in the calices and pelvis, but of three in the ureter proper.

The external or longitudinal fibres of the calices are lost upon the sides of the mamille, whilst the internal or circular serve to grasp the medullary structure in the same situation.

The three layers found in the ureter proper (two longitudinal with an intervening circular layer) are all continuous with the muscular fibres of the bladder. The mucous coat is smooth and presents a few longitudinal folds which become effaced by distension. It is continuous with the mucous membrane of the bladder below, whilst it is prolonged over the mamille of the kidney above. Its epithelium consists principally of the spheroidal variety, but at that portion of the ureter near the bladder it is said to be divided into three layers. The inner layer, that in contact with the urine, is irregular or quadrilateral in shape; the second or intermediate layer more or less resembles columnar epithelium
SUPRARENAL CAPSULES.

with irregular extremities; whilst the external or third layer is more or less spheroidal.

The arteries supplying the ureter are branches from the renal, spermatic, internal iliac, and inferior vesical.

The nerves are derived from the inferior mesenteric, spermatic, and hypogastric plexuses.

SUPRARENAL CAPSULES.

The Suprarenal Capsules are usually classified together with the spleen, thymus and thyroid, under the head of "ductless glands," as they have no excretory duct. They are two small flattened glandular bodies, of a yellowish color, situated at the back part of the abdomen, behind the peritoneum, and immediately in front of the upper part of either kidney; hence their name. The right one is somewhat triangular in shape, bearing a resemblance to a cocked hat; the left is more semilunar, and usually larger and higher than the right. They vary in size and shape in different individuals, being sometimes so small as to be scarcely detected; their usual size is from an inch and a quarter to nearly two inches in length, rather less in width, and from two to three lines in thickness. In weight, they vary from one to two drachms.

Relations. The anterior surface is in relation, on the right side, with the upper surface of the liver; and on the left with the pancreas and spleen. The posterior surface rests upon the crus of the Diaphragm, opposite the tenth dorsal vertebra. The upper thin convex border is directed upwards and inwards. The lower thick concave border rests upon the upper end of the kidney, to which it is connected by areolar tissue. The inner border is in relation with the great splanchnic nerves and semilunar ganglion, and lies in contact on the right side with the inferior vena cava, and on the left side with the aorta. The surface of the suprarenal gland is surrounded by areolar tissue containing much fat, and closely invested by a thin fibrous coat, which is difficult to remove, on account of the numerous fibrous processes and vessels which enter the organ through the furrows on its anterior surface and base.

Structure. On making a perpendicular section, the gland is seen to consist of two substances: external or cortical, and internal or medullary.

The intimate structure of the suprarenal gland may be described as consisting of three elements: the capsule and its processes, the cells, and the bloodvessels. On section the gland is seen to consist of two parts, a cortical external, and a medullary internal. The former, which constitutes the chief part of the organ, is of a deep yellow color, and consists chiefly of narrow columnar masses placed perpendicularly to the surface. The medullary substance is soft, pulpy, and of a dark brown or black color, whence the name atrabilary capsules, formerly given to these organs. In the centre is often seen a space, not natural, but formed by the breaking-down after death of the medullary substance.

The cortical portion owes its arrangement to the disposition of the capsule, which sends into the interior of the gland processes passing in vertically and communicating with each other by transverse bands, so as to form cells which open into each other. These cells are of slight depth near the surface of the organ, so that there the section somewhat resembles a net, but they become much deeper or longer further in, so as to resemble pipes or tubes placed endwise. Still deeper down, near the medullary part, the cells become again of small extent. The interior of these cells contains the ramifications of the capillaries, but the greater part of them is filled with a mass of nucleated cells containing large nuclei and many fat granules, with numerous pigment granules in the parts where color is most conspicuous.

In the medullary portion, the fibrous stroma seems to be collected together into a much closer arrangement, and forms bundles of stout connective tissue which are loosely applied to the large plexus of veins of which this part of the
organ mainly consists. In the interstices lie a number of cells compared by Frey to those of columnar epithelium. But the tissue of the medullary substance is less easy to make out than that of the cortical, owing to its rapid decomposition.

Thus we see that the numerous arteries which enter the suprarenal bodies from the sources mentioned below penetrate the cortical part of the gland, where they break up into capillaries in the fibrous septa, and these converge to the very numerous veins of the medullary portion, which are collected together into the suprarenal vein, which usually emerges as a single vessel from the centre of the gland.

The medulla also contains a very large quantity of nerve-fibres.

The arteries supplying the suprarenal capsules are numerous and of large size; they are derived from the aorta, the phrenic, and the renal; they subdivide into numerous minute branches previous to entering the substance of the gland.

The suprarenal vein returns the blood from the medullary venous plexus, and receives several branches from the cortical substance; it opens on the right side into the inferior vena cava, on the left side into the renal vein.

The lymphatics terminate in the lumbar glands.

The nerves are exceedingly numerous; they are found chiefly if not entirely in the medulla, and are derived from the solar and renal plexuses, and, according to Bergmann, from the phrenic and pneumogastric nerves. They have numerous small ganglia developed upon them, from which circumstance the organ has been conjectured to have some function in connection with the sympathetic nervous system.

THE PELVIS.

The cavity of the Pelvis is that part of the general abdominal cavity which is below the level of the linea ilio-pectinea and the promontory of the sacrum. Boundaries. It is bounded, behind, by the sacrum, the coccyx, and the great sacro-sciatic ligaments; in front and at the sides by the pubes and ischia, covered
by the Obturator muscles; above, it communicates with the cavity of the abdomen; and below, it is limited by the Levatores ani and Coccyei muscles; and the visceral layer of the pelvic fascia, which is reflected from the wall of the pelvis on to the viscera.

Contents. The viscera contained in this cavity are the urinary bladder, the rectum, and some of the generative organs peculiar to each sex; they are partially covered by the peritoneum, and supplied with blood and lymphatic vessels and nerves.

The Bladder.

The Bladder is the reservoir for the urine. It is a musculo-membranous sac, situated in the pelvis, behind the pubes, and in front of the rectum in the male, the uterus and vagina intervening between it and that intestine in the female. The shape, position, and relations of the bladder are greatly influenced by age, sex, and the degree of distension of the organ. During infancy, it is conical in shape, and projects above the upper border of the pubes into the hypogastric region. In the adult, when quite empty and contracted, it is a small triangular sac, placed deeply in the pelvis, flattened from before backwards, its apex reaching as high as the upper border of the symphysis pubis. When slightly distended, it has a rounded form, and partially fills the pelvic artery; and when greatly distended, it is ovoid in shape, rising into the abdominal cavity, and often extending nearly as high as the umbilicus. It is larger in its vertical diameter than from side to side, and its long axis is directed from above obliquely downwards and backwards, in a line directed from some point between the pubes and umbilicus (according to its distension) to the end of the coccyx. The bladder, when distended, is slightly curved forwards towards the anterior wall of the abdomen, so as to be more convex behind than in front. In the female, it is
larger in the transverse than in the vertical diameter, and its capacity is said to be greater than in the male. When moderately distended, it measures about five inches in length, and three inches across, and the ordinary amount which it contains is about a pint.

The bladder is divided into a summit, body, base, and neck.

The summit, or apex, of the bladder is rounded and directed forwards and upwards; it is connected to the umbilicus by a fibro-muscular cord, the urachus, and also by means of two rounded fibrous cord, the obliterated portions of the hypogastric arteries, which are placed one on each side of the urachus. The summit of the bladder behind the urachus is covered by peritoneum, whilst the portion in front of the urachus has no peritoneal covering, but rests upon the abdominal wall.

The urachus is the obliterated remains of a tubular canal which exists in the embryo, and connects the cavity of the bladder with a membranous sac placed external to the abdomen, opposite the umbilicus, called the allantois. In the infant, at birth, it is occasionally found pervious, so that the urine escapes at the umbilicus, and calculi have been found in its canal.

The body of the bladder in front is not covered by peritoneum, and is in relation with the triangular ligament of the urethra, the posterior surface of the symphys pubis, the Internal obturator muscles, and, when distended, with the abdominal parietes.

The posterior surface is covered by peritoneum throughout. It corresponds, in the male, with the rectum; in the female, with the uterus, some convolutions of the small intestine being interposed.

The side of the bladder is crossed obliquely from below, upwards and forwards, by the obliterated hypogastric artery; above and behind this cord, the bladder is covered by peritoneum; but below and in front of it the serous covering is wanting, and it is connected to the pelvic fascia. The vas deferens passes, in an arched direction, from before backwards, along the side of the bladder, towards its base, crossing in its course the obliterated hypogastric artery, and passing along the inner side of the ureter.

The base (fundus) of the bladder is directed downwards and backwards. It varies in extent according to the state of distension of the organ, being very broad when full, but much narrower when empty. In the male, it rests upon the second portion of the rectum, from which it is separated by a reflection of the recto-vesical fascia. It is covered posteriorly, for a slight extent, by the peritoneum, which is reflected from it upon the rectum, forming the recto-vesical fold. The portion of the bladder in relation with the rectum corresponds to a triangular space, bounded behind by the recto-vesical fold; on either side, by the vesicula seminalis and vas deferens; and touching the prostate gland in front.

When the bladder is very full, the peritoneal fold is raised with it, and the distance between its reflection and the anus is about four inches; but this distance is much diminished when the bladder is empty and contracted. In the female, the base of the bladder lies in contact with the lower part of the cervix uteri, is adherent to the anterior wall of the vagina, and separated from the upper part of the anterior surface of the cervix uteri by a fold of the peritoneum.

The neck (cervix) of the bladder is the constricted portion continuous with the urethra. In the male, its direction is oblique in the erect posture, and it is surrounded by the prostate gland. In the female its direction is obliquely downwards and forwards.

Ligaments. The bladder is retained in its place by ligaments which are divided into true and false. The true ligaments are five in number, two anterior, and two lateral, formed by the recto-vesical fascia, and the urachus. The false ligaments, also five in number, are formed by folds of the peritoneum.

The anterior ligaments (pubo-prostatic) extend from the back of the pubes, one on each side of the symphysis, to the front of the neck of the bladder, and upper
BLADDER.

851

surface of the prostate gland. These ligaments contain a few muscular fibres
prolonged from the bladder.

The lateral ligaments, broader and thinner than the preceding, are attached to
the lateral parts of the prostate, and to the sides of the base of the bladder.

The urachus is the fibro-muscular cord already mentioned, extending between
the summit of the bladder and the umbilicus. It is broad below, at its attach-
ment to the bladder, and becomes narrower as its ascends.

The false ligaments of the bladder are, two posterior, two lateral, and one
superior.

The two posterior pass forwards, in the male, from the sides of the rectum; in
the female, from the sides of the uterus, to the posterior and lateral aspect of the
bladder: they form the lateral boundaries of the recto-vesical fold of the peri-
toneum, and contain the obliterated hypogastric arteries, and the ureters, together
with vessels and nerves.

The two lateral ligaments are reflections of the peritoneum, from the iliac fosse
on the sides of the bladder.

The superior ligament is the prominent fold of peritoneum extending from the
summit of the bladder to the umbilicus. It covers the urachus, and the obli-
tered hypogastric arteries.

Structure. The bladder is composed of four coats: a serous, a muscular, a
cellular, and a mucous coat.

The serous coat is partial, and derived from the peritoneum. It invests the
posterior surface, from opposite the termination of the two ureters, to its
summit, and is reflected from this point and from the sides, on to the abdominal
and pelvic walls.

The muscular coat consists of two layers of unstriped muscular fibre, an
external layer, composed of longitudinal fibres, and an internal layer of circular
fibres.

The longitudinal fibres are most distinct on the anterior and posterior surfaces
of the organ. They arise in front, from the anterior ligaments of the bladder,
from the neck of the bladder, and, in the male, from the adjacent portion of the
prostate gland. They spread out, and form a plexiform mesh, on the anterior
surface of the bladder, being continued over the posterior surface, and base of
the organ of the neck, where they are inserted into the prostate in the male, and
into the vagina in the female.

Other longitudinal fibres arise in the male from the sides of the prostate, and
spread out upon the sides of the bladder, intersecting with one another.

The circular fibres are very thinly and irregularly scattered on the body of the
organ; but, towards its lower part, round the cervix and commencement of the
urethra, they are disposed as a thick circular layer, forming the sphincter
vesicae, which is continuous with the muscular fibres of the prostate gland.

Two bands of oblique fibres, originating behind the orifices of the ureters,
converge to the back part of the prostate gland, and are inserted, by means of
a fibrous process, into the middle lobe of that organ. They are the muscles of
the ureters, described by Sir C. Bell, who supposed that, during the contraction
of the bladder, they served to retain the oblique direction of the ureters, and so
prevent the reflux of the urine into them.

J. B. Pettigrew gives the following results at which he has arrived by his exquisite dissections
of the muscular fibres of the bladder and prostate (Phil. Trans. 1867). The muscular fibres
of the bladder are arranged spirally, forming figure-of-8 loops, the superficial more longitudinal or
drawn out, the deeper more circular or flattened. This arrangement has been aptly compared
to that of India-rubber rings through which a stick has been passed and which are then wound
twice round the stick and drawn out into figures-of-8, some (the exterior) in very elongated loops,
so as to approach the longitudinal direction, others (the central) in very flattened loops, so as to
be nearly circular. The external fibres, which are nearly longitudinal, are in four sets—an ante-
rior and posterior, and a right and left lateral; the latter accessory and less fully developed.
The fibres are arranged in seven strata, three external, three internal, and a middle, pursuing
well-marked directions in each. These layers, however, are very imperfect, "the fibres rarely, if
ever, occupying precisely the same plane and running exactly parallel. They, moreover, split up,
and become fused with each other, with corresponding or homologous fibres, and with fibres which are either superimposed or underlie them. The fibres of the first and seventh layers are the most feebly developed. The crossings or decussations of the loops occur at different distances in proceeding from before backwards, this crossing forming a kind of spiral line. The loops are directed towards and embrace the urachus and urethra respectively. The terminal expansions of the loops in the other layers contribute to the formation of the fourth layer, particularly towards the base and apex, which are, therefore, thicker than the other parts. The aggregation of the loops towards the apex forms the sphincter. The longitudinal, slightly oblique, truly oblique, and nearly circular fibres of the successive layers are all continued into the prostatic urethra, which therefore may be regarded as a continuation of the bladder anteriorly. The fibres of the cervix are traceable into the verumontanum, which Pettigrew believes to act as a valve to the urethra, falling down into the tube and obstructing it when the muscle of the bladder is not acting; and raised up, so as to stand erect in the middle line, and thus to allow the flow of urine, when the fibres contract. The varying obliquity and spiral arrangement of the seven layers establishes a close analogy between the disposition of the muscular fibres of the bladder and those of the heart, as described by Pettigrew, in Phil. Trans. 1864; and he hints at similar structure in the stomach and uterus.

The cellular coat consists of a layer of areolar tissue, connecting together the muscular and mucous coats, and intimately united to the latter.

The mucous coat is thin, smooth, and of a pale rose color. It is continuous through the ureters with the lining membrane of the uriniferous tubes, and below with that of the urethra. It is connected loosely to the muscular coat, by a layer of areolar tissue, excepting at the trigone, where its adhesion is more close. It is provided with a few mucous follicles; and numerous small racemose glands, lined with columnar epithelium, exist near the neck of the organ. The epithelium covering it is intermediate in form between the columnar and squamous varieties.

Interior of the bladder. Upon the inner surface of the base of the bladder, immediately behind the urethral orifice, is a triangular, smooth surface, the apex of which is directed forwards; this is the trigonum vesicae or trigone vesical. It is paler in color than the rest of the mucous membrane, and never presents any ruge, even in the collapsed condition of the organ, owing to its intimate adhesion to the subjacent tissues. It is bounded on each side by two slight ridges, which pass backwards and outwards to the orifices of the ureters, and correspond with the muscles of these tubes; and at each posterior angle, by the orifices of the ureters, which are placed nearly two inches from each other, and about an inch and a half behind the orifice of the urethra. The trigone corresponds with the interval at the base of the bladder, bounded by the prostate in front, and the vesiculae and vasa deferentia on the sides. Projecting from the lower and anterior part of the bladder, into the orifice of the urethra, is a slight elevation of mucous membrane, called the uvula vesicae. It is formed by a thickening of the prostate.

The arteries supplying the bladder are the superior, middle, and inferior vesical, in the male, with additional branches from the uterine, in the female. They are all derived from the anterior trunk of the internal iliac.
MALE URETHRA.

The veins form a complicated plexus round the neck, sides, and base of the bladder, and terminate in the internal iliac vein.

The lymphatics accompany the bloodvessels, passing through the glands surrounding them.

The nerves are derived from the hypogastric and sacral plexuses; the former supplying the upper part of the organ, the latter its base and neck.

MALE URETHRA.

The Urethra extends from the neck of the bladder to the meatus urinarius. It presents a double curve in the flaccid state of the penis, but in the erect state it forms only a single curve, the concavity of which is directed upwards (Fig. 495). Its length varies from eight to nine inches; and it is divided into three portions, the prostatic, membranous, and spongy, the structure and relations of which are essentially different.

The Prostatic portion is the widest and most dilatable part of the canal. It passes through the prostate gland, from its base to the apex, lying nearer its upper than its lower surface. It is about an inch and a quarter in length; the form of the canal is spindle-shaped, being wider in the middle than at either extremity and narrowest in front, where it joins the membranous portion. A transverse section of the canal in this situation is triangular, the apex directed downwards.

Upon the floor of the canal is a narrow longitudinal ridge, the verumontanum, or caput gallinaginis, formed by an elevation of the mucous membrane and its subjacent tissue. It is eight or nine lines in length, and a line and a half in height; and contains, according to Kobelt, muscular and erectile tissues. When distended, it may serve to prevent the passage of the semen backwards into the bladder. On each side of the verumontanum is a slightly depressed fossa, the prostatic sinus, the floor of which is perforated by numerous apertures, the orifices of the prostatic ducts, the ducts of the middle lobe opening behind the crest. At the fore part of the verumontanum, in the middle line, is a depression, the sinus peculiaris (vesicula prostatica); and upon or within its margins are the slit-like openings of the ejaculatory ducts. The sinus peculiaris forms a cul-de-sac about a quarter of an inch in length, which runs upwards and backwards in the substance of the prostate beneath the middle lobe; its prominent upper wall partly forms the verumontanum. Its walls are composed of fibrous tissue, muscular fibres, and mucous membrane; and numerous small glands open on its inner surface. It has been called by Weber, who discovered it, the uterus masculinus, from its supposed homology with the female organ.

The Membranous portion of the urethra extends between the apex of the prostate and the bulb of the corpus spongiosum. It is the narrowest part of the canal (excepting the orifice), and measures three-quarters of an inch along its upper and half an inch along its lower surface, in consequence of the bulb projecting backwards beneath it below. Its upper concave surface is placed about an inch beneath the pubic arch, from which it is separated by the dorsal vessels and nerves of the penis, and some muscular fibres. Its lower convex surface is separated from the rectum by a triangular space, which constitutes the perineum. The membranous portion of the urethra perforates the deep perineal fascia; and two layers from this membrane are prolonged round it, the one forwards, the other backwards; it is also surrounded by the Compressor urethrae muscle. Its coverings are mucous membrane, elastic fibrous tissue, a thin layer of erectile tissue, muscular fibres, and a prolongation from the deep perineal fascia.

The Spongy portion is the longest part of the urethra, and is contained in the corpus spongiosum. It is about six inches in length, and extends from the termination of the membranous portion to the meatus urinarius. Commencing below the symphysis pubis, it ascends for a short distance, and then curves
downwards. It is narrow, and of uniform size in the body of the penis, measuring about a quarter of an inch in diameter; being dilated behind, within the bulb: and again anteriorly within the glans penis, forming the fossa navicularis. A cross section of this canal in the body of the penis has its long diameter transverse; but in the glans, that diameter is directed vertically.

The *Bulbous portion* is a name given, in some descriptions of the urethra, to the posterior dilated part of the spongy portion contained within the bulb.

The *meatus urinarius* is the most contracted part of the urethra; it is a vertical slit, about three lines in length, bounded on each side by two small labia. The inner surface of the lining membrane of the urethra, especially on the floor of the spongy portion, presents the orifices of numerous mucous glands and follicles, situated in the submucous tissue, and named the *glands of Littré*. They vary in size, and their orifices are directed forwards, so that they may easily intercept the point of a catheter in its passage along the canal. One of these lacunae, larger than the rest, is situated on the upper surface of the fossa navicularis, about an inch and a half from the orifice; it is called the *lacuna magna*. Into the bulbous portion are found opening the ducts of Cowper's glands.

*Structure.* The urethra is composed of three coats: a mucous, muscular, and erectile.

The *mucous coat* forms part of the genito-urinary mucous membrane. It is continuous with the mucous membrane of the bladder, ureters, and kidneys; externally, with the integument covering the glans penis; and is prolonged into the ducts of the glands which open into the urethra, viz., Cowper's glands, the prostate gland, and the *vasa deferentia* and *vesiculae seminales*, through the ejaculatory ducts. In the spongy and membranous portions the mucous membrane is arranged in longitudinal folds when the organ is contracted. Small papillae are found upon it, near the orifice: and its epithelial lining is of the columnar variety, excepting near the meatus, where it is laminated.

The *muscular coat* consists of two layers of plain muscular fibres, an external longitudinal layer, and an internal circular. The muscular tissue is most abundant in the prostatic portion of the canal.

A thin layer of *erectile tissue* is continued from the corpus spongiosum round the membranous and prostatic portion of the urethra to the neck of the bladder.
Male Generative Organs.

Prostate Gland.

The Prostate Gland (προστάτης, to stand before) is a pale, firm, glandular body, which surrounds the neck of the bladder and commencement of the urethra. It is placed in the pelvic cavity, behind and below the symphysis pubis, posterior to the deep perineal fascia, and upon the rectum, through which it may be distinctly felt, especially when enlarged. In shape and size it resembles a horse-chestnut.

Its base is directed backwards towards the neck of the bladder.

The apex is directed forwards to the deep perineal fascia, which it touches.

Its under surface is smooth, and rests on the rectum, to which it is connected by dense areolar fibrous tissue.

Its upper surface is flattened, marked by a slight longitudinal furrow, and placed about three-quarters of an inch below the pubic symphysis.

It measures about an inch and a half in its transverse diameter at the base, an inch in its antero-posterior diameter, and three-quarters of an inch in depth.

Its weight is about six drachms. It is held in its position by the anterior ligaments of the bladder (pubo-prostatic); by the posterior layer of the deep perineal fascia, which invests the commencement of the membranous portion of the urethra and prostate gland; and by the anterior portion of the Levator ani muscle (levator prostatis), which passes down on each side from the symphysis pubis and anterior ligament of the bladder to the sides of the prostate.

The prostate consists of three lobes: two lateral and a middle lobe.

The two lateral lobes are of equal size, separated behind by a deep notch, and marked by a slight furrow upon their upper and lower surface, which indicates the bi-lobed condition of the organ in some animals.

The third or middle lobe, is a small transverse band occasionally a rounded or triangular prominence, placed between the two lateral lobes, at the under and posterior part of the organ. It lies immediately beneath the neck of the bladder, behind the commencement of the urethra, and above the ejaculatory ducts. Its existence is not constant; but it is occasionally found at an early period of life, as well as in adults, and in old age. In advanced life this, or some other portion of the prostate, often becomes considerably enlarged, and projects into the bladder, so as to impede the passage of the urine. According to Dr. Messer's researches conducted at Greenwich Hospital, it would seem that such obstruction exists in 20 per cent. of all prostates over sixty years of age.

The prostate gland is perforated by the urethra and common seminal ducts. The urethra usually lies about one-third nearer its upper than its lower surface; occasionally, the prostate surrounds the lower three-fourths of this tube, and more rarely the urethra runs through the lower instead of the upper part of the gland. The ejaculatory ducts pass forwards obliquely through a conical canal, situated in the lower part of the prostate, and open into the prostatic portion of the urethra.

Structure. The prostate is inclosed in a thin but firm fibrous capsule, distinct from that derived from the posterior layer of the deep perineal fascia, and separated from it by a plexus of veins. Its substance is of a pale reddish-gray color.

very friable, but of great density. It consists of glandular substance and muscular tissue.

The glandular substance is composed of numerous follicular pouches opening into elongated canals, which join to form from twelve to twenty small excretory ducts. The follicles are connected together by areolar tissue, supported by prolongations from the fibrous capsule, and inclosed in a delicate capsillary plexus. The epithelium lining the canals is columnar, whilst that in the terminal vesicles is of the squamous variety.

The muscular tissue of the prostate is arranged in the form of circular bands round the urethra; it is continuous behind with the circular fibres of the sphincter vesica, and in front with the circular fibres of the urethra. The muscular fibres are of the involuntary kind. The prostatic ducts open into the floor of the prostatic portion of the urethra.

**Vessels and Nerves.** The arteries supplying the prostate are derived from the internal pudic, vesical, and hemorrhoidal. Its veins form a plexus around the sides and base of the gland; they communicate in front with the dorsal vein of the penis, and terminate in the internal iliac vein. The nerves are derived from the hypogastric plexus.

The **Prostatic Secretion** is a milky fluid, having an acid reaction, and presenting, on microscopic examination, molecular matter, the squamous and columnar forms of epithelium, and granular nuclei. In old age, this gland is liable to be enlarged, and its ducts are often filled with innumerable small concretions, of a brownish-red color, and of the size of a millet seed, composed of carbonate of lime and animal matter.

**Cowper's Glands.**

Cowper's Glands are two small rounded and somewhat lobulated bodies, of a yellowish color, about the size of peas, placed beneath the fore part of the membranous portion of the urethra, between the two layers of the deep perineal fascia. They lie close behind the bulb, and are inclosed by the transverse fibres of the Compressor urethrae muscle. Each gland consists of several lobules, held together by a fibrous investment. The excretory duct of each gland, nearly an inch in length, passes obliquely forwards beneath the mucous membrane, and opens by a minute orifice on the floor of the bulbous portion of the urethra. Their existence is said to be constant; they gradually diminish in size as age advances.

**The Penis.**

The Penis is the organ of copulation, and contains in its interior the larger portion of the urethra. It consists of a root, body, and extremity or glans penis.

The root is broad, and firmly connected to the rami of the pubes by two strong tapering fibrous processes, the crura, and to the front of the symphysis pubis by a fibrous membrane, the suspensory ligament.

The extremity, or glans penis presents the form of an obtuse cone, flattened from above downwards. At its summit is a vertical fissure, the orifice of the urethra (meatus urinarius); at the back part of this orifice a fold of mucous membrane passes backwards to the bottom of a depressed raphe, where it is continuous with the prepuce; this fold is termed the frenum preputii. The base of the glans forms a rounded projecting border, the corona glandis; and behind the corona is a deep constriction, the cervix. Upon both of these numerous small lenticular sebaceous glands are found, the glandula Tysonii, g. odoriferae. They secrete a sebaceous matter of very peculiar odor, which probably contains caseine, and becomes easily decomposed.

The body of the penis is the part between the root and extremity. In the flaccid condition of the organ it is cylindrical, but when erect has a triangular
prismatic form with rounded angles, the broadest side being turned upward, and called the dorsum. It is covered by integument remarkable for its thinness, its dark color, its looseness of connection with the deeper parts of the organ, and its containing no adipose tissue. At the root of the penis the integument is continuous with that upon the pubes and scrotum; and at the neck of the glans it leaves the surface, and becomes folded upon itself to form the prepuce.

The internal layer of the prepuce, which also becomes attached to the cervix, approaches in character to a mucous membrane: it is reflected over the glans penis, and at the meatus urinarius is continuous with the mucous lining of the urethra.

The mucous membrane covering the glans penis contains no sebaceous glands; but projecting from its free surface are a number of small highly sensitive papillae.

The penis is composed of a mass of erectile tissue, inclosed in three cylindrical fibrous compartments. Of these, two, the corpora cavernosa, are placed side by side along the upper part of the organ; the third, or corpus spongiosum, incloses the urethra, and is placed below.

The Corpora Cavernosa form the chief part of the body of the penis. They consist of two fibrous cylindrical tubes, placed side by side, and intimately connected along the median line for their anterior three-fourths, their posterior fourth being separated to form the two crura, by which the penis is connected to the rami of the pubes. Each crus commences by a blunt-pointed process in front of the tuberosity of the ischium; and, near its junction with its fellow, presents a slight enlargement, named by Kobelt, the bulb of the corpus cavernosum. Just beyond this point they become constricted, and retain an equal diameter to their anterior extremity, where they form a single rounded end, which is received into a fossa in the base of the glans penis. A median groove on the upper surface lodges the dorsal vein of the penis, and the groove on the under surface receives the corpus spongiosum. The root of the penis is connected to the symphysis pubis by the suspensory ligament.

Structure. Each corpus cavernosum consists of a strong fibrous envelope, inclosing a fibrous reticular structure, which contains erectile tissue in its meshes. It is separated from its fellow by an incomplete fibrous septum.

The fibrous investment is extremely dense, of considerable thickness, and highly elastic; it not only invests the surface of the organ, but sends off numerous fibrous bands (trabeculae) from its inner surface, as well as from the surface of the septum, which cross its interior in all directions, subdividing it into a number of separate compartments, which present a spongy structure, in which the erectile tissue is contained.

The trabecular structure fills the interior of the corpora cavernosa. Its component fibres are larger and stronger round the circumference than at the centre of the corpora cavernosa; they are also thicker behind than in front. The interspaces, on the contrary, are larger at the centre than at the circumference, their long diameter being directed transversely; and they are largest anteriorly. They are lined by a layer of squamous epithelium.

The fibrous septum forms an imperfect partition between the two corpora cavernosa; it is thick and complete behind; but in front it is incomplete, and consists of a number of vertical bands of fibrous tissue, which are arranged like the teeth of a comb, whence the name, septum pectiniforme; these bands extend between the dorsal and the urethral surface of the corpora cavernosa.

The fibrous investment and septum consist of longitudinal bands of white fibrous tissue, with numerous elastic and muscular fibres. The trabeculae also consist of white fibrous tissue, elastic fibres, and plain muscular fibres, and inclose arteries and nerves.

The Corpus Spongiosum incloses the urethra, and is situated in the groove on the under surface of the corpora cavernosa. It commences posteriorly in front of the deep perineal fascia, between the diverging crura of the corpora caver-
nosa, where it forms a rounded enlargement, the bulb; and terminates, anteriorly, in another expansion, the glans penis, which overlaps the anterior rounded extremity of the corpora cavernosa. The central portion, or body of the corpus spongiosum, is cylindrical, and tapers slightly from behind forwards.

The bulb varies in size in different subjects; it receives a fibrous investment from the anterior layer of the deep perineal fascia, and is surrounded by the Acceleator urinæ muscle. The urethra enters the bulb nearer its upper than its lower surface, being surrounded by a layer of erectile tissue, a thin prolongation of which is continued backwards round the membranous and prostatic portions of the canal to the neck of the bladder, lying immediately beneath the mucous membrane. The portion of the bulb below the urethra presents a partial division into two lobes, being marked externally by a linear raphe, whilst internally there projects inwards, for a short distance, a thin fibrous septum, more distinct in early life.

Structure. The corpus spongiosum consists of a strong fibrous envelope, inclosing a trabecular structure, which contains in its meshes erectile tissue. The fibrous envelope is thinner, whiter in color, and more elastic than that of the corpus cavernosum. The trabeculae are delicate, uniform in size, and the meshes between them small; their long diameter, for the most part, corresponding with that of the penis. A thin layer of muscular fibres, continuous behind with those of the bladder, forms part of the outer coat of the corpus spongiosum.

The erectile tissue consists essentially of an intricate venous plexus, lodged in the interspaces between the trabeculae. The veins forming this plexus are so numerous, and communicate so freely with one another, as to present a cellular appearance when examined by means of a section; their walls are extremely thin, and lined by squamous epithelium. The veins are smaller in the glans penis, corpus spongiosum, and circumference of the corpora cavernosa, than in the central part of the latter, where they are of large size, and much dilated. They return the blood by a series of vessels, some of which emerge in considerable numbers from the base of the glans penis, and converge on the dorsum of the organ to form the dorsal vein; others pass out on the upper surface of the corpora cavernosa, and join the dorsal vein; some emerge from the under surface of the corpora cavernosa, and, receiving branches from the corpus spongiosum, wind round the sides of the penis to terminate in the dorsal vein; but the greater number pass out at the root of the penis, and join the prostatic plexus and pudendal veins.

Fig. 497.

From the peripheral portion of the corpus cavernosum penis under a low magnifying power. 1, a network known as the superficial; b, the deep. 2, connection of the arterial twigs (a) with the canals of the deeper cortical network. (Copied from Langer.)

The arteries of the penis are derived from the internal pudic. Those supplying the corpora cavernosa are the arteries of the corpora cavernosa, and branches
from the dorsal artery of the penis, which perforate the fibrous capsule near the fore part of the organ. Those to the corpus spongiosum are the arteries of the bulb. Additional branches are described by Kobelt as arising from the trunk of the internal pudic: they enter the bulbous enlargements on the corpora cavernosa and corpus spongiosum. The arteries, on entering the cavernous structure, divide into branches, which are supported and inclosed by the trabecula; some of these branches terminate in a capillary network, which communicates with the veins as in other parts; whilst others are more convoluted, and assume a tendril-like appearance; hence the name, helicine arteries, which was given to these vessels by Müller. The helicine arteries are more abundant in the back part of the corpora cavernosa and corpus spongiosum; they have not been seen in the glans penis. The termination of these arteries in the venous spaces has been long a matter of debate; but the views of Langer are those which are now universally adopted. He describes the arteries of the corpus cavernosum as terminating, some of them (as above), in ordinary capillaries. Others run, as somewhat fine arterial twigs (about \( \frac{1}{2} \) th of an inch in diameter), into the venous network, while the terminal branches of the arteries open directly into the venous spaces by remarkable funnel-shaped orifices. There are also capillaries which surround the coats of the large arteries, and communicate with the venous spaces. This arrangement of vessels is also found in the bulb of the urethra. In the corpus spongiosum and in the glans, the arteries communicate with the venous spaces through the intervention of capillary vessels.\(^1\)

The lymphatics of the penis consist of a superficial and deep set; the former terminate in the inguinal glands; the latter emerge from the corpora cavernosa and corpus spongiosum, and, passing beneath the pubic arch, join the deep lymphatics of the pelvis.

The nerves are derived from the internal pudic nerve and the hypogastric plexus. On the glans and bulb some filaments of the cutaneous nerves have Pacinian bodies connected with them.

**The Testes and their Coverings.**

The Testes are two small glandular organs, which secrete the semen; they are situated in the scrotum, being suspended by the spermatic cords. At an early period of fetal life, the testes are contained in the abdominal cavity, behind the peritoneum. Before birth, they descend to the inguinal canal, along which they pass with the spermatic cord, and, emerging at the external abdominal ring, they descend into the scrotum, becoming invested in their course by numerous coverings derived from the serous, muscular, and fibrous layers of the abdominal parietes, as well as by the scrotum. The coverings of the testis are, the

- Skin
- Dartos
- Intercolumnar, or External spermatic fascia
- Cremaster muscle
- Infundibuliform, or Fascia propria (Internal spermatic fascia)
- Tunica vaginalis

The Scrotum is a cutaneous pouch, which contains the testes and part of the spermatic cords. It is divided into two lateral halves, by a median line, or raphe, which is continued forwards to the under surface of the penis, and backwards along the middle line of the perineum to the anus. Of these two lateral portions, the left is longer than the right, and corresponds with the greater length of the spermatic cord on the left side. Its external aspect varies under

---

\(^1\) See Frey's Manual of Histology for a summary of Langer's description of these vessels.
different circumstances: thus, under the influence of warmth, and in old and debilitated persons, it becomes elongated and flaccid; but, under the influence of cold, and in the young and robust, it is short, corrugated, and closely applied to the testes.

The scrotum consists of two layers, the integument and the dartos.

The *integument* is very thin, of a brownish color, and generally thrown into folds or ruge. It is provided with sebaceous follicles, the secretion of which has a peculiar odor, and is beset with thinly scattered, crisp hairs, the roots of which are seen through the skin.

The *dartos* is a thin layer of loose reddish tissue, endowed with contractility; it forms the proper tunic of the scrotum, is continuous, around the base of the scrotum, with the superficial fascia of the groin, perineum, and inner side of the thighs, and sends inwards a distinct septum, *septum scroti*, which divides it into two cavities for the two testes, the septum extending between the raphe and the under surface of the penis, as far as its root.

The dartos is closely united to the skin externally, but connected with the subjacent parts by delicate areolar tissue, upon which it glides with the greatest facility. The dartos is very vascular, and consists of a loose areolar tissue, containing unstriped muscular fibre. Its contractility is slow, and excited by cold and mechanical stimuli, but not by electricity.

The *intercolumnar fascia* is a thin membrane, derived from the margin of the pillars of the external abdominal ring, during the descent of the testis in the foetus, being prolonged downwards around the surface of the cord and testis. It is separated from the dartos by loose areolar tissue, which allows of considerable movement of the latter upon it, but is intimately connected with the succeeding layer.

The *cremasteric fascia* consists of scattered bundles of muscular fibres (*cremaster muscle*), derived from the lower border of the internal oblique muscle, during the descent of the testis.

The *fascia propria* is a thin membranous layer, which loosely invests the surface of the cord. It is a continuation downwards of the infundibuliform process of the fascia transversalis, and is also derived during the descent of the testis, in the foetus.

The *tunica vaginalis* is described with the proper covering of the testis. A more detailed account of the other coverings of the testis will be found in the description of the surgical anatomy of inguinal hernia.

**Vessels and Nerves.** The *arteries* supplying the coverings of the testis are: the superficial and deep external pudic, from the femoral; the superficial perineal branch of the internal pudic; and the cremasteric branch from the epigastrio. The *veins* follow the course of the corresponding arteries. The *lymphatics* terminate in the inguinal glands. The *nerves* are: the ilio-inguinal and ilio-hypogastric branches of the lumbar plexus, the two superficial perineal branches of the internal pudic nerve, the inferior pudendal branch of the *small sciatic* nerve, and the genital branch of the genito-crural nerve.

The *Spermatic Cord* extends from the internal abdominal ring, where the structures of which it is composed converge, to the back part of the testicle. It is composed of arteries, veins, lymphatics, nerves, and the excretory duct of the testicle. These structures are connected together by areolar tissue, and invested by the fascia brought down by the testicle in its descent. In the abdominal wall the cord passes obliquely along the inguinal canal, lying at first beneath the Internal oblique, and upon the fascia transversalis; but nearer the pubes, it rests upon Poupart’s ligament, having the aponeurosis of the External oblique in front of it, and the conjointed tendon behind it. It then escapes at the external ring, and descends nearly vertically into the scrotum. The left cord is rather longer than the right, consequently the left testis hangs somewhat lower than its fellow.

The *arteries of the cord* are: the spermatic, from the aorta; the artery of the
vas deferens, from the superior vesical; and the cremasteric, from the epigastric artery.

The spermatic artery supplies the testicle. On approaching the gland, it gives off some branches which supply the epididymis, and others which perforate the tunica albuginea behind, and spread out on its inner surface, or pass through the fibrous septum in its interior, to be distributed on the membranous septa between the lobes.

The artery of the vas deferens is a long slender vessel, which accompanies the vas deferens, ramifying upon the coats of that duct, and anastomosing with the spermatic artery near the testis.

The cremasteric branch from the epigastric supplies the Cremaster muscle, and other coverings of the cord.

The spermatic veins leave the back part of the testis, and, receiving branches from the epididymis, unite to form a plexus (panpiniform plexus), which forms the chief mass of the cord. They pass up in front of the vas deferens, and unite to form a single trunk, which terminates, on the right side, in the inferior vena cava, on the left side, in the left renal vein.

The lymphatics are of large size, accompany the bloodvessels, and terminate in the lumbar glands.

The nerves are the spermatic plexus from the sympathetic. This plexus is derived from the renal and aortic plexuses, joined by filaments from the hypogastric plexus which accompany the artery of the vas deferens.

Testes.

The Testes are suspended in the scrotum by the spermatic cords. Each gland is of an oval form, compressed laterally and behind and having an oblique position in the scrotum; the upper extremity being directed forwards and a little outwards; the lower, backwards and a little inwards; the anterior convex border looks forwards and downwards, the posterior or straight border, to which the cord is attached, backwards and upwards.

The anterior and lateral surfaces, as well as both extremities of the organ, are convex, free, smooth, and invested by the tunica vaginalis. The posterior border, to which the cord is attached, receives only a partial investment from that membrane. Lying upon the outer edge of this border, is a long, narrow, flattened body, named, from its relation to the testis, the epididymis (epididymis, testis). It consists of a central portion, or body, an upper enlarged extremity, the globus major, or head; and a lower pointed extremity, the tail, or globus minor. The globus major is intimately connected with the upper end of the testicle by means of its efferent ducts; and the globus minor is connected with its lower end by cellular tissue, and a reflection of the tunica vaginalis. The outer surface and upper and lower ends of the epididymis are free and covered by serous membrane; the body is also completely invested by it, excepting along its posterior border, and connected to the back of the testis by a fold of the serous membrane. Attached to the upper end of the testis, or to the epididymis, is a small pedunculated body, the use of which is unknown. When the testicle is removed from the body the position of the vas deferens, on its posterior and inner side, marks the side to which the gland has belonged.

Size and Weight. The average dimensions of this gland are from one and a half to two inches in length, one inch in breadth, and an inch and a quarter in the antero-posterior diameter; and the weight varies from six to eight drachms, the left testicle being a little the larger. The testis is invested by three tunics, the tunica vaginalis, tunica albuginea, and tunica vasculosa.

The Tunica Vaginalis is the serous covering of the testis. It is a pouch of serous membrane, derived from the peritoneum during the descent of the testis in the fetus, from the abdomen into the scrotum. After its descent, that portion of the pouch which extends from the internal ring to near the upper part of the
gland becomes obliterated, the lower portion remaining as a shut sac, which
invests the outer surface of the testis, and is reflected on the internal surface of
the serotum; hence it may be described as consisting of a visceral and parietal
portion.

The visceral portion (tunica vaginalis propria) covers the outer surface of the
testis, as well as the epididymis, connecting the latter to the testis by means of
a distinct fold. From the posterior border of the
gland, it is reflected on to the internal surface of
the scrotum.

The parietal portion of the serous membrane
(tunica vaginalis reflexa) is far more extensive
than the visceral portion, extending upwards, for
some distance in front, and on the inner side of
the cord, and reaching below the testis. The
inner surface of the tunica vaginalis is free,
smooth, and covered by a layer of squamous epithe-
lium. The interval between the visceral and parietal layers of this membrane constitutes the
cavity of the tunica vaginalis.

The Tunica Albuginea is the fibrous covering
of the testis. It is a dense fibrous membrane, of
a bluish-white color, composed of bundles of white
fibrous tissue, which interlace in every direction.
Its outer surface is covered by the tunica vagi-
nalis, except along its posterior border, and at the
points of attachment of the epididymis; hence
the tunica albuginea is usually considered as a
fibro-serous membrane, like the dura mater and
pericardium. This membrane surrounds the
glandular structure of the testicle, and, at its posterior and upper border, is
reflected into the interior of the gland, forming an incomplete vertical septum
called the mediastinum testis (corpus Highmorianum).

The mediastinum testis extends from the upper, nearly to the lower border of
the gland, and is wider above than below. From the front and sides of this
septum, numerous slender fibrous cords (trabeculae) are given off, which pass to
be attached to the inner surface of the tunica albuginea: they serve to maintain
the form of the testis, and join with similar cords given off from the inner sur-
face of the tunica albuginea, to form spaces which inclose the separate lobules
of the organ. The mediastinum supports the vessels and ducts of the testis in
their passage to and from the substance of the gland.

The Tunica Vasculosa (pia mater testis) is the vascular layer of the testis, con-
sisting of a plexus of blood vessels, held together by a delicate areolar tissue.
It covers the inner surface of the tunica albuginea, sending off numerous pro-
cesses between the lobules, which are supported by the fibrous prolongations
from the mediastinum testis.

Structure. The glandular structure of the testis consists of numerous lobules
(lobuli testis). Their number, in a single testis, is estimated by Berres at 250,
and by Krause at 400. They differ in size according to their position, those in
the middle of the gland being larger and longer. The lobules are conical in
shape, the base being directed towards the circumference of the organ, the apex
towards the mediastinum. Each lobule is contained in one of the intervals
between the fibrous cords and vascular processes, which extend between the
mediastinum testis and the tunica albuginea, and consists of from one to three,
or more, minute convoluted tubes, the tubuli seminiferi. The tubes may be
separately unravelled, by careful dissection under water, and may be seen to
commence either by free cecal ends, or by anastomotic loops. The total number
of tubes is considered by Munro to be about 300, and the length of each about
sixteen feet; by Lauth, their number is estimated at 840, and their average length two feet and a quarter. Their diameter varies from \( \frac{1}{10} \)th to \( \frac{1}{10} \)th of an inch. The tubuli are pale in color in early life, but, in old age, they acquire a deep yellow tinge, from containing much fatty matter. They consist of a basement membrane, lined by epithelium consisting of nucleated glandular corpuscles, and are inclosed in a delicate plexus of capillary vessels. In the apices of the lobules, the tubuli become less convoluted, assume a nearly straight course, and unite together to form from twenty to thirty larger ducts, of about \( \frac{1}{8} \)th of an inch in diameter, and these, from their straight course, are called vasa recta.

The vasa recta enter the fibrous tissue of the mediastinum, and pass upwards and backwards, forming, in their ascent, a close network of anastomosing tubes, with exceedingly thin parietae; this constitutes the rete testis. At the upper end of the mediastinum, the vessels of the rete testis terminate in from twelve to fifteen or twenty ducts, the vasa efferentia: they perforate the tunica albuginea, and carry the seminal fluid from the testis to the epididymis. Their course is at first straight; they then become enlarged, and exceedingly convoluted, and form a series of conical masses, the coni vasculosi, which, together, constitute the globus major of the epididymis. Each cone consists of a single convoluted duct, from six to eight inches in length, the diameter of which gradually decreases from the testis to the epididymis. Opposite the bases of the cones, the efferent vessels open at narrow intervals into a single duct, which constitutes, by its complex convolutions, the body and globus minor of the epididymis. When the convolutions of this tube are unravelled, it measures upwards of twenty feet in length, and increases in breadth and thickness as it approaches the vas deferens. The convolutions are held together by fine arcular tissue, and by bands of fibrous tissue. A long narrow tube, the vasa- lum aberrans of Haller, is occasionally found connected with the lower part of the canal of the epididymis, or with the commencement of the vas deferens. It extends up into the cord for about two or three inches, where it terminates by a blind extremity, which is occasionally bifurcated. Its length varies from an inch and a half to fourteen inches, and sometimes it becomes dilated towards its extremity: more commonly, it retains the same diameter throughout. Its structure is similar to that of the vas deferens. Occasionally, it is found unconnected with the epididymis.

The Vas Deferens, the excretory duct of the testis, is the continuation of the epididymis. Commencing at the lower part of the globus minor, it ascends along the posterior and inner side of the testis and epididymis, and along the back part of the spermatic cord, through the spermatic canal to the internal abdominal ring. From the ring it descends into the pelvis, crossing the external iliac vessels, and curves round the outer side of the epigastric artery: at the side of the bladder, it arches backwards and downwards to its base, crossing outside the obliterated hypogastric artery, and to the inner side of the ureter. At the base of the bladder, it lies between that viscus and the rectum, running along the inner border of the vesicula seminalis. In this situation it becomes enlarged and sacculated: and, becoming narrowed, at the base of the prostate, unites with the duct of the vesicula seminalis to form the ejaculatory duct. The
vas deferens presents a hard and cord-like sensation to the fingers; it is about two feet in length, of cylindrical form, and about a line and a quarter in diameter. Its walls are of extreme density and thickness, measuring one-third of a line; and its canal is extremely small, measuring about half a line.

In Structure, the vas deferens consists of three coats: 1. An external, or cellular coat; 2. A muscular coat, which is thick, dense, elastic, and consists of two longitudinal, and an intermediate circular layer of muscular fibres; 3. An internal, or mucous coat, which is pale, and arranged in longitudinal folds; its epithelial covering is of the columnar variety.

VESICULÆ SEMINALES.

The Seminal Vesicles are two lobulated membranous pouches, placed between the base of the bladder and the rectum, serving as reservoirs for the semen, and secreting some fluid to be added to that of the testicles. Each sac is somewhat pyramidal in form, the broad end being directed backwards and the narrow end forwards towards the prostate. They measure about two and a half inches in length, about five lines in breadth, and about two or three lines in thickness. They vary, however, in size, not only in different individuals, but also in the same individual on the two sides. Their upper surface is in contact with the base of the bladder, extending from near the termination of the ureters to the base of the prostate gland. Their under surface rests upon the rectum, from which they are separated by the recto-vesical fascia. Their posterior extremities diverge from each other. Their anterior extremities are pointed, and converge towards the base of the prostate gland, where each joins with the corresponding vas deferens to form the ejaculatory duct. Along the inner margin of each vesicula runs the enlarged and convoluted vas deferens. The inner border of the vesicula, and the corresponding vas deferens, form the lateral boundary of a triangular space, limited behind by the recto-vesical peritoneal fold; the portion of the bladder included in this space rests on the rectum, and corresponds with the trigonum vesicae in its interior.

Structures. Each vesicula consists of a single tube, coiled upon itself, and giving off several irregular caecal diverticula; the separate coils, as well as the

Fig. 500.—Base of the Bladder, with the Vasa Deferentia and Vesiculæ Seminales.
diverticula, being connected together by fibrous tissue. When uncoiled, this
tube is about the diameter of a quill, and varies in length from four to six
inches; it terminates posteriorly in a cul-de-sac; its anterior extremity becomes
constricted into a narrow straight duct, which joins on its inner side with the
corresponding vas deferens, and forms the ejaculatory duct.

The ejaculatory ducts, two in number, one on each side, are formed by the
junction of the duct of the vesicula seminalis with the vas deferens. Each duct
is about three-quarters of an inch in length; it commences at the base of the
prostate, and runs forwards and upwards in a canal in its substance, and along
the side of the utriculus, to terminate by a separate slit-like orifice upon or
within the margins of the sinus peculiaris. The ducts diminish in size, and
converge towards their termination.

Structure. The vesiculae seminales are composed of three coats: an external
or fibro-cellular, derived from the recto-vesical fascia; a middle or fibrous coat,
which is firm, dense, fibrous in structure, somewhat elastic, and contains, accord-
ing to E. H. Weber, muscular fibres; and an internal or mucous coat, which is
pale, of a whitish-brown color, and presents a delicate reticular structure, like
that seen in the gall-bladder, but the meshes are finer. The epithelium is
squamous. The coats of the ejaculatory ducts are extremely thin, the outer
fibrous layer being almost entirely lost after their entrance into the prostate, a
thin layer of muscular fibres and the mucous membrane forming the only con-
stituents of the tubes.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries supplying the vesiculae seminales are derived
from the inferior vesical and middle hemorrhoidal. The veins and lymphatics
accompany the arteries. The nerves are derived from the hypogastric plexus.

The Semen is a thick, whitish fluid, having a peculiar odor. It consists of a
fluid, the liquor seminis, and solid particles, the seminal granules, and sperma-
tozoa.

The liquor seminis is transparent, colorless, and of an albuminous composition,
containing particles of squamous and columnar epithelium, with oil-globules
and granular matter floating in it, besides the above-mentioned solid elements.

The seminal granules are round finely-granular corpuscles, measuring \( \frac{1}{200} \)th
of an inch in diameter.

The spermatozoa, or spermatic filaments, are the essential agents in producing
fecundation. They are minute elongated particles, consisting of a small flattened
oval extremity or body, and a long slender caudal filament. A small circular
spot is observed in the centre of the body, and at its point of connection with
the tail there is frequently seen a projecting rim or collar. The movements of
these bodies are remarkable, and consist of a lashing or undulatory motion of
the tail.

Descent of the Testes.

The testes, at an early period of foetal life, are placed at the back part of the
abdominal cavity, behind the peritoneum, in front, and a little below the
kidneys. The anterior surface and sides are invested by peritoneum: the blood-
vessels and efferent ducts are connected with their posterior surface; and
attached to the lower end is a peculiar structure, the gubernaculum testis,
which is said to assist in their descent.

The Gubernaculum Testis attains its full development between the fifth and
sixth months; it is a conical-shaped cord, attached above to the lower end of
the epididymis, and below to the bottom of the scrotum. It is placed behind
the peritoneum, lying upon the front of the Psoas muscle, and completely filling
the inguinal canal. It consists of a soft transparent areolar tissue within, which
often appears partially hollow, surrounded by a layer of striped muscular fibres,
the Cremaster, which ascends upon this body to be attached to the testis.
According to Mr. Curling, the gubernaculum, as well as these muscular fibres,
MALE GENERATIVE ORGANS.

divides below into three processes: the external and broadest process is connected with Poupart's ligament in the inguinal canal; the middle process descends along the inguinal canal to the bottom of the scrotum, where it joins the dartos; the internal one is firmly attached to the os pubis and sheath of the Rectus muscle; some fibres, moreover, are reflected from the Internal oblique on to the front of the gubernaculum. Up to the fifth month, the testis is situated in the lumbar region, covered in front and at the sides by peritoneum, and supported in its position by a fold of that membrane, called the mesorchium; between the fifth and sixth months the testis descends to the iliac fossa, the gubernaculum at the same time becoming shortened; during the seventh month, it enters the internal abdominal ring, a small pouch of peritoneum (processus vaginalis) preceding the testis in its course through the canal. By the end of the eighth month, the testis has descended into the scrotum, carrying down with it a lengthened pouch of peritoneum, which communicates by its upper extremity with the peritoneal cavity. Just before birth, the upper part of the pouch usually becomes closed, and this obliteration extends gradually downwards to within a short distance of the testis. The process of peritoneum surrounding the testis which is now entirely cut off from the general peritoneal cavity, constitutes the tunica vaginalis.

Mr. Curling believes that the descent of the testis is effected by means of the muscular fibres of the gubernaculum; those fibres which proceed from Poupart's ligament and the Obliquus internus are said to guide the organ into the inguinal canal; those attached to the pubis draw it below the external abdominal ring; and those attached to the bottom of the scrotum complete its descent. During the descent of the organ these muscular fibres become gradually everted, forming a muscular layer, which becomes placed external to the process of the peritoneum, surrounding the gland and spermatic cord, and constitutes the Cremastr. In the female, a small cord, corresponding to the gubernaculum in the male, descends to the inguinal region, and ultimately forms the round ligament of the uterus. A pouch of peritoneum accompanies it along the inguinal canal, analogous to the processus vaginalis in the male: it is called the canal of Nuck.

1 The obliteration of the process of peritoneum which accompanies the cord, and is hence called the funicular process, is often incomplete. For an account of the various conditions produced by such incomplete obliteration (which are of great importance in the pathological anatomy of Ingual Hernia), the student is referred to the "Essay on Hernia," by Mr. Birkett, in "A System of Surgery," edited by T. Holmes, vol. iv.
Female Organs of Generation.

The External Organs of Generation in the female are the mons Veneris, the labia majora and minora, the clitoris, the meatus urinarius, and the orifice of the vagina. The term “vulva” or “pudendum,” as generally applied, includes all these parts.

The mons Veneris is the rounded eminence in front of the pubes, formed by a collection of fatty tissue beneath the integument. It surmounts the vulva, and is covered with hair at the time of puberty.

Fig. 501.—The Vulva. External Female Organs of Generation.

The labia majora are two prominent longitudinal cutaneous folds, extending downwards from the mons Veneris to the anterior boundary of the perineum, and inclosing an elliptical fissure, the common urino-sexual opening. Each labium is formed externally of integument covered with hair; internally, of mucous membrane, which is continuous with the genito-urinary mucous tract; and between the two, of a considerable quantity of areolar tissue, fat and a tissue.
resembling the dartos of the scrotum, besides vessels, nerves, and glands. The labia are thicker in front than behind, and joined together at each extremity, forming the anterior and posterior commissures. The interval left between the posterior commissure and the margin of the anus is about an inch in length, and constitutes the perineum. Just within the posterior commissure is a small transverse fold, the *frænum pudendi* or *fourchette*, which is commonly ruptured in the first parturition, and the space between it and the commissure is called the *fossa navicularis*. The labia are analogous to the scrotum in the male.

The *labia minora* or *nymphae* are two small folds of mucous membrane situated within the labia majora, extending from the clitoris obliquely downwards and outwards for about an inch and a half on each side of the orifice of the vagina, on the sides of which they are lost. They are continuous externally with the labia majora, internally with the inner surface of the vagina. As they converge towards the clitoris in front, each labium divides into two folds, which surround the glans clitoridis, the superior folds uniting to form the *preputium clitoridis*, the inferior folds being attached to the glans, and forming the *frænum*. The nymphae are composed of mucous membrane, covered by a thin epithelial layer. They contain a plexus of vessels in their interior, and are provided with numerous large mucous crypts which secrete abundance of sebaceous matter.

The clitoris is an erectile structure, analogous to the corpora cavernosa of the penis. It is situated beneath the anterior commissure, partially hidden between the anterior extremities of the labia minora. It is an elongated organ, connected to the rami of the pubes and ischia on each side by two crura; the body is short and concealed beneath the labia; the free extremity, or glans clitoridis, is a small rounded tubercle, consisting of spongy erectile tissue, and highly sensitive. The clitoris consists of two corpora cavernosa, composed of erectile tissue inclosed in a dense layer of fibrous membrane, united together along their inner surfaces by an incomplete fibrous pectiniform septum. It is provided, like the penis, with a suspensory ligament, and with two small muscles, the Erectores clitoridis, which are inserted into the crura of the corpora cavernosa.

Between the clitoris and the entrance of the vagina is a triangular smooth surface, bounded on each side by the nymphae: this is the *vestibule*.

The orifice of the urethra (*meatus urinarius*), is situated at the back part of the vestibule, about an inch below the clitoris, and near the margin of the vagina, surrounded by a prominent elevation of the mucous membrane. Below the meatus urinarius is the orifice of the vagina, an elliptical aperture, more or less closed in the virgin, by a membranous fold, the hymen.

The hymen is a thin semilunar fold of mucous membrane, stretched across the lower part of the orifice of the vagina; its concave margin being turned upwards towards the pubes. Sometimes this membrane forms a complete septum across the orifice of the vagina; a condition known as imperforate hymen. Occasionally it forms a circular septum, perforated in the centre by a round opening; sometimes it is cribiform, or its free margin forms a membranous fringe, or it may be entirely absent. It may also persist after copulation. The hymen cannot, consequently, be considered as a test of virginity. Its rupture, or the rudimentary condition of the membrane above referred to, gives rise to those small rounded elevations which surround the opening of the vagina, the *carunculae myritiformes*.

**Glands of Bartholine.** On each side of the commencement of the vagina is a round or oblong body, of a reddish-yellow color, and of the size of a horse-bean, analogous to Cowper's gland in the male. It is called the *gland of Bartholine*. Each gland opens by means of a long single duct, upon the inner side of the nymphae, external to the hymen. Extending from the clitoris, along either side of the vestibule, and lying a little behind the nymphae, are two large oblong masses, about an inch in length, consisting of a plexus of veins, inclosed in a thin layer of fibrous membrane. These bodies are narrow in front, rounded below, and are connected with the crura of the clitoris and rami of the pubes.
FEMALE URETHRA.

They are termed by Kobelt the *bulbi vestibuli*: and he considers them analogous to the bulb of the corpus spongiosum in the male. Immediately in front of these bodies is a smaller venous plexus, continuous with the bulbi vestibuli behind, and the glans clitoridis in front; it is called by Kobelt the *pars intermedia*, and is considered by him as analogous to that part of the body of the corpus spongiosum which immediately succeeds the bulb.

**Fig. 502.**—Section of Female Pelvis, showing position of Viscera.

**BLADDER.**

The Bladder is situated at the anterior part of the pelvis. It is in relation, *in front*, with the os pubis; *behind*, with the uterus, some convolutions of the small intestine being interposed; its *base* lies in contact with the neck of the uterus, and with the anterior wall of the vagina. The bladder is said to be larger in the female than in the male, and is very broad in its transverse diameter.

**URETHRA.**

The Urethra is a narrow membranous canal, about an inch and a half in length, extending from the neck of the bladder to the meatus urinarius. It is placed beneath the symphysis pubis, embedded in the anterior wall of the vagina; and its direction is obliquely downwards and forwards, its course being slightly curved, the concavity directed forwards and upwards. Its diameter, when undilated, is about a quarter of an inch. The urethra perforates the triangular ligament, precisely as in the male, and is surrounded by the muscular fibres of the Compressor urethrae.

*Structure.* The urethra consists of three coats: muscular, erectile, and mucous.
The muscular coat is continuous with that of the bladder; it extends the whole length of the tube, and consists of a thick stratum of circular fibres. A thin layer of spongy, erectile tissue, intermixed with much elastic tissue, lies immediately beneath the mucous coat.

The mucous coat is pale, continuous, externally, with that of the vulva, and internally with that of the bladder. It is thrown into longitudinal folds one of which, placed along the floor of the canal, resembles the verumontanum in the male urethra. It is lined by laminated epithelium, which becomes spheroidal at the bladder. Its external orifice is surrounded by a few mucous follicles.

The urethra, from not being surrounded by dense resisting structures, as in the male, admits of considerable dilatation, which enables the surgeon to remove with considerable facility calculi, or other foreign bodies, from the cavity of the bladder.

RECTUM.

The Rectum is more capacious and less curved in the female than in the male.

The first portion extends from the left sacro-iliac symphysis to the middle of the sacrum. Its connections are similar to those in the male.

The second portion extends to the tip of the coccyx. It is covered in front by the peritoneum, but only for a short distance, at its upper part: it is in relation with the posterior wall of the vagina.

The third portion curves backwards from the vagina to the anus, leaving a space which corresponds on the surface of the body to the perineum. Its extremity is surrounded by the Sphincter muscles, and its sides are supported by the Levatores ani.

THE VAGINA.

The Vagina is a membranous canal, extending from the vulva to the uterus. It is situated in the cavity of the pelvis, behind the bladder, and in front of the rectum. Its direction is curved forwards and downwards, following at first the line of the axis of the cavity of the pelvis, and afterwards that of the outlet. It is cylindrical in shape, flattened from before backwards, and its walls are ordinarily in contact with each other. Its length is about four inches along its anterior wall, and between five and six inches along its posterior wall. It is constricted at its commencement, and becomes dilated near its uterine extremity; it surrounds the vaginal portion of the cervix uteri, a short distance from the os, and its attachment extends higher up on the posterior than on the anterior wall of the uterus.

Relations. Its anterior surface is concave, and in relation with the base of the bladder, and with the urethra. Its posterior surface is convex, and connected to the anterior wall of the rectum, for the lower three-fourths of its extent, the upper fourth being separated from that tube by the recto-uterine fold of peritoneum, which forms a cul-de-sac between the vagina and rectum. Its sides give attachment superiorly to the broad ligaments, and inferiorly to the Levatores ani muscles and recto-vesical fascia.

Structure. The vagina consists of an external, or muscular coat, a layer of erectile tissue, and an internal mucous lining.

The muscular coat consists of longitudinal fibres which surround the vagina, and are continuous with the superficial muscular fibres of the uterus. The strongest fasciculi are those attached to the recto-vesical fascia on each side. The erectile tissue is inclosed between two layers of fibrous membrane: it is more abundant at the lower than at the upper part of the vagina.

The mucous membrane is continuous, above, with that lining the uterus, and, below with the integument covering the labia majora. Its inner surface pre-
THE UTERUS.

The Uterus is the organ of gestation, receiving the fecundated ovum in its cavity, retaining and supporting it during the development of the fetus, and becoming the principal agent in its expulsion at the time of parturition.

In the virgin state it is pear-shaped, flattened from before backwards, and situated in the cavity of the pelvis, between the bladder and the rectum; it is retained in its position by the round and broad ligaments on each side, and projects into the upper end of the vagina below. Its upper end, or base, is directed upwards and forwards; its lower end, or apex, downwards and backwards, in the line of the axis of the inlet of the pelvis. It therefore forms an angle with the vagina, since the direction of the vagina corresponds to the axis of the cavity and outlet of the pelvis. The uterus measures about three inches in length, two in breadth at its upper part, and an inch in thickness, and it weighs from an ounce to an ounce and a half.

The fundus is the upper broad extremity of the organ: it is convex, covered by peritoneum, and placed on a line below the level of the brim of the pelvis.

The body gradually narrows from the fundus to the neck. Its anterior surface is flattened, covered by peritoneum in the upper three-fourths of its extent, and separated from the bladder by some convolutions of the small intestine: the lower fourth is connected with the bladder. Its posterior surface is convex, covered by peritoneum throughout, and separated from the rectum by some convolutions of the intestine. Its lateral margins are concave, and give attachment to the Fallopian tube above, the round ligament below and in front of this, and the ligament of the ovary behind and below both of these structures.

The cervix is the lower rounded and constricted portion of the uterus: around its circumference is attached the upper end of the vagina, which extends upwards a greater distance behind than in front.

At the vaginal extremity of the uterus is a transverse aperture, the os uteri, bounded by two lips, the anterior of which is thick, the posterior narrow and long.

Ligaments. The ligaments of the uterus are six in number: two anterior, two posterior, and two lateral. They are formed of peritoneum.

The two anterior ligaments (vesico-uterine), are two semilunar folds, which pass between the neck of the uterus and the posterior surface of the bladder.

The two posterior ligaments (recto-uterine), pass between the sides of the uterus and rectum.

The two lateral or broad ligaments pass from the sides of the uterus to the lateral walls of the pelvis, forming a septum across the pelvis, which divides that cavity into two portions. In the anterior part are contained the bladder, urethra, and vagina; in the posterior part, the rectum.

The cavity of the uterus is small in comparison with the size of the organ: that portion of the cavity, which corresponds to the body is triangular, flattened from before backwards, so that its walls are closely approximated, and having its base directed upwards towards the fundus. At each superior angle is a funnel-shaped cavity, which constitutes the remains of the division of the body of the uterus into two cornua; and at the bottom of each cavity is the minute
FEMALE ORGANS OF GENERATION.

Orifice of the Fallopian tube. At the inferior angle of the uterine cavity is a small constricted opening, the internal orifice (ostium internum), which leads into the cavity of the cervix. The cavity of the cervix is somewhat cylindrical, flattened from before backwards, broader at the middle than at either extremity, and communicates, below, with the vagina. Each wall of the canal presents a longitudinal column, from which proceed a number of small oblique columns, giving the appearance of branches from the stem of a tree, and hence the name arbor vitæ uterinus applied to it. These folds usually become very indistinct after the first labor.

Structure. The uterus is composed of three coats: an external serous coat, a middle or muscular layer, and an internal mucous coat.

The serous coat is derived from the peritoneum; it invests the fundus and the whole of the posterior surface of the body of the uterus; but only the upper three-fourths of its anterior surface.

The muscular coat forms the chief bulk of the substance of the uterus. In the unimpregnated state, it is dense, firm, of a grayish color, and cuts almost like cartilage. It is thick opposite the middle of the body and fundus, and thin at the orifices of the Fallopian tubes. It consists of bundles of unstriped muscular fibres, disposed in layers, intermixed with areolar tissue, blood vessels, lymphatic vessels and nerves. In the impregnated state, the muscular tissue becomes more prominently developed, and is disposed in three layers: external, middle, and internal.

The external layer is placed beneath the peritoneum, disposed as a thin plane on the anterior and posterior surfaces. It consists of fibres, which pass transversely across the fundus, and, converging at each superior angle of the uterus, are continued on the Fallopian tubes, the round ligament, and ligament of the ovary; some passing at each side into the broad ligament, and others running backwards from the cervix into the recto-uterine ligaments.

The middle layer of fibres presents no regularity in its arrangement, being disposed longitudinally, obliquely, and transversely.

The internal, or deep layer, consists of circular fibres arranged in the form of two hollow cones, the apices of which surround the orifices of the Fallopian tubes, their bases intermingling with one another on the middle of the body of the uterus. At the cervix these fibres are disposed transversely.

The mucous membrane is thin, smooth, and closely adherent to the subjacent tissue. It is continuous, through the fimbriated extremity of the Fallopian tubes, with the peritoneum; and, through the os uteri, with the mucous membrane lining the vagina.

In the body of the uterus, it is smooth, soft, of a reddish color, lined by columnar-ciliated epithelium, and presents, when viewed with a lens, the orifices of numerous tubular follicles arranged perpendicularly to the surface. They are of small size in the unimpregnated uterus, but shortly after impregnation they are enlarged, elongated, presenting a contorted or waved appearance towards their closed extremities, which occasionally dilate into two or three sauculated extremities. The circular orifices of these glands may be seen on the inner surface of the mucous membrane, many of which during the early period of pregnancy are surrounded by a whitish ring formed of epithelium which lines the follicles. In the impregnated uterus, the epithelium loses its ciliated character.

In the cervix the mucous membrane between the rugæ and around the os uteri is provided with numerous mucous follicles and glands. The small, transparent, vesicular elevations, so often found within the os and cervix uteri, are due to closure of the mouths of these follicles, and their distension with their proper secretion. They are called the ovula of Naboith. The mucous membrane covering the lower half of the cervix presents numerous papille.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries of the uterus are the uterine, from the internal iliacs; and the ovarian, from the aorta. They are remarkable for their
APPENDAGES OF THE UTERUS.

The appendages of the uterus are, the Fallopian tubes, the ovaries and their ligaments, and the round ligaments. These structures, together with their nutrient vessels and nerves, and some scattered muscular fibres, are inclosed between the two folds of peritoneum, which constitute the broad ligaments; they are placed in the following order: in front is the round ligament; the Fallopian tube occupies the free margin of the broad ligament: the ovary and its ligament are behind and below the latter.

The Fallopian Tubes, or oviducts, convey the ova from the ovaries to the cavity of the uterus. They are two in number, one on each side, situated in the free margin of the broad ligament, extending from each superior angle of the uterus to the sides of the pelvis. Each tube is about four inches in length; its canal is exceedingly minute, and commences at the superior angle of the uterus by a minute orifice, the ostium internum, which will hardly admit a fine bristle; it continues narrow along the inner half of the tube, and then gradually widens into a trumpet-shaped extremity, which becomes contracted at its termination. This orifice is called the ostium abdominale, and communicates with the peritoneal cavity. Its margins are surrounded by a series of fringe-like processes, termed fimbriae, and one of these processes is connected with the outer end of the ovary. To this part of the tube the name fimbriated extremity is applied; it is also called morus diaboli, from the peculiar manner in which it embraces the surface of the ovary during sexual excitement. In connection with the fimbriae of the Fallopian tube, or with the broad ligament close to them, there is frequently a small vesicle or hydatid, floating on a long stalk of peritoneum.
Structure. The Fallopian tube consists of three coats: serous, muscular, and mucous.

The external or serous coat is derived from the peritoneum.

The middle muscular coat consists of an external longitudinal and an internal or circular layer of muscular fibres continuous with those of the uterus.

The internal or mucous coat is continuous with the mucous lining of the uterus, and at the free extremity of the tube with the peritoneum. It is thrown into longitudinal folds in the outer part of the tube, which indicate its adaptation for dilatation, and is covered by columnar ciliated epithelium. This form of epithelium is also found on the inner and outer surfaces of the fimbriae.

Fig. 503.—The Uterus and its Appendages. Anterior View.

The Ovaries (testes muliebres, Galen) are analogous to the testes in the male. They are oval-shaped bodies, of an elongated form, flattened from above downwards, situated one on each side of the uterus, in the posterior part of the broad ligament behind and below the Fallopian tubes. Each ovary is connected, by its anterior margin, to the broad ligaments; by its inner extremity to the uterus by a proper ligament, the ligament of the ovary; and by its outer end to the fimbriated extremity of the Fallopian tube by a short ligamentous cord. The ovaries are of a whitish color, and present either a smooth or puckered uneven surface. They are each about an inch and a half in length, three-quarters of an inch in width, and about a third of an inch thick; and weigh from one to two drachms. The surfaces and posterior convex border are free, the anterior straight border being attached to the broad ligament.

Structure. The ovary is invested by peritoneum, excepting along its anterior attached margin; beneath this, is the proper fibrous covering of the organ, the tunica albuginea, which is extremely dense and firm in structure, and incloses a peculiar soft fibrous tissue, or stroma, abundantly supplied with blood-vessels (Fig. 504). Imbedded in the meshes of this tissue are numerous small, round, transparent vesicles, in various stages of development; they are the Graafian vesicles, the ovisacs containing the ova. In women who have not borne children, they vary in number from ten to fifteen or twenty; and in size from a pin's head
to a pea; but Dr. Martin Barry has shown, that a large number of microscopic ovisacs exist in the parenchyma of the organ, few of which produce ova. These vesicles have thin, transparent walls, and are filled with a clear, colorless, albuminous fluid.

The Graafian vesicles are, during their early development, small, and deeply seated in the substance of the ovary; as they enlarge, they approach the surface; and, when mature, form small projections on the exterior of the ovary beneath the peritoneum. Each vesicle consists of an external fibro-vascular coat connected with the surrounding struma of the ovary by a network of bloodvessels; and an internal coat, named ovicapsule, which is lined by a layer of nucleated cells, called the membrana granulosa. The fluid contained in the interior of the vesicles is transparent and albuminous, and in it is suspended the ovum.

The formation, development, and maturation of the Graafian vesicles and ova continue uninterruptedly from infancy to the end of the fruitful period of woman's life. Before puberty, the ovaries are small, the Graafian vesicles contained in them minute, and few in number; and few, probably, ever attain full development, but shrink and disappear, their ova being incapable of impregnation. At puberty the ovaries enlarge, are more vascular, the Graafian vesicles are developed in greater abundance, and their ova are capable of fecundation.

Discharge of the Ovum. The Graafian vesicles, after gradually approaching the surface of the ovary, burst; the ovum and fluid contents of the vesicles are liberated, and escape on the exterior of the ovary, passing from thence into the Fallopian tube, the fimbriated processes of which are supposed to grasp the ovary, the aperture of the tube being applied to the part corresponding to the matured and bursting vesicle. In the human subject and most mammalia, the maturation and discharge of the ova occur at regular periods only, and are indicated, in the mammalia, by the phenomena of heat or rut; and in the human female, by menstruation. Sexual desire is more intense in females at this period; and if the union of the sexes takes place, the ovum may be fecundated.

Corpus Luteum. Immediately after the rupture of a Graafian vesicle, and the escape of its ovum, the vesicle is filled with blood-tinged fluid; and in a short time the circumference of the vesicle is occupied by a firm, yellow substance, which is probably formed from plasma exuded from its walls. Dr. Lee believes that this yellow matter is deposited outside both the membranes of the follicle; Montgomery regards it as placed between the layers; while Kölliker considers it as a thickening of the inner layer of the outer coat of the follicle. The exudation is at first of a dark brown or brownish-red color, but it soon becomes paler, and its consistence more dense.

For every follicle in the ovary from which an ovum is discharged, a corpus luteum will be found. But the characters it exhibits, and the changes produced in it will be determined by the circumstance of the ovum being impregnated or not.

Although there is little doubt that corpora lutea exist in the ovaries after the escape of ova, independent of coitus or impregnation, it appears that the corpus luteum of pregnancy (true corpus luteum) possesses characters by which it may be distinguished from one formed in a follicle, from which an ovum has been discharged without subsequent impregnation (false corpus luteum).

The true corpora lutea are of large size, often as large as a mulberry; of a rounded form, and project from the surface of the ovary, the summit of the projection presenting a triangular depression or cicatrix, where the peritoneum appears to have been torn. They contain a small cavity in their centre during the early period of their formation, which becomes contracted, and exhibits a stellate cicatrix during the latter stages of pregnancy. Their vascularity, lobulated or puckered appearance, firm consistence, and yellow color, are also characteristic marks of true corpora lutea.

False corpora lutea are of small size, do not project from the surface of the ovary, are angular in form, seldom present any cicatrix, contain no cavity in their centre: the material composing them is not lobulated, its consistence is
usually soft, often resembling, coagulated blood; the yellow matter exists in the form of a very thin layer, or more commonly is entirely wanting. False corpora lutea most frequently result from the effusion into the cavities of the Graafian vesicles of serum or blood, which subsequently undergoes various changes, and is ultimately removed. Dr. Lee states, that in the false corpora lutea the yellow substance is contained within, or attached to, the inner surface of the Graafian vesicle, and does not surround it, as is the case in the true corpora lutea.

In the fetus, the ovaries are situated, like the testes, in the lumbar region near the kidneys. They may be distinguished from those bodies at an early period by their elongated and flattened form, and by their position, which is at first oblique, and then nearly transverse. They gradually descend into the pelvis.

Lying above the ovary in the broad ligament between it and the Fallopian tube is the organ of Rosenmüller, called also the parovarium or eooophoron. This is the remnant of a fossal structure, the development of which has been described in the Introduction. In the adult it consists of a few closed convoluted tubes lined with epithelium, some of them atrophied, and one usually distinguishable from the rest by ending in a bulbous or hydatid swelling. The parovarium is connected at its uterine extremity with the remains of the Wolffian duct, the duct of Goertner.

The Ligament of the ovary is a rounded cord, which extends from each superior angle of the uterus to the inner extremity of the ovary; it consists of fibrous tissue and a few muscular fibres derived from the uterus.

The Round Ligaments are two rounded cords, between four and five inches in length, situated between the layers of the broad ligament in front of and below the Fallopian tube. Commencing on each side at the superior angle of the uterus, this ligament passes forwards and outwards through the internal abdominal ring, along the inguinal canal to the labia majora, in which it becomes lost. The round ligament consists of areolar tissue, vessels and nerves, besides a dense bundle of fibrous tissue, and muscular fibres prolonged from the uterus, inclosed in a duplicature of peritoneum, which, in the fetus, is prolonged in the form of a tubular process for a short distance into the inguinal canal. This process is called the canal of Nuck. It is generally obliterated in the adult, but sometimes remains pervious even in advanced life. It is analogous to the peritoneal pouch which accompanies the descent of the testis.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries of the ovaries and Fallopian tubes are the ovarian from the aorta. They anastomose with the termination of the uterine arteries, and enter the attached border of the ovary. The veins follow the course of the arteries; they form a plexus near the ovary, the pampiniform plexus. The nerves are derived from the inferior hypogastric, or pelvic, plexus and from the ovarian plexus, the Fallopian tube receiving a branch from one of the uterine nerves.

Mammary Glands.

The Mammae, or breasts, are accessory glands of the generative system, which secrete the milk. They exist in the male as well as in the female; but in the former only in a rudimentary state, unless their growth is excited by peculiar circumstances. In the female, they are two large hemispherical eminences situated towards the lateral aspect of the pectoral region corresponding to the interval between the third and sixth or seventh ribs, and extending from the side of the sternum to the axilla. Their weight and dimensions differ at different periods of life, and in different individuals. Before puberty they are of small size, but enlarge as the generative organs become more completely developed. They increase during pregnancy, and especially after delivery, and become atrophied in old age. The left mamma is generally a little larger than the right. Their base is nearly circular, flattened or slightly concave, and has its long diameter
directed upwards and outwards towards the axilla: they are separated from the Pectoral muscles by a thin layer of superficial fascia. The outer surface of the mamma is convex, and presents, just below the centre, a small conical prominence, the nipple (mammilla). The surface of the nipple is dark-colored, and surrounded by an areola having a colored tint. In the virgin, the areola is of a delicate rosy hue; about the second month of impregnation, it enlarges, and acquires a darker tinge, which increases as pregnancy advances, becoming, in some cases, of a dark brown, or even black color. This color diminishes as soon as lactation is over, but is never entirely lost through life. These changes in the color of the areolas are of extreme importance in forming a conclusion in a case of suspected pregnancy.

The nipple is a cylindrical or conical eminence, capable of undergoing a sort of erection from mechanical excitement. It is of a pink or brownish hue, its surface wrinkled and provided with papillae, and it is perforated by numerous orifices, the apertures of the lactiferous ducts. Near the base of the nipple, and upon the surface of the areola, are numerous sebaceous glands, which become much enlarged during lactation, and present the appearance of small tubercles beneath the skin. These glands secrete a peculiar fatty substance, which serves as a protection to the integument of the nipple in the act of sucking. The nipple consists of numerous vessels, which form a kind of erectile tissue, intermixed with plain muscular fibres.

Structure. The mamma consists of gland-tissue; of fibrous tissue, connecting its lobes; and of fatty tissue in the intervals between the lobes. The mammary gland, when freed from cellular tissue and fat, is of a pale reddish color, firm in texture, circular in form, flattened from before backwards, thicker in the centre than at the circumference, and presenting several inequalities on its surface, especially in front. It consists of numerous lobes, and these are composed of lobules, connected together by areolar tissue, blood vessels, and ducts. The smallest lobules consist of a cluster of rounded vesicles, which open into the smallest branches of the lactiferous ducts; these ducts unifying, form larger ducts, which terminate in a single canal, corresponding with one of the chief subdivisions of the gland. The number of excretory ducts varies from fifteen to twenty: they are termed the tubuli lactiferi, t. galactophori. They converge towards the areola, beneath which they form dilatations, or ampullae, which serve as reservoirs for the milk; and, at the base of the nipple, become contracted, and pursue a straight course to its summit, perforating it by separate orifices considerably narrower than the ducts themselves. The ducts are composed of areolar tissue, with longitudinal and transverse elastic fibres, and longitudinal muscular fibres: their mucous lining is continuous, at the point of the nipple, with the integument: the epithelium is of the tessellated or scaly variety near the orifices of the ducts, and columnar in the deeper parts of the gland.

The fibrous tissue invests the entire surface of the breast, and sends down septa between its lobes, connecting them together.

The fatty tissue surrounds the surface of the gland, and occupies the intervals between its lobes and lobules. It usually exists in considerably abundance, and determines the form and size of the gland. There is no fat immediately beneath the areola and nipple.

Vessels and Nerves. The arteries supplying the mammae are derived from the thoracic branches of the axillary, the intercostals, and internal mammary. The veins describe an anastomotic circle round the base of the nipple, called by Haller the circuitus venosus. From this, large branches transmit the blood to the circumference of the gland, and end in the axillary and internal mammary veins. The lymphatics run along the lower border of the Pectoral major to the axillary glands. The nerves are derived from the anterior and lateral cutaneous nerves of the thorax.
The Surgical Anatomy of Inguinal Hernia.

Dissection (Fig. 506). For dissection of the parts concerned in inguinal hernia, a male subject, free from fat, should always be selected. The body should be placed in the supine position, the abdomen and pelvis raised by means of blocks placed beneath them, and the lower extremities rotated outwards, so as to make the parts as tense as possible. If the abdominal walls are flaccid, the cavity of the abdomen should be inflated by an aperture through the umbilicus. An incision should be made along the middle line, from the umbilicus to the pubes, and continued along the front of the scrotum; and a second incision, from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to just below the umbilicus. These incisions should divide the integument; and the triangular-shaped flap included between them should be reflected downwards and outwards, when the superficial fascia will be exposed.

The superficial fascia in this region consists of two layers, between which are found the superficial vessels and nerves, and the inguinal lymphatic glands. The superficial layer is thick, areolar in texture, containing adipose tissue in its meshes, the quantity of which varies in different subjects. Below, it passes over Poupart's ligament, and is continuous with the outer layer of the superficial fascia of the thigh. This fascia is continued as a tubular prolongation around the outer surface of the cord and testis. In this situation, it changes its character; it becomes thin, destitute of adipose tissue, and of a pale reddish color, and assists in forming the dartos. From the scrotum, it may be traced backwards to be continuous with the superficial fascia of the perineum. This layer should be removed, by dividing it across in the same direction as the external incisions, and reflecting it downwards and outwards, when the following vessels and nerves will be exposed:—

The superficial epigastric, superficial circumflex iliac, and superficial external pudic vessels; the terminal filaments of the ilio-hypogastric and ilio-inguinal nerves; and the upper chain of inguinal lymphatic glands.

The superficial epigastric artery crosses Poupart's ligament, and ascends obliquely towards the umbilicus, lying midway between the spine of the ilium and the pubes. It supplies the integument, and anastomoses with the deep epigastric. This vessel is a branch of the common femoral artery, and pierces the fascia lata, below Poupart's ligament. Its accompanying vein empties itself into the internal saphenous, after having pierced the cribriform fascia.

The superficial circumflex iliac artery passes outwards towards the crest of the ilium.

The superficial external pudic artery passes transversely inwards across the spermatic cord, and supplies the integument of the hypogastric region, and of the penis and scrotum. This vessel is usually divided in the first incision made in the operation for inguinal hernia, and occasionally requires the application of a ligature.

The veins accompanying these superficial vessels are usually much larger than the arteries: they terminate in the internal saphenous vein.

Lymphatic vessels are found, taking the same course as the bloodvessels; they return the lymph from the superficial structures in the lower part of the abdomen, the scrotum, penis, and external surface of the buttock, and terminate in a small chain of lymphatic glands, three or four in number, which lie on a level with Poupart's ligament.

Nerves. The terminal branch of the ilio-inguinal nerve emerges at the external abdominal ring; and the hypogastric branch of the ilio-hypogastric nerve perforates the aponeurosis of the external oblique, above and to the outer side of the external ring.
The deep layer of superficial fascia should be divided across in the same direction as the external incisions, separated from the aponeurosis of the external oblique, to which it is connected by delicate areolar tissue, and reflected downwards and outwards. It is thin, aponeurotic in structure, and of considerable strength. It is intimately adherent, in the middle line, to the linea alba, and below, to the whole length of Poupart’s ligament and the upper part of the fascia lata. It forms a thin tubular prolongation round the outer surface of the cord, which blends with the superficial layer, and is continuous with the dartos of the scrotum. From the back of the scrotum, the conjoined layers may be traced into the perineum, where they are continuous with the deep layer of the superficial fascia in that region, which is attached, behind, to the triangular ligament, and on each side, to the ramus of the pubes and ischium. The connections of this fascia serve to explain the course taken by the urine in extravasation of that fluid from rupture of the urethra: passing forwards from the perineum into the scrotum, it ascends on to the abdomen, but is prevented extending into the thighs by the attachment of the fascia to the ramus of the pubes and ischium, on each side, and to Poupart’s ligament in front, and is prevented from passing on to the buttock by the posterior connections of the perineal fascia.

Fig. 506.—Inguinal Hernia. Superficial Dissection.

The aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle is exposed on the removal of this fascia. It is a thin, strong, membranous aponeurosis, the fibres of which are directed obliquely downwards and inwards. It is attached to the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium, the spine of the pubes, the linea ilio-pec-
tinea, front of the pubes and linea alba. That portion of the aponeurosis which extends from the anterior superior spine of the ilium, to the spine of the pubes, is termed Poupart's Ligament, or the crural arch; and that portion which is inserted into the pectineal line, is termed Gimbernat's Ligament.

Just above and to the outer side of the crest of the pubes, an interval is seen in the aponeurosis of the External oblique, called the **external abdominal ring**, which transmits the spermatic cord in the male, and the round ligament in the female. This aperture is oblique in direction, somewhat triangular in form, and corresponds with the course of the fibres of the aponeurosis. It usually measures from base to apex about an inch, and transversely about half an inch. It is bounded below by the crest of the os pubis; above, by a series of curved fibres, the intercolumnar, which pass across the upper angle of the ring so as to increase its strength; and on either side, by the free borders of the aponeurosis, which are called the **columns or pillars of the ring**.

The **external pillar**, which, at the same time, is inferior from the obliquity of its direction, is the stronger; it is formed by that portion of Poupart's ligament which is inserted into the spine of the pubes; it is curved round the spermatic cord, so as to form a kind of groove, upon which the cord rests.

The **internal or superior pillar** is a broad, thin, flat band, which interlaces with its fellow on the opposite side, in front of the symphysis pubis, that of the right side being superficial.

The external abdominal ring gives passage to the spermatic cord in the male, and round ligament in the female; it is much larger in men than in women, on account of the large size of the spermatic cord, and hence the greater frequency of inguinal hernia in men.

The **intercolumnar fibres** are a series of curved tendinous fibres, which arch across the lower part of the aponeurosis of the External oblique. They have received their name from stretching across between the two pillars of the external ring; they increase the strength of the membrane which bounds the upper part of this aperture, and prevent the divergence of the pillars from one another. They are thickest below, where they are connected to the outer third of Poupart's ligament, and are inserted into the linea alba; describing a curve, with the convexity downwards. They are much thicker and stronger at the outer angle of the external ring than internally, and are more strongly developed in the male than in the female. These fibres are continuous with a thin fascia, which is closely connected to the margins of the external ring, and has received the name of the **intercolumnar or external spermatic fascia**; it forms a tubular prolongation around the outer surface of the cord and testis, and incloses them in a distinct sheath. The sac of an inguinal hernia, in passing through the external abdominal ring, receives an investment from the intercolumnar fascia.

The finger should be introduced a short distance into the external ring, and then, if the limb is extended and rotated outwards, the aponeurosis of the External oblique, together with the ilioc portion of the fascia lata, will be felt to become tense, and the external ring much contracted; if the limb is, on the contrary, flexed upon the pelvis and rotated inwards, this aponeurosis will become lax, and the external ring sufficiently enlarged to admit the finger with comparative ease: hence the patient should always be put in the latter position when the taxis is applied for the reduction of an inguinal hernia, in order that the abdominal walls may be as much relaxed as possible.

The aponeurosis of the External oblique should be removed by dividing it across in the same direction as the external incisions, and reflecting it outwards; great care is requisite in separating it from the aponeurosis of the muscle beneath. The lower part of the Internal Oblique and the Cremaster are then exposed, together with the inguinal canal, which contains the spermatic cord (Fig. 507). The mode of insertion of Poupart's and Gimbernat's ligaments into the pubes should also be examined.

**Poupart's ligament, or the crural arch**, extends from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to the spine of the pubes. It is also attached to the pectineal
line to the extent of about an inch, forming Gimbernat's ligament. Its general direction is curved towards the thigh, where it is continuous with the fascia lata. Its outer half is rounded, oblique in its direction, and continuous with the iliac fascia. Its inner half gradually widens at its attachment to the pubes, is more horizontal in direction, and lies beneath the spermatic cord.

Gimbernat's ligament is that portion of the aponeurosis of the External oblique which is inserted into the pectineal line; it is thin, membranous in structure, triangular in shape, the base directed outwards, and passes upwards and backwards beneath the spermatic cord, from the spine of the os pubis to the pectineal line, to the extent of about half an inch.

The triangular ligament is a band of tendinous fibres, of a triangular shape, which is continued from Poupart's ligament at its attachment to the pectineal line upwards and inwards, behind the inner pillar of the external ring to the linea alba.

The Internal Oblique Muscle has been described (p. 885). The part which is now exposed is partly muscular and partly tendinous in structure. Those fibres which arise from the outer part of Poupart's ligament are thin, pale in color, curve downwards, and terminate in an aponeurosis, which passes in front of the Rectus and Pyramidalis muscles, to be inserted into the crest of the os pubis and pectineal line, to the extent of half an inch, in common with that of the Transversalis muscle, forming by their junction the conjoined tendon. This tendon is placed immediately behind Gimbernat's ligament and the external abdominal ring, and serves to strengthen what would otherwise be a very weak point in the abdominal wall. When a direct inguinal hernia passes through the external ring, the conjoined tendon usually forms one of its coverings.

The Cremaster is a slender muscular fasciculus, which arises from the middle of Poupart's ligament at the inner side of the Internal oblique, being connected
with that muscle, and also occasionally with the Transversalis. It passes along the outer side of the spermatic cord, descends with it through the external ring upon the front and sides of the cord, and forms a series of loops, which differ in thickness and length in different subjects. Those at the upper part of the cord are exceedingly short, but they become in succession longer and longer, the longest reaching down as low as the testicle, where a few are inserted into the tunica vaginalis. These loops are united together by areolar tissue, and form a thin covering over the cord, the fascia cremasterica. The fibres ascend along the inner side of the cord, and are inserted by a small pointed tendon, into the crest of the os pubis and front of the sheath of the Rectus muscle.

It will be observed, that the origin and insertion of the Cremaster is precisely similar to that of the lower fibres of the Internal oblique. This fact affords an easy explanation of the manner in which the testicle and cord are invested by this muscle. At an early period of foetal life, the testis is placed at the lower and back part of the abdominal cavity, but, during its descent towards the scrotum, which takes place before birth, it passes beneath the archer border of the Internal oblique. In its passage beneath this muscle some fibres are derived from its lower part, which accompany the testicle and cord into the scrotum.

It occasionally happens that the loops of the Cremaster surround the cord, some lying behind as well as in front. It is probable that, under these circumstances, the testis, in its descent, passed through instead of beneath the fibres of the Internal oblique.

In the descent of an oblique inguinal hernia, which takes the same course as the spermatic cord, the Cremaster muscle forms one of its coverings. This muscle becomes largely developed in cases of hydrocele and large old scrotal hernia. No such muscle exists in the female, but an analogous structure is developed in those cases where an oblique inguinal hernia descends beneath the margin of the Internal oblique.

The Internal Oblique should be detached from Poupart’s ligament, separated from the Transversalis to the same extent as in the previous incisions, and reflected inwards on to the sheath of the Rectus (Fig. 508). The circumflex iliac vessels, which lie between these two muscles, form a valuable guide to their separation.

The Transversalis muscle has been previously described (p. 888). Its lower part is partly fleshly and partly tendinous in structure; this portion arises from the outer third of Poupart’s ligament, and, arching downwards and inwards over the cord, terminates in an aponeurosis, which is inserted into the linea alba, the crest of the pubes, and the pectineal line to the extent of an inch, forming, together with the Internal oblique, the conjoined tendon. Between the lower border of this muscle and Poupart’s ligament, a space is left in which is seen the fascia transversalis.

The inguinal, or spermatic canal, contains the spermatic cord in the male, and the round ligament in the female. It is an oblique canal, about an inch and a half in length, directed downwards and inwards, and placed parallel with, and a little above, Poupart’s ligament. It communicates, above, with the cavity of the abdomen, by means of the internal abdominal ring, which is the point where the cord enters the spermatic canal; and terminates, below, at the external ring. It is bounded, in front, by the integument and superficial fascia, by the aponeurosis of the External oblique throughout its whole length, and by the Internal oblique for its outer third; behind, by the conjoined tendon of the Internal oblique and Transversalis, the triangular ligament, transversalis fascia, and the subperitoneal fat and peritoneum; above, by the arched fibres of the Internal oblique and Transversalis; below, by the union of the fascia transversalis with Poupart’s ligament. That form of protrusion in which the intestine follows the course of the spermatic cord along the spermatic canal, is called oblique inguinal hernia.

The fascia transversalis is a thin aponeurotic membrane, which lies between the inner surface of the transversalis muscle and the peritoneum. It forms part
of the general layer of fascia which lines the interior of the abdominal and pelvic cavities, and is directly continuous with the iliac and pelvic fascia.

In the inguinal region, the transversalis fascia is thick and dense in structure and joined by fibres from the aponeurosis of the Transversalis; but it becomes thin and cellular as it ascends to the Diaphragm. Below, it has the following attachments: external to the femoral vessels, it is connected to the posterior margin of Poupart's ligament, and is there continuous with the iliac fascia. Internal to the vessels it is thin, and attached to the pubes and pectineal line, behind the conjoined tendon, with which it is united; and, corresponding to the points where the femoral vessels pass into the thigh, this fascia descends in front of them, forming the anterior wall of the crural sheath.

Fig. 508.—Inguinal Hernia, showing the Transversalis Muscle, the Transversalis Fascia, and the Internal Abdominal Ring.

The internal abdominal ring is situated in the transversalis fascia, midway between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the spine of the pubes, and about half an inch above Poupart's ligament. It is of an oval form, the extremities of the oval directed upwards and downwards, varies in size in different subjects, and is much larger in the male than in the female. It is bounded, above, by the arched fibres of the Transversalis muscle, and internally, by the epigastric vessels. It transmits the spermatic cord in the male, and the round ligament in the female, and from its circumference a thin, funnel-shaped membrane, the infundibuliform fascia, is continued round the cord and testis inclosing them in a distinct pouch. When the sac of an oblique inguinal hernia passes through the internal ring, the infundibuliform process of the transversalis fascia forms one of its coverings.

Between the fascia transversalis and the peritoneum is a quantity of loose areolar tissue. In some subjects it is of considerable thickness, and loaded with adipose tissue. Opposite the internal ring, it is continued round the surface of the cord, forming a loose sheath for it.

The epigastric artery bears a very important relation to the internal abdomi-
nal ring. This vessel lies between the transversalis fascia and peritoneum, and passes obliquely upwards and inwards, from its origin from the external iliac, to the margin of the sheath of the rectus muscle. In this course it lies along the lower and inner margin of the internal ring, and beneath the commencement of the spermatic cord, the vas deferens curving round it as it passes from the ring into the pelvis.

The peritoneum, corresponding to the inner surface of the internal ring, presents a well-marked depression, the depth of which varies in different subjects. A thin fibrous band is continued from it along the front of the cord, for a variable distance, and becomes ultimately lost. This is the remains of the pouch of peritoneum which, in the foetus, accompanies the cord and testis into the scrotum; the obliteration of which commences soon after birth. In some cases the fibrous band can only be traced a short distance; but occasionally it may be followed, as a fine cord, as far as the upper end of the tunica vaginalis. Sometimes the tube of peritoneum is only closed at intervals, and presents a sacculated appearance; or a single pouch may extend along the whole length of the cord, which may be closed above; or the pouch may be directly continuous with the peritoneum by an opening at its upper part.

**Inguinal Hernia.**

Inguinal Hernia is that form of protrusion which makes its way through the abdomen in the inguinal region.

There are two principal varieties of inguinal hernia: external or oblique, and internal or direct.

External or oblique inguinal hernia, the more frequent of the two, takes the same course as the spermatic cord. It is called external from the neck of the sac being on the outer or iliac side of the epigastric artery.

Internal, or direct inguinal hernia does not follow the same course as the cord, but protrudes through the abdominal wall on the inner or pubic side of the epigastric artery.

**Oblique Inguinal Hernia.**

In Oblique Inguinal Hernia, the intestine escapes from the abdominal cavity at the internal ring, pushing before it a pouch of peritoneum, which forms the hernial sac. As it enters the inguinal canal, it receives an investment from the subserous areolar tissue, and is inclosed in the infundibuliform process of the transversalis fascia. In passing along the inguinal canal, it displaces upwards the arched fibres of the Transversalis and Internal oblique muscles, and is surrounded by the fibres of the Cremaster. It then passes along the front of the cord, and escapes from the inguinal canal at the external ring, receiving an investment from the intercolumnar fascia. Lastly, it descends into the scrotum, receiving coverings from the superficial fascia and the integument.

The coverings of this form of hernia, after it has passed through the external ring, are, from without inwards, the integument, superficial fascia, intercolumnar fascia, Cremaster muscle, infundibuliform fascia, subserous cellular tissue, and peritoneum.

This form of hernia lies in front of the vessels of the spermatic cord, and seldom extends below the testis, on account of the intimate adhesion of the coverings of the cord to the tunica vaginalis.

The seat of stricture in oblique inguinal hernia, is either at the external ring in the inguinal canal, caused by the fibres of the Internal oblique or Transversalis, or at the internal ring, more frequently in the latter situation. If it is situated at the external ring, the division of a few fibres at one point of its circumference is all that is necessary for the replacement of the hernia. If in the inguinal canal, or at the internal ring, it will be necessary to divide the aponeurosis.
of the External oblique so as to lay open the inguinal canal. In dividing the stricture, the direction of the incision should be directly upwards.

When the intestine passes along the spermatic canal, and escapes from the external ring into the scrotum, it is called complete oblique inguinal or scrotal hernia. If the intestine does not escape from the external ring, but is retained in the inguinal canal, it is called incomplete inguinal hernia or bubocele. In each of these cases, the coverings which invest it will depend upon the extent to which it descends in the inguinal canal.

There are two other varieties of oblique inguinal hernia: the congenital and infantile.

Congenital hernia is liable to occur in those cases where the pouch of peritoneum which accompanies the cord and testis in its descent in the fossus remains uncolosed, and communicates directly with the peritoneum. The intestine descends along this pouch into the cavity of the tunica vaginalis, and lies in contact with the testis. This form of hernia has no proper sac, being contained within the tunica vaginalis.

In Infants' hernia, the hernial sac descends along the inguinal canal into the scrotum, behind the pouch of peritoneum which accompanies the cord and testis into the same part. The abdominal aperture of this pouch is closed, but the portion contained in the inguinal canal remains unobliterated. The hernial sac is consequently invested, more or less completely, by the posterior layer of the tunica vaginalis, from which it is separated by a little loose areolar tissue; so that in operating upon this variety of hernia, three layers of peritoneum would require division; the first and second being the layers of the tunica vaginalis, the third the anterior layer of the hernial sac.

Direct Inguinal Hernia.

In Direct Inguinal Hernia, the protrusion makes its way through some part of the abdominal wall internal to the epigastric artery, and passes directly through the abdominal parietes and external ring. At the lower part of the abdominal wall is a triangular space (Hesselbach's triangle), bounded, externally, by the epigastric artery; internally, by the margin of the Rectus muscle: below, by Poupart's ligament. The conjoined tendon is stretched across the inner two-thirds of this space, the remaining portion of the space being filled in by the transversalis fascia.

In some cases the hernial protrusion escapes from the abdomen on the outer side of the conjoined tendon, pushing before it the peritoneum, the subserous cellular tissue, and the transversalis fascia. It then enters the inguinal canal, passing along nearly its whole length, and finally emerges from the external ring, receiving an investment from the intercolumnar fascia. The coverings of this form of hernia are precisely similar to those investing the oblique form.¹

In other cases, and this is the more frequent variety, the intestine is either

¹ The difference between the position of the neck of the sac in these two forms of direct inguinal hernia has been referred, with some probability, to a difference in the relative positions of the obliterated hypogastric artery and the epigastric artery. The projection of the hypogastric artery towards the cavity of the abdomen produces two fossae in the peritoneum. When the course of the obliterated hypogastric artery corresponds pretty nearly with that of the epigastric, which is regarded as the normal arrangement, the bottom of the external fossa of the peritoneum corresponds to the position of the internal abdominal ring; and a hernia which distends and pushes out the peritoneum lining this fossa is an oblique hernia. When, on the other hand, the obliterated hypogastric artery lies considerably to the inner side of the epigastric it divides the triangle of Hesselbach into two parts. In that case a hernia may distend and push out the peritoneum forming the bottom of the external fossa, and by so doing will protrude the tissues which form the abdominal wall between the internal ring and the conjoined tendon. It will be a direct hernia, since the neck of the sac lies internal to the epigastric artery; but its coverings, as stated in the text, will be identical with those of the oblique form, with the insignificant difference that the covering from the transversalis fascia is taken from another source, and not from its infundibuliform process.
Surgical Anatomy of Inguinal Hernia.

forced through the fibres of the conjoined tendon, or the tendon is gradually distended in front of it, so as to form a complete investment for it. The intestine then enters the lower end of the inguinal canal, escapes at the external ring lying on the inner side of the cord, and receives additional coverings from the superficial fascia and the integument. This form of hernia has the same coverings as the oblique variety, excepting that the conjoined tendon is substituted for the Cremaster, and the infundibulum fascia is replaced by a part of the general fascia transversalis.

The seat of stricture in both varieties of direct hernia is most frequently at the neck of the sac, or at the external ring. In that form of hernia which perforates the conjoined tendon, it not unfrequently occurs at the edges of the fissure through which the gut passes. In dividing the stricture, the incision should in all cases be directed upwards.

If the hernial protrusion passes into the inguinal canal, but does not escape from the external abdominal ring, it forms what is called incomplete direct hernia. This form of hernia is usually of small size, and in corpulent persons very difficult of detection.

Direct inguinal hernia is of much less frequent occurrence than the oblique. Their comparative frequency being, according to Cloquet, as one to five. It occurs far more frequently in men than in women, on account of the larger size of the external ring in the former sex. It differs from the oblique in its smaller size and globular form, dependent most probably on the resistance offered to its progress by the transversalis fascia and conjoined tendon. It differs also in its position, being placed over the pubes, and not in the course of the inguinal canal. The epigastric artery runs on the outer or iliac side of the neck of the sac, and the spermatic cord along its external and posterior side, not directly behind it, as in oblique inguinal hernia.

Surgical Anatomy of Femoral Hernia.

The dissection of the parts comprised in the anatomy of femoral hernia should be performed, if possible, upon a female subject free from fat. The subject should lie upon its back; a block is first placed under the pelvis, the thigh everted, and the knee slightly bent, and retained in this position. An incision should then be made from the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium along Poupart's ligament to the symphysis pubis; a second incision should be carried transversely across the thigh about six inches beneath the preceding; and these are to be connected together by a vertical one carried along the inner side of the thigh. These several incisions should divide merely the integument; this is to be reflected outwards, when the superficial fascia will be exposed.

The superficial fascia at the upper part of the thigh, consists of two layers, between which are found the cutaneous vessels and nerves, and numerous lymphatic glands.

The superficial layer is a thick and dense cellulo-fibrous membrane in the meshes of which is found a considerable amount of adipose tissue, varying in quantity in different subjects: this layer may be traced upwards over Poupart's ligament to be continuous with the superficial fascia of the abdomen; whilst below, and on the inner and outer sides of the limb, it is continuous with the superficial fascia covering the rest of the thigh.

This layer should be detached by dividing it across in the same direction as the external incisions; its removal will be facilitated by commencing at the lower and inner angle of the space, detaching it at first from the front of the internal saphenous vein, and dissecting it off from the anterior surface of that vessel and its branches; it should then be reflected outwards, in the same manner as the integument. The cutaneous vessels and nerves, and superficial inguinal glands, are then exposed, lying upon the deep layer of the superficial fascia. These are the internal saphenous vein, and the superficial epigastric, superficial circumflexa ili, and superficial external pudic vessels, as well as numerous lymphatics ascending with the saphenous vein to the inguinal glands.

The internal saphenous vein is a vessel of considerable size which ascends obliquely upwards along the inner side of the thigh, below Poupart's ligament.
It passes through the saphenous opening in the fascia lata to terminate in the femoral vein. This vessel is accompanied by numerous lymphatics, which return the lymph from the dorsum of the foot and inner side of the leg and thigh: they terminate in the inguinal glands, which surround the saphenous opening. Diverging from the same point are the superficial epigastric vessels, which run across Poupart's ligament, obliquely upwards and inwards, to the lower part of the abdomen: the superficial circumflexa illii vessels, which pass obliquely outwards along Poupart's ligament to the crest of the ilium: and the superficial external pudic vessels, which pass inwards to the perineum and scrotum. These vessels supply the subcutaneous areolar tissue and the integument, and are accompanied by numerous lymphatic vessels, which return the lymph from the same parts to the inguinal glands.

The superficial inguinal glands are arranged in two groups, one of which is disposed above and parallel with Poupart's ligament, and the other below the ligament, surrounding the termination of the saphenous vein, and following (occasionally) the course of that vessel a short distance along the thigh. The upper chain receives the lymphatic vessels from the penis, scrotum, lower part of the abdomen, perineum, and buttock; the lower chain receives the lymphatic vessels from the lower extremity.

The nerves supplying the integument of the region are derived from the ilioinguinal, the genito-crural, and anterior crural. The ilio-inguinal nerve may be found on the inner side of the internal saphenous vein, the terminal branch
If traced downwards, it is found continuous with another curved margin, the concavity of which is directed upwards and inwards: this is the inferior cornu of the saphenous opening, and is blended with the pubic portion of the fascia lata covering the Pectineus muscle.

The inner boundary of the opening is on a plane posterior to the outer margin, and behind the level of the femoral vessels; it is much less prominent and defined than the outer, from being stretched over the subjacent Pectineus muscle. It is through the saphenous opening that a femoral hernia passes after descending along the crural canal.

If the finger is introduced into the saphenous opening while the limb is moved in different directions, the aperture will be found to be greatly constricted on extending the limb, or rotating it outwards, and to be relaxed on flexing the limb and inverting it: hence the necessity for placing the limb in the latter position in employing the taxis for the reduction of a femoral hernia.

The iliac portion of the fascia lata, together with its falciform process, should now be removed, by detaching it from the lower margin of Poupart's ligament, carefully dissecting it from the subjacent structures, and turning it aside when the sheath of the femoral vessels is exposed descending beneath Poupart's ligament (Fig. 511).

Fig. 511.—Femoral Hernia. Iliac Portion of Fascia Lata removed, and Sheath of Femoral Vessels and Femoral Canal exposed.

The Crural Arch, or Poupart's Ligament, is the lower border of the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle, which stretches across from the anterior superior spine of the ilium, to the spine of the os pubis and pectineal line: the portion corresponding to the latter insertion is called Gimbernat's Ligament. The direction of Poupart's ligament is curved downwards towards the thigh;
FEMORAL HERNIA.

A femoral hernia, in passing through the saphenous opening, receives the cribiform fascia as one of its coverings.

The deep layer of superficial fascia, together with the cribiform fascia, having been removed, the fascia lata is exposed.

The Fascia Lata, already described (p. 488), is a dense fibrous aponeurosis, which forms a uniform investment for the whole of this region of the limb. At the upper and inner part of the thigh, a large oval-shaped aperture is observed in it; it transmits the internal saphenous vein and other small vessels, and is called the saphenous opening. In order the more correctly to consider the mode of formation of this aperture, the fascia lata in this part of the thigh is described as consisting of two portions, an iliac portion and a pubic portion.

The iliac portion of the fascia lata is situated on the outer side of the saphenous opening covering the outer surface of the Sartorius, the Rectus, and the Psoas and Iliacus muscles. It is attached externally to the crest of the ilium and its anterior superior spine, to the whole length of Poupart's ligament as far internally at the spine of the pubes, and to the pectineal line in conjunction with Gimbernat's ligament, where it becomes continuous with the pubic portion. From the spine of the pubes, it is reflected downwards and outwards, forming an arched margin, the outer boundary (superior cornu) of the saphenous opening. This is sometimes called the falciform process of the fascia lata (femoral ligament of Hey); it overlies, and is adherent to, the sheath of the femoral vessels beneath; to its edge is attached the cribiform fascia, and it is continuous below with the pubic portion of the fascia lata by a well-defined curving margin.

The pubic portion of the fascia lata is situated at the inner side of the saphenous opening: at the lower margin of this aperture, it is continuous with the iliac portion; traced upwards, it covers the surface of the Pectineus, Adductor longus, and Gracilis muscles: and passing behind the sheath of the femoral vessels, to which it is closely united, is continuous with the sheath of the Psoas and Iliacus muscles, and is finally lost in the fibrous capsule of the hip-joint. This fascia is attached above to the pectineal line, and internally to the margin of the pubic arch. It may be observed from this description that the iliac portion of the fascia lata passes in front of the femoral vessels, the pubic portion behind them; an apparent aperture consequently exists between the two, through which the internal saphenous joins the femoral vein.

The Saphenous Opening is an oval-shaped aperture, measuring about an inch and a half in length, and half an inch in width. It is situated at the upper and inner part of the thigh, below Poupart's ligament, towards the inner side, and is directed obliquely downwards and outwards.

Its outer margin is of a semilunar form, thin, strong, sharply defined, and lies on a plane considerably anterior to the inner margin. If this edge is traced upwards, it will be seen to form a curved elongated process or cornu (the superior cornu), or falciform process of Burnou, which ascends in front of the femoral vessels, and curving inwards, is attached to Poupart's ligament and to the spine of the pubes and pectineal line, where it is continuous with the pubic portion.

1 It is difficult to perceive in the recognized description of these ligaments (Hey's and Burnou's) any difference between the two; nor is it clear what structure Mr. Hey really intended to describe. Mr. Gay (on "Femoral Rupture," p. 16) gives very cogent reasons for thinking that the "deep crural arch" was the structure which Hey had in view. The most recent writer on Femoral Hernia speaks thus while treating of these parts: "The whole upper edge of the iliac fascia lata is commonly called the 'falciform process,' whilst its deeper fibres receive the name of 'Burnou's ligament.' Hey's femoral ligament would appear to consist of distinct fibres connected with the inner fold of the iliac fascia, which extend immediately beneath the tendon of the external oblique to the subperitoneal fascia." (Callender, "On the Anatomy of the Parts Concerned in Femoral Rupture," p. 19, note.) This description of Hey's ligament accords closely with that of the deep crural arch, for the subperitoneal fascia is Mr. Callender's name for the fascia transversalis. Mr. Callender goes on to say, "The upper border of this (saphenous) opening thus receives, by an unfortunate complication, the names of 'Falciform process,' 'Femoral ligament,' 'Burnou's or Hey's ligament.' The various divisions of the iliac fascia lata depend in great measure upon the skill of the dissector, and are, in my opinion, artificial."
If traced downwards, it is found continuous with another curved margin, the concavity of which is directed upwards and inwards: this is the inferior cornu of the saphenous opening, and is blended with the pubic portion of the fascia lata covering the Pectineus muscle.

The inner boundary of the opening is on a plane posterior to the outer margin, and behind the level of the femoral vessels; it is much less prominent and defined than the outer, from being stretched over the subjacent Pectineus muscle. It is through the saphenous opening that a femoral hernia passes after descending along the crural canal.

If the finger is introduced into the saphenous opening while the limb is moved in different directions, the aperture will be found to be greatly constricted on extending the limb, or rotating it outwards, and to be relaxed on flexing the limb and inverting it: hence the necessity for placing the limb in the latter position in employing the taxis for the reduction of a femoral hernia.

The iliac portion of the fascia lata, together with its falciform process, should now be removed, by detaching it from the lower margin of Poupart's ligament, carefully dissecting it from the subjacent structures, and turning it aside when the sheath of the femoral vessels is exposed descending beneath Poupart's ligament (Fig. 511).

Fig. 511.—Femoral Hernia. Iliac Portion of Fascia Lata removed, and Sheath of Femoral Vessels and Femoral Canal exposed.

The Crural Arch, or Poupart's Ligament, is the lower border of the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle, which stretches across from the anterior superior spine of the ilium, to the spine of the os pubis and pectineal line: the portion corresponding to the latter insertion is called Gimbernat's Ligament. The direction of Poupart's ligament is curved downwards towards the thigh;
FEMORAL HERNIA.

its outer half being oblique, its inner half nearly horizontal. Nearly the whole of the space included between the crural arch and innominate bone is filled in by the parts which descend from the abdomen into the thigh. The outer half of the space is occupied by the Iliacus and Psoas muscles, together with the external cutaneous and anterior crural nerves. The pubic side of the space is occupied by the femoral vessels included in their sheath, a small oval-shaped interval existing between the femoral vein and the inner wall of the sheath, which is occupied merely by a little loose areolar tissue, and occasionally by a small lymphatic gland: this is the crural canal, along which the gut descends in femoral hernia.

Gimbernat's Ligament (Fig. 512) is that part of the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle which is reflected downwards and outwards, to be inserted into the pectineal line of the os pubis. It is about an inch in length, larger in the male than in the female, almost horizontal in direction in the erect posture, and of a triangular form, the base directed outwards. Its base, or outer margin, is concave, thin, and sharp, lies in contact with the crural sheath, and is blended with the pubic portion of the fascia lata. Its apex corresponds to the spine of the pubes. Its posterior margin is attached to the pectineal line. Its anterior margin is continuous with Poupart's ligament.

Crural Sheath. If Poupart's ligament is divided, the femoral or crural sheath may be demonstrated as a continuation downwards of the fasciae that line the abdomen, the transversalis fascia passing down in front of the femoral vessels, and the iliac fascia descending behind them; these fasciae are directly continuous on the iliac side of the femoral artery, but a small space exists between the femoral vein and the point where they are continuous on the pubic side of that vessel, which constitutes the femoral or crural canal. The femoral sheath is closely adherent to the contained vessels about an inch below the saphenous opening, becoming blended with the areolar sheath of the vessels, but opposite Poupart's ligament it is much larger than is required to contain them; hence the funnel-shaped form which it presents. The outer border of the sheath is perforated by the genito-crural nerve. Its inner border is pierced by the internal saphenous vein, and numerous lymphatic vessels. In front, it is covered by the iliac portion of the fascia lata; and behind it is the pubic portion of the same fascia.

Deep Crural Arch. Passing across the front of the crural sheath, and closely connected with it, is a thickened band of fibres, called the deep crural arch. It is apparently a thickening of the fascia transversalis, joining externally to the centre of Poupart's ligament, and arching across the front of the crural sheath, to be inserted by a broad attachment into the pectineal line, behind the conjoined tendon. In some subjects, this structure is not very prominently marked, and not unfrequently it is altogether wanting.

If the anterior wall of the sheath is removed, the femoral artery and vein are seen lying side by side, a thin septum separating the two vessels, while another septum separates the vein from the inner wall of the sheath. The septa are stretched between the anterior and posterior walls of the sheath, so that each vessel is inclosed in a separate compartment. The interval left between the vein and the inner wall of the sheath is not filled up by any structure, excepting a little loose areolar tissue, a few lymphatic vessels, and occasionally a lymphatic gland; this is the femoral or crural canal, through which the intestine descends in femoral hernia.

The crural canal is the narrow interval between the femoral vein and the inner wall of the crural sheath. It exists as a distinct canal only when the sheath has been separated from the vein by dissection, or by the pressure of a hernia or tumor. Its length is from a quarter to half an inch, and it extends from Gimbernat's ligament to the upper part of the saphenous opening.

Its anterior wall is very narrow, and formed by the fascia transversalis, Poupart's ligament, and the falciform process of the fascia lata.
Its *posterior wall* is formed by the iliac fascia and the pubic portion of the fascia lata.

Its *outer wall* is formed by the fibrous septum covering the inner side of the femoral vein.

Its *inner wall* is formed by the junction of the transversalis and iliac fascia, which form the inner side of the femoral sheath, and cover the outer edge of Gimbertat's ligament.

This canal has two orifices: a lower one, the *saphenous opening*, closed by the cribiform fascia; an upper one, the *femoral or crural ring*, closed by the septum crurale.

---

Fig. 512.—Hernia. The Relations of the Femoral and Internal Abdominal Ring, seen from within the Abdomen. Right Side.

The *femoral or crural ring* (Fig. 512) is the upper opening of the femoral canal, and leads into the cavity of the abdomen. It is bounded in front by Poupart's ligament and the deep crural arch; behind by the pubes, covered by the Pectineus muscle, and the pubic portion of the fascia lata; internally, by Gimbertat's ligament, the conjoined tendon, the transversalis fascia, and the deep crural arch; externally, by the femoral vein, covered by its sheath. The femoral ring is of an oval form; its long diameter, directed transversely, measures about half an inch, and it is larger in the female than in the male, which is one of the reasons of the greater frequency of femoral hernia in the former sex.

*Position of Parts around the Ring.* The spermatic cord in the male, and round ligament in the female, lie immediately above the anterior margin of the femoral ring, and may be divided in an operation for femoral hernia if the incision for the relief of the stricture is not of limited extent. In the female, this is of little importance, but in the male the spermatic artery and vas deferens may be divided.

The *femoral vein* lies on the outer side of the ring.

The *epigastric artery*, in its passage inwards from the external iliac to the umbilicus, passes across the upper and outer angle of the crural ring, and is consequently in danger of being wounded if the stricture is divided in a direction upwards and outwards.

---

1 The ring, like the crural canal, is a morbid or an artificial product. "Each femoral hernia makes for itself (for neither outlet exists in the natural anatomy of the region) a crural canal, and a crural (femoral) ring."—Callender, op. cit., p. 40.
FEMORAL HERNIA.

The *communicating branch* between the epigastric and obturator lies in front of the ring.

The circumference of the ring is thus seen to be bounded by vessels in every part, excepting internally and behind. It is in the former position that the stricture is divided in cases of strangulated femoral hernia.

The *obturator artery*, when it arises by a common trunk with the epigastric, which occurs once in every three subjects and half, bears a very important relation to the crural ring. In some cases it descends on the inner side of the external iliac vein to the obturator foramen, and will consequently lie on the outer side of the crural ring, where there is no danger of its being wounded in the operation for dividing the stricture in femoral hernia. (See Fig. 325, p. 540, 1st Fig.) Occasionally, however, the obturator artery curves along the free margin of Gimbernat's ligament in its passage to the obturator foramen; it would, consequently, skirt along the greater part of the circumference of the crural canal, and could hardly avoid being wounded in the operation. (See Fig. 325, p. 540, 2d Fig.)

*Septum Crurale.* The femoral ring is closed by a layer of condensed areolar tissue, called, by J. Cloquet, the *septum crurale*. This serves as a barrier to the protrusion of a hernia through this part. Its upper surface is slightly concave, and supports a small lymphatic gland, by which it is separated from the subserous areolar tissue and peritoneum. Its under surface is turned towards the femoral canal. The septum crurale is perforated by numerous apertures for the passage of lymphatic vessels, connecting the deep inguinal glands with those surrounding the external iliac artery.

The size of the femoral canal, the degree of tension of its orifices, and, consequently, the degree of constriction of a hernia, vary according to the position of the limb. If the leg and thigh are extended, abducted, or everted, the femoral canal and its orifices are rendered tense, from the traction on these parts by Poupart's ligament and the fascia lata, as may be ascertained by passing the finger along the canal. If, on the contrary, the thigh is flexed upon the pelvis, and, at the same time, adducted and rotated inwards, the femoral canal and its orifices become considerably relaxed; for this reason, the limb should always be placed in the latter position when the application of the taxis is made in attempting the reduction of a femoral hernia.

The septum crurale is separated from the peritoneum by a quantity of loose subserous areolar tissue. In some subjects, this tissue contains a considerable amount of adipose substance, which, when protruded forwards in front of the sac of a femoral hernia, may be mistaken for a portion of omentum.

*Descent of the Hernia.* From the preceding description it follows, that the femoral ring must be a weak point in the abdominal wall: hence it is, that when violent or long-continued pressure is made upon the abdominal visceræ, a portion of intestine may be forced into it, constituting a femoral hernia; and the changes in the tissues of the abdomen which are produced by pregnancy, together with the larger size of this aperture in the female, serve to explain the frequency of this form of hernia in women.

When a portion of intestine is forced through the femoral ring, it carries before it a pouch of peritoneum, which forms what is called the *hernal sac*; it receives an investment from the subserous areolar tissue, and from the septum crurale, and descends vertically along the crural canal in the inner compartment of the sheath of the femoral vessels as far as the saphenous opening; at this point, it changes its course, being prevented from extending further down the sheath, on account of the narrowing of the sheath and its close contact with the vessels, and also from the close attachment of the superficial fascia and crural sheath to the lower part of the circumference of the saphenous opening; the tumor is, consequently, directed forwards, pushing before it the cribriform fascia, and then curves upwards on to the falciform process of the fascia lata and lower part of the tendon of the External oblique, being covered by the superficial
fascia and integument. While the hernia is contained in the femoral canal, it is usually of small size, owing to the resisting nature of the surrounding parts; but when it has escaped from the saphenous opening into the loose areolar tissue of the groin, it becomes considerably enlarged. The direction taken by a femoral hernia in its descent is at first downwards, then forwards and upwards; this should be borne in mind, as in the application of the taxis for the reduction of a femoral hernia, pressure should be directed in the reverse order.

Coverings of the Hernia. The coverings of a femoral hernia from within outwards are peritoneum, subserous areolar tissue, the septum crurale, crural sheath, cruriform fascia, superficial fascia, and integument.1

Varieties of Femoral Hernia. If the intestine descends along the femoral canal only as far as the saphenous opening, and does not escape from this aperture, it is called incomplete femoral hernia. The small size of the protrusion in this form of hernia, on account of the firm and resisting nature of the canal in which it is contained, renders it an exceedingly dangerous variety of the disease, from the extreme difficulty of detecting the existence of the swelling, especially in corpulent subjects. The coverings of an incomplete femoral hernia would be, from without inwards, integument, superficial fascia, falciform process of fascia lata, fascia propria, septum crurale, subserous cellular tissue, and peritoneum. When, however, the hernia tumor protrudes through the saphenous opening, and directs itself forwards and upwards, it forms a complete femoral hernia. Occasionally, the hernial sac descends on the iliac side of the femoral vessels, or in front of these vessels, or even sometimes behind them.

The seat of stricture of a femoral hernia varies: it may be in the peritoneum at the neck of the hernial sac; in the greater number of cases it would appear to be at the point of junction of the falciform process of the fascia lata with the lunated edge of Gimbernat’s ligament; or at the margin of the saphenous opening in the thigh. The stricture should in every case be divided in a direction upwards and inwards; and the extent necessary in the majority of cases is about two or three lines. By these means, all vessels or other structures of importance, in relation with the neck of the hernial sac, will be avoided.

1 Sir A. Cooper has described an investment for femoral hernia under the name of “Fascia propria,” lying immediately external to the peritoneal sac, but frequently separated from it by more or less adipose tissue. Surgically, it is important to remember the existence (at any rate, the occasional existence) of this layer, on account of the ease with which an inexperienced operator may mistake the fascia for the peritoneal sac, and the contained fat for omentum. Anatomically, this fascia appears identical with what is called in the text “subserous areolar tissue,” the areolar tissue being thickened and caused to assume a membranous appearance, by the pressure of the hernia.
Surgical Anatomy of the Perineum and Ischio-rectal Region.

Dissection.—The student should select a well-developed muscular subject, free from fat, and the dissection should be commenced early, in order that the parts may be examined in as recent a state as possible. A staff having been introduced into the bladder, and the subject placed in the position shown in Fig. 513, the scrotum should be raised upwards, and retained in that position, and the rectum moderately distended with tow.

The space which is now exposed, corresponds to the inferior aperture, or outlet of the pelvis. Its deep boundaries are, in front, the pubic arch and subpubic ligament; behind, the tip of the coccyx; and on each side, the ramus of the pubes and ischium, the tuberosity of the ischium, and great sacro-sciatic ligament. The space included by these boundaries is somewhat lozenge-shaped, and is limited on the surface of the body by the scrotum in front, by the buttocks behind, and on each side by the inner side of the thighs. It measures, from before backwards, about four inches, and about three in the broadest part of its transverse diameter, between the ischial tuberosities. A line drawn transversely between the anterior part of the tuberosity of the ischium, on each side, in front of the anus, subdivides this space into two portions. The anterior portion contains the penis and urethra, and is called the perineum. The posterior portion contains the termination of the rectum, and is called the ischio-rectal region.

Ischio-rectal Region.

The Ischio-rectal Region corresponds to the portion of the outlet of the pelvis situated immediately behind the perineum: it contains the termination of the rectum. A deep fossa, filled with fat, is seen on either side of the intestine, between it and the tuberosity of the ischium: this is called the ischio-rectal fossa.

The ischio-rectal region presents, in the middle line, the aperture of the anus; around this orifice, the integument is thrown into numerous folds, which are obliterated on distension of the intestine. The integument is of a dark color, continuous with the mucous membrane of the rectum, and provided with numerous follicles, which occasionally inflame and suppurate, and may be mistaken for fistulae. The veins around the margin of the anus are occasionally much dilated, forming a number of hard, pendent masses, of a dark bluish color, covered partly by mucous membrane, and partly by the integument. These tumors constitute the disease called external piles.

Dissection.—Make an incision through the integument, along the median line, from the base of the scrotum to the anterior extremity of the anus; carry it round the margins of this aperture to its posterior extremity, and continue it backwards about an inch behind the tip of the coccyx. A transverse incision should now be carried across the base of the scrotum, joining the anterior extremity of the preceding; a second, carried in the same direction, should be made in front of the anus; and a third at the posterior extremity of the gut. These incisions should be sufficiently extensive to enable the dissector to raise the integument from the inner side of the thighs. The flaps of skin corresponding to the ischio-rectal region (Figs. 513-517), should now be removed. In dissecting the integument from this region, great care is required, otherwise the External sphincter will be removed, as it is intimately adherent to the skin.

The superficial fascia is exposed on the removal of the skin: it is very thick, arcolar in texture, and contains much fat in its meshes. In it are found ramifying two or three cutaneous branches of the small sciatic nerve; these turn
round the inferior border of the Gluteus maximus, and are distributed to the integument in this region.

Fig. 513.—Dissection of Perineum and Ischio-rectal Region.

The **External sphincter** is a thin flat plane of muscular fibres, elliptical in shape, and intimately adherent to the integument surrounding the margin of the anus. It measures about three or four inches in length, from its anterior to its posterior extremity, being about an inch in breadth, opposite the anus. It arises from the tip of the coccyx, by a narrow tendinous band; and from the superficial fascia in front of that bone; and is inserted into the tendinous centre of the perineum, joining with the Transversus perinæi, the Levator ani, and the Accelerator urinæ. Like other Sphincter muscles, it consists of two planes of muscular fibre, which surround the margin of the anus, and join in a commissure before and behind.

*Relations.* By its **superficial surface**, with the integument; by its **deep surface**, it is in contact with the Internal sphincter; and is separated from the Levator ani by loose areolar tissue.

The Sphincter ani is a voluntary muscle, supplied by the hemorrhoidal branch of the fourth sacral nerve. This muscle is divided in the operation for fistula in ano; and also in some cases of fissure of the rectum, especially if attended with much pain or spasm. The object of its division is to keep the parts at rest and in contact during the healing process.

The **Internal sphincter** is a muscular ring, about an inch in breadth, which surrounds the lower extremity of the rectum, about an inch from the margin of the anus. This muscle is about two lines in thickness, and is formed by an aggregation of the involuntary circular fibres of the intestine. It is paler in color, and less coarse in texture, than the External sphincter.

The **ischio-rectal fossa** is situated between the end of the rectum and the tuberosity of the ischium on each side. It is triangular in shape, its base, directed to the surface of the body, is formed by the integument of the ischio-rectal region; its apex, directed upwards, corresponds to the point of division of the obturator fascia, and the thin membrane given off from it, which covers the outer surface of the Levator ani (ischio-rectal fascia). Its dimensions are about an inch in breadth, at the base, and about two inches in depth, being deeper behind than in front. It is bounded, **internally**, by the Sphincter ani, Levator ani, and Coccygeus muscles; **externally**, by the tuberosity of the ischium, and the obturator fascia, which covers the inner surface of the Obturator internus muscle; **in front**, it is limited by the line of junction of the superficial and deep perineal fasciae; and **behind**, by the margin of the Gluteus maximus, and the great sacro-sciatic ligament. This space is filled with a large mass of adipose substance, which explains the frequency with which abscesses in the neighborhood of the rectum burrow to a considerable depth.
SUPERFICIAL FASCIA.

If the subject has been injected, on placing the finger on the outer wall of this fossa, the internal pudic artery, with its accompanying veins and nerve, will be felt about an inch and a half above the margin of the ischiatic tuberosity, but approaching nearer the surface as they pass forwards along the inner margin of the pubic arch. These structures are inclosed in a sheath formed by the obturator fascia, the pudic nerve lying below the artery. Crossing the space transversely, about its centre, are the inferior hemorrhoidal vessels and nerves, branches of the pudic; they are distributed to the integument of the anus, and to the muscles of the lower end of the rectum. These vessels are occasionally of larger size, and may give rise to troublesome hemorrhage, when divided in the operation of lithotomy, or of fistula in ano. At the back part of this space may be seen a branch of the fourth sacral nerve; and, at the fore part of the space, a cutaneous branch of the perineal nerve.

PERINEUM.

The Perineal Space is of a triangular form; its deep boundaries are limited, laterally, by the rami of the pubes and ischia, meeting in front at the pubic arch; behind by an imaginary transverse line, extending between the tuberosities of the ischia. The lateral boundaries vary, in the adult, from three inches to three inches and a half in length; and the base from two to three inches and a half in breadth; the average extent of the base being two inches and three-quarters. The variations in the diameter of this space are of extreme interest in connection with the operation of lithotomy, and the extraction of a stone from the cavity of the bladder. In those cases where the tuberosities of the ischia are near together, it would be necessary to make the incisions in the lateral operation of lithotomy less oblique than if the tuberosities were widely separated, and the perineal space, consequently, wider. The perineum is subdivided by the median raphe into two equal parts. Of these, the left is the one in which the operation of lithotomy is performed.

In the middle line, the perineum is convex, and corresponds to the bulb of the urethra. The skin covering it is of a dark color, thin, freely movable upon the subjacent parts, and covered with sharp crisp hairs which should be removed before the dissection of the part is commenced. In front of the anus, a prominent line commences, the raphe, continuous in front with the raphe of the scrotum. The flaps of integument corresponding to this space having been removed, in the manner shown in Figs. 513–16, the superficial fascia is exposed.

The Superficial Fascia consists of two layers, superficial and deep, as in other regions of the body.

The superficial layer is thick, loose, areolar in texture, and contains much adipose tissue in its meshes, the amount of which varies in different subjects. In front it is continuous with the dartos of the scrotum; behind, it is continuous with the subcutaneous areolar tissue surrounding the anus; and, on either side, with the same fascia on the inner side of the thighs. This layer should be carefully removed, after it has been examined, when the deep layer will be exposed.

The deep layer (superficial perineal fascia) is thin, aponeurotic in structure, and of considerable strength, serving to bind down the muscles of the root of the penis. It is continuous, in front, with the dartos of the scrotum; on either side, it is firmly attached to the margins of the rami of the pubes and ischium, external to the crus penis, and as far back as the tuberosity of the ischium; posteriorly it curves down behind the Transversus perinae muscles to join the lower margin of the deep perineal fascia. This fascia not only covers the muscles in this region, but sends down a vertical septum from its under surface, which separates the back part of the subjacent space into two, being incomplete in front.

In rupture of the anterior portion of the urethra, accompanied by extravasation of urine, the fluid makes its way forwards, beneath this fascia, into the
areolar tissue of the scrotum, penis, and anterior and lateral portions of the abdomen; it rarely extends into the areolar tissue on the inner side of the thighs or backwards around the anus. This limitation of the extravasated fluid to the parts above named is easy of explanation, when the attachments of the deep

Fig 514.—The Perineum. The Integument and Superficial Layer of Superficial Fascia reflected.

layer of the superficial fascia are considered. When this fascia is removed the muscles connected with the penis and urethra will be exposed; these are, in the middle line, the Accelerator urinae; on each side, the Erector penis, and behind the Transversus perinei.

The Accelerator urinae is placed in the middle line of the perineum, immediately in front of the anus. It consists of two symmetrical halves, united along the median line by a tendinous raphe. It arises from the central tendon of the perineum, and from the median raphe in front. From this point its fibres diverge like the plumes of a pen; the most posterior form a thin layer, which are lost on the anterior surface of the triangular ligament; the middle fibres encircle the bulb and adjacent part of the corpus spongiosum, and join with the fibres of the opposite side, on the upper part of the corpus spongiosum, in a strong aponeurosis; the anterior fibres, the longest and most distinct, spread out over the sides of the corpus cavernosum, to be inserted partly into that body, anterior to the Erector penis; partly terminating in a tendinous expansion, which covers the dorsal vessels of the penis. The latter fibres are best seen by dividing the muscle longitudinally, and dissecting it outwards from the surface of the urethra.

Action. This muscle may serve to accelerate the flow of the urine or semen along the canal of the urethra. The middle fibres are supposed, by Krause, to assist in the erection of the corpus spongiosum, by compressing the erectile tissue of the bulb. The anterior fibres, according to Tyrrel, also contribute to the erection of the penis, as they are inserted into, and continuous with, the fascia of the penis, compressing the dorsal vein during the contraction of the muscle.
The *Erector penis* covers the unattached part of the crus penis. It is an elongated muscle, broader in the middle than at either extremity, and situated on either side of the lateral boundary of the perineum. It arises by tendinous and fleshy fibres from the inner surface of the tuberosity of the ischium, behind

Fig. 515.—The Superficial Muscles and Vessels of the Perineum.

the crus penis, from the surface of the crus, and from the adjacent portion of the ramus of the pubes. From these points, fleshy fibres succeed, which end in an aponeurosis which is inserted into the side and under surface of the crus penis. This muscle compresses the crus penis, and thus serves to maintain the organ erect.

The *Transversus perinæi* is a narrow muscular slip, which passes more or less transversely across the back part of the perineal space. It arises by a small tendon from the inner and fore side of the tuberosity of the ischium, and passing obliquely forwards and inwards, is inserted into the central tendinous point of the perineum, joining in this situation with the muscle of the opposite side, the Sphincter ani behind, and the Accelerator urinæ in front.

Between the muscles just examined, a triangular space exists, bounded internally by the Accelerator urinæ, externally by the Erector penis, and behind by the Transversus perinæi. The floor of this space is formed by the triangular ligament of the urethra (*deep perineal fascia*), and, running from behind forwards in it, are the superficial perineal vessels and nerves, the transverse perineal artery coursing along the posterior boundary of the space, on the Transversus perinæi muscle.

In the lateral operation of lithotomy, the knife is carried obliquely across the back part of this space, downwards and outwards, into the ischio-rectal fossa, dividing the Transversus perinæi muscle and artery, the posterior fibres of the Accelerator urinæ, the superficial perineal vessels and nerves, and more posteriorly the external hemorrhoidal vessels.

The superficial and transverse perineal arteries are described at p. 541; and the superficial perineal and inferior pudendal nerves at pp. 690, 692.
The muscles of the perineum in the female are, the

Sphincter vaginae.
Erector clitoridis.
Transverse perinæi.

Compressor urethrae.
Sphincter ani.
Levator ani.

Coccygeus.

The Sphincter vaginae surrounds the orifice of the vagina, and is analogous to the Accelerator urine in the male. It is attached, posteriorly, to the central tendon of perineum, where it blends with the Sphincter ani. Its fibres pass forward on each side of the vagina, to be inserted into the corpora cavernosa and body of the clitoris.

The Erector clitoridis resembles the Erector penis in the male, but is smaller than it.

The Transversus perinæi is inserted into the side of the Sphincter vaginae, and the Levator ani into the side of the vagina. The other muscles are precisely similar to those in the male.

The Accelerator urine and Erector penis muscles should now be removed, when the deep perineal fascia will be exposed, stretching across the front part of the outlet of the pelvis. The urethra is seen perforating its centre, just behind the bulb; and on either side is the crus penis, connecting the corpus cavernosum with the ramus of the ischium and pubes.

Fig. 516.—Deep Perineal Fascia. On the left side, the anterior layer has been removed.

The Deep Perineal fascia (triangular ligament), is a dense membranous lamina, which closes the front part of the outlet of the pelvis. It is triangular in shape, about an inch and a half in depth, attached above, by its apex, to the under surface of the symphysis pubis and subpubic ligament; and, on each side, to the rami of the ischium and pubes, beneath the crura penis. Its inferior margin, or base, is directed towards the rectum, and connected to the central tendinous point of the perineum. It is continuous with the deep layer of the superficial fascia behind the Transversus perinæi muscle, and with a thin fascia which covers the cutaneous surface of the Levator ani muscle.
The deep perineal fascia is perforated by the urethra, about an inch below the symphysis pubis. The aperture is circular in form, and about three or four lines in diameter. Above this is the aperture for the dorsal vein of the penis; and, outside the latter, the pudic nerve and artery pierce it.

The deep perineal fascia consists of two layers, anterior and posterior: these are separated above, but united below.

The anterior layer is continued forwards, around the anterior part of the membranous portion of the urethra, becoming lost upon the bulb.

The posterior layer is derived from the pelvic fascia; it is continued backwards around the posterior part of the membranous portion of the urethra and the outer surface of the prostate gland.

If the anterior layer of this fascia is detached on either side, the following parts are seen between it and the posterior layer: the subpubic ligament above, close to the pubes; the dorsal vein of the penis; the membranous portion of the urethra, and the muscles of the urethra; Cowper's glands and their ducts; the pudic vessels and nerve; the artery and nerve of the bulb, and a plexus of veins.

The Compressor urethrae (constrictor urethrae) surrounds the whole length of the membranous portion of the urethra, and is contained between the two layers of the deep perineal fascia. It arises, by aponeurotic fibres, from the upper part of the ramus of the pubes on each side, to the extent of half or three-quarters of an inch: each segment of the muscle passes inwards, and divides into two fasciculi, which surround the urethra from the prostate gland behind, to the bulbous portion of the urethra in front; and unite, at the upper and lower surfaces of this tube, with the muscle of the opposite side, by means of a tendinous raphe.

Circular Muscular Fibres surround the membranous portion of the urethra from the bulb in front to the prostate gland behind; they are placed immediately beneath the transverse fibres already described, and are continuous with the circular fibres of the bladder. These fibres are involuntary.

Cowper's Glands are situated immediately below the membranous portion of the urethra, close behind the bulb, and below the artery of the bulb (p. 856).

The Pudic Vessels and Nerves are placed along the inner margin of the pubic arch (p. 540).

The Artery of the Bulb passes transversely inwards, from the internal pudic on the posterior margin of the triangular ligament, between the two layers of fascia, accompanied by a branch of the pudic nerve (p. 542).

If the posterior layer of the deep perineal fascia is removed, and the crus penis of one side detached from the bone, the under and perineal surface of the Levator ani is brought fully into view. This muscle, with the triangular ligament in front and the Coccygeus and Piriiformis behind, closes in the outlet of the pelvis.

The Levator ani is a broad thin muscle, situated on each side of the pelvis. It is attached to the inner surface of the sides of the true pelvis, and, descending, unites with its fellow of the opposite side to form the floor of the pelvic cavity. It supports the viscera in this cavity, and surrounds the various structures which pass through it. It arises, in front from the posterior surface of the body and ramus of the pubes, on the outer side of the symphysis; posteriorly, from the inner surface of the spine of the ischium: and between these two points, from the angle of division between the obturator and recto-vesical layers of the pelvic fascia at their under part: the fibres pass downwards to the middle line of the floor of the pelvis, and are inserted, the most posterior fibres into the sides of the apex of the coccyx; those placed more anteriorly unite with the muscle of the opposite side, in a median fibrous raphe, which extends between the coccyx and the margin of the anus. The middle fibres, which form the larger portion of the muscle, are inserted into the side of the rectum, blending with the fibres of the Sphincter muscles; lastly, the anterior fibres, the longest, descend upon the side of the prostate gland to unite beneath it with the muscle.
of the opposite side, blending with the fibres of the external sphincter and Transversus perinei muscles at the tendinous centre of the perineum.

The anterior portion is occasionally separated from the rest of the muscle by cellular tissue. From this circumstance, as well as from its peculiar relation with the prostate gland, descending by its side, and surrounding it as in a sling, it has been described by Santorini and others as a distinct muscle, under the name of the Levator prostate. In the female, the anterior fibres of the Levator ani descend upon the sides of the vagina.

**Relations.** By its upper or pelvic surface with the recto-vesical fascia, which separates it from the viscera of the pelvis and from the peritoneum. By its outer or perineal surface, it forms the inner boundary of the ischio-rectal fossa, and is covered by a quantity of fat, and by a thin layer of fascia continued from the obturator fascia. Its posterior border is continuous with the Coccygeus muscle. Its anterior border is separated from the muscle of the opposite side by a triangular space, through which the urethra, and in the female the vagina, passes from the pelvis.

**Actions.** This muscle supports the lower end of the rectum and vagina, and also the bladder during the efforts of expulsion.

The Coccygeus is situated behind and parallel with the preceding. It is a triangular plane of muscular and tendinous fibres, arising, by its apex from the spine of the ischium and lesser sacro-sciatic ligament, and inserted, by its base, into the margin of the coccyx and into the side of the lower piece of the sacrum. This muscle is continuous with the posterior border of the Levator ani, and closes in the back part of the outlet of the pelvis.

**Relations.** By its inner or pelvic surface, with the rectum. By its external surface, with the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament. By its posterior border, with the Pyriformis.

**Action.** The Coccygei muscles raise and support the coccyx, after it has been pressed backwards during defecation or parturition.

**Position of the Viscera at the Outlet of the Pelvis.** Divide the central tendinous point of the perineum, separate the rectum from its connection by dividing the fibres of the Levator ani, which descend upon the sides of the prostate gland, and draw the gut backwards towards the coccyx, when the under surface of the prostate gland, the neck and base of the bladder, the vesicle seminales, and vasa deferentia will be exposed.

The **Prostate Gland** is placed immediately in front of the neck of the bladder, around the prostatic portion of the urethra, its base being turned backwards and its under surface towards the rectum. It is retained in its position by the Levator prostate and by the pubo-prostatic ligaments, and is invested by a dense fibrous covering, continued from the posterior layer of the deep perineal fascia. The longest diameters of this gland are in the antero-posterior direction, and transversely at its base; and hence the greatest extent of incision that can be made in it without dividing its substance completely across, is obliquely outwards and backwards. This is the direction in which the incision is made through it in the operation of lithotomy, the extent of which should seldom exceed an inch in length. The relations of the prostate to the rectum should be noticed; by means of the finger introduced into the gut, the surgeon detects enlargement or other disease of this organ; he is enabled also, by the same means, to direct the point of a catheter when its introduction is attended with much difficulty, either from injury or disease of the membranous or prostatic portions of the urethra.

Behind the prostate is the posterior surface of the neck and base of the bladder: a small triangular portion of this organ is seen, bounded, in front, by the prostate gland; behind, by the recto-vesical fold of the peritoneum; on either side, by the vesicule seminales and vasa deferentia; and separated from direct contact with the rectum by the recto-vesical fascia. The relation of this portion of the bladder to the rectum is of extreme interest to the surgeon. In cases of retention of urine this portion of the organ is found projecting into the
rectum, between three and four inches from the margin of the anus, and may be easily perforated during life without injury to any important parts; this portion of the bladder is, consequently, frequently selected for the performance

Fig. 517.—A View of the Position of the Viscera at the Outlet of the Pelvis.

of the operation of tapping the bladder. If the finger is introduced into the bowel, the surgeon may, in some cases, learn the position, as well as the size and weight, of a calculus in the bladder; and in the operation for its removal, if, as is not unfrequently the case, it should be lodged behind an enlarged prostate, it may be displaced from its position by pressing upwards the base of the bladder from the rectum.

Parts concerned in the Operation of Lithotomy. The triangular ligament must be replaced and the rectum drawn forwards so as to occupy its normal position. The student should then consider the position of the various parts in reference to the lateral operation of lithotomy. This operation is performed on the left side of the perineum, as it is most convenient for the right hand of the operator. A staff having been introduced into the bladder, the first incision is commenced midway between the anus and the back of the scrotum (i.e., in an ordinary adult perineum, about an inch and a half in front of the anus), a little on the left side of the raphe, and carried obliquely backwards and outwards to midway between the anus and tuberosity of the ischium. The incision divides the integument and superficial fascia, the external hemorrhoidal vessels and nerves, and the superficial and transverse perineal vessels; if the fore-finger of the left hand is thrust upwards and forwards into the wound, pressing at the same time the rectum inwards and backwards, the staff may be felt in the membranous portion of the urethra. The finger is fixed upon the staff, and the structures covering it are divided with the point of the knife, which must be directed along the groove towards the bladder, the edge of the knife being carried outwards and backwards, dividing in its course the membranous portion of the urethra, and part of the left lobe of the prostate gland, to the extent of about an inch. The knife is then withdrawn, and the fore-finger of the left hand passed along
the staff into the bladder: the staff having been withdrawn, and the position of the stone ascertained, the forceps is introduced over the finger into the bladder. If the stone is very large, the opposite side of the prostate may be notched before the forceps is introduced: the finger is now withdrawn, and the blades of the forceps opened and made to grasp the stone, which must be extracted by slow and cautious undulating movements.

Parts divided in the operation. The various structures divided in this operation are as follows: the integument, superficial fascia, external hemorrhoidal vessels and nerves, the posterior fibres of the Accelerator urinar, the Transversus perinei muscle and artery (and, probably, the superficial perineal vessels and nerves), the deep perineal fascia, the anterior fibres of the Levator ani, part of the Compressor urethra, the membranous and prostatic portions of the urethra, and part of the prostate gland.

Fig. 518.—A Transverse Section of the Pelvis, showing the Pelvic Fascia.

Parts to be avoided in the Operation. In making the necessary incisions in the perineum for the extraction of a calculus, the following parts should be avoided. The primary incisions should not be made too near the middle line, for fear of wounding the bulb of the corpus spongiosum or the rectum; nor too far externally, otherwise the pudic artery may be implicated as it ascends along the inner border of the pubic arch. If the incisions are carried too far forwards, the artery of the bulb may be divided; if carried too far backwards, the entire breadth of the prostate and neck of the bladder may be cut through, which allows the urine to become infiltrated behind the pelvic fascia into the loose cellular tissue between the bladder and rectum, instead of escaping externally; diffuse inflammation is consequently set up, and peritonitis from the close proximity of the recto-vesical peritoneal fold is the consequence. If, on the contrary, the prostate is divided in front of the base of the gland, the urine makes its way externally, and there is less danger of infiltration taking place.

During the operation it is of great importance that the finger should be passed into the bladder before the staff is removed; if this is neglected, and if the incision made through the prostate and neck of the bladder is too small, great diffi-
PELVIC FASCIA.

culty may be experienced in introducing the finger afterwards; and in the child, where the connections of the bladder to the surrounding parts are very loose, the force made in the attempt is sufficient to displace the bladder up into the abdomen, out of the reach of the operator. Such a proceeding has not unfrequently occurred, producing the most embarrassing results, and total failure of the operation.

Fig. 519.—Side View of the Pelvic Viscera of the Male Subject, showing the Pelvic and Perineal Fasciae.

It is necessary to bear in mind that the arteries in the perineum occasionally take an abnormal course. Thus the artery of the bulb, when it arises, as sometimes happens, from the pudic opposite the tuber ischii, is liable to be wounded in the operation for lithotomy, in its passage forwards to the bulb. The accessory pudic may be divided near the posterior border of the prostate gland, if this is completely cut across; and the prostatic veins, especially in people advanced in life, are of large size, and give rise, when divided, to troublesome hemorrhage.

PELVIC FASCIA.

The Pelvic Fascia (Fig. 520) is a thin membrane which lines the whole of the cavity of the pelvis, and is continuous with the transversalis and iliac fasciae. It is attached to the brim of the pelvis for a short distance at the side of the cavity, and to the inner surface of the bone round the attachment of the Obturator internus. At the posterior border of this muscle, it is continued backwards as a very thin membrane in front of the Pyriformis muscle and sacral nerves, behind the branches of the internal iliac artery and vein which perforate it, to the front of the sacrum. In front it follows the attachment of the Obturator internus to the bone, arches beneath the obturator vessels, completing the orifice
of the obturator canal, and at the front of the pelvis is attached to the lower part of the symphysis pubis; being continuous below the pubes with the fascia of the opposite side, so as to close the front part of the outlet of the pelvis, blending with the posterior layer of the triangular ligament. At the level of a line extending from the lower part of the symphysis pubis to the spine of the ischium,

Fig. 620.—Pelvic Fascia.

is a thickened whitish band; this marks the attachment of the Levator ani muscle to the pelvic fascia and corresponds to its point of division into two layers, the obturator and recto-vesical.

The obturator fascia descends and covers the Obturator internus muscle. It is a direct continuation of the pelvic fascia below the white line above mentioned, and is attached to the pubic arch and to the margin of the great sacro-sciatic ligament. This fascia forms a canal for the pudic vessels and nerve in their passage forwards to the perineum, and is continuous with a thin membrane which covers the perineal aspect of the Levator ani muscle, called the ischio-rectal (anal) fascia.

The recto-vesical fascia (visceral layer of the pelvic fascia) descends into the pelvis upon the upper surface of the Levator ani muscle, and invests the prostate, bladder, and rectum. From the inner surface of the symphysis pubis a short rounded band is continued to the upper surface of the prostate and neck.
of the bladder, forming the pubo-prostatic or anterior true ligaments of the bladder. At the side, this fascia is connected to the side of the prostate, inclosing this gland and the vesical prostatic plexus, and is continued upwards on the surface of the bladder, forming the lateral true ligaments of the organ. Another prolongation invests the vesiculae seminales, and passes across between the bladder and rectum, being continuous with the same fascia of the opposite side. Another thin prolongation is reflected round the surface of the lower end of the rectum. The Levator ani muscle arises from the point of division of the pelvic fascia; the visceral layer of the fascia descending upon and being intimately adherent to the upper surface of the muscle, while the under surface of the muscle is covered by a thin layer derived from the obturator fascia, called the ischio-rectal or anal fascia. In the female, the vagina perforates the rectovesical fascia, and receives a prolongation from it.
LANDMARKS

MEDICAL AND SURGICAL.

BY

LUTHER HOLDEN, F.R.C.S.,
VICE-PRESIDENT AND MEMBER OF THE COURT OF EXAMINERS OF THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF
SURGONS OF ENGLAND; SURGEON TO SAINT BARTHOLOMEW'S AND THE
FOUNDLING HOSPITALS; AUTHOR OF "HUMAN ONTOLOGY,"
"A MANUAL OF THE DISSECTION OF THE
HUMAN BODY," ETC.

FROM THE SECOND ENGLISH EDITION

"Chirurgus mente prius et oculis agat quam manu armata."

(909)
TO

THE STUDENTS

PAST AND PRESENT

OF

SAINT BARTHOLOMEW'S HOSPITAL

THESE "LANDMARKS" ARE

Dedicated

BY THEIR SINCERE FRIEND

THE AUTHOR.

(910)
PREFACE

TO THE FIRST EDITION.

These "Landmarks" have already appeared in Saint Bartholomew's Hospital Reports. They are now republished, with some additions, in the hope that they may be useful to others besides those for whom they were originally intended.

My object has been to collect into a compact form the leading landmarks which help practical surgeons in their daily work. Those relating to the chest and abdomen have been ascertained, with as much precision as natural variations permit, by needles introduced in various directions.

I have to express my acknowledgments to Mr. Walsham and to Dr. Godson for their contributions.

65 Gower Street: March, 1876.

TO THE SECOND EDITION.

The present Edition has been carefully revised, and no pains have been spared to secure correctness.

It has been suggested that Diagrams should be introduced. The Author is convinced that they would frustrate rather than forward his main object, which is to urge Students to acquire the habit of making the eye and the hand work together, and to educate the "touch" upon the normal living body.

Without such practical training, how can we reasonably expect to form a correct diagnosis when called upon to examine an injury, or detect a disease?

(911)
LANDMARKS,

MEDICAL AND SURGICAL.

1. In clinical teaching, we often have occasion to point out, on the surface of the living body, what may be called "medical and surgical landmarks." By "landmarks" we mean surface-marks, such as lines, eminences, depressions, which are guides to, or indications of, deeper-seated parts. This practice is not only most useful, but absolutely necessary; because many even advanced students of anatomy are not so ready as they ought to be in their recognition of parts when covered by skin. Students who may be familiar enough with bones, muscles, bloodvessels, or viscera in the dissected subject, are often sadly at fault when they come to put this knowledge into practice.

For instance, ask a student to put his finger on the exact place where he would feel for the head of the radius, the coracoid process of the scapula, the tubercle of the scaphoid bone in the foot; ask him to compress effectually one of the main arteries; to chalk the line of its course; to map on the chest the position of the heart and the several valves at its base; to trace along the walls of the chest the outline of the lungs and pleura; to point out the bony prominences about the joints, and their relative position in the different motions of the joints; test him about the muscles and tendons which can be seen or felt as they stand out in relief or remain in repose; let him introduce his finger into the several orifices of the body, and say what parts are accessible to the touch:—questions such as these, even a good anatomist, unaccustomed to deal with the living subject, might possibly find himself at a loss to answer.

2. Our main object, therefore, is to induce in students the habit of looking at the living body with anatomical eyes, and with eyes too at their fingers' ends. The value of this habit cannot be too highly estimated. Is it not of the utmost importance to an operating surgeon that he should have in his mind's eye the various structures of the body as they lie grouped, connected, and working together? Should he not try at least to see them with the same clearness and accuracy as if they were perfectly transparent?

Moreover, the habit of examining the living body with "anatomical eyes" and "surgical fingers" teaches the eye and the hand to act together, and trains that delicate sense of touch which every good surgeon should possess.

This habit is within easy reach of any one who has carefully dissected for himself, and acquired the knowledge of what to feel for. Plates will not give it him. Let a student examine his own body with a skeleton before him. Better still that two should work thus together, each serving as a "model" to the other.

I would also invite teachers of anatomy to follow the example of Sir C. Bell, who was in the habit of introducing, from time to time, a powerful muscular fellow to his class, "in order to show how much of the structure of the body,
such as the articulations and the muscles, might be learned without actual dissection."

At the same time, it is only fair to say that "landmarks" cannot always be defined with precision. A reasonable latitude must be allowed for natural variations in different persons. Anatomy obvious to the eye and the finger depends in great measure upon the quantity of subcutaneous fat. In some it stands out beautifully clear; in others it is masked by obesity. Selecting, therefore, for study a moderately lean person, let us begin with the head.

THE HEAD.

3. Scalp; its density.—The great toughness of the scalp, more especially at the back of the head, is owing to its intimate connection with the cranial aponeurosis, the scalp vessels and hair bulbs intervening. This density often obscures the diagnosis of tumors on the cranium. A tumor growing upon the head may be either above or below the aponeurosis of the scalp. If below, it will have a firm resisting feel, being bound down by the aponeurosis. Nevertheless its firmness and resistance may not depend simply on its confinement beneath the aponeurosis, but on its having its origin within the skull. Look with suspicion, then, on every tumor on the head that will not readily permit you to move it about, so as to be sure of its connections prior to an attempt at extirpation.

The scalp moves freely over the pericranium, to which it is very loosely connected by areolar tissue. When suppuration takes place in this tissue free incisions through the dense scalp must be made to let the pus out.

4. Arteries of Scalp.—The supra-orbital artery can be felt beating just above the supra-orbital notch, and traced for some way up the forehead; the temporal (anterior branch) ascends tortuously about an inch and a quarter behind the external angular process of the frontal bone; the occipital can be felt near the middle of a line drawn from the occipital protuberance to the mastoid process; the posterior auricular, near the apex of the mastoid process. All these arteries can be effectually compressed against the subjacent bone.

5. Skullcap.—The skullcap is rarely quite symmetrical. This want of symmetry is often obvious. It may occur in men highly gifted, as in the celebrated French anatomist Bichat. As to shape and relative dimensions, no two heads are exactly alike, any more than two faces. It is beside my present purpose to go into the question of craniology more than to say that, although the cranium does not exactly follow the brain in all its eminence and depressions so as to be like a cast of its surface, yet it certainly indicates the dimensions of the great cerebral masses. The frontal and parietal eminences and the occipital region may be taken as a general indication of the development of the corresponding lobes of the brain. To ascertain the relative proportions of these three regions, let a thread be passed from one meatus auditorius to the other, across the frontal, parietal, and occipital eminences respectively.

Frontal Sinuses.—The "frontal sinuses" formed by the separation of the two tables of the skull vary much in size in different persons and at different periods of life. This has an important bearing on wounds of the forehead and on trephining in this situation. These "bumps" do not exist in children because the tables of the skull do not begin to separate before puberty. From an examination of many skulls in the Hunterian Museum, I find that the absence of the external prominence, even in middle age, does not necessarily imply the absence of the sinus itself, since it may be formed by a retrogression of the inner wall of the skull. In old persons, as a rule, when the sinuses

1 Some pertinent remarks on this subject have been made by Mr. C. Heath in a pamphlet "On Anatomy in relation to Physic."
enlarge, it is by the encroachment of the inner table on the brain-case. The skull wall here follows the shrinking brain. It is, therefore, important to bear in mind that an adult, and more especially an elderly person, may have a large frontal sinus without any external indication of it.

Neither does a very prominent bump necessarily imply the existence of a large sinus, or indeed of even a small one. The "bump" may be a mere heaping up of bone, a degradation, as in some Australian skulls.

Mastoid Process.—The same observations apply to the air-cells of the mastoid process, which can be felt behind the ear.

Occipital Protruberance.—The occipital protuberance, the superior curved line and crest, can be distinctly felt at the back of the head. The protuberance is always the thickest part of the skullcap, and more prominent in some than in others.

The posterior inferior angle of the parietal bone, grooved by the lateral sinuses, is on a level with the zygoma, and a trifle more than one inch behind the front border of the mastoid process.

Lines of Cerebral Sinuses.—A line drawn over the head from the root of the nose to the occipital protuberance corresponds with the superior longitudinal sinus. Another line drawn from the occipital protuberance to the front border of the mastoid process corresponds with a part of the lateral sinus.

Middle Meningeal Artery.—The trunk of the middle meningeal artery runs along the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone, about one inch and a half below, and half an inch above, the external angular process of the frontal.

A straight line drawn from the front of one mastoid process to the other would pass through the middle of the condyles of the occiput, showing how nearly the skull is balanced on the top of the spine in the erect posture.

6. Thickness of Skullcap.—The average thickness of the cap of an adult skull is about \( \frac{1}{2} \) of an inch. The thickest part is at the occipital protuberance, where it is often \( \frac{3}{4} \) of an inch or more, even in an otherwise thin skull. The thinnest part is at the temple, where it may be almost as thin as parchment.

Every one in the habit of making post-mortem examinations knows how much the skullcap differs in thickness in different persons and in different parts of the same skull. In old persons it is often in some parts not thicker than a shilling, owing to absorption of the diploe. Another point of interest is that the inner plane of the cap does not always correspond with the outer. Hence, in applying the trephine this is not a bad rule—"Think you are operating on the thinnest skull ever seen, and thinner in one half of the circle than the other."

7. Levels of the Brain.—The level of the anterior lobes in front corresponds with a straight line drawn across the forehead, from the narrowest part of the temporal ridge on each side, easily felt just above the external angular process of the frontal bone. The lower level of the anterior and middle lobes of the cerebrum corresponds with a line drawn from the external angular process of the frontal bone to the upper part of the meatus auditus. Another line drawn from the meatus to the occipital protuberance corresponds with the lower level of the posterior lobe. The lower level of the cerebellum cannot be defined by external examination. It depends upon the extent to which the occipital fossæ bulge into the neck; and this bulge varies in different skulls.

THE FACE.

8. The approaches to the organs of the senses, their ever-varying expression, their numerous muscles, and their rich profusion of vessels and nerves, give the face great anatomical importance, which has a most valuable bearing, not
only on the practice of surgery, but on the physiognomy of health, and in the
diagnosis of disease.

9. **Foramina for Branches of 5th Nerve.**—As a surgeon may be called
upon to divide either of the three branches of the fifth nerve upon the face, he
looks with interest to the precise situations where they leave their bony foramina
with their corresponding arteries. The supra-orbital notch or foramen can be
felt about the junction of the inner with the middle third of the supra-orbital
margin. From this point a perpendicular line drawn with a slight inclination
outwards, so as to cross the interval between the two bicuspid teeth in both
jaws, passes over the infra-orbital and the mental foramina. The direction of
these two lower foramina looks towards the angle of the nose.

10. **Pulley for Superior Oblique Muscle.**—By pressing the thumb
beneath the internal angular process of the frontal bone, the cartilaginous
pulley of the superior oblique muscle can be distinctly felt. We should be
careful not to interfere with this pulley in any operation about the orbit.

11. **Lower Jaw.**—The working of the condyle of the jaw vertically and
from side to side can be distinctly felt in front of the ear. When the mouth is
opened wide, the condyle advances out of the glenoid cavity on to the eminentia
articularis, and returns into its socket when the mouth is shut. The muscle
which causes this advance is the external pterygoid; and the object of it is to
give the jaw a greater freedom of grinding motion.

The posterior margin of the ramus of the lower jaw corresponds with a line
drawn from the condyle to the angle. In opening abscesses in the parotid region,
the knife should not be introduced behind this line for fear of wounding the
external carotid artery. Punctures to any depth may be safely made in front of it.
They are often necessary where inflammation of the parotid gland ensues
after eruptive fevers, and runs on to suppuration. The swelling, tension, and
pain are most distressing. Owing to the fibrous framework of the gland, the
matter is not circumscribed, but diffused. One puncture is not enough. Three
or more may be requisite. The blade of the knife should be held horizontally,
so as to be less likely to injure the branches of the facial nerve. We are not to
be disappointed if no matter flows. The punctures give relief, and matter will
exude the next day.

12. **Parotid Duct.**—A line drawn from the bottom of the lobe of the ear
to midway between the nose and the mouth gives the course of the parotid duct.
Opposite the second upper molar, the duct opens by a papilla into the mouth.
The branch of the portio dura which supplies the buccinator runs with the duct.

13. **Temporal and Facial Arteries.**—The pulsation of the trunk of the
temporal artery can be felt, between the root of the zygoma and the ear. The
facial artery can be distinctly felt as it passes over the body of the jaw at the
anterior edge of the masseter; again near the corner of the mouth close to the
mucous membrane; and, lastly, by the side of the ala nasi, up to the inner side
of the tendo oculi. By holding the lips between the finger and thumb the coro-
nary arteries are felt under the mucous membrane. The facial vein does not
accompany the tortuous artery, but runs a straight course from the inner angle
of the eye to the front border of the masseter, just behind the artery.

14. **Eyelids and Eyes.**—The opening between the eyelids varies in size in
different persons; hence more of the eyeball is seen in some than in others, and
the eye appears larger. Although human eyes do vary a little in size, yet the
actual difference is by no means so great as is generally supposed. The size of
the fissure has much to do with the apparent size of the eye. Contrast the
narrow fissure of the Chinese and Mongolian races, and the apparent smallness
of their eyes as compared with Europeans. As a rule the external angle of the
lid is higher than the internal. When not exaggerated, it gives the face an arch
and pleasing expression.

Evert the lids to see the Meibomian glands; observe their perpendicular
arrangement, in the substance of the tarsal cartilages.
THE FACE.

The free borders of the lids are not bevelled, as described by J. L. Petit and most anatomists, "so as to form with the globe of the closed eye a triangular canal for the flow of the tears." On the contrary, it is easily seen that the lid margins, when closed, come into accurate contact. Their plane is not exactly horizontal, but slightly inclined upwards.

Every time the eye is shut, the ball moves upwards and inwards, so that the cornea is completely covered by the upper lid. This may be well seen by raising the lid of a sleeping infant; also in cases of low fever when the lid is not completely closed. This upturning of the eye obviously clears the cornea, and protects it from the light.

A careful examination of the motion of the lower lid in the act of shutting the eye proves that it is a double motion. The lid is not only slightly raised, but drawn inwards about \( \frac{1}{4} \) of an inch. This second movement sweeps any particles of dust as well as moisture towards the inner canthus.

15. **Puncta Lacrymalia.** — The puncta lacrymalia are distinctly visible at the inner angles of the lids. The lower punctum is larger and a little more external than the upper, so that they are not exactly opposite. The direction, too, of the puncta deserves notice. Their open mouths look a little backwards, ready to imbibe the tears. When their proper bearing is lost, as in facial paralysis or a cicatrice near the lid, the tears overflow the cheek. The length of the lacrymal canals is from three to four lines. The lower is a little shorter and wider than the upper. As they both make a little angle in their course, soon after their orifices, the lids should be drawn outwards to straighten them when we introduce a probe.

16. **Lachrymal Sac.** — To find the lachrymal sac, draw outwards the eyelids to tighten the tendo oculi, which crosses the sac a little above its middle. A knife introduced just below the tendon close to the edge of the orbit would enter the sac. The angular artery and vein would be on the inner side of the incision. A probe directed in a line with the inner edge of the orbit, i. e. downwards, outwards, and backwards, would traverse the nasal duct, and appear in the inferior meatus of the nose.

The tendo oculi serves many purposes besides giving attachment to the cartilages and muscles of the lids. One purpose is said to be to pump the tears into the lachrymal sac. Place a finger on the tendon, and feel that it tightens every time the lids are closed. The tendon, being intimately connected to the sac, draws, as it tightens, the sac wall outwards and forwards, and in this way it may pump along the lachrymal canals any fluid collected at the angle of the eye.

17. **Nasal Duct.** — The nasal duct is from six to eight lines long, and narrowest in the middle of its course. Its termination in the inferior meatus lies under the inferior spongy bone, about a quarter of an inch behind the bony edge of the nostril. The appearance of the orifice in the dry bone conveys no idea of its size and shape in life; for it is diminished by a valve-like fold of mucous membrane, so that it becomes, in most cases, a mere slit, not exceeding a line in diameter.

The facility with which instruments can be introduced into the nasal opening of the duct depends upon its position as well as its size. This position varies in different instances. Sometimes it opens directly into the roof of the inferior meatus, in which case the hole is large and round, so that tears readily run into the nose. In other instances the opening is situated on the outer wall of the meatus, and is then always such a narrow fissure as to be hardly discernible. The practical conclusion then is, that a probe can be easily introduced when the opening is in the roof of the meatus, but not without difficulty and laceration of the mucous membrane when on the outer wall. This difficulty indeed may be increased by the narrowness of the meatus, arising from an unusual curvature of the spongy bone.

18. **Nose and Nasal Cavities.** — The line where the cartilages of the nose are attached to the nasal and superior maxillary bones can be traced with pre-
cision. The close connection of the skin to the cartilages admits of no stretching; hence the acute pain felt in crysipelas and boils on the nose. The external aperture of the nose is always placed a little lower than the floor of the nostril, so that the nose must be pulled up before we can inspect its cavities.

Looking into the nostrils, we find that the left is, in the majority of cases, narrower than the right, owing to an inclination of the septum towards the left. A communication sometimes exists between them, through a hole in the septum, as was the case in the celebrated anatomist Hildebrandt. By dilating the alae nasi, we can get a view of the end of the inferior spongy bone. The middle spongy bone cannot be seen: its attachment to the ethmoid is high up, nearly opposite the tendo oculi. The cavities are so much narrowed transversely by the spongy bones, that in the extraction of polypi it is better to dilate the blades of the forceps perpendicularly, and near the septum.

19. Mouth.—What can be seen and felt through the mouth? The upper surface of the tongue, "speculum primarum viarum," is a study in itself. We notice, on its under surface, a median furrow, on each side of which stands out the ranine vein, lying upon the prominent fibres of the lingualis. On the floor of the mouth is the "frenum linguae," in the middle line, with the orifices of the ducts of the submaxillary glands on each side of it. The glands themselves can be felt immediately beneath the mucous membrane.

We can feel the attachment of the "genio-hyo-glossi" behind the symphysis of the jaw. The division of this attachment would enable a surgeon to draw the tongue more freely out of the mouth in any attempt to remove carcinoma extending far back into its root.

There is great difference in the shape of the hard palate: this difference depends upon the depth of the alveolar processes. In some it forms a broad arch; in others it is narrow, and rises almost to a point like a Gothic arch, and materially impairs the tone of the voice.

Throat.—To examine the throat well, the nose should be held so as to compel breathing through the mouth. Thus the soft palate will be raised, the palatine arches widened, and the tonsils and the back of the pharynx fairly exposed. Pressing the tongue downwards, provided it be done very gently, is also of advantage. Rude treatment the tongue would resist. The forefinger can be passed into the throat as low as the bottom of the cricoid cartilage, and thus search the pharynx down to the top of the oesophagus, and the hyoid space (on each side) where foreign bodies are so apt to lodge. In introducing a stomach pump, the finger should keep the instrument well against the back of the pharynx so as to prevent its slipping into the larynx.

Put the finger into the mouth, and feel the anterior border of the coronoid process of the jaw. On the inner side of this process, between it and the tuberosity of the upper jaw, is a recess, where a deeply-seated temporal abscess might burst, or might be opened. Behind the last molar tooth of the upper jaw we can distinctly feel the hamular process of the sphenoid bone; also the lower part of the pterygoid fossa, and the internal pterygoid plate. Behind, and on the outer side of the last molar, can be felt part of the back of the antrum and of the lower part of the external pterygoid plate.

On the roof of the mouth we can feel the pulsation of the posterior palatine artery. Hemorrhage from this vessel can be arrested by plugging the orifice of the canal, which lies (not far from the surface) on the inner side of the last molar, about \(\frac{1}{2}\) of an inch in front of the hamular process.

When the mouth is wide open, the pterygo-maxillary ligament forms a prominent fold readily seen and felt beneath the mucous membrane, behind the last molar teeth. A little below the attachment of this ligament to the lower jaw we can easily feel the gustatory nerve, as it runs close to the bone below the last molar tooth. The exact position of the nerve can be ascertained in one's own person by the acute pain on pressure. A division of the nerve, easily
THE FACE.

effected by a small incision in the right place, gives much temporary relief in
cases of advanced carcinoma of the tongue.

To feed a patient in spasmodic closure of the jaw, it is well to know that
there exists behind the last molar teeth a space sufficient for the passage of a
small tube.

Antrum.—Lift up the upper lip and examine the front wall of the antrum.
The proper place in which to tap it is above the second bicuspid tooth, about
one inch above the margin of the gum.

20. Posterior Nares.—A surgeon’s finger should be familiar with the feel
of the posterior nares, and of all that is within reach behind the soft palate.
This is important in relation to the attachment of polypi, to plugging the nos-
trils, and the proper size of the plug. In the examination of this part of the
back of the throat it is necessary to throw the head well back, because, in this
position, nearly all the pharynx in front of the basilar process comes down below
the level of the hard palate, and can be seen as well as felt. But when the
skull is horizontal, i.e., at a right angle with the spine, the hard palate is on a
level with the margin of the foramen magnum, and the parts covering the ba-
silar process are concealed from view.

The head, then, being well back, introduce the forefinger behind the soft
palate, and turn it up towards the base of the skull. You feel the strong grip
of the superior constrictor. Hooking the finger well forwards, you can feel the
contour of the posterior nares. Their size depends upon the anterior, but rarely
exceeds a small inch in the long diameter, and a small half-inch in the short.
The plug for the posterior nares should not be larger than this. Their plane is
not perpendicular, but slopes a little forwards. You can feel the septum formed
by the vomer, and also the posterior end of the inferior spongy bone in each
nostril.

21. Tonsils.—Before taking leave of the throat, look well at the position
of the tonsils between the anterior and posterior half arches of the palate. In a
healthy state they should not project beyond the level of these arches. In all
operations upon the tonsils, we should remember the close proximity of the
internal carotid artery to their outer side. Nothing intervenes but the pharyn-
geal aponeurosis, and the superior constrictor of the pharynx. Hence the rule
in operating on the tonsils always to keep the point of the knife inwards.

In troublesome hemorrhage from the tonsils, after an incision or removal, it
is well to know that they are accessible to pressure if necessary by means of a
padded stick, or even a finger.

22. Features.—A word or two on the lines of the face as indicative of ex-
pression. Every one pays unconscious homage to the study of physiognomy,
when, scanning the features of a stranger, he draws conclusions concerning his
intelligence, disposition, and character. Without discussing how much physiog-
nomy is really worth, there can be no doubt that it is a mistake to place it in
the same category as phrenology, since the latter lacks that sound basis of
physiology which no one can deny to the former.

The muscles of the features are generally described as arising from the bony
fabric of the face, and as inserted into the nose, corners of the mouth, and the
lips. But this gives a very inadequate idea of their true insertion. They drop
fibres into the skin all along their course, so that there is hardly a point of the
face which has not its little fibre to move it. The habitual recurrence of good
or evil thoughts, the indulgence in particular modes of life, call into play cor-
responding sets of muscles which, by producing folds and wrinkles, give a perma-
nent cast to the features, and speak a language which all can understand, and
rarely misleads. Schiller puts this well when he says that “it is an admirable
proof of infinite wisdom that what is noble and benevolent beautifies the human
countenance; what is base and hateful imprints upon it a revolting expression.”
THE NECK.

23. **Subcutaneous Veins.**—Notice first the direction of the subcutaneous veins. The chief subcutaneous vein is the external jugular. Its course corresponds with a line drawn from the angle of the jaw to the middle of the clavicle, where it joins the subclavian. It is made more prominent by putting the sterno-mastoid into action, or gentle pressure on the lower end of the vein. It is exceptionally joined by a branch which runs over the clavicle, and is termed "jugulo-cephalic." The anterior jugular generally runs along the front border of the sterno-mastoid.

24. **Parts in Central Line. Os-hyoides.**—Immediately below and nearly on a level with the lower jaw we feel the body of the os-hyoides, and can trace backwards on each side the whole length of the cornua. They might easily be broken by the grasp of a garotter. Below the body of the os-hyoides is the gap above the thyroid cartilage. This gap corresponds with the anteriorly thyro-hyoid ligament and the apex of the epiglottis: so that in cases of cut throat in this situation, nearly the whole of the epiglottis lies above the wound.

**Thyroid Cartilage.**—The projection and depth of the notch in the thyroid cartilage, or "pomum Adami," varies in different persons. Between the notch and the hyoid bone there is a large bursa, to facilitate the play of the cartilage beneath the bone in deglutition. The notch does not appear till puberty, and is, throughout life, much less distinct in the female than the male. The finger can trace the upper borders and cornua of the thyroid cartilage: its lower cornua can be felt by the side of the cricoid.

On each side of the thyroid cartilage we can recognize the lateral lobes of the thyroid gland. On the upper and front part of the gland we can distinctly feel the pulsation of the superior thyroid artery. This pulsation, coupled with the fact that the gland rises and falls with the larynx in deglutition, is the best distinction between a bronchocele and other tumors resembling it.

Below the angle of the thyroid cartilage we feel the interval between it and the cricoid, which is occupied by the crico-thyroid membrane. In laryngotomy we cut through this membrane transversely close to the upper edge of the cricoid cartilage, in order that the incision may be as far as possible from the attachment of the vocal cords.

25. **Cricoid Cartilage.**—The projection of the cricoid cartilage is a point of great interest to the surgeon, because it is his chief guide in opening the air-passages, and can always be felt even in infants, however young or fat. It corresponds to the interval between the fifth and sixth cervical vertebrae. The commencement of the oesophagus lies behind it: here, therefore, a foreign substance too large to be swallowed would probably lodge, and might be felt externally.

Again, a transverse line drawn from the cricoid cartilage horizontally across the neck would pass over the spot where the omo-hyoid crosses the common carotid. Just above this spot is the most convenient place for tying the artery.

26. Those who have not directed their attention to the subject are hardly aware what a little distance there is between the cricoid cartilage and the upper part of the sternum. In a person of the average height sitting with the neck in an easy position, the distance is barely one inch and a half. When the neck is well stretched, about three-quarters of an inch more is gained. Thus, we have (generally) not more than seven or eight rings of the trachea above the sternum. None of these rings can be felt externall. The second, third, and fourth are covered by the isthmus of the thyroid gland. The trachea, it should be remembered, recedes from the surface more and more as it descends, so that, just above the sternum in a short, fat-necked adult, the front of the trachea would be quite one inch and a half from the skin.
27. **Trachea.**—In the dead subject nothing is more easy than to open the trachea: in the living, no operation may be attended with greater difficulties. In urgent dyspnea you must expect to find the patient with his head bent forwards, and the chin dropped, to relax as much as possible the parts. On raising his head, a paroxysm of dyspnea is almost sure to come on, threatening instant suffocation. The elevator and depressor muscles draw the trachea and larynx up and down with a rapidity and a force which may bring the cricoid cartilage within half an inch of the sternum. The great thyroid veins which descend in front of the trachea are sure to be distended. There may be a middle thyroid artery. In children the lobes of the thymus may extend up in front of the trachea, and the left vena innominata may cross it unusually high. Thus the air-tube may be covered by important parts which ought not to be cut. Considering all these possible complications, the least difficult and the best mode of proceeding is to open the trachea just below the cricoid cartilage; and if more room be requisite, to pull down the isthmus of the thyroid gland, or (in children) divide the cricoid itself. It is important that all the incisions be made strictly in the middle line, the "line of safety."

28. **Sternomastoid Muscle.**—The sternomastoid muscle is the great surgical landmark of the neck. It stands out in bold relief when the head turns towards the opposite shoulder. Its inner border overlaps the common carotid, which can be easily compressed for a short time against the spine about the level of the cricoid cartilage. The artery extends (generally) as high as the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, and corresponds with a line drawn from the sternoclavicular joint to midway between the angle of the jaw and the mastoid process.

Between the sternal origins of the sternomastoid is the fossa above the sternum, more or less perceptible in different necks. As it heaves and sinks alternately, especially in distressed breathing, it was called by the old anatomists "fonticulus gutturrar." In beautiful necks, as seen in the "Venus," it is filled up by fat.

Notice the interval between the sternal and clavicular origins of the sternomastoid. A knife introduced a very little way into this interval would wound, slanting inwards, the common carotid, slanting outwards, the internal jugular vein. These facts are of importance in performing the subcutaneous section of the tendon of this muscle.

29. **Sternoclavicular Joint.**—Many important parts lie behind the sternoclavicular joint. There is the commencement of the vena innominata; behind this comes the division of the arteria innominata on the right side, and the common carotid on the left. Deeper still, the apex of the lung rises into the neck.

In a child the arteria innominata often lies in front of the trachea and divides a little higher than the joint: a point to be remembered in tracheotomy (27).

30. **Apex of Lung in the Neck.**—The extent to which the apex of the lung rises into the neck is greater than is generally supposed. Many observations in reference to this point lead to the conclusion that the lung rises behind the sternomastoid, on an average, one inch and a half above the clavicle; in persons with long necks, as much as two inches. The apex of the lung and pleura is covered by the clavicular origin of the sternomastoid, the sternothyroid, and a part of the scalenus anterior. It is also crossed by the subclavian vessels in the first part of their course. As this cervical portion of lung is peculiarly liable to tubercular disease, it should always be carefully examined. Its condition may be ascertained by percussion on the clavicle.

31. **Supracleavicular Fossa.**—The hollow above the clavicle, between the sternomastoid and the trapezius, is very manifest in emaciation and old age. Notice the termination here of the external jugular vein. In some necks only a small depression is visible, particularly when the trapezius has a broad inser-
tion into the clavicle, and comes well forwards, so that its front border gives a graceful contour to the base of the neck.

32. Subclavian Artery.—In the supra-clavicular fossa, near the outer border of the sterno-mastoid, and about one inch above the clavicle, we feel the pulsation of the subclavian artery. Here the artery lies upon the first rib, and can be effectually compressed. A little pressure is sufficient. But the pressure must be made in the right direction, or the artery will be pressed off the rib instead of against it. The plane of the rib is such, that the pressure, to be effectual, must be made in a direction downwards and a little inwards. It is best to stand behind the shoulder and make the pressure with the thumb.

It is worth remembering that the outer border of the sterno-mastoid corresponds pretty nearly with the outer edge of the scalenus anticus, which is the surgical guide to the subclavian artery.

By pressing deeply at the upper part of the supra-clavicular fossa, the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra can be distinctly felt.

In long and thin necks, a thin cord is perceptible, running nearly parallel with and just above the clavicle. It is the posterior belly of the omo-hyoides. See it rising and falling in breathing, and making tense during inspiration that part of the cervical fascia which lies over the cervical portion of the lung. Thus it may be said to be in all respects a muscle of inspiration, co-operating with the sterno-mastoid and scaleni. In the language of transcendental anatomy, we may say that the central tendon of the omo-hyoid represents a rudimentary cervical rib. Its posterior belly is analogous to a serration of the serratus magnus; its anterior belly to a sterno-hyoid.

THE CHEST.

33. As a rule, the right half of the chest is slightly larger than the left. Of ninety-two persons of the male sex and good constitutions, seventy-one had the right side the larger; eleven the left; ten had both sides equal. The maximum of difference in favor of the right was 1½ inch. The measurements were made on a plane with the nipple.

34. Peculiarities in the Female.—The chest of the female differs from that of the male in the following points:—Its general capacity is less; the sternum is shorter; the upper opening is larger in proportion to the lower; the upper ribs are more movable, and therefore permit a greater enlargement of the chest at its upper part, in adaptation to the requirements of pregnancy.

35. The top of the sternum is on a level with the second dorsal vertebra; and the available space between the top of the sternum and the spine is hardly more than two inches.1

36. Parts behind first Bone of Sternum.—There is little or no lung behind the first bone of the sternum, the space being occupied by the trachea and large vessel as follows:—

The left vena innominata crosses the sternum just below the upper border. Next come the great primary branches of the arch of the aorta. Deeper still is the trachea dividing into its two bronchi opposite the junction of the first and second bones of the sternum. Deepest of all is the oesophagus.

About one inch from the upper border of the sternum is the highest part of the arch of the aorta, which lies on the bifurcation of the trachea.

37. The course of the arteria innominata corresponds with a line drawn from the middle of the junction of the first with the second bone of the sternum, to

1 In several adult normal skeletons measured in the Hunterian Museum, the average diameters of the upper opening of the chest were—antero-posterior, about 2½ inches; transverse, about 4½ inches. In the skeleton of O'Brien, the Irish giant, the antero-posterior diameter measures 4 inches, the transverse 6½.
the right sterno-clavicular joint. When the artery rises higher than usual into the neck, its pulsation can be felt in the fossa above the sternum.

38. Rules for Counting the Ribs.—In fat persons it is often difficult to count the ribs; hence the following rules may be useful:—

a. The finger passed down from the top of the sternum soon comes to a transverse projection, slight, but always to be felt, at the junction of the first with the second bone of the sternum. This corresponds with the level of the cartilage of the second rib.

b. The nipple in the male is placed, in the great majority of cases, between the fourth and the fifth ribs, about three-quarters of an inch external to their cartilages.

c. The lower external border of the pectoralis major corresponds with the direction of the fifth rib.

d. A line drawn horizontally from the nipple round the chest cuts the sixth intercostal space midway between the sternum and the spine. This is a useful rule in tapping the chest.

e. When the arm is raised, the first visible digitation of the serratus magnus corresponds with the sixth rib. The digitations below this correspond respectively with the seventh, eighth, and ninth ribs.

f. The scapula covers the ribs from the second to the seventh, inclusive.

g. The eleventh and twelfth ribs can be felt even in corpulent persons, outside the erector spinae, sloping downwards.

h. One should remember the fact that the sternal end of each rib lies on a lower level than its corresponding vertebra. For instance, a line drawn horizontally backwards from the middle of the third rib at its junction with the sternum, to the spine, would touch the body, not of the third dorsal vertebra, but of the sixth. Again, the end of the sternum would be about the level of the tenth dorsal vertebra.

39. Interval below Clavicle.—Immediately below the clavicle we recognize the triangular interval between the pectoralis major and the deltoid. This space varies in different cases, depending on the distance between the muscles. It is important as a guide to the coracoid process and the axillary artery. In a case of injury to the shoulder, to ascertain whether the coracoid process is broken, carry the arm outwards, to put the deltoid and pectoral muscles on the stretch, and make manifest the space between their opposite borders. Pressing the thumb into the space we can feel the inner side of the coracoid process, the apex being under the fibres of the deltoid; thus it is easy to ascertain whether it be broken. Moreover, this space corresponds with the line of the axillary artery; here its pulsation can be distinctly felt, and here it can be compressed (but not easily, or for long) against the second rib.

40. Internal Mammary Artery.—The line of the internal mammary artery runs perpendicularly behind the cartilages of the ribs, about half an inch from the sternum. The perforating branch through the second intercostal space is generally the largest.

41. Outline of Heart on Chest-wall.—To have a general idea of the form and position of the heart, map its outline on the wall of the chest, as follows:—

a. To define the base draw a transverse line across the sternum corresponding with the upper borders of the third costal cartilages: continue the line half an inch to the right of the sternum and one inch to the left.

b. To find the apex, mark a point about two inches below the left nipple, and one inch to its sternal side. This point will be between the fifth and sixth ribs.

c. To find the lower border (which lies on the central tendon of the diaphragm), draw a line, slightly curved downwards, from the apex across the bottom of the sternum (not the ensiform cartilage) as far as its right edge.

d. To define the right border (formed by the right auricle), continue the last line upwards with an outward curve, so as to join the right end of the base.

e. To define the left border (formed by the left ventricle), draw a line curving
to the left, but not including the nipple, from the left end of the base to the apex.

Such an outline (seen in the cut, with the angles rounded off) shows that the apex of the heart points downwards and towards the left, the base a little upwards and towards the right; that the greater part of it lies in the left half of the chest, and that the only part which lies to the right of the sternum is the right auricle. A needle introduced in the third, the fourth, or the fifth right intercostal space close to the sternum would penetrate the lung and the right auricle.

A needle passed through the second intercostal space, close to the right side of the sternum, would, after passing through the lung, enter the pericardium and the most prominent part of the bulge of the aorta.

A needle passed through the first intercostal space, close to the right side of the sternum, would pass through the lung and enter the superior vena cava above the pericardium.

42. The best definition of that part of the praecordial region, which is less resonant on percussion, was given by Dr. Latham years ago in his "Clinical Lectures." "Make a circle of two inches in diameter round a point midway between the nipple and the end of the sternum. This circle will define, sufficiently for all practical purposes, that part of the heart which lies immediately behind the wall of the chest, and is not covered by lung or pleura."

**Apex of the Heart.**—The apex of the heart pulsates between the fifth and sixth ribs, two inches below the nipple, and one inch to its sternal side. The place and extent, however, of the heart’s impulse, vary a little with the position of the body. Of this any one may convince himself by leaning forwards, backwards, on this side and on that, feeling, at the same time, the heart. Inspiration and expiration also alter the position of the heart. In a deep inspiration it may descend half an inch, and can be felt beating at the pit of the stomach.
43. **Valves of the Heart.**—The aortic valves lie behind the third intercostal space, close to the left side of the sternum.

The pulmonary valves lie in front of the aortic behind the junction of the third rib, on the left side, with the sternum.

The tricuspid valves lie behind the middle of the sternum, about the level of the fourth costal cartilage.

The mitral valves (the deepest of all) lie behind the third intercostal space, about one inch to the left of the sternum.

Thus these valves are so situated that the mouth of an ordinary sized stethoscope will cover a portion of them all, if placed over the junction of the third intercostal space, on the left side, with the sternum. All are covered by a thin layer of lung; therefore we hear their action better when the breathing if for a moment suspended.

44. **Outline of the Lungs.**—Now let us trace on the chest the outline of the lungs, with as much precision as their expansion and contraction in breathing permit. (See Fig. 521.)

45. The apex of each lung rises into the neck behind the sternal end of the clavicle and sterno-mastoid muscle as much as 1½ inch, in females rather higher than in males (30). From the sternal ends of the clavicles the lungs converge, so that their thin edges almost meet in the mesial line on a level with the second costal cartilage. Thus there is little or no lung behind the first bone of the sternum. From the level of the second costal cartilage to the level of the fourth, the margins of the lungs run parallel, or nearly so, close behind the middle of the sternum; consequently their thin edges overlap the great vessels and valves at the base of the heart.

Below the level of the fourth costal cartilage the margins of the lungs diverge, but not in an equal degree. The margin of the right corresponds with the direction of the cartilage of the sixth rib; the margin of the left, being notched for the heart, runs behind the cartilage of the fourth. A line drawn perpendicularly from the nipple would find the lung margin about the lowest part of the sixth rib. Laterally, i.e. in the axillary line, the lung margin comes down as low as the eighth rib; posteriorly, i.e. in the dorsal or scapular line, it descends as low as the tenth.

It should be remembered that, in a deep inspiration, the lung margins descend about 1½ inch.

In children the lungs are separated in front by the thymus gland. Allowance should be made for this. About the approach of puberty the thymus disappears.

46. **Anterior Mediastinum.**—The direction of the anterior mediastinum is not straight down the middle of the sternum, but slants a little to the left, owing to the position of the heart. The right pleural sac generally encroaches a little upon the left, behind the middle of the sternum. A needle introduced through the middle of the sternum opposite the third or the fourth rib would go through the right pleura.

47. **Reflection of Pleura.**—The reflection of the pleura from the wall of the chest on to the diaphragm corresponds with a sloping line drawn from the bottom of the sternum over the cartilages of the ribs down to the lower border of the last rib.

Since the pleura lines the inside of the last rib, a musket ball or other foreign body, loose in the pleural sac, and rolling on the diaphragm, might fall to the lowest part of the sac, which would be between the eleventh and twelfth ribs. The ball might be extracted here. The chest might also be tapped here, but not with a trocar, since a trocar would penetrate both layers of pleura, and go through the diaphragm into the abdomen.

The operation should be done cautiously, by an incision beginning about two inches from the spine, on the outer border of the "erector spine," on a level
between the spines of the eleventh and twelfth dorsal vertebrae. The intercostal artery will not be injured if the opening be made below the middle of the space, which is very wide.¹

THE BACK.

48. Median Furrow.—In a muscular man, a furrow, caused by the prominence of the erector spinae on each side, runs down the middle of the back. The bottom of the furrow corresponds with the interval between the spine of the last lumbar and that of the first sacral vertebra.

49. Spines of Vertebrae.—A little friction with the fingers down the backbone will cause the spines of the vertebrae to be tipped with red, so that they can be easily counted and any deviation from the straight line detected. Still it is worth remembering that the spine of the third dorsal is on a level with the commencement of the spine of the scapula—that the spine of the seventh dorsal is on a level with the inferior angle of the scapula—that the spine of the last dorsal is on a level with the head of the last rib.

Division of the Trachea.—The division of the trachea is opposite the spine of the third, in some cases the fourth, dorsal vertebra. In front this division is on the level of the junction of the first with the second bone of the sternum.

The root of the spine of the scapula is marked by a slight dimple in the skin. This is on a level with the third intercostal space. A stethoscope placed on the inner side of this dimple would cover the bronchus, more especially the right, since it is nearer to the chest wall.

50. The place where the kidney is most accessible to pressure is below the last rib, on the outer edge of the erector spinae.

51. The highest part of the ilium is about the level of the fourth lumbar spine. The best incision for opening the descending colon is in a slightly sloping line beginning at the outer edge of the erector spinae, midway between the crest of the ilium and the last rib, and continued across the flank for three inches or more, according to the amount of subcutaneous fat.

52. In the pit of the neck we can feel the trapezius and the ligamentum nuchae. By pressing deeply we detect the forked and prominent spine of the second cervical vertebra.

53. The spines of the third, fourth, and fifth cervical vertebrae recede from the surface to permit free extension of the neck, and cannot often be felt. But the spines of the sixth and seventh (v. prominens) stand out well.

54. Notice that most of the spines of the dorsal vertebrae, owing to their obliquity, do not tally with the heads of their corresponding ribs. Thus, the spine of the second dorsal corresponds with the head of the third rib; the spine of the third dorsal with the head of the fourth rib, and so on till we come to the eleventh and twelfth dorsal vertebrae, which do tally with their corresponding ribs. All this, however, is best seen in the skeleton.

55. The spines of the vertebrae may be useful as landmarks indicative of the levels of important organs; I have therefore arranged them in a tabular form, thus:

¹ Special experiments upon this subject were made many years ago, by the late Professor Quakett in the work rooms of the College of Surgeons.
THE BACK.

Tabular Plan of Parts opposite the Spines of the Vertebra.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cervical</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7th. Apex of lung: higher in the female than in the male. (30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d. Aorta reaches spine. Apex of lower lobe of lung. Angle of bifurcation of trachea. (49)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th. Aortic arch ends. Upper level of heart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6th.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8th. Lower level of heart. Central tendon of diaphragm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9th. Esophagus and vena cava through diaphragm. Upper edge of spleen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10th. Lower edge of lung. Liver comes to surface posteriorly. Cardiac orifice of stomach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11th. Lower border of spleen. Renal capsule.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dorsal Spines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st. Renal arteries. Pelvis of kidney. (83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th. Division of aorta. (65) Highest part of ilium.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 5th. |

56. Origins of the Spinal Nerves.—It is useful to know opposite what vertebrae the spinal nerves in the different regions arise from the spinal cord. They arise as follows:—

The origins of the eighth cervical nerves correspond to the interval between the occiput and the sixth cervical spine.

The origins of the first five dorsal nerves correspond to the interval between the sixth cervical and the fourth dorsal spines.

The origins of the six lower dorsal nerves correspond to the interval between the fourth and the eleventh dorsal spines.

The origins of the five lumbar nerves correspond to the interval between the eleventh and twelfth dorsal spines.

The origins of the five sacral nerves correspond to the spine of the last dorsal and the first lumbar vertebrae.

57. Movements of the Spine.—The movements of which the spine is capable are threefold: 1. Flexion and extension; 2. lateral inclination; 3. torsion. Flexion and extension are freest between the third and the sixth cervical vertebrae, between the eleventh dorsal and the second lumbar, and between the last lumbar and the sacrum. This is well marked in severe cases of opisthotation, where the body is supported on the back of the head and heels. Of this there is a beautiful illustration (see Fig. 522) in Sir C. Bell’s “Anatomy of Expression,” p. 160.

Still better may it be observed when a mountebank bends backwards, and touches the ground with his head.

The lateral movement is freest in the neck and the loins.

The movement of torsion or rotation round its own axis may be proved by the following experiment: Seated upright, with the back and shoulders well applied against the back of a chair, we can turn the head and neck as far as 70°. Leaning forwards so as to let the dorsal and lumbar vertebrae come into play, we can turn 30° more.
58. **Position and Motions of Scapula.**—There are a few points worthy of observation about the scapula. It covers the ribs from the second to the seventh inclusive. We can feel its superior angle covered by the trapezius. The inferior angle is covered by the latissimus dorsi, which keeps it well applied against the ribs in the strong and athletic; but in weak and consumptive persons the lower angles of the scapula project like wings—hence the terms “scapula alata.”

A line drawn horizontally from the spine of the sixth dorsal vertebra over the inferior angle of the scapula gives the upper border of the latissimus dorsi. Another line drawn from the root of the spine of the scapula to the spine of the last dorsal vertebra gives the lower border of the trapezius, which stands a little in relief.

59. The sliding movement of the scapula on the chest can be properly understood only on the living subject. It can move not only upwards and downwards as in shrugging the shoulders—backwards and forwards as in throwing back the shoulders—but it has a rotary movement round a movable centre. This rotation is seen while the arm is being raised from the horizontal to the vertical position, and is effected by the co-operation of the trapezius with the serratus magnus. The glenoid cavity is thus made to look upwards, the inferior angle slides forward, and is well held under the latissimus dorsi.

60. For the medical examination of the back, the patient should sit with the arms hanging between his thighs, to lower the scapula as much as possible. In this position the spine of the scapula corresponds (nearly) with the fissure between the upper and lower lobes of the lung; the apex of the lower lobe being about the level of the third rib.

**THE ABDOMEN.**

The student is assumed to be familiar with the arbitrary lines dividing the abdomen into regions.

61. **Abdominal Lines.**—The linea alba, or central line of the abdomen, marks the union of the aponeuroses of the abdominal muscles. It runs from the apex of the ensiform cartilage to the symphysis pubis. As this line is the thinnest and least vascular part of the abdominal wall, we make our incision along it in ovariotomy, and in the high operation of lithotomy; in it, we tap the abdomen in ascites, and the distended bladder in retention of urine.

The so-called “linea semilunaris,” where the aponeuroses of the abdominal muscles divide to form the sheath of the rectus, corresponds with a line, drawn
slightly curved (with the concavity towards the linea alba), from the lowest part of the seventh rib to the spine of the pubes. This line would be in an adult about three inches from the umbilicus; but in an abdomen distended by dropsy or other cause, the distance is increased in proportion.

It is important to know the position of the "lineae transverse," or tendinous intersections across the rectus abdominis. There are rarely any below the umbilicus, and generally three above it. The first is about the level of the umbilicus. The second is about four inches higher—that is, about the level of the lowest part of the tenth rib. These are the principal lines, and they divide the upper part of each rectus into two nearly quadrilateral portions, an upper and a lower: of these, those on the right side are a trifle larger than on the left. We see these muscular squares pretty plainly in some athletic subjects. Much more frequently we see them, too much exaggerated, on canvas and in marble. Artists are apt to exaggerate them, and make the front of the belly too much like a chess-board. It is lucky for them that all the world do not see with anatomical eyes.

A familiarity with the shape and position of these divisions of the rectus is of importance, lest we should, in ignorance, make a mistake in our diagnosis. A spasmodic contraction of one of these divisions, particularly the upper, or a collection of matter within its sheath, has been frequently mistaken for deep-seated abdominal disease.

In the erect position, the anterior superior spines of the ilia are a little below the level of the promontory of the sacrum. The bifurcation of the aorta is about the level of the highest part of the crest of the ilium.

62. Umbilicus.—The umbilicus is not midway between the ensiform cartilage and the pubes, but rather nearer to the pubes. In all cases it is situated above the centre of a man's height. It is a vulgar error to say that when a man lies with legs and arms outstretched, and a circle is drawn round him, the umbilicus lies in the centre of it. This central point is in most persons just above the pubes.

In very corpulent persons two deep transverse furrows run across the abdomen. One runs across the navel and completely conceals it. The other is lower down, just above the fat of the pubes. In tapping the bladder above the pubes in such a case, the trocar should be introduced where this line intersects the linea alba.

Although the position of the umbilicus varies a little in different persons, as the abdomen is unusually protuberant or the reverse, still, as a general rule, it is placed about the level of the body of the third lumbar vertebra. Now, since the aorta divides a little below the middle of the fourth lumbar, it follows that the best place to apply pressure on this great vessel is one inch below the umbilicus, and slightly to the left of it (65). That the aorta can, under favorable circumstances, be compressed under chloroform sufficiently to cure an aneurism below it, is proved by recorded cases, and by none more effectually than by a case related in the second volume of the "Reports of St. Bartholomew's Hospital."

It may be asked, why not apply pressure on the aorta above the umbilicus? The answer is, that the aorta above the umbilicus is further from the surface, and is, moreover, covered by important structures upon which pressure would be dangerous.

63. Parts behind Linea Alba.—Let us next consider what viscera lie immediately behind the linea alba. For two or three fingers' breadth below the ensiform cartilage there is the left lobe of the liver, which here crosses the middle line. Below the edge of the liver comes the stomach, more or less in contact with the linea alba, according to its degree of distension. In extreme distension the stomach pushes everything out of the way, and occupies all the room between the liver and the umbilicus. When empty and contracted, it retreats behind the liver, and lies flat in front of the pancreas at the back of the abdomen; thus giving rise to the hollow termed the "pit of the stomach." But
as the stomach distends, it makes a considerable fulness where there was a pit. The middle of the transverse colon lies above the umbilicus, occupying space (vertically two or three inches) according to its distension. Behind and below the umbilicus, supposing the bladder contracted, are the small intestines, covered by the great omentum.

64. Peritoeum.—The peritoneum is in contact with the linea alba all the way down to the pubes, when the bladder is empty. But when the bladder distends, it raises the peritoneum from the middle line above the pubes; so that with a bladder distended halfway up to the umbilicus, there is a space of nearly two inches above the symphysis where the bladder may be tapped without risk of injury to the peritoneum. For the same reason, we have space sufficient for the successful performance of the high operation for stone. This fact in anatomy must have been well understood by Jean de Dot, the smith at Amsterdam, who, in the seventeenth century, cut himself in the linea alba above the pubes, and took out of his bladder a stone as large as a hen's egg. The stone, the knife, and the portrait of the operator, may be seen to this day in the museum at Leyden.

65. Division of Aorta.—The aorta generally divides at a point about one inch and a half below the umbilicus. A more reliable guide to this division than the umbilicus, is a point (a very little to the left) of the middle line about the level of the highest part of the crest of the ilium. A line drawn with a slight curve outwards from this point to the groin, where the pulsation of the common femoral can be distinctly felt (rather nearer to the pubes than the ilium), gives the direction of the common iliac and external iliac arteries. About the first two inches of this line belong to the common iliac, the remainder to the external. Slight pressure readily detects the pulsation of the external iliac above "Poupart's ligament."

I have given the length of the common iliac as about two inches. As a rule, this is correct; but it should be remembered there are frequent deviations. I have seen it any length between three-quarters of an inch and three inches and a half. These varieties may arise either from a high division of the aorta, or a low division of the common iliac, or both. It is impossible to ascertain during life what is its length in a given instance; for there is no necessary relation between its length and the height of the stature. I have seen it very short in tall men and vice versa. Anatomists generally describe the left as a trifle longer than the right; but from an examination of a hundred bodies, I found their average length to be pretty nearly the same.

66. Mr. Abernethy, who in the year 1796 first put a ligature round the external iliac, made his incision in the line of the artery. But the easiest and safest way to reach the vessel is by an incision (recommended in the first instance by Sir Astley Cooper, and now generally adopted), beginning just on the inner side of the artery, a little above Poupart's ligament, and continued upwards and outwards a little beyond the spine of the ilium. The same incision extended further in the same direction would reach the common iliac.

67. Bony Prominences.—The anterior superior spine of the ilium, the spine of the pubes, and the line of Poupart's ligament are landmarks with which every surgeon should be thoroughly familiar.

68. Spine of Ilium.—The spine of the ilium is the spot from which we measure the length of the lower extremity. It is a valuable landmark in determining the nature of injuries to the pelvis and the hip. The thumb easily feels the spine, even in fat persons. Its position with regard to the trochanter major should be carefully examined. The best way to do this is to place the thumbs firmly on the opposite spines, and to grasp the trochanters with the fingers. Any abnormal position on one side is thus easily ascertained with the second side as a guide.

69. Spines of Pubes.—The spine of the pubes is the best guide to the external abdominal ring. It cannot easily be felt by placing the finger directly
over it, since it is generally covered by fat. To feel it distinctly, we should
push up the skin of the scrotum and get beneath the subcutaneous fat. If there
be any difficulty in finding it, abduct the thigh, and the tense tendon of the
adductor longus will lead up to it.

The position of the spine of the pubes is appealed to as a means of diagnosis
in doubt between inguinal and femoral hernia. The spine lies on the outer side
of the neck of an inguinal hernia, on the inner side of the neck of a femoral.

The spine of the pubes is nearly on the same horizontal line as the upper
part of the trochanter major. In this line, about one full inch external to the
spine, is the femoral ring. Here is the seat of stricture in a femoral hernia.

70. Poupart's Ligament, or Crural Arch.—The line of Poupart's ligament (crural arch) is in most persons indicated by a slight crescent-like furrow
along the skin. It corresponds with a line drawn not straight, but with a gentle
curve downwards from the spine of the ilium to the spine of the pubes. With
the help of the preceding landmarks it is easy to find the exact position of the
external and internal abdominal rings, and the direction of the inguinal canal.

71. Abdominal Rings.—The external abdominal ring is situated immedi-
ately above the spine of the pubes. It is an oval opening with the long axis
directed obliquely downwards and inwards. Though its size varies a little
in different persons, yet as a rule it will admit the end of the little finger, so
that we can tell by examination whether it be free or otherwise. To ascertain
this, the best way is to push up the thin skin of the scrotum before the finger:
then, by tracking the spermatic cord, the finger readily glides over the crest of
the pubes and feels the sharp margins of the ring.

The precise position of the internal ring is about midway between the spine
of the ilium and the symphysis of the pubes, and about two-thirds of an inch
above Poupart's ligament.

72. Inguinal Canal.—The position of the external and internal abdominal
rings being ascertained, it is plain that the direction of the inguinal canal must
be obliquely downwards and inwards, and that its length in a well-formed adult
male is from one and a half to two inches, according as we include the openings
or not. In very young children the canal is much shorter and less oblique, the
inner ring being behind the outer. With the growth of the pelvis in its trans-
verse direction, the anterior spines of the ilia become further apart, and thus
draw the internal ring more and more away from (i. e. to the outer side of) the
external.

73. Spermatic Cord.—The spermatic cord can be felt as it emerges through
the external ring, and its course can be tracked into the scrotum. The vas
deferens can be distinctly felt at the back of the cord, and separated from its
other component parts.

74. Epigastric Artery.—The direction of the internal epigastric artery corresponds with a line drawn from the inner border of the internal ring up the
middle of the rectus muscle, towards the chest.

In thin persons the absorbent glands which lie along Poupart's ligaments can
be distinctly felt. They are usually oval, with their long axes parallel to the
line of the ligament.

75. Abdominal Viscera.—Now let us see how far we can make out ex-
ternally the position and size of the abdominal viscera.

To make this examination with anything like success, it is desirable to relax
the abdominal muscles. The man should be on his back, the head, shoulders,
and thorax being well raised, to relax the recti muscles; and the thighs bent
on the abdomen, to relax the several fasciae attached to the crural arch. To
induce complete relaxation where a very careful examination is desired, chloro-
form should be given.

In manipulating the abdomen we should not use the tips of the fingers. This
is sure to excite the contraction of the muscles. The flat hand should be gently
pressed upon it, and with an undulating movement.
76. It is well to bear in mind that the central tendon of the diaphragm is about the level of the lower end of the sternum or the junction of the seventh rib; that the right half of the diaphragm rises to about the level of the fifth rib—that is, about an inch below the nipple; that the left half does not rise so high. In tranquil breathing the diaphragm descends about half an inch.

The position of the abdominal visera varies, to a certain extent, in different persons. In some of them, especially the stomach, their position varies in the same person at different times.

Let us take, first, the largest of the abdominal visera—the liver.

77. Liver.—The liver lies under the right hypochondrium, and passes across the middle line over the stomach into the left hypochondrium, generally speaking, as far as the left mammary line. The extent to which it can be felt below the edges of the ribs depends upon whether it is enlarged or not, and also upon the amount of fleshy fat in the stomach and intestines. As a rule, in health its lower thin border projects about half an inch below the costal cartilages, and can be felt moving up and down with the action of the diaphragm; but it requires an educated hand to feel it. An uneducated hand would miss it altogether. That part of it, however, which crosses the middle line below the ensiform cartilage is much more accessible to the feel; here it lies immediately behind the linea alba, and in front of the stomach, nearly half-way down to the umbilicus. Here, therefore, is the best place to feel whether the liver be enlarged or pushed down lower than it ought to be. If it be much enlarged and much lower, even the most untutored hand could detect its edge.

Even if the edge of the liver be felt very much lower than is normal below the ribs, it does not necessarily follow that the liver is enlarged, since it may be pressed down by other causes—for instance, the habit of wearing tight stays.

To what height does the liver ascend? This can only be ascertained by careful percussion of the chest-wall. The highest part of its convexity on the right side is about one inch below the nipple, or nearly on a level with the external and inferior angle of the pectoralis major. Posteriorly the liver comes to the surface below the base of the right lung, about the level of the tenth dorsal spine.

Roughly speaking, the upper border of the liver corresponds with the level of the tendinous centre of the diaphragm: that is, the level of the lower end of the sternum. Thus a needle thrust into the right side, between the sixth and seventh ribs, would traverse the lung, and then go through the diaphragm into the liver.

78. Gall Bladder.—The gall bladder, or rather the fundus of it, is situated, but cannot be felt, just below the edge of the liver about the ninth costal cartilage, outside the edge of the right rectus muscle.

79. Stomach.—The stomach varies in size more than any other organ in the body. When empty and contracted (63) it lies at the back of the abdomen, overlapped by the left lobe of the liver, and in front of the pancreas. When very full, it turns on its axis and swells up towards the front, coming close behind the wall of the abdomen, occupying most of the left hypochondrium and epigastrium, displacing the contiguous organs, pushing in every direction, and often interfering with the action of the heart and left lung. Hence the palpitation and distressing heart-symptoms in indigestion and flatulence.

The cardiac orifice of the stomach lies to the left of the middle line, just below the level of the junction of the seventh costal cartilage with the sternum.

80. Pylorus.—The pylorus lies under the liver, on the right side, near the end of the cartilage of the eighth rib; but it cannot be felt unless enlarged and hardened by disease, and even then not with certainty.

81. Spleen.—The spleen, if healthy, cannot be felt, so completely is it sheltered by the ribs. It lies on the left side, connected to the great end of the stomach, beneath the ninth, tenth, and eleventh ribs, between the axillary lines—lines, namely, drawn vertically downwards from the anterior and posterior
THE ABDOMEN.

margins of the axilla. Its upper edge is on a level with the spine of the ninth dorsal vertebra, its lower with the spine of the eleventh.

Its position and size, therefore, in health can only be ascertained, and not very accurately, by the extent of dulness on percussion. The greatest amount of dulness would be over the tenth and eleventh ribs; above this the thin edge of the lung would intervene between the spleen and the abdominal wall. If, therefore, the spleen can be distinctly felt below the ribs, it must be enlarged. In proportion to its enlargement, so can its lower rounded border be detected below the tenth and eleventh ribs, especially when forced downwards by a deep inspiration. 1

82. Pancreas.—The pancreas lies transversely behind the stomach, and crosses the aorta and the spine about the junction of the first and second lumbar vertebrae. The proper place to feel for it, therefore, would be in the linea alba about two or three inches above the umbilicus. Is it perceptible to the touch?—only under very deep pressure, and very favorable circumstances, such as an emaciated and empty abdomen. It is worth remembering that it may be felt under such conditions. Sir W. Jenner says that he has known the pancreas of normal size, in thin persons mistaken for disease—disease of the transverse arch of the colon, or aneurism of the abdominal aorta.

83. Kidney.—The kidney lies at the back of the abdomen, on the quadratus lumbarum and psoas muscles, opposite the two lower dorsal and two upper lumbar spines. The right, owing to the size of the liver, is a trifle—say, three-quarters of an inch—lower than the left. The pelvis of the kidney is about the level of the spine of the first lumbar vertebra: the upper border is about the level of the space between the eleventh and twelfth dorsal spines; the lower border comes as low as the third lumbar spine. During a deep inspiration both kidneys are depressed by the diaphragm nearly half an inch.

Can we feel the normal kidney? The only place where it is accessible to pressure is just below the last rib, on the outer edge of the "erector spine." I say accessible to pressure, for I have never succeeded in satisfying myself that I have distinctly felt its rounded lower border in the living subject, nor even in the dead, with the advantage of flaccid abdominal walls and the opportunity of making hard pressure with both hands, placed simultaneously, one in front of the abdomen, the other on the back. For these reasons I believe that, although we can easily ascertain its degree of tenderness on pressure, we cannot actually feel it unless it is considerably enlarged.

We must be on our guard not to mistake for the kidney an enlarged liver or spleen, or an accumulation of feces in the lumbar part of the colon.

84. Large Intestine.—Let us now trace the large intestine and see where it is accessible to pressure. The "cecum," or "caput coli," and the ileo-cecal valve lie in the right iliac fossa. The ascending colon runs up the right lumbar region over the right kidney. The transverse colon crosses the abdomen two or three inches above the umbilicus. The descending colon lies in the left lumbar region in front of the left kidney. The sigmoid flexure occupies the left iliac fossa.

Throughout the whole of this tortuous course, except at the angles of the transverse colon, the large bowel is accessible to pressure, and we could, under favorable circumstances, detect hardened feces in it. Within the last few months we have had two instances of this in St. Bartholomew's Hospital. One was a collection of feces in the transverse colon, which formed a distinct tumor in the abdomen. All the symptoms yielded to large and repeated injections of olive oil. The other case was an accumulation of fecal matter in the sigmoid flexure, which during life was thought to be malignant disease.

85. Colotomy.—The operation of opening the colon (colotomy) may be done

LANDMARKS, MEDICAL AND SURGICAL.

Removal of deep-seated collections of matter, or the internalcontents.

Introduction of Catheters.—In the introduction of catheters the following
be kept in view; in cases of difficulty feel the urethra through the
instrument, whether the instrument be in the right direction. Attention
ensures diminishes the risk of making a false passage.

Urethra in the Child.—In children the membranous part of the urethra is,
very long, owing to the smallness of the prostate. It is
curved, because the bladder in children is more in the abdo-
men. It is, moreover, composed of thin and delicate walls.

Pass a catheter, therefore, should be used in passing a catheter; else
is likely to pass through the coats and make a false passage.

A very long, in being able to ascertain through the rectum whether the
in the right track and moving freely in the bladder, which can

THE THIGH.

Poupart’s Ligament, or Crural Arch.—Mark the anterior superior
in the some of the pubes, and define the line of “Poupart’s liga-
ment,” or arch, between them. This line is one of our guides in the
case of inguinal and femoral hernia. If the bulk of the tumor be above
the pubis, probably inguinal; if below it, femoral. The line is not
seen from the spine of the ilium to the spine of the pubes, but
onwards, giving the connexion downwards, owing to its close connection
with the arch of the thigh. In many persons it can be distinctly felt; in
most persons its course is indicated by a slight furrow in the skin.

For this reason it is a valuable landmark in amputa-
the line. The point of the knife should be introduced externally
of the line, and come out at the capsule of the joint may be opened with the first
of the line is the swelling of the hip pressure made in this line, just below
will tell us if the joint be tender. Effusion into the joint
of the furrow, and makes a fulness when contrasted with

Saphenous Opening.—In most persons there is a natural depression
opening in the fascia lata, where the saphena vein joins the
inner third of Poupart’s

Femoral Ring.—The position of the femoral ring, through which the
intestine protrudes in the supine position of the body, the way
and try to reduce a femoral hernia is by pressure, applied first
afterwards in an upward. The intestine protruded
under a sharp edge of fascia, namely, the upper horn of the
saphenous opening (known as Hey's ligament). At the same time we bend the
thigh, to relax the fascia as much as possible.

A good way to find the seat of the femoral ring with precision is the follow-
ing: Feel for the pulsation of the femoral artery on the pubes; allow half an
inch (on the inner side) for the femoral vein; then comes the femoral ring.

In performing the operation for the relief of the stricture in femoral hernia
the incision through the skin should be about an inch and a half external to the
spine of the pubes. Its direction should be vertical, and its middle should be
just over the femoral ring.

97. Lymphatic Glands in the Groin.—The cluster of inguinal and femo-
ral lymphatic glands can sometimes be felt in thin persons. The inguinal
lie for the most part along the line of Poupart's ligament: they receive the
absorbents from the wall of the abdomen, the urethra, the penis, the scrotum,
and the anus. The femoral glands lie chiefly over the saphenous opening and
along the outer side of the saphena vein: they receive the absorbents of the
lower extremity; they receive some also from the scrotum—of which we have
practical evidence in cases of chimney-sweeper's cancer.

98. Trochanter Major.—The trochanter major is a most valuable landmark,
to which we are continually appealing in injuries and diseases of the lower
extremity. There is a natural depression over the hip (in fat persons) where it
lies very near the surface, and can be plainly felt, especially when the thigh is
rotated. Nothing intervenes between the bone and the skin except the strong
fascia of the gluteus maximus and the great bursa underneath it.

The top of the trochanter lies pretty nearly on a level with the spine of the
pubes, and is about three-fourths of an inch lower than the top of the head of
the femur. A careful examination of the bearing of the great trochanter to the
other bony prominences of the pelvis, and a comparison of its relative position
with that of the opposite side, are the best guides in the diagnosis of injuries
about the hip, and the position of the head of the femur.

99. Nélaton's Line.—"If in the normal state you examine the relations of the
great trochanter to the other bony prominences of the pelvis, you will find
that the top of the trochanter corresponds to a line drawn from the anterior
superior spine of the ilium to the most prominent part of the tuberosity of the
ischium. This line also runs through the centre of the acetabulum. The extent
of displacement in dislocation or fracture is marked by the projection of the
trochanter behind and above this line."1

"Nélaton's line," as it is termed, theoretically holds good. But in stout per-
sons it is not always easy to feel these bony points so as to draw the line with
precision. A surgeon must, after all, in many cases trust to measurement by
his eyes and his flat hands—his best guides. Thus, let the thumbs be placed
firmly on the spines of the ilia, while the fingers grasp the trochanters on each
side. Having the sound side as a standard of comparison the hand will easily
detect any displacement on the injured side. Winslow's2 observation is very
much to the point—"Feel whether the injured member answers to the sound."

The top of the great trochanter is the guide in an operation recently intro-
duced by Mr. Adams, namely, the "subcutaneous section of the neck of the
femur." "The puncture should be made one inch above and nearly one inch in
front of the top of the trochanter. The neck of the bone is to be sawn through
at right angles to its axis, the saw working parallel to Poupart's ligament, and
about one inch below it."

Spine of the Ilium.—The anterior superior spine of the ilium is the point
from which we measure the length of the lower limb. By looking at the spines
of opposite sides we can detect any slant in the pelvis. By pressure on both
spines simultaneously we examine if there be a fracture of the pelvis, or disease
at the sacro-iliac joint.

1 Nélaton, "Pathologie chirurgicale." t. iv. p. 441. 1848.
in the right or left loin, below the kidney, in that part of the colon not covered by peritoneum.

The landmarks of the operation are:—(1) The last rib, of which feel the sloping edge; (2) the crest of the ilium; (3) the outer border of the "erector spinae." The incision should be about three inches long, midway between the rib and the ilium. It should begin at the outer border of the "erector spinae," and should slope downwards and outwards in the direction of the rib. The edge of the "quadratus lumborum," which is the guide to the colon, is about one inch external to the edge of the "erector spinae," or three full inches from the lumbar spines. The line of the gut is vertical, and runs (for a good two inches) between the lower border of the kidney and the iliac crest.

Small Intestines.—All the room below the umbilicus is occupied by the small intestines. The coils of the jejunum lie nearer to the umbilicus (one reason of the great fatality of umbilical hernia). Those of the ileum are lower down.

On the right side, a little below the ninth rib, the colon lies close to the gall bladder, and is, after death, sometimes tinged with bile. Posteriorly, this part of the colon is in contact with the kidney and duodenum.

86. Bladder.—When the bladder distends, it gradually rises out of the pelvis into the abdomen, pushes the small intestines out of the way, and forms a swelling above the pubes, reaching in some instances up to the navel. The outline of this swelling is perceptible to the hand as well as to percussion. More than this, fluctuation can be felt through the distended bladder by tapping on it in front with the fingers of one hand, while the forefinger of the other passed up the rectum feels the bottom of the "trigone."

**THE PERINEUM.**

The body is supposed to be placed in the usual position for lithotomy.

87. Bony Framework.—We can readily feel the osseous and ligamentous boundaries of the perineum; namely, the rami of the pubes and ischia, the tuberosities of the ischia, the great sacro-ischiatic ligaments, and the apex of the coccyx. This framework forms a lozenge-shaped space. If we draw an imaginary line across it from the front of one tuber ischi to the other, we divide this space into an anterior and a posterior triangle. The anterior is nearly equilateral, and, in a well-formed pelvis, its sides are from three to three and a half inches long. It is called the urethral triangle. The posterior, containing the greater part of the anus and the ischio-rectal fossa on each side, is called the anal triangle.

88. Raphé.—A slight central ridge of skin, called the "raphé," runs from the anus up the perineum, scrotum, and penis. This "raphé," or middle line of the perineum, is the "line of safety" in making incisions to let out matter or effused urine, or to divide a stricture.

89. Central Point of Perineum.—It is very important to know that a point of the raphé about midway between the scrotum (where it joins the perineum) and the centre of the anus, corresponds with the so-called "central tendon" where the perineal muscles meet. The bulb of the urethra lies above this point, and never, at any age, comes lower down. The artery of the bulb, too, never runs below this level. Therefore the incision in lithotomy should never commence above it. A knife introduced at this point, and pushed backwards with a very slight inclination upwards, would enter the membranous part of the urethra just in front of the prostate gland; pushed still further it would enter the neck of the bladder. This point, then, is a very good landmark to the urethra in lithotomy, or, indeed, in any operations on the perineum.

The incision in the lateral operation of lithotomy, beginning below the point indicated, should be carried downwards and outwards between the anus and the
ischium, a little nearer to the ischium than the anus. The lower end of the incision should reach a point just below the anus.

90. **Triangular Ligament.**—In a thin perineum, we can feel the lower border of the deep perineal fascia or "so-called triangular" ligament of the urethra. The urethra passes through it about one inch below the lower part of the symphysis pubis, and about three-quarters of an inch higher than the central tendon of the perineum. It is important to bear in mind these landmarks in introducing a catheter. If the catheter be depressed too soon, its passage will be resisted by the triangular ligament; if too late, it will be likely to make a false passage by running through the bulb.

91. **Anus.**—One of the most important landmarks which guide a surgeon in his operations about the anus, is a white line which was first pointed out by Mr. Hilton, and can be easily recognized in the living body. It shows the junction of the skin and mucous membrane, and is of especial interest because it marks with great precision the linear interval between the external and internal sphincter muscles. It is an exact and truthful landmark, and can be relied upon. From this line the internal sphincter extends upwards, beneath the mucous membrane, for about an inch, becoming gradually more and more attenuated.

The wrinkled appearance of the anus is caused by the contraction of the external sphincter. At the bottom of these cutaneous folds, especially towards the coccyx, we look for "fissure of the anus."

92. **Landmarks in the Rectum.**—Many valuable landmarks may be felt by introducing the finger into the rectum, with a catheter at the same time in the urethra. The principal of these landmarks are the following:

a. The finger can feel the extent and powerful grasp of the internal sphincter for about one inch up the bowel.

b. **Urethra.**—Through the front wall of the bowel it can most distinctly feel the track of the membranous part of the urethra, exactly in the middle line. This is very important, because you can ascertain with precision whether the catheter has deviated from the proper track.

c. **Prostate Gland.**—About an inch and a half or two inches from the anus, the finger comes upon the prostate gland. The gland lies in close contact with the bowel, and can be detected by its shape and hard feel. The finger, moved from side to side, can examine the size of its lateral lobes.

d. The finger, introduced still further, can reach beyond the prostate, as far as the apex of the trigone of the bladder. More than this, it can feel the angle between the "ductus communes ejaculatorii," which forms the apex of the trigone. This is the precise spot where the distended bladder should be punctured through the rectum. The more distended the bladder, the easier can this spot be felt. Fluctuation is at once detected by a gentle tap on the bladder above the pubes (86). The trocar must be thrust in the direction of the axis of the distended bladder; that is, roughly speaking, in a line drawn from the anus through the pubis to the umbilicus.

e. The fold of peritoneum, called the recto-vesical pouch, is about four inches from the anus, therefore it is not within reach of the finger; and we run no risk of wounding it in tapping the bladder if the trocar be introduced near the angle of the trigone.

f. The finger can feel one of the ridges or folds of mucous membrane which are situated at the lower part of the rectum. This fold projects from the side, and sometimes from the upper part of the rectum, near the prostate. When thickened or ulcerated, this fold occasions great pain in defaecation; and great relief is afforded by its division.

g. Lastly, the finger can examine the condition of the spaces filled with fat on either side of the rectum, called the ischio-rectal fossae, with a view to

1 "Lectures on Rest and Pain," p. 280.
ascertain the existence of deep-seated collections of matter, or the internal communications of fistulae.

**Introduction of Catheters.**—In the introduction of catheters the following are good rules. Keep the point of the instrument well applied against the upper surface of the urethra;—Depress the handle at the right moment (90); keep the umbilicus in view; in cases of difficulty feel the urethra through the rectum, to ascertain whether the instrument be in the right direction. Attention to these rules diminishes the risk of making a false passage.

**Urethra in the Child.**—In children the membranous part of the urethra is, relatively speaking, very long, owing to the smallness of the prostate. It is also more sharply curved, because the bladder in children is more in the abdomen than in the pelvis. It is, moreover, composed of thin and delicate walls. The greatest gentleness, therefore, should be used in passing a catheter; else the instrument is likely to pass through the coats and make a false passage. Hence the advantage of being able to ascertain through the rectum whether the instrument be in the right track and moving freely in the bladder, which can also be easily felt in children.

**THE THIGH.**

93. **Poupart's Ligament, or Crural Arch.**—Mark the anterior superior spine of the ilium, the spine of the pubes, and define the line of "Poupart's ligament" which extends between them. This line is one of our guides in the diagnosis of inguinal and femoral herniae. If the bulk of the tumor be above the line, the hernia is probably inguinal; if below it, femoral. The line is not a straight one drawn from the spine of the ilium to the spine of the pubes, but slightly curved, with the convexity downwards, owing to its close connection with the fascia lata of the thigh. In many persons it can be distinctly felt; in nearly all its precise course is indicated by a slight furrow in the skin.

For the points about the spine of the pubes, refer to paragraph 69.

94. **Furrow at the Bend of the Thigh.**—When the thigh is even slightly bent, there appears a second furrow in the skin below that at the crural arch. This second furrow begins at the angle between the scrotum and the thigh, passes outwards, and is gradually lost between the top of the trochanter and the anterior superior spine of the ilium. It runs right across the front of the capsule of the hip-joint. For this reason it is a valuable landmark in amputation at the hip-joint. The point of the knife should be introduced externally where the furrow begins, should run precisely along the line of it, and come out where it ends; so that the capsule of the joint may be opened with the first thrust. In suspected disease of the hip pressure made in this line, just below the spine of the ilium, will tell us if the joint be tender. Effusion into the joint obliterates all trace of the furrow, and makes a fulness when contrasted with the opposite groin.

95. **Saphenous Opening.**—In most persons there is a natural depression on the saphenous opening in the fascia lata, where the saphena vein joins the femoral. The position of this opening is just below the inner third of Poupart's ligament, and about an inch and a half external to the spine of the pubes. This is the place where the swelling of a femoral hernia first appears: therefore it ought to be carefully examined in cases of doubt.

96. **Femoral Ring.**—The position of the femoral ring, through which the hernia escapes from the abdomen, is, on a deeper plane, about half an inch higher than the saphenous opening, and immediately under Poupart's ligament. As the plane of the ring is vertical in the supine position of the body, the way in which we should try to reduce a femoral hernia is by pressure, applied first in a downward direction, afterwards in an upward. The intestine protruded has to pass back under a sharp edge of fascia, namely, the upper horn of the
THE THIGH.

97. Lymphatic Glands in the Groin.—The cluster of inguinal and femoral lymphatic glands can sometimes be felt in thin persons. The inguinal lie for the most part along the line of Poupard's ligament: they receive the absorbents from the wall of the abdomen, the urethra, the penis, the scrotum, and the anus. The femoral glands lie chiefly over the saphenous opening and along the outer side of the saphenous vein; they receive the absorbents of the lower extremity; they receive some also from the scrotum—of which we have practical evidence in cases of chimney-sweeper's cancer.

98. Trochanter Major.—The trochanter major is a most valuable landmark, to which we are continually appealing in injuries and diseases of the lower extremity. There is a natural depression over the hip (in fat persons) where it lies very near the surface, and can be plainly felt, especially when the thigh is rotated. Nothing intervenes between the bone and the skin except the strong fascia of the gluteus maximus and the great bursa underneath it.

The top of the trochanter lies pretty nearly on a level with the spine of the pubes, and is about three-fourths of an inch lower than the top of the head of the femur. A careful examination of the bearing of the great trochanter to the other bony prominences of the pelvis, and a comparison of its relative position with that of the opposite side, are the best guides in the diagnosis of injuries about the hip, and the position of the head of the femur.

99. Nélaton's Line.—“If in the normal state you examine the relations of the great trochanter to the other bony prominences of the pelvis, you will find that the top of the trochanter corresponds to a line drawn from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to the most prominent part of the tuberosity of the ischium. This line also runs through the centre of the acetabulum. The extent of displacement in dislocation or fracture is marked by the projection of the trochanter behind and above this line.”

“Nélaton's line,” as it is termed, theoretically holds good. But in stout persons it is not always easy to feel these bony points so as to draw the line with precision. A surgeon must, after all, in many cases trust to measurement by his eyes and his flat hands—his best guides. Thus, let the thumbs be placed firmly on the spines of the ilia, while the fingers grasp the trochanters on each side. Having the sound side as a standard of comparison the hand will easily detect any displacement on the injured side. Winslow's observation is very much to the point—“Feel whether the injured member answers to the sound.”

The top of the great trochanter is the guide in an operation recently introduced by Mr. Adams, namely, the “subcutaneous section of the neck of the femur.” “The puncture should be made one inch above and nearly one inch in front of the top of the trochanter. The neck of the bone is to be sawn through at right angles to its axis, the saw working parallel to Poupard's ligament, and about one inch below it.”

Spine of the Ilium.—The anterior superior spine of the ilium is the point from which we measure the length of the lower limb. By looking at the spines of opposite sides we can detect any slant in the pelvis. By pressure on both spines simultaneously we examine if there be a fracture of the pelvis, or disease at the sacro-iliac joint.

1 Nélaton, “Pathologie chirurgicale,” t. iv. p. 441. 1848.
100. "In reducing a dislocation of the hip by manipulation it is important to bear in mind that, in every position, the head of the femur faces nearly in the direction of the inner aspect of its internal condyle."\(^1\)

101. **Compression of Femoral Artery.**—About a point midway between the spine of the ilium and the symphysis pubis, the femoral artery can be felt beating, and effectually compressed, against the pubes. How should the pressure be applied when the patient lies on the back? In accordance with the slope of the bone—that is, with a slight inclination upwards.

If the Italian tourniquet be used, we should be careful to adjust the counter-pad well under the tuberosity of the ischium. If digital pressure be used, it is easy to command the femoral by slight pressure of the thumb, provided the fingers have a firm hold on the great trochanter.

102. **Sartorius.**—The sartorius is the great fleshy landmark of the thigh, as the biceps is of the arm, and the sterno-cleido-mastoideus of the neck. Its direction and borders may easily be traced by asking the patient to raise his leg, a movement which puts the muscle in action. The same action defines the boundaries of the triangle (of Scarpa) formed by Poupart’s ligament, the adductor longus and sartorius.

**Line of Femoral Artery.**—To define the course of the femoral artery, draw a line from midway between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the symphysis pubis to the (spur-like) tubercle for the adductor magnus on the inner side of the knee. The femoral artery lies under the upper \(\frac{3}{4}\) of this line.

The sartorius begins to cross the artery, as a rule, from three to four inches below Poupart’s ligament. The point at which the profunda artery arises is (generally) about one and a half or two inches below the ligament. Therefore the incision for tying the femoral in Scarpa’s triangle should commence about a hand’s breadth below Poupart’s ligament, and be continued for three inches in the line of the artery.

To command the femoral in Scarpa’s triangle, the pad of the tourniquet should be placed at the apex, and the direction of the pressure should be, not backwards, but outwards, so that the artery may be compressed against the femur.

In the middle third of the thigh the femoral artery lies in Hunter’s canal overlapped by the sartorius. About the commencement of the lower third the artery leaves the canal through the oval opening in the adductor magnus, and enters the popliteal space. The line for finding the artery in Hunter’s canal has been already traced. The incision to reach the artery in this part of its course would fall in with the outer border of the sartorius.

To command the femoral artery in Hunter’s canal, the pressure should be directed outwardly, so as to press the vessel against the bone.

---

**THE BUTTOCKS.**

103. **Bony Landmarks.**—The bony landmarks of the buttocks which can be distinctly felt are: 1, the posterior superior spines of the ilia; 2, the spines of the sacral vertebrae; 3, the two tubercles of the last sacral vertebra; 4, the apex of the coccyx in the deep groove leading to the anus; 5, the tuberosities of the ischia on each side of the anus.

The posterior spines of the ilia are about the level of the second sacral spine, and correspond with the middle of the sacro-iliac symphysis.

The third sacral spine marks the lowest part to which the cerebro-spinal fluid descends in the spinal canal.

The tuberosities of the ischia, in the erect position, are covered by the glutæus maximus. In the sitting position they support the weight of the body, and are

---

only covered by a thick pad of coarse fat. Between this pad and the bones there is a bursa, which I have more than once seen enlarged and inflamed in coachmen.

The prominence of the nates is one of the characteristics of man in connection with his erect attitude. "Les fesses n’appartiennent qu’à l’espèce humaine." They are formed of an accumulation of fat over the great muscle of the buttock (gluteus maximus). From their appearance we may gather some indication of the state of the constitution. They are firm and globose in the vigorous; loose and flaccid in the infirm. Wasting and flattening of one compared with the other, is an early symptom of disease in the hip.

104. **Fold of the Buttock.**—The deep furrow, termed "the fold of the buttock," which separates the nates from the back of the thigh, corresponds with the lower border of the gluteus maximus. Its altered direction in disease of the hip is very characteristic. This is the best place to feel the great ischiatic nerve. We find it by pressing deep between the trochanter and the tuber ischii rather nearer to the latter. When we sit upright, the nerve is not liable to pressure; but it becomes numbed when we sit long sideways.

105. **Gluteal Artery.**—To find at what point the gluteal artery comes out of the pelvis, draw a line from the posterior superior spine of the ilium to the trochanter major, rotated inwards. The junction of the upper with the middle third of this line lies over the artery as it emerges from the upper border of the great ischiatic notch.

The point of exit of the ischiatic artery from the pelvis is about half an inch lower than that of the gluteal.

106. **Pudic Artery.**—The pudic artery lies over the spine of the ischium. To find it, draw a line from the outer side of the tuber ischii to the posterior superior spine of the ilium. The junction of the lower with the middle third gives the position of the artery. The ischiatic artery lies close to it, but nearer the middle line.

Looking at the course of these arteries it appears that when seated on hard seats the pressure is sustained by the bones; when reclining on soft seats the pressure is sustained more by the soft parts, and reaches the arteries; hence the tendency of modern modes of reposing to drive the blood into the interior of the pelvis and favor the production of piles and uterine disorders. A celebrated French accoucheur used to say that the fashion of high waists, tight lacing, and easy chairs brought him many thousands a year.

---

**THE KNEE.**

107. **Bony Points.**—The patella; the tuberosities of the two condyles; the tubercle of the tibia for the attachments of the ligamentum patellae; another (the lateral) tubercle, on the outer side of the head of the tibia; and the head of the fibula are the chief bony landmarks of the knee.

Observe that the head of the fibula lies at the outer and back part of the tibia, and that it is pretty nearly on a level with the tubercle for the attachment of the ligamentum patellae.

We can also feel the little spur-like projection of bone above the internal condyle which gives attachment to the tendon of the adductor magnus. The spur-like projection corresponds with the level of the epiphysis of the lower end of the femur, and also with the level of the highest part of the trochlea for the patella; facts worth notice in performing excision of the knee.

"In reducing a dislocation of the hip, it is important to bear in mind that the inner aspect of the internal condyle in every position of the limb faces nearly in the direction of the head of the femur." (100.)

The tubercle on the outer side of the head of the tibia gives attachment to the broad and strong aponeurosis (tendon of the tensor fasciae), which, acting
like a brace for the support of the pelvis, is well seen in emaciated persons down the outer side of the thigh. This tubercle indicates the level to which the condyles of the femur descend, and the lower level of the synovial membrane.

The patella, in extension of the knee, is nearly all of it above the condyles; in flexion, it lies in the inner-condyloid fossa (more on the external condyle), and thus protects the joint in kneeling. Its inner border is thicker and more prominent than the outer, which slopes down towards its condyle.

108. **Ligamentum Patellae.**—The line of the ligamentum patellæ is vertical. Hence any deviation from this line, one way or the other, indicates more or less dislocation of the tibia. There is a pellet of fat under the ligament, which answers a "packing" purpose—sinking in when the knee is bent, rising when the knee is extended, and bulging on either side of the tendon, almost enough to give the feel of fluctuation.

In a well-formed leg the ligamentum patellæ, the tubercle of the tibia, and the middle of the ankle should be in the same line. A useful point in the adjustment of fractures.

109. **Patellar Bursa.**—The patellar or housemaids' bursa is situated not only over the patella, but over the upper part of the ligament. This is plain enough when the bursa becomes enlarged. There is another subcutaneous bursa over the insertion of the ligament into the tubercle of the tibia. This is quite independent of the deep bursa between the tendon and the bone.

110. **Synovial Membrane of Knee.**—The synovial membrane of the knee, when the joint is extended, rises like a cul-de-sac above the upper border of the patella about two inches. It ascends, too, a little higher under the vastus internus than the vastus externus—a fact very manifest when the joint is distended. When the knee is bent this cul-de-sac is drawn down—hence the rule of bending the knee in operations near the lower end of the femur.

The lower level of the synovial membrane of the knee is just above the level of the upper part of the head of the fibula. The tibio-fibular synovial membrane is, as a rule to which there are few exceptions, independent of that of the knee.

111. **Popliteal Tendons.**—The tendons forming the boundaries of the popliteal space can be distinctly felt when the muscles which bend the knee are acting. On the outer side, we have the biceps running down to the head of the fibula. On the inner side, we feel three tendons, disposed as follows: nearest to the middle of the popliteal space is the semitendinosus, very salient and traceable high up the thigh; next comes the thick round tendon of the semimembranosus; still more internally is the gracilis. The sartorius, which forms a graceful muscular prominence on the inner side of the knee, does not become tendinous until it gets below it.

112. **Popliteal Bursa.**—The precise position of the bursa in the popliteal space, which sometimes enlarges to the size of a hen's egg, is between the tendon of the inner head of the gastrocnemius and the tendon of the semimembranosus, just where they rub one against the other. The bursa is from one and a half to two inches long. When enlarged, it makes a swelling on the inner side of the popliteal space, which bulges and becomes tense when the knee is extended and vice versa. I examined 150 bodies with a view to ascertain how often this bursa communicates with the synovial membrane of the knee. There was a communication about once in five instances. This should make us cautious in interfering too roughly with the bursa when enlarged.

113. **Popliteal Artery.**—The popliteal artery can be felt beating and can be compressed against the back of the femur, close to which it lies. But pressure, sufficient to stop the blood, should be firm, and should be made against the bone nearer to the inner than the outer hamstrings. The line of the artery corresponds with the middle of the ham. It lies under cover of the fleshy belly of the semimembranosus, and the outer border of this muscle is the guide to it.
An incision down the middle of the ham would fall in with the vessel just above the condyles.

114. Peroneal Nerve.—The peroneal nerve runs parallel with and close to the inner border of the tendon of the biceps. It can be felt in thin persons. There is a risk of dividing it in tenotomy of the biceps, unless the knife be carefully introduced from within outwards. Below the knee the nerve can be felt close to the fibula just below the head.

THE LEG AND ANKLE.

115. Bony Points.—The tubercle of the tibia (for the attachment of the ligamentum patellae), the sharp front edge called the shin, and the broad flat subcutaneous surface of the bone can be felt all the way down. The inner edge can be felt too, but not so plainly. The lower third is the narrowest part of the bone and the most frequent seat of fracture.

The head of the fibula is a good landmark on the outer side of the leg; about one inch below the top of the tibia and nearly on a level with the tubercle. Observe that it is placed well back, and that it forms no part of the knee-joint, and takes no share in supporting the weight.

The shaft of the fibula arches backwards, the reverse of the shaft of the tibia. The fact of the bones not being on the same plane should be remembered in flap amputations. The shaft of the fibula is so buried amongst the muscles, that the only part to be distinctly felt is the lower fourth. Here there is a flat surface, subcutaneous, between the peroneus tertius in front, and the two peronei (longus and brevis) behind. Here is the most frequent seat of fracture.

116. Malleoli.—The shape and relative position of the malleoli should be carefully studied, as the great landmarks of the ankle. The inner malleolus does not descend so low as the outer, and advances more to the front: at the same time, owing to its greater antero-posterior depth, it is on the same plane as the outer behind. The lower border of the inner malleolus is somewhat rounded, and the slight notch in it for the attachment of the lateral ligament can be felt. The outer malleolus descends lower than the inner, thus effectually locking the joint on the outer side. Its shape is not unlike the head of a serpent. Viewed in profile, it lies just in the middle of the joint.

In Syme’s amputation of the foot at the ankle, the line of the incision should run from the apex of the outer malleolus, under the sole, to the centre of the inner.

In a well-formed leg, the inner edge of the patella, the inner ankle, and the inner side of the great toe, should be in the same vertical plane. Look to these landmarks in adjusting a fracture or dislocation, keeping at the same time an eye upon the conformation of the opposite limb.

There are several strong tendons to be seen and felt about the ankle.

117. Tendo Achillis.—Behind is the tendo Achillis. It forms a high relief, with a shallow gutter on each side of it. The narrowest part of the tendon, where it should be divided in tenotomy, is about the level of the inner ankle, below this it expands again to be attached to the lower and back part of the os calcis. Seen in profile, the tendon is not straight, but slightly concave—being drawn in by an aponeurosis which forms a sort of girdle round it. This girdle proceeds from the posterior ligament of the ankle; and, though most of its fibres encircle the tendon, some of them adhere to and draw in its sides. All this disappears when the tendon is laid bare by dissection.

118. Tendons behind Inner Ankle.—Above and behind the malleolus internus we can feel the broad flat tendons of the tibialis posticus and the flexor longus digitorum. The tendon of the tibialis posticus lies nearest to the bone and comes well up in relief in adduction of the foot. It lies close to, and parallel with, the inner edge of the tibia, so that this edge is the best guide to it. There-
fore in tenotomy the knife should be introduced first perpendicularly between
the tendon and the bone, and then turn at right angles to cut the tendon. The
tendon has a separate sheath and synovial membrane, which commences about
one inch and a half above the apex of the malleolus, and is continued to its
insertion into the tubercle of the scaphoid bone. The proper place, then, for
division of the tendon, is about two inches above the end of the malleolus.

In a young and fat child, where the inner edge of the tibia cannot be distinctly
felt, the best guide to the tendon is a point midway between the front and the
back of the ankle. An incision in front of this point might injure the internal
saphena vein; behind this point, the posterior tibial artery.

119. Tendons behind Outer Ankle.—Behind the malleolus externus we
feel the two peroneal (long and short) tendons. They lie close to the edge of
the fibula, the short one nearer to the bone. In dividing these tendons, the
knife should be introduced perpendicular to the surface, and about two inches
above the apex of the ankle, so as to be above the synovial sheaths of the
tendons.

Tendons in front of Ankle.—Over the front of the ankle, when the
muscles are in action, we can see and feel, beginning on the inner side, the ten-
dons of the tibialis anticus, the extensor longus pollicis, the extensor longus
digitorum, and the peroneus tertius. They start up like cords when the foot is
raised, and are kept in their proper relative position by strong pulleys formed
by the anterior annular ligament. Of these pulleys the strongest is that of the
extensor communis digitorum. When the ankle is sprained, the pain and
swelling arise from a stretching of these pulleys and effusion into their syno-
vial sheaths. A laceration of one of the pulleys and escape of the tendon is
extremely rare.

The place for the division of the tendon of the tibialis anticus, so as to divide
it below its synovial sheath, is about one inch before its insertion into the
cuneiform bone. The knife should be introduced on the outer side, so as to
avoid the dorsal artery of the foot.

Now trace the lines of the arteries, and the landmarks near which they divide.

120. Popliteal Artery.—About one inch and a quarter below the head of
the fibula, or say one inch below the tubercle of the tibia, the popliteal artery
divides into the anterior and posterior tibial. The peroneal comes off from the
posterior tibial about three inches below the head of the fibula.

Consequently we may lay down, as a general rule, that, in amputations one
inch below the head of the fibula, only one main artery, the popliteal, is divided.
In amputations two inches below the head of the fibula, two main arteries, the
anterior and posterior tibial, are divided. In amputations three inches below
the head, three main arteries, the two tibials and the peroneal, are divided.

121. Anterior Tibial Artery.—The anterior tibial artery comes in front of
the interosseous membrane, one inch and a quarter below the head of the fibula,
and here lies close to this bone. Its subsequent course is defined by a line
drawn from the front of the head of the fibula to the middle of the front of the
ankle. This line corresponds pretty nearly with the outer border of the tibialis
anticus all the way down. If this muscle be put in action, its outer border is
plainly seen, and the incision for the ligature of the artery in any part of its
course may be defined with the greatest precision. The artery can be felt
beating and compressed where it crosses the front of the tibia and ankle.

122. Posterior Tibial Artery.—The posterior tibial commences about one
inch and a quarter below the head of the fibula. Its subsequent course corre-
sponds with a line drawn from the middle of the upper part of the calf to the
hollow behind the inner ankle, where it can be felt beating distinctly about half
an inch behind the edge of the tibia. A vertical incision down the middle of the
calf would reach the artery under cover of the gastrocnemius and soleus.
A vertical incision along the middle third of the leg, about half an inch from
the inner edge of the tibia, would enable the operator to reach the artery sideways, by detaching from the bone the tibial origin of the soleus.

123. **Saphena Veins.**—The subcutaneous veins on the dorsum of the foot form an arch convex towards the toes (as on the back of the hand), from which issue the two main subcutaneous trunks of the lower limb, the internal and external saphena veins. The internal saphena vein can be always plainly seen over the front of the inner ankle. Its farther course up the inner side of the leg, knee, and thigh to its termination in the femoral is not in all persons manifest.

The external saphena vein runs behind the outer ankle and up the middle of the calf to empty itself (generally) into the popliteal vein.

---

**THE FOOT.**

What are the bony landmarks which guide us in the surgery of the foot?

124. **Points of Bone.**—Along the inner side of the foot, beginning from behind, we can feel—1, the tuberosity of the os calcis; 2, the projection of the internal malleolus; 3, the projection of the os calcis, termed "sustentaculum tali," about one full inch below the malleolus; 4, about one inch in front of the malleous internus, and a little lower, is the tubercle of the scaphoid bone; the gap between it and the sustentaculum tali being filled by the calcaneo-scaphoid ligament and the tendon of the tibialis posticus, in which there is often a sesamoid bone; 5, the internal cuneiform bone; 6, the projection of the first metatarsal bone; 7, the sesamoid bones of the great toe.

Along the outer side of the foot we can feel—1, the external tuberosity of the os calcis; 2, the external malleolus; 3, the peroneal tubercle of the os calcis, one inch below the malleolus, with the long peroneal tendon below it, and the short one above it; 4, the projection of the base of the fifth metatarsal bone.

125. **Lines of Joints.**—In fat persons the following rules for finding the joints may be of service as regards the surgery of the foot:

The level of the ankle joint lies about half an inch above the end of the inner malleolus. This is worth remembering in performing "Syme's" amputation.

The tubercle of the scaphoid bone is the best guide to the astragalo-scaphoid joint which lies immediately behind it; and the plane of this joint is in the same line as that of the calcaneo-cuboid. Thus a line drawn transversely over the dorsum of the foot, behind the tubercle of the scaphoid, would strike both the joints opened in "Chopart's" operation.

Place your thumb on the tubercle of the scaphoid, and measure about one inch and a half in front; here you find the joint between the internal cuneiform bone and the metatarsal bone of the great toe. This point is useful in Lisfranc's operation, which consists in the removal of the metatarsal bones.

The line of the calcaneo-cuboid joint lies midway between the external malleolus and the (tarsal) end of the metatarsal bone of the little toe.

The projection of the fifth metatarsal bone is the guide to the joint between it and the cuboid.

Notice that the line of the joints between the metatarsal bones and the first phalanges lies a full inch further back than the interdigital folds of the skin. This is a point to be remembered in amputating the toes.

126. **Dorsal Artery.**—The line of the dorsal artery of the foot is from the middle of the ankle to the interval between the first and second metatarsal bones. The artery can be felt beating over the bones along the outer side of the extensor longus pollicis, which is the best guide to it.

127. **Bursa.**—The synovial sheath of the extensor longus pollicis extends from the front of the ankle, over the instep (apex of the internal cuneiform bone) as far as the metatarsal bone of the great toe. There is generally a bursa over the instep, above, or it may be below, the tendon.
There is often a large irregular bursa between the tendons of the extensor longus digitorum, and the projecting end of the astragalus, over which the tendons play. There is much friction here. It is well to be aware that this bursa sometimes communicates with the joint of the head of the astragalus.

128. **Plantar Arteries.**—The course of the external plantar artery corresponds with a line drawn from the hollow behind the inner ankle obliquely across the sole nearly to the base of the fifth metatarsal bone; from hence the artery turns transversely across the foot, lying (deeply) near the bases of the metatarsal bones, till it inosculates with the dorsal artery of the foot in the first intersosseous space.

The course of the internal plantar corresponds with a line drawn from the inner side of the os calcis to the middle of the great toe.

129. **Plantar Fascia.**—To divide the plantar fascia subcutaneously, the best place is about one inch in front of its attachment to the os calcis. This is the narrowest part of it. The knife should be introduced on the inner side; and the incision will be behind the plantar artery.

The subcutaneous section of the tendon of the abductor pollicis should be made about one inch before its insertion.

**THE ARM.**

130. **Clavicle.**—The line of the clavicle and the projection of the joint at either end of it can always be felt, even in the fattest persons. Its direction is not perfectly horizontal, but slightly inclined downwards, when the arm hangs quietly by the side. When the body lies flat on the back, the shoulder not only falls back, but rises a little, the weight of the limb being taken off. Hence the modern practice of treating fractures of the clavicle (in the early stage) by the supine position.

On the front surface of the clavicle, not far from its acromial end, there is in many persons of mature age a spine-like projection of bone. So far as I know, it has not been described. A gentleman, himself a surgeon, showed me an instance in his own person. He suspected it was an exostosis.

As a rule the acromio-clavicular joint forms an even plane. But there is sometimes a knob of bone at the acromial end of the clavicle; or it may be only a thickening of the fibro-cartilage, sometimes existing in the joint. In either case this relief might be mistaken for a dislocation, or even for a fracture. A reference to the other shoulder might settle the question.

131. **Bony Points of the Shoulder.**—We can distinctly feel the spine of the scapula and the acromion, more especially at the angle where they join behind the shoulder. This angle is the best place from which to measure in taking the comparative length of the arms.

In some shoulders, though very rarely, there is an abnormal symphysis between the spine of the scapula and the acromion. There may indeed be two symphyses and two acromial bones, in which case the acromion has two points of ossification. These abnormal symphyses might be mistaken for fractures, until we have examined the opposite shoulder, which is sure to present a similar conformation.¹

**Tuberosities.**—Projecting beyond the acromion (the arm hanging by the side), we can feel, through the fibres of the deltoid, the upper part of the humerus. It distinctly moves under the hand when the arm is rotated. It is not the head of the bone which is felt, but the tuberosities, the greater externally, the lesser in front. These tuberosities form the convexity of the shoulder. When the arm is raised, this convexity disappears; there is a slight depression

THE ARM. 945

in its place. The head of the bone can be felt by pressing the fingers high up in the axilla.

The absence of this prominence formed by the upper part of the humerus under the deltoid, and the presence of a prominence low in the hollow of the axilla, or in front, below the coracoid process, or behind, on the back of the scapula, bespeak dislocation of the head of the bone.

In examining obscure injuries about the shoulder, it is worth remembering that, in the normal relation of the bones, and in every position, the great tuberosity faces in the direction of the external condyle. The head of the bone faces very much in the direction of the internal condyle.

It is worth remembering also that the upper epiphysis of the humerus includes the tuberosities; and that it does not unite by bone to the shaft, till about the 20th year.

By making deep pressure in front of the shoulder, when the arm is pendent and supine, we can feel the bicipital groove. It looks directly forwards, and runs in a line drawn vertically downwards through the middle of the biceps to its tendon at the elbow. We should be aware of this, lest it should be mistaken for a fracture.

132. Coraco-acromial Ligament.—Under the anterior fibres of the deltoid, we can distinctly feel the position and extent of the coraco-acromial ligament. A knife, passed vertically through the middle of it, goes at once into the shoulder joint and strikes the bicipital groove with the tendon—a point to be remembered in excision.

In persons of an athletic build, the triangular form and beautiful structure of the deltoid become conspicuous when the muscle is in action. The depression on the outer side of the arm, indicating its insertion, is the place selected for issues or setons.

The arm being held up by an assistant, the anterior and posterior borders of the relaxed deltoid admit of being raised so that in amputation at the shoulder the knife can be introduced beneath the muscle to make the flap.

133. Axilla.—The anterior border of the axilla, formed by the pectoralis major, follows the line of the fifth rib. In counting the ribs, or in tapping the chest, it is worth remembering that the first visible digitation of the serratus magnus is attached to the sixth rib. The angle of the digitation is directed forwards and corresponds to the upper edge of the rib. The second visible digitation corresponds to the seventh rib; the interval between these digitations, therefore, corresponds to the sixth intercostal space—a convenient place for tapping the chest. (38.)

In the normal state no glands can be felt in the axilla.

134. Axillary Artery.—When the arm is raised to a right angle, and the head of the humerus thereby depressed, the axillary artery is plainly felt beating, and can be perfectly compressed on the inner side of the coraco-brachialis. This muscle stands out in relief along the humeral side of the axilla, and is the best guide to the artery. A line drawn along its inner border—that is, down the middle of the axilla—corresponds with the course of the artery.

The depth and form of the axilla alter in different positions of the arm. In the arm raised and abducted the axilla becomes nearly flat; hence this position is always adopted in operations.

In opening abscesses in the axilla, the incision should be made midway between the borders, and the point of the knife introduced from above downwards.

135. Brachial Artery.—When the arm is extended and supinated, a line drawn from the deepest part of the middle of the axilla down the inner side of the biceps to the middle of the bend of the elbow, corresponds with the course of the brachial artery. The artery can be felt and compressed all the way down; but nowhere so effectually as midway, where it lies on the tendon of the coraco-brachialis on the inner side of the humerus. The proper direction to apply the
pressure is outwards and a little backwards, else the artery is apt to slip off the bone.

The musculo-spiral nerve and superior profunda artery wind round the back of the humerus about its middle, and come to the front of the external condyloid ridge. Thus, for full three inches above the condyles, there is nothing to interfere with operations on the back of the bone, which is here broad and flat.

186. Bend of Elbow.—At the bend of the elbow, the tendon of the biceps can be plainly felt, as well as the pulsation of the brachial artery close to its inner side, before dividing into the radial and ulnar.

Cutaneous Veins.—The bend of the elbow in young children and in persons with fat and round arms presents a semicircular fold of which the curve embraces the lower part of the biceps; but in muscular persons we see the distinct boundaries of the triangular space formed by the pronator teres on the inner side, and the supinator longus on the outer. Here can be traced, standing out in strong relief under the thin white skin, the superficial veins, which, in days gone by, when bleeding was the fashion, were of such great importance. Their arrangement, although subject to variety, is very much like the branches of the letter M, the middle of the M being at the middle of the elbow. Of these branches the median basilic, which runs over the tendon of the biceps, is the largest and most conspicuous, and is generally selected for venesection; it crosses the course of the brachial artery, nothing intervening but the semilunar spongiosa from the tendon of the biceps.

187. Landmarks of Elbow.—It is of great importance to be familiar with the relative positions of the various bony prominences about the elbow. We can always feel the internal and external condyles. The internal is the more prominent of the two, and a trifle higher.

Olecranon.—We can always feel the olecranon. This is somewhat nearer to the inner than to the outer condyle. Between the olecranon and the internal condyle is a deep depression in which lies the ulnar nerve (vulgarily called the “funny bone”).

On the outer side of the olecranon, just below the external condyle, is a pit in the skin, constant even in fat persons (when the elbow is extended). This pit is considered one of the beauties of the elbow in a graceful arm; it is seen in a child as a pretty little dimple. To the surgeon it is most interesting, as in this valley behind the supinator longus and the radial extensors of the wrist he can distinctly feel the head of the radius rolling in pronation and supination of the arm. It is, therefore, one of the most important landmarks of the elbow, since it enables us to say whether the head of the radius is in its right place, and whether it rotates with the shaft.

Can the tubercle of the radius be felt? Yes, but only on the back of the forearm in the extreme pronation. Its projection is then distinctly perceptible just below the place where the head of the bone is felt.

Relations of Olecranon and Condyles.—To examine the relative positions of the olecranon and condyles in the different motions of the elbow-joint, place the thumb on one condyle, the tip of the middle finger on the other, and the tip of the forefinger on the olecranon. In extension, the highest point of the olecranon is never above the line of the condyles; indeed, it is just in this line. With the elbow at right angles the point of the olecranon is vertically below the line of the condyles. In extreme flexion the point of the olecranon lies in front of the line of the condyles.

All these relative positions would be altered in a dislocation of the ulna, but not (necessarily) in a fracture of the lower end of the humerus.

Sometimes, though rarely, we meet with a hook-like projection of bone above the internal condyle. It is called a “supra-condyloid” process; it can be felt through the skin, with its concavity downwards, and is a rudiment of the bony canal which, in many mammalia, transmits the median nerve and ulnar artery.
A third origin of the pronator teres is always attached to it; this origin covers the brachial artery. ¹

**Bursa.**—The subcutaneous bursa over the olecranon, if distended, would be as large as a walnut. A second bursa sometimes exists a little lower down upon the ulna. There is also a small subcutaneous bursa over each of the condyles.

The vertical extent of the elbow-joint is limited, above by a line drawn from one condyle to the other; below by a line corresponding to the lowest part of the head of the radius.

138. **Interosseous Arteries.**—About one inch below the head of the radius, the ulnar artery gives off the common interosseous; and this divides, about half an inch lower, into the anterior and posterior interosseous. Thus, in amputating the forearm, say two inches below the head of the radius, four arteries at least would require ligation.

By flexion of the elbow to the utmost, the circulation through the brachial artery can be arrested; but the position is painful, and can be tolerated only for a short time.

**Lymphatic Gland.**—There is a small lymphatic gland just above the inner condyle, in front of the intermuscular septum. It is the first to take alarm in poisoned wounds of the hand.

---

**THE FOREARM AND WRIST.**

139. **Ulna.**—The edge of the ulna can be felt subcutaneous from the olecranon to the styloid process (in supination). Any irregularity could be easily detected. The styloid process of the ulna does not descend so low as the styloid process of the radius, or it would impede the free abduction of the hand. Its apex is on a level with the radio-carpal joint. The head of the ulna is plainly felt and seen projecting at the back of the wrist, especially in pronation of the forearm. It then lies between the tendons of the extensor carpi ulnaris and extensor minimi digiti. There is often a subcutaneous bursa over it.

140. **Radius.**—The upper half of the shaft of the radius is so covered by muscles that we cannot feel it; the lower half is more accessible to the touch, especially just above and just below the part where it is crossed by the extensors of the thumb. Its styloid process is readily felt, and made all the more manifest by being covered by the first two extensor tendons of the thumb. It descends lower, and lies more to the front than the corresponding process of the ulna. The relative positions of these styloid processes can be best examined by placing the thumb on one and the forefinger on the other.

Feel for the little bony pulley on the back of the radius near the wrist, which keeps in place the third extensor tendon of the thumb. This and the bone just above it is the place which we examine for a suspected fracture (termed Colles's) near the lower end of the radius.

141. **Carpus.**—Below the styloid process of the radius, just on the inner side of the extensors of the thumb, we feel the tubercle of the scaphoid bone. Between the styloid process and the tubercle is the level of the radio-carpal joint. A little lower we feel the trapezium.

Just below the ulna on the palm of the hand we feel the pisiform bone; and, on the inner side of this, the cuneiform.

There are several transverse furrows on the palmar aspect of the wrist. The lowest of these, which is slightly convex downwards, corresponds with the upper edge of the anterior annular ligament and the intercarpal joint. The line of the

¹ See on this subject a monograph, "Canalis Supra-Condylodeus Humeri." By W. Gruber. Petersburgh, 1856.
radio-carpal joint, as already stated, is on a level with the apex of the styloid process of the ulna.

In forcible flexion of the wrist, the tendon of the flexor carpi radialis and that of the palmaris longus come up in relief. On the outer side of the first-named tendon we feel the pulse, the radial artery here lying close to the radius.

The tendon of the palmaris longus runs near the middle of the wrist, and close to its inner border runs the median nerve. In letting out deep-seated matter near the wrist, the incision should be made close to and parallel with the inner edge of the radial flexor tendon, so as to avoid injury to the median nerve.

We can feel the tendon of the flexor carpi ulnaris for some distance above the wrist. It overlies the ulnar artery, and somewhat masks its pulsation.

142. **Pulse.**—The “pulse at the wrist” is felt just outside the tendon of the flexor carpi radialis. In feeling the pulse it should be remembered that, in some cases, the superficialis velox arises higher and is larger than usual. In such cases it runs by the side of the radial artery, and gives additional volume to the pulse. The old writers call it “pulsus duplex.” When in doubt, therefore, it is well to feel the pulse in each wrist.

143. **Great Carpal Bursa.**—The great synovial sheath under the annular ligament common to the flexor tendons of the fingers and the long flexor of the thumb, extends, upwards, about an inch and a half above the edge of the ligament, and downwards, as low as the middle of the palm. This general synovial sheath communicates with the special sheaths of the thumb and the little finger; not with that of the index, middle, and ring fingers.

144. **‘Tabatière Anatomique.’**—On the outer side of the wrist we can distinctly see and feel, when in action, the three extensor tendons of the thumb. Between the second and third there is a deep depression, at the root of the thumb, which the French humorously call the “tabatière anatomique.” In this depression we can make out—1, the relief of the superficial radial vein; 2, the radial artery, in its passage to the back of the hand; 3, the upper end of the metacarpal bone of the thumb.

145. **Tendons on back of Wrist.**—The relative positions of the several extensor tendons of the wrist and fingers, as they play in their grooves over the back of the radius and ulna, can all be distinctly traced when the several muscles are put in action. The length of their synovial sheaths should be remembered. They vary from one inch and a half to two inches and a half. The longest of all are those of the extensors of the thumb. When these sheaths are inflamed and swollen, the motion of the tendons becomes painful and gives rise to a feeling of crepitus, called “tenalgia crepitas” by some writers. It is said to be met with sometimes in “pianistes.”

146. **Lines of Arteries.**—The course of the radial artery corresponds with a line drawn from the outer border of the tendon of the biceps at the bend of the elbow down the front of the forearm to the front of the styloid process of the radius. In the upper third of its course the artery is overlapped by the supinator longus. To make allowance for this, the incision for the ligature of the artery in this situation should be made, not precisely in the line of its course, but rather nearer the middle of the forearm.

The line of the ulnar artery runs from the middle of the bend of the elbow (slightly curving inwards) to the outer side of the pisiform bone. The radial and ulnar arteries can, in most cases, be effectually commanded by pressure well applied at the wrist, in wounds of the palmar arch.

Before we make incisions along the forearm it is always desirable to ascertain whether the ulnar artery, which usually runs under the superficial muscles, may not run abnormally over them; in which case its pulsations can be felt all down the forearm.
THE HAND.

147. It is beside the purpose here to examine the question whether the hand can tell more than the arm, the leg, or any part of the body, about the physical constitution of its owner, and to what use it has been put. Those who are interested in this subject should read a very elaborate treatise by Carus,1 "On the Reason and Meaning of the Different Forms of the Hand." Still less would I indulge curiosity by inquiring whether the professors of chiromancy, relying on the text "erit signum in manu tua et quasi monumentum ante oculos tuos," can advance any reasonable pretensions for their assertion that they can read in the furrows of the palm the future destiny of its master.

148. Furrow in Palm.—The only furrow in the palm useful as a surgical landmark is that which runs transversely across its lower third, and is well seen when the fingers are slightly bent. This transverse furrow corresponds pretty nearly with the metacarpal joints of the fingers, with the upper limit of the synovial sheaths of the flexor tendons of the fingers (that of the little finger excepted (148) ); also with the splitting of the palmar fascia into its four slips. The transverse metacarpal ligament lies in the same line with it. Again, a little below this furrow, the digital arteries bifurcate to run along the opposite sides of the fingers.

149. Interdigital Folds.—By pressing upon the interdigital folds of skin, we can feel the transverse ligament of the fingers, which prevents their too wide separation. The skin of these folds is much thinner on the dorsal than the palmar aspect; hence deep-seated abscesses in the palm very frequently burst on the back of the hand.

150. Digital Furrows.—Concerning the transverse furrows on the palmar surface of the fingers, notice that the first furrows, close to the palm, do not correspond with the metacarpal joints. The second and third furrows do correspond with their respective joints.

The slight depression observable between the ball of the thumb and that of the little finger corresponds with the metacarpal joints. The second and third furrows do correspond with their respective joints.

151. Palmar Arterial Arches.—In opening abscesses in the palm, it is important to bear in mind the position of the large arterial arches which lie beneath the palmar fascia. The line of the superficial palmar arch crosses the palm about the junction of the upper with the lower two-thirds—that is, in the line of the thumb separated widely from the fingers. From this, the digital arteries run straight between the shafts of the metacarpal bones towards the clefts of the fingers. Incisions, therefore, to let pus beneath the palmar fascia may safely be made in the lower two-thirds of the palm, provided they run in the direction of the middle line of the fingers. The deep palmar arch lies half an inch nearer the wrist than the superficial.

152. Digital Arteries.—As the digital arteries run along the sides of the fingers, the incision to open a thecal abscess should be made strictly in the middle line. It should be made not over but between the joints, since the sheath is strongest and thickest over the shafts of the phalanges, and therefore more likely to produce strangulation of the inclosed tendons.

153. Metacarpal Joint of Thumb.—The joint of the metacarpal bone of the thumb with the trapezium can be distinctly felt by tracing the dorsal surface of the bone upwards till we come to the prominence which indicates the joint at the bottom of the "tabatière anatomique." Supposing, however, there be much swelling, the knife introduced at the angle between the first and second metacarpal bones readily finds the joint if the blade be directed outwards.

154. **Sesamoid Bones.**—The sesamoid bones of the thumb can be distinctly felt. Just above them—that is, nearer to the wrist—lies the joint between the metacarpal bone and the first phalanx. We should remember the position of these bones in amputation at this joint. *Mutatis mutandis* the same observations apply to the sesamoid bones of the great toe.

The extensor tendon of the last joint of the thumb crosses the apex of the first interosseous space. Under the tendon, and in the angle between the bones, we feel the radial artery just before it sinks into the palm.

155. **Subcutaneous Veins.**—The veins on the back of the hand, and their arrangement in the form of arches which receive the digital veins, is sufficiently obvious. The number and arrangement of the arches may vary, but in all hands it is interesting to notice that the veins from the fingers run up between the knuckles and are out of harm's way.

156. **Interosseous Arteries.**—Since the dorsal interosseous arteries, like the palmar, run along the interosseous space, incisions to let out pus should always be made along the lines of the metacarpal bones.

157. **Digital Bursae.**—Small subcutaneous bursae are sometimes developed over the knuckles and the backs of the joints of the fingers. They often become enlarged and unseemly in persons of a rheumatic or gouty tendency.

158. **Knuckles and Digital Joints.**—The three rows of projections called "the knuckles" are formed by the proximal bones of the several joint; thus the first row is formed by the ends of the metacarpals; the second by the ends of the first phalanges and so forth. In amputations of the fingers it is well to remember that in all cases the line of the joints is a little in advance of the knuckles, that is, nearer the end of the fingers.

Long and graceful fingers, coupled with thickness and breadth of the sentient pulp at their ends, and too great arching of the nails, have been regarded ever since the days of Hippocrates, as not unlikely indications of a tendency to pulmonary disease.

**PALPATION BY THE RECTUM.**

The following report is from Mr. Walsham, one of the Demonstrators of Anatomy, who having a small hand (somewhat less than seven and a half inches round), has lately had opportunites, in St. Bartholomew's Hospital, of introducing it up the rectum, in the living subject, for the purpose of diagnosis:

"It is possible to introduce the hand (if small) into the rectum; in many cases into the sigmoid flexure, and in rare instances into the descending colon.

"Once beyond the sphincter, the hand enters a capacious sac, and the following important parts can be felt through its walls:

"Through the anterior wall the hand first recognizes the prostate, which feels like a moderately large chestnut. Immediately behind the prostate, the vesiculae seminales may be distinguished as two softish masses situated one on either side of the middle line. Internal to them, the whip-cord-like feel of the vasa deferentia can be readily traced over the bladder to the sides of the pelvis.

"The bladder is easily recognized, when moderately distended, as a soft fluctuating tumor behind the prostate; when empty it cannot be distinguished from the intestines, which then descend between the rectum and the pubes. The arch of the pubes can well be defined when the bladder is empty.

"Through the posterior wall of the bowel the coccyx and sacrum can be felt, the curve of the sacrum being readily followed by the hand.

"The projecting spine of the ischium on each side of the pelvis is a valuable landmark. From this point the outlines of the greater and lesser sacro-ischiatric foramina can be traced by the fingers; and any new growth, encroaching on the pelvic cavity through these apertures, could be easily detected.

"If the hand be now pushed farther up the gut, the promontory of the sacrum
is reached; the pulsation of the iliac vessels becomes manifest, and the course of the external iliac can be traced along the brim of the pelvis to the crural arch, the loose attachments of the rectum permitting very free movement in this direction. The internal iliac artery can also be followed to the upper part of the great sacro-ischiatric foramen.

"By semi-rotatory movement, and alternately flexing and extending the fingers, the hand can gradually be insinuated into the commencement of the sigmoid flexure. In the sigmoid flexure the fingers can explore the whole of the lower part of the abdomen, the loose attachment of this portion of the gut permitting the hand to travel freely over the iliac and hypogastric regions.

"The parts that can here be felt are the bifurcation of the aorta, the division of the common iliac arteries, the iliac fossa, and the crest of the ilium.

"In the female, the uterus in the middle line, and the ovaries on either side, can be readily distinguished.

"In the introduction of the hand into the rectum, in a patient under chloroform, the dilatation of the sphincter ani should be very gradual: first two fingers, then four, and finally the thumb should be passed. It is necessary to use considerable force, and unless care be taken, not only the integumentary edge of the anus, but the sphincter itself, may be lacerated. The introduction is facilitated by the application of the other hand upon the abdomen.

"When the dilatation has been gradual and the hand not too large, no incontinence of feces and no very considerable amount of pain has resulted.

"Dr. G. Simon, in a paper in the 'Archiv für Clinische Chirurgie,' states that repeated dilatation of the anus to its maximum does not destroy its contractile power; that he has often made as many as five examinations of the same rectum; that in clinical cases he has always permitted one or two of those present to repeat the examination, and that in no instance has permanent incontinence of feces been the result.

"We have, however, been informed on reliable authority that permanent incontinence of feces has occasionally followed these repeated examinations.

"What sized hand can be introduced with safety? Dr. Simon states that it ought not to exceed nine inches in circumference.'"

Lastly, we think it right to insist upon the important fact that, in some subjects, even a small hand cannot be passed up the rectum beyond the reflection of the peritoneum over the second part of the gut. In such instances the peritoneum offers a resistance like a tight garter, and prevents the further advance of the hand without great risk of laceration of the parts.  

EXAMINATION PER VAGINAM.

For this report I am indebted to Dr. Godson, Assistant Physician-Acoucheur, St. Bartholomew's Hospital:—

"The finger introduced into the vagina comes upon the carunculæ myrtiformes, which are vascular membranous processes independent of the hymen, variable in number, size, and form. It also feels the transverse ridges known as 'rugs.'"

"Along the anterior wall of the vagina the finger readily detects the track of the urethra, which feels like a prominent cord and forms an excellent guide to the orifice of the meatus urinarius in passing a catheter. This orifice is indicated by a slight semicircular prominence, situated about one-third of an inch above the orifice of the vagina. Behind the urethra the finger comes upon the posterior wall of the bladder. But the bladder is not perceptible, as

2 For further information on this subject, see a paper by Mr. Walsham, in St. Bartholomew's Hospital Reports, vol. xii.
such, to the touch unless distended. With a catheter previously introduced it is much more readily explored.

"The septum between the vagina and the rectum is so thin that, should the rectum contain fecal matter, its presence becomes at once apparent to the finger.

"The cervix uteri is felt protruding from the roof of the vagina in a direction downwards and backwards—that is, in a line from the umbilicus to the coccyx. The os uteri is felt, small and round, in the centre of the cervix. The posterior lip feels a little lower than the anterior. The cul-de-sac formed by the vagina in front and behind the cervix should be perfectly elastic to the touch, and not communicate the sensation of a resisting body. Any resistance here bespeaks an abnormal condition.

"The bony landmarks within reach of a finger, or perhaps two, in a woman who has not borne a child, are the symphysis pubis, the rami of the pubes and ischia. The coccyx may also be felt, but not without exerting much pressure on the posterior wall of the vagina, which gives considerable pain. If the promontory of the sacrum can be felt, it is a sign that the conjugate diameter of the pelvis is abnormal.

"The finger in the rectum can detect almost everything which has been mentioned in connection with the vagina. The shape and direction of the cervix uteri are almost as perceptible, and the posterior wall of the uterus can be examined. The peritoneal fold termed recto-vaginal (Douglas's space) can also be well explored, and anything abnormal detected in this direction—a point of great importance in the diagnosis of diseases and displacements of the uterus.

"The ovary in its normal state and position cannot be detected by the touch even with the hand firmly pressed on the hypogastrium. If a movable body be felt through the vaginal roof on one side of the cervix, if this body be exquisitely tender and recede at once from the finger, it is an ovary in a state of prolapse.

"The fundus of a healthy unimpregnated uterus never rises above the level of the brim of the pelvis, and cannot therefore be felt by pressing the hand on the hypogastrium.

"The direction of the uterus is subject to changes which cannot be looked upon as abnormal. The fundus may be thrown backwards by a distended bladder, or forwards by a distended rectum. The axis of its cavity is not a straight but a curved line; and uterine sounds should be shaped to suit it."

INDEX.1

ABDOMEN, 761
apertures in, 762
boundaries of, 762
landmarks of, 928
lymphatics of, 596
manipulation of, 931
muscles of, 385
regions of, 762
viscera of, 762, 931
Abdominal lines, 928
Absorbing glands. See Lymphatic Glands.
Absorptives. See Lymphatics.
Aervulus cerebr. 630
Acetabulum, 250
Acromion, 221
Actions of muscles. See each group of muscles.
Adipose tissue, 41
Air-cells, 833
Air-sacs of lung, 883
Air-tubes, 823
Alae of nose, 711
of vomer, 185
Alimentary canal, 745
development of, 120
subdivisions of, 745
See also Stomach, Intes-
tines, etc.
Allantois, 102, 850
Alveoli, formation of, 754
of lower jaw, 187
of lung, 893
of stomach, 770
of upper jaw, 178
Anom, 101
false, 102
Aneurism, motion of, 38
Amphithoraxis, 281
Amphullae of semicircular canals, 739
of tubuli lactiferi, 877
Amygdala, 756
of cerebellum, 653
Anastomosis of arteries, 463
around elbow, 514
Anderch, ganglion of, 659
Anatomy, descriptive, 131
general, 33
surgical. See Surgical Anatomy.
Aneurism of aorta, etc. See Aorta, etc.
Angle of jaw, etc. See individual bones.
Ankle-joint, 831
landmarks of, 941
relations of tendons and ves-
sels, 833
Annulo-ovalis, 804
Antihelix, 729
 fossa of, 729
Antitragus, 729
Antrum of Highmore, 177
landmarks of, 918
Anus, 896
development of, 120
landmarks of, 935
muscles of, 896
Aorta, 464
development of, 117
division of, 930
landmarks of, 930
sinuses of, 465
abdominal, 525
branches of, 526
surgical anatomy of, 525
arch of, 464
ascending part of, 465
branches of, 468
descending part of, 467
peculiarities of, 468
of branches of, 468
surgical anatomy of, 467
transverse portion of, 468
descending, 522
primitive, 117
thoracic, 522
branches of, 523
surgical anatomy of, 522
Aperture scale, 759
Aperture. See Openings, Orif-
cice, etc.
Aphthous ulcer, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
Aphthous ulcer, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
Aphthous ulcer of mouth, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
Aphthous ulcer of mouth, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
Aphthous ulcer of mouth, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
Aphthous ulcer of mouth, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
Aphthous ulcer of mouth, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
Aphthous ulcer of mouth, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
Aphthous ulcer of mouth, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
Aphthous ulcer of mouth, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
Aphthous ulcer of mouth, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
Aphthous ulcer of mouth, 340
of deltoid, 404
of external oblique, in ingui-
nal region, 879
infraespinosus, 405
of insertion, 341
of investment, 341
of occipito-frontalis, 344
pharyngeal, 760
of soft palate, 368
subcapular, 404
suprahyoid, 362
supraspinous, 405
1 Each Artery, Canal, Ligament, Muscle, Nerve, etc., is placed in the Index under the head of Artery, Muscle, Nerve, etc.; Carotid artery, for example, being found under Artery, carotid; Median nerve, under Nerve, median, etc.
INDEX.

Artery or Arteries—
  peculiarities of, 473
  surgical anatomy of, 474
  external, 475
  surgical anatomy of, 475
  internal, 489
  surgical anatomy of, 491
carpal of radial, 517
  of ulnar, 521
  posterior of radial, 517
  of ulnar, 521
  of cavernous body, 542, 858
  centralis modiolis, 740
  retinae, 495, 722
  cerebellaris, 501, 502
cerebellar, 495, 502
cervical, ascending, 503
deep, 605
  superficial, 504
cerebellar, anterior, 495
  posterior, 502
ciliary, 495, 725
  anterior, 494, 725
  long, 494, 725
  short, 493, 725
circle of Willis, 502
  circumflex of arm, 510
  iliac, 546
  superficial, 550, 878
depth, 551
  internal, 551
  cochief, 744
  coccygeal, 543
cellae axis, 526
colica dextra, 551
  media, 531
  sinistra, 531
  comes neri iochiadii, 543
  phrenici, 504
  communicating, anterior, of brain, 495
  posterior of brain, 495
  communicating, branch, of
dorsalis pedis, 559
  of ulnar, 521
coronaria ventriculi, 527
coronary of heart, 469
  inferior, 479
  left, 469
  of lip, upper, 480
  of lip, lower, 479
  right, 469
  superior, 480
  of corpus caverno of
  cremasteric, 545, 861
crico-thyroid, 476
  cystic, 529
  deep branch of ulnar, 521
  cervical, 505
do palm arch, 515
temporal, 483
defereent, 538
dental, inferior, 484
  superior, 485
descending palatine, 486
digital, of plantar, 562
  of ulnar, 521
  landmarks of, 549
dorsal, of lumbar, 533
  of penis, 542
  See also Artery, dorsalis.

Artery or Arteries—
  dorsalis hallucis, 559
  indica, 518
  lingua, 477
  pedis, 557
  branches of, 558
  landmarks of, 543
  peculiarities of, 558
  surgical anatomy of, 558
  penis, 542
  pollicis, 517
  scapula, 510
  epigastric, 545, 859
  landmarks of, 531
  peculiarities of, 546
  relation of, to external
  ring, 529
to internal ring, 883
  superior, 504
  superficial, 550, 878
  ethmoidal, 493
  external carotid, &c. See Artery, carotid, &c.
facial, 477
  landmarks of, 916
  peculiarities of, 480
  surgical anatomy of, 480
  transverse, 482
  femoral, 548
  branches of, 550
  compression of, 938
  landmarks of, 938
  peculiarities of, 548
  surgical anatomy of, 548
deep, 550
  frontalis, 493
  gastrica, 527, 529
  gastro-duodenalis, 528
  gastro-epiploica dextra, 528
  sinistra, 529
  glutaeal, 543
  inferior, 543
  landmarks of, 939
  heliciana, 859
  hemorrhoidal, external, 541
  inferior, 541
  middle, 539
  superior, 531
  hepatic, 537, 786, 789
  hyaloid, 113
  hyoid branch of lingual, 477
  of superior thyroid, 476
  hypogastriae, in fetus, 537.
dorsalis, 819, 818
  ileo-colic, 550
  iliac, 555, 543
  circumflex, 546
  common, 535
  peculiarities of, 535
  surgical anatomy of, 456
  external, 544
  surgical anatomy of, 444
  internal, 537
  at birth, 537
  peculiarities of, 538
  in fetus, 537
  surgical anatomy of, 538
  iliolumbar, 543
  inferior cerebellaris, coronaria.
  &c. See Artery, cerebel-
lar, coronaria, &c.
### Artery or Arteries—
- infraorbital, 485
- innominate, 470
- peculiarities of, 470
- surgical anatomy of, 470
- intercostal, 504, 505, 523
- anterior, 504, 523
- dorsal, 524
- superior, 504
- interlobular of kidney, 845
- internal auditory, calcaean, &c. See Artery, auditory, calcaean, &c.
- interosseous of ulnar, 520
- landmarks of, 947
- dorsal of foot, 558
- of hand, 517
- landmarks of, 950
- of radial, 517
- labial, inferior, 479
- lachrymal, 492
- laryngeal, 503
- inferior, 478
- superior, 478
- lateral sacral, 543
- spinal, 501
- lateralis nasi, 480
- lingual, 477
- lumbar, 553, 543
- malleolar, 556
- mammary, landmarks of, 923
- internal, 504
- masseteric, 485
- maxillary, internal, 483
- median of forearm, 520
- of spinal cord, 501
- mediastinal, 504
- posterior, 528
- meningeal, from ascending pharyngeal, 482
- anterior, from carotid, 492
- inferior, from occipital, 481
- middle, from internal maxillary, 484
- landmarks of, 915
- posterior, from vertebral, 501
- small, from internal maxillary, 484
- mesenteric, inferior, 531
- superior, 529
- metacarpal, 517
- metatarsal, 558
- middle cerebral, 495
- sacral, 534
- musculo-phrenic, 504
- mylo-hyoid, 495
- nasal, 486
- of nasal fossa, 713
- of ophthalmic, 493
- of septum, 480
- nutrient of femur, 545
- of fibula, 561
- of humerus, 514
- of radius, 520
- of tibia, 561
- of ulna, 520
- obturator, 559
- external, 540
- internal, 540
- peculiarities of, 540

### Artery or Arteries—
- relations of, in hernia, 893
- occipital, 480
- ophthalmic, 503, 523
- ophthalmomotoric, 117
- orbital, 485
- ovarian, 533, 872
- palatine, ascending, 479
- descending, 486
- inferior, 479
- of pharynx, 486
- posterior, 486
- palmar arch, deep, 515
- superficial, 519
- interosseous, 518
- palpebral, 493
- pancreatic, 529
- pancreaticis magna, 529
- pancreaticis parvum, 529
- pancreas-duodenalis, 528
- inferior, 530
- perforating arteries, from mammary artery, 504
- from plantar, 562
- from profunda, 551
- from radial, 518
- pericardic, 504, 523
- perineal, superficial, 541
- transverse, 541
- peroneal, 560
- anterior, 561
- pharyngeal, ascending, 481
- phrenic, 533
- superior, 504
- planter external, 561
- internal, 561
- landmarks of, 944
- popliteal, 552, 558
- branches of, 554
- landmarks of, 940, 942
- peculiarities of, 553
- surgical anatomy of, 553
- posterior auricular, carpal, &c. See Artery, auricular, carpal, &c.
- princeps cervicae, 481
- pollicis, 518
- profunda of arm, inferior, 514
- superior, 514
- cervicae, 504
- femoris, 550
- pterygo, 485
- pterygo-palatine, 486
- pubis, 545
- pudic, accessory, 540
- external, 550
- deep, 550
- inferior, 550
- landmarks of, 939
- superficial, 550, 878
- superior, 550
- internal, 540
- peculiarities of, 540
- in female, 542
- pulmonary, 563, 804, 833
- pyloric, 527
- radial, 515
- branches of, 517
- landmarks of, 948
- peculiarities of, 516

### Artery or Arteries—
- surgical anatomy of, 516
- radialis indicus, 518
- ranine, 477
- recurrent interosseous, 520
- radial, 517
- tibial, 556
- ulnar, 520
- renal, 532, 843
- sacra media, 534
- sacral, lateral, 543
- middle, 534
- scapular, posterior, 504
- sciatic, 542
- sigmoid, 581
- spermatic, 532, 861
- sphen-opalatine, 486
- spinal, anterior, 501
- from intercostal, 524
- lateral, 501
- in loins, 543
- from lumbar, 533
- median, 501
- in neck, 501
- posterior, 501
- in thorax, 223
- from vertebral, 501
- splenic, 529, 797
- sterno-mastoid, 476
- stylo-mastoid, 481
- subclavian, 496
- branches of, 500
- landmarks of, 922
- left, 497
- peculiarities of, 498
- right, 496
- surgical anatomy of, 498
- sublingual, 477
- submaxillary, 479
- submental, 479
- subscapular, 510
- superficialis volee, 517
- superior cerebellar, coronary, &c. See Artery, cerebellar, coronary, &c.
- supraorbital, 493
- supraprenal, 532
- suprascapular, 508
- sural, 554
- tarsal, 558
- temporal, 482
- anterior, 482
- deep, 485
- landmarks of, 916
- middle, 482
- posterior, 482
- surgical anatomy of, 482
- thoracic, acromial, 509
- alar, 510
- long, 509
- superior, 509
- thoracic aorta, 522
- of thyroid gland, 835
- thyroid, inferior, 502
- middle, 470
- superior, 476
- surgical anatomy of, 476
- thyroid axis, 502
- tibial, anterior, 555
- branches of, 556
- landmarks of, 942
Artery or Arteries—
peculiarities of, 556
surgical anatomy of, 556
posterior, 559
branches of, 560
landmarks of, 942
peculiarities of, 559
surgical anatomy of, 560
recurrent, 558
tonsillar, 473, 503
tracheal, 503
transverse of basilic, 502
facial, 482
transversalis colli, 503
tympanic, from internal caro-
tid, 491
from internal maxillary, 483
ulnar, 518
branches of, 520
landmarks of, 948
peculiarities of, 519
relations of, 519
surgical anatomy of, 520
recurrent, anterior, 520
posterior, 520
umbilical in fetus; 812, 813
uterine, 599, 872
vaginal, 539
of vagina, 539
vasa aberrantia of arm, 512
brevia, 529
intestini tennis, 530
vertebral, 500
primitive, 117
vesical, inferior, 539
middle, 539
superior, 538
vestibular, 744
vidian, 486
Arterioles rectae, 845
Arthrond, 281
Articulations—
acromio-clavicular, 506
ankle, 531
astragalo-calcanean, 334
astragalo-scapheid, 534
atlo-axis, 288
calcaneo-astragalo, 334
calcano-cuboid, 535
calcano-scaphoid, 536
carpal, 516
carpometacarpal, 519
chondral, 299
classification of, 280
coccygeal, 802
costo-clavicular, 305
costo-axial, 297
costo-transverse, 296
costo-vertebral, 295
ear, 810
femoro-tibial, 825
of foot, 331
hand, 316
hip, 822
immovable, 280
intercondylar, 299
knee, 323
larynx, 816
lower extremity, 822
metacarpal, 321
metacarpo-phalangeal, 321
articulations—
metatarsal, 838
metatarso-phalangeal, 838
mixed, 261
movable, 281
movements of, 284
occipito-atlaid, 291
occipito-axoid, 292
of pelvis, 800
with spine, 299
phalanges, 322, 338
pubic, 803
radio-carpal, 815
radio-ulnar, inferior, 314
middle, 813
superior, 313
radio-ulnar, superior, 313
radio-ulnar, inferior, 314
middle, 813
superior, 313
sacro-coxigeal, 820
sacro-iliac, 800
sacro-acetic, 301
sacro-vertebral, 299
scapulo-clavicular, 306
scapulo-humeral, 308
shoulder, 808
of spine with cranium, 201
sterno-clavicular, 304
landmarks of, 921
of sternum, 299
tarsal, 354
tarsometatarsal, 339
tempo-maxillary, 292
tibio-fibular, inferior, 831
middle, 331
superior, 830
of the trunk, 285
to the thoracic, 736
of upper extremity, 804
of vertebral column, 285
wrist, 815
Arytenoide cartilage, 815
Astragalus, 270
Atlas, 134
development of, 141
Atrabiliary capsules, 847
auricle of ear, 729. See Pinna.
of heart, 801, 802
appendix of, 802, 806
left, 806
openings in, 803, 806
right, 802
septum of, 802, 806
sinus of, 802, 806
valves in, 803, 805
Axe of pelvis, 254
Axilla, 505
dissection of, 398
landmarks of, 945
surgical anatomy of, 505
Axis, 135
development of, 141
central, of cochlea, 739
cerebro-spinal, 602
collicle, 522
thyroid, 502
Axis-cylinder of nerve tubes, 62
Back, furrows of, 926
landmarks of, 926
muscles of, 373
Ball and socket joint. See En-
arthrodia.
Band, furrowed, 633
Bartholine, duct of, 759
gland of, 868
Basement membrane, 93
Bauhin, valve of, 778
Beales researches on the liver, 788
on motor nerves, 78
Beauxis and Bouchaud, table of
development, 129
Bertiini, column of, 840
Bicuspid teeth, 748
Bioplasm, 58
Bladder, 849
arteries of, 853
base of, 850
body of, 850
cervix of, 850
female, 869
relations of, 869
fundus of, 850
interior of, 852
landmarks of, 854
ligaments of, 850, 907
lymphatics of, 598, 853
muscles of, 851
neck of, 850
nerves of, 853
structure of, 851
summit of, 850
trigone of, 852
uvula of, 852
veins of, 853
Blasemata, 38, 752
Blastoderm, 56
Blastodermal membrane, 96
Blood, 38
circulation of, in adult, 805
in fetus, 812
corpuscles, 33
development of, 117
crystals, 38
disks, 33
gases of, 35
general anatomy of, 33
globules, 33
Bochdalek, ganglion of, 653
on triticeo-glossus, 821
Body, growth of, 94
Malpighian, 840, 841
of tooth, 747
of vertebra, 133
Bone, animal constituent of, 50
apophyses of, 56
articulare lamella of, 279
canaliculi of, 49
cancellous tissue of, 46
cells, 48
chemical analysis of, 50
compact tissue of, 46
descriptive anatomy of, 131
development of, 81
dioplos of, 131
earthly constituent of, 50
eminences and depressions of,
132
epiphyseal of, 55
general anatomy of, 46
growth of, 84
Haversian canals of, 48
systems of, 49
spaces of, 49
INDEX.

Bone—
inorganic constituent of, 50
lacuna of, 49
lamellae of, 49
lymphatics of, 48
marrow of, 47
medullary canal of, 47
membrane of, 47
microscopic structure of, 48
nerves of, 48
number of, 131
organic constituent of, 50
ossification of, 51
osteocentral number of, 55
perforating fibres of, 49
periosteum of, 47
spongy tissue of, 46
structure of, 46
vessels of, 47
astragalus, 270
atlant, 134
axis, 135
calcaneum, 267
carpal, 235
clavicle, 215
coccyx, 146
cranial, 149
cuboid, 269
cuneiform of carpus, 226
tarsus, 272
tibia, 262
trapezium, 238
trapezoid, 239
triangular, 173
turbinate, inferior, 184
middle, 171
superior, 171
tympanic, 72
ulna, 228
unciform, 240
unguis, 179
vertebra dentata, 136
prominens, 136
vertebrae, cervical, 133
coccygeal, 142
dorsal, 137
lumbar, 139
sacral, 142
vomer, 185
wormian, 173
Bowman on structure of kidney, 841
Brachis of optic lobes, 631
Brain, 61, 606, 609.
See also Cerebrum.
archnoid of, 608
base of, 619
development of, 110
dura mater of, 606
interior of, 622
lateral ventricles of, 624
landmarks of, 915
levels of, 915
lobes of, 918
membranes of, 606
subdivision into parts, 609
upper surface of, 615
weight of, 610
Breasts, 876
Bridge of nose, 174
Brim of pelvis,
Bronchi, 823
mode of subdivision in lung, 831
septum of, 823
structure of, in lobules of lung, 831
Brunner's glands, 775
Bubonococele, 885
Bulb, artery of, 541, 901
of corpus cavernosum, 857
of corpus spongiosum, 858
of testis, 638
Buboes, 869
Bulbs of fornix, 621, 628
Burns, ligament of, 889
Burse, carpal, 948
digital, 950
gluteal, 440
Bums—
mucosae, 280
of ham, 553
of olecranon, 947
patellar, 940
plantar, 943
popliteal, 940
of shoulder, 308
synovial, 280
of wrist, 948
Buttocks, folds of, 939
landmarks of, 538
Cecum, 777
Calamus scriptorius, 612
Calcaneum, 267
Calices of kidney, 839, 846
Callender on hernia, 889
Camper, ligament of, 900
Canal or Canals—
accessory palatine, 182
alimentary, 745
for Arnold's nerve, 164
auditory, 731
carotid, 162, 163
central of modioli, 740
for chorda tympani, 161, 728
of cholera, 740
crural, 891
dental, anterior, 176
inferior, 168
posterior, 176
ethmoidal, 198
femoral, 891
of Fontana, 718
Haversian, of bone, 48
of Huguet, 161, 645, 733
of Hunter, 547
landmarks of, 638
incisive, 187
incisor, 178
infraorbital, 175, 176
ingual, 882
landmarks of, 931
for Jacobson's nerve, 163
lachrymal, 176, 180, 728
malar, 181
medullary, 110
nasal, 174
naso-palatine, 185
of Nuck, 866, 876
palatine, accessory, 181, 107
anterior, 178, 137
posterior, 176, 177, 197
of Petit, 724
portal, 785
pterygoid, 167
pterygo-palatine, 167
sacral, 145
semitricular 739.
See Semi-
circular canals.
spasmatic, 882
spinal, 149
of spinal cord, 68, 110
spiral, of cochlea, 740
of modioli, 740
temporal-malar, 181
for tensor tympani, 164, 734
vertebral, 149
Vidian, 168
of Wirsung, 793
INDEX.

Canaliculi of bone, 49
of eyeballs, 728
Canalis cochleae, 741
membranae, 741
reuniens, 742
spiralis modiolii, 740
Cancellous tissue, 46
Canthi of eyeballs, 725
Capillaries, pulmonary, 883
Capsular ligament. See Ligament.
Capsule, atrialillary, 847
of Glisson, 786
de lens, 728
in fetus, 118, 723
of Malpighian bodies of kidney, 840, 841
supra-renal, 847
Caput cornu posterior, 66
gallipagos, 853
Cardia of stomach, 767
Carpus, 235
articulations of, 816
development of, 244
landmarks of, 947
Cartilage or Cartilages, 43
articular, 44
arytenoid, 815
de uricle, 729
de bronchi, 823, 832
calcifications of, 51
cells of, 43
cellular, 43
circumferential, 46
connecting, 45
costal, 44, 214
cricoid, 815, 930
cuneiform, 816
de ear, 729
densiform, 209
de epiglottis, 816
fibro-, 45. See Fibro-cartilage.
general anatomy of, 43
hyaline, 44
interarticular, 45
intercellular substance of, 44
introrseous, 44
de knee, 328
de larynx, 814
de nose, 711
de pinna, 729
decalbeal, 725
permanent, 43
reticular, 46
de Santorini, 816
seminular of knee, 328
de septum of nose, 711
seasomal, 289, 711
spongy, 44
stratiform, 46
structure of, 45
tarsal, 726
temporary, 48, 44
tyroid, 814
de trachea, 823
de Wrisberg, 810
xiphoïd, 299
yellow, 46
Cartilagines minores of nose, 711
Carilago triticea, 817
Caruncle, lachrymal, 727
Caruncula lacrymalis, 727
mammillaris, 638
Caruncula myrtiformes, 808
Casseterian ganglion, 648
Cauda equina, 608, 609
Catherer, rules for introducing, 936
Cava, vena. See Vena cava.
Cavernous body, 857
artery of, 542, 858
cavities of reserve of teeth, 755
cavity, central of lateral ventricle, 625
cotyloid, 250
digital of fifth ventricle, 623
de lateral ventricle, 625
glenoid, 160, 222
de larynx, 818
de pelvis, 253
sigmoid, 230, 234
Cells, 38
de bone, 48
cleavage of, 94
de Corti, 742
de Deiters, 742
differentiation of, 94
ethmoidal, 158, 171

giant, 54
hearing, 73
hepatic, 787
mastoid, 161, 794
myeloid, 54
of nerves, 61
olfactory, 73
segmentation of, 94
sight, 75
sphenoidal, 166
taste, 73
wandering, 41
Cellular tissue, 39
lymphoid, 41
mucoid, 41
retiform, 41
Cement of teeth, 751, 753
formation of, 751, 753
Centres of ossification, 51
Centrum ovale majus, 623
minus, 622
Cerebelli incisura anterior, 632
posterior, 632
Cerebellum, 610, 632
commisures of, 632, 633
corpus dentatum of, 634
fissures of, 634
ganglion of, 635
hemispheres of, 632
lamine of, 632
lobes of, 634. See Lobes.
lobulus centralis of, 634
peduncles of, 635
structure of, 634
valley of, 633
ventricle of, 635
weight of, 632
Cerebro-spinal axis, 604
fluid, 609
Cerebrum, 609
Cerebrum—base of, 615, 619
commisures of, 630
convolutions of, 615
crura of, 628
fibres of, 631
fissures of, 619
general arrangement of, 622
grey matter of, 763
hemispheres of, 615
interior of, 622
labia of, 622
lobes of, 616
middle, 616, 619
frontal, 616, 619
occipital, 616
parietal, 616
tempo-sphenoidal, 616
peduncles of, 621
structure of, 631
sulci of, 615
under surface of, 615, 619
upper surface of, 615
ventricles of, 624, 630
weight of, 610
Cervix cornu, 66
of penis, 856
uteri, 44, 871
Chambers of eye, 722
Cheeks, muscles of, 746
structure of, 746
Cheek, landmarks of, 922
muscles of, 399
Chiasm of optic nerve, 639
Chondroïd, 46
Chorda dorsalis, 98, 106
tympani, 644, 738
Chordae tendineae of left ventricle, 805
of right, 805
vocalis, 919
Willisii, 571
Chorion, 96, 102
shaggy, 108
Choroid coat of eye, 716, 717
plexus of fourth ventricle, 636
de lateral ventricle, 625
de third ventricle, 629
Chyle, 37
vessels, 774
Chylif receptaculum, 589
Chyliferous vessels, 588
Cilia, 727
Ciliary processes, 718
Circle of Willis, 502
Circulation of blood in adults, 805
in fetus, 812
Circumduction, 284
Cistern of Pecquet, 589
Clarke, Lockhart, researches on brain and spinal cord, 65
on cranial nerves, 663
Clavicle, 215
articulations of, 218
attachments of muscles to, 218
development of, 218
fracture of. See Fracture.
landmarks of, 923, 944
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clavicle—</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peculiarities of, 218</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleavage of cells, 94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clitoris, 860</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frenum of, 868</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lymphatics of, 598</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muscles of, 868, 900</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prepuce of, 868</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloacal cavity, 126</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Club-foot, 453</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coccyx, 146</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>articulations of, 147</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attachment of muscles to, 147</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>development of, 147</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cochlea, 789</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arteries of, 740, 744</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>central axis of, 739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupola of, 739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denticle of lamina of, 741</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hamular process of, 741</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infundibulum of, 739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamina spiralis of, 739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membranous zone of, 740</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modiolus of, 739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nerves of, 744</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>osseous zone of, 740</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scala tympani of, 741</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vestibulum of, 741</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spiral canal of, 740</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veins of, 744</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collateral circulation. See Surgical Anatomy of each artery.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collecting tubes of kidney, 842</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colles's fracture, 428</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colon, 779</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ascending, 779</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>descending, 779</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigmoid flexure of, 779</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transverse, 779</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colotomy, landmarks for, 933</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columella cochlæae, 739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column of Bertini, 840</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cortical, of kidney, 840</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterior vesicular of spinal cord, 66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columna nasi, 710</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columnae carnes of left ventricle, 808</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of right ventricle, 805</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papillares, 805, 808</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columns of abdominal ring, 880</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of medulla oblongata, 610</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of spinal cord, 605</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of vagina, 871</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissa nervi ischiadic, 543</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrenici, 604</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissura brevis of cerebelum, 638</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simplex of cerebellum, 622</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissure of flocculus, 633</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optic, 166, 621, 639</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commisures of brain, anterior, 630</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle, 630</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterior, 630</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septa, 630</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of spinal cord, gray, 606</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white, 606</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact tissue of bone, 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conarium, 630</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concha, 729</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condyles of humerus, 227</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>landmarks of, 946</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cone-granules of retina, 721</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coni vasculosi, 863</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjunctiva, 727</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connective tissue, 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conus arterioso, 804</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convolution, ascending parietal, 617</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angular, 617</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of corpus callosum, 616</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of longitudinal fissure, 616</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supraorbital, 616</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convolutions of cerebrum, annectant, 618, 619</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cortical substance of, 615</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>structure of, 64, 615</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white matter of, 615</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cord, genital, 126</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spermatic. See Spermatic cord.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spinal. See Spinal cord.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umbilical, 104</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cords, vocal, 815, 819</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corium, 84, 92, 752</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornea, 715</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arteries and nerves of, 716</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elastic laminae of, 715</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proper substance of, 715</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>structure of, 715</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornicula laryngis, 816</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornu Ammonis, 627</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornu of coecyx, 147</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of fascia lata, 889</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of hyoid bone, 206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of lateral ventricle, 652, 676</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of sulcus, 144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of thyroid cartilage, 814</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corona glandis, 856</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radiata, 64, 652</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpora alibantia, 621</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arantii, 805, 807</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cavernosa clitoridis, 868</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penis, 857</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geniculata, 631</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lutea, 875</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ovaria, 611</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyramidalis, 611</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quadrigemina, 631</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restiformia, 611, 612</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>striata, 622, 625</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veins of, 570</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpus coecum, 619, 623</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convolution of, 616</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genu of, 620</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peduncles of, 620, 624</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raphe of, 624</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rostrum of, 623</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventricles of, 622</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cavernosum, 857</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bulb of, 857</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dentatum of cerebellum, 634, 635</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of olivary body, 612</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denticleatum, 634, 635</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geniculatum externum, 631</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internum, 631</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fimbriatum, 626, 627, 628</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highmorianum, 862</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luteum, 875</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpus—</td>
<td>857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spongiosum, 857</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bulb of, 858</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>striatum, 622, 625</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also Corpora.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpuscles, blood, 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malpighian, of kidney, 796</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of spleen, 795</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pacinian, 72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tactile, 71, 86</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taste, 709</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white, 54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corti, cells of, 742</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membrane of, 741</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>organ of, 741</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rods of, 741</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotunnus, nerve of, 658</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotyledons, 104</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coverings of hernia. See Hernia. of testis. See Testis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cowper's glands, 856, 901</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranial nerves. See Nerves.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranium. See Skull.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bones of, 150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>development of, 172</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cremaster, 860, 865, 881</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crest, frontal, 157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of ilium, 247</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasal, 174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occipital, 150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal, 152</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of pubes, 249</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of tuba, 263</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turbinated, of palate, 182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of superior maxillary, 177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cricoid cartilage, 815</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>landmarks of, 930</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crista galli, 170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illi, 247</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pubis, 249</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crown of tooth, 747</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creta cerebelli, 635</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cerebri, 628</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of clitoriis, 868</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of corpora cavernosa, 857</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of diaphragm, 396</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of fornix, 628</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crus penis, 858</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crusta petrosa of teeth, 750, 751</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crypts of Lieberkühn, 775</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystalline lens. See Lens, crystalline.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystalline, blood, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuboid bone, 269</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuneiform bone of foot, 272</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external, 273</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal, 272</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle, 273</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of hand, 236</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cup, ocular, 114</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cupola of cochlea, 739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curling on testes, 866</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curvatures of spine, 148</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuspitate teeth, 748</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutaneous nerves. See Nerves, cutaneous.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuticle, 85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuticula dentis, 752</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutis vera, 74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuvier, sinuses of, 119</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX.

FACE, arteries of, 478
bones of, 149, 174
landmarks of, 915
lymphatics of, 591
muscles of, 842
nerves of, 642
veins, 565
Falloposian tubes, 876
development of, 125
fimbriated extremity of, 873
lymphatics of, 598
nerves of, 876
structure of, 874
vessels of, 876
Falx cerebelli, 608
cerebr., 608
Fangs of teeth, 747
Fascia or Fasciae, 340
anal, 906
aneurysmatic, 341
of arm, 407
cervical, deep, 357
superficial, 356
costo-coracoideus, 401
of cranial region, 342
cremasteric, 860, 882
criciform, 405, 885
deep, 841
of arm, 407
of forearm, 410
of leg, 446
of thorax, 399
dentals, 827
dorsal, of foot, 547
fibro-areolar, 340
of foot, 453
of forearm, 410
of hand, 420
iliac, 430
infundibuliform, 883
of inguinal region, 878
intercolinarum, 387, 860, 880
intercostal, 392
intermuscular, of arm, 407
of foot, 454
of thigh, 433
ischio-rectalis, 896, 906
lata, 433, 889
falciiform process of, 889
iliac portion of, 445
pubic portion of, 434
of leg, 445
deep, 450
lumbar, 398
lumborum, 889
of mamma, 877
of neck, 856
oburator, 906
palmar, 421
pelvic, 905
perineal, deep, 899, 900
superficial, 897
plantar, 454
landmarks of, 944
propriis of femoral hernias, 894
of spermatic cord, 860
rectus abdominis, 909
spermatic, 387, 880
subperitoneal, 889
superficial, 840
of cranial region, 842

Fascia—
of inguinal region, 878
deep layer, 879
of ischio-rectal region, 896
perineal, 857, 900
of thigh, 433
of thoracic region, 399
of upper extremity, 399
temporal, 853
of thigh, deep, 453
superficial, 432
of thorax, 399
transversalis, 882
Fasciculi graciles, 611
teretes, 612
Fasciculus olivary, 612
unciformis, 620
Fat, 41
Fauces, isthmus of, 756
pillars of, 756
Features as landmarks, 819
Fecundation of ovum, 95
Female organs of generation, 867
bulbi vestibuli, 869
caruncula myriformes, 868
citoris, 868
development of, 125, 127
fossa navicularis, 868
fourchette, 868
franum pudendi, 868
glands of Bartholin, 868
hymen, 868
labia majora, 867
minora, 868
mons veneris, 867
nymphæ, 868
prepuce clitoridis, 868
uteros, 871
vagina, 870
vestibulum, 868
vulva, 867
Femoral hernia. See Hernia, femoral.
Femur, 254
apertural of, 255
attachment of muscles to, 260
development of, 255
fracture of, 460
structure of, 259
Fenestra ovalis, 733, 740
rotunda, 733, 740
Fenestrated membrane of Henle, 76
Ferrein, pyramids of, 843
Fibre arciformes, 611, 613
transverse, 632
Fibrous, muscular, 57
Fibres, of Corti, 741
of muscle, 57
intercolinarum, 880
of nerve, 63
Tomés's, 753
Fibrillae, 62
fibrous, 69
Fibro-cartilage, 45
sacrumo-clavicular, 306
circumferential, 46
connecting, 45
interarticulare. See Interarticu-
lar fibro-cartilage.

Fibro-cartilage—
tylo-occipital, 303
interosseous, 279
intervertebral, 286
of knee, 528
of lower jaw, 294
pubic, 304
radio-ulnar, 314
sacro-occipital, 303
semilunar, 328
sterno-clavicular, 305
strapiform, 46
triangular, 314
Fibrous tissue, white, 39
yellow, 39
Fibula, 265
articulations of, 266
attachment of muscles to, 267
development of, 266
fracture of, with dislocation
of the tibia, 451
landmarks of, 933, 941
Filaments, spermatic, 865
Filum terminale of cord, 604
Fimbriae of Fallopian tube, 873
Fingers, 243
landmarks of, 850
Fissura palpebrarum, 795
Fissure, auricular, 164
calcarine, 619
calloso-marginal, 619
cerebellum, 634
cerebrum, 619
cranial bones, congenital, 173
do ductus venosus, 784
do eyelids, 725
do gall-bladder, 785
Glaserian, 160, 733
do horizontal, of cerebellum,
634
interparietal, 617
do liver, 784
longitudinal, of cerebrum, 619
do liver, 784
of lung, 829
maxillary, 177
of medulla oblongata, 610
palpebral, 725
parieto-occipital, 617
portal, 785
pterygo-maxillary, 200
of Rolando, 616
of skull, 173
sphenoid-maxillary, 200
sphenoidal, 168, 200
spinal cord, lateral, 605
median, 605
do Sylvius, 618, 620
of the trigus, 730
transverse, of cerebrum, 627
do liver, 785
umbilical, of liver, 784
for vena cava, 785
Flexure, caudal, 100
epiphysal, 100
pericranial, 779
sagmoid, 779
spenic, 779
Flocculus, 633, 634
Fluid, cerebro-spinal, 609
Foramen—
of Sinum, 720
spino-palatine, 184, 205
spino, 167, 195
sternal, 207
stylo-mastoid, 164
supra-orbital, 157
thyroid, 250
vertebral, 183
Vesali, 167
of Winlow, 765
Foramina of diaphragm, 896
external orbital, 168
of face, landmarks of, 916
incisive, 197
malar, 180
olfactory, 170
sacral, 143, 144
Thebesi, 587, 608
See also Foramen.
Forarm, arteries of, 515
bones of, 228, 233
fascia of, 410
landmarks of, 947
lymphatics of, 594
muscles of, 410
nerves of, 628
veins of, 574
Forebrain, 110
Foreskin, 857
Forearm, 562
body of, 628
bulbs of, 622, 628
curus of, 628
Forossa of antihelix, 729
canine, 175
cerebral, 192
condyloid, 151
coronoid, 227
cystid parasphenoid, 785
digastic, 161, 187, 198
digital, 256
glenoid, 160
of helix, 729
iliac, 247
infraorbital, landmarks of, 253
incisive, 175, 186
infraorbital, 219
innominate, 729
ischio-rectal, 896
jugular, 163, 164, 198
lachrymal, 158
myotiform, 175
navicular of urethra, 854
of vulva, 868
occipital, 151
olecranon, 226
olfactory, of fornice, 115
oval, 804
palatine, anterior, 178, 195
pituitary, 166
pterygoïd of sphenoid, 168
of lower jaw, 188
scaphoïd, 169
scaphoidea, 729
of skull, anterior, 192
middle, 194
posterior, 195
sphenomaxillary, 200
sublingual, 187

Forossa—
submaxillary, 187
subcapular, 218
supraclavicular, landmarks
of, 921
supraspinous, 218
temporal, 157, 159, 199
trochanteric, 256
zygomatic, 200
Foross, cranial, 192
nasal, 208, 712
vessels and nerves of, 743
Fourchette, 686
Fovea centralis retina, 720
hemisphères, 738
semi-elliptica, 739
Fracture of acromion process, 426
clavicle, 426
acromial end of, 426
centre of, 426
sternal end of, 428
Collie’s, 428
coracoid process, 426
coronoid process of ulna, 427
femur above condyles, 460
below trochanters, 460
neck of, 460
fibula, with diatoculation of tibio, 461
humerus, 426
anatomical neck, 427
shaft of, 427
surgical neck, 426
olecranon process, 427
patella, 461
Pott’s, 461
radius, 428
lower end of, 428
neck of, 428
shaft of, 428
and ulna, 428
tibia, 461
ulna, 428
Frenna of ileo-coccal valve, 779
Frenulum cerebri, 631
pudendai, 686
valve of Vicensens, 631
Frenum clitoris, 686
labii inferioris, 745
superiors, 745
linguae, 364, 708
praeputii, 856
Frontal bone, 156
articulations of, 159
attachment of muscles to, 159
development of, 159
structure of, 159
Frontal sinuses, 158
landmarks of, 914
Fundus of bladder, 850
of uterus, 871
Furrow, auriculo-ventricular, 802
digital, 949
genital, 157
interventricular, 802
Furrowed band, 633
Gaertner, duct of, 125, 876
Galen, veins of, 570, 587
INDEX.

Gall-bladder, 789
development of, 122
duct of, 790
fissure for, 785
landmarks of, 932
structure of, 790
valve of, 790

Ganglion or Ganglia—
Arnold’s, 658
of Andersch, 659
of Bochdalek, 653
cardiac, 701
carotid, 658
Cassian, 648
cephalic, 650, 696
of cerebellum, 635
cervical, inferior, 699
middle, 699
superior, 698
ciliary, 650
on circumflex nerve, 673
diaphragmatic, 702
on facial nerve, 643
of fifth nerve, 650
general anatomy of, 68
GLOSSOPHARYNGEAL, 659
IMPAR, 656, 704
inferior, 661
intercarotid, 699
on interosseous nerve, poste-
rior, 680
jugular, 659, 660
lenticular, 650
lingual, 698
lumbar, 704
lymphatic. See Lymphatic
glands.
Meckel’s, 652
mesenteric, 703
ophthalmic, 650
otic, 658
petrous, 659
pharyngeal, 699
pneumogastric, 660
of portio dura, 643
renal, 708
of Ribs, 696
roots of, 650
sacral, 704
semilunar of abdomen, 702
of fifth nerve, 648
of sympathetic, 702
solar, 703
sphenopalatine, 652
of spinal nerves, 666
spirale, 741
submaxillary, 657
suprarenal, 703
of sympathetic nerve, 696
temporal, 699
thoracic, 701
thoroid, 699
of vagus, root of, 661
trunk of, 661
of Wirasberg, 701

Ganglion corporcles, 68
Gase, congenital, of cranium, 173
Geniculate bodies, 629

Generative organs—
male. See Penis, Scrotum,
&c.
Genito-urinary organs, develop-
ment of, 122
Genital organs, 623
germinal area, 98
matter, 38
spot of ovum, 98
vesicle of ovum, 98
Gimbernat’s ligament, 386, 881, 890
Ginglymus, 282
Giralhia, organ of, 126
Gladiolus, 207
Gland or Glands—
absorptent, 82, 588
accessory of parotid, 758
aggregate, 776
agnenate, 776
arytenoid, 822
of Bartholine, 868
of biliary ducts, 788
Brunner’s, 775
buccal, 746
ceruminous, 732
coryzaeal, 834
conglobate, 588
Cowper’s, 856, 901
development of, 115
duodenal, 775
duodenum. See Spleen, Thy-
mus, &c.
epiglottic, 822
gastric, 771
genital, 126
of Havers, 280
inguinal, 887
kidney, 838
labial, 745
lachrymal, 728
of larynx, 822
lingual, 709
of Littré, 854
liver, 783
lumbar, 634
Luschka’s, 534
lymphatic, 588. See Lymp-
phatic glands.
mammary, 876
Meibomian, 726
mesenteric, 599
molar, 754
mucilaginous of Havers, 280
mucoceous, of stomach, 770
odiferous, 858
esophageal, 761
of Pacchioni, 603, 607
palatine, 756
pancreas, 781
parotid, 757
peptic, 770
Peyer’s, 776
pharyngeal, 760
pineal, 630
pituitary, 621
prostate, 855, 902
salivary, 757
sebaceous, 88
secretory, 93
solitary, 775, 782

Gland or Glands—
sublingual, 759
submaxillary, 758
sudoriferous, 89
suprarenal, 846
sweat, 89
thyroid, 834
of tongue, 709
tracheal, 824
trachoma, 727
tyson, 856
uterine, 872
of vagina, 871
of vulva, 868

Glandulae odoriferae, 856
Pacchioni, 603, 607
solitary, 775, 782
Tysonii, 856
Glauclitoridis, 668
penis, 856
Glaser, fissure of, 180
Giding movement, 284
Glioma, 64
Gliisson’s capsule, 786
Globe of eye. See Eye.
Globus major of epididymis, 861
minor of epididymis, 861
Globules, blood, 33
polar, 95
Glomerulus arterio-coccygeus, 584
vascular of kidney, 841
Glottis, 818
rima of, 818
Gomphosis, 281
Graafian vesicles, 874
membrana granulosa of, 875
ovicapsule of, 875
structure of, 875
Granular layer of dentine, 750
Granules, seminal, 865
Gray matter of cerebellum, 634
of cerebrum, 615
of fourth ventricle, 635
of medulla oblongata, 612
of spinal cord, 66
of third ventricle, 630
Groat, 878
cribriform fascia of, 433, 888
cutaneous vessels and nerves
of, 878
landmarks of, 937
lymphatic glands of, 594, 595, 937
region of, 878
superficial fascia of, 878
surgical anatomy of, 878
Groove, auriculo-ventricular,
802
basilar, 153
bicipital, 225
cavernous, 166
dental, 751
secondary, 754
infraorbital, 176, 202
lachrymal, 179, 202
musculo-spiral, 225
mylo-hyoid, 188
nasal, 109, 174
occipital, 161
INDEX.

Groove—
olfactory, 115, 194
optic, 168
primitive, 98
sacral, 144
subclavian, 217

Grooves in radius, 284
ventricular, 802

Growth of bone, 54
of body, 94

Gubernaculum testis, 865
Gums, 746
Cyri operi, 618, 620
Gyrus forniciatus, 616, 623

Hair-cells of ear, 741

Hairs, 87
follicles of, 87
root of, 87
shaft of, 88
sheath of, 88
structure of, 87

Ham, region of, 552

Hamstring tendons, surgical anatomy of, 445

Hand, arteries of, 517, 519
bones of, 235
development of, 244
fascia of, 420
landmarks of, 748
ligaments of, 819
muscles of, 420
nerves of, from median, 675, 677
from radial, 679
from ulnar, 678
veins of, 574

Harmonia, 281

Havers, canals of, 48

Glans of, 280

Head, lymphatics of, 580
muscles of, 242
veins of, 569
Heart, 801
annular fibres of auricles, 804
apex of, 809
landmarks of, 924
arteries of, 457, 479, 810
auricles of, 801, 802
circular fibres of, 809
component parts of, 801
development of, 116
endocardium, 808
fibres of auricles, 808
of ventricles, 808
fibrous rings of, 808
fetal relics in, 812
infundibulum of, 804
landmarks of, 223
left auricle, 866
ventricle, 807
looped fibres of auricles, 808
lymphatics of, 600, 810
muscular structure of, 808
nerves of, 632, 699, 810
openings into, 803, 804
outline of, on chest-wall, 923
peculiarities in fetus, 811
position of, 801
right auricle, 802
ventricle, 804

Heart—
septum ventriculorum, 804
sinus of, 802
size and weight of, 801
spiral fibres of, 809
structure of, 808
subdivision into cavities, 801
valves of, 805, 807
landmarks of, 225
veins of, 810
ventricles of, 801
vortex of, 809

Holocistrema of coehlea, 739

Helix, 729
fossa of, 729
muscles of, 729
process of, 730

Hence, fenestrated membrane of, 76
looped tubes of, 840, 842

Herms, congenital, 865
direct inguinal, 885
course of, 885
coverings of, 886
diagnosis of, 886
incomplete, 886

femoral, complete, 894
cutaneous vessels and nerves of, 886
coverings of, 894
descent of, 893
dissection of, 886
incomplete, 894
seat of stricture in, 894
surgical anatomy of, 886
varieties of, 894

infantile, 885
inguinal, 878, 884
dissection of, 878
direct, 885
external, 884
incomplete, 885
internal, 884
surgical anatomy of, 878
vessels and nerves involved, 878

oblite inguinal, 882, 884
complete, 885
course of, 884
coverings of, 884
scrotal, 885

Hesselbach's triangle, 885
Hey's ligament, 889
Hiatus Fallopian, 162
Highmore, antrum of, 177
Hilton's muscle, 819
Hilum of kidney, 838
pulmonis, 829
of spleen, 739
Hinge-joint, 282
Hip-joint, 422

muscles of, 433, 437
Hippocampus major, 627
minor, 625
Holoblastic ova, 95
horny band, 625
Huguet, canal of, 161, 645, 732
Humersus, 223
articulations of, 228
attachment of muscles to, 226
development of, 227

Humerus—
fractures of, 845
landmarks of, 944
tuberocities of, 225
Humors of eye, 722
Hunter, canal of, 547
Hyloid membrane of eye, 723
Hydatid of Morgagni, 126
Hymen, 868
Hyoïd bone, 206
attachment of muscles to, 206
development of, 206
landmarks of, 920

Hypoblast, 96

Ilexum, 772
Ilium, 246, 247
landmarks of, 830
Impressio colica, 785
renalis, 785
Impression, deltoïd, 225
rhomboid, 216
Incisive bone, 178, 179
Incisor teeth, 747
Incisura cerebri, 832
Intertragic, 729
Santorini, 732.

Incus, 735
ligament of, 736
suspensory, 736

Inferior maxillary bone, 186
articulations of, 190
attachment of muscles to, 190
changes produced by age in, 190
development of, 190
landmarks of, 916
ligaments of, 293
Infundibulum of kidney, 839, 846
Infundibulum of brain, 111, 621
of coehlea, 739
of ethmoid, 172
of heart, 804

Ingrasias, processes of, 168

Inguinal hernia. See Hernia.

Inlet of pelvis, 253

Innominate bone, 345
articulations of, 251
attachment of muscles to, 251
development of, 251

Interarticular fibro-cartilage, 45
of jaw, 294
of knee, 328
cartilage of, 304
of radius-ulnar joint, 314
of sacro-coxyeal joint, 303
of scapulo-clavicular joint, 306
of sterno-clavicular joint, 305

Intercalated convoluted tube, 842

Intercellular passage of lung, 833

Intercostal spaces, 211

Intertubular tissue, 750

Intermuscular bone, 178, 179

Intervertebral substance, 228
INDEX.

Kidney—
  pelvis, 829, 846
  primordial, 123
  pyramids of Ferrein, 843
  of Malpighi, 839, 840
  relations of, 838
  sinus of, 838
  stroma of, 845
  tubuli contorti uriniferi, 842
  veins of, 845
  weight and dimensions of, 838
Knee-joint, 325
  landmarks of, 939
Knuckles, landmarks of, 950
Krause, end-bulbs of, 71
Kuhne on motor nerves, 73
Kütscher on valves of heart, 806
Labia cerebri, 622
  majora, 867
  minora, 868
  lymphatics of, 598
Labiunum tympanicum, 741
  vestibulare, 741
Labyrinthis, 738
  arteries of, 744
  membranous, 743
  nerves of, 744
  veins of, 744
Lachrymal apparatus, 727
  bones, 179
  articulations of, 180
  attachment of muscles to, 180
  development of, 180
  sac. See Sac.
Lacteals, 599, 774
Lacuna magna, 854
Lacuna of bone, 49
  Lacus lacrymalis, 725, 727
Lamella, articular, 279
  of bone, 49
  horizontal, of ethmoid, 170
  interstitial, 49
  perpendicular, of ethmoid, 171
Lamina cinerea, 619, 620
  cribrosa of sclerotic, 714
  denticulate of cochlea, 741
  fusa of sclerotic, 714
  membranae, 741
  reticular, 745
  spiralis of cochlea, 739, 741
Lamina of cerebellum, 634
  of cornes, elastic, 715
  dorsales, 98
  of vertebrae, 135
Laminated tubercle of cerebellum, 633
Lancet, nerve of, 624
Landmarks—
  anterior tibial artery, 942
  antrohum, 918
  anus, 935
  aorta, division of, 930
  arm, 944
  cutaneous veins of, 946
  axilla, 945
  axillary artery, 945
  back, 926
  furrows of, 926
  bladder, 934
  brachial artery, 945
  brain, levels of, 915
  burn, carpal, 948
  digital, 950
  of elbow, 947
  of foot, 943
  of patella, 940
  buttocks, 938
  cacpus, 947
  catheter, introduction of, 936
  chest, 922
  in the female, 922
  clavicle, 944
  region above, 921
  below, 923
  colotomy, 933
  condyles of humerus, 946
  coraco-acromial ligament, 945
  cricoid cartilage, 920
  crural arch, 931, 936
  cutaneous veins of arm, 946
  diaphragm, 932
  digital arteries, 949
  furrows, 949
  joints, 950
  dorsal artery of foot, 943
  elbow, 946
  cutaneous veins of, 946
  epigastric artery, 931
  eyelids, 916
  eyes, 916
  face, 915
  facial artery, 916
  features, 919
  femoral artery, 938
  compression of, 938
  ring, 936
  fibula, 941
  fingers, 949
  foot, 943
  arteries of, 943
  bones of, 943
  burn of, 948
  joints of, 943
  foramina for fifth nerve, 916
  forearm, 947
  gall-bladder, 932
  gluteal artery, 937
  groin, 937
  hand, 949
  heart, 923
  apex of, 924
  outlines of, 923
  valves of, 925
  Hunter's canal, 938
  hyoid bone, 920
  ilium, 930, 987
  prominences of, 930
  inguinal canal, 931
INDEX.

Landmarks—
  inguinal glands, 937
  interdigital folds, 949
  internal mammary artery, 923
  interosseous arteries of arm, 947
    of hand, 950
  intestines, large, 938
  small, 934
  kidney, 933
  knee, 939
    bony prominences of, 939
    synovial membrane of, 940
  knuckles, 950
  lachrymal sac, 917
  leg, 941
    ligamentum patellae, 940
    lines alba, 929
    lines semilunares, 928
    transverse, 929
  liver, 932
  lower jaw, 916
  lung, 923
    apex of, 921
    outlines of, 925
  malleoli, 941
  mastoid process, 915
  mediastinum, anterior, 925
  metacarpal joints, 943
  middle meningeal artery, 915
  mouth, 918
  nares, 919
  nasal cavities, 917
    duct, 917
  neck, veins of, 920
  Nélaton's line, 937
  nose, 917
  occipital protuberance, 915
  olecranon, 946
  palm of hand, 949
  palmar arches, 949
  palpation by rectum, 950
  pancreas, 933
  parotid duct, 916
  patella, 939
  patellar bursa, 940
  perineum, 934
    bony framework of, 934
    raphe of, 934
  peritoneum, 930
  peroneal nerve, 941
  pit of the stomach, 929
  plantar arteries, 944
  fascia, 944
  pleura, reflections of, 925
  pommum Adami, 920
  popliteal artery, 940, 942
  bursa, 940
  tendons, 940
  posterior tibial artery, 942
  Poupart's ligament, 930, 931, 936
  prostate gland, 935
  pubes, bony prominences of, 930
  pudic artery, 939
  pulley for superior oblique, 916
  pulse at wrist, 948
  puncta lacrymalis, 917
  Landmarks—
  pylorus, 932
  radial artery, 948
  radius, 947
  raphe of perineum, 934
  rectum, 935
    palpation by, 950
  ribs, rules for counting, 923
  rings, abdominal, 931
  femoral, 936
  saphenous veins, 945
  saphenous opening, 936
  sartorius, 938
  scalp, 914
  arteries of, 914
  density of, 914
  scapula, 928
  sesamoid bones, 950
  skin, 941
  shoulder, 944
  sinuses, cerebral, 915
    frontal, 914
  skullcap, 913
    thickness of, 915
  spermatic cord, 931
  spinal meshes, origins of, 927
  spine, movements of, 927
    of ilium, 930, 937
    of pubes, 930
  spines of vertebrae, 926
  spleen, 932
  sterno-clavicular joint, 921
  sterno-mastoid muscle, 921
  sternum, 922
  stomach, 923
  subclavian artery, 922
  subcutaneous veins of hand, 920
    of neck, 920
  suprascapular fossa, 921
  supracondylar processes, 946
  tabatière anatomique, 948
  temporal artery, 916
  tendon Achilles, 941
  tendons of ankle, 941, 942
    of wrist, 948
  thigh, 936
    bend of, 936
  throat, 918
  thumb, 949
  thyroid cartilage, 920
  tibia, 941
  tonsils, 919
  trachea, 921
    division of, 926
  triangular ligament, 935
  trigonum venesce, 934
  trochahers, 937
  tuberocities of arm, 944
  ulna, 947
  ulnar artery, 948
  umbilicus, 929
  urethra, 935
    in child, 936
  vagina, examinations of, 951
  vertebrae, spines of, 926
  tabular plan of, 927
  viscera, abdominal, 931
  wrist, 947
  Laryngotomy, 834
  Larynx, 814
    cartilages of, 814
    cavity of, 818
  glands of, 822
  glottis, 818
  interior of, 817
  ligaments of, 816
  mucous membrane of, 821
  muscles of, 819
    actions of, 821
  rima glottidis, 818
  superior aperture of, 817
    ventricle of, 818
  vessels and nerves of, 822
    vocal cords of, false, 818
    inferior, 819
    superior, 818
    true, 819
  Lee, researches on sympathetic nerve, 705
  Leg, arteries of, 552
    bones of, 260
    fascia of, 446
    deep, 450
    landmarks of, 940
    ligaments of, 350
    lymphatics of, 934
    muscles of, 446
    nerves of, 888
    veins of, 581
  Lens, crystalline, 723
    capsule of, 723
    changes produced in by age, 724
    development of, 113
    structure of, 724
  suspensory ligament of, 724
  Lieberkühn, crypts of, 775
  Ligament or Ligaments, accessory, 308
    acromio-clavicular, superior, 306
    inferior, 306
  alar of knee, 929
  of ankle, anterior, 322
  lateral, 322
  annular of ankle, 453
    anterior, 453
    external, 454
    internal, 454
    of radius and ulna, 315
    of stapes, 736
    of wrist, anterior, 420
    posterior, 420
  anterior of ankle, 453
    of carpus, 317
    of elbow, 811
    of knee, 826
    of wrist, 818
  areolate, 886
  aryncho-epiglottic, 816
  astragalo-acipondial, 334
  ato-axoid, anterior, 289
  posterior, 289
  of bladder, false, 820
  true, 859
  broad, of liver, 783
  of uterus, 765, 871
  Burns's, 889
INDEX. 967

Ligament or Ligaments—
calcaneo-astragaloid, external, 324
interosseous, 334
posterior, 334
calcaneo-cuboid, internal, 335
long, 335
short, 335
superior, 335
calcaneo-scaphoid, inferior, 336
superior, 336
of Camper, 300
capsular. See individual Joints.
carpo-metacarpal, 319
of carpus, 317
central, of spinal cord, 604
check, 292
ciliary of eye, 718, 719
common vertebral, anterior, 285
posterior, 285
conoid, 306
coraco-acromial, 307
landmarks of, 945
coraco-clavicular, 306
coraco-humeral, 308
coracoid, 308
coronary of knee, 329
of liver, 784
costo-clavicular, 305
costo-ster nal, anterior, 297
posterior, 297
costo-transverse, 296
costo-vertebral, 295
costo-xiphoid, 299
cotyledon, 324
cricoid, 817
crico-arytenoid, 817
crico-thyroid, 817
crucial of knee, 327
cruciform, 289
deltoid, 332
dorsal. See individual Joints.
of elbow, 310
anterior, 311
external lateral, 311
internal lateral, 311
posterior, 311
falciform of liver, 783
femoral, 889
gastro-phre nic, 767
Gimbernat’s, 886, 881, 890
glenoid, 308, 321
gliss-epiglottidean, 816
Hey’s, 889, 897
of hip, 322
hyo-epiglottic, 816, 817
ilio-femoral, 323
ilio-lumbar, 300
of incus, 736
interarticul ar of ribs, 296
interchond ral, 299
interclavicular, 305
intercostal, 297
interosseous. See individual Joints.
teripheral, 287
intertransverse, 288
intervertebral, 285
of jaw, 292
Ligament or Ligaments—
of knee, 325
of larynx, 816
lateral. See individual Joints.
of liver, 783
of uterus, 871
of liver, 783
longitudinal of liver, 783
lumbo-iliac, 300
lumbo-sacral, 300
of malleus, 736
metacarpal, 319, 321
metacarpophalangeal, 321
metatarsal, 333
metatarsophalangeal, 333
oblique, 518
oburator, 304
occipito-atluid, anterior, 291
lateral, 292
posterior, 291
occipito-axoid, 292
odontoid, 322
orbicular, 313
orificial, 313
of ovary, 876
palmar, 317
palpebral, 726
of patella, 326
landmarks of, 940
of pelvis, 300
peritoneal, 765
of phalanges of hand, 322
of foot, 338
of pinna, 730
plantar, 337, 338
posterior of carpus, 317
of elbow, 311
of knee, 327
of wrist, 316
Poupard’s, 886, 880, 890
pterygoid-maxillary, 352
pubic, anterior, 303
posterior, 303
superior, 303
pubo-prostatic, 850, 855, 907
radio-carpal, 315
radio-ulnar, anterior, 314
inferior, 314
middle, 313
posterior, 314
recto-uterine, 871
rhomboid, 305
round, of hip, 323
of liver, 783, 784
of radius and ulna, 813
of uterus, 876
sacro-ccygeal, anterior, 202
posterior, 202
sacro-iliac, anterior, 301
oblique, 301
posterior, 301
sacro-sciatic, anterior or posterior, 301
lesser or anterior, 301
sacro-vertebral, 302
of scapula, 307
scapulo-clavicular, 306
of shoulder, 808
of spleen, 794
of stapes, 736
stellate, 295
Ligament or Ligaments—
ster nal, 309
sterno-clavicular, anterior, 304
posterior, 304
of sternum, 309
structure of, 279
stylo-hyoid, 294
stylo-maxillary, 294, 357
subflavous, 287
subpubic, 303
supraspinous, 288
suspensory, of incus, 736
of lens, 724
of liver, 783
of malleus, 736
of mamma, 399
of penis, 856
of spleen, 795
sural, 279
tarsal, 334
of eyelids, 726
tarso-metatarsal, 337
of thumb, 292
thyro-arytenoid, inferior, 819
superior, 818
thyro-epiglottic, 816, 817
thyro-hyoid, 817
tibio-fibular, 330
tibio-tarsal, 332
transverse of atlas, 289
of hip, 325
of knee, 329
of scapula, 308
of tibio-fibular, 331
trapezoid, 308
triangular, 386, 881, 900
landmarks of, 935
of urethra, 881
of tympanic bones, 736
of uterus, 871
of vertebrae, 285
vesico-uterine, 871
of Winalow, 327
of wrist, 315
anterior, 316
lateral, external, 316
internal, 316
posterior, 316
Y, 333
of Zinn, 847
See also Ligaments and Ligamentum.
Ligamenta alaria, 329
subflava, 287
suspensoria of mamma, 399
See also Ligament.
Ligamentum arcuatum externum, 396
internum, 395
dentatum, 604
densiculatum, 604
dentum palatinum, 826
mesocostum, 329
nuchae, 374
patellae, 326
pectinatatum iridis, 718
landmarks of, 340
posterior of Winalow, 827
spirale, 741
suspensorium, 292
INDEX.

Ligamentum—
teres. See Ligament, round. See also Ligament.

Ligation of arteries. See Ope-
ration.

Limbs, bones of, 215
development of, 116

Limbus laminae spiralis, 741
luteus, 720

Line, curved, of occipital bone, 151

incremental, 750

interrochaterian, 506

mylo-hyoidean, 187

Nélaton’s, 957

oblique, of clavicle, 216

of fibula, 256

of lower jaw, 187

of radius, 234

of tibia, 263

Linea alba, 591

landmarks of, 929

aspera, 257

ilio-psoas, 247

quadratus, 258

splendens, 603

Lineae semilunares, 392

landmarks of, 928

transverse of abdomen, 390

392

landmarks of, 929

of auditory nerve, 639

of fourth ventricle, 636

Lingual bone, 206

Linguita laminosa, 631

Lips, 745

arteries of, 479, 480

Liquor amnii, 101

chyli, 88

Coturnii, 743

Morgagnii, 728

sanguins, 35, 35

Scarpis, 744

semis, 863

Lithotomies, parts avoided in, 904

parts concerned in, 903

divided in, 904

Litre, glands of, 654

Liver, 789

arteries of, 527, 786, 789

changes of position in, 783

circulation in, 788

costa of, 786

development of, 119, 122

distribution of vessels to, in

euritis, 812

duct of, 788

fissures of, 784

landmarks of, 932

ligaments of, 783

lobes of, 785

lobules of, 786

lymphatics of, 598, 793

nerves of, 786

situation, size, and weight, 793

structure of, 786

surfaces and borders of, 787

vessels of, 785

Lobes of cerebellum, 634
digastic, 634

Lobes—
inferior, posterior, 634

median, 634

pneumogastric, 634

slenor, 634

square, 634

subpeduncular, 634

of cerebrum, 618. See Cere-

brum.

of kidney, 840

of liver, 785

of lung, 830

optic, 631

of prostate, 855

of testis, 862

of thymus, 836

of thyroid, 834

See Lobules, &c.

Lobule of ear, 729

Lobules, cuneate, 619

of kidney, 840

of lung, 833

Lobulelet of lung, 833

Lobuli testis, 863

Lobulus caudatus, 786

centrals of cerebellum, 632

precuneus, 619

quadratus, 619, 786

Spigelii, 786

Lobus. See Lobules and Lobes.

Locus cerebellus, 635

niger, 622

perforatus anterior, 620

posterior, 621

Looped tubes of Henlo, 840

Lower extremity, arteries of, 545

bones of, 245

fascia of, 429

ligaments of, 322

lymphatics of, 594

muscles of, 429

nerves of, 690

veins of, 689

Lower jaw. See Inferior maxill-
ary bone.

Lower, tubercle of, 803

Lungs, 827

air-cells of, 833

air-sacs of, 833

alveoli of, 833

apex of, 228

landmarks of, 921

capillaries of, 833

development of, 122

fissures of, 829

in fetus, 122

landmarks of, 925

lobes and fissures of, 830

lobules of, 833

lobulcites of, 600

lymphatics of, 600, 834

nerves of, 834

outline of, on chest-wall, 925

parenchyma of, 831

pulmonary artery, 563, 804

veins, 504, 587, 833

root of, 830

structure of, 831

subdivision of bronchi in, 831

vessels of, 833

Lungs—

weight, color, etc., 831

Lunula of nails, 87

Luschka’s gland, 534

Lymph, 87

Lymph-path, 82

sinus, 82

Lymphatic duct, right, 590

Lymphatic glands, 82, 598

auricular, posterior, 590

axillary, 604

brachial, 593

bronchial, 601

buccal, 590

cervical, 592

of elbow, 593

gluteal, 595

groin, 594, 595, 937

of head, superficial, 590

iliac, external, 598

internal, 598

inguinal, deep, 595

superficial, 594

intercostal, 600

internal mammary, 600

ischiatric, 595

of large intestine, 593

of lower extremity, 594

lumbar, 596

mammary, 600

mediastinal, 600

mesenteric, 600

of neck, 592

occipital, 590

parotid, 590

of pelvis, 598

deep, 596

popliteal, 595

radial, 593

sacral, 598

of small intestine, 599

of spleen, 599

of stomach, 599

submaxillary, 590

of thorax, 600

tibial, anterior, 595

ulnar, 593

of upper extremity, 588, 593

zygomatic, 590

Lymphatics, 81, 588

abdomen, 596, 598

arm, 594

bladder, 598

bone, 48

broad ligaments, 598

brownal, 854

cervix, 600

cerebral, 591

cervical, 592

cheek, 600

ciliaris, 598

cranium, 591

diaphragm, 600

effrent, 587

delated, deep, 591

Fallopian tubes, 598

general anatomy of, 81

gluteal region, 597

groin, 587

head, 590
INDEX.

Lymphatics—
  heart, 600
  intercostal, 600
  internal mammary, 600
  intestines, 609
  kidneys, 598, 845
  labia, 598
  lachrymal, 599, 774
  large intestine, 599
  leg, 595
  liver, 598, 786
  lower extremity, 595
  lung, 600, 884
  meningeal, 591
  mesentery, 599
  mouth, 591
  neck, 592
  nose, 591
  nympha, 598
  osophagus, 601
  ovaries, 598
  pancreas, 600
  pelvis, 596, 598
  penis, 596
  peritoneum, 597
  pharynx, 592
  prostate, 598
  radial, 594
  rectum, 598
  serous, 597, 860
  spleen, 599
  stomach, 599
  structure of, 81
  testicle, 598
  throracic duct, 589
  thorax, 600
  thymic, 601
  thyroid, 601, 835
  upper extremity, 593
  uterus, 598
  vagina, 598
  valves of, 81
  vessels of, 589
  Lymphoid cellular tissue, 41
  Lyra of fornix, 628

MACULA cibrosa, 758
  germinativa, 84
  Magnum (os) of corpus, 240
  Malan bone, 860
  articulations of, 181
  attachment of muscles to, 181
  development of, 181
  Male organs of generation, 855
  development of, 126, 128
  Malleolus, external, 265
  internal, 264
  landmarks of, 941
  Malas, 755
  p. ligament of, 756
  Malpighi, capsule of, 841
  pyramids of, 840
  tuft of, 841
  Malpighian bodies of kidney, 840, 841
  corpuses of spleen, 796
  See Malpighi.
  Mamma, 876

Mamma—
  areola of, 877
  development of, 115
  ducts of, 877
  lobules of, 877
  mammilla of, 877
  nerves of, 877
  nipple, 877
  structure of, 877
  vessels of, 877
  Mammary gland. See Mamma.
  Mammilla of breast, 877
  of kidney, 840
  Manubrium of malleus, 735
  of sterno, 207
  Marrow of bone, 47
  spinal, 804
  Marshall, vestigial folds of, 120
  Masseter, 552
  Mastoid cells, openings of, 754
  portion of temporal bone, 161
  Matrix of nail, 87
  Maxillary bone, inferior. See Inferior maxillary bone.
  superior. See Superior maxillary bone.
  Maxutus auditorius externus, 162, 731
  internus, 163
  of nose, inferior, 205, 713
  middle, 172, 205, 712
  superior, 171, 205, 712
  urinarus, female, 868
  male, 854, 856
  Meckel’s cartilage, 109
  ganglion, 652
  Mediatinum, 826, 827
  anterior, 827
  middle, 827
  posterior, 826, 827
  landmarks of, 925
  testis, 862
  Medulla oblongata, 610
  corpora pyramidalia of, 611
  fasciculi graciles of, 611
  fissures of, 610
  gray matter of, 613
  lateral tract of, 611
  olivary body, 611, 612
  pyramids of, anterior, 611, 612
  posterior, 611
  restiform bodies, 611, 612
  septum of, 613
  structure of, 612
  Medulla spinalis, 604. See Spinal cord.
  Medullary canal of bone, 47
  membrane of bone, 47
  substance of brain, 63
  of kidney, 859
  of supraoral capsules, 847
  velum, posterior, of cerebellum, 638
  Meibomian glands, 726
  Membrana basilaris, 741
  eboris, 753
  fusca, 717
  granulosa of retina, 717
  limbus, 721, 722
  nictitans, 727

Membrana—
  obturatoria, 111
  pupillaris, 719
  sacculiformis, 815
  tectoria, 741
  tympani, 735
  secundaria, 733, 740
  Membrane of aqueous chamber, 725
  arachnoid, cerebral, 608
  spinal, 608
  basement, 58
  blastodermic, 96
  choroid, 716, 717
  costo-coracid, 401
  of Corti, 741
  crico-thyroid, 817
  of Descemet, 741
  fenestrated, 76
  hyaloid, 723
  hyoglossal, 710
  intersosseus, 813
  Jacob’s, 720
  limiting, 721, 722
  mucous, 82
  Nasmuth’s, 752
  obturator, 442
  pituitary, 712
  pupillary, 719
  of Reissner, 741
  Scheiderian, 712
  serous, 92
  synovial, 93
  thyro-hyoid, 206, 816
  tubular, 62
  vitelline, 84
  Membranes of brain, 606
  of spinal cord, 602
  Membranous labyrinth, 743
  portion of urethra, 858
  semicircular canals, 743
  zone, 742
  Meninges, cerebral, 606
  spinal, 606
  Menisci, 45
  Morboelastic ova, 85
  Mesencephalon, 111
  Mesentery, 764, 766
  Mesococcus, 766
  Mesencephale, 614
  Mesocolon, ascending, 766
  descending, 767
  sigmoid, 767, 779
  transverse, 764, 767, 779
  Mesorchium, 668
  Mesorectum, 764, 767, 780
  Spinal cord, 241
  development of, 244
  peculiar bones of, 241
  Metatarsus, 274
  development of, 276
  Milk teeth, 747, 749
  Mitral valve, 808
  Modiolus of cochlea, 789
  Molar teeth, 748
  Molecular layer of retina, 721
  Monro, foramen of, 625, 628
  Mons veneris, 867
  Monticulus cerebelli, 632
  Morgagni, hydatid of, 126
  liquor of, 725
INDEX.

**Muscle or Muscles—**
  - corrugator supercillii, 345
  - cranial region, 342
  - cremaster, 860, 865, 881
  - crico-arytenoideus lateralis, 820, 821
  - posticus, 819, 821
  - crico-thyroid, 819, 821
  - cuneus, 404
  - dartos, 860
  - deltoid, 404
  - depressor alae nasi, 849
  - angularis, 851
  - epiglotitis, 821
  - labii inferioris, 351
  - diaphragm, 394
  - digastric, 362
  - dilator naris anterior, 349
  - posterior, 349
  - of pupil, 719
  - of ophthalmic region, 342
  - erector clitoridis, 900
  - penis, 899
  - spine, 379
  - of expiration, 394, 397
  - of external ear, 344
  - extensor brevis digitorum, 455
  - carpi radii brevior, 416
  - longior, 415
  - ulnaris, 417
  - coccygis, 383
  - communis digitorum, 417
  - indicis, 419
  - longus digitorum, 447
  - minimi digitii, 417
  - osis metacarpi pollicis, 418
  - primi intermedii pollicis, 418
  - proprius pollicis, 447
  - secundi internodii pollicis, 418
  - of eyeball, 346
  - of eyelids, 345
  - of face, 342
  - femoral region, anterior, 332
  - posterior, 344
  - fibular region, 452
  - flexor accessorius, 457
  - brevis digitorum, 456
  - minimi digitii of foot, 458
  - of hand, 429
  - pollicis of foot, 458
  - of hand, 429
  - carpi radialis, 411
  - brevis, 412
  - profundus, 412
  - ulnaris, 413
  - digitorum profundus, 413
  - sublimis, 412
  - longus digitorum, 451
  - pollicis of foot, 450
  - of hand, 414
  - osis metacarpi pollicis, 421
  - profundus digitorum, 413
  - sublimis digitorum, 412
  - of foot, 453, 455
  - gastrocnemius, 448
  - gemellus inferior, 443
  - superior, 443
  - genio-hyo-glossus, 363

**Muscle or Muscles—**
  - genio-hyoideus, 362
  - of gluteal region, 439
  - gluteus maximus, 439
  - medius, 440
  - minimus, 441
  - gracilis, 457
  - of hand, 490
  - of head and face, 341
  - helicis major, 731
  - minor, 731
  - Hilton's, 819
  - hip, 439
  - humeral region, anterior, 407
  - posterior, 409
  - hyo-glossus, 364
  - of hyoid bone, 359, 361
  - iliac region, 430
  - iliacus, 431
  - ilio-costalis, 379
  - infracostal, 393
  - infraspinitus, 405
  - of inspiration, 394, 399
  - intercostal, 392
  - external, 392
  - internal, 392
  - of intermaxillary region, 354
  - interossei, dorsal, 424, 459
  - palmar, 425
  - plantar, 459
  - interspinales, 383
  - intertransversales, 383
  - kerato-glossus, 364
  - kerato-crioideus, 819
  - labial, 349, 350
  - of larynx, 359, 361, 819
  - latissimus dorsi, 374
  - laxator tymbani major, 736
  - minor, 736
  - of leg, 445
  - levator anguli oris, 350
  - caput, 376
  - ani, 901
  - glandula thyroidea, 385
  - labii inferioris, 350
  - superioris, 350
  - alaeque nasi, 849
  - proprius, 350
  - menti, 350
  - palati, 358
  - palpebrae superioris, 346, 723
  - prostate, 855, 902
  - levatores costarum, 393
  - lingualis, 364
  - of lip, 349, 350
  - of little finger, 423
  - longissimus dorsi, 381
  - longus colli, 371
  - of lower extremity, 429
  - lumbricales of foot, 457
  - of hand, 424
  - masseter, 332
  - of mouth, 351
  - masseter externus, 382
  - mylo-hyoid, 362
  - naso-labialis, 851
  - of neck, 355
  - of nose, 711
  - oblique. See Muscle, obliques.
INDEX.

Muscle or Muscles—
  obliquus ascendens, 387, 881
  auris, 781
  capitis inferior, 384
  superior, 384
  descendens, 385, 879
  externus abdominis, 385, 879
  internus abdominis, 387, 881
  oculi inferior, 348
  superior, 347
  obturator externus, 443
  internus, 442
  occipito-frontalis, 342
  omo-hyoid, 863
  opponens minimi digitii, 424
  pollicis, 422
  orbicularis latus, 345
  oris, 351
  palpebrarum, 345, 726
  of orbital region, 346
  of palatal region, 368
  of palate, 706
  palato-glossus, 365, 369
  palato-phyryngeus, 369
  palmaris brevis, 423
  longus, 412
  of palpebral region, 343
  pectineus, 437
  pectoralis major, 399
  minor, 401
  of penis, 899
  of perineum, female, 900
  male, 898
  peroneus brevis, 453
  longus, 452
  tertiarius, 447
  of pharynx, 366
  of pinna, 730
  of plantar region, 455
  plantaris, 449
  platysma myoides, 356
  popliteus, 450
  prevertebral, 371
  pronator quadratus, 414
  radii teres, 411
  psoas magnus, 431
  parus, 431
  pterygoid, external, 355
  internal, 354
  pyramidalis abdominis, 391
  nasi, 349
  pyriformis, 441
  quadratus femoris, 443
  lumborum, 391
  menti, 351
  quadriceps extensor cruris, 435
  radial region, 421
  rectus abdominis, 390
  capitis anterior major, 370
  minor, 370
  posterior major, 383
  minor, 384
  femoris, 435
  lateralis, 371
  oculi externus, 347
  inferior, 847
  internus, 847
  superior, 846
  Muscle or Muscles—
  sternalis, 401
  thoracis, 383
  retrahens aurum, 344
  rhomboideus, 349
  major, 376
  minor, 376
  ring, 719
  risorius of Santorini, 352
  rotateores spine, 388
  sacro-lumbalis, 379
  sartorius, 434
  landmarks of, 898
  scalenus anterior, 372
  medius, 372
  posterior, 372
  scapular region, anterior, 404
  posterior, 405
  semimembranosus, 445
  semispinalis colli, 382
  dorsi, 382
  semitendinosus, 444
  serratus magnus, 402
  posterior inferior, 378
  superior, 377
  sole of foot, 455
  soleus, 449
  sphenicer ani, external, 896
  internal, 701, 896
  of pupil, 719
  vagina, 900
  spinalis cervicis, 381
  colli, 381
  dorsi, 381
  splenius, 378
  capitis, 378
  colli, 378
  stapediaus, 736
  sternocleido-mastoid, 357
  landmarks of, 921
  sterno-hyoid, 359
  sterno-mastoid, 357
  sterno-thyroid, 360
  stylo-glossus, 365
  stylo-hyoid, 362
  stylo-phyryngeus, 367
  subscapoueus, 410
  subclavius, 401
  subcreureus, 436
  subscapularis, 404
  supinator brevis, 418
  longus, 415
  suprascocital, 398
  supraspinales, 383
  supraspinatus, 405
  temporalis, 353
  tensor palati, 369
  tarsi, 346
  tympani, 734, 736
  vagina femoris, 434
  teres major, 406
  minor, 406
  of thigh, 432, 437, 444
  of thoracic region, anterior, 399
  lateral, 402
  of thorax, 399
  of thumb, 421
  thyro-arytateoides, 819, 820, 821
  thyro-epiglottideus, 821

Muscle or Muscles—
  thyro-hyoid, 360
  tibialis anterior, 446
  posticus, 461
  tibio-fibular region, anterior, 446
  posterior, 448
  of tongue, 365, 710
  trachealis, 824
  tracheo-mastoid, 381
  tragus, 731
  transversalis abdominis, 388, 882
  colli, 881
  transversus auriculae, 731
  pedis, 459
  perinei, 899
  in female, 900
  trapezius, 373
  triangulares ventriculi, 351
  sterni, 393
  triceps extensor cruris, 435
  cubiti, 409
  femoralis, 436
  of trunk, 373
  of tympanum, 736
  of ulnar region, 423
  of upper extremity, 398
  triticeo-glossus, 821
  of ureters, 851
  of urethra, 898
  vastus externus, 435
  internus, 435, 436
  vertebral region, anterior, 370
  lateral, 372
  zygomaticus major, 350
  minor, 350

Muscles, General Anatomy of, 56
  of animal life, 56
  aponeuroses of. See Aponeu-
  roses.

arrangement of fibres of, 57
  bipenniform, 389
  bloodvessels of, 60
  cells, 59
  development of, 116
  fasciculi of, 56
  fibris of, 57
  form of, 339
  insertion of, 339
  involuntary, 58
  lymphatics of, 60
  mode of connection with
  bone, &c., 339
  nerves of, 603
  nomenclature of, 339
  of organic life, 58
  origin of, 339
  penniform, 339
  primitive fasciculi of, 56
  fibris of, 57
  radiated, 339
  saccous elements of, 56
  sheath of, 56
  size of, 339
  striped, 58
  structure of, 56
  tendons of, 340
  unstriped, 58
  voluntary, 56
**INDEX.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nerve or Nerves—</th>
<th>Nerve or Nerves—</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>superior, 699, 700</td>
<td>middle, 687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thoracic, 663</td>
<td>of thorax, anterior, 681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardiacus magnus, 700</td>
<td>lateral, 681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor, 700</td>
<td>tibial, anterior, 695</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carotid, 654, 659</td>
<td>posterior, 693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cavernous, of penis, 706</td>
<td>ulnar, 678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cervical, 666</td>
<td>dental, anterior, 652, 713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anterior, 667</td>
<td>inferior, 656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branches of, 667</td>
<td>of inferior dental, 656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardiac, 662</td>
<td>posterior, 652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterior, 670</td>
<td>descendens nuni, 647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superficial, 658</td>
<td>digastric, from facial, 645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cervico-facial, 645</td>
<td>digital of foot, dorsal, 694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chorda tympani, 644, 738</td>
<td>plantar, 694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciliary, long, 649</td>
<td>of hand, dorsal, 678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short, 650</td>
<td>palmar, median, 677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circumflex, 673</td>
<td>radial, 680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clavicular, 668</td>
<td>ulnar, 677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coccygeal, 668, 689</td>
<td>dorsal, 680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cochlear, 744</td>
<td>anterior branches of, 680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>communicans nuni, 669</td>
<td>posterior branches of, 680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peronei, 693</td>
<td>roots of, 680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of Cutaneus, 653</td>
<td>of penis, 692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cranial, 637</td>
<td>dorsi-lumbar, 683</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>origin of, 663</td>
<td>dorsi-spinal, 683</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crural, 684</td>
<td>crurae master, 687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anterior, 687</td>
<td>eighth pair, 658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cutaneous, of arm, external, 674</td>
<td>of eyeball, 725</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal, 674</td>
<td>facial, 642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lesser internal, 675</td>
<td>of auricularis magnus, 668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of buttock and thigh, 692</td>
<td>femoral artery, 547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of cervical plexus, 658</td>
<td>fifth, 647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circumflex, 673</td>
<td>first, 637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coccygeal, 689</td>
<td>fourth, 641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crural, anterior, 687</td>
<td>frontal, 649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dorsal of ulnar, 677</td>
<td>ganglionic branch of nasal, 649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nerves, 680</td>
<td>gastric branches of vagus, 663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dorsalis penis, 692</td>
<td>genital, 684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of frontal, 649</td>
<td>genito-crural, 684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hemorrhoidal, inferior, 690</td>
<td>glossopharyngeal, 658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ilio-hypogastric, 684</td>
<td>gluteal, inferior, 692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ilio-inguinal, 684</td>
<td>superior, 690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of inguinal region, 678</td>
<td>gustatory, 656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intercostal, 681</td>
<td>of heart, 662, 700, 810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal, 674</td>
<td>hemorrhoidal, inferior, 690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of ischiorectal region, 695</td>
<td>hepatic, 708, 786</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lateral of dorsal, 680, 682</td>
<td>hypogastric, 684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of intercostal, 681</td>
<td>hypoglossal, 646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of liver, 786</td>
<td>iliac, 684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lumbar, 682</td>
<td>ilio-hypogastric, 684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>median, 675</td>
<td>ilioinguinal, 684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle, 687</td>
<td>incisor, 656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musculo-cutaneous, 674, 695</td>
<td>inframaxillary, of facial, 646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musculo-spiral, 679</td>
<td>infraorbital of facial, 645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obturator, 686</td>
<td>infratrochlear, 650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palmar, 675</td>
<td>intercostal, 680, 681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of patella, 688</td>
<td>lower, 681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perineal, 690</td>
<td>upper, 681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peroneal, 635</td>
<td>intercosto-humeral, 681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plantar, 693</td>
<td>interosseous, anterior, 675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>popliteal, external, 685</td>
<td>posterior, 680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal, 693</td>
<td>ischiatic, great, 692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radial, 680</td>
<td>small, 692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacral, 689</td>
<td>Jacobson’s, 659, 737</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sciatric, lesser, 693</td>
<td>of kidney, 845</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small, 692</td>
<td>labial, 652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of thigh, external, 686</td>
<td>of labyrinth, 744</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal, 687</td>
<td>lachrymal, 648</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of pneumogastric, 662, 663</td>
<td>of Lascia, 634</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerve or Nerves —</td>
<td>Nerve or Nerves —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laryngeal, external, 662</td>
<td>pericranial, of frontal, 649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferior, 658</td>
<td>perineal, 690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal, 662</td>
<td>superficial, 690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recurrent, 662</td>
<td>peroneal, 694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superior, 662</td>
<td>landmarks of, 941</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of sympathetic, 699</td>
<td>petroreal, great, 654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lingual, 656</td>
<td>small, 643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of glossopharyngeal, 660</td>
<td>superficial external, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lumbar, 656</td>
<td>large, 643, 654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branches of, 682</td>
<td>pharyngeal, of external laryn-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roots of, 682</td>
<td>geal, 662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lumbo-sacral, 683</td>
<td>of glossopharyngeal, 659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of the lung, 834</td>
<td>of Meckel's ganglion, 654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malar branch of facial, 645</td>
<td>of pneumogastric, 662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of orbital nerve, 651</td>
<td>of sympathetic, 699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masseteric, 655</td>
<td>phrenic, 669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mastoid, 668</td>
<td>plantar, cutaneous, 693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxillary, inferior, 654</td>
<td>external, 694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superior, 650</td>
<td>internal, 693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>median, 675</td>
<td>pneumogastric, 660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mental, 656</td>
<td>popliteal, external, 694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mixed, 657</td>
<td>internal, 693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of motion, 637</td>
<td>pudic, 643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motor ocilli, 640</td>
<td>inter duram et mollem, 643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musculo-cutaneous of abdo-</td>
<td>intermedia, 643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>men, 686</td>
<td>mollis, 639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferior, 684</td>
<td>pterygoid, 655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of arm, 674</td>
<td>pterygo-palatine, 654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from peroneal, 605</td>
<td>pterional, inferior, 692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superior, 684</td>
<td>pudic, 600, 692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musculo-spiral, 679</td>
<td>pulmonary, from vagus, 662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mylo-hyoid, 656</td>
<td>radial, 679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasal, from Meckel's gan-</td>
<td>recurrent laryngeal, 662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glio, 658</td>
<td>to tentorium, 641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of ophthalmic, 649, 713</td>
<td>renal splanchic, 703</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from superior maxillary, 652</td>
<td>respiratory, external, of Bell, 672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from Vidian, 654</td>
<td>internal, of Bell, 669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of nasal fossae, 713</td>
<td>sacral, 688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naso-palatine, 653, 713</td>
<td>roots of, 688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxill, 646</td>
<td>sphenous, external, or short, 693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obturator, 686</td>
<td>internal, or long, 688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accessory, 686</td>
<td>sciatric, great, 692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occipital of facial, 645</td>
<td>small, 692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>great, 670</td>
<td>second, 638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small, 668</td>
<td>of sensation, 637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of third cervical, 670</td>
<td>seventh, 638, 642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occipitalis major, 670</td>
<td>sixth, 641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor, 668</td>
<td>of special sense, 637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oesophageal, 663</td>
<td>spheric, 703</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olfactory, 620, 637, 713</td>
<td>sphenos-palatine, 652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ophthalmic, 648</td>
<td>spinal, 67, 665. See Spinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optic, 638</td>
<td>nerves.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orbital, 651</td>
<td>accessory, 660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relations of, 642</td>
<td>splanchic, great, 701</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of superior maxillary, 651</td>
<td>lesser, 702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palatine, 652</td>
<td>renal, or smallest, 702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anterior or large, 652, 713</td>
<td>splenic, 703</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external, 653</td>
<td>sternal, 663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle, 655</td>
<td>stylo-hyoid, or facial, 645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterior or small, 653</td>
<td>subclavian, 672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palmar cutaneous of median,</td>
<td>suboccipital, 666, 667, 670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>675</td>
<td>subcapular, 675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deep, 675</td>
<td>superficialis colli, 668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulnar, 678</td>
<td>supraclavicular, 668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palpebral, 652</td>
<td>supramaxillary of facial, 646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>par vagus, 660</td>
<td>supracapsular, 649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parotid, 655</td>
<td>supratrochlear, 649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pathetic, 641</td>
<td>perforans Cessareii, 674</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX.

Palate—
    hard, 756
    muscles of, 368, 736
        7, 756
Palate bone, 182
    articulations of, 184
    attachment of muscles to, 184
    development of, 184
Palm of hand, landmarks of,
    758
Palmar arch. See Arch.
Palpation by rectum, 950
Palpebrae, 725
Pampiniform plexus of veins,
    584, 851, 876
Pancreas, 791
    development of, 122
    duct of, 793
    landmarks of, 838
    structure of, 793
    vessels and nerves of, 798
Papilla lacrymalis, 725, 728
    spirals, 741
Papillae, conjunctiva, 727
    of kidney, 840
    of skin, 85
    of tongue, 708
    circumvallate, 708
    conical, 708
    filiformes, 708
    fungiformes, 708
    maxillae, 708
    media, 708
    minima, 708
    structure of, 709
    of tooth, 747
Par vagus, 660
Parietal bones, 154
    articulations of, 154
    attachment of muscles to, 154
    development of, 154
Parotid gland, 757
    accessory portion of, 758
    duct of, 758
    landmarks of, 916
    lymphatics of, 591
    nerves and vessels of, 758
Parovarium, 125, 876
Par intermedia, 869
Patella, 260
    articulations of, 262
    attachment of muscles of, 262
    development of, 262
    fracture of, 461
    landmarks of, 899
    Peesqueet, cistern of, 589
    reservoir of, 589
Pedicles of vertebra, 133
    Peduncles of cerebellum, 635
    of cerebrum, 621
    of corpus callosum, 624
    of pineal gland, 630
Pelvic fascia. See Fascia, pelvic.
    bones. See Pelvis.
Pelvis, 251, 848
    arteries of, 540
    articulation of, 300
    with spine, 299
Pelvis—
    axes of, 254
    boundaries of, 251, 848
    brim of, 252
    cavity of, 258, 848
    diameters of, 253
    false, 251
    inlet of, 253
    ligaments of, 299
    lymphatics of, 596
    male and female, differences of, 254
    outlet of, 253
    position of, 253
    of viscera at outlet of, 902
    true, 252
    of kidney, 839, 846
Penis, 856
    arteries of, 858
    corpora cavernosa, 857
    corpus spongiosum, 847
    development of, 126
    dorsal artery of, 842
    nerve of, 822
    vein, 852
    glans, 858
    lymphatics of, 597, 859
    muscles of, 899
    nerves of, 892, 859
    prepucce of, 856
    suspensory ligament of, 856
    Perforated space, anterior, 620
    posterior, 621
    Perforating fibres of bone, 49
    Pericardium, 799
    fibrous layer of, 800
    relations of, 799
    serous layer of, 800
    vessels of, 801
    vestigial fold of, 120
    Perichondrium, 43
    Perilymph, 743
    Perimyrsus, 56
    Perineal space, 897
    Perineum, 897
    abnormal course of arteries in, 905
    deep boundaries of, 897
    fascia, deep, 899, 900
    superficial, 897
    landmarks of, 984
    lymphatics of, 598
    muscles of, 898
    in the female, 900
    surgical anatomy of, 895
    Perineurium, 62, 69
    Peristome, 47
    of tooth, 751
    Peritoneum, 763
    folds of, 764
    landmarks of, 830
    lesser cavity of, 765
    ligaments, 765
    mesenteries, 764, 766
    omenta of, 766
    reflections of, 763
    relations of, in hernia, 884
    Pes accessorius, 627
    anserinus, 643
    hippocampus, 627
    Petit, canal of, 724
Petrous portion of temporal bone, 161
Peyer's glands, 776
Phalanges of ear, 742
    of foot, 275
    articulations of, 276, 338
    development of, 276
    of hand, 243
    articulations of, 243, 322
    development of, 243
Pharynx, 759
    aponeurosis of, 760
    arteries of, 481
    development of, 120
    muscles of, 366
    opening of, 759
Pilobolus, 882
Pia mater of brain, 609
    of cord, 603
    testis, 862
Pigment, 45, 88
    cells of iris, 719
Pigmentary layer of choroid, 88
Piles, external, 895
Pillars of external abdominal ring, 887, 880
    of diaphragm, 596
    of fauces, 758
    of fornix, 629
    of palate, 756
Pineal gland, 830
    peduncles of, 630
Pinna of ear, 729
    cartilage of, 729
    ligaments of, 730
    muscles of, 730
    nerves of, 731
    structure of, 729
    vessels of, 731
Pisiform bone, 238
Pit of stomach, 929
Pituitary body, 621
    development of, 111
Placenta, 105
Plasma, 33, 85
Plate, cribiform of ethmoid, 170
    external pterygoid, 168
    perpendicular, of ethmoid, 171
Platysma myoides, 556
Pleura, 826
    cavity of, 826
    costalis, 826
    landmarks of, 825
    parietal layer of, 826
    pulmonalis, 826
    reflections of, 826
    vessels and nerves of, 827
    viscerallayer of, 826
Plexus, biliary, 787
    choroid, 629, 626
    interlobular, 787
    intralobular, 788
    lobular, 787
Plexus of Nerves, 69
    aortic, 708
    brachial, 671
    cardiac, anterior, 701
depth, or great, 700
INDEX.
INDEX.

Puncta—
   vasculosa, 622
Pupil of eye, 719
   dilator muscle of, 719
   membrane of, 719
sphincter muscle of, 719
Pylorus, 767, 768
   landmarks of, 932
Pyramid of cerebellum, 633
   of thyroid gland, 834
   of tympanum, 734
   vestible, 738
Pyramidal bone, 236
Pyramids, anterior, 612
   decussation of, 612
   of Ferrein, 843
   of Malpighi, 840
   posterior, 611
   of spine, 147

QUADRIEPIGEMINAL bodies, 631

RADIUS,
   articular surfaces of, 285
   development of, 225
   landmarks of, 947
   muscles attached to, 235
Ramus of ischiium, 249
   of lower jaw, 188
   of pubes, 249
Ranvier, nodes of, 69
Raphes of corpus callosum, 624
   of palate, 756
   of perineum, 895, 934
   of scrotum, 858
   of tongue, 708
Rathke, lateral trabeculae of, 108
Receptaculum chyli, 589
Rectum, 780
   coats of, 781
   development of, 121
   folds of, 782
   landmarks of, 935
   lymphatics of, 588
   palpation by, 950
   relations of, in female, 870
   male, 781
   structure of, 781
Region of abdomen, 885, 763
   arcinal, muscles of, 404
   auricular, muscles of, 344
   of back, muscles of, 373
   brachial, anterior, muscles of,
   411, 413
   posterior, 417, 418
   cervical, superficial, muscles of,
   356
   cranial, 342
   diaphragmatic, 394
   dorsal, of foot, muscles of,
   455
   epicranial, muscles of, 342
   epigastric, 763
   femoral, anterior, muscles of,
   432
   internal, 457
   posterior, 444
   fibular, 452
   foot, dorsum of, 455
   sole of, 455
   62
Region—
   glutaeal, muscles of, 439
   groin, 763, 878
   of hand, muscles of, 421
   humeral, anterior, 407
   posterior, 409
   hypochondriac, 763
   hypogastric, 763
   iliac, muscles of, 430
   infraspinous, muscles of, 359
   inguinal, 763, 878
   intermaxillary, muscles of, 351
   ischio-rectal, surgical anatomy of,
   895
   laryngo-tracheal, surgical anatomy of, 824
   lingual, muscles of, 563
   lumbar, 763
   maxillary, inferior, muscles of,
   350
   superior, muscles of, 350
   nasal, muscles of, 349
   orbital, muscles of, 346
   palatal, muscles of, 368
   palmar, muscles of, 424
   palpebral, muscles of, 345
   pectoral, muscles of, 399
   of perineum, 897
   pharyngeal, muscles of, 866
   plantar, muscles of, 455
   popliteal, 552
   pterygo-maxillary, muscles of,
   354
   pubic, 763
   radial, muscles of, 415, 421
   scapular, anterior, muscles of,
   404
   posterior, 405
   Scarpa's triangle, 546
   of skull, anterior, 201
   lateral, 199
   suprahyoid, muscles of, 361
   temporo-maxillary, muscles of,
   322
   thoracic, muscles of, 392
   anterior, 399
   lateral, 402
   tibio-fibular, anterior, 446
   posterior, 448
   ulnar, muscles of, 423
   umbilical, 763
   vertebral, anterior, muscles of,
   370
   lateral, 372
Reil, island of, 616
Reservoir of Pecquet, 889
   of thymus, 836
Respiration, muscles of, 394, 396
   organs of, 814
   development of, 122
Restiform bodies of medulla oblongata, 611, 612
Rete mucosum, 85
   testis, 865
Retina—
   internal or nervous layer of, 721
   Jacob's membrane of, 720
   limbus luteus of, 720
   membrana limitans of, 721, 722
   nummular layer of, 721
   radiating fibres of, 722
   structure of, 721
   yellow spot of, 720
Retinaculum of ilio-coccygeal valve, 779
Ribs, 210
   attachment of muscles to, 214
   common characters of, 211
   development of, 214
   false, 211
   floating, 211
   landmarks of, 923
   ligaments of, 295-305
   peculiar, 212
   rules for counting, 923
   true, 211
   vertebral, 211
   vertebral-costa1, 211
   vertebral-ternal, 211
Ridge, internal occipital, 152
   interosseous, of fibula, 266
   of tibia, 263
   mylo-hyoidian, 187
   pterygoid, 167
   supraclavicular, 156, 159
   supraorbital, 202
   temporal, 154, 157, 159
Rigor mortis, 60
Rima glottidis, 818
Ring, abdominal, external, 386
   internal, 888
   landmarks of, 931
   crural, 892
   femoral, 892
   landmarks of, 928
   fibrous, of heart, 808
Rod-granules of retina, 721
Rods of Corti, 741
Rolando, arciform fibres of, 613
   fissure of, 616
   tubercle of, 618
Rosenmüller, organ of, 125, 876
Rostrum of corpus callosum, 623
   of sphenoid bone, 167
Rotation, 282
   of stomach, 770
   of vagina, 871
Sac, dental, 754
   lachrymal, 728
   landmarks of, 917
   of omentum, 766
Sacculus laryngis, 818
   of vestibule, 743
Sacrum, 143
   articulations of, 146
   attachment of muscles to, 146
   development of, 145
   peculiarities of, 145
   structure of, 145
Salivary glands, 757
   structure of, 759
Swellow’s nest of cerebellum, 834
Sweat-glands, 89
Sylvius, aqueduct of, 636
fissure of, 616, 620
Sympathetic nerve. See Nerve, sympathetic.
Symphysial jaw, 186
pubis, 249
Synarthrosis, 280
Synovia, 279, 280
Synovial membrane, 92, 279
articular, 280
bursal, 280
vaginal, 280. See also individual Joints.
Syntotin, 60
System, Haversian, 49

TABATIÈRE anatomique, 948
Tables of skull, 181
Tactile corpuscles of Wagner, 71
Tenia hippocampi, 626
semicirculars, 625
violacea, 635
Tailpes, varieties of, 453
Tarsus, 287
articulations of, 269
development of, 276
Taste-corpuscles, 709
Teeth, 747
bicuspids, 748
canine, 748
cement of, 750, 751
classification of, 755
cortical substance of, 751
crown of, 747
crusta petrosa of, 751
cuspidate, 748
deciduous, 747
dentine of, 747
development of, 751
cemental, 751
eruption of, 755
eye, 748
fang of, 747
growth of, 752
incisors, 747
interstitial tissue of, 750
ivory of, 750
milk, 747, 749
molar, 748
multicuspidate, 748
papillae of, 747
permanent, 747
pulp cavity of, 750
roots of, 747
structure of, 749
temporary, 747, 749
tubuli of, 747
wisdom, 749
Tegmentum, 622
Temporal bone, 159
articulations of, 165
attachment of muscles to, 165
development of, 168
mastoid portion of, 161
petrosal portion of, 161
squamous portion of, 159
Temporal bone—
structure of, 168
Tendo Achilles, 448, 449
landmarks of, 941
oculi, 345
palpebrarum, 845
Tendon, 340
structure of, 340
central, of diaphragm, 396
conjoined, of internal oblique and transversalis, 387, 881
cordiform, of diaphragm, 396
popliteal, landmarks of, 940
Tentorium cerebelli, 608
Testes, 631, 861
aberrant duct of, 863
cons vasculosis of, 863
coverings of, 859, 861
tunica albuginea, 862
vagina, 861
vascular, 862
descent of, 865
development of, 126
gubernaculum, 865
lobules of, 862
lymphatics of, 598, 861
mode of descent of, 865
pia mater of, 862
recto of, 863
size and weight of, 861
structure of, 862
tubuli seminiferi of, 862
tunics of, 859, 861
vas deferens of, 863
vasa efferentia of, 863
recta, 863
vaginal aborans of, 860
vessels and nerves of, 860
Testes multilobati, 874
Testicles. See Testes.
Thalamus optic, 622, 629
Thalamencephalon, 111
Theca vertebralis, 602
Thigh, bone of, 254
fascia of, 432
landmarks of, 936
muscles of, 432, 444
Thorax, 207, 799
base of, 799
bones of, 207
boundaries of, 799
cutaneous nerves of, 681
fascia of, 399
lymphatics of, 600
muscles of, 399
openings of, 799
parts passing through upper openings of, 799
viscerally contained in, 799
Throat, landmarks of, 918
Thumb, articulations of, 322
landmarks of, 94
muscles of, 421
Thymus gland, 836
chemical composition of, 839
lobes of, 836
vessels and nerves of, 837
Thyro-hyoid membrane, 817
Thyroid cartilage, 814
landmarks of, 920

INDEX.

Thyroid gland, 834
chemical composition, 836
thymus of, 834
lymphatics of, 601
pyramid of, 834
structure of, 835
vessels and nerves of, 835
Tibia, 262
articulations of, 264
attachment of muscles to, 264
development of, 264
fracture of, 461
landmarks of, 593, 941
Tome’s fibres, 753
Tongue, 707
arteries of, 710
development of, 120
epithelium of, 709
fibrous septum of, 709
follicles of, 709
landmarks of, 918
vascular glands of, 709
membrane of, 708
muscular fibres of, 710
muscles of, 363
nerves of, 710
papillae of. See Papille
tip of, 708
Tonsils, 756
landmarks of, 919
nerves and vessels of, 737
of cerebellum, 633
Tooth. See Teeth.
Torcular Herophili, 152, 571
Trabeculae of corpus cavernosum, 857
of foetal skull, 108
lateral, of Rathke, 108
of spleen, 794
of testis, 862
Trachea, primitive, 98
Tracheas, 223
cartilages of, 823
glands of, 824
landmarks of, 921
relations of, 823
structure of, 823
surgical anatomy of, 824
vessels and nerves of, 824
Tracheotomy, 824
Trachoma glands, 727
Tract, lateral, of medulla, 611, 612
optic, 628
Tractus intermedio-lateralis, 67,
opticus, 638
Tragus, 729
Trapezius bone, 238
Traperoid bone, 239
Triangle of Hesselbach, 885
inferior carotid, 362, 487
of neck, anterior, 358, 486
posterior, 535, 488
surgical anatomy of, 486
occipital, 362, 488
Scarpa’s, 546
subclavian, 362, 488
submaxillar, 488
superior carotid, 362, 487
Trigone of bladder, 852
landmarks of, 934
INDEX.

Vein or Veins—

Descriptive Anatomy of,

of aple nasi, 565
angular, 565
articulat of knee, 581
of jaw, 566
auditory, 744
auricular, anterior, 566, 567
posterior, 567
axillary, 575
azygos, 578
basal, 574
basi-vertebral, 579
of bone, 47
brachial, 575
brachio-cephalic, 574
brachial, 578, 584
buccal, 565, 567
cardiac, 586
anterior, 587
great, 586
posterior, 587
cardinal, 120
cava, inferior, 588
superior, 576, 577
cephalic, 574, 576
cerebellar, 570, 573
cerebral, 570, 573
cervical ascending, 569
deep, 569
superficial, 567
transverse, 568
choroid of brain, 570
circumflex iliac, 583
superficial, 581
condylar, posterior, 569
coronary, 587
of corpore cavernoos, 859
of corpus spongiosum, 859
striatum, 570, 625
cystic, 586
deep, 564
dental, inferior, 567
digital of hand, 575
of dioplo, 569
dorsal of penis, 582
dorsalis nasi, 565
dorsal, 581
dorsal-spinal, 569, 578
epigastic, 582
superficial, 581
of eyeball, 725
facial, 565, 568
femoral, 58, 582, 892
frontal, 565, 569
of Galen, 570, 587, 625
gastric, 585
gastro-epiploic, 585
gluteal, 583
ehemohtoidal, 582
of head, 565
hepatic, 584, 786, 787, 789
iliac, common, 583
external, 582
internal, 582
ilio-lumbar, 583
innominate, 576, 577
intercostal, superior, 577
interlobular, 789

Vein or Veins—

Intercostal, of forearm, 575
Intralobular, 787, 789
jugular, anterior, 568
external, 567
posterior, 568
internal, 567, 568
of kidney, 584, 845
labial, inferior, 565
superior, 565
laryngeal, 568, 577
lateral sacral, 583
lingual, 568
of liver, 584, 786, 789
longitudinal, inferior, 571
superior, 571
of lower extremity, 580
lumbar, 584
mammary, internal, 576
masseteric, 565, 567
mastoid, 567
maxillary, internal, 567
median, 574
basal, 575
cephalic, 575
cutaneous, 575
mediastinal, 578
medullary, 579
meningeal, 567
meningo-rachidian, 569, 579
mesenteric, 118
inferior, 585
superior, 585
nasal, 565
of neck, 563, 567
oblique, 587
obturator, 583
occipital, 567, 570
oesophageal, 578
ophthalmic, 572
ovarian, 584
palatine, 565, 567
palmar, deep, 575
palpebral, inferior, 565
superior, 565
pancreatic, 585
pancreatico-duodenal, 585
parotid, 566
pericardial, 576
peroneal, 581
pharyngeal, 568
phrenic, 584
plantar, external, 581
internal, 581
popliteal, 581, 582
portal, 564, 565, 785, 786, 789
primitive, 118
profunda femoris, 582
pterygoid, 567
pubic, external, 581
internal, 583
pulmonary, 564, 587, 833
radial, 574, 755
rane, 586
renal, 584, 845
sacral, lateral, 583
middle, 583

Vein or Veins—

salvatorella, 574
saphenous, external or
short, 581
internal or long, 580, 886
landmarks of, 943
sciatric, 583
spermatic, 584, 561
sphenopalatine, 568
spinal, 578
longitudinal, 579
of spinal cord, 579
splenic, 585
stylo-mastoid, 587
subclavian, 567, 576
sublubal, 787, 789
submaxillary, 566
submental, 565
superficial, 564
supraorbital, 565
suprarenal, 564
suprasacral, 568
sural, 582
systemic, 564
temporal, 568
deep, 561
middle, 566
anterior, 569
posterior, 570
tempooro-maxillary, 567
tibal, 573
of thyroid gland, 335
thyroid, middle, 576
thyroid, inferior, 568, 579
middle, 568
superior, 568
tibial, anterior, 580, 581
posterior, 581
tracheal, 577
transverse cervical, 568
facial, 566
ulnar, anterior, 574
deep, 575
posterior, 574
umbilical, 513
of upper extremity, 573
vaginal, of liver, 789
vasa brevia, 585
ventricular, 570
of vertebrae, 579
vertebral, 569, 578, 578
Vidian, 568
General Anatomy of, 78
anastomoses of, 564
costs of, 78
development of, 118
muscular tissue of, 79
plexus of, 564. See Plexus
of veins.
sinus of. See Sinus.
structure of, 78
valves of, 79
vessels and nerves of, 80
See also Vein and Vene.

Velum interpositum, 525, 528
medullary, 523
pendulcal palatini, 756
Vena cava, 119
superior, 568
inferior, 563
Venus striata, 570, 625
INDEX.

Vena cava—
innominata, 568, 576
portae, 564, 565, 789
salvastella, 574
See also Vein.
Vena basis vertebrarum, 286, 579
comites, 564, 573
cordis minime, 803
corporis striati, 570, 625
Galeni, 570, 587, 625
interlobulares, of kidney, 845
minimae cordis, 810
rectae, 845
propriae renales, 845
Thebesii, 587, 810
vorticosae, 717
See also Vein.
Venter of ilium, 247
of scapula, 218
Ventricle of Arantius, 612
of brain, third, 629
fourth, 635
fifth, 627
lateral, 624
of cerebellum, 635
of corpus callesum, 623
fetal, of eye, 114
of heart, left, 807
right, 804
of larynx, 818
Vernix caseosa, 115
Vertebræ dentata, 135
prominens, 156
Vertebræ, 132
articulations of, 285
attachment of muscles to, 142
cervical, 133
coccygeal, 124
development of, 106, 140
dorsal, 137
general characters of, 132
ligaments of, 285
lumbar, 139
movements of, 927
Vertebræ—
costification of, 141
primitive, 107
sacral, 142
spines of, 132, 926
landmarks of, 926
structure of, 140
Vertebral column. See Verte-
bre.
Vertex of skull, 192
Verumontanum, 853
Vesicle, auditory, 114
cerebral, 110
erminal, 94
Graafian, 874
ocular, 113
of Purkinje, 94
semenal, 864
umbilical, 105
Vesiculae seminales, 864
Vestibule of ear, 738
aqueduct of, 163, 738
of vulva, 868
Vestigial fold of pericardium, 120
Vibrisse, 710
Vieussens, valve of, 631
Villi, 773
Vincula accessoria tendinum, 418
Viscers, abdominal, 763
landmarks of, 931
pelvic, 908
Vitelline duct, 105
membrane, 94
Vitellus, 94
Vitreous body, 723
humor of eye, 723
table of skull, 131
Vocal cords, 818, 819
inferior or true, 819
superior or false, 818
Voice, organs of, 814
Vomer, 185
als of, 165
articulations of, 186
development of, 186
Vortex of heart, 809
Vulva, 867
development of, 125, 127
Wagner, spot of, 94
tactile corpuscles of, 71
Waters, on the lung, 833
Watney on villi, 773
Wharton’s duct, 758
jelly, 41, 108
White substance of brain, 60
of Schwann, 62
Willis, circle of, 502
Wings of sphenoid, 167.

THE END
CLASSIFIED LIST
OF
MEDICAL AND SURGICAL PUBLICATIONS
ISSUED BY

HENRY C. LEA.

ANATOMY.
Allen's System of Human Anatomy, Including its Medical and Surgical Relations. For the use of practitioners and students of medicine. With an introductory chapter on Histology. By E. O. Sharpless, M.D., Ophthalmologist to the Philadelphia Hospital. In one large quarto volume, with several hundred original illustrations on lithographic plates, and numerous wood-cuts in the text. (Preparing.)

Watson's Synopsis of Human Anatomy, General and Special. Edited by W. H. Gossage, M.D., Prof. of General and Surgical Anatomy in the Med. College of Ohio. With 397 illustrations. In one handsome octavo volume of over 600 large pages. Cloth, $6 00; leather, $8 25.

Smith & Houen's Anatomical Atlas, Illustrative of the Structure of the Human Body. In one large imperial 8vo volume, with 800 illustrations. By R. & Roberts, M.D.s, Physician to the Medical and Surgical Hospital, Baltimore. In one handsome octavo volume, with 525 illustrations in black and white. Cloth, $5 00; leather, $7 25.


Houen's Special Anatomy and Histology. Eighth edition, in two volumes, 8vo, of about 1000 pages, with 350 wood-cuts. Cloth, $6 00.

Bellamy's Student's Guide to Surgical Anatomy. In one handsome royal 12mo volume, with engravings. Cloth, $3 50. (Latey Published.)

Cland's Directory for the Dissection of the Human Body, in one small volume, royal 12mo, of 163 pages. Cloth, $1 50. (Just Issued.)

Hood's Practical Dissections. Second edition, thoroughly revised. In one neat royal 12mo volume, half bound, $2 00.

Holzer's Landmarks, Medical and Surgical. From the second London edition. In one handsome volume, royal 12mo, of 128 pages. Cloth, $2 50. (New Reprint.)

Sjöman's Course of Practical Histology. Being an Introduction to the Use of the Microscope. In one handsome royal 12mo volume of 304 pages, with numerous illustrations. Cloth, $1 25. (Just Issued.)

Cottrell & Hanson's Manual of Pathological Histology. Translated, with Notes and Additions, by E. O. Sharpless, M.D., Pathologist and Ophthalmologist to the Philadelphia Hospital, etc. In one very handsome octavo volume of about 600 pages, with over 300 illustrations. (Preparing.)

Gibson's Atlas of Pathological Histology. Translated, with Notes and Additions, by Joseph Lea, M.D. In one volume, very large imperial quarto, with 350 copper-plate figures, plain and colored. Cloth, $1 00.

PHYSIOLOGY.
Carver's Principles of Human Physiology. Edited by Henry Powers, M.D., LL.D., F.C.S., Eton in the Natural Sciences, University of Oxford. A new American, from the eighth revised and enlarged English edition, with Notes and Additions, by Francis G. Smith, M.D., Professor of the Institutes of Medicine in the University of Pennsylvania, etc. In one very large and handsome octavo volume of 1038 pages, with two plates and 373 engravings on wood. Cloth, $5 50; leather, $5 25. (Just Issued.)

Dalton's Treatise on Human Physiology. Designed for the use of about 250 pages. Cloth, $2 50; leather, $2 50. (Just Published.)


Hartshorn's Handbook of Anatomy and Physiology, for Technical Students. In one octavo volume, with 230 wood-cuts. Cloth, $1 75. (Latey Issued.)

LEHMAN'S Physiological Chemistry. In two octavo volumes, of 1200 pages, with 300 illustrations. Cloth, $6 00.


CHEMISTRY.


Bohme's Chemistry, Isoparaffine and Organic. From the second London edition. In one very handsome octavo volume of 700 pages, with about 300 illustrations. Cloth, $4 00; leather, $6 00. (Latey Published.)

Clowes' Elementary Treatise on Practical Chemistry and Qualitative Inorganic Analysis. Newly adapted for use in the Laboratories of Schools and Colleges and by Beginners. From the second and revised English edition, with about fifty illustrations on wood. In one very handsome royal 12mo volume of 376 pages. Cloth, $4 20. (Issued.)

Galloway's Manual of Qualitative Analysis. From the Fifth London Edition. In one neat 12mo volume, with illustrations. (Shortly.)


Rasmussen's Principles of Theoretical Chemistry, with Special Reference to the Constitution of Chemical Compounds. In one handsome royal 12mo volume of 252 pages. Cloth, $1 50. (Latey Issued.)

Worle & Pratum's Elements of Organic Chemistry. Translated, with Additions, from the eighth German edition, by Ira K. Rums, M.D., Ph.D., Professor of Chemistry and Physics in Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore. In one handsome volume, royal 12mo, of 500 pages. Cloth, $3 00.

Bowman's Introduction to Chemistry, 1st edition. Analysis. Sixth American, from the sixth and revised London edition. With numerous illustrations. In one neat volume, royal 12mo, $2 00. (Issued.)

Bowman's Practical Handbook of Medical Chemistry, 1st American, from the fourth and revised London edition. In one neat royal 12mo volume of 351 pages, with numerous illustrations. Cloth, $2 25. (Issued.)

Kearns' Textbook on Chemical Laboratory Applied to the Arts and to Manufactures. With American Additions, by Prof. W. R. K. Johnson. In one handsome octavo volume, with 350 wood engravings. Cloth, $6 00.

DICTIONARIES.
Demolino's Medical Lexicon; A Dictionary of Medical Science: containing a concise explanation of the various Subjects and Terms of Anatomy, Physiology, Pathology, Hygiene, Therapeutics, Surgery, Obstetrics, Medical Jurisprudence, and Dentistry. Revised and Enlarged. Ninth Edition. With 320 illustrations. In one large and handsome octavo volume of over 1100 pages, with 500 wood engravings. Cloth, $6 50; leather, raised bands, $7 50. (Latey Issued.)

HENRY C. LEA, Philadelphia.
HOLT'S Dictionary of the Terms Used in Medicine and the Colloquial Sciences. Revised, with numerous additions by M. D., 12th ed., with the "American Journal of the Medical Sciences." In one large royal 12mo. volume of over 600 double-columned pages; cloth, $1.00; leather, $1.

MANUALS.

HARTSCOURT'S Concise Manual of Medical Sciences; containing Handbooks on Anatomy, Physiology, Chemistry, Materia Medica, Practical Medicine, Surgery, and Obstetrics. Seventh edition, thoroughly revised and improved. In one large royal 12mo. volume of more than 1000 closely printed pages, with 477 Ills. on wood. Cloth, $1.35; leather, $1.

HARTSCOURT'S Essentials of the Principles and Practice of Medicine. A handy-book for students and practitioners. Fourth edition, revised and improved. With about 100 Illustrations. In one handsome royal 12mo. volume of about 550 pages. Cloth, $2.63; half-bound, $2.85. (Leased.)

FOWDILL'S Practitioner's Manual of Treatment; or, the Principles of Therapeutics. In one very neat octavo volume of about 573 pages. Cloth, $1.

FOWDILL'S Antidotes of Therapeutic Agents, and What it Teaches. Being the Fowdillian Prize Essay for 1878. In one neat volume, royal 12mo., of about 300 pages. (Briefly.)

BILDEAUS, FORRE, TUESBEAR, and CONNOLY. A Cyclopedia of Practical Medicine; comprising Treatises on the Nature and Treatment of Diseases, Materia Medica and Therapeutics, Diseases of Women and Children, Medical Jurisprudence, etc., etc. In four super-royal octavo volumes, cloth bound and handsomely bound in leather; $1.55; cloth, $1.11.


BROWNE'S Introduction to Clinical Medicine. In one volume, 12mo. Cloth, $1.25.

BROWN'S Diseases of the Throat. (Briefly.)

FLOYD'S Manual of Percussion and Auscultation of the Physical Diagnosis of Diseases of the Lungs and Heart, and of Tuberculosis. In one handsome 12mo. volume. Cloth, $1.75.


BACON'S Practical Treatises on Foreign Bodies in the Air-Passes. In one volume, 8vo., with illustrations, 468 pages. Cloth, $3.75.

BURNS'S Consumption: its Early and Remediable Stages. One volume, 212 pages. Cloth, $1.35.


FLOYD'S Diseases of the Lungs and Air Passages; Their Pathology, Physiological Symptoms, and Treatment. From the second and revised English edition. In one octavo volume of about 500 pages. Cloth, $2.25.

LA ROCHE'S Passions. One volume, octavo, of 500 pages. Cloth, $3.


WATSON'S Manual of Diet in Health and Disease. In one handsome octavo volume. Cloth, $1.75. (Just Issued.)

CRAEMER'S Guide to the Use of Medicinal Agents, in health and disease. Revised and Enlarged. In one handsome octavo volume of 360 pages. Cloth, $1.50;

FLOYD'S Treatise on Food and Dietetics, Physiologically and Therapeutically Considered. In one handsome octavo volume of about 200 pages. Cloth, $1.75. (Just Issued.)

PARDY'S Treatise on Food and Dietetics, Physiologically and Therapeutically Considered. In one handsome octavo volume of about 200 pages. Cloth, $1.75. (Just Issued.)

PARDY'S Treatise on Food and Dietetics, Physiologically and Therapeutically Considered. In one handsome octavo volume of about 200 pages. Cloth, $1.75. (Just Issued.)

PARDY'S Treatise on Food and Dietetics, Physiologically and Therapeutically Considered. In one handsome octavo volume of about 200 pages. Cloth, $1.75. (Just Issued.)

SHERWIN'S Lectures on Fever. In one neat volume of 264 pages. Cloth, $2.25.

LYNNE'S Lectures on Fever. In one neat volume of 264 pages. Cloth, $2.25.
WINCKEL on the Pathology and Treatment of Childbed. A treatise for physicians and students. From the second German edition, with additions by the author. Translated by Jane A. Braxton, M.D. Cloth, $1.25; leather, $1.50. 

BRESLAU and WOLFF's Atlas of Vesicular Diseases. Translated and edited by F. E. B. BRESLAU. In one large handsome octavo volume of nearly 700 pages, with 235 illustrations. Cloth, $5.75; leather, $7.00. (Just Issued.)

CALCOTT'S Bumslauf's Atlas of Vesicular Diseases. Translated and edited by F. E. B. BRESLAU. In one large handsome octavo volume of 950 pages, with 235 illustrations. Cloth, $5.75; leather, $7.00. (Just Issued.)

Gynecology.

THOMAS'S Practical Treatise on the Diseases of Women. Fourth edition, enlarged and thoroughly revised. In one large and handsome octavo volume of 800 pages, with 191 illustrations. Cloth, $3.00; leather, $6.00. (Just Issued.)

BARKER'S Clinical Exposition of the Medical and Surgical Diseases of Women, from the American, enlarged and revised English edition in one handsome octavo volume, with maps. 3 vols. (In Press.)


WARRE'S Lectures on the Diseases of Women. Third American, from the third London edition. In one handsome octavo volume of about 700 pages, cloth, $2.75; leather, $3.75. (Just Issued.)

HUNN'S Diseases of Women Pertinent to Women. One volume, 8vo, of 450 pages, with plates. Cloth, $2.50. (Just Issued.)

OBSTETRICS.

PLAYFAIR'S Treatise on the Science and Practice of Midwifery. Second American, from the second and revised English edition. Cloth, $2.50; leather, $3.50. (Just Issued.)

LEWIS's System of Midwifery, including the Diseases of Pregnancy and the Postnatal State. Second American, from the second and revised English edition, with additions by J. S. Paxt, M.D., Obstetrician to the Philadelphia Hospital. In one large and handsome octavo volume of nearly 800 pages, with about 300 illustrations. Cloth, $3.50; leather, $4.50. (Just Issued.)

HUNN'S Principles and Practice of Obstetrics. Illustrated with large lithographic plates containing figures from original photographs, and with numerous woodcuts. In one handsome octavo volume of 330 double-columned pages. Strongly bound in cloth, $1.50.

HUNN'S Principles and Practice of Obstetrics Medicine and Surgery, in reference to the Process of Parturition. A new and enlarged edition, thoroughly revised by the author. With additions by W. V. KEATING, M.D., Professor of Obstetrics, etc., in the Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia. In one large and handsome octavo volume of 450 pages, strongly bound in leather, with raised bands; with 54 beautiful plates, and numerous wood-cuts in the text, containing in all nearly 300 large and beautiful figures. Leather, $7.50. (Just Issued.)

WACH'S Lectures on the Diseases of Infancy and Childhood. Fifth American, from the sixth revised and enlarged English edition. In one large and handsome octavo volume of 750 pages. Cloth, $1.50; leather, $3.00. (Just Issued.)

SCHRÖDER'S Handbook of Signs and Diseases of Pregnancy, First American from the sixth and enlarged English edition. With 4 colored plates and illustrations on wood. In one handsome octavo volume of about 500 pages. Cloth, $1.25; leather, $2.50. (Just Issued.)


DISEASES OF CHILDREN.

SCHRÖDER'S Practical Treatise on the Diseases of Infancy and Childhood. Third edition, enlarged and thoroughly revised. With illustrations on wood. In one handsome 8vo, volume of 750 pages. Cloth, $3.00; leather, $6.00. (Just Issued.)

SCHRÖDER'S Lectures on the Diseases of Infancy and Childhood. Fifth American from the sixth revised and enlarged English edition. In one large and handsome octavo volume of 750 pages. Cloth, $4.50; leather, $8.00. (Just Issued.)

SCHRÖDER'S on some Disorders of the Nervous System in Child and Childhood. In one volume, 8vo, of about 500 pages. Cloth, $5.00. (Just Issued.)

SCHRÖDER'S Practical Treatise on the Wasting Disease of Infancy and Childhood. In one 8vo. volume. Cloth, $2.50.

OPHTHALMOLOGY AND OTOLOGY.

WEIL'S Treatise on Diseases of the Eye. Third American, from the fourth and revised London edition, with additions and illustrations with numerous engravings on wood. 6 colored plates. Together with selections from the two types of Jaeger and Seelenb. In one large and very handsome octavo volume, with pocket, $15.00.

CARTER'S Practical Treatise on the Diseases of the Eye. Edited, with new types and additions, by J. T. Green, M.D. (St. Louis, Mo.). In one handsome octavo volume of about 300 pages, and 121 illustrations. Cloth, $3.75. (Just Issued.)

BRAUN'S How to Use the Ophthalmoscope. Being an elementary instruction in Ophthalmology, arranged for the use of students. In one small volume, 12mo, of 120 pages, with 35 illustrations. Cloth, $1.00. (New with pocket.)

LAURENCE's Handy-Book of Ophthalmic Surgery, for the use of practitioners, second edition, enlarged. With numerous illustrations. In one handsome octavo volume, cloth, $3.00.

LAWSON on Injuries to the Eye, Orbit, and Eyelids, their Immediate and Remote Effects. With about 100 illustrations. In one handsome octavo volume, cloth, $3.00. (Just Issued.)

BURNETT ON THE EAR, its Anatomy, Physiology, and Diseases. A practical treatise for the use of medical students and practitioners. In one handsome octavo volume of 615 pages, with 87 illustrations. Cloth, $4.00; leather, $6.00. (Just Issued.)

HENRY C. LEB, Philadelphia.
Structure of Lung. According to the very able
research of J. Lobtesis, which are some of the
structures of the lungs. The lobules are the
Bronchial tubes, being connected by Connective tissue
decks. They are divided by the trachea
Branches, seen by the eye and
apparent at the thorax. The lung cavity
The pleura. Per the site sound, they
rest may seem in the lung are aerated
connected together. Each lobule is
made up to 10 to 12 Lobules, each
which consists of the following
parts: 1) The ultimate Bronchial (2) Alveolar
passages 3 or 4 to each athlete or lobule
which, separating, become each one Air sac
bronches, or infundibula. Both the wall
of the Bronchial, the alveolar passages, to the
Infundibula, are lined with cartilage or
inseas (alveoli). Small circular
openings lead also from the infundibula
to a direct alveolus or to groups of
there. Sometimes the larger bronchial
tubes, in children are lined with cartilage.
Branches of the ultimate Bronchial. See drawing
in many of these smaller than that of the infundibula.
LANE MEDICAL LIBRARY

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on or before the date last stamped below.

007 - 1 1270